

MCUXpresso SDK Documentation

Release 25.12.00-pvw1



NXP
Oct 20, 2025

Table of contents

1 MIMXRT595-EVK **3**
- 1.1 Overview . . . 3
- 1.2 Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK Package . . . 3
  - 1.2.1 Getting Started with Package . . . 3
- 1.3 Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK GitHub . . . 42
  - 1.3.1 Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK Repository . . . 42
- 1.4 Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK Xplorer . . . 55
  - 1.4.1 Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK Xplorer . . . 55
- 1.5 Release Notes . . . 82
  - 1.5.1 MCUXpresso SDK Release Notes . . . 82
- 1.6 ChangeLog . . . 88
  - 1.6.1 MCUXpresso SDK Changelog . . . 88
- 1.7 Driver API Reference Manual . . . 187
- 1.8 Middleware Documentation . . . 187
  - 1.8.1 Wireless Connectivity Framework . . . 187
  - 1.8.2 VG-Lite GPU Library . . . 187
  - 1.8.3 Multicore . . . 187
  - 1.8.4 MCU Boot . . . 187
  - 1.8.5 eIQ . . . 187
  - 1.8.6 FreeMASTER . . . 187
  - 1.8.7 AWS IoT . . . 188
  - 1.8.8 NXP Wi-Fi . . . 188
  - 1.8.9 FreeRTOS . . . 188
  - 1.8.10 Wireless EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL . . . 188
  - 1.8.11 lwIP . . . 188
  - 1.8.12 File systemFatfs . . . 188
  - 1.8.13 DSP Audio Streamer . . . 188

2 MIMXRT595S **189**
- 2.1 ACMP: Analog Comparator Driver . . . 189
- 2.2 CACHE: CACHE Memory Controller . . . 197
- 2.3 CASPER: The Cryptographic Accelerator and Signal Processing Engine with RAM sharing . . . 201
- 2.4 casper_driver . . . 201
- 2.5 casper_driver_pkha . . . 205
- 2.6 Clock Driver . . . 207
- 2.7 CRC: Cyclic Redundancy Check Driver . . . 246
- 2.8 CTIMER: Standard counter/timers . . . 248
- 2.9 DMA: Direct Memory Access Controller Driver . . . 258
- 2.10 DMIC: Digital Microphone . . . 275
- 2.11 DMIC DMA Driver . . . 275
- 2.12 DMIC Driver . . . 277
- 2.13 DSP Driver . . . 286
- 2.14 FLEXCOMM: FLEXCOMM Driver . . . 287
- 2.15 FLEXCOMM Driver . . . 287
- 2.16 FlexIO: FlexIO Driver . . . 288

2.17 FlexIO Driver . . . 288
2.18 FlexIO I2C Master Driver . . . 306
2.19 FlexIO I2S Driver . . . 314
2.20 FlexIO SPI Driver . . . 325
2.21 FlexIO UART Driver . . . 338
2.22 FLEXSPI: Flexible Serial Peripheral Interface Driver . . . 348
2.23 FLEXSPI DMA Driver . . . 365
2.24 FMEAS: Frequency Measure Driver . . . 367
2.25 Hashcrypt: The Cryptographic Accelerator . . . 368
2.26 Hashcrypt Background HASH . . . 368
2.27 Hashcrypt common functions . . . 369
2.28 Hashcrypt AES . . . 372
2.29 Hashcrypt HASH . . . 376
2.30 I2C: Inter-Integrated Circuit Driver . . . 377
2.31 I2C DMA Driver . . . 378
2.32 I2C Driver . . . 379
2.33 I2C Master Driver . . . 383
2.34 I2C Slave Driver . . . 392
2.35 I2S: I2S Driver . . . 401
2.36 I2S_BRIDGE: I2S bridging and signal sharing configuration . . . 401
2.37 I2S DMA Driver . . . 404
2.38 I2S Driver . . . 407
2.39 I3C: I3C Driver . . . 416
2.40 I3C Common Driver . . . 418
2.41 I3C Master DMA Driver . . . 420
2.42 I3C Master Driver . . . 424
2.43 I3C Slave DMA Driver . . . 449
2.44 I3C Slave Driver . . . 451
2.45 IAP Boot Driver . . . 464
2.46 IAP: In Application Programming Driver . . . 465
2.47 IAP FlexSPI Driver . . . 465
2.48 IAP OTP Driver . . . 478
2.49 INPUTMUX: Input Multiplexing Driver . . . 480
2.50 IOPCTL: Input/Output Pad Controller . . . 501
2.51 Common Driver . . . 503
2.52 LCDIF: LCD interface . . . 514
2.53 LPADC: 12-bit SAR Analog-to-Digital Converter Driver . . . 527
2.54 GPIO: General Purpose I/O . . . 546
2.55 MIPI DSI Driver . . . 549
2.56 MIPI_DSI: MIPI DSI Host Controller . . . 566
2.57 MIPI DSI SMARTDMA driver . . . 566
2.58 MRT: Multi-Rate Timer . . . 569
2.59 MU: Messaging Unit . . . 573
2.60 OSTIMER: OS Event Timer Driver . . . 582
2.61 OTFAD: On The Fly AES-128 Decryption Driver . . . 586
2.62 PINT: Pin Interrupt and Pattern Match Driver . . . 589
2.63 Power Driver . . . 597
2.64 POWERQUAD: PowerQuad hardware accelerator . . . 611
2.65 PUF: Physical Unclonable Function . . . 640
2.66 Reset Driver . . . 643
2.67 RTC: Real Time Clock . . . 648
2.68 SCTimer: SCTimer/PWM (SCT) . . . 654
2.69 SEMA42: Hardware Semaphores Driver . . . 671
2.70 SMARTDMA: SMART DMA Driver . . . 674
2.71 MCXN SMARTDMA Firmware . . . 676
2.72 RT500 SMARTDMA Firmware . . . 678
2.73 Soc_mipi_dsi . . . 683
2.74 SPI: Serial Peripheral Interface Driver . . . 683

2.75 SPI DMA Driver . . . 683
2.76 SPI Driver . . . 687
2.77 TRNG: True Random Number Generator . . . 695
2.78 USART: Universal Synchronous/Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter Driver . . . 700
2.79 USART DMA Driver . . . 700
2.80 USART Driver . . . 702
2.81 USDHC: Ultra Secured Digital Host Controller Driver . . . 718
2.82 UTICK: MictoTick Timer Driver . . . 747
2.83 WWDT: Windowed Watchdog Timer Driver . . . 749

3 Middleware **753**
3.1 Boot . . . 753
3.1.1 MCUXpresso SDK : mcuxsdk-middleware-mcuboot_opensource . . . 753
3.1.2 MCUboot . . . 754
3.2 Connectivity . . . 755
3.2.1 lwIP . . . 755
3.3 eIQ . . . 756
3.3.1 eIQ . . . 756
3.4 File System . . . 784
3.4.1 FatFs . . . 784
3.5 Motor Control . . . 786
3.5.1 FreeMASTER . . . 786
3.6 MultiCore . . . 824
3.6.1 Multicore SDK . . . 824
3.7 Multimedia . . . 920
3.7.1 VGLite Graphics Driver . . . 920
3.7.2 Xtensa Audio Framework (XAF) . . . 1010
3.8 Wireless . . . 1025
3.8.1 NXP Wireless Framework and Stacks . . . 1025
3.8.2 EdgeFast Bluetooth . . . 1144

4 RTOS **1219**
4.1 FreeRTOS . . . 1219
4.1.1 FreeRTOS kernel . . . 1219
4.1.2 FreeRTOS drivers . . . 1225
4.1.3 backoffalgorithm . . . 1225
4.1.4 corehttp . . . 1228
4.1.5 corejson . . . 1230
4.1.6 coremqtt . . . 1233
4.1.7 corepkcs11 . . . 1236
4.1.8 freertos-plus-tcp . . . 1239

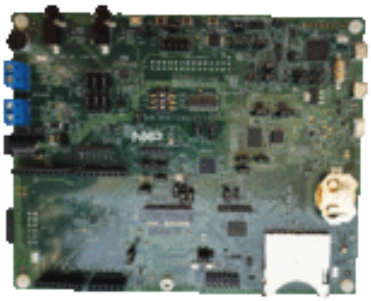
This documentation contains information specific to the evkmimxrt595 board.

Chapter 1

MIMXRT595-EVK

1.1 Overview

The i.MX RT500 EVK (MIMXRT595-EVK) features NXPs advanced implementation of the Arm Cortex-M33 core, combined with the highly optimized Cadence Tensilica Fusion F1 DSP processor core. MIMXRT595-EVK supports development for the MIMXRT595, MIMXRT555 and MIMXRT533 products and its features make it ideal for portable HMI applications. The i.MX RT500 EVK can help jump start your next design with the included schematics and layout files.



MCU device and part on board is shown below:

- Device: MIMXRT595S
- PartNumber: MIMXRT595SFFOC

1.2 Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK Package

1.2.1 Getting Started with Package

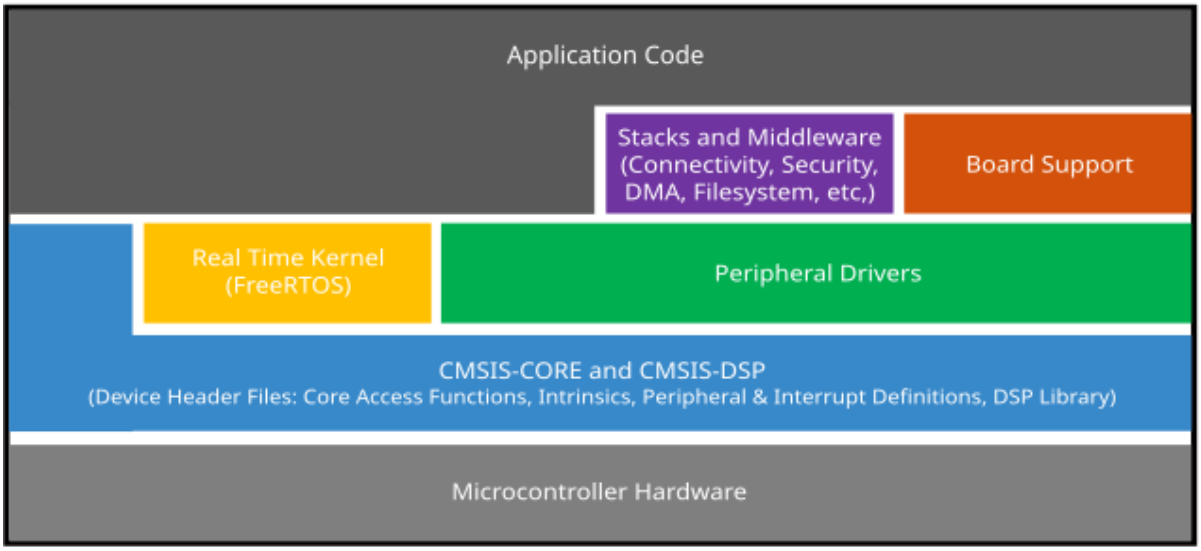
Overview

The NXP MCUXpresso software and tools offer comprehensive development solutions designed to optimize, ease, and help accelerate embedded system development of applications based on general purpose, crossover, and Bluetooth-enabled MCUs from NXP. The MCUXpresso SDK includes a flexible set of peripheral drivers designed to speed up and simplify development of embedded applications. Along with the peripheral drivers, the MCUXpresso SDK provides an extensive and rich set of example applications covering everything from basic peripheral use case examples to full demo applications. The MCUXpresso SDK contains optional RTOS integrations

such as FreeRTOS and Azure RTOS,a USB host and device stack, and various other middleware to support rapid development.

For supported toolchain versions, see *MCUXpresso SDK Release Notes for EVK-MIMXRT595* (document MCUSDKRT595RN).

For more details about MCUXpresso SDK, see MCUXpresso Software Development Kit (SDK).



MCUXpresso SDK board support package folders

MCUXpresso SDK board support package provides example applications for NXP development and evaluation boards for Arm Cortex-M cores including Freedom, Tower System, and LPCXpresso boards. Board support packages are found inside the top-level boards folder and each supported board has its own folder (an MCUXpresso SDK package can support multiple boards). Within each <board_name> folder, there are various subfolders to classify the type of examples it contains. These include (but are not limited to):

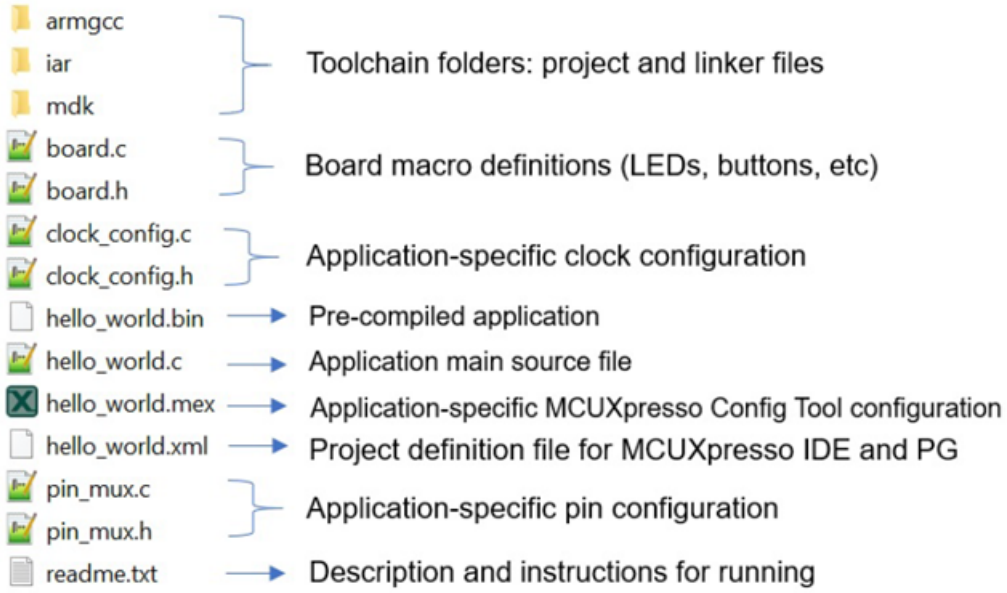
- cmsis_driver_examples: Simple applications intended to show how to use CMSIS drivers.
- demo_apps: Full-featured applications that highlight key functionality and use cases of the target MCU. These applications typically use multiple MCU peripherals and may leverage stacks and middleware.
- driver_examples: Simple applications that show how to use the MCUXpresso SDK peripheral drivers for a single use case. These applications typically only use a single peripheral but there are cases where multiple peripherals are used (for example, SPI conversion using DMA).
- emwin_examples: Applications that use the emWin GUI widgets.
- rtos_examples: Basic FreeRTOS OS examples that show the use of various RTOS objects (semaphores, queues, and so on) and interfaces with the MCUXpresso SDK RTOS drivers.
- usb_examples: Applications that use the USB host/device/OTG stack.
- usb_dongle_examples: Simple applications to be used on the PCB2459-2 JN5189 USB DONGLE.

Example application structure This section describes how the various types of example applications interact with the other components in the MCUXpresso SDK. To get a comprehensive

understanding of all MCUXpresso SDK components and folder structure, see *MCUXpresso SDK API Reference Manual*.

Each <board_name> folder in the boards directory contains a comprehensive set of examples that are relevant to that specific piece of hardware. Although we use the hello_world example (part of the demo_apps folder), the same general rules apply to any type of example in the <board_name> folder.

In the hello_world application folder you see the following contents:



All files in the application folder are specific to that example, so it is easy to copy and paste an existing example to start developing a custom application based on a project provided in the MCUXpresso SDK.

Parent topic:*MCUXpresso SDK board support package folders*

Locating example application source files When opening an example application in any of the supported IDEs, various source files are referenced. The MCUXpresso SDK devices folder is the central component to all example applications. It means that the examples reference the same source files and, if one of these files is modified, it could potentially impact the behavior of other examples.

The main areas of the MCUXpresso SDK tree used in all example applications are:

- devices/<device_name>: The device's CMSIS header file, MCUXpresso SDK feature file, and a few other files
- devices/<device_name>/cmsis_drivers: All the CMSIS drivers for your specific MCU
- devices/<device_name>/drivers: All of the peripheral drivers for your specific MCU
- devices/<device_name>/<tool_name>: Toolchain-specific startup code, including vector table definitions
- devices/<device_name>/utilities: Items such as the debug console that are used by many of the example applications
- devices/<devices_name>/project: Project template used in CMSIS PACK new project creation

For examples containing an RTOS, there are references to the appropriate source code. RTOSes are in the rtos folder. The core files of each of these are shared, so modifying one could have potential impacts on other projects that depend on that file.

Parent topic:*MCUXpresso SDK board support package folders*

Run a demo using MCUXpresso IDE

Note: Ensure that the MCUXpresso IDE toolchain is included when generating the MCUXpresso SDK package.

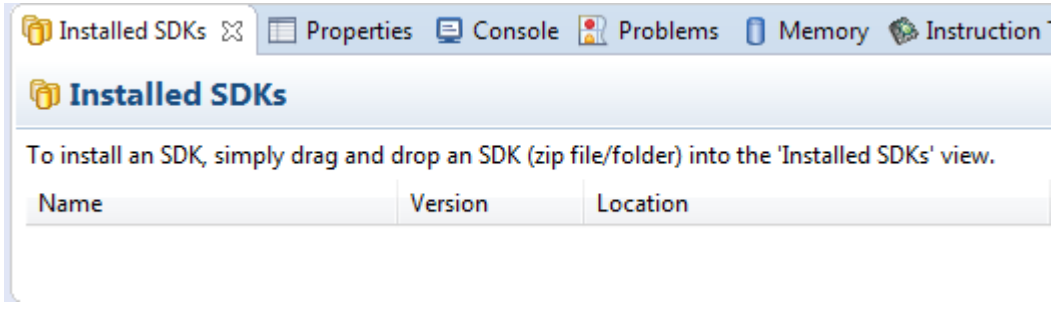
This section describes the steps required to configure MCUXpresso IDE to build, run, and debug example applications. The hello_world demo application targeted for the MIMXRT595-EVK hardware platform is used as an example, though these steps can be applied to any example application in the MCUXpresso SDK.

Select the workspace location Every time MCUXpresso IDE launches, it prompts the user to select a workspace location. MCUXpresso IDE is built on top of Eclipse which uses workspace to store information about its current configuration, and in some use cases, source files for the projects are in the workspace. The location of the workspace can be anywhere, but it is recommended that the workspace be located outside the MCUXpresso SDK tree.

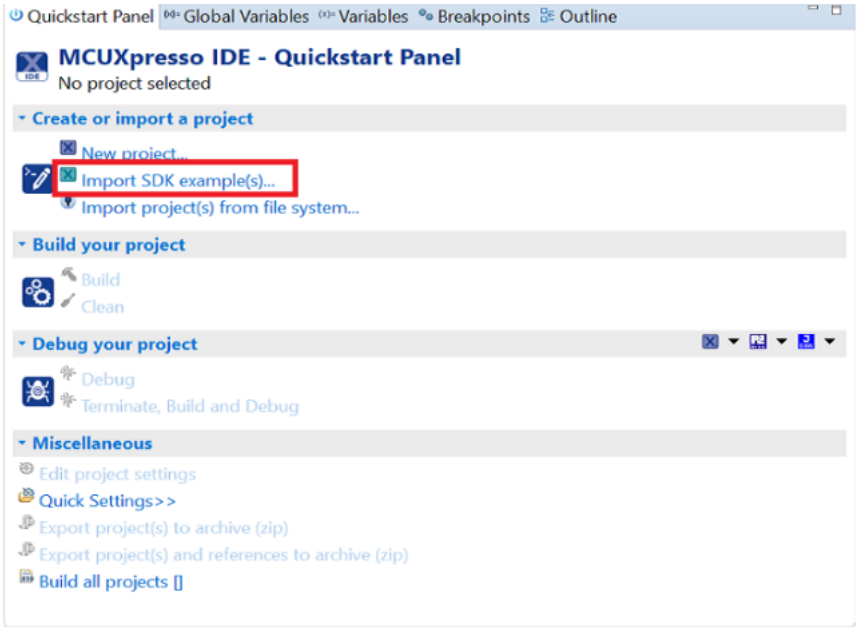
Parent topic:*Run a demo using MCUXpresso IDE*

Build an example application To build an example application, follow these steps.

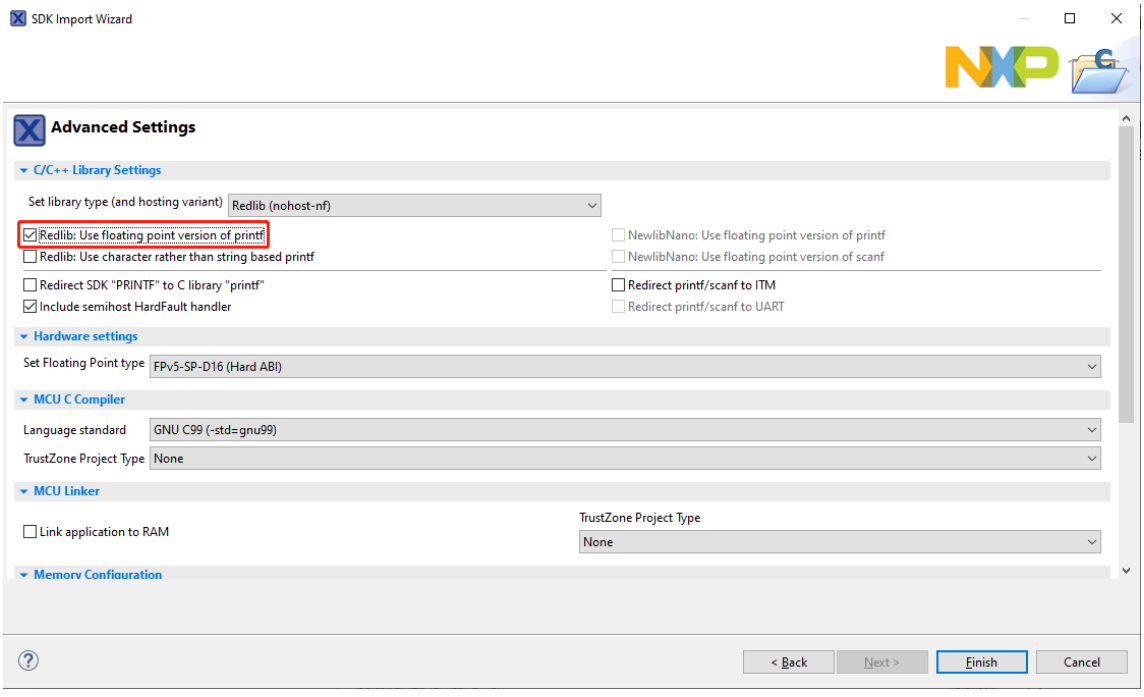
1. Drag and drop the SDK zip file into the **Installed SDKs** view to install an SDK. In the window that appears, click **OK** and wait until the import has finished.



2. On the **Quickstart Panel**, click **Import SDK examples...**.



3. In the window that appears, expand the **MIMXRT500** folder and select **MIMXRT595S**. Then, select **evkmimxrt595** and click **Next**.
4. Expand the demo_apps folder and select hello_world. Then, click **Next**.
5. Ensure **Redlib: Use floating-point version of printf** is selected if the example prints floating-point numbers on the terminal. Otherwise, it is not necessary to select this option. Then, click **Finish**.

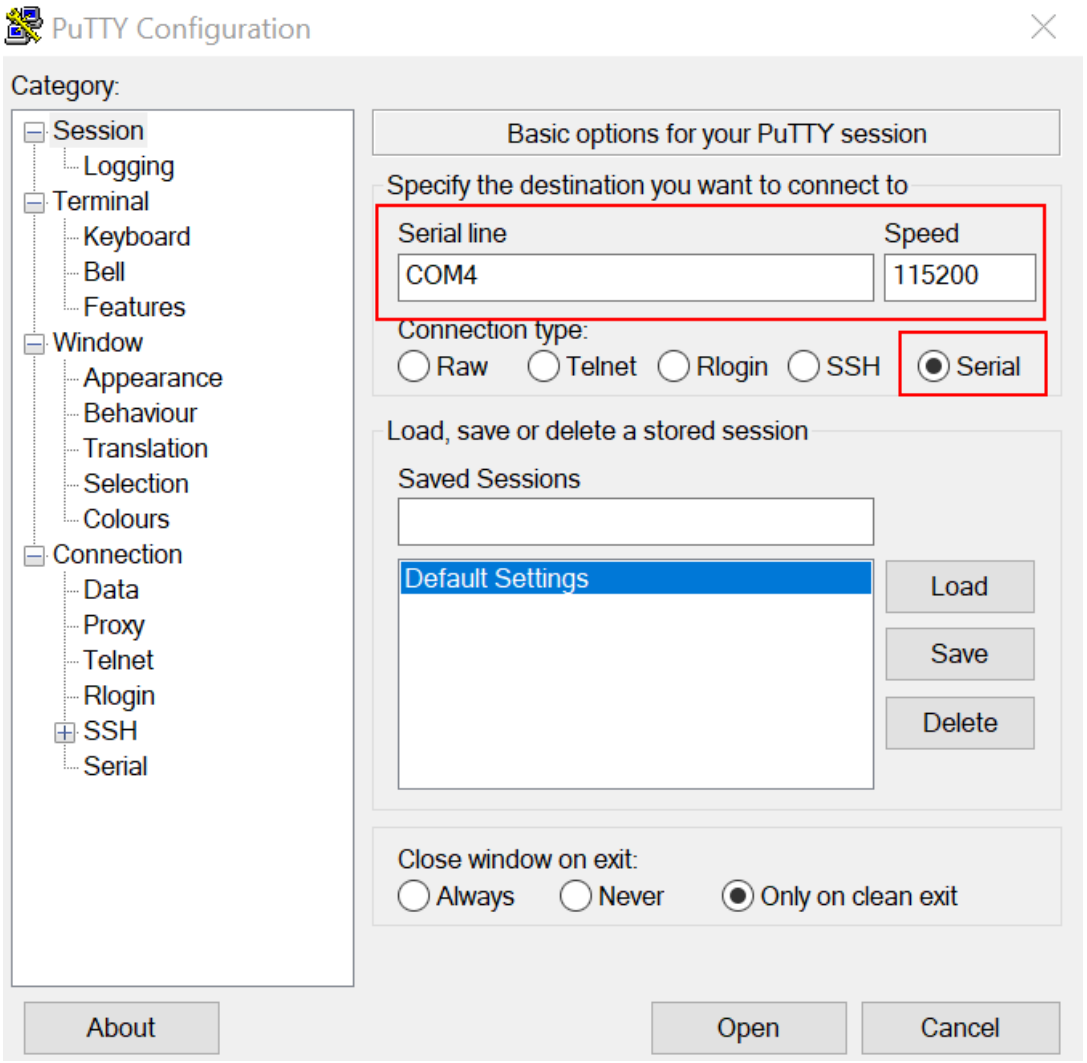


Parent topic:*Run a demo using MCUXpresso IDE*

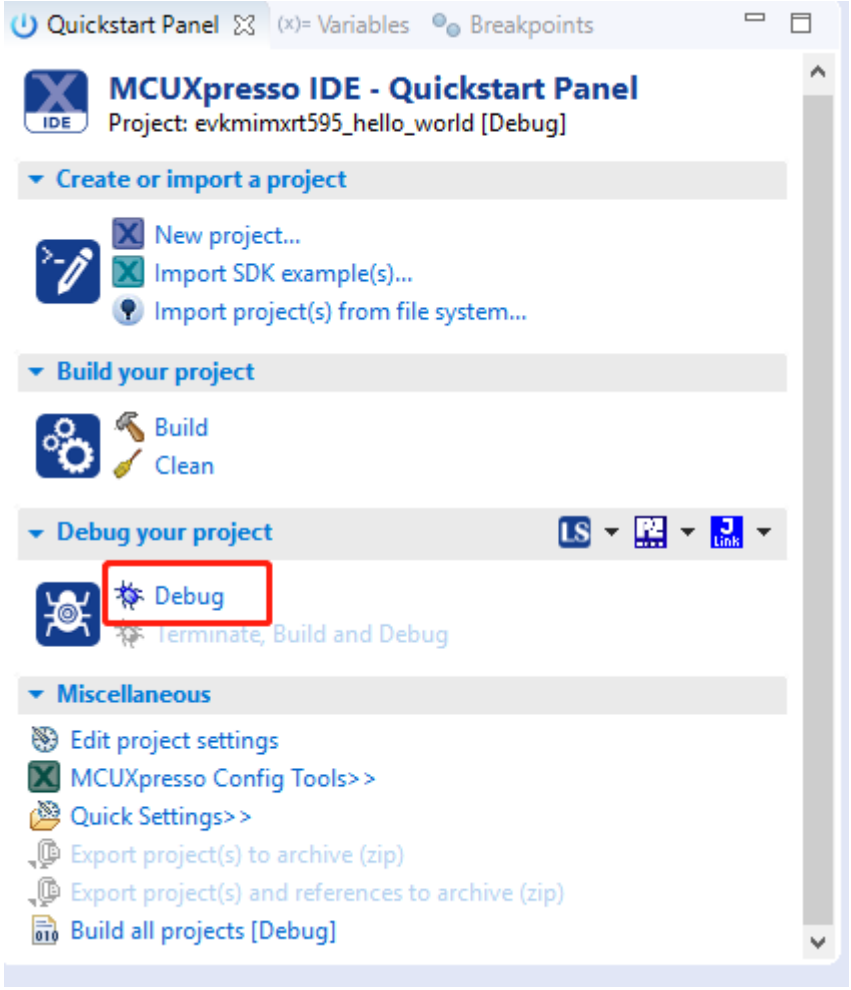
Run an example application For more information on debug probe support in the MCUXpresso IDE, see community.nxp.com.

To download and run the application, perform the following steps:

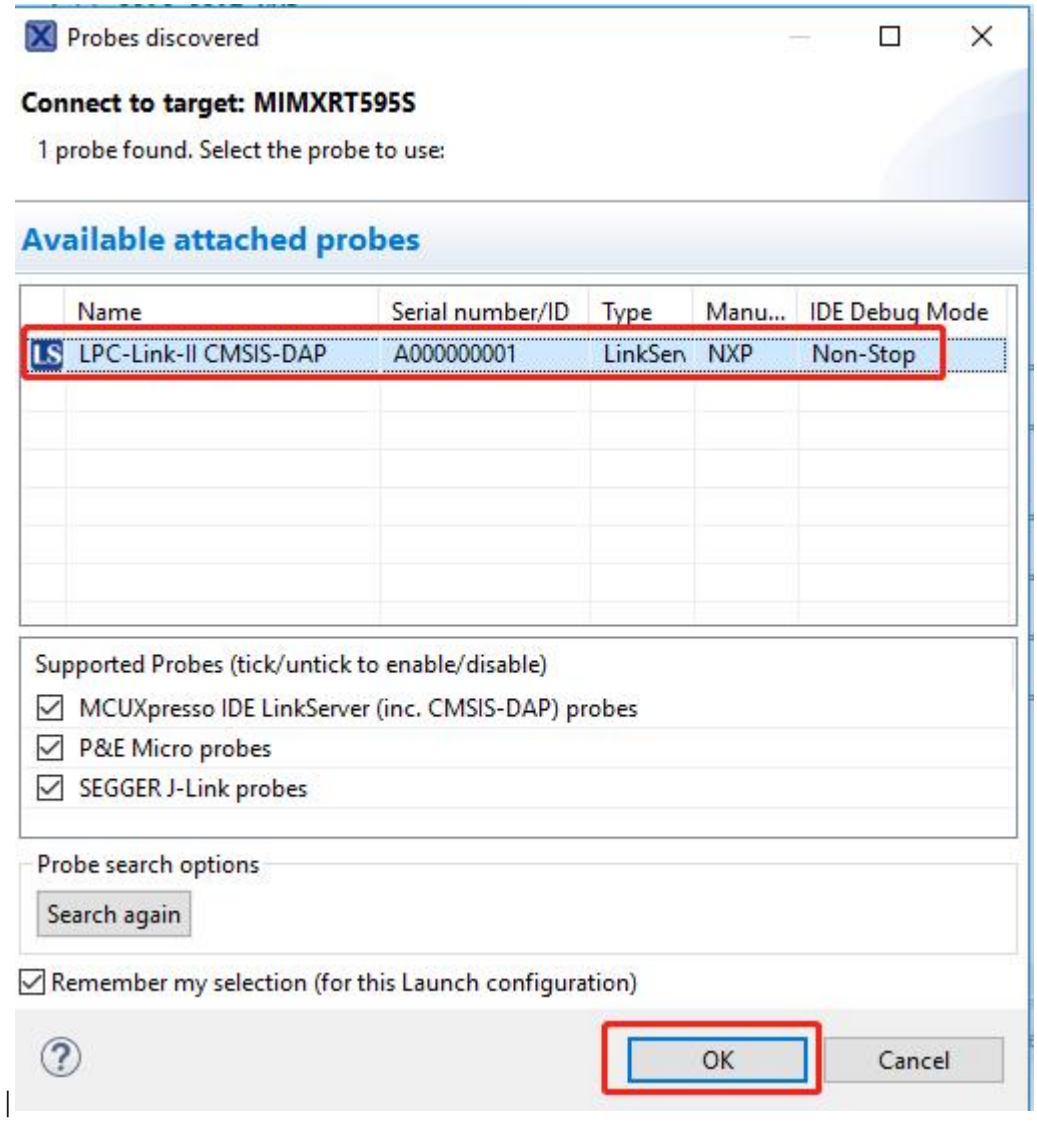
1. See the table in *Default debug interfaces* to determine the debug interface that comes loaded on your specific hardware platform.
   - For boards with CMSIS-DAP/mbed/DAPLink interfaces, visit developer.mbed.org/handbook/Windows-serial-configuration and follow the instructions to install the Windows operating system serial driver. If running on Linux OS, this step is not required.
   - For boards with a P&E Micro interface, see PE micro to download and install the P&E Micro Hardware Interface Drivers package.
2. Connect the development platform to your PC via a USB cable.
3. Open the terminal application on the PC, such as PuTTY or TeraTerm, and connect to the debug serial port number (to determine the COM port number, see *How to determine COM port*). Configure the terminal with these settings:
   1. 115200 or 9600 baud rate, depending on your board (reference BOARD_DEBUG_UART_BAUDRATE variable in board.h file)
   2. No parity
   3. 8 data bits
   4. 1 stop bit



4. On the **Quickstart Panel**, click **Debug** evkmimxrt595_hello_world [Debug] to launch the debug session.

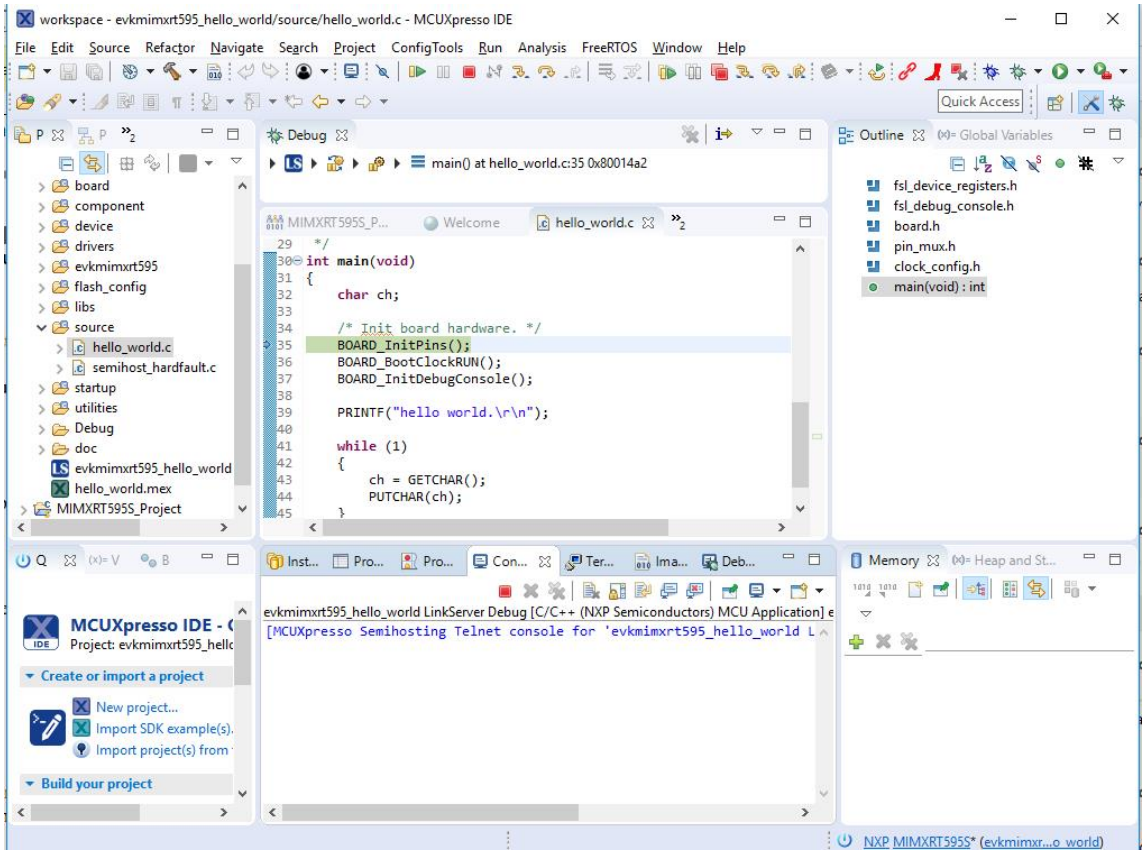


5. The first time you debug a project, the **Debug Emulator Selection** dialog is displayed, showing all supported probes that are attached to your computer. Select the probe through which you want to debug and click **OK**. (For any future debug sessions, the stored probe selection is automatically used, unless the probe cannot be found.)



Note: If the debugging application is running in flash, make sure that the board is set to FlexSPI flash boot mode.

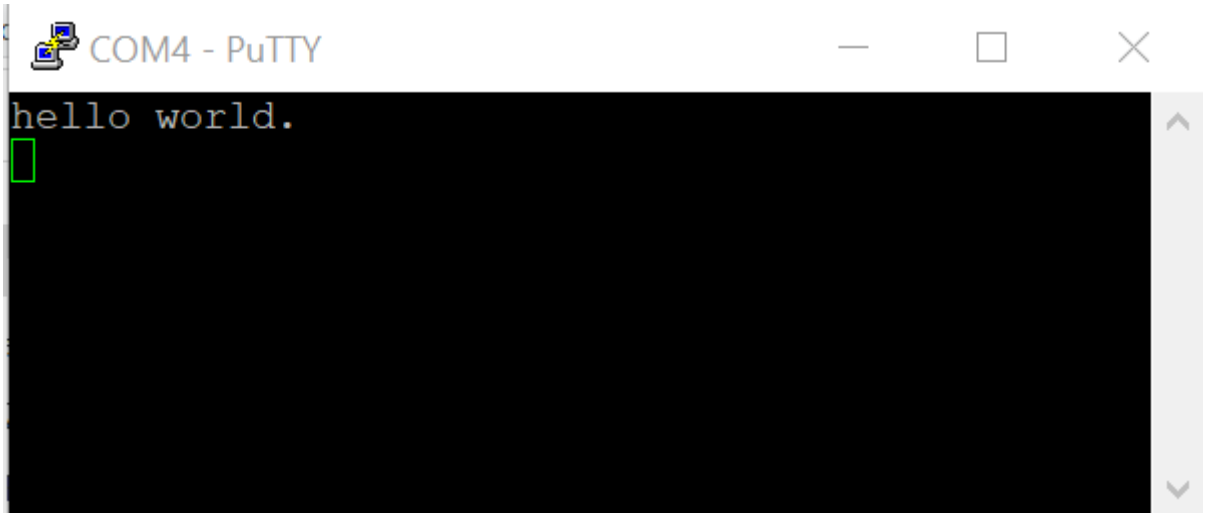
6. The application is downloaded to the target and automatically runs to main().



7. Start the application by clicking **Resume**.



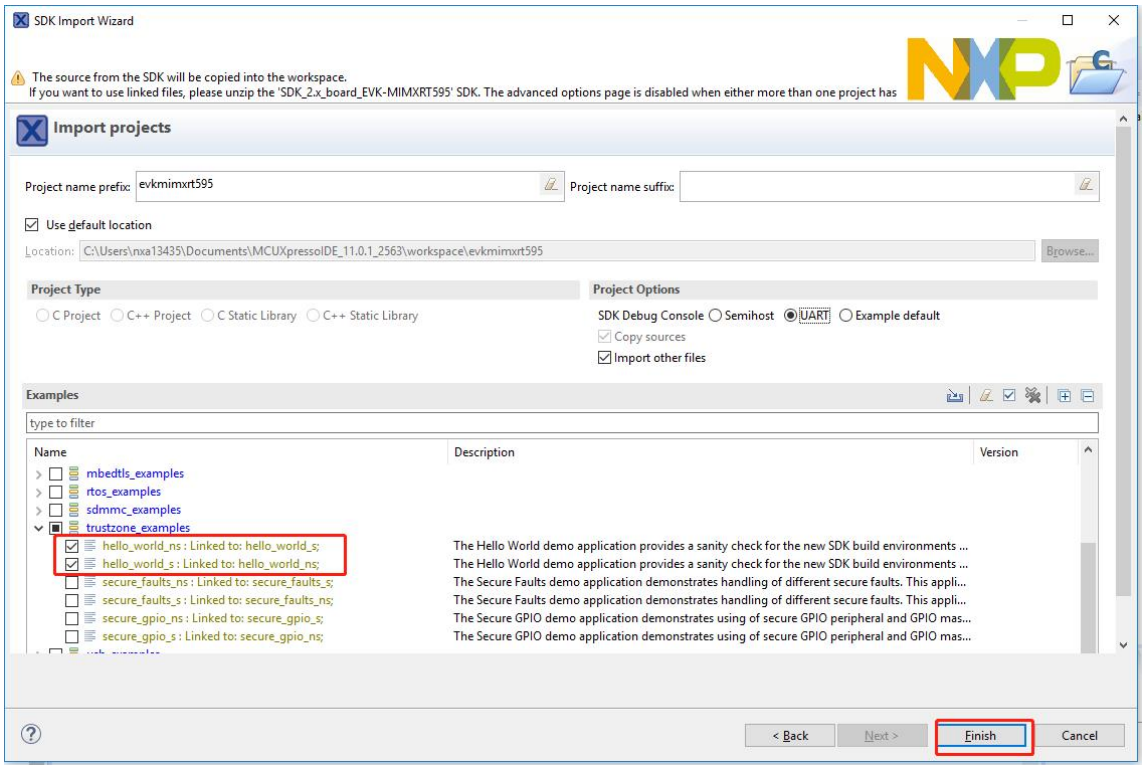
The hello_world application is now running and a banner is displayed on the terminal. If not, check your terminal settings and connections.



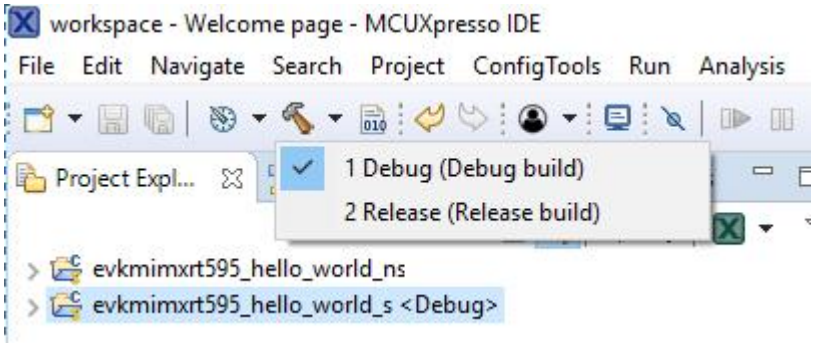
Parent topic:*Run a demo using MCUXpresso IDE*

Build a TrustZone example application This section describes the steps required to configure MCUXpresso IDE to build, run, and debug TrustZone example applications. The TrustZone version of the hello_world example application targeted for the MIMXRT595-EVK hardware platform is used as an example, though these steps can be applied to any TrustZone example application in the MCUXpresso SDK.

1. TrustZone examples are imported into the workspace in a similar way as single core applications. When the SDK zip package for MIMXRT595-EVK is installed and available in the **Installed SDKs** view, click **Import SDK example(s)...** on the Quickstart Panel. In the window that appears, expand the **MIMXRT500** folder and select **MIMXRT595S**. Then, select **evkmimxrt595** and click **Next**.
2. Expand the trustzone_examples/ folder and select hello_world_s. Because TrustZone examples are linked together, the non-secure project is automatically imported with the secure project, and there is no need to select it explicitly. Then, click **Finish**.



3. Now, two projects should be imported into the workspace. To start building the TrustZone application, highlight the evkmimxrt595_hello_world_s project (TrustZone master project) in the Project Explorer. Then, choose the appropriate build target, **Debug** or **Release**, by clicking the downward facing arrow next to the hammer icon, as shown in Figure 2. For this example, select the **Debug** target.



The project starts building after the build target is selected. It is requested to build the application for the secure project first, because the non-secure project must know the secure project since CMSE library when running the linker. It is not possible to finish the non-secure project linker when the secure project since CMSE library is not ready.

Note: When the **Release** build is requested, it is necessary to change the build configuration of both the secure and non-secure application projects first. To do this, select both projects in the Project Explorer view by clicking to select the first project, then using shift-click or control-click to select the second project. Right click in the Project Explorer view to display the context-sensitive menu and select **Build Configurations** \> **Set Active** \>**Release**. This is also possible by using the menu item of **Project** \> **Build Configuration** \>**Set Active** \>**Release**. After switching to the **Release** build configuration. Build the application for the secure project first.

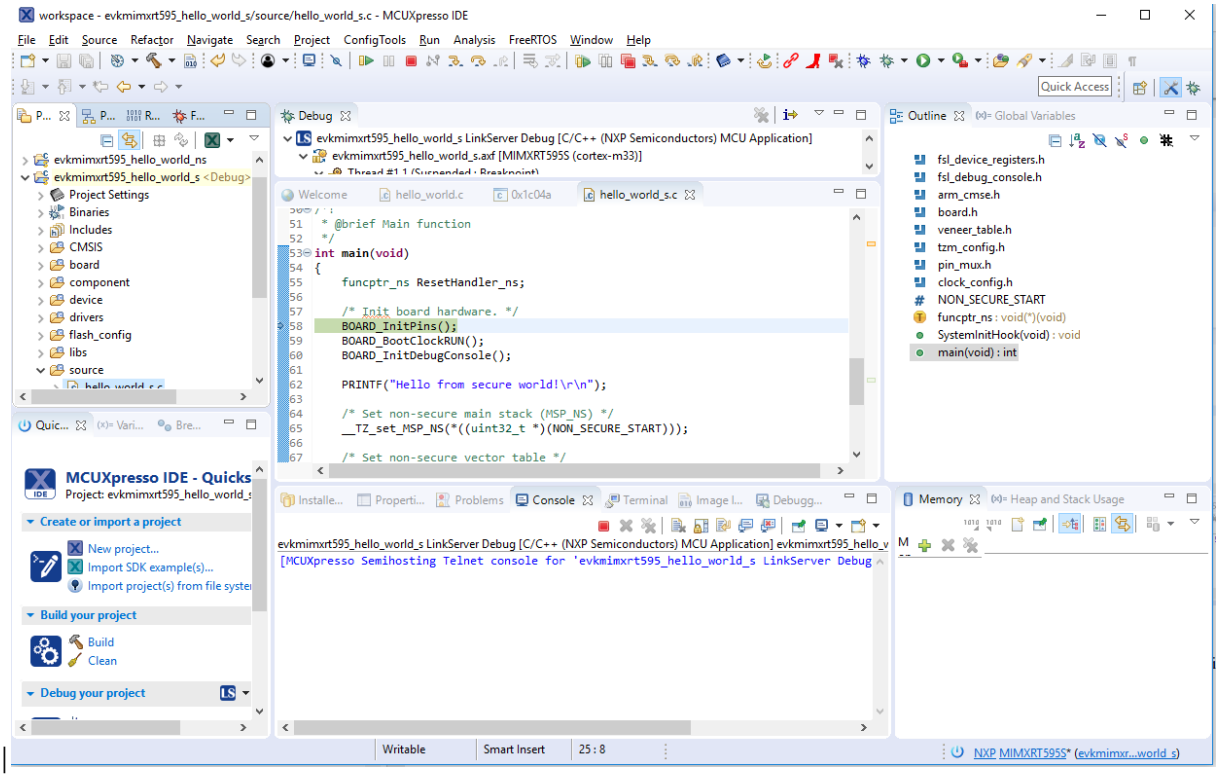
|

|

Parent topic:*Run a demo using MCUXpresso IDE*

Run a TrustZone example application To download and run the application, perform all steps as described in Run an example application. These steps are common for single core, and TrustZone applications, ensuring evkmimxrt595_hello_world_s is selected for debugging.

In the Quickstart Panel, click **Debug** to launch the second debug session.



|

Now, the TrustZone sessions should be opened. Click **Resume**. The hello_world TrustZone application then starts running, and the secure application starts the non-secure application during runtime.

Parent topic:*Run a demo using MCUXpresso IDE*

Run a demo application using IAR

This section describes the steps required to build, run, and debug example applications provided in the MCUXpresso SDK.

Note: IAR Embedded Workbench for Arm version 8.40.2 is used in the following example, and the IAR toolchain should correspond to the latest supported version, as described in the *MCUXpresso SDK Release Notes* (document ID: MCUXSDKRN).

Build an example application Do the following steps to build the hello_world example application.

1. Open the desired demo application workspace. Most example application workspace files can be located using the following path:

   ```
   <install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/<example_type>/<application_name>/iar
   ```

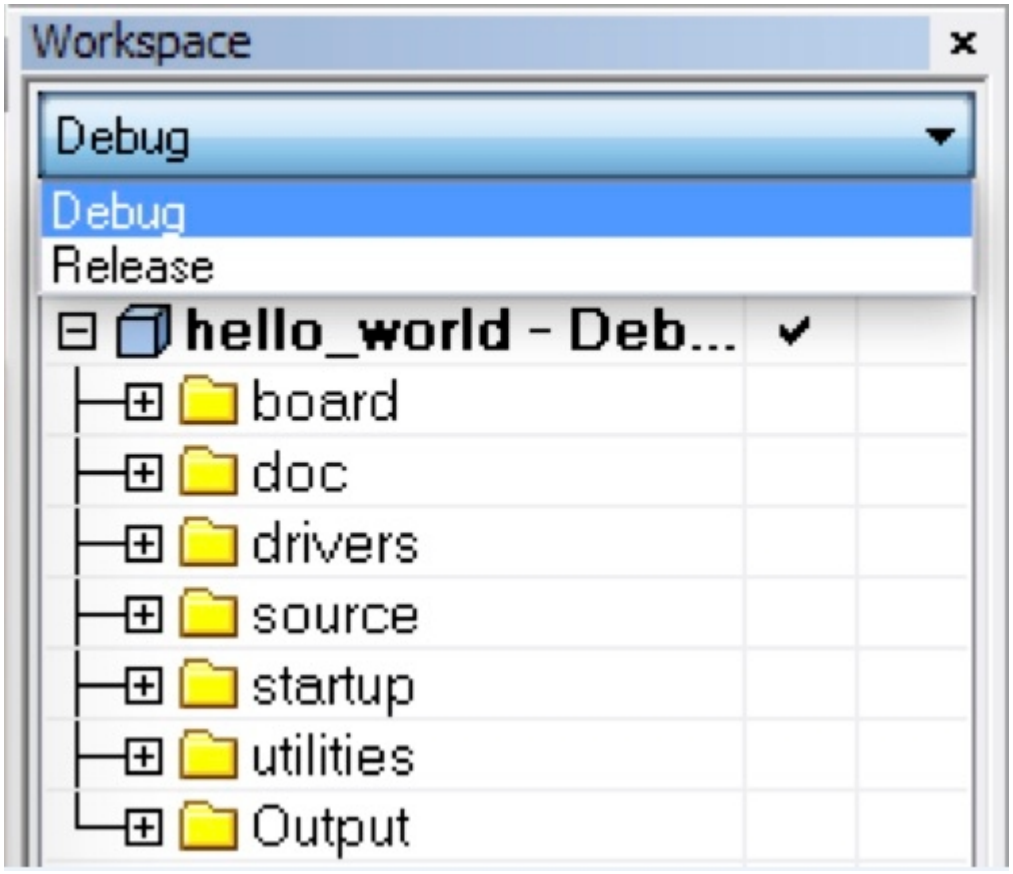
   Using the MIMXRT595-EVK hardware platform as an example, the hello_world workspace is located in:

   ```
   <install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt595/demo_apps/hello_world/iar/hello_world.eww
   ```

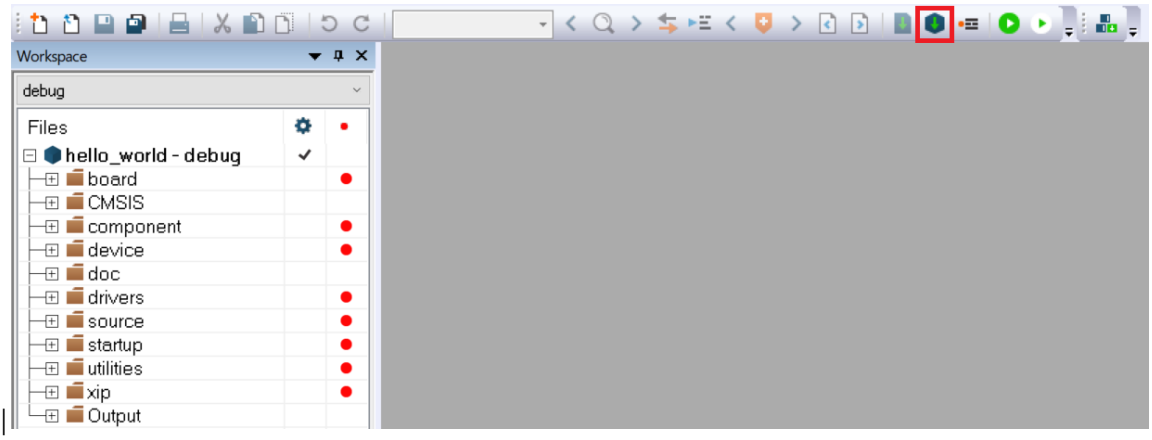
   Other example applications may have additional folders in their path.

2. Select the desired build target from the drop-down menu.

   For this example, select **hello_world** – **debug**.



3. To build the demo application, click **Make**, highlighted in red in Figure 2.

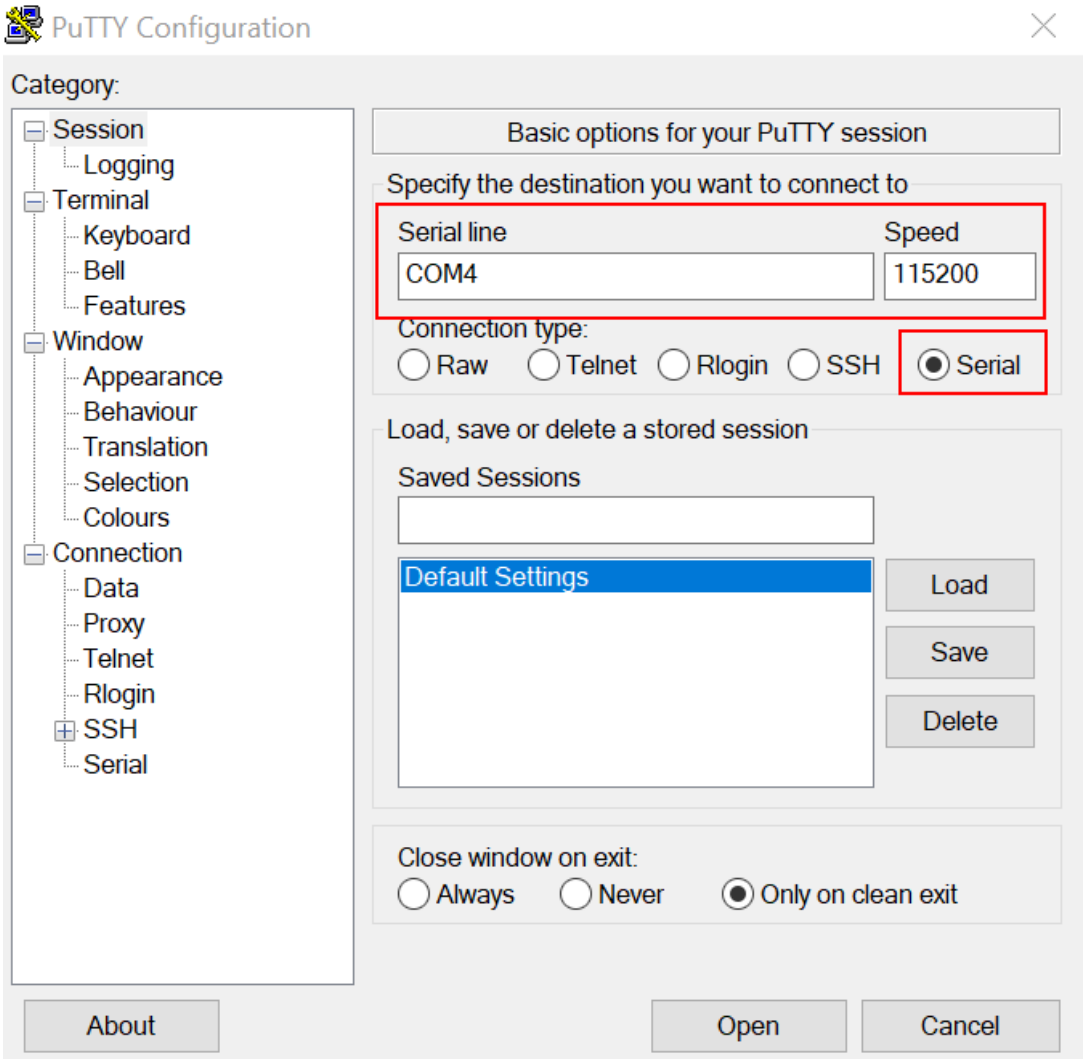


4. The build completes without errors.

Parent topic:*Run a demo application using IAR*

Run an example application To download and run the application, perform these steps:

1. See the table in *Default debug interfaces* to determine the debug interface that comes loaded on your specific hardware platform.
   - For boards with P&E Micro interfaces, visit www.pemicro.com/support/downloads_find.cfm and download the P&E Micro Hardware Interface Drivers package.
2. Connect the development platform to your PC via USB cable.
3. Open the terminal application on the PC, such as PuTTY or TeraTerm, and connect to the debug COM port (to determine the COM port number, see *How to determine COM port*). Configure the terminal with these settings:
   1. 115200 or 9600 baud rate, depending on your board (reference BOARD_DEBUG_UART_BAUDRATE variable in the board.h file)
   2. No parity
   3. 8 data bits



4. 1 stop bit |

|

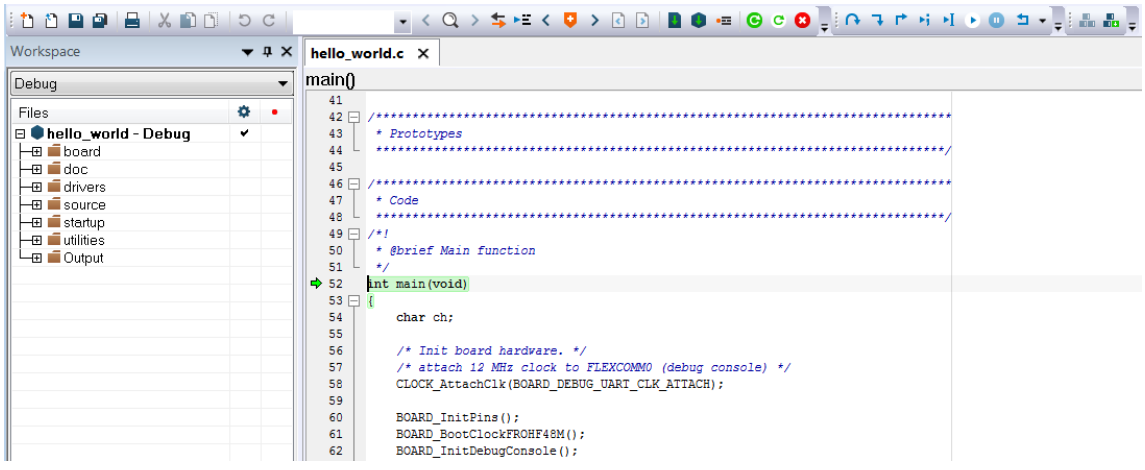
4. In IAR, click the **Download and Debug** button to download the application to the target.



|

|

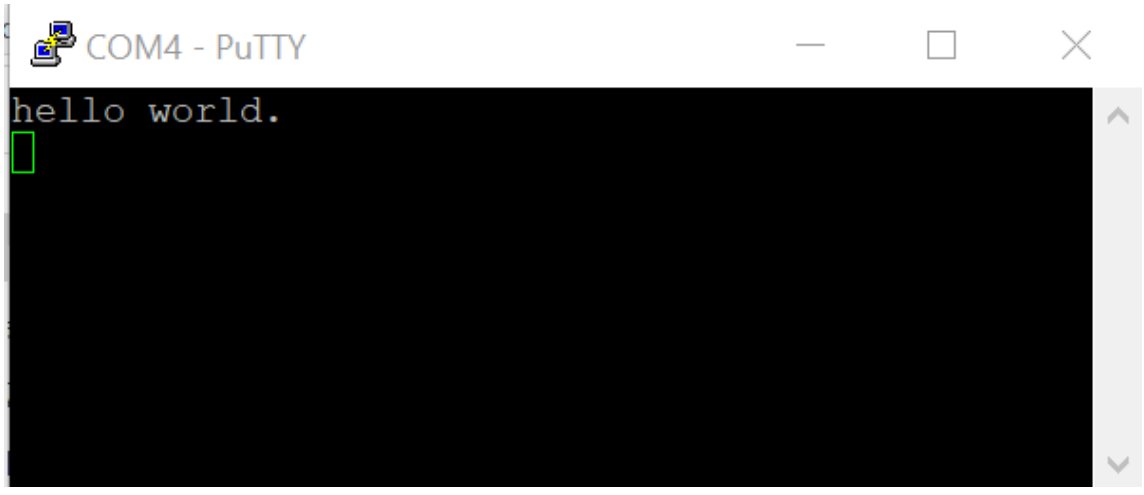
5. The application is then downloaded to the target and automatically runs to the main() function.



6. Run the code by clicking the **Go** button.



7. The hello_world application is now running and a banner is displayed on the terminal. If it does not appear, check your terminal settings and connections.



Parent topic:*Run a demo application using IAR*

Build a TrustZone example application This section describes the particular steps that must be done in order to build and run a TrustZone application. The demo applications workspace files are located in this folder:

```
<install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/trustzone_examples/<application_name>/[<core_type>]/iar/
↪<application_name>_ns/iar
```

```
<install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/trustzone_examples/<application_name>/[<core_type>]/iar/
↪<application_name>_s/iar
```

Begin with a simple TrustZone version of the Hello World application. The TrustZone Hello World IAR workspaces are located in this folder:

```
<install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt595/trustzone_examples/hello_world/hello_world_ns/iar/hello_world_ns.
↪eww
```

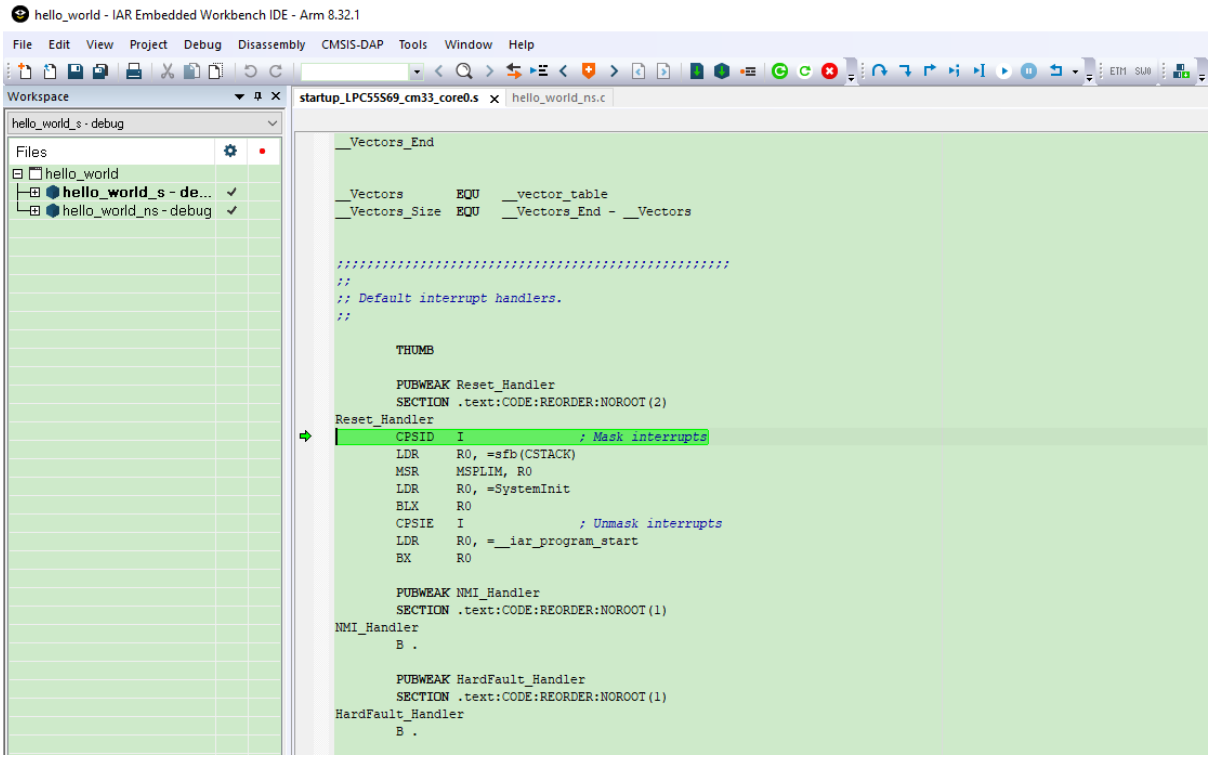
```
<install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt595/trustzone_examples/hello_world/hello_world_s/iar/hello_world_s.
↪eww
```

```
<install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt595/trustzone_examples/hello_world/hello_world_s/iar/hello_world.eww
```

This project hello_world.eww contains both secure and non-secure projects in one workspace and it allows the user to easily transition from one project to another. Build both applications separately by clicking **Make**. It is requested to build the application for the secure project first, because the non-secure project must know the secure project, since the CMSE library is running the linker. It is not possible to finish the non-secure project linker with the secure project since CMSE library is not ready.

Parent topic:*Run a demo application using IAR*

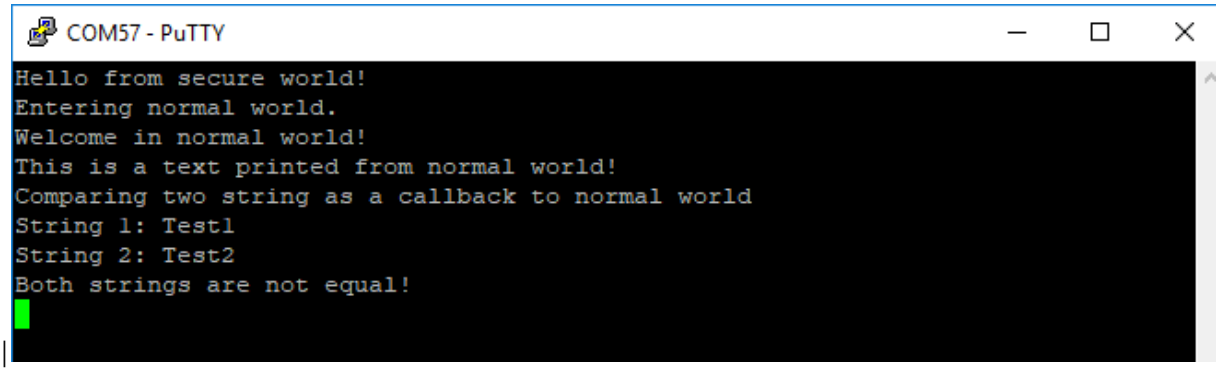
Run a TrustZone example application The secure project is configured to download both secure and non-secure output files, so debugging can be fully managed from the secure project. To download and run the TrustZone application, switch to the secure application project and perform steps 1 – 4 as described in *Section 4.2, Run an example application*. These steps are common for both single core, and TrustZone applications in IAR. After clicking **Download and Debug**, both the secure and non-secure images are loaded into the device memory, and the secure application is executed. It stops at the Rest_Hander function.



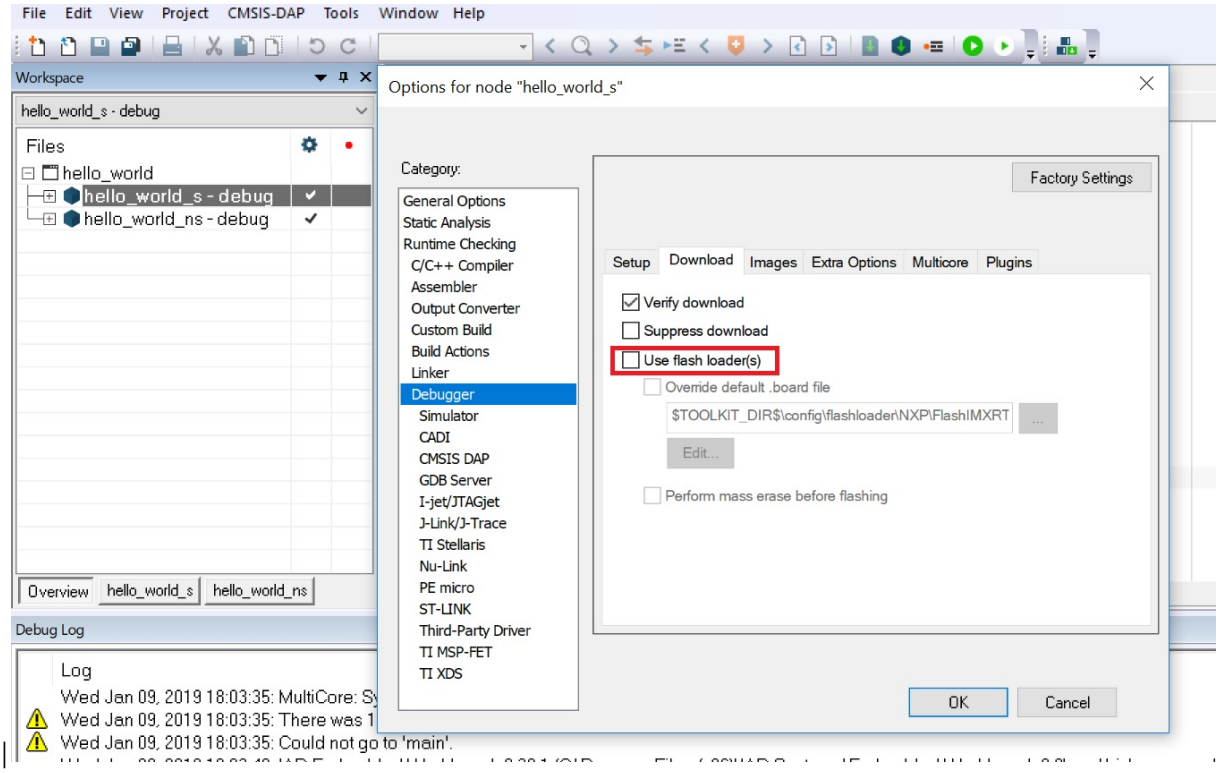
Run the code by clicking **Go** to start the application.



The TrustZone hello_world application is now running and a banner is displayed on the terminal. If this is not true, check your terminal settings and connections.



Note: If the application is running in RAM (debug/release build target), in **Options**>**Debugger** > **Download** tab, disable **Use flash loader(s)**. This can avoid the _ns download issue on i.MXRT500.



Parent topic:*Run a demo application using IAR*

IAR RAM debugging notes In the SDK examples, there are many build configurations. For example, debug, release, flash_debug, and flash_release. The debug/release configuration demonstrates the application running in RAM, while flash_debug/flash_release runs in the flash (XIP).

XIP debugging is clean with the "**boot from flash**" setting on the board because the debugging has the same sequence as a normal boot.

The debugging steps are as follows:

1. The debugger downloads the image to the flash.
2. The debugger resets the device and boots from ROM.
3. The debugger halts the device and waits for the command from the user.

However, with RAM debugging with the *boot from flash* setting on the board, the situation is complicated.

1. The debugger downloads the image to the RAM.
2. The debugger resets the device and boots it from ROM.

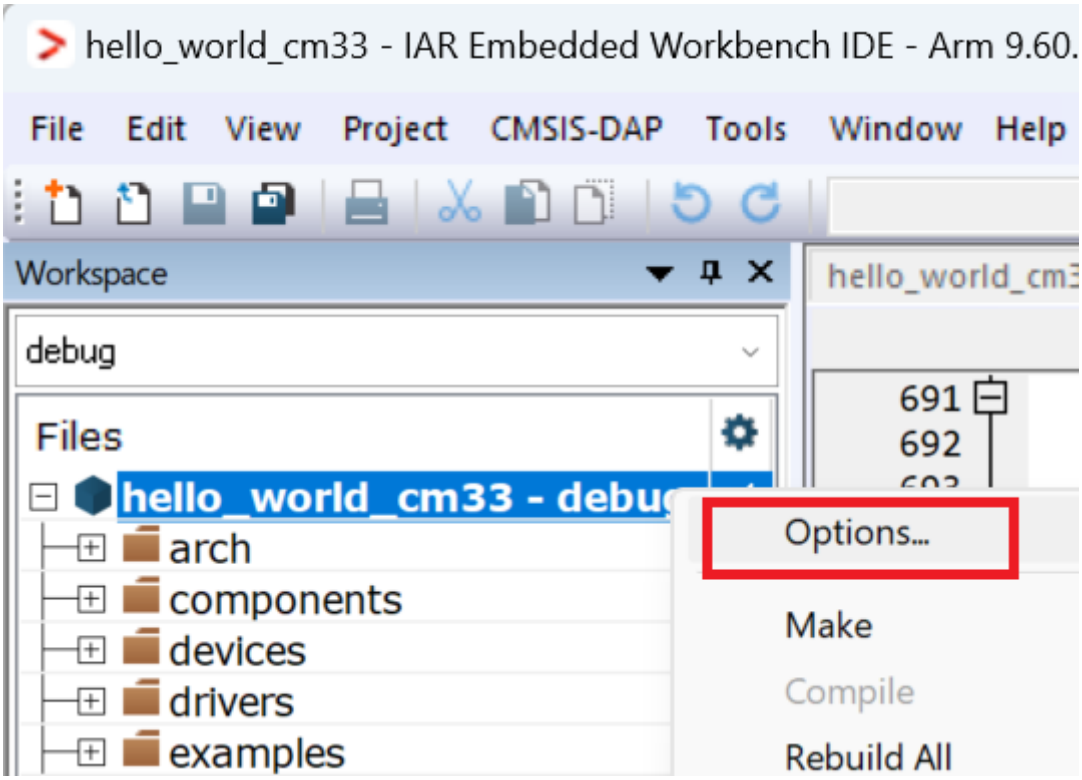
   Note: The image downloaded for debugging and the image running from the flash are different. The images are different because the image in flash might be written by the previous debugging.
3. The debugger halts the device and sets the PC register value to the entry address of the downloaded image.

The problem here is that step 2 might overwrite the RAM written in step 1. The other issue is that the hardware status is undetermined when PC is set to the start of the RAM application.

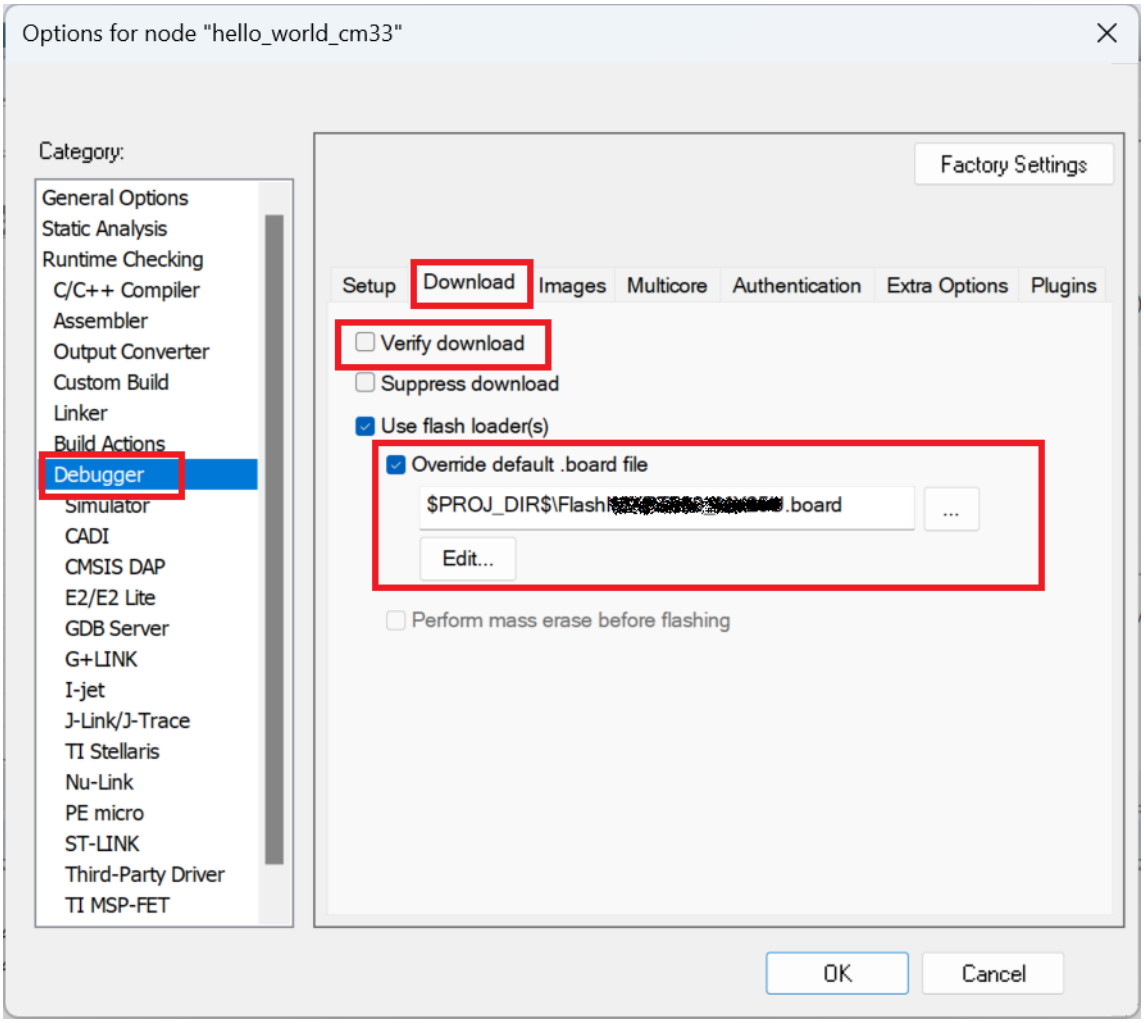
To avoid the RAM debugging issue, MCUX IDE/armgcc/MDK provides a plain load feature. To get a clean debugging status, the RAM image is downloaded to the flash.

IAR needs a special setting to achieve the plain load feature as follows:

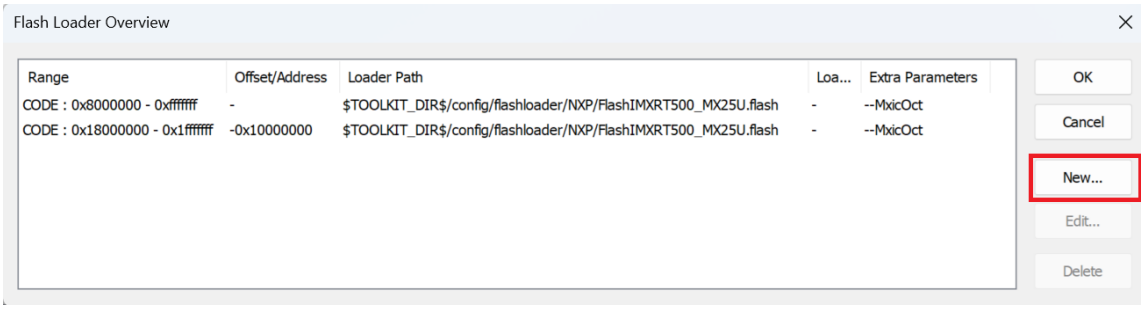
1. Right-click the project and select **Options**.



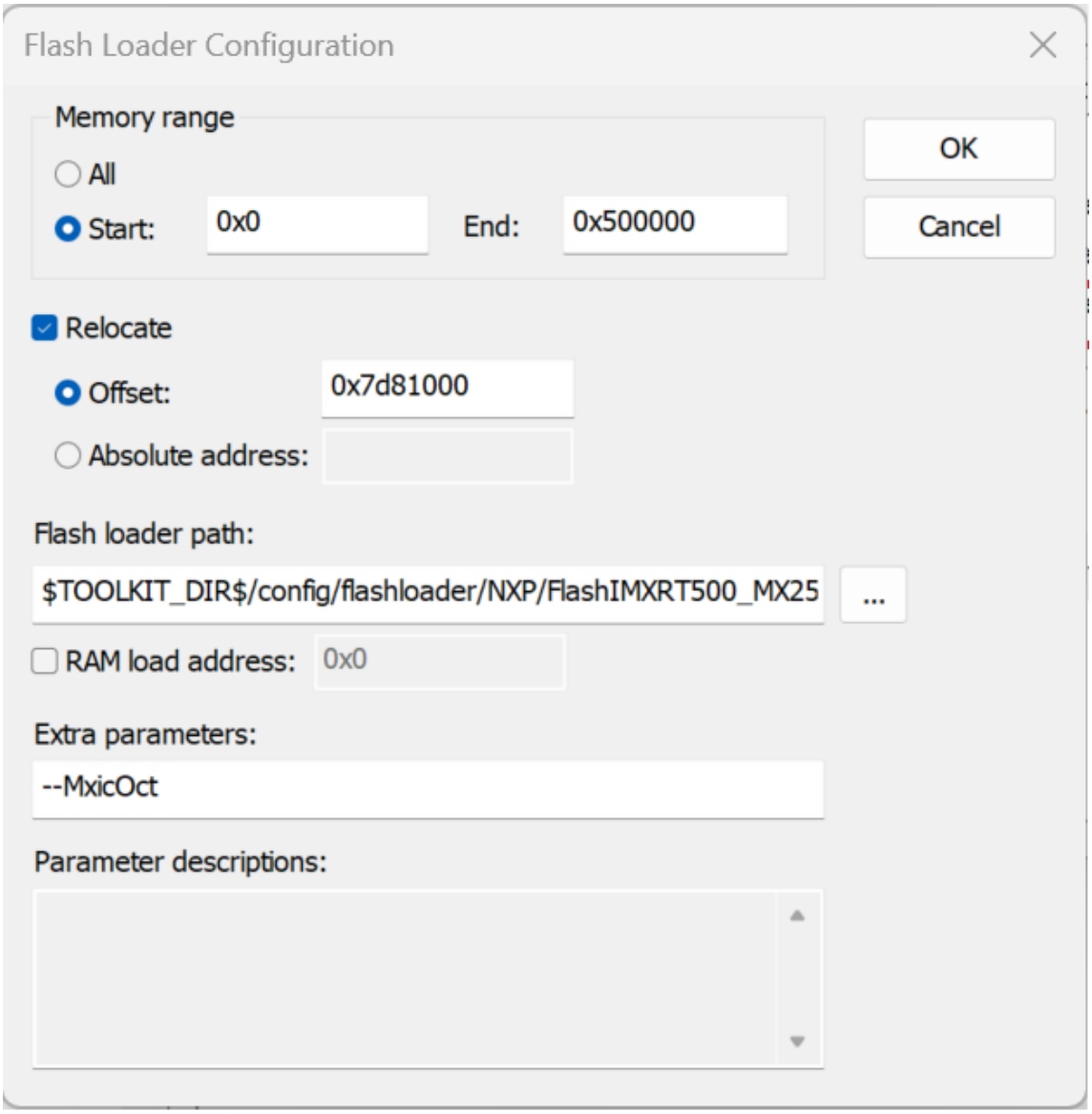
2. Select **Debugger** > **Download** in the **Options for node <*project_name*>** dialog box.
3. Clear the **Verify download** checkbox because the download address is different from the real address.
4. Select the **Override default.board file** option.
5. Copy the default *.board file to the IAR workspace folder.
6. Change the *.board file path.
7. Click the **Edit** button.



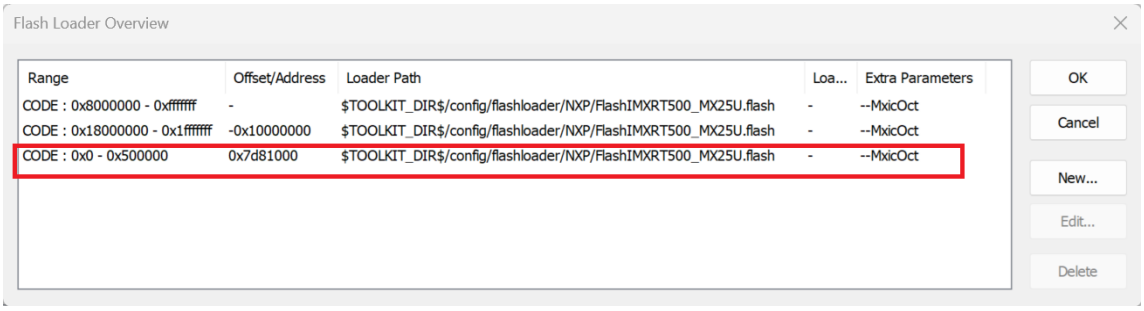
8. Create a range for RAM.



9. Set the memory range, relocate offset, and flashloader path.



The new RAM range appears in the flashloader overview.



10. Follow the instructions in Run an example application and now it is safe to debug the RAM application. As a result, the downloaded RAM application can also boot on reset.

Parent topic:*Run a demo application using IAR*

Run a demo using Arm GCC

This section describes the steps to configure the command-line Arm GCC tools to build, run, and debug demo applications and necessary driver libraries provided in the MCUXpresso SDK. The

hello_world demo application is targeted for the MIMXRT595-EVK hardware platform which is used as an example.

Note: ARMGCC version 7-2018-q2 is used as an example in this document. The latest GCC version for this package is as described in the *MCUXpresso SDK Release Notes* (document MCUXSDKMIMXRT5XXRN).

Set up toolchain This section contains the steps to install the necessary components required to build and run an MCUXpresso SDK demo application with the Arm GCC toolchain, as supported by the MCUXpresso SDK. There are many ways to use Arm GCC tools, but this example focuses on a Windows operating system environment.

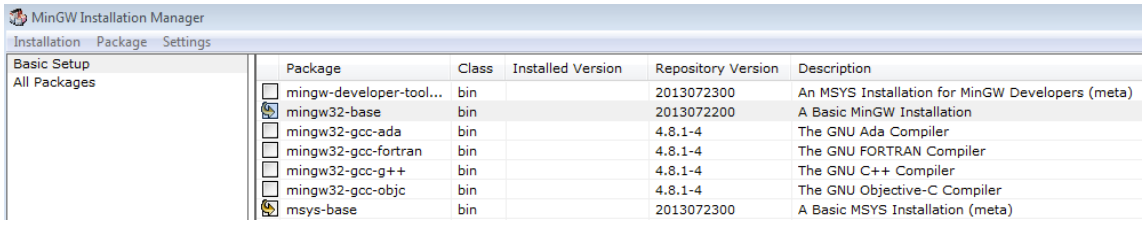
Install GCC Arm Embedded tool chain Download and run the installer from GNU Arm Embedded Toolchain. This is the actual toolset (in other words, compiler, linker, and so on). The GCC toolchain should correspond to the latest supported version, as described in *MCUXpresso SDK Release Notes*.

Parent topic: Set up toolchain

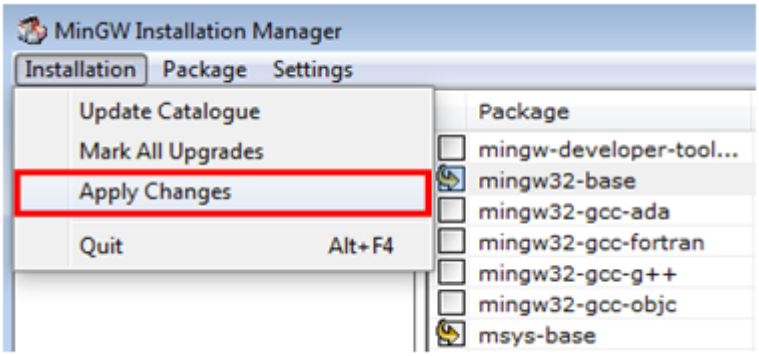
Install MinGW (only required on Windows OS) The Minimalist GNU for Windows (MinGW) development tools provide a set of tools that are not dependent on third-party C-Runtime DLLs (such as Cygwin). The build environment used by the MCUXpresso SDK does not use the MinGW build tools, but does leverage the base install of both MinGW and MSYS. MSYS provides a basic shell with a Unix-like interface and tools.

1. Download the latest MinGW mingw-get-setup installer from MinGW.
2. Run the installer. The recommended installation path is C:\MinGW, however, you may install to any location.

   Note: The installation path cannot contain any spaces.
3. Ensure that the **mingw32-base** and **msys-base** are selected under **Basic Setup**.



4. In the **Installation** menu, click **Apply Changes** and follow the remaining instructions to complete the installation.



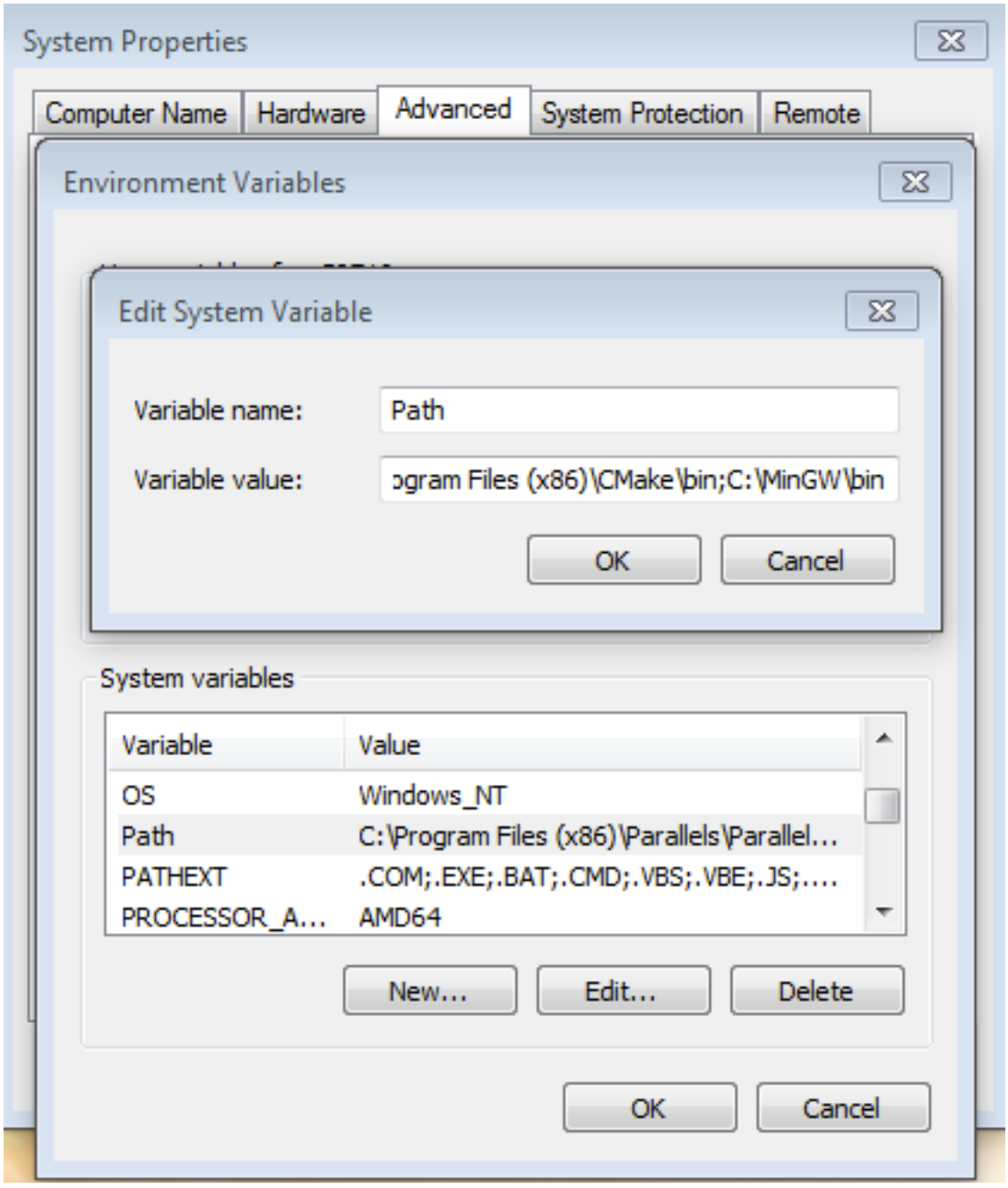
|

5. Add the appropriate item to the Windows operating system path environment variable. It can be found under **Control Panel->System and Security->System->Advanced System Settings** in the **Environment Variables...** section. The path is:

```
<mingw_install_dir>\bin
```

Assuming the default installation path, C:\MinGW, an example is shown below. If the path is not set correctly, the toolchain will not work.

Note: If you have C:\MinGW\msys\x.x\bin in your PATH variable (as required by Kinetis SDK 1.0.0), remove it to ensure that the new GCC build system works correctly.



|

|

Parent topic: Set up toolchain

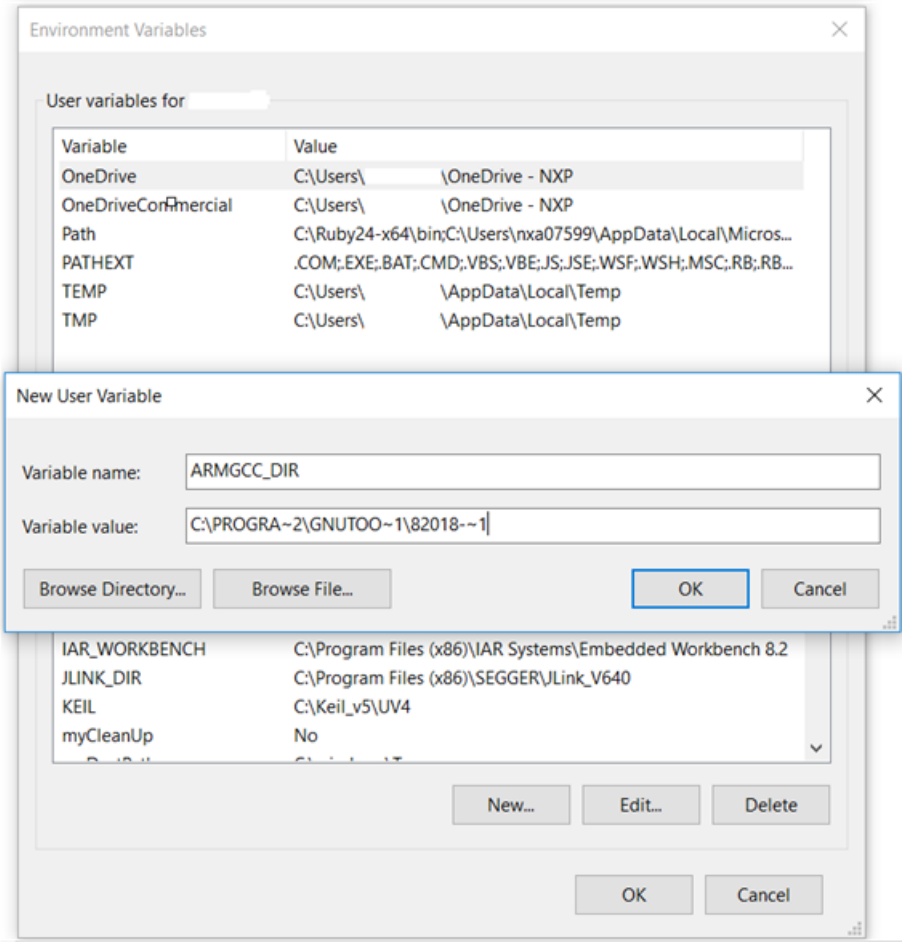
Add a new system environment variable for ARMGCC_DIR Create a new *system* environment variable and name it as ARMGCC_DIR. The value of this variable should point to the Arm GCC Embedded tool chain installation path. For this example, the path is:

See the installation folder of the GNU Arm GCC Embedded tools for the exact pathname of your installation.

Short path should be used for path setting, you could convert the path to short path by running command `for %I in (.) do echo %~sI` in above path.

```
C:\Program Files (x86)\GNU Tools Arm Embedded\8 2018-q4-major>for %I in (.) do echo %~sI

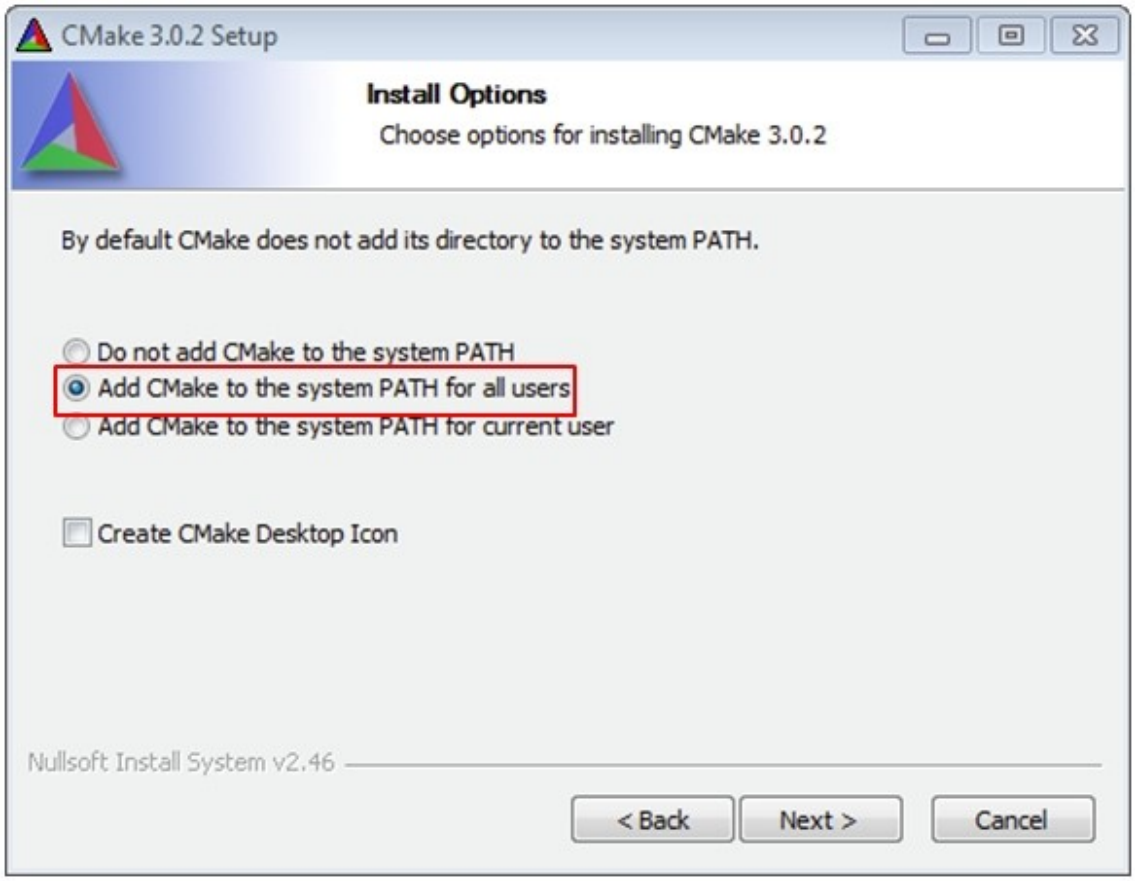
C:\Program Files (x86)\GNU Tools Arm Embedded\8 2018-q4-major>echo C:\PROGRA~2\GNUTOO~1\82018-~1
C:\PROGRA~2\GNUTOO~1\82018-~1
```



Parent topic: Set up toolchain

Install CMake

1. Download CMake 3.0.x from www.cmake.org/cmake/resources/software.html.
2. Install CMake, ensuring that the option **Add CMake to system PATH** is selected when installing. The user chooses to select whether it is installed into the PATH for all users or just the current user. In this example, it is installed for all users.



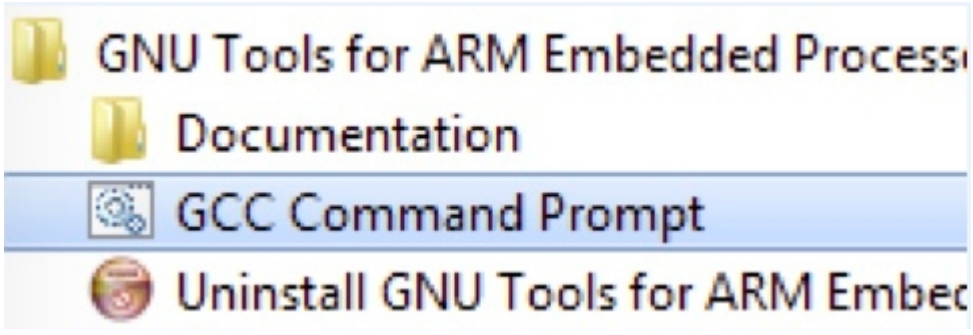
3. Follow the remaining instructions of the installer.
4. You may need to reboot your system for the PATH changes to take effect.
5. Make sure `sh.exe` is not in the Environment Variable PATH. This is a limitation of `mingw32-make`.

Parent topic: Set up toolchain

Parent topic:*Run a demo using Arm GCC*

Build an example application To build an example application, follow these steps.

1. Open a GCC Arm Embedded tool chain command window. To launch the window, from the Windows operating system **Start** menu, go to **Programs** >**GNU Tools Arm Embedded <version>** and select **GCC Command Prompt**.



2. Change the directory to the example application project directory which has a path similar to the following:

   ```
   <install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/<example_type>/<application_name>/armgcc
   ```

   For this example, the exact path is:

   ```
   <install_dir>/examples/evkmimxrt595/demo_apps/hello_world/armgcc
   ```

   Note: To change directories, use the cd command.

3. Type **build_debug.bat** on the command line or double click on **build_debug.bat** file in Windows Explorer to build it. The output is as shown in Figure 2.



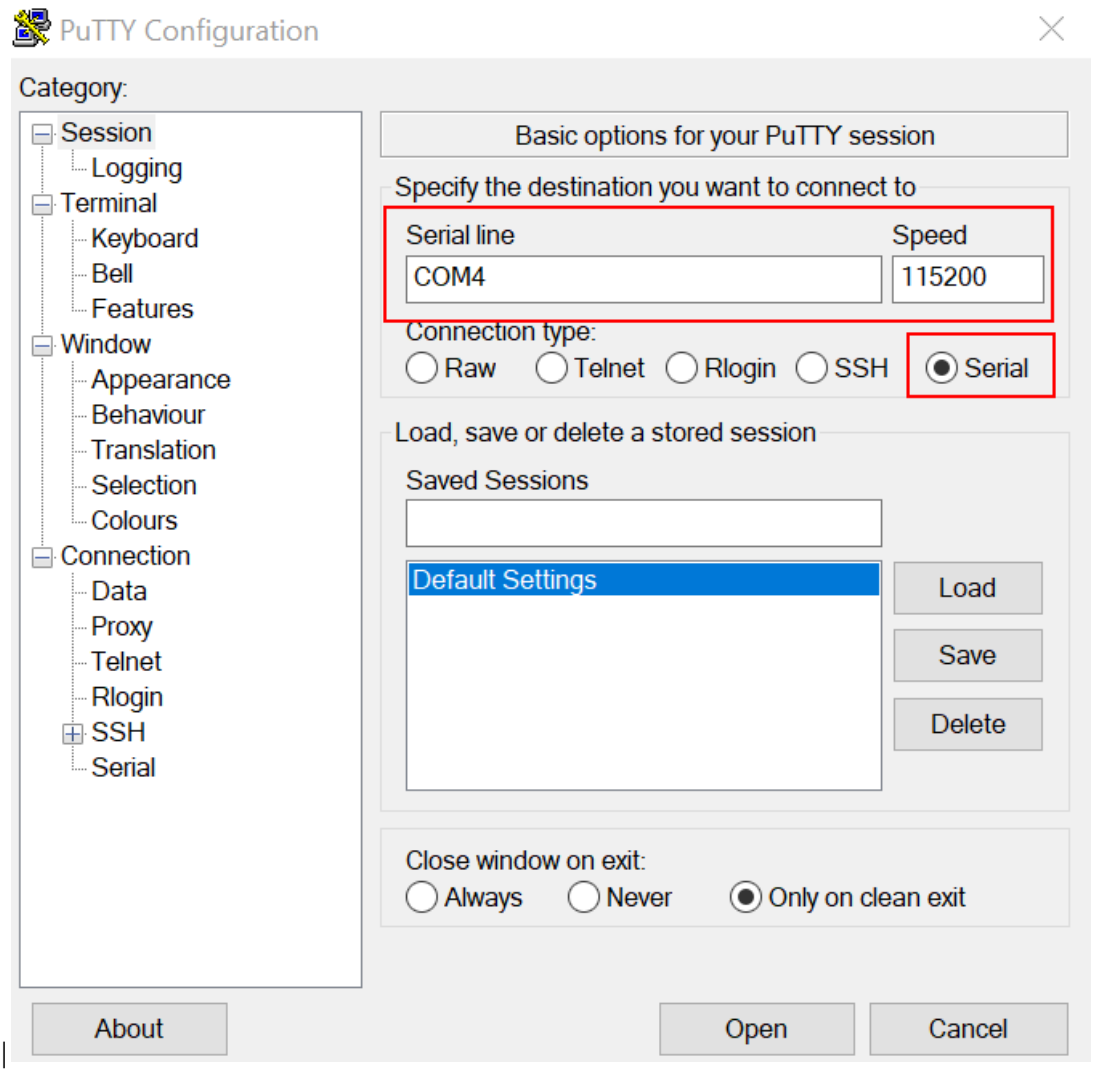
Parent topic:*Run a demo using Arm GCC*

Run an example application This section describes steps to run a demo application using J-Link GDB Server application. To perform this exercise, make sure that either:

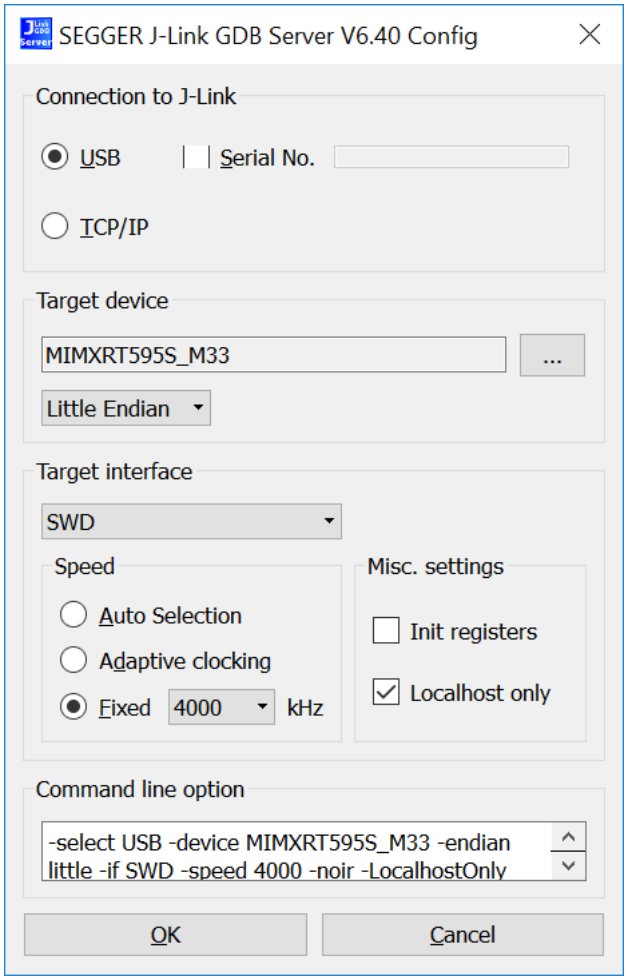
- The OpenSDA interface on your board is programmed with the J-Link OpenSDA firmware. To determine if your board supports OpenSDA, see *Default debug interfaces*. For instructions on reprogramming the OpenSDA interface, see *Updating debugger firmware*. If your board does not support OpenSDA, a standalone J-Link pod is required.
- You have a standalone J-Link pod that is connected to the debug interface of your board. Note that some hardware platforms require hardware modification in order to function correctly with an external debug interface.

After the J-Link interface is configured and connected, follow these steps to download and run the demo applications:

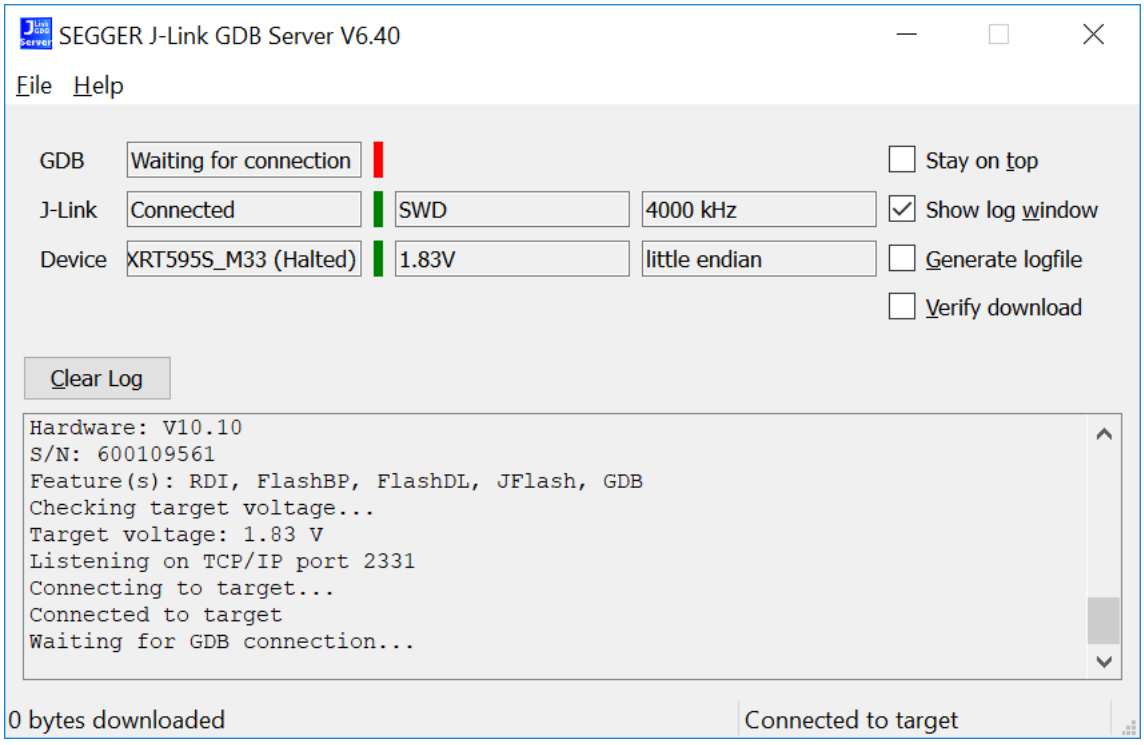
1. Connect the development platform to your PC via USB cable between the OpenSDA USB connector and the PC USB connector. If using a standalone J-Link debug pod, also connect it to the SWD/JTAG connector of the board.
2. Open the terminal application on the PC, such as PuTTY or TeraTerm, and connect to the debug serial port number (to determine the COM port number, see *How to determine COM port*). Configure the terminal with these settings:
   1. 115200 or 9600 baud rate, depending on your board (reference BOARD_DEBUG_UART_BAUDRATE variable in the board.h file)
   2. No parity
   3. 8 data bits
   4. 1 stop bit



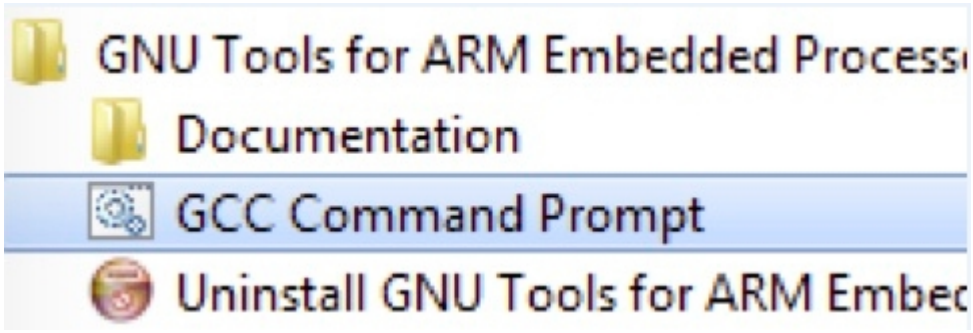
3. Open the J-Link GDB Server application. Assuming the J-Link software is installed, the application can be launched by going to the Windows operating system **Start** menu and selecting **Programs->SEGGER->J-Link <version> J-Link GDB Server**.
4. Modify the settings as shown in Figure 2. The target device selection chosen for this example is **MIMXRT595_M33**.



5. After it is connected, the screen should be as shown in Figure 3.



6. If not already running, open a GCC Arm Embedded tool chain command window. To launch the window, from the **Start** menu of the Windows operating system, go to **Programs**->**GNU Tools Arm Embedded <version>** and select **GCC Command Prompt**.



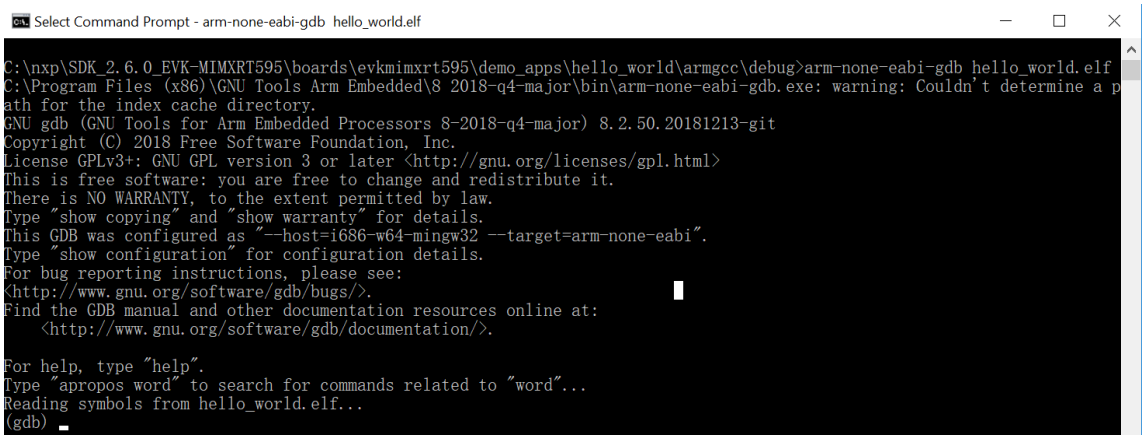
7. Change to the directory that contains the example application output. The output can be found in using one of these paths, depending on the build target selected:

   <install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/<example_type>/<application_name>/armgcc/debug

   <install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/<example_type>/<application_name>/armgcc/release

   For this example, the path is: *<install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt595/demo_apps/hello_world/armgcc/debug*

8. Run the arm-none-eabi-gdb.exe <application_name>.elf command. For this example, it is arm-none-eabi-gdb.exe hello_world.elf.



Note: Make sure that the board is set to FlexSPI flash boot mode before debugging.

9. Run these commands:
   1. target remote localhost:2331
   2. monitor reset
   3. monitor halt
   4. load
   5. monitor reset
10. The application is now downloaded and halted. Execute the c command to start the demo application.

    The hello_world application is now running and a banner is displayed on the terminal. If this is not true, check your terminal settings and connections.



|

Parent topic:*Run a demo using Arm GCC*

Build a TrustZone example application This section describes the steps to build and run a TrustZone application. The demo application build scripts are located in this folder:

```
<install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/trustzone_examples/<application_name>/[<core_type>]/
↪<application_name>_ns/armgcc
```

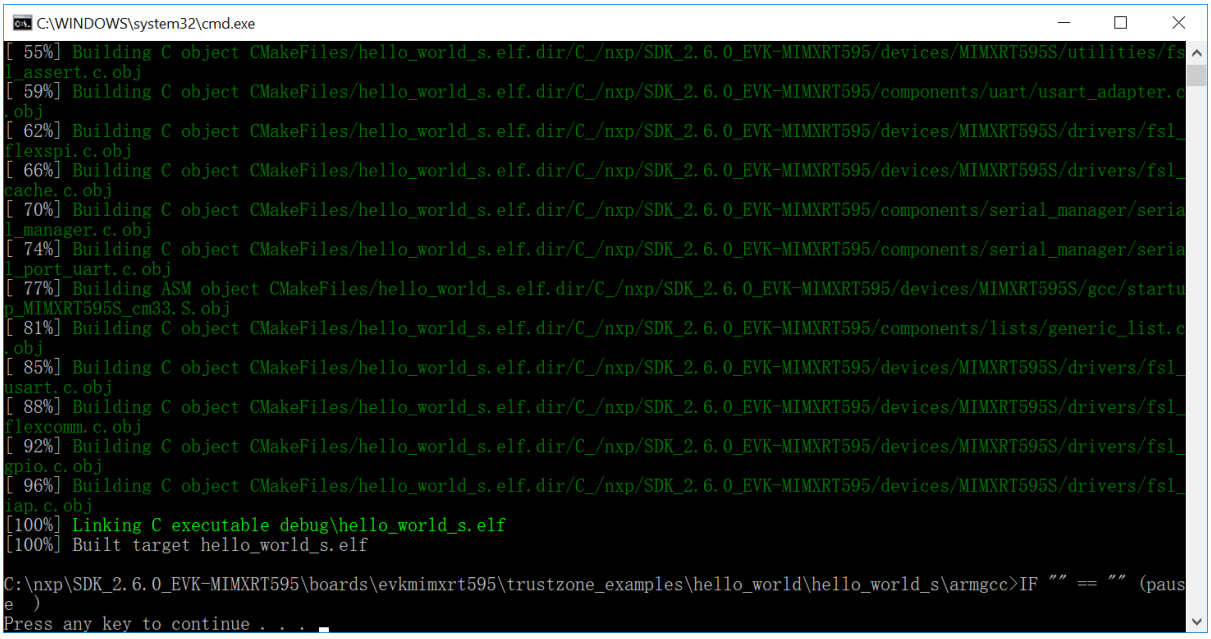
```
<install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/trustzone_examples/<application_name>/[<core_type>]/
↪<application_name>_s/armgcc
```

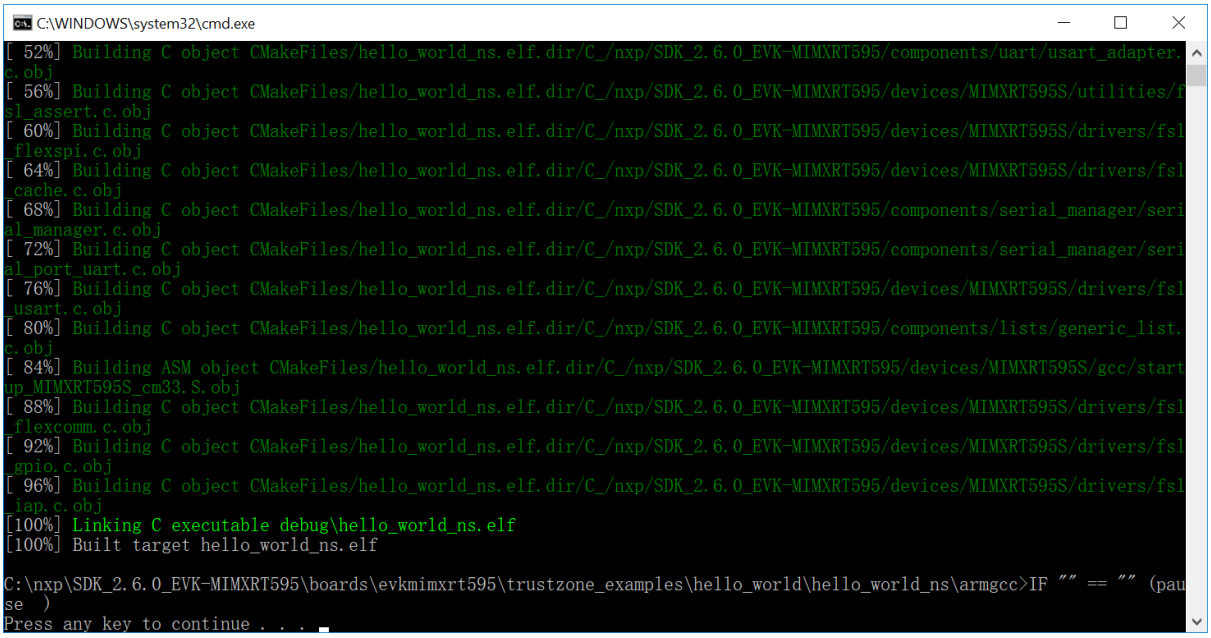
Begin with a simple TrustZone version of the Hello World application. The TrustZone Hello World GCC build scripts are located in this folder:

```
<install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt595/trustzone_examples/hello_world/hello_world_ns/armgcc/build_debug.
↪bat
```

```
<install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt595/trustzone_examples/hello_world/hello_world_s/armgcc/build_debug.
↪bat
```

Build both applications separately, following steps for single core examples as described in *Section 6.2, "Build an example application"*. It is requested to build the application for the secure project first, because the non-secure project must know the secure project, since CMSE library is running the linker. It is not possible to finish the non-secure project linker with the secure project because the CMSE library is not ready.





Parent topic:*Run a demo using Arm GCC*

Run a TrustZone example application When running a TrustZone application, the same prerequisites for J-Link/J-Link OpenSDA firmware, and the serial console as for the single core application, apply, as described in Run an example application.

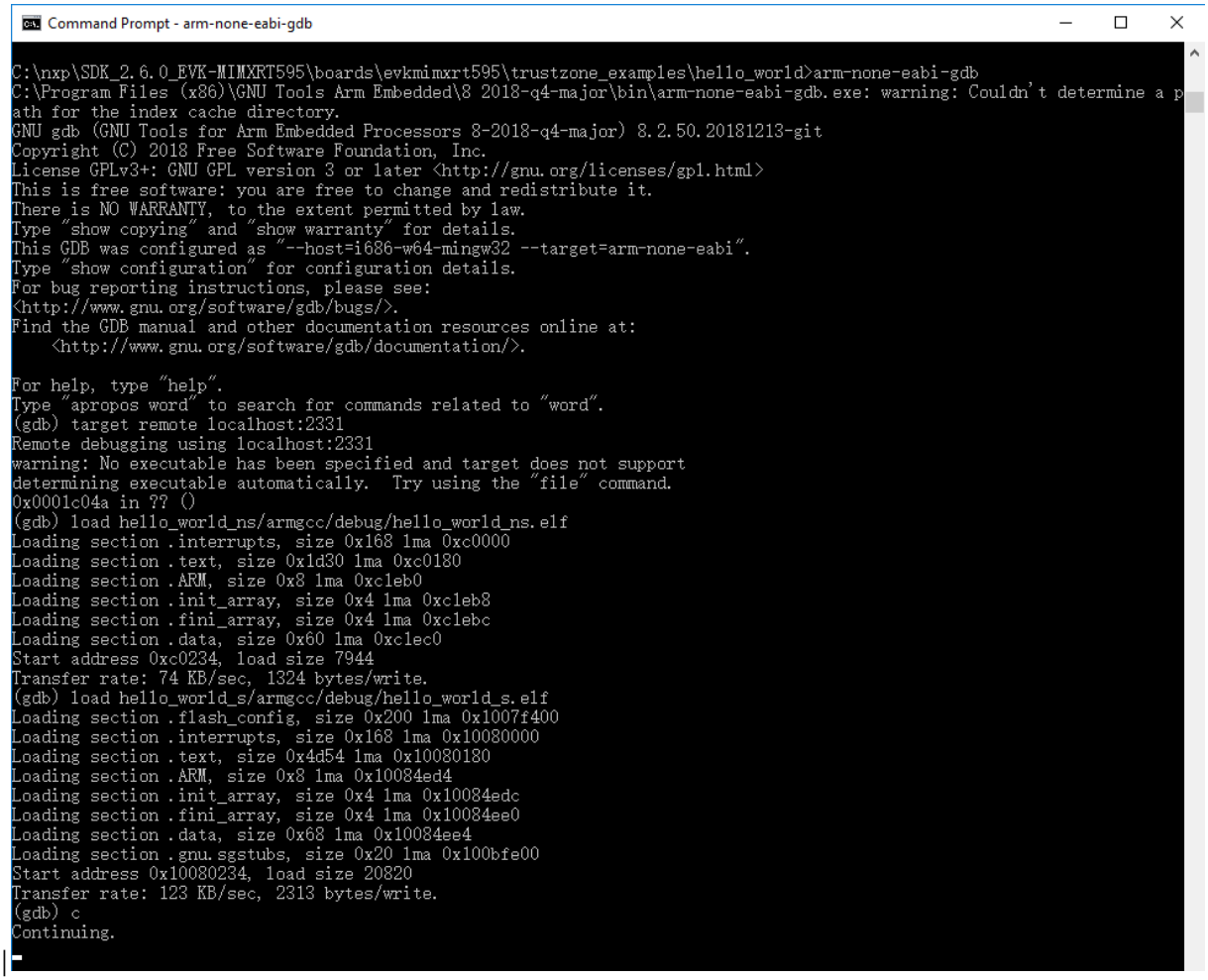
To download and run the TrustZone application, perform steps 1 to 10, as described in Run an example application. These steps are common for both single core and TrustZone applications in Arm GCC.

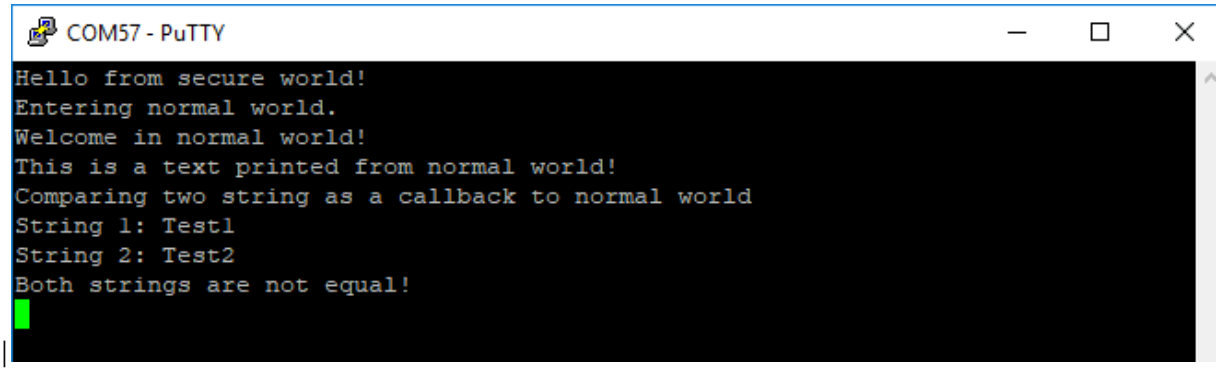
Then, run these commands:

1. arm-none-eabi-gdb.exe
2. target remote localhost:2331

3. monitor reset
4. monitor halt
5. monitor exec SetFlashDLNoRMWThreshold = 0x20000
6. load <install_dir\>/boards/evkmimxrt595/trustzone_examples/hello_world/hello_world_ns/armgcc/debug/hello_world_ns.elf
7. load <install_dir\>/boards/evkmimxrt595/trustzone_examples/hello_world/hello_world_s/armgcc/debug/hello_world_s.elf
8. monitor reset

The application is now downloaded and halted. Execute the c command to start the demo application.





|

Parent topic:*Run a demo using Arm GCC*

Run a demo using Keil MDK/µVision

This section describes the steps required to build, run, and debug example applications provided in the MCUXpresso SDK.

Install CMSIS device pack After the MDK tools are installed, Cortex Microcontroller Software Interface Standard (CMSIS) device packs must be installed to fully support the device from a debug perspective. These packs include things such as memory map information, register definitions, and flash programming algorithms. Follow these steps to install the MIMXRT595S CMSIS pack.

1. Download the MIMXRT595S CMSIS pack.
2. After downloading the DFP, double click to install it.

Parent topic:*Run a demo using Keil MDK/µVision*

Build an example application

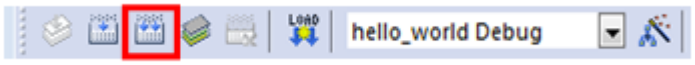
1. Open the desired example application workspace in:

   ```
   <install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/*<example\_type\>*/<application_name>/mdk
   ```

   The workspace file is named as <demo_name>.uvmpw. For this specific example, the actual path is:

   ```
   <install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt595s/demo_apps/hello_world/mdk/hello_world.uvmpw
   ```

2. To build the demo project, select **Rebuild**, highlighted in red.

   |

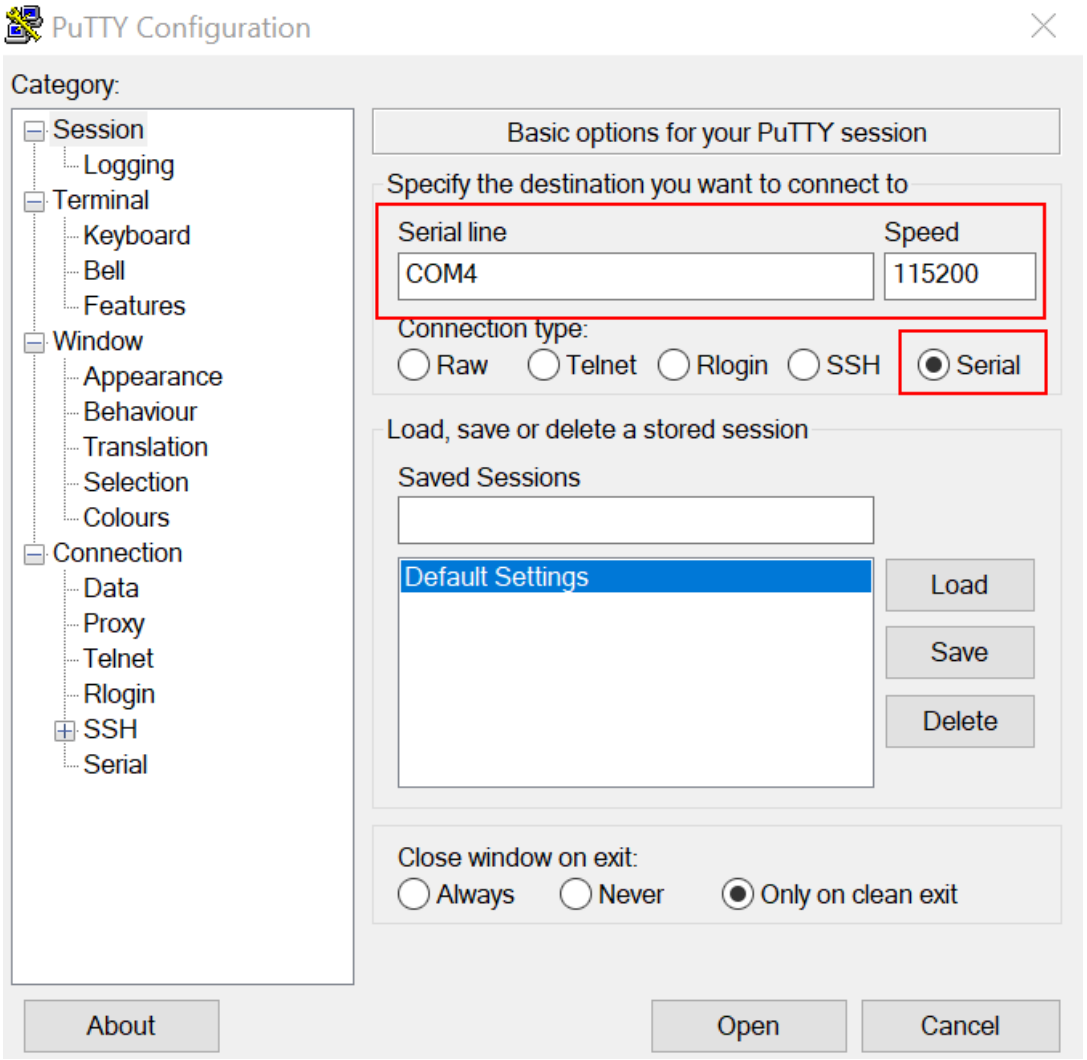
|

3. The build completes without errors.

Parent topic:*Run a demo using Keil MDK/µVision*

Run an example application To download and run the application, perform these steps:

1. Reference the table in *Default debug interfaces* to determine the debug interface that comes loaded on your specific hardware platform.
2. Connect the development platform to your PC via USB cable.
3. Open the terminal application on the PC, such as PuTTY or TeraTerm, and connect to the debug serial port number (to determine the COM port number, see *How to determine COM port*). Configure the terminal with these settings:
   1. 115200 or 9600 baud rate, depending on your board (reference BOARD_DEBUG_UART_BAUDRATE variable in the board.h file)
   2. No parity
   3. 8 data bits

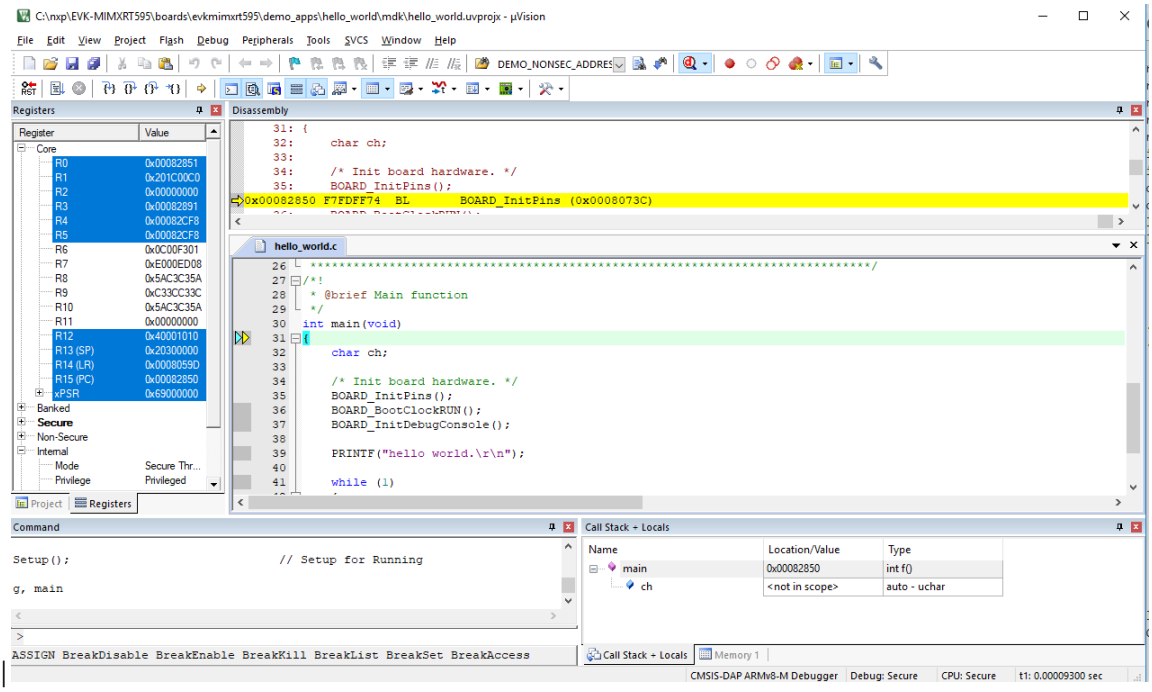


4. 1 stop bit |

|

4. To debug the application, click **load** (or press the F8 key). Then, click the **Start/Stop Debug Session** button, highlighted in red in Figure 2. If using **J-Link** as the debugger, click **Project option** >**Debug** >**Settings** >**Debug** >**Port**, and select **SW**.

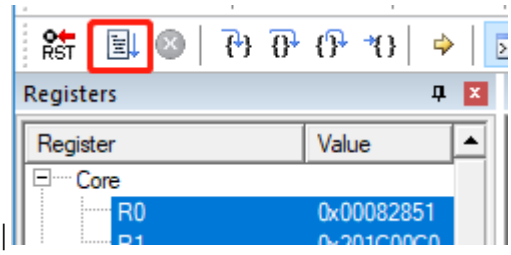
   Note: When debugging with jlink, it expects one jlinkscript file named JLinkSettings.JLinkScript in the folder where the uVision project files are located. For details, see Segger Wiki. For the contents in this JlinkSettings.JLinkScript, use contents in evkmimxrt1020_sdram_init.jlinkscript.



|

Note: Make sure that the board is set to FlexSPI flash boot mode before debugging.

5. Run the code by clicking **Run** to start the application, as shown in Figure 3.



|

The `hello_world` application is now running and a banner is displayed on the terminal, as shown in [Figure 4](run_an_example_application_002.md#S127DD02). If this is not true, check your terminal settings and connections.

|

|

Parent topic:*Run a demo using Keil MDK/µVision*

Build a TrustZone example application This section describes the particular steps that must be done in order to build and run a TrustZone application. The demo applications workspace files are located in this folder:

<install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/trustzone_examples/<application_name>/<application_name>_ns/mdk

<install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/trustzone_examples/<application_name>/<application_name>_s/mdk

Begin with a simple TrustZone version of the Hello World application. The TrustZone Hello World Keil MSDK/µVision workspaces are located in this folder:

```
<install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt595/trustzone_examples/hello_world/hello_world_ns/mdk/hello_world_ns.
↪uvmpw
```

```
<install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt595/trustzone_examples/hello_world/hello_world_s/mdk/hello_world_s.
↪uvmpw
```

```
<install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt595/trustzone_examples/hello_world/hello_world_s/mdk/hello_world.
↪uvmpw
```

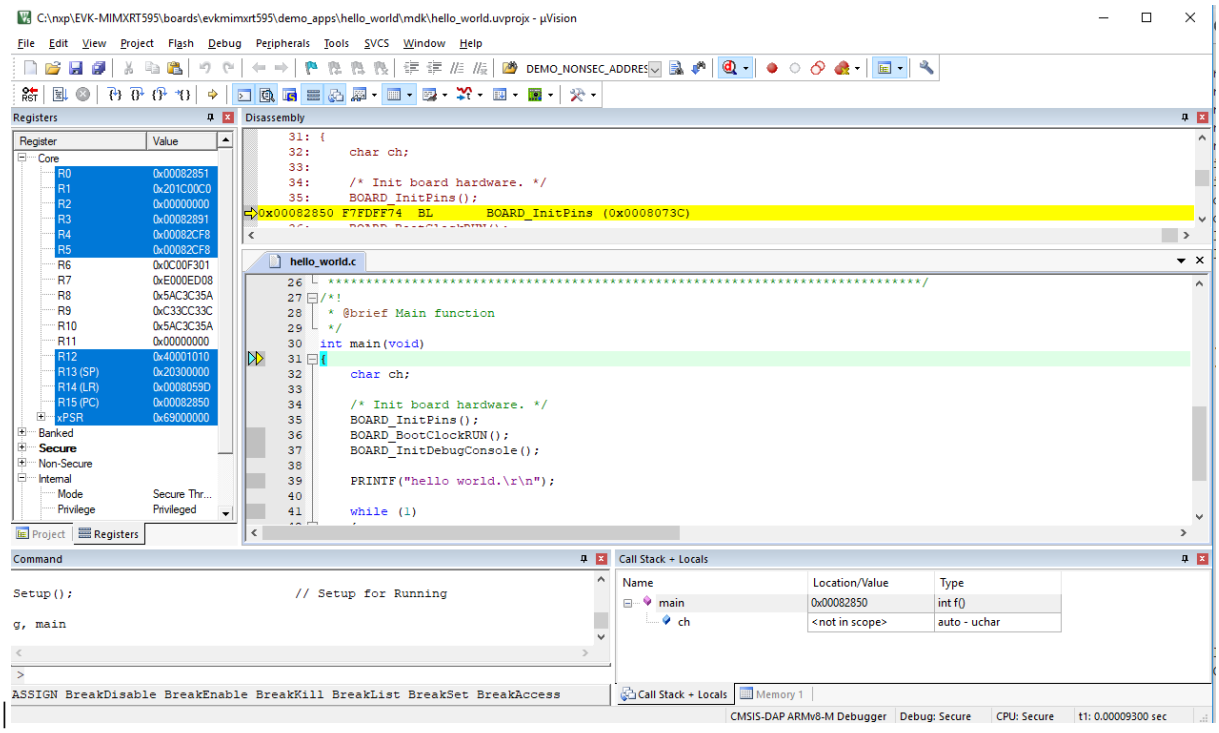
This project hello_world.uvmpw contains both secure and non-secure projects in one workspace and it allows the user to easily transition from one project to another.

Build both applications separately by clicking **Rebuild**. It is requested to build the application for the secure project first, because the non-secure project must know the secure project since CMSE library is running the linker. It is not possible to finish the non-secure project linker with the secure project because CMSE library is not ready.

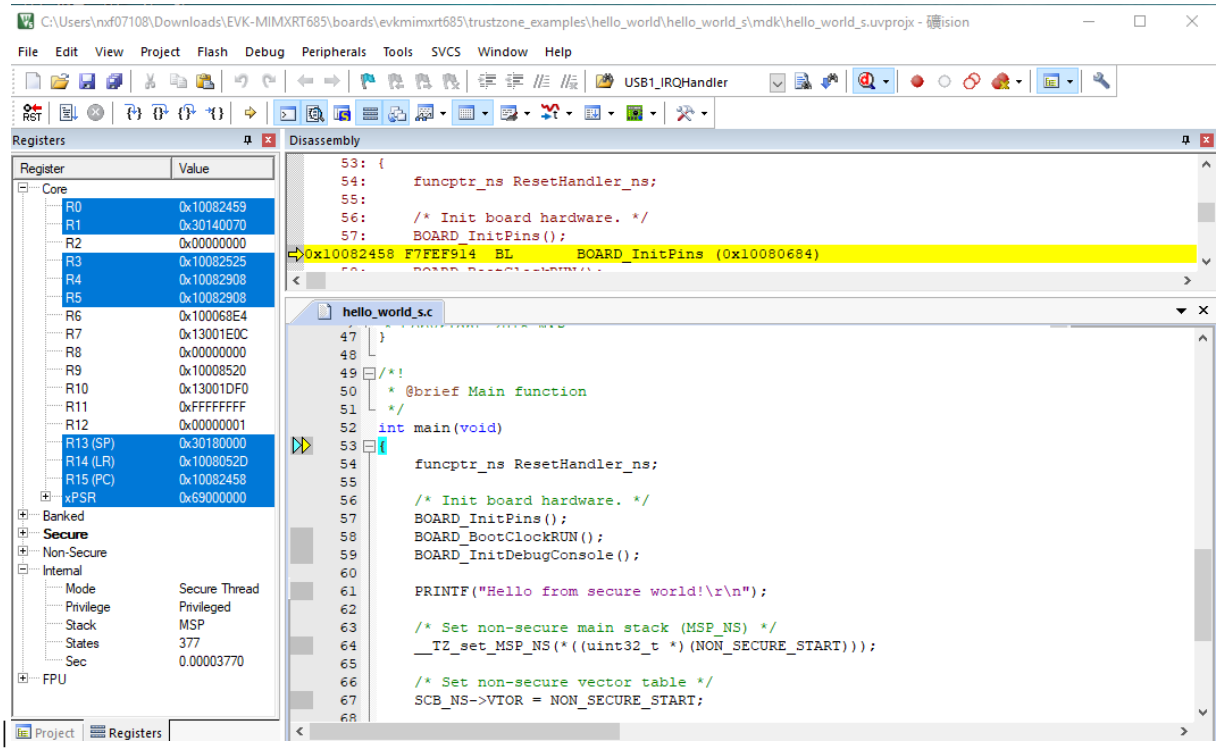
Parent topic:*Run a demo using Keil MDK/µVision*

Run a TrustZone example application The secure project is configured to download both secure and non-secure output files so debugging can be fully managed from the secure project.

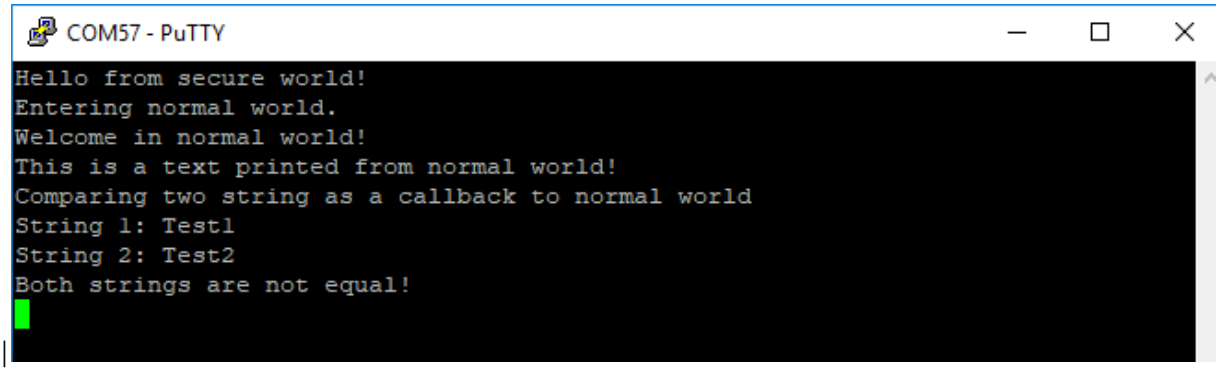
To download and run the TrustZone application, switch to the secure application project and perform steps as described in Run a TrustZone example application. These steps are common for single core, dual-core, and TrustZone applications in µVision. After clicking **Download and Debug**, both the secure and non-secure images are loaded into the device flash memory, and the secure application is executed. It stops at the main() function.



Run the code by clicking **Run** to start the application.



The hello_world application is now running and a banner is displayed on the terminal. If not, check your terminal settings and connections.



Parent topic:*Run a demo using Keil MDK/µVision*

MCUXpresso IDE New Project Wizard

MCUXpresso IDE features a new project wizard. The wizard provides functionality for the user to create new projects from the installed SDKs (and from pre-installed part support). It offers user the flexibility to select and change multiple builds. The wizard also includes a library and provides source code options. The source code is organized as software components, categorized as drivers, utilities, and middleware.

To use the wizard, start the MCUXpresso IDE. This is located in the **QuickStart Panel** at the bottom left of the MCUXpresso IDE window. Select **New project**, as shown in *Figure 1*.



For more details and usage of new project wizard, see the *MCUXpresso_IDE_User_Guide.pdf* in the MCUXpresso IDE installation folder.

How to determine COM port

This section describes the steps necessary to determine the debug COM port number of your NXP hardware development platform.

1. **Linux**: The serial port can be determined by running the following command after the USB Serial is connected to the host:

```
$ dmesg | grep "ttyUSB"
                [503175.307873] usb 3-12: cp210x converter now attached to ttyUSB0
                [503175.309372] usb 3-12: cp210x converter now attached to ttyUSB1
```

   There are two ports, one is Cortex-A core debug console and the other is for Cortex M4.

2. **Windows**: To determine the COM port open Device Manager in the Windows operating system. Click the **Start** menu and type **Device Manager** in the search bar.
3. In the Device Manager, expand the **Ports (COM & LPT)** section to view the available ports. The COM port names are different for all the NXP boards.

How to define IRQ handler in CPP files

With MCUXpresso SDK, users could define their own IRQ handler in application level to override the default IRQ handler. For example, to override the default PIT_IRQHandler define in startup_DEVICE.s, application code like app.c can be implement like:

```
c
void PIT_IRQHandler(void)
{
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    // Your code
}
```

When application file is CPP file, like app.cpp, then extern "C" should be used to ensure the function prototype alignment.

```
cpp
extern "C" {
    void PIT_IRQHandler(void);
}
void PIT_IRQHandler(void)
{
    // Your code
}
```

Default debug interfaces

The MCUXpresso SDK supports various hardware platforms that come loaded with various factory programmed debug interface configurations. *Table 1* lists the hardware platforms supported by the MCUXpresso SDK, their default debug interface, and any version information that helps differentiate a specific interface configuration.

Note: The *OpenSDA details* column in *Table 1* is not applicable to LPC.

Hardware platform	Default interface	OpenSDA details
EVK-MC56F83000	P&E Micro OSJTAG	N/A
EVK-MIMXRT595	CMSIS-DAP	N/A
EVK-MIMXRT685	CMSIS-DAP	N/A
FRDM-K22F	CMSIS-DAP/mbed/DAPLink	OpenSDA v2.1
FRDM-K28F	DAPLink	OpenSDA v2.1
FRDM-K32L2A4S	CMSIS-DAP	OpenSDA v2.1
FRDM-K32L2B	CMSIS-DAP	OpenSDA v2.1
FRDM-K32W042	CMSIS-DAP	N/A
FRDM-K64F	CMSIS-DAP/mbed/DAPLink	OpenSDA v2.0
FRDM-K66F	J-Link OpenSDA	OpenSDA v2.1
FRDM-K82F	CMSIS-DAP	OpenSDA v2.1
FRDM-KE15Z	DAPLink	OpenSDA v2.1
FRDM-KE16Z	CMSIS-DAP/mbed/DAPLink	OpenSDA v2.2
FRDM-KL02Z	P&E Micro OpenSDA	OpenSDA v1.0
FRDM-KL03Z	P&E Micro OpenSDA	OpenSDA v1.0
FRDM-KL25Z	P&E Micro OpenSDA	OpenSDA v1.0
FRDM-KL26Z	P&E Micro OpenSDA	OpenSDA v1.0
FRDM-KL27Z	P&E Micro OpenSDA	OpenSDA v1.0
FRDM-KL28Z	P&E Micro OpenSDA	OpenSDA v2.1
FRDM-KL43Z	P&E Micro OpenSDA	OpenSDA v1.0
FRDM-KL46Z	P&E Micro OpenSDA	OpenSDA v1.0
FRDM-KL81Z	CMSIS-DAP	OpenSDA v2.0
FRDM-KL82Z	CMSIS-DAP	OpenSDA v2.0
FRDM-KV10Z	CMSIS-DAP	OpenSDA v2.1
FRDM-KV11Z	P&E Micro OpenSDA	OpenSDA v1.0
FRDM-KV31F	P&E Micro OpenSDA	OpenSDA v1.0
FRDM-KW24	CMSIS-DAP/mbed/DAPLink	OpenSDA v2.1
FRDM-KW36	DAPLink	OpenSDA v2.2
FRDM-KW41Z	CMSIS-DAP/DAPLink	OpenSDA v2.1 or greater
Hexiwear	CMSIS-DAP/mbed/DAPLink	OpenSDA v2.0

continues on next page

Table 1 – continued from previous page

Hardware platform	Default interface	OpenSDA details
HVP-KE18F	DAPLink	OpenSDA v2.2
HVP-KV46F150M	P&E Micro OpenSDA	OpenSDA v1
HVP-KV11Z75M	CMSIS-DAP	OpenSDA v2.1
HVP-KV58F	CMSIS-DAP	OpenSDA v2.1
HVP-KV31F120M	P&E Micro OpenSDA	OpenSDA v1
JN5189DK6	CMSIS-DAP	N/A
LPC54018 IoT Module	N/A	N/A
LPCXpresso54018	CMSIS-DAP	N/A
LPCXpresso54102	CMSIS-DAP	N/A
LPCXpresso54114	CMSIS-DAP	N/A
LPCXpresso51U68	CMSIS-DAP	N/A
LPCXpresso54608	CMSIS-DAP	N/A
LPCXpresso54618	CMSIS-DAP	N/A
LPCXpresso54628	CMSIS-DAP	N/A
LPCXpresso54S018M	CMSIS-DAP	N/A
LPCXpresso55s16	CMSIS-DAP	N/A
LPCXpresso55s28	CMSIS-DAP	N/A
LPCXpresso55s69	CMSIS-DAP	N/A
MAPS-KS22	J-Link OpenSDA	OpenSDA v2.0
MIMXRT1170-EVK	CMSIS-DAP	N/A
TWR-K21D50M	P&E Micro OSJTAG	N/AOpenSDA v2.0
TWR-K21F120M	P&E Micro OSJTAG	N/A
TWR-K22F120M	P&E Micro OpenSDA	OpenSDA v1.0
TWR-K24F120M	CMSIS-DAP/mbed	OpenSDA v2.1
TWR-K60D100M	P&E Micro OSJTAG	N/A
TWR-K64D120M	P&E Micro OpenSDA	OpenSDA v1.0
TWR-K64F120M	P&E Micro OpenSDA	OpenSDA v1.0
TWR-K65D180M	P&E Micro OpenSDA	OpenSDA v1.0
TWR-K65D180M	P&E Micro OpenSDA	OpenSDA v1.0
TWR-KV10Z32	P&E Micro OpenSDA	OpenSDA v1.0
TWR-K80F150M	CMSIS-DAP	OpenSDA v2.1
TWR-K81F150M	CMSIS-DAP	OpenSDA v2.1
TWR-KE18F	DAPLink	OpenSDA v2.1
TWR-KL28Z72M	P&E Micro OpenSDA	OpenSDA v2.1
TWR-KL43Z48M	P&E Micro OpenSDA	OpenSDA v1.0
TWR-KL81Z72M	CMSIS-DAP	OpenSDA v2.0
TWR-KL82Z72M	CMSIS-DAP	OpenSDA v2.0
TWR-KM34Z75M	P&E Micro OpenSDA	OpenSDA v1.0
TWR-KM35Z75M	DAPLink	OpenSDA v2.2
TWR-KV10Z32	P&E Micro OpenSDA	OpenSDA v1.0
TWR-KV11Z75M	P&E Micro OpenSDA	OpenSDA v1.0
TWR-KV31F120M	P&E Micro OpenSDA	OpenSDA v1.0
TWR-KV46F150M	P&E Micro OpenSDA	OpenSDA v1.0
TWR-KV58F220M	CMSIS-DAP	OpenSDA v2.1
TWR-KW24D512	P&E Micro OpenSDA	OpenSDA v1.0
USB-KW24D512	N/A External probe	N/A
USB-KW41Z	CMSIS-DAP\DAPLink	OpenSDA v2.1 or greater

Updating debugger firmware

Updating LPCXpresso board firmware The LPCXpresso hardware platform comes with a CMSIS-DAP-compatible debug interface (known as LPC-Link2). This firmware in this debug interface may be updated using the host computer utility called LPCScrypt. This typically used when switching between the default debugger protocol (CMSIS-DAP) to SEGGER J-Link, or for

updating this firmware with new releases of these. This section contains the steps to re-program the debug probe firmware.

Note: If MCUXpresso IDE is used and the jumper making DFUlink is installed on the board (JP5 on some boards, but consult the board user manual or schematic for specific jumper number), LPC-Link2 debug probe boots to DFU mode, and MCUXpresso IDE automatically downloads the CMSIS-DAP firmware to the probe before flash memory programming (after clicking **Debug**). Using DFU mode ensures that most up-to-date/compatible firmware is used with MCUXpresso IDE.

NXP provides the LPCScrypt utility, which is the recommended tool for programming the latest versions of CMSIS-DAP and J-Link firmware onto LPC-Link2 or LPCXpresso boards. The utility can be downloaded from www.nxp.com/lpcutilities.

These steps show how to update the debugger firmware on your board for Windows operating system. For Linux OS, follow the instructions described in LPCScrypt user guide (www.nxp.com/lpcutilities, select **LPCScrypt**, and then the documentation tab).

1. Install the LPCScript utility.
2. Unplug the board's USB cable.
3. Make the DFU link (install the jumper labeled DFUlink).
4. Connect the probe to the host via USB (use Link USB connector).
5. Open a command shell and call the appropriate script located in the LPCScrypt installation directory (<LPCScrypt install dir>).
    1. To program CMSIS-DAP debug firmware: <LPCScrypt install dir>/scripts/program_CMSIS
    2. To program J-Link debug firmware: <LPCScrypt install dir>/scripts/program_JLINK
6. Remove DFU link (remove the jumper installed in Step 3).
7. Repower the board by removing the USB cable and plugging it in again.

Parent topic:*Updating debugger firmware*

1.3 Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK GitHub

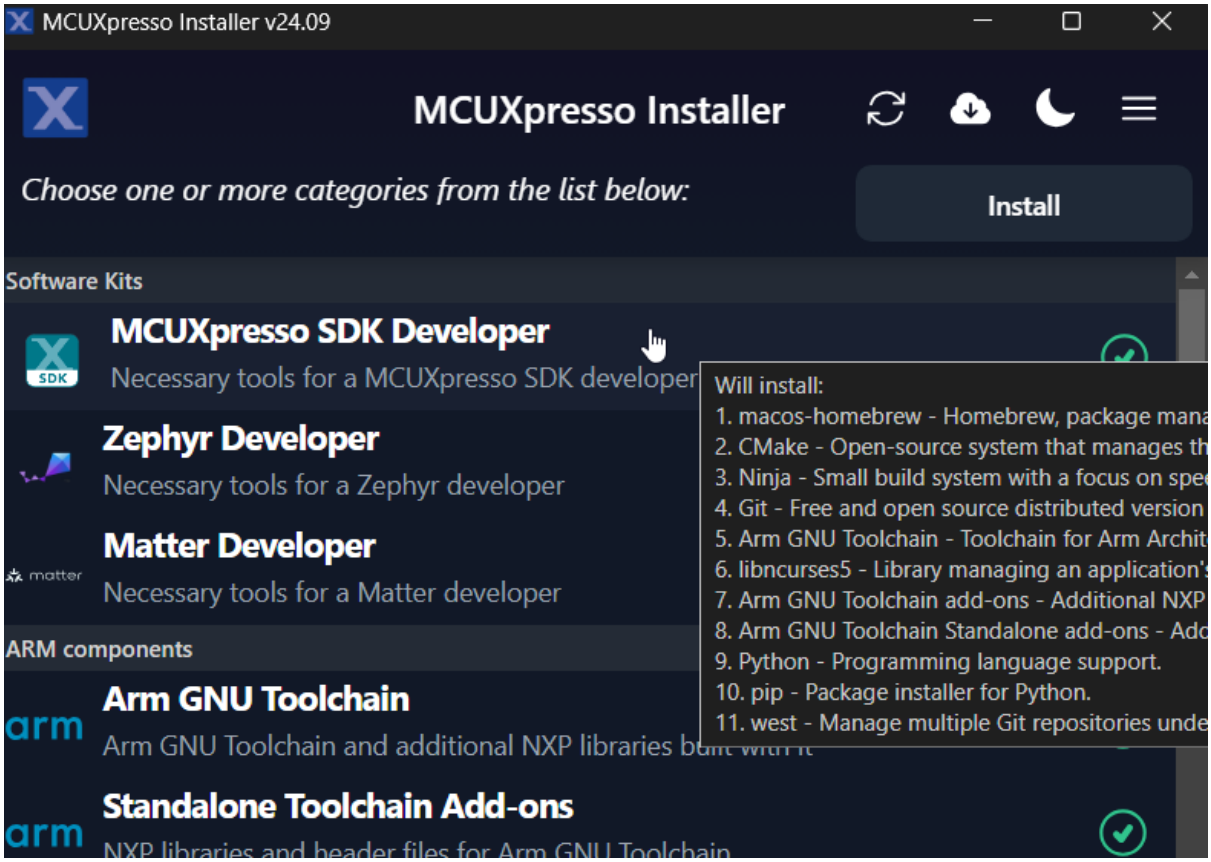
1.3.1 Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK Repository

Installation

NOTE

If the installation instruction asks/selects whether to have the tool installation path added to the PATH variable, agree/select the choice. This option ensures that the tool can be used in any terminal in any path. *Verify the installation* after each tool installation.

Install Prerequisites with MCUXpresso Installer The MCUXpresso Installer offers a quick and easy way to install the basic tools needed. The MCUXpresso Installer can be obtained from https://github.com/nxp-mcuxpresso/vscode-for-mcux/wiki/Dependency-Installation. The MCUXpresso Installer is an automated installation process, simply select MCUXpresso SDK Developer from the menu and click install. If you prefer to install the basic tools manually, refer to the next section.



Alternative: Manual Installation

Basic tools

Git Git is a free and open source distributed version control system. Git is designed to handle everything from small to large projects with speed and efficiency. To install Git, visit the official Git website. Download the appropriate version(you may use the latest one) for your operating system (Windows, macOS, Linux). Then run the installer and follow the installation instructions.

User `git --version` to check the version if you have a version installed.

Then configure your username and email using the commands:

```
git config --global user.name "Your Name"
git config --global user.email "youremail@example.com"
```

Python Install python 3.10 or latest. Follow the Python Download guide.

Use `python --version` to check the version if you have a version installed.

West Please use the west version equal or greater than 1.2.0

```
# Note: you can add option '--default-timeout=1000' if you meet connection issue. Or you may set a different␣
↪source using option '-i'.
# for example, in China you could try: pip install -U west -i https://pypi.tuna.tsinghua.edu.cn/simple
pip install -U west
```

Build And Configuration System

CMake It is strongly recommended to use CMake version equal or later than 3.30.0. You can get latest CMake distributions from the official CMake download page.

For Windows, you can directly use the .msi installer like cmake-3.31.4-windows-x86_64.msi to install.

For Linux, CMake can be installed using the system package manager or by getting binaries from the official CMake download page.

After installation, you can use cmake --version to check the version.

Ninja Please use the ninja version equal or later than 1.12.1.

By default, Windows comes with the Ninja program. If the default Ninja version is too old, you can directly download the ninja binary and register the ninja executor location path into your system path variable to work.

For Linux, you can use your system package manager or you can directly download the ninja binary to work.

After installation, you can use ninja --version to check the version.

Kconfig MCUXpresso SDK uses Kconfig python implementation. We customize it based on our needs and integrate it into our build and configuration system. The Kconfiglib sources are placed under mcuxsdk/scripts/kconfig folder.

Please make sure *python* environment is setup ready then you can use the Kconfig.

Ruby Our build system supports IDE project generation for iar, mdk, codewarrior and xtensa to provide OOBE from build to debug. This feature is implemented with ruby. You can follow the guide ruby environment setup to setup the ruby environment. Since we provide a built-in portable ruby, it is just a simple one cmd installation.

If you only work with CLI, you can skip this step.

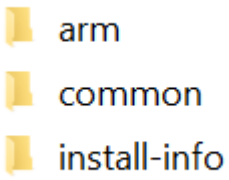
Toolchain MCUXpresso SDK supports all mainstream toolchains for embedded development. You can install your used or interested toolchains following the guides.

Toolchain	Download and Installation Guide	Note
Armgcc	Arm GNU Toolchain Install Guide	ARMGCC is default toolchain
IAR	IAR Installation and Licensing quick reference guide	
MDK	MDK Installation	
Armclang	Installing Arm Compiler for Embedded	
Zephyr	Zephyr SDK	
Codewarrior	NXP CodeWarrior	
Xtensa	Tensilica Tools	
NXP S32Compiler RISC-V Zen-V	NXP Website	

After you have installed the toolchains, register them in the system environment variables. This will allow the west build to recognize them:

Toolchain	Environment Variable	Example	Cmd Line Argument
Armgcc	ARMGCC_DIR	C:\armgcc for windows/usr for Linux. Typically arm-none-eabi-* is installed under /usr/bin	–toolchain armgcc
IAR	IAR_DIR	C:\iar\ewarm-9.60.3 for Windows/opt/iarsystems/bxarm-9.60.3 for Linux	–toolchain iar
MDK	MDK_DIR	C:\Keil_v5 for Windows.MDK IDE is not officially supported with Linux.	–toolchain mdk
Armclang	ARMCLANG_DIR	C:\ArmCompilerforEmbedded6.22 for Windows/opt/ArmCompilerforEmbedded6.21 for Linux	–toolchain mdk
Zephyr	ZEPHYR_SDK	c:\NXP\zephyr-sdk-<version> for windows/opt/zephyr-sdk-<version> for Linux	–toolchain zephyr
CodeWarrior	CW_DIR	C:\Freescale\CW MCU v11.2 for windowsCodeWarrior is not supported with Linux	–toolchain codewarrior
Xtensa	XCC_DIR	C:\xtensa\XtDevTools\install\tools\RI-2023.11-win32\XtensaTools for windows/opt/xtensa/XtDevTools/install/tools/RI-2023.11-Linux/XtensaTools for Linux	–toolchain xtensa
NXP S32Compiler RISC-V Zen-V	RISCVLLVM_DIR	C:\riscv-llvm-win32_b298_b298_2024.08.12 for Windows/opt/riscv-llvm-Linux-x64_b298_b298_2024.08.12 for Linux	–toolchain riscvllvm

- The <toolchain>_DIR is the root installation folder, not the binary location folder. For IAR, it is directory containing following installation folders:



- MDK IDE using armclang toolchain only officially supports Windows. In Linux, please directly use armclang toolchain by setting ARMCLANG_DIR. In Windows, since most Keil users will install MDK IDE instead of standalone armclang toolchain, the MDK_DIR has higher priority than ARMCLANG_DIR.
- For Xtensa toolchain, please set the XTENSA_CORE environment variable. Here's an example list:

Device Core	XTENSA_CORE
RT500 fusion1	nxp_rt500_RI23_11_newlib
RT600 hifi4	nxp_rt600_RI23_11_newlib
RT700 hifi1	rt700_hifi1_RI23_11_nlib
RT700 hifi4	t700_hifi4_RI23_11_nlib
i.MX8ULP fusion1	fusion_nxp02_dsp_prod

- In Windows, the short path is used in environment variables. If any toolchain is using the long path, you can open a command window from the toolchain folder and use below command to get the short path: for %i in (.) do echo %~fsi

Tool installation check Once installed, open a terminal or command prompt and type the associated command to verify the installation.

If you see the version number, you have successfully installed the tool. Else, check whether the tool's installation path is added into the PATH variable. You can add the installation path to the PATH with the commands below:

- Windows: Open command prompt or powershell, run below command to show the user PATH variable.

```
reg query HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Environment /v PATH
```

The tool installation path should be C:\Users\xxx\AppData\Local\Programs\Git\cmd. If the path is not seen in the output from above, append the path value to the PATH variable with the command below:

```
reg add HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Environment /v PATH /d "%PATH%;C:\Users\xxx\AppData\
↪Local\Programs\Git\cmd"
```

Then close the command prompt or powershell and verify the tool command again.

- Linux:
  1. Open the $HOME/.bashrc file using a text editor, such as vim.
  2. Go to the end of the file.
  3. Add the line which appends the tool installation path to the PATH variable and export PATH at the end of the file. For example, export PATH="/Directory1:$PATH".
  4. Save and exit.
  5. Execute the script with source .bashrc or reboot the system to make the changes live. To verify the changes, run echo $PATH.
- macOS:
  1. Open the $HOME/.bash_profile file using a text editor, such as nano.
  2. Go to the end of the file.
  3. Add the line which appends the tool installation path to the PATH variable and export PATH at the end of the file. For example, export PATH="/Directory1:$PATH".
  4. Save and exit.
  5. Execute the script with source .bash_profile or reboot the system to make the changes live. To verify the changes, run echo $PATH.

Get MCUXpresso SDK Repo

Establish SDK Workspace To get the MCUXpresso SDK repository, use the west tool to clone the manifest repository and checkout all the west projects.

```
# Initialize west with the manifest repository
west init -m https://github.com/nxp-mcuxpresso/mcuxsdk-manifests/ mcuxpresso-sdk

# Update the west projects
cd mcuxpresso-sdk
west update

# Allow the usage of west extensions provided by MCUXpresso SDK
west config commands.allow_extensions true
```

Install Python Dependency(If do tool installation manually) To create a Python virtual environment in the west workspace core repo directory mcuxsdk, follow these steps:

1. Navigate to the core directory:

   ```
   cd mcuxsdk
   ```

2. [Optional] Create and activate the virtual environment: If you don't want to use the python virtual environment, skip this step. **We strongly suggest you use venv to avoid conflicts with other projects using python.**

   ```
   python -m venv .venv

   # For Linux/MacOS
   source .venv/bin/activate

   # For Windows
   .\.venv\Scripts\activate
   # If you are using powershell and see the issue that the activate script cannot be run.
   # You may fix the issue by opening the powershell as administrator and run below command:
   powershell Set-ExecutionPolicy RemoteSigned
   # then run above activate command again.
   ```

   Once activated, your shell will be prefixed with (.venv). The virtual environment can be deactivated at any time by running deactivate command.

   Remember to activate the virtual environment every time you start working in this directory. If you are using some modern shell like zsh, there are some powerful plugins to help you auto switch venv among workspaces. For example, zsh-autoswitch-virtualenv.

3. Install the required Python packages:

   ```
   # Note: you can add option '--default-timeout=1000' if you meet connection issue. Or you may set a␣
   ↪different source using option '-i'.
   # for example, in China you could try: pip3 install -r mcuxsdk/scripts/requirements.txt -i https://pypi.
   ↪tuna.tsinghua.edu.cn/simple
   pip install -r scripts/requirements.txt
   ```

Explore Contents

This section helps you build basic understanding of current fundamental project content and guides you how to build and run the provided example project in whole SDK delivery.

Folder View The whole MCUXpresso SDK project, after you have done the west init and west update operations follow the guideline at *Getting Started Guide*, have below folder structure:

Folder	Description
manifests	Manifest repo, contains the manifest file to initialize and update the west workspace.
mcuxsdk	The MCUXpresso SDK source code, examples, middleware integration and script files.

All the projects record in the Manifest repo are checked out to the folder mcuxsdk/, the layout of mcuxsdk folder is shown as below:

Folder	Description
arch	Arch related files such as ARM CMSIS core files, RISC-V files and the build files related to the architecture.
cmake	The cmake modules, files which organize the build system.
components	Software components.
devices	Device support package which categorized by device series. For each device, header file, feature file, startup file and linker files are provided, also device specific drivers are included.
docs	Documentation source and build configuration for this sphinx built online documentation.
drivers	Peripheral drivers.
examples	Various demos and examples, support files on different supported boards. For each board support, there are board configuration files.
middleware	Middleware components integrated into SDK.
rtos	Rtos components integrated into SDK.
scripts	Script files for the west extension command and build system support.
svd	Svd files for devices, this is optional because of large size. Customers run west manifest config group.filter +optional and west update mcux-soc-svd to get this folder.

Examples Project The examples project is part of the whole SDK delivery, and locates in the folder mcuxsdk/examples of west workspace.

Examples files are placed in folder of <example_category>, these examples include (but are not limited to)

- demo_apps: Basic demo set to start using SDK, including hello_world and led_blinky.
- driver_examples: Simple applications that show how to use the peripheral drivers for a single use case. These applications typically only use a single peripheral but there are cases where multiple peripherals are used (for example, SPI transfer using DMA).

Board porting layers are placed in folder of _boards/<board_name> which aims at providing the board specific parts for examples code mentioned above.

Run a demo using MCUXpresso for VS Code

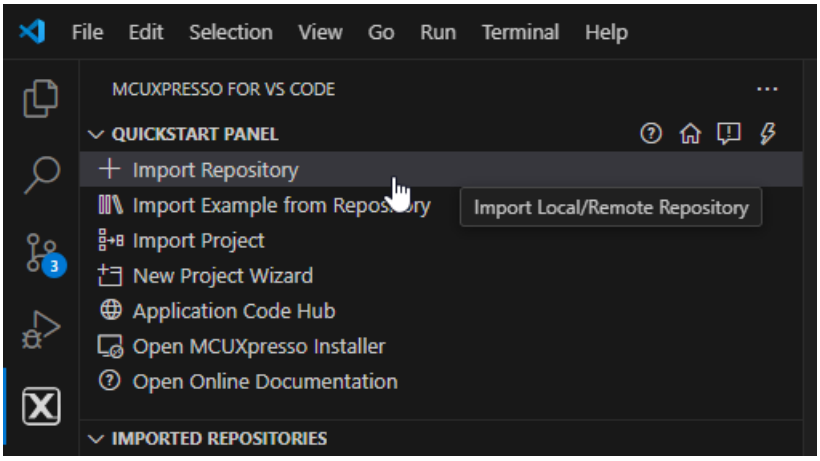
This section explains how to configure MCUXpresso for VS Code to build, run, and debug example applications. This guide uses the hello_world demo application as an example. However, these

steps can be applied to any example application in the MCUXpresso SDK.

Build an example application This section assumes that the user has already obtained the SDK as outlined in *Get MCUXpresso SDK Repo*.

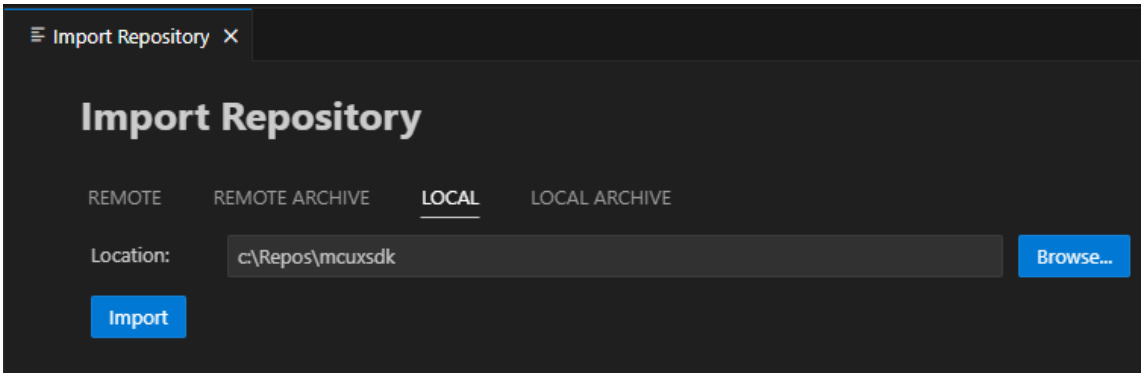
To build an example application:

1. Import the SDK into your workspace. Click **Import Repository** from the **QUICKSTART PANEL**.

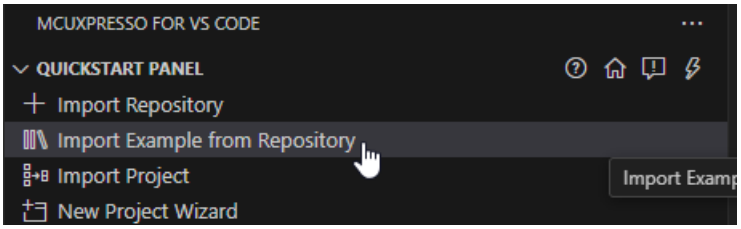


Note: You can import the SDK in several ways. Refer to MCUXpresso for VS Code Wiki for details.

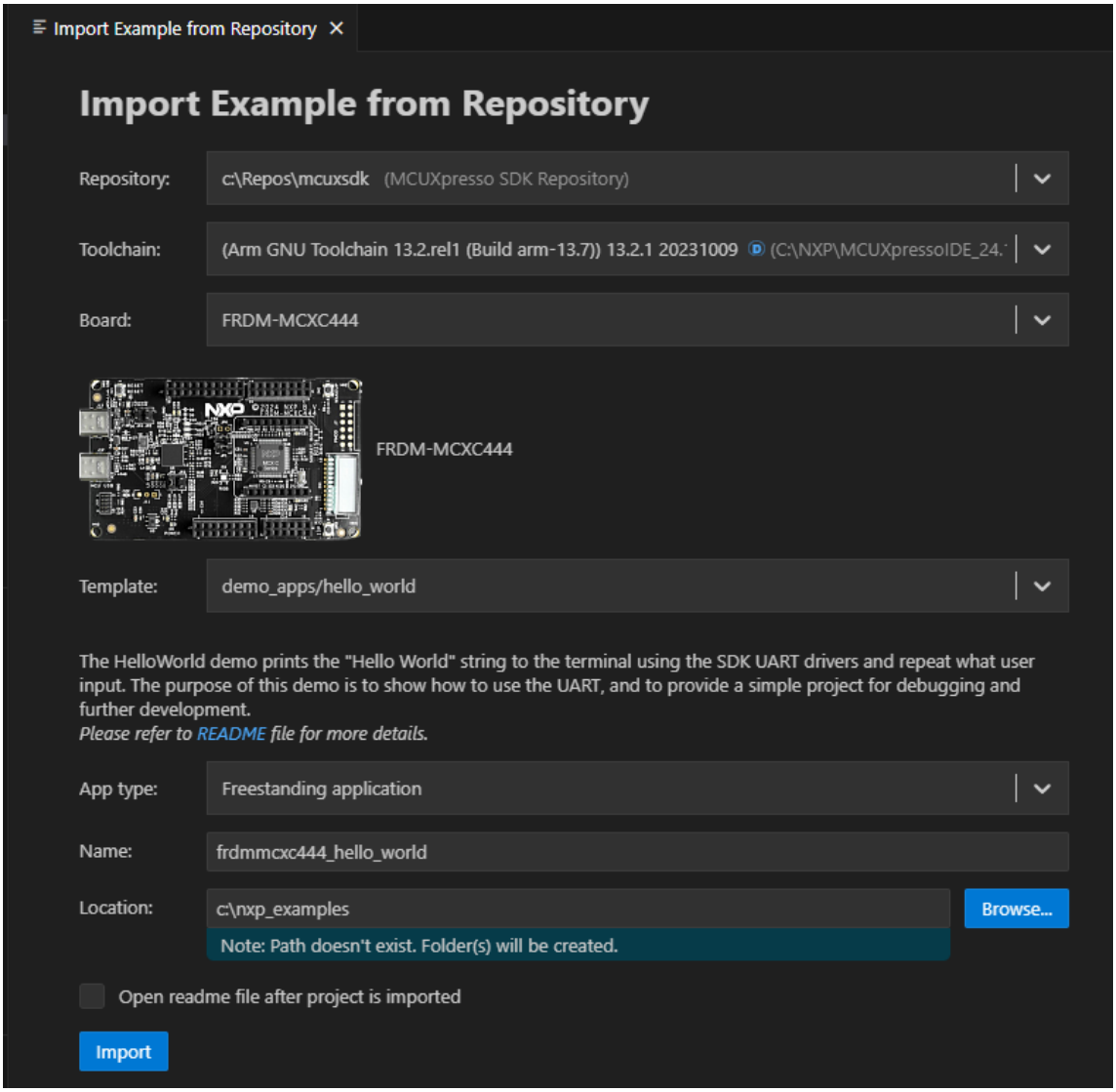
Select **Local** if you've already obtained the SDK as seen in *Get MCUXpresso SDK Repo*. Select your location and click **Import**.



2. Click **Import Example from Repository** from the **QUICKSTART PANEL**.

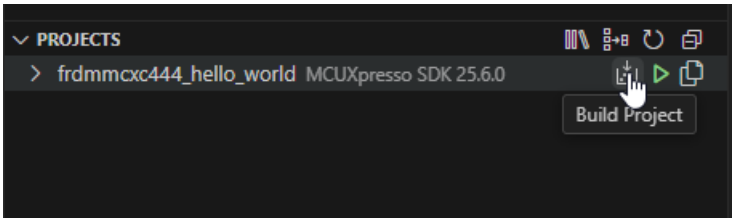


In the dropdown menu, select the MCUXpresso SDK, the Arm GNU Toolchain, your board, template, and application type. Click **Import**.

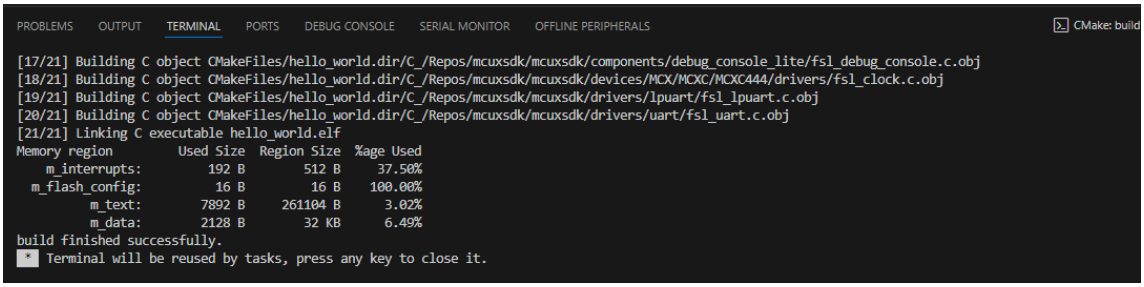


Note: The MCUXpresso SDK projects can be imported as **Repository applications** or **Freestanding applications**. The difference between the two is the import location. Projects imported as Repository examples will be located inside the MCUXpresso SDK, whereas Freestanding examples can be imported to a user-defined location. Select between these by designating your selection in the **App type** dropdown menu.

3. VS Code will prompt you to confirm if the imported files are trusted. Click **Yes**.
4. Navigate to the **PROJECTS** view. Find your project and click the **Build Project** icon.

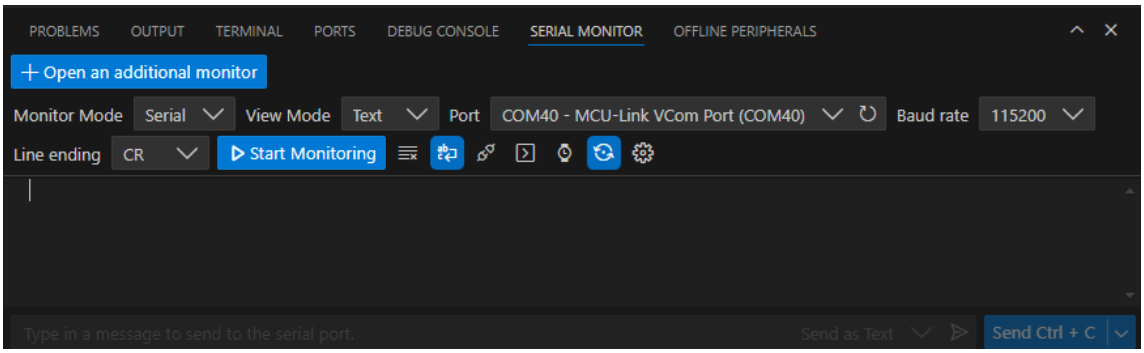


The integrated terminal will open at the bottom and will display the build output.

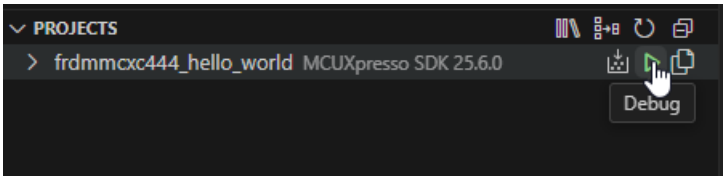


Run an example application **Note:** for full details on MCUXpresso for VS Code debug probe support, see MCUXpresso for VS Code Wiki.

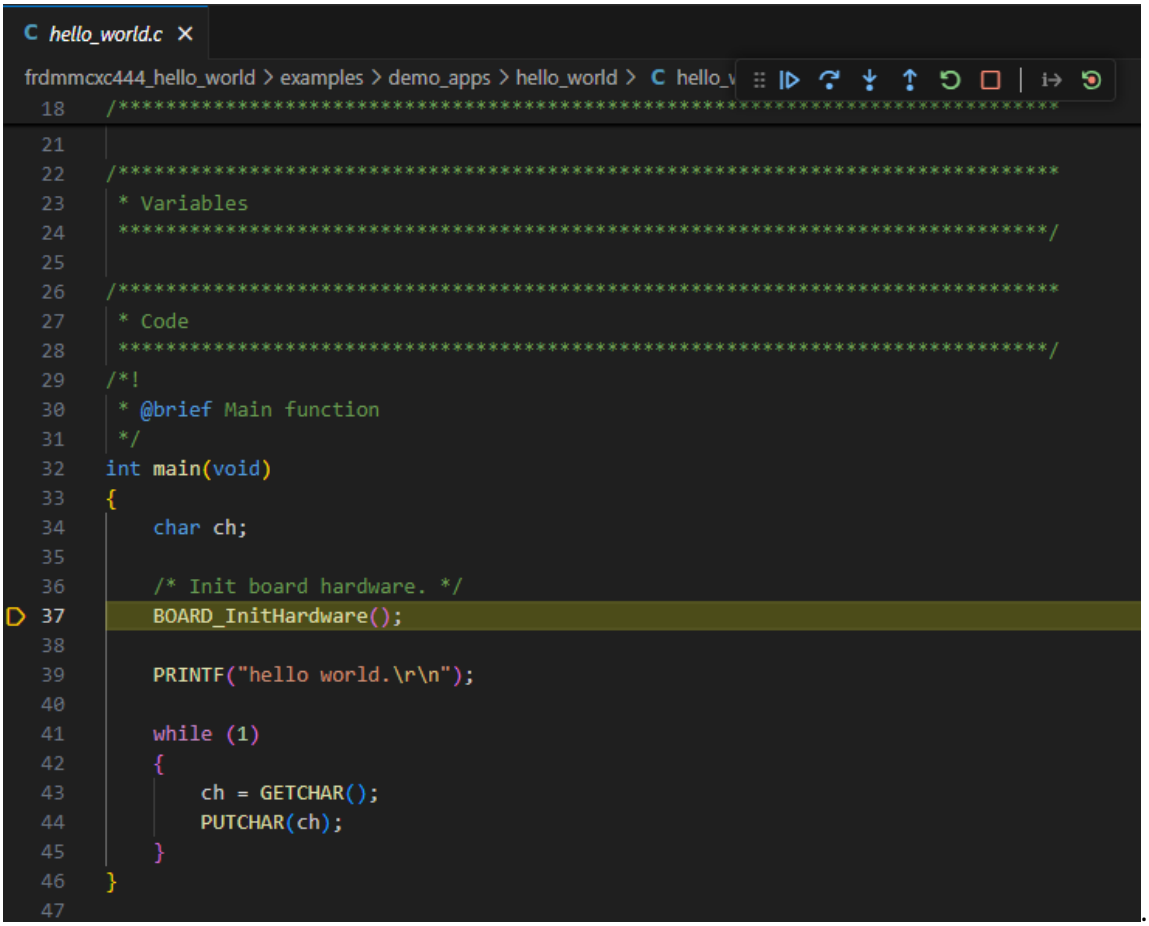
1. Open the **Serial Monitor** from the VS Code's integrated terminal. Select the VCom Port for your device and set the baud rate to 115200.



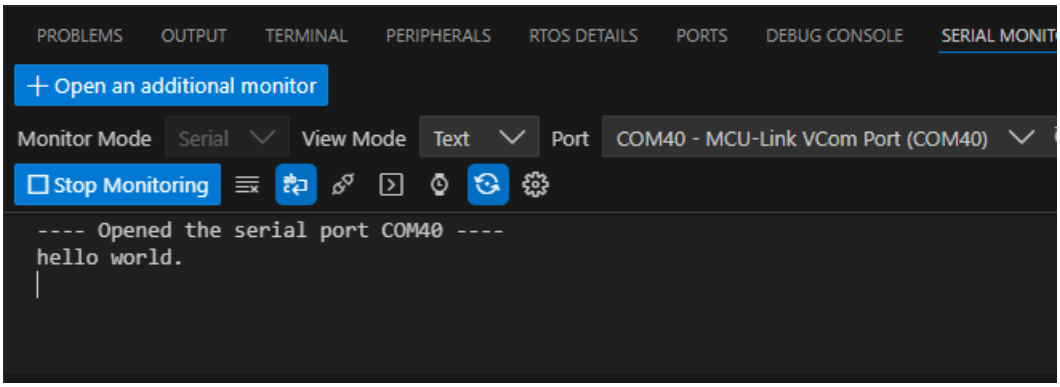
2. Navigate to the **PROJECTS** view and click the play button to initiate a debug session.



The debug session will begin. The debug controls are initially at the top.



3. Click **Continue** on the debug controls to resume execution of the code. Observe the output on the **Serial Monitor**.



Running a demo using ARMGCC CLI/IAR/MDK

Supported Boards Use the west extension `west list_project` to understand the board support scope for a specified example. All supported build command will be listed in output:

```
west list_project -p examples/demo_apps/hello_world [-t armgcc]

INFO: [  1][west build -p always examples/demo_apps/hello_world --toolchain armgcc --config release -b␣
↪evk9mimx8ulp -Dcore_id=cm33]
INFO: [  2][west build -p always examples/demo_apps/hello_world --toolchain armgcc --config release -b␣
↪evkbimxrt1050]
INFO: [  3][west build -p always examples/demo_apps/hello_world --toolchain armgcc --config release -b␣
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
↪evkbmimxrt1060]
INFO: [  4][west build -p always examples/demo_apps/hello_world --toolchain armgcc --config release -b␣
↪evkbmimxrt1170 -Dcore_id=cm4]
INFO: [  5][west build -p always examples/demo_apps/hello_world --toolchain armgcc --config release -b␣
↪evkbmimxrt1170 -Dcore_id=cm7]
INFO: [  6][west build -p always examples/demo_apps/hello_world --toolchain armgcc --config release -b␣
↪evkcmimxrt1060]
INFO: [  7][west build -p always examples/demo_apps/hello_world --toolchain armgcc --config release -b␣
↪evkmcimx7ulp]
...
```

The supported toolchains and build targets for an example are decided by the example-self example.yml and board example.yml, please refer Example Toolchains and Targets for more details.

Build the project Use `west build -h` to see help information for west build command. Compared to zephyr's west build, MCUXpresso SDK's west build command provides following additional options for mcux examples:

- `--toolchain`: specify the toolchain for this build, default `armgcc`.
- `--config`: value for `CMAKE_BUILD_TYPE`. If not provided, build system will get all the example supported build targets and use the first debug target as the default one. Please refer Example Toolchains and Targets for more details about example supported build targets.

Here are some typical usages for generating a SDK example:

```
# Generate example with default settings, default used device is the mainset MK22F51212
west build -b frdmk22f examples/demo_apps/hello_world

# Just print cmake commands, do not execute it
west build -b frdmk22f examples/demo_apps/hello_world --dry-run

# Generate example with other toolchain like iar, default armgcc
west build -b frdmk22f examples/demo_apps/hello_world --toolchain iar

# Generate example with other config type
west build -b frdmk22f examples/demo_apps/hello_world --config release

# Generate example with other devices with --device
west build -b frdmk22f examples/demo_apps/hello_world --device MK22F12810 --config release
```

For multicore devices, you shall specify the corresponding core id by passing the command line argument `-Dcore_id`. For example

```
west build -b evkbmimxrt1170 examples/demo_apps/hello_world --toolchain iar -Dcore_id=cm7 --config␣
↪flexspi_nor_debug
```

For shield, please use the `--shield` to specify the shield to run, like

```
west build -b mimxrt700evk --shield a8974 examples/issdk_examples/sensors/fxls8974cf/fxls8974cf_poll -
↪Dcore_id=cm33_core0
```

Sysbuild(System build) To support multicore project building, we ported Sysbuild from Zephyr. It supports combine multiple projects for compilation. You can build all projects by adding `--sysbuild` for main application. For example:

```
west build -b evkbmimxrt1170 --sysbuild ./examples/multicore_examples/hello_world/primary -Dcore_
↪id=cm7  --config flexspi_nor_debug --toolchain=armgcc -p always
```

For more details, please refer to System build.

Config a Project Example in MCUXpresso SDK is configured and tested with pre-defined configuration. You can follow steps blow to change the configuration.

1. Run cmake configuration

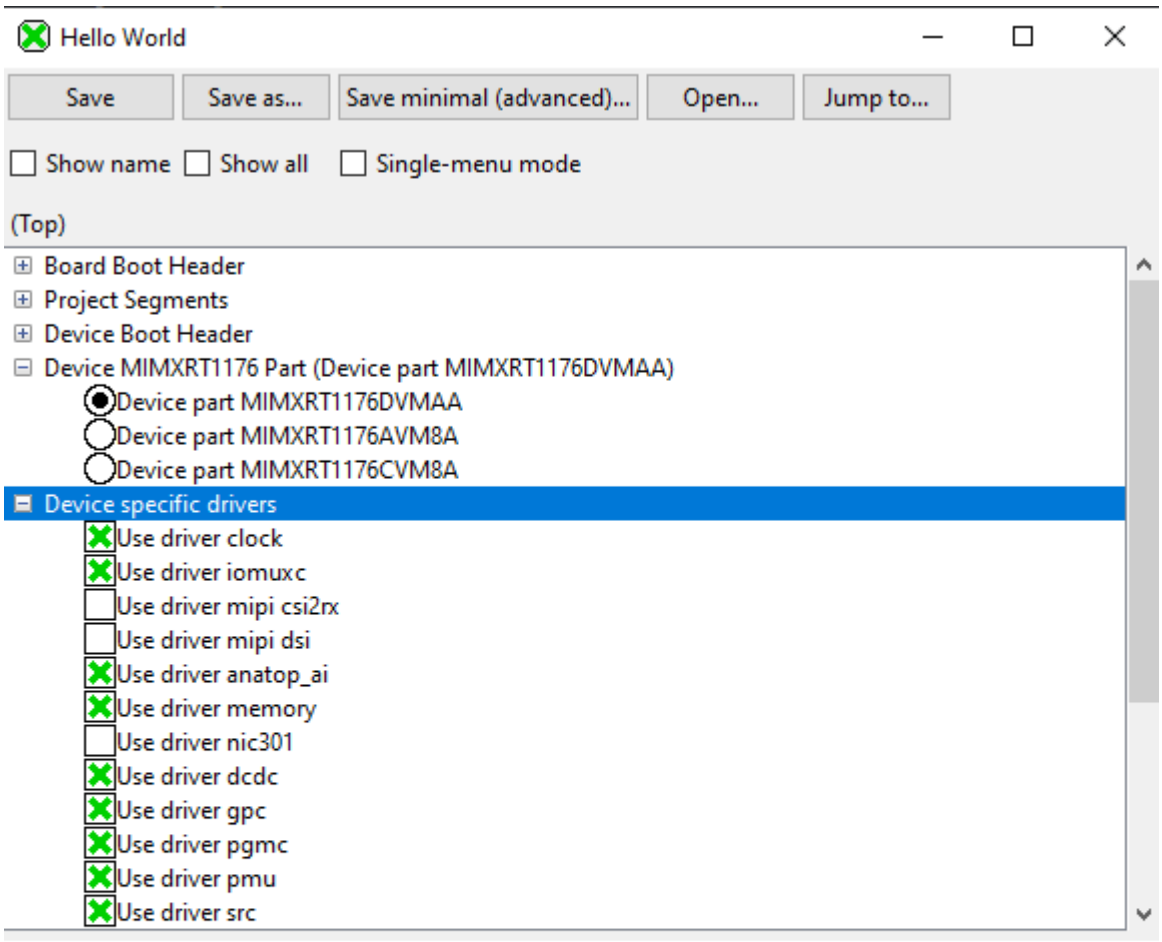
```
west build -b evkbmimxrt1170 examples/demo_apps/hello_world -Dcore_id=cm7 --cmake-only -p
```

Please note the project will be built without --cmake-only parameter.

2. Run guiconfig target

```
west build -t guiconfig
```

Then you will get the Kconfig GUI launched, like




```
Kconfig definition, with parent deps. propagated to 'depends on'
===============================================================

At D:/sdk_next/mcuxsdk\devices\../devices/RT/RT1170/MIMXRT1176\drivers/Kconfig:5
Included via D:/sdk_next/mcuxsdk/examples/demo_apps/hello_world/Kconfig:6 ->
D:/sdk_next/mcuxsdk/Kconfig.mcuxpresso:9 -> D:/sdk_next/mcuxsdk\devices/Kconfig:1
-> D:/sdk_next/mcuxsdk\devices\../devices/RT/RT1170/MIMXRT1176/Kconfig:8
Menu path: (Top)

menu "Device specific drivers"
```

You can reconfigure the project by selecting/deselecting Kconfig options.

After saving and closing the Kconfig GUI, you can directly run west build to build with the new configuration.

Flash ***Note***: Please refer Flash and Debug The Example to enable west flash/debug support.

Flash the hello_world example:

```
west flash -r linkserver
```

Debug Start a gdb interface by following command:

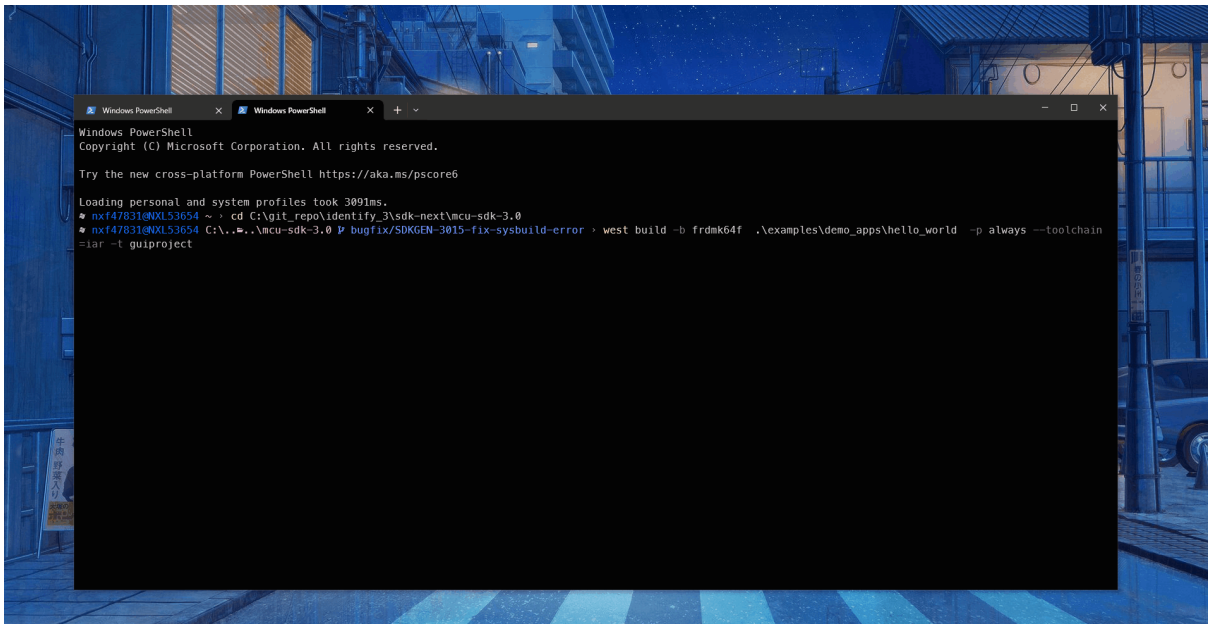
```
west debug -r linkserver
```

Work with IDE Project The above build functionalities are all with CLI. If you want to use the toolchain IDE to work to enjoy the better user experience especially for debugging or you are already used to develop with IDEs like IAR, MDK, Xtensa and CodeWarrior in the embedded world, you can play with our IDE project generation functionality.

This is the cmd to generate the evkbmimxrt1170 hello_world IAR IDE project files.

```
west build -b evkbmimxrt1170 examples/demo_apps/hello_world --toolchain iar -Dcore_id=cm7 --config␣
↪flexspi_nor_debug -p always -t guiproject
```

By default, the IDE project files are generated in mcuxsdk/build/<toolchain> folder, you can open the project file with the IDE tool to work:



Note, please follow the *Installation* to setup the environment especially make sure that *ruby* has been installed.

1.4 Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK Xplorer

1.4.1 Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK Xplorer

Overview

Cadence Tensilica Xplorer is a complete development environment that helps users create application code for high-performance Tensilica processors. Xplorer is the interface to powerful

software development tools such as the XCC compiler, assembler, linker, debugger, code profiler, and full set of GUI tools.

Xplorer (including both GUI and command-line environment) is the only available development IDE for the DSP core of MIMXRT595.

Install Xplorer Toolchains

In this chapter:

- Xtensa Software Tools Platform Support
- Install the Xtensa Xplorer IDE and Tools
- Install License Key
- Identify PC MAC Address
- Download License Key
- Install RT500 DSP Build Configuration
- Install Xtensa On Chip Debugger Daemon
- Install Xtensa Software Tools without IDE

Xtensa Software Tools Platform Support The Xtensa Software Tools are officially supported on the following platforms:

- **Windows:**Win 10 64-bit, Win 8 64-bit, Win 7 64-bit
- **Linux:**RHEL 6 64-bit (with 'Desktop' package installed)

There may be compatibility issues with other versions of Linux or Windows, especially when using the IDE. Also note that security-enhanced Linux (SELinux) is not a supported platform because the OS can prevent different shared libraries (including Xtensa Tools) from loading.

For details on platform support and installation guidelines, see the Xtensa Development Tools Installation Guide.

Parent topic:*Install Xplorer Toolchains*

Install the Xtensa Xplorer IDE and Tools To install the Xtensa Xplorer IDE and tools:

1. Go to the URL https://tensilicatools.com/download/fusion-f1-dsp-sdk-for-rt500/ and log in.

   Note: Ensure to register, if you are accessing the page for the first time. You must use your corporate email address to register.



2. You receive an email confirmation with an activation link from '**Tensilica Tools**' no-reply@tensilicatools.com.

   Note: Ensure to check the spam folder if this email is not in your inbox. Click the activation link to complete the registration.

3. Login with your credentials to see the available materials for download.

- Download and install the **XTENSA Xplorer IDE V10.1.11** for your operating system (Windows or Linux).
- Download the **DSP Configuration V10.1.11** for your operating system. This is installed later through the IDE. For details, see Install RT500 DSP Build Configuration.

  Note: NXP recommends version **10.1.11** of the Xtensa Xplorer IDE and tools for use with the RT500 DSP.

Parent topic:*Install Xplorer Toolchains*

Install License Key Xtensa development tools use FLEXlm for license management. FLEXlm licensing is required for tools such as the Xtensa Xplorer IDE, Xtensa C and C++ compiler, and Instruction Set Simulator (ISS).

Currently RT500 supports node-locked license for Xtensa tools. A node-locked license permits tools to run on a specific computer, tied to the MAC address of the primary network interface that is permanently attached to the machine.

Identify PC MAC Address To generate the correct license file, identify the appropriate MAC for the computer you plan to run Xtensa tools on. Remove '-' or ':' symbols in the MAC address.





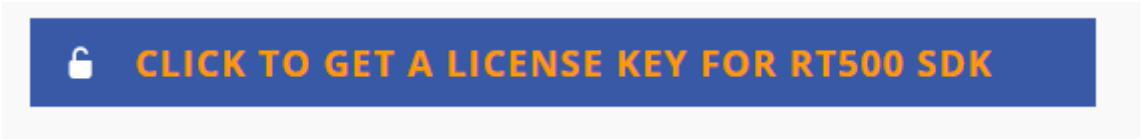
Note: Linux NOTE MAC address MUST be associated with eth0 interface. If not, FLEXlm cannot perform the license checkout and you will not be able to compile or simulate you code. If your host has the MAC address associated with another interface. For example: em1, you may use the following approach, or another approach recommended by your IT team to rename the interface to eth0.

```
# Add udev rule for naming interface
$ sudo vim /etc/udev/rules.d/70-persistent-net.rules
# udev rule (replace 'XX' with the MAC address of your PC):
SUBSYSTEM==”net”, ACTION==”add”, ATTR{address}==”XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX”, NAME=”eth0”
# Change ”em1” to ”eth0” in your interfaces file.
$ sudo vim /etc/network/interfaces
# Restart udev or reboot machine
$ sudo reboot
```

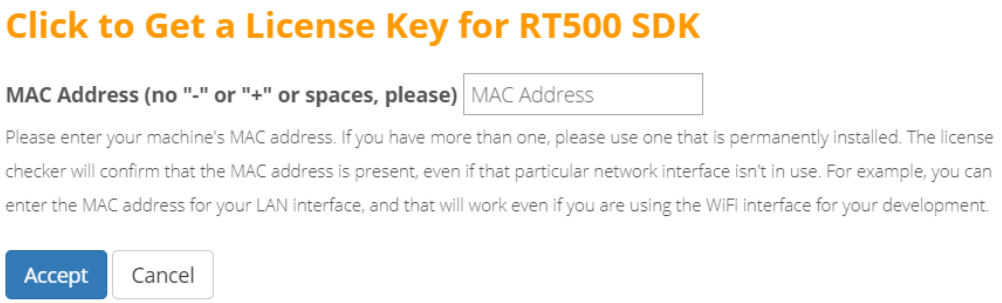
Parent topic: Install License Key

Download License Key To download the license key:

1. Click the **CLICK TO GET A LICESNE KEY FOR RT500 SDK** button.



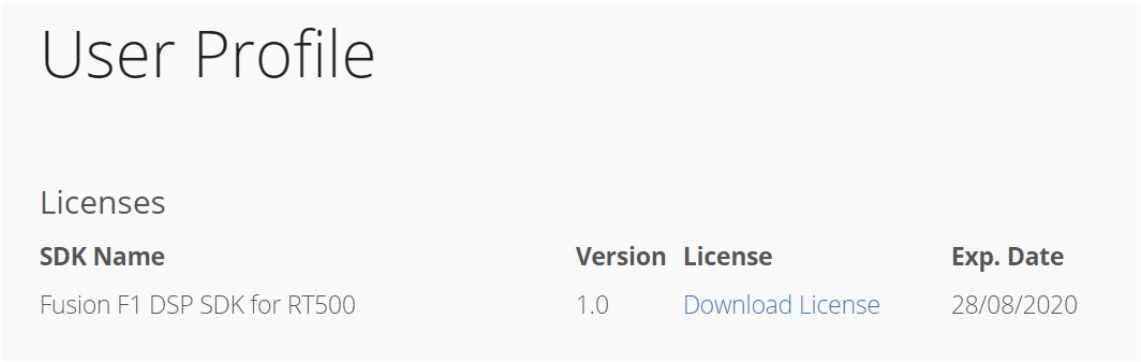
2. Click the **Accept** button.



The following message appears.

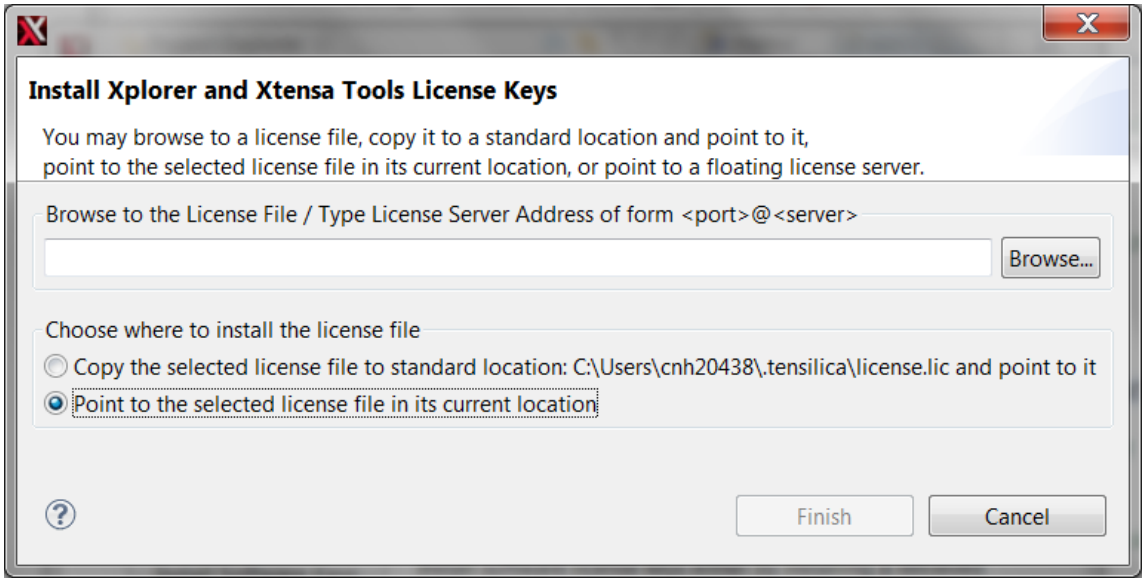
|

3. Check the license in the user-profile or the email.



The license file gets generated.

4. Download the license file.
5. Open the recently installed Xplorer V10.1.11, select menu **Help - Xplorer License Keys** > **Install Software Keys**.
6. Select the license key file.
7. Click the **Finish** button.



Note: The generated license file only supports debug/run on the RT500 device target. It does not support software simulation/Xplorer ISS. Contact Cadence directly if you have special must run software simulations.

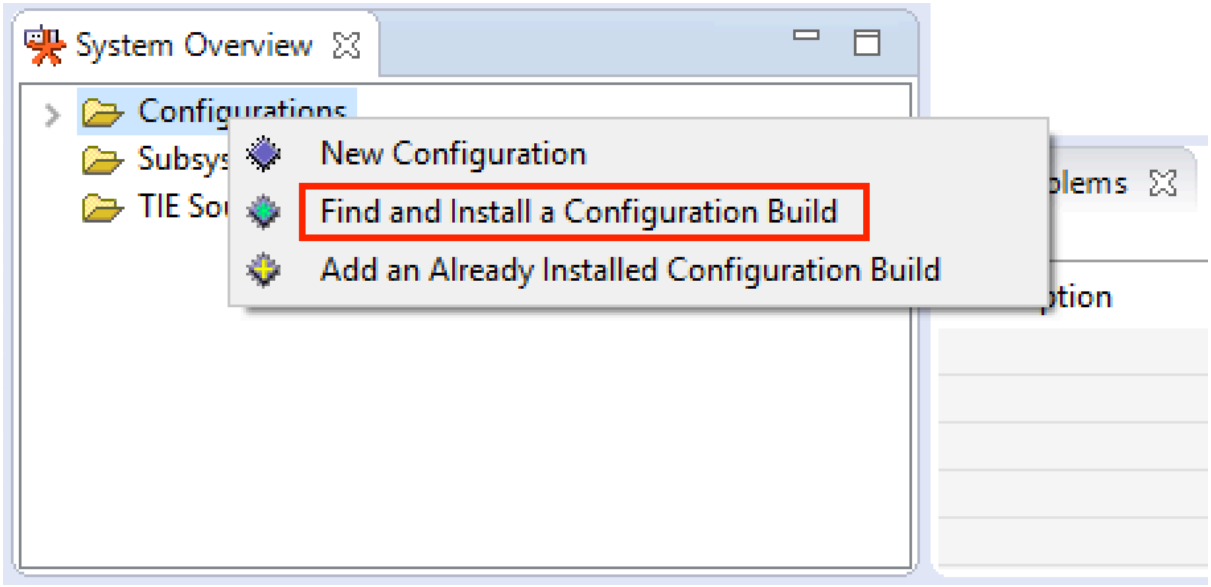
Parent topic: Install License Key

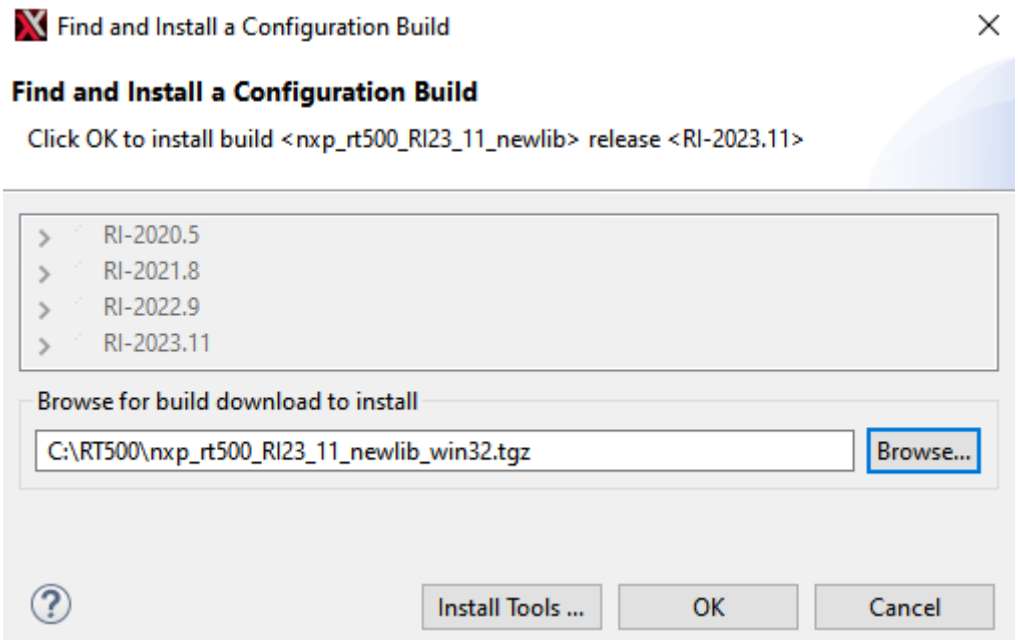
Parent topic:*Install Xplorer Toolchains*

Install RT500 DSP Build Configuration 'Build Configuration' is a term that describes all parameters and necessary build includes for the Tensilica processor implementation you are developing with. It is mandatory to install a specific build configuration before starting development on RT500.

The build configuration is provided by NXP as a binary file that can be imported into the Xplorer IDE. This file can be downloaded for your OS from the Tensilica URL.

The build configuration can be installed into the IDE using the 'System Overview' panel which is in the lower left corner by default. If this panel is not visible, it can be toggled using menu item **Window > Show View - System Overview**.





Select the directory and click **OK**.

Parent topic:*Install Xplorer Toolchains*

Install Xtensa On Chip Debugger Daemon The Xtensa On Chip Debugger Daemon (xt-ocd), is a powerful gdb-based debugging tool. It is not installed by default with the Xplorer IDE. A self-extracting executable installer is included with the IDE, which can be found at the following location:

Windows

```
C:\usr\xt-ocd-14.11-windows64-installer.exe
```

Linux

```
~/xtensa/XtDevTools/downloads/RI-2023.11/tools/xt-ocd-14.11-linux64-installerr
```

At this moment xt-ocd supports J-Link and ARM RVI/DSTREAM probes over Serial Wire Debug (SWD) for RT500. xt-ocd installs support for J-Link probes but does not install the required J-Link drivers which must be installed separately. The RT500 requires J-Link software version 6.46 or newer.

Note: When installing xt-ocd on Linux, you must manually add a symlink to the installed J-Link driver:

```
ln -s <jlink-install-dir>libjlinkarm.so.6 <xocd-install-dir>/modules/libjlinkarm.so.6
```

xt-ocd is configured with an XML input file 'topology.xml' that you will need to modify to fit your debugger hardware. Using J-link as example, use below content to replace the original template.

Note: You must replace 'usbser' section to your own JINK serial number (9 digits number on the back of the J-Link hardware).

```
<configuration>
<controller id='Controller0' module='jlink' usbser='600100000' type='swd' speed='1000000' locking='1'/>
<driver id='XtensaDriver0' dap='1' xdm-id='12' module='xtensa' step-intr='mask,stepover,setps' />
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
<chain controller='Controller0'>
<tap id='TAP0' irwidth='4' />
</chain>
<system module='jtag'>
<component id='Component0' tap='TAP0' config='trax' />
</system>
<device id='Xtensa0' component='Component0' driver='XtensaDriver0' ap-sel='3' />
<application id='GDBStub' module='gdbstub' port='20000' sys-reset='0'>
<target device='Xtensa0' />
</application>
</configuration>
```

Below showing another topology.xml example for ARM RealView ICE (RVI) and DSTREAM debug probes.

```
<configuration>
<controller id='Controller0' module='rvi' />
<driver id='XtensaDriver0' debug='' inst-verify='mem' module='xtensa' step-intr='mask,stepover,setps'/>
<driver id='TraxDriver0'   module='trax' />
<chain controller='Controller0'>
<tap id='TAP0' irwidth='4' />
</chain>
<system module='jtag'>
<component id='Component0' tap='TAP0' config='trax' />
</system>
<device id='Xtensa0' component='Component0' driver='XtensaDriver0' xdm-id='12' />
<device id='Trax0'   component='Component0' driver='TraxDriver0' xdm-id='12' />
<application id='GDBStub' module='gdbstub' port='20000' >
<target device='Xtensa0' />
</application>
<application id='TraxApp' module='traxapp' port='11444'>
<target device='Trax0' />
</application>
</configuration>
```

Congratulations! Now you have all Xplorer toolchains installed.

For more details, about Xtensa software tools, build configurations, or xt-ocd daemon, see the full set of documents in Xplorer menu **Help > PDF Documentation**.

Parent topic:*Install Xplorer Toolchains*

Install Xtensa Software Tools without IDE The Xtensa Software Tools optionally be installed without the use of the IDE, which may be desired for use in a command-line only Linux environment, or for better compatibility with an unsupported Linux environment.

The command-line tools package is available as a redistributable zip file that is extracted with an Xplorer IDE install. The IDE must be installed one time in your organization to gain access to the tools package, which is then available at:

```
~/xtensa/XtDevTools/downloads/RI-2023.11/tools/ XtensaTools_RI_2023_11_linux.tgzz
```

With the tools package and the DSP Build Configuration package available from, the Tensilica Tools download site (see Xtensa Software Tools Platform Support, the toolchain can be set up as follows.

```
# Create Xtensa install root
mkdir -p ~/xtensa/tools
mkdir -p ~/xtensa/builds
# Set up the configuration-independent Xtensa Tool:
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
tar zxvf XtensaTools_RI_2023_11_linux.tgz -C ~/xtensa/tools
# Set up the configuration-specific core files:
tar zxvf nxp_RT500_RI23_11_newlib_linux_redist.tgz -C ~/xtensa/builds
# Install the Xtensa development toolchain:
cd ~/xtensa./builds/RI-2023.11-linux/nxp_RT500_RI23_11_newlib/install
\--xtensa-tools./tools/RI-2023.11-linux/XtensaTools \
--registry ./tools/RI-2023.11-linux/XtensaTools/config
```

Parent topic:*Install Xplorer Toolchains*

Install MCUXpresso SDK

In this section:

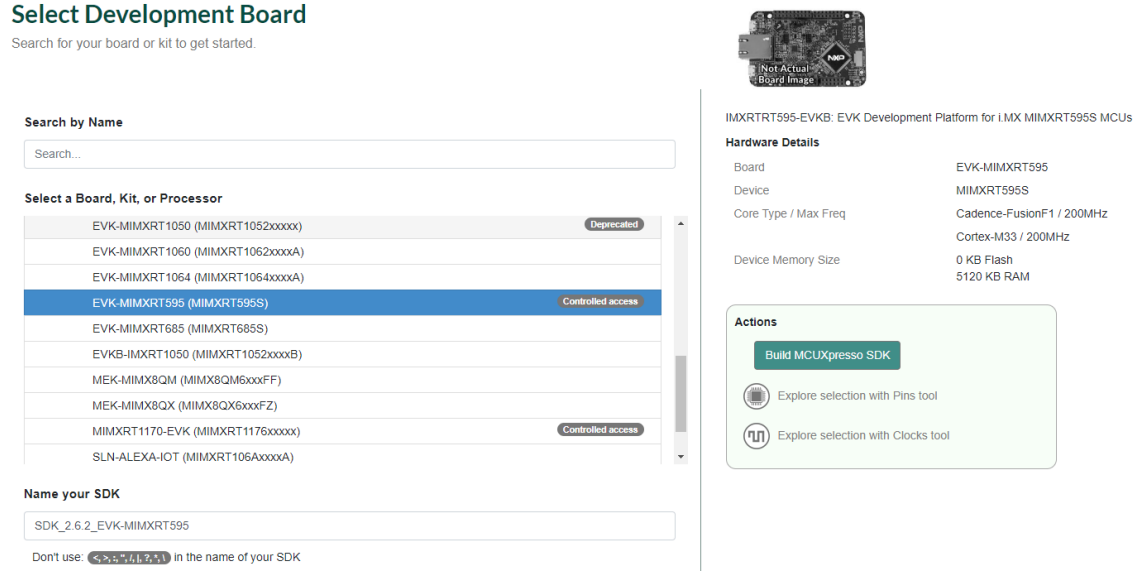
- Download MCUXpresso SDK for RT500
- MCUXpresso SDK DSP Enablement
- DSP Core Initialization

Download MCUXpresso SDK for RT500 DSP enablement for RT500, including drivers, middleware libraries, and demo applications are included with the latest RT500 SDK available for download at https://mcuxpresso.nxp.com.

Note: Ensure to register, if you are accessing the page for the first time.

Log in to use the SDK builder. The steps are:

1. Click **Select Board**.
2. Search by name for board: **RT595**'.
3. Select **EVK-MIMXRT595**.
4. Click **Build MCUXpresso SDK**.



Parent topic:*Install MCUXpresso SDK*

MCUXpresso SDK DSP Enablement The DSP-specific enablement is available inside the MCUXpresso SDK release package for RT500. The path is: <SDK_ROOT>/devices/MIMXRT595S/

Unified device and peripheral driver source code that compiled for both ARM and DSP cores.

Note: Only a limited subset of peripheral drivers and components are supported on the DSP.

<SDK_ROOT>/boards/evkmimxrt595/dsp_examples/

DSP example applications are available at:<SDK_ROOT>/middleware/multicore/rpmsg_lite/

Unified RPMsg-Lite multicore communication library, with porting layers for ARM and DSP cores.
<SDK_ROOT>/middleware/dsp/audio_framework/

Xtensa Audio Framework (XAF) for DSP core

Parent topic:*Install MCUXpresso SDK*

DSP Core Initialization In order to minimize power consumption, the DSP core is NOT powered when RT500 boots up.

To run or debug DSP applications: you will first need to execute some code on the ARM core to initialize the DSP.

A DSP management interface library is provided in the SDK, at <SDK_ROOT>/devices/MIMXRT595S/drivers/fsl_dsp.c:

```
/* Initialize DSP core. */
void DSP_Init(void);
/* Deinit DSP core. */
void DSP_Deinit(void);
/* Copy DSP image to destination address. */
void DSP_CopyImage(dsp_copy_image_t *dspCopyImage);
<SDK_ROOT>/devices/MIMXRT595S/drivers/fsl_dsp.h:
/* Start DSP core. */
void DSP_Start(void);
/* Stop DSP core. */
void DSP_Stop(void);
```

The SDK includes a helper function used by the DSP example applications at <SDK_ROOT>/boards/evkmimxrt595/dsp_examples/hello_world_usart /cm33/.

```
/* Prepare DSP core for code execution:
- Setup PMIC for DSP
- Initialize DSP clock and core
- (Optional) Copy DSP binary image into RAM
- Start DSP core
*/
void BOARD_DSP_Init(void);
```

After executing this function during your ARM application startup, the DSP is initialized and ready to run. The code is loaded and debugged on the DSP with Xplorer IDE and tools.

Parent topic:*Install MCUXpresso SDK*

Run and Debug DSP Demo using Xplorer IDE

- Prepare Arm Core for 'Hello World'
- Prepare DSP Core for 'Hello World'
- DSP Linking Profiles
- Build the Xplorer project.

- Start Xtensa Debugger Daemon
- Run and Debug DSP Audio Framework
- EVK Board Setup for Audio Demo
- Debug Audio Demo
- Launch DSP Application from Arm Core

Prepare Arm Core for 'Hello World' The DSP demos contained in the MCUXpresso SDK each consist of two separate applications that run on the Arm core and DSP core. The Arm core application initializes the DSP core in the manner described in section 2.3 and executes other application-specific functionality.

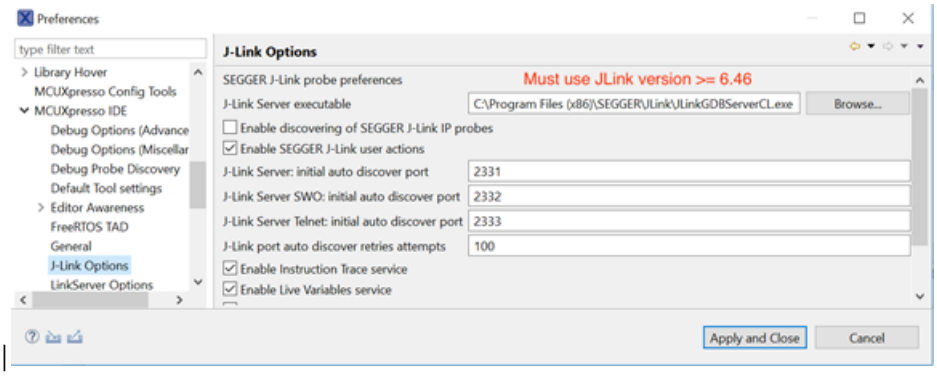
In order to debug the 'Hello World' DSP application, first set up and execute the Arm application using an environment of your choosing:

- Build and execute the 'Hello World' Arm demo at:

```
<SDK_ROOT>/boards/evkmimxrt595/dsp_examples/hello_world_usart/cm33/
```

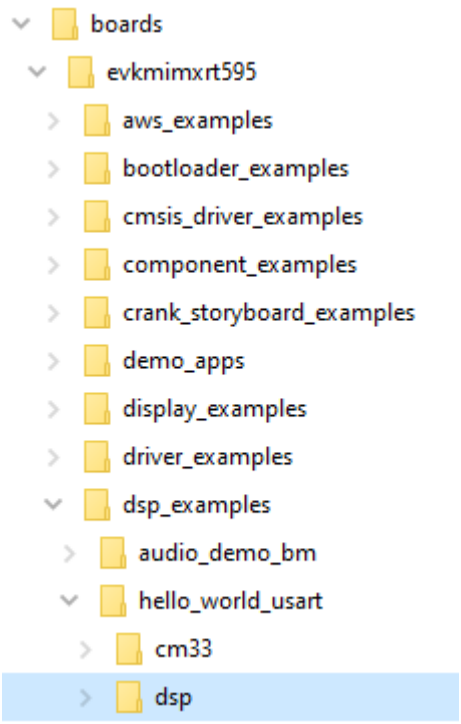
Preparing an Arm core development environment is outside the scope of this document. For information on using the SDK for Arm core development, refer to the document 'Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK for MIMXRT500.pdf' located under <SDK_ROOT>/docs/.

Note: SEGGER J-Link software version >= 6.46 is required for compatibility with RT500. MCUXpresso IDE may ship with an older version, which is customized as in Figure 1.



Parent topic:*Run and Debug DSP Demo using Xplorer IDE*

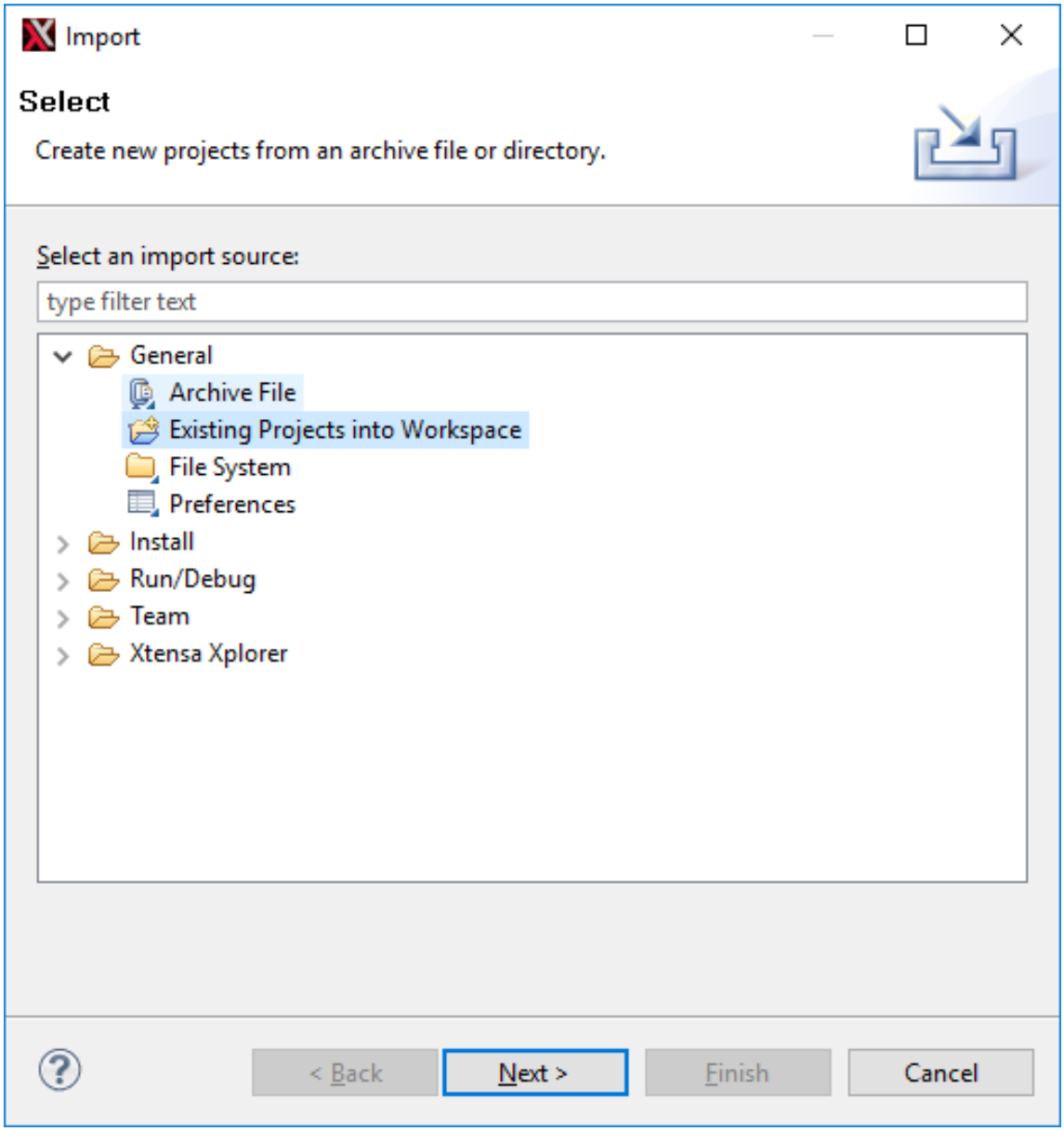
Prepare DSP Core for 'Hello World' The RT500 SDK provides a collection of DSP example applications located under boards/evkmimxrt595/dsp_examples/. Each DSP example has two source directories, one for the Arm Cortex-M33 core ('cm33') and one for the DSP fusion f1 core ('fusionf1'):



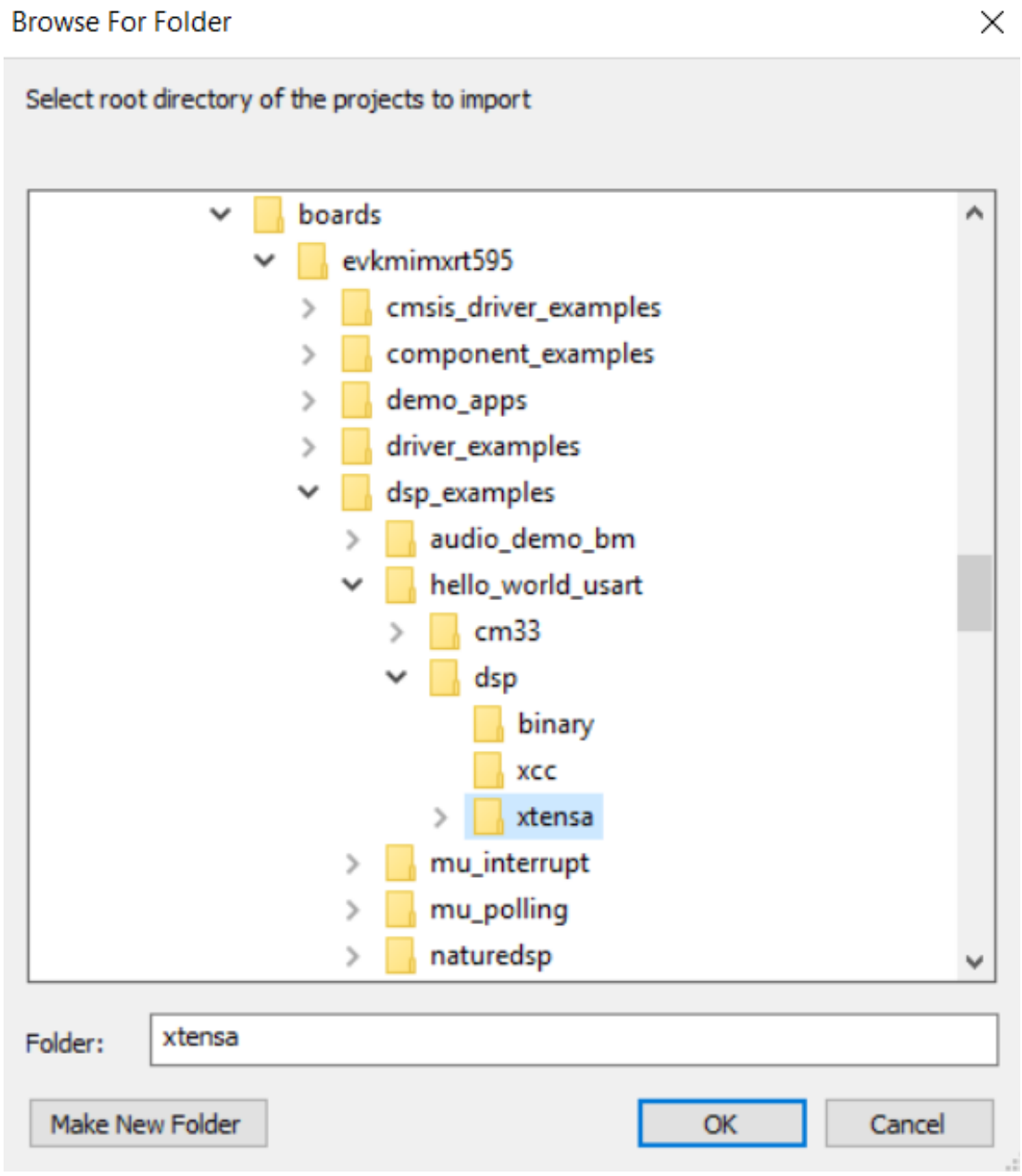
Under these directories are build projects for different supported toolchains. For the DSP example above, the 'xcc' project allows to build on the command line and the 'xtensa' directory is an Xplorer IDE project.

To run the 'Hello World' demo, first you must import SDK sources into Xplorer IDE.

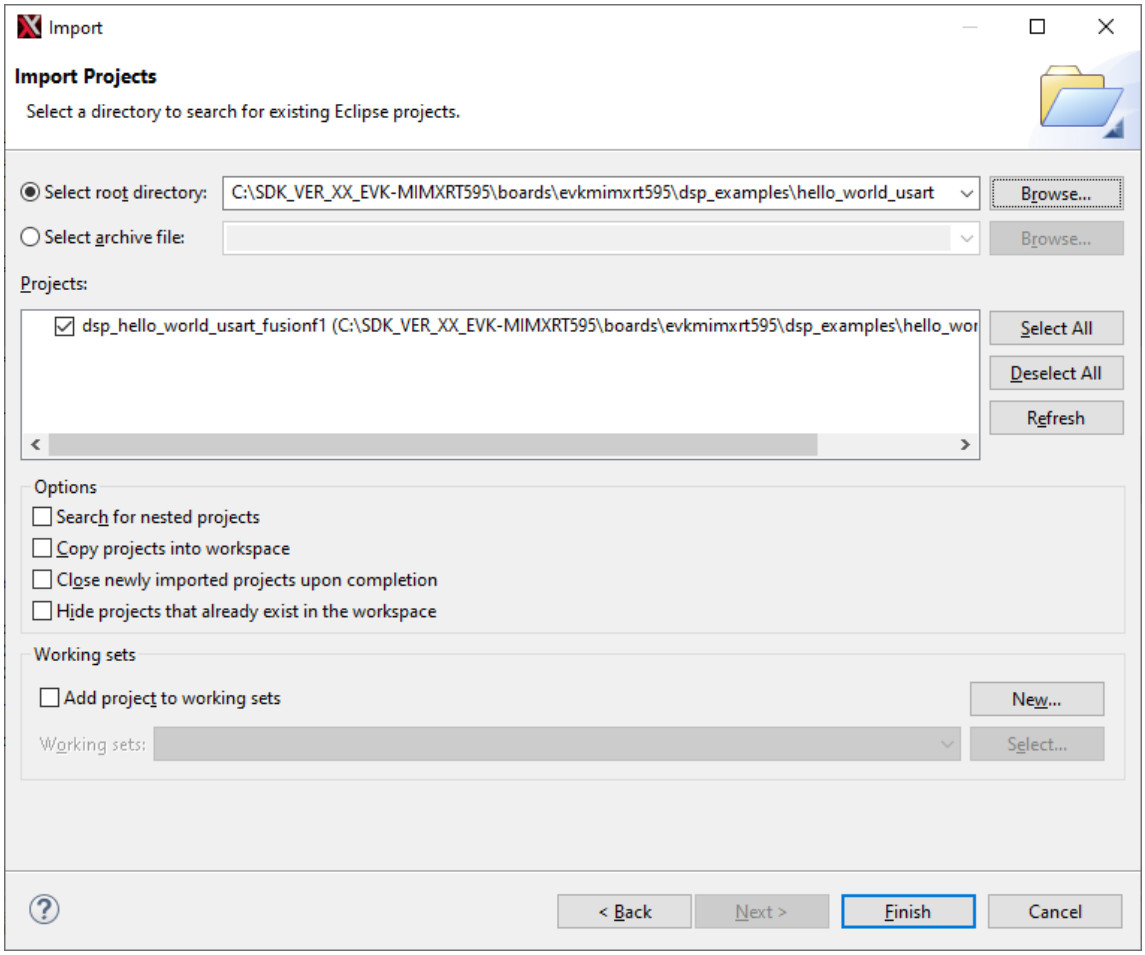
1. Use menu item **File** > **Import** > **Existing Projects into Workspace**.



2. Select SDK directory <SDK_ROOT>\boards\evkmimxrt595\dsp_examples\hello_world_usart\fusionf1\xtensa as root directory and leave all other check boxes blank as default.


Browse For Folder
Select root directory of the projects to import
boards
evkmimxrt595
cmsis_driver_examples
component_examples
demo_apps
driver_examples
dsp_examples
audio_demo_bm
hello_world_usart
cm33
dsp
binary
xcc
xtensa
mu_interrupt
mu_polling
naturedsp
Folder:
xtensa
Make New Folder
OK
Cancel

3. Click **OK**.



4. Click the **Finish** button.

   The ‘dsp_hello_world_usart_fusionf1’ project appears in the **Project Explorer**.

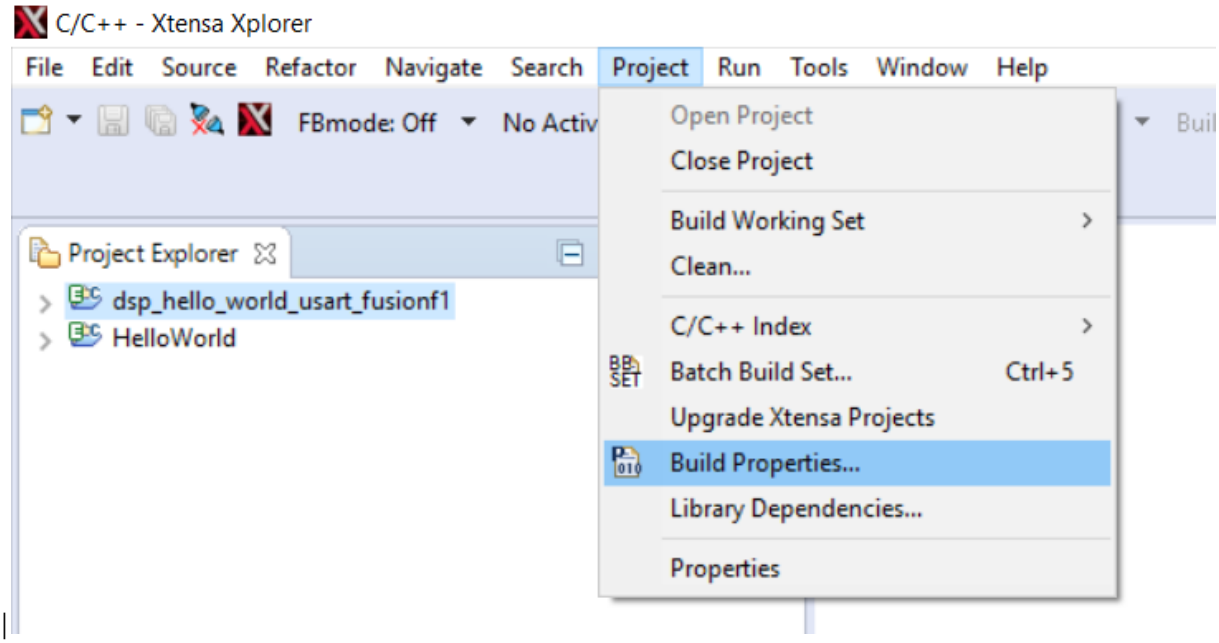
   .

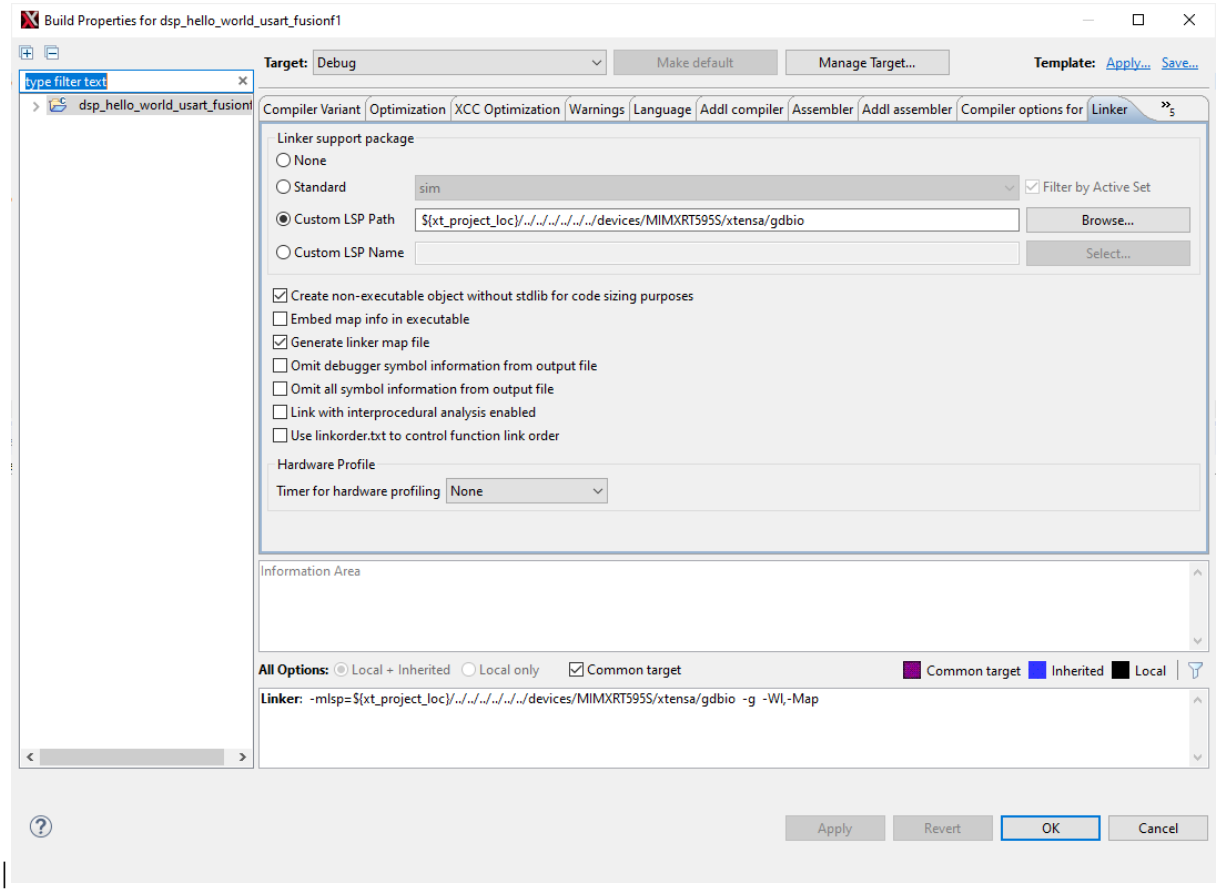
Parent topic:*Run and Debug DSP Demo using Xplorer IDE*

DSP Linking Profiles The Xtensa Software Tools use linker support packages (LSPs) to link a Fusion DSP application for the RT500. An LSP includes both a system memory map and a collection of libraries to include into the final binary. These LSPs are provided in the MCUXpresso SDK under <SDK_ROOT>/devices/MIMXRT595S/xtensa/.

DSP sample applications are configured to link against one of these custom LSPs. By default, ‘Debug’ targets links against the gdbio LSP which is intended to be used with an attached debugger and captures I/O requests (printf) through gdb. The ‘Release’ target links against the min-rt LSP which includes minimal runtime support.

You can see and change which LSP is being actively used by the project target in the Xplorer IDE in the Linker menu of the project.

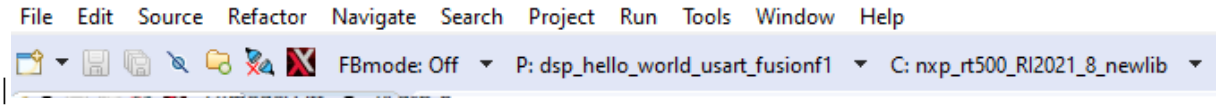




The MCUXpresso SDK ships with other standard LSPs for RT500. For more information on using LSPs and how to create a custom memory map using Xtensa software tools, see the Cadence Linker Support Packages (LSPs) Reference Manual.

Parent topic:*Run and Debug DSP Demo using Xplorer IDE*

Build the Xplorer project. To make a build selection for the project and hardware target configuration, use the drop-down buttons on the menu bar.



Parent topic:*Run and Debug DSP Demo using Xplorer IDE*

Start Xtensa Debugger Daemon Connect the EVK board to a PC via the USB debug interface (J40) and open up a serial interface on your PC using a terminal tool such as Tera term or PuTTY on Windows or screen on Linux.

Remove Jumpers JP17, JP18, JP19 for SWD to connect to the chip and Serial interface on J40.

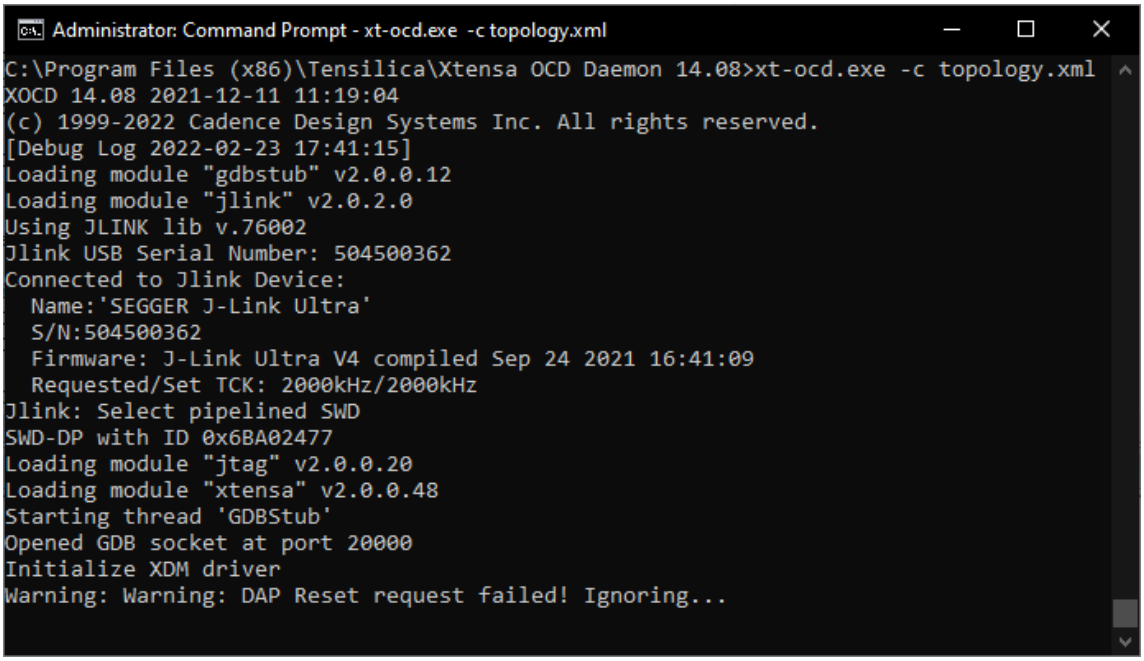
1. Load CM33 hello_world_usart you build from step 3.1 using J-link
2. To debug DSP applications on RT500, you must have the xt-ocd daemon up running. This application runs a gdb server that the Xtensa core debugger connects with.
3. Go to the command-line window and cd to xt-ocd daemon installation path. By default, it is C:\Program Files (x86)\Tensilica\Xtensa OCD Daemon 14.11 on Windows.
4. Update the topology.xml file with your J-link serial number. Topology.xml file: Edited J-link serial number in usbser field. Ensure dap = 1 in order for it to work.

```
<configuration>
        <controller id='Controller0' module='jlink' usbser='600112004' type='swd' speed='1000000' locking='1'/>

  <driver id='XtensaDriver0' dap='1' xdm-id='12' module='xtensa' step-intr='mask,stepover,setps' />
  <chain controller='Controller0'>
    <tap id='TAP0' irwidth='4' />
  </chain>
  <system module='jtag'>
    <component id='Component0' tap='TAP0' config='trax' />
  </system>
  <device id='Xtensa0' component='Component0' driver='XtensaDriver0' ap-sel='3' />
  <application id='GDBStub' module='gdbstub' port='20000' sys-reset='0'>
    <target device='Xtensa0' />
  </application>
</configuration>
```

5. Execute the daemon with your custom topology:

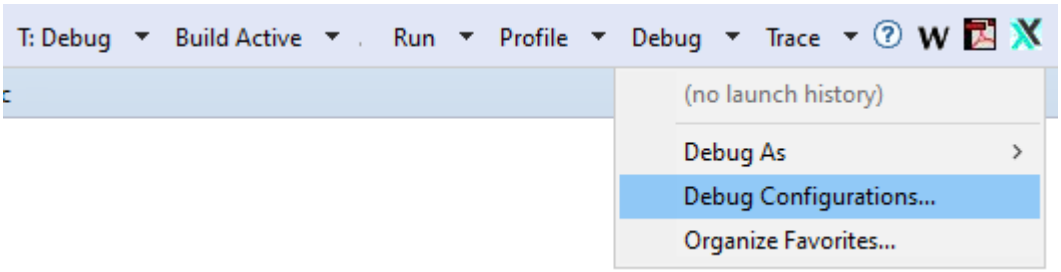
```
xt-ocd.exe -c topology.xml
```

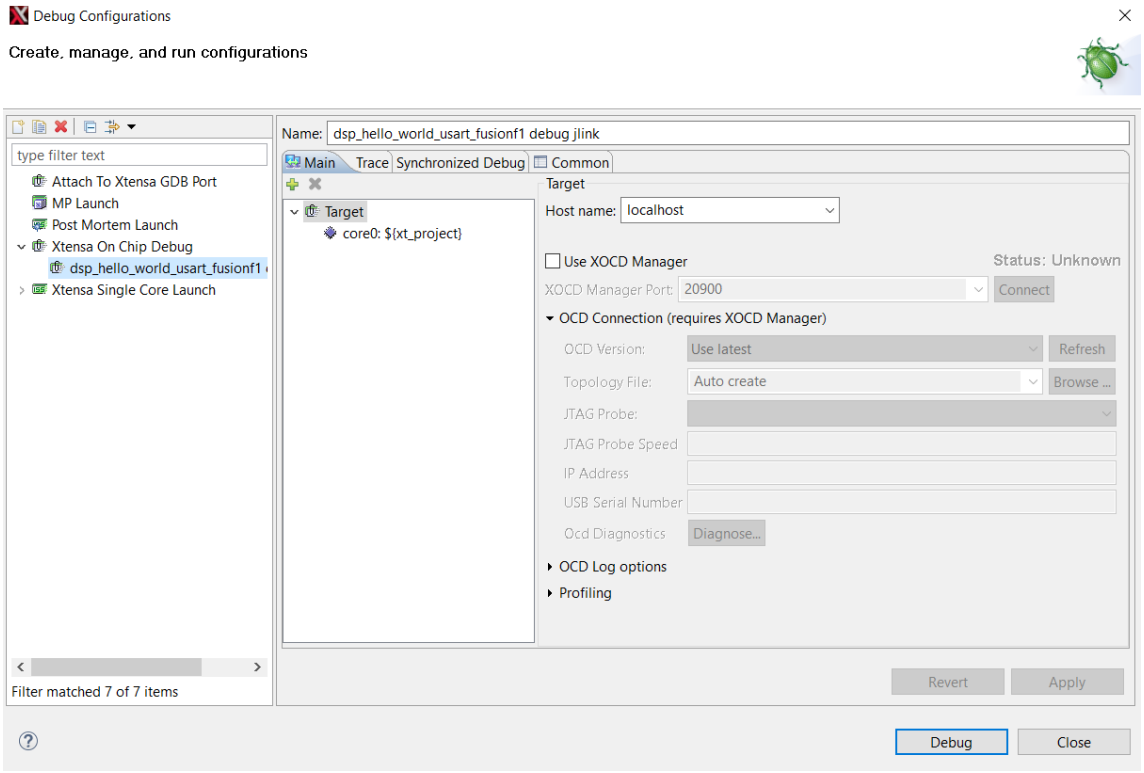


Note: tSome warning messages are expected and can be ignored. If you receive an error initializing the XDM driver, you may need to initialize and start he DSP core before debugging. For details, see DSP Core Initialization.

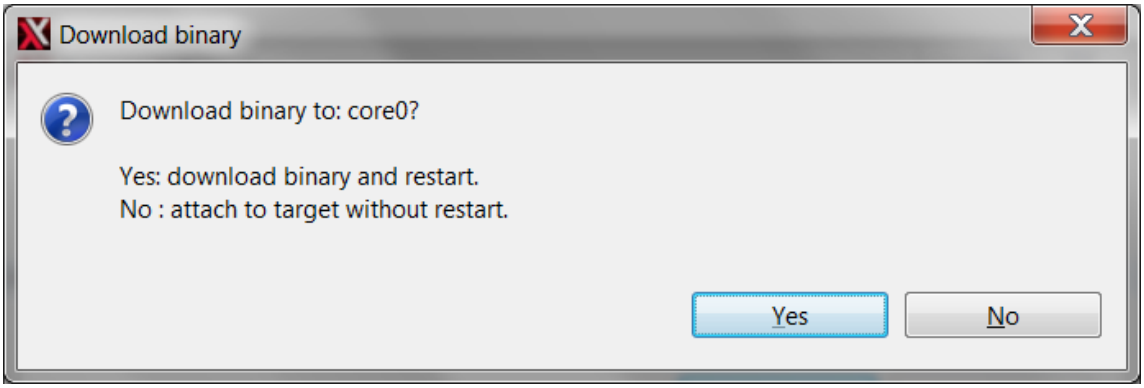
Note: For more information on xt-ocd runtime options and configuration, see Chapter 7 of the Xtensa Debug Guide (available in Help > PDF Documentation).

6. Use the action buttons on the right side of the menu bar to debug / profile / trace. A default debug configuration is provided by the SDK project which utilizes the on-chip debugger.

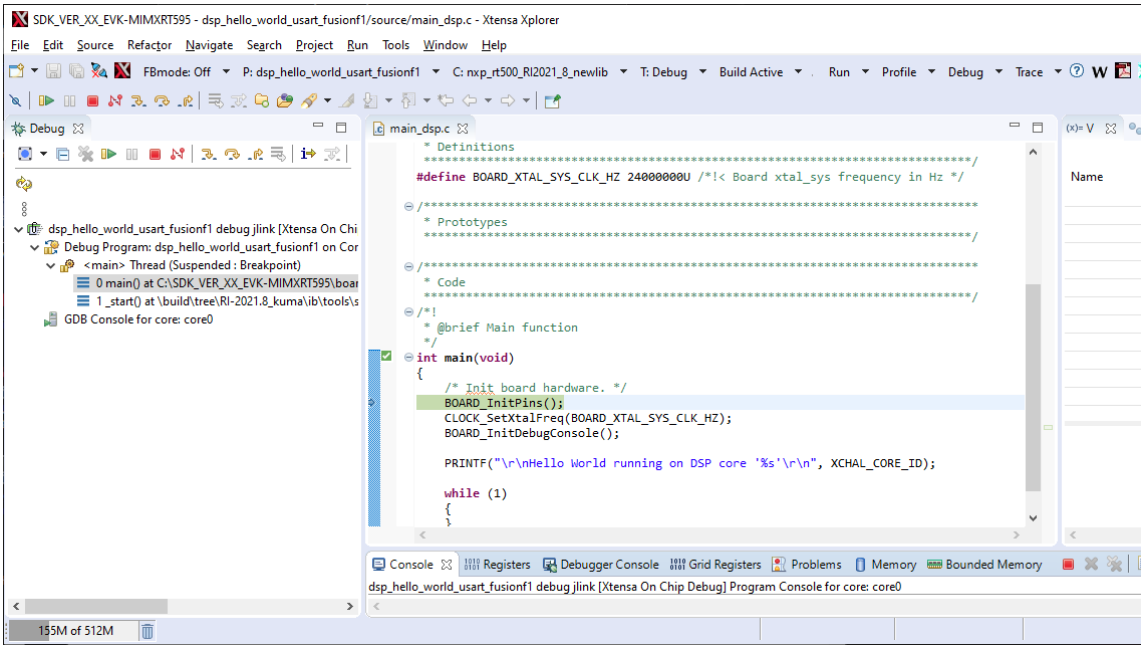




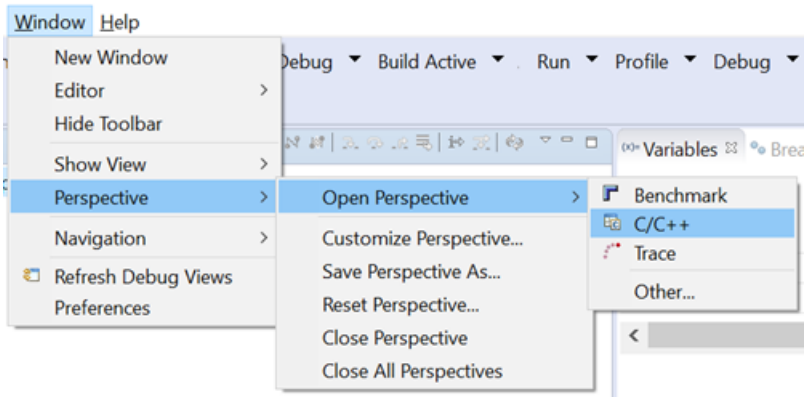
7. Once the **Debug**' button is selected, the actual debug on the chip starts. Xplorer prompts you to download binaries to the hardware.



8. Select **Yes**.
9. Xplorer IDE transitions to the **Debug** perspective after binary download.
10. After stepping through the 'printf' statement, the output appears in the Console view of the IDE.



11. Hello World starts running on core nxp_RT500_RI23_11_newlib.
12. After the debug is complete, select the previous code perspective to return to the default IDE layout.



Parent topic:*Run and Debug DSP Demo using Xplorer IDE*

Run and Debug DSP Audio Framework The DSP audio framework demo consists of separate applications that run on the Arm core and DSP core. The Arm application runs a command shell and relays the input requests to the DSP application using RPMsg-Lite.

EVK Board Setup for Audio Demo The DSP audio demo is tested against EVK-MIMXRT595 and requires the CODEC line out (J4), and UART for serial console.

In order for the CODEC to output audio properly, you must attach two jumpers on the board as follows:

- JP7-1 is connected to JP8-2

The demo uses the UART for console input and output. Connect the EVK board to a PC via the USB debug interface (J40) and open up a serial interface on your PC using a terminal tool such as Tera term or PuTTY on Windows or screen on Linux.

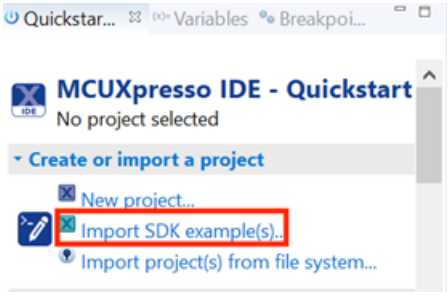
- Remove Jumpers JP17, JP18, JP19 for SWD to connect to the chip and Serial interface on J40.
- DSP debugging is through SWD only, so connect J-Link to SWD interface.

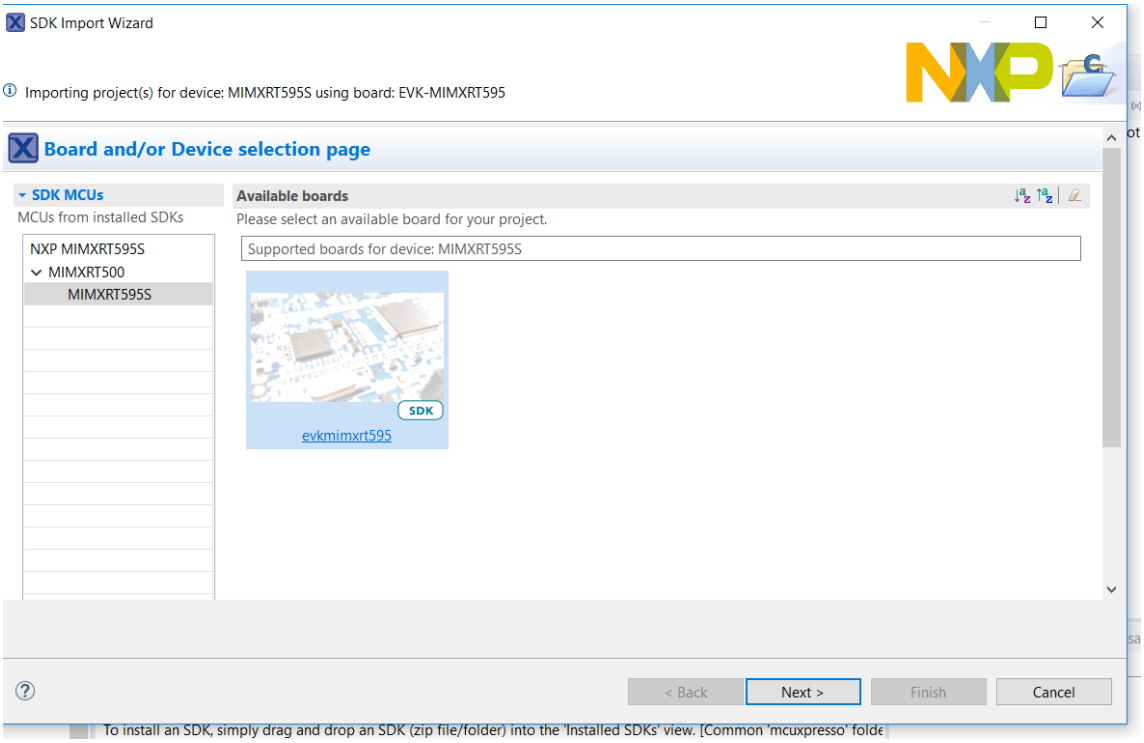
Parent topic: Run and Debug DSP Audio Framework

Debug Audio Demo To debug this DSP application, first set up, and execute the Arm application using an environment of your choosing (see 'Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK for EVK-MIMXRT595.pdf' for Arm development environment options).

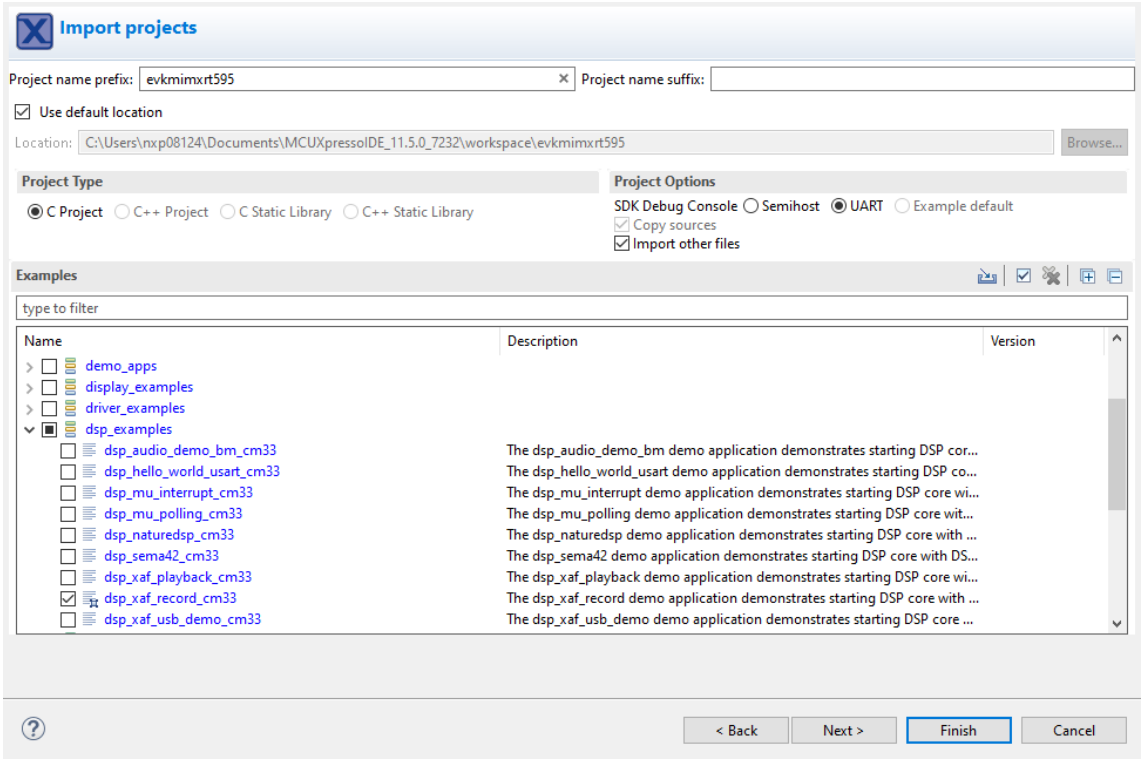
The example that follows uses NXP MCUXpresso IDE for the Arm environment.

1. Install the MCUXpresso SDK for RT500 into the MCUXpresso IDE using the 'Installed SDKs' panel at the bottom:
2. Use the QuickStart menu on the lower left of the screen to import an example from the installed SDK.

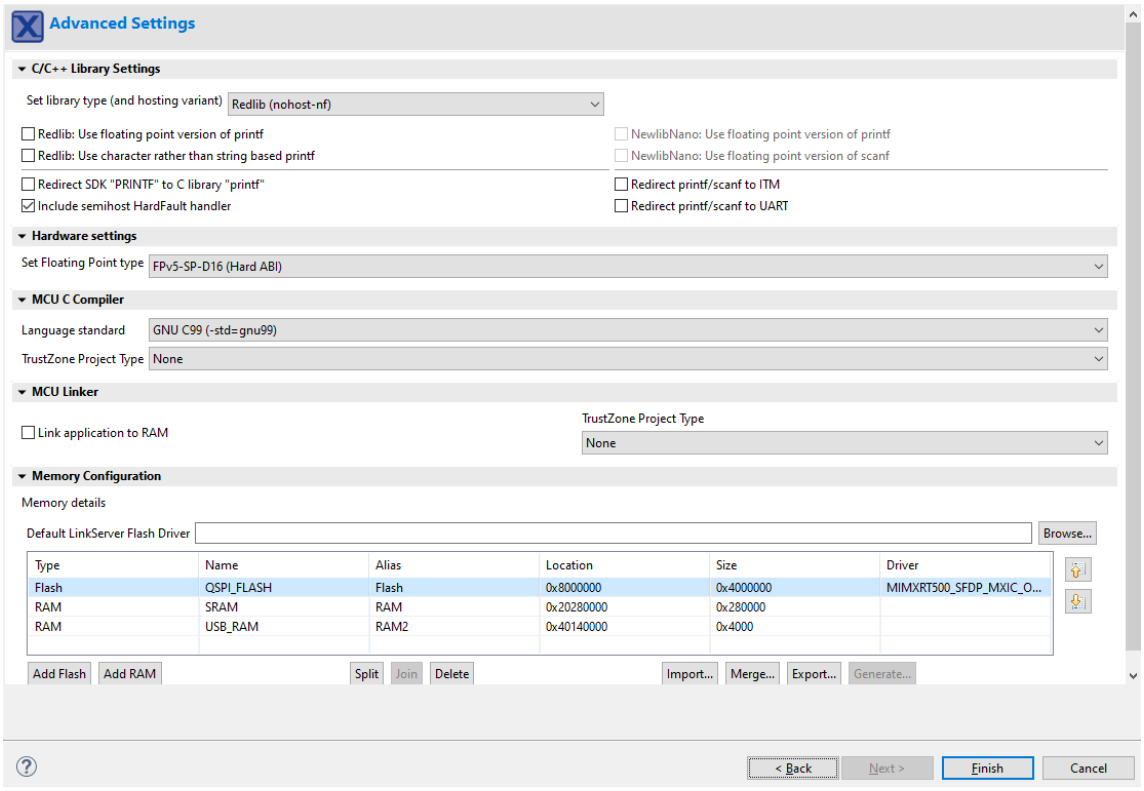




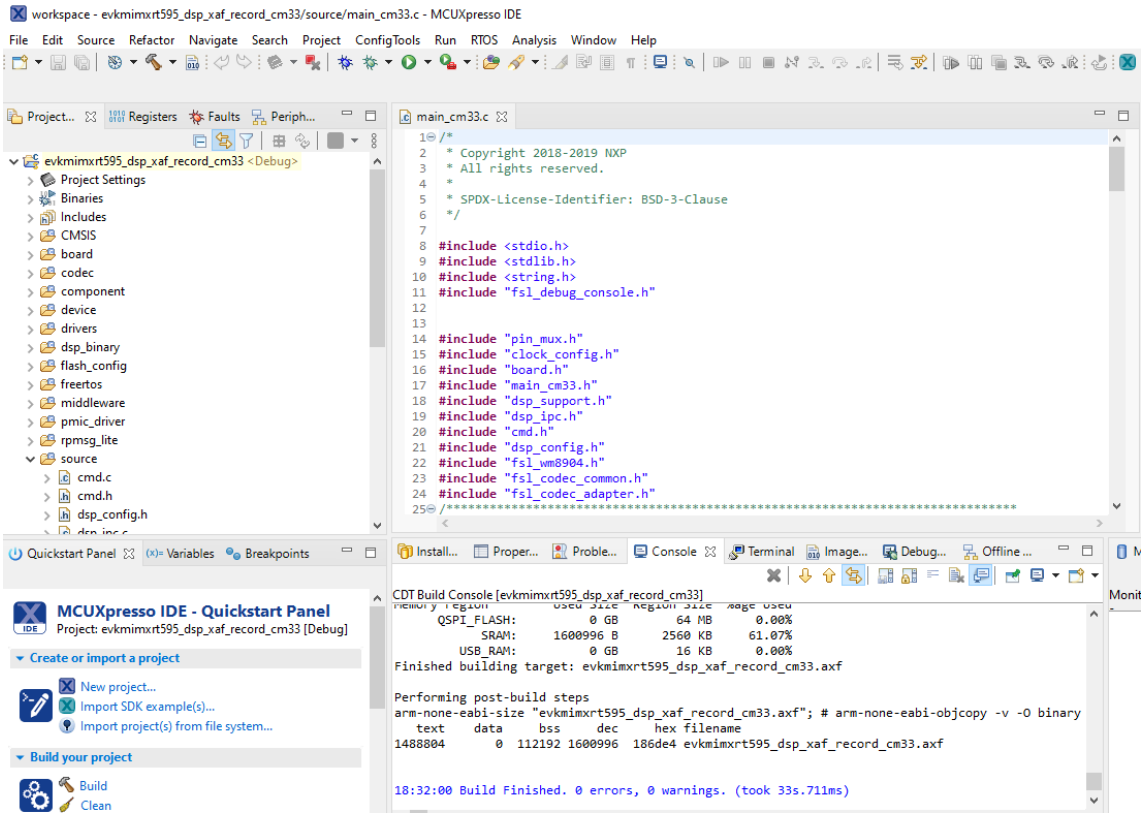
3. Select the 'dsp_xaf_record_cm33' example for Cortex-M33 core.
4. Select UART in project options after clicking the dsp_xaf_record_cm33 example project.



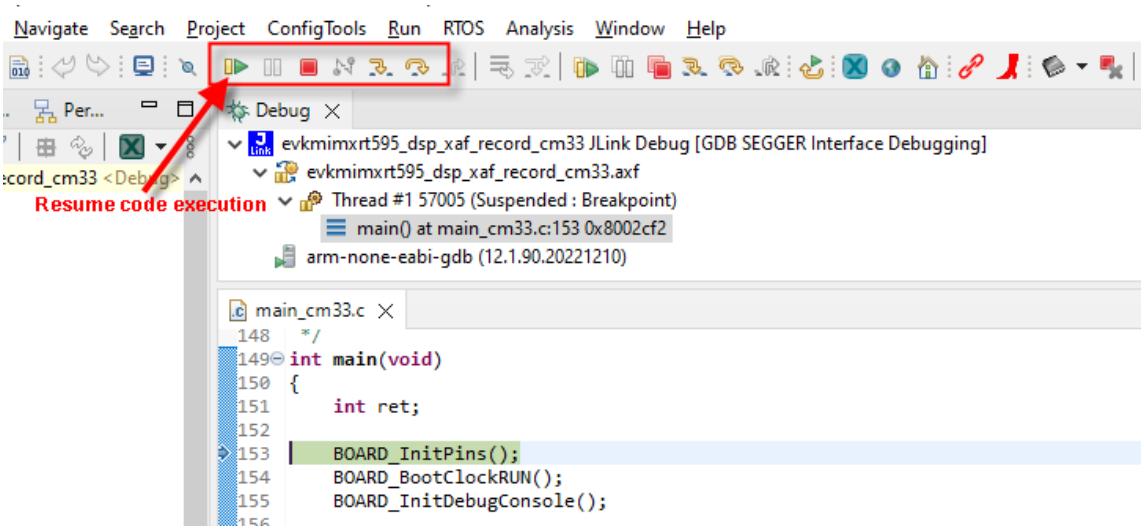
5. Select 'Finish' to complete the import.



6. Build the project and launch the debugger on success.



7. Use the debug toolbar to resume the code execution.



8. Observe serial terminal output with shell prompt:

```
*********************************
DSP audio framework demo start
*********************************

[CM33 Main] Configure WM8904 codec

[DSP_Main] Cadence Xtensa Audio Framework
[DSP_Main] Library Name    : Audio Framework (Hostless)
[DSP_Main] Library Version : 3.2
[DSP_Main] API Version     : 3.0

[DSP_Main] start
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
[DSP_Main] established RPMsg link
[CM33 Main] DSP image copied to DSP TCM
[CM33 Main][APP_DSP_IPC_Task] start
[CM33 Main][APP_Shell_Task] start

Copyright 2022 NXP
```

9. In the Xplorer IDE, load and execute xaf_record using the procedure described in sections 3.4 and 3.5 of this document.
10. After the DSP application runs, use the serial shell to invoke the record_dmic [language] command. For information on supported language, check the VIT ReleaseNotes.txt. Using the serial shell creates an audio pipeline that captures microphone audio, perform voice recognition (VIT), and playback via the codec speaker line out (J4 on the EVK).

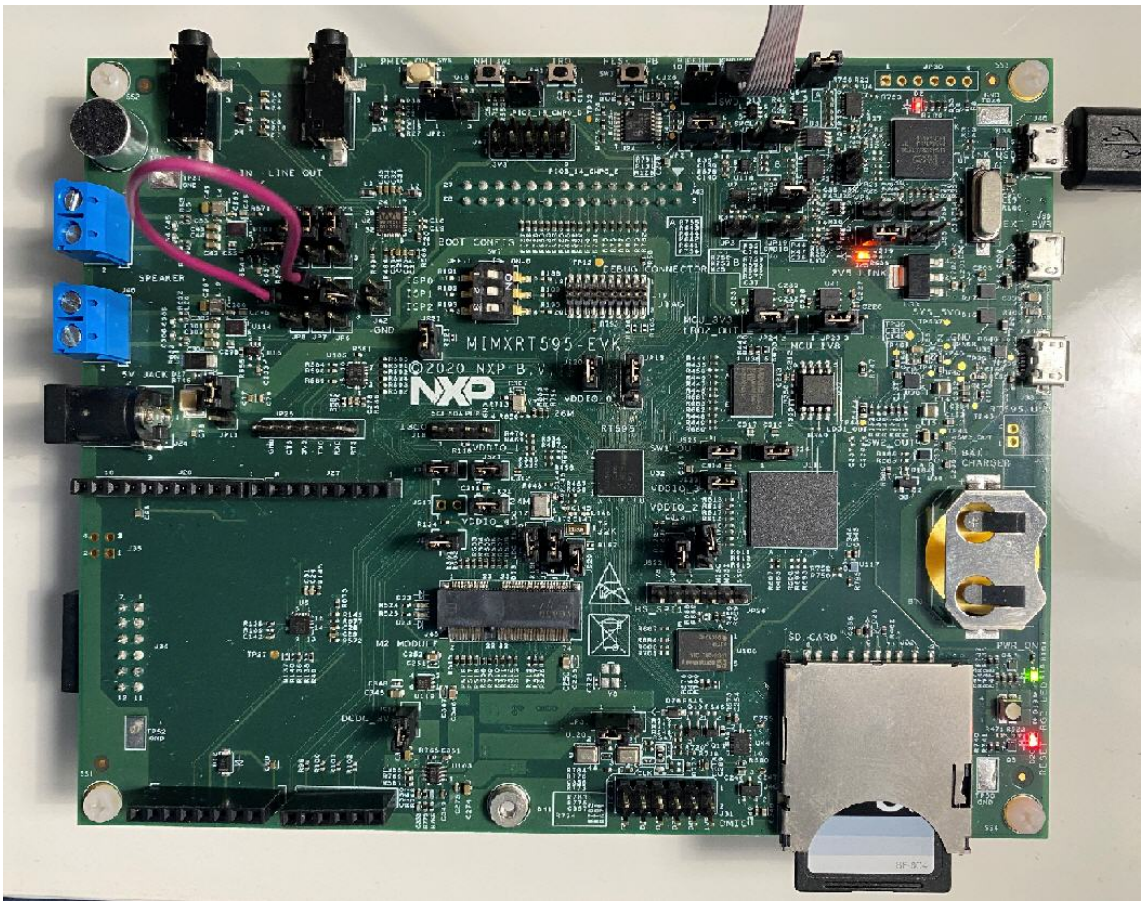
```
>> help
"help": List all the registered commands
"exit": Exit program
"version": Query DSP for component versions
"record_dmic": Record DMIC audio , perform voice recognition (VIT) and playback on codec
USAGE: record_dmic [language]
```

For voice recognition, say the supported wake-word and in 3 s say the frame-supported command. If selected model contains strings, then the wake-word and list of commands appear in the console.

Note: This command does not return to the shell.

The VIT wake-word and supported commands appear in the serial terminal.

11. See the *readme.txt* for jumper settings on the board as shown below.



Parent topic: Run and Debug DSP Audio Framework

Parent topic:*Run and Debug DSP Demo using Xplorer IDE*

Launch DSP Application from Arm Core In the previous example, the Arm application and DSP application were independently loaded and debugged. This section shows how to produce an Arm application binary that includes and starts the DSP application without the use of a debugger/loader.

The Arm core application for each DSP demo uses a global preprocessor macro to control loading of the DSP binary application:

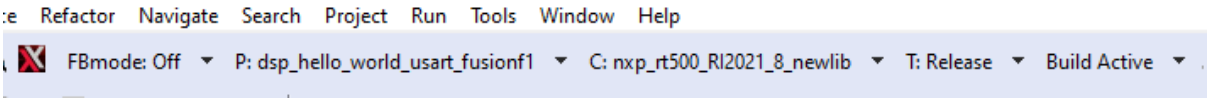
DSP_IMAGE_COPY_TO_RAM

This macro is set to 1 by default. When this macro is set to '1'/TRUE, it instructs the DSP demo application to do the following:

- Link the DSP application binary images into the Arm binary
- Copy the DSP application images into RAM on program boot
- Initialize the DSP to run from the RAM image

Note: Ensure that this macro is supplied to both the C compiler and assembler when modifying the Arm project.

To build the DSP application image so it can be used by the Arm application, you must select the 'Release' target in Xplorer IDE (building with min-rt LSP – see section 2.4 for more information).



Three DSP binaries are generated.

```
<SDK_ROOT>\boards\evkmimxrt595\dsp_examples\xaf_record\dsp\binary\**dsp\_text\_release.bin**
<SDK_ROOT>\boards\evkmimxrt595\dsp_examples\xaf_record\dsp\binary\**dsp\_data\_release.bin**
<SDK_ROOT>\boards\evkmimxrt595\dsp_examples\xaf_record\dsp\binary\**dsp\_reset\_release.bin**
```

Note: Depending on the environment used, you may need to manually copy these binary images into your Arm application workspace.

Parent topic:*Run and Debug DSP Demo using Xplorer IDE*

Run and Debug from Command-Line Environment / LINUX

RT500 SDK has been configured to be as flexible as possible to support multiple toolchains, including ARMGCC and XCC command-line environment. The principles and essentials are still the same as with the IDE. Command-line environment settings are nearly identical between WIN32 and LINUX, just with a few different path settings.

Build and Debug Arm Application The Arm application requires the GNU Arm Embedded Toolchain and CMake version 3.x for command line compile and linking. See the 'Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK for RT500.pdf' in the <SDK_ROOT>/docs/ directory for more information on installation and configuration of required build tools for command line development.

1. Launch a command prompt / terminal and change directory to the xaf_record application.

```
user@linux:~/SDK/boards/evkmimxrt595/dsp_examples/xaf_record/cm33/Armgcc$ **ls -1**
build_all.bat
build_all.sh
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
build_debug.bat
build_debug.sh
build_flash_debug.bat
build_flash_debug.sh
build_flash_release.bat
build_flash_release.sh
build_release.bat
build_release.sh
clean.bat
clean.sh
CMakeLists.txt
```

2. Use .bat files to build the configuration on Windows, and .sh files on Linux/UNIX.

```
user@linux:~/SDK/boards/evkmimxrt595/dsp_examples/xaf_record/cm33/Armgcc$ **./build\_debug.
↪sh**
...
[100%] Linking C executable debug/dsp_xaf_record_cm33.elf
[100%] Built target dsp_xaf_record_cm33.elf
```

3. Launch the GDB server (NOTE: J-Link requires version >= 6.46).

```
user@linux:/opt/JLink$ ./JLinkGDBServerCLExe -device MIMXRT595_M33 -if SWD
SEGGER J-Link GDB Server V6.46j Command Line Version
...
Listening on TCP/IP port 2331
Connecting to target...Connected to target
Waiting for GDB connection...
```

4. Connect with GDB to the device and load Arm application.

```
user@jlinux:~/SDK/boards/evkmimxrt595/dsp_examples/xaf_record/cm33/Armgcc$ Arm-none-eabi-
↪gdb debug/dsp_xaf_demo_cm33.elf
        ...
        Reading symbols from debug/dsp_xaf_record_cm33.elf...
        (gdb) **target remote localhost:2331**
        Remote debugging using localhost:2331
        0x1301ec7a in ?? ()
        (gdb) **mon reset**
        Resetting target
        (gdb) **load**
        Loading section .flash_config, size 0x200 lma 0x7f400
        Loading section .interrupts, size 0x130 lma 0x80000
        Loading section .text, size 0xe330 lma 0x80130
        Loading section CodeQuickAccess, size 0x52c lma 0x8e460
        Loading section .Arm, size 0x8 lma 0x8e98c
        Loading section .init_array, size 0x4 lma 0x8e994
        Loading section .fini_array, size 0x4 lma 0x8e998
        Loading section .data, size 0x104 lma 0x8e99c
        Start address 0x801e4, load size 60576
        Transfer rate: 272 KB/sec, 5506 bytes/write.
        (gdb) **b main**
        Breakpoint 1 at 0x808f2: file /SDK/boards/src/dsp_examples/xaf_record/cm33/main_cm33.c,␣
↪line 161.
        (gdb) **c**
        Continuing.
        Breakpoint 1, main ()
        at /SDK/boards/src/dsp_examples/xaf_record/cm33/main_cm33.c:161
        161     BOARD_InitHardware();
```

Parent topic:*Run and Debug from Command-Line Environment / LINUX*

Build and Debug DSP Application The Xtensa command line toolchain is installed as part of the Xplorer IDE. The tools can optionally be installed on a new Windows or Linux system without the IDE using the redistributable compressed file found under <XTENSA_ROOT>/XtDevTools/downloads/RI-2023.11/tools/. For details, see Install Xtensa On Chip Debugger Daemon.

In order to use the command line tools, some environment variables need to be setup that are used by the cmake build scripts:

```
# Add tools binaries to PATH.  Assume ~/xtensa/ is install root - please adjust accordingly.
export PATH=$PATH:~/xtensa/XtDevTools/install/tools/RI-2023.11-linux/XtensaTools/bin
# (Optional) Use environment variable to control license file
# NOTE: ~/.flexlmrc will override this selection.  Please delete that file before proceeding.
export LM_LICENSE_FILE=~/RT500.lic
# Setup env vars needed for compile and linking
export XCC_DIR=~/xtensa/XtDevTools/install/tools/RI-2023.11-linux/XtensaTools
export XTENSA_SYSTEM=~/xtensa/XtDevTools/install/builds/RI-2023.11-linux/nxp_RT500_RI23_11_
↪newlib/
export XTENSA_CORE=nxp_RT500_RI23_11_newlib
```

Note: On Windows, you can use the 'setx' command instead of 'export' to set environment variables.

1. Use the batch/shell script to build out the DSP application from the command-line, in the 'xcc' directory.

   ```
   user@linux:~/SDK/boards/evkmimxrt595/dsp_examples/xaf_record/dsp/xcc$ **./build\_debug.sh**
   ...
   [100%] Built target dsp_xaf_record_fusion1.elf
   ```

   Note: Some warnings during the linking process (floating point ABI) may appear – these are normal and can be ignored.

2. Launch xt-ocd debugging server (replace topology.xml with your custom version – see section 1.5 of this document):

   ```
   user@linux:/opt/Tensilica/xocd-14.11$ ./xt-ocd.exe -c topology.xml
   ```

   Note: If the xt-ocd daemon fails to start, it may be because the DSP has not been initialized by the ARM core which must be done first.

3. Connect with Xtensa GDB to the device and execute the DSP application:

   ```
   user@linux:/SDK/boards/evkmimxrt595/dsp_examples/xaf_record/dsp/xcc$ **xt-gdb debug/dsp\_
   ↪xaf\_demo\_fusion1.elf**
   GNU gdb (GDB) 7.11.1 Xtensa Tools <VERSION_INFO>
   ...
   Reading symbols from debug/dsp_xaf_record_fusion1.elf...done.
   (xt-gdb)
   (xt-gdb) **target remote localhost:20000**
   Remote debugging using localhost:20000
   _DoubleExceptionVector ()
   at /home/xpgcust/tree/RI-2023.11/ib/tools/swtools-x86_64-linux/xtensa-elf/src/xos/src/xos_vectors.
   ↪S:216
   216 /home/xpgcust/tree/RI-2023.11/ib/tools/swtools-x86_64-linux/xtensa-elf/src/xos/src/xos_vectors.
   ↪S: No such file or directory.
   (xt-gdb) **reset**
   _ResetVector ()
   at /home/xpgcust/tree/RI-2023.11/ib/tools/swtools-x86_64-linux/xtensa-elf/src/xtos/xea2/reset-vector-
   ↪xea2.S:71
   71  /home/xpgcust/tree/RI-2023.11/ib/tools/swtools-x86_64-linux/xtensa-elf/src/xtos/xea2/reset-
   ↪vector-xea2.S: No such file or directory.
   (xt-gdb) **load**
   ```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
Loading section .rtos.rodata, size 0x80 lma 0x200000
Loading section .rodata, size 0x17d50 lma 0x200080
Loading section .text, size 0x633f0 lma 0x217dd0
Loading section .rtos.percpu.data, size 0x4 lma 0x27b1c0
Loading section .data, size 0x110c lma 0x27b1d0
Loading section NonCacheable, size 0x2960 lma 0x20040000
Loading section .Level3InterruptVector.literal, size 0x4 lma 0x24000000
Loading section .DebugExceptionVector.literal, size 0x4 lma 0x24000004
Loading section .NMIExceptionVector.literal, size 0x4 lma 0x24000008
Loading section .ResetVector.text, size 0x13c lma 0x24020000
Loading section .WindowVectors.text, size 0x16c lma 0x24020400
Loading section .Level2InterruptVector.text, size 0x1c lma 0x2402057c
Loading section .Level3InterruptVector.text, size 0xc lma 0x2402059c
Loading section .DebugExceptionVector.text, size 0xc lma 0x240205bc
Loading section .NMIExceptionVector.text, size 0xc lma 0x240205dc
Loading section .KernelExceptionVector.text, size 0xc lma 0x240205fc
Loading section .UserExceptionVector.text, size 0x18 lma 0x2402061c
Loading section .DoubleExceptionVector.text, size 0x8 lma 0x2402063c
Start address 0x24020000, load size 520016
Transfer rate: 8 KB/sec, 10612 bytes/write.
(xt-gdb) **b main**
Breakpoint 1 at 0x21ab5b: file /home/jlydick/mcu-sdk-2.0/boards/src/dsp_examples/xaf_record/dsp/
↪xaf_main_dsp.c, line 366.
(xt-gdb) **c**
Continuing.
Breakpoint 1, main ()
at /SDK/boards/src/dsp_examples/xaf_record/dsp/xaf_main_dsp.c:366
366     xos_start_main("main", 7, 0);
(xt-gdb) **c**
Continuing.
Initializing...
Initialized
```

Note: You can use the gdb command 'set substitute-path' to map the missing symbols from the toolchain libraries. For example: set substitute-path /home/xpgcust/tree/RI-2023.11/ib/tools/swtools-x86_64-linux ~/xtensa/tools/RI-2023.11/XtensaTools.

4. For more details about xt-gdb, see the Cadence GNU Debugger User's Guide and Cadence Xtensa Debug Guide. These are located at:
   - ~/xtensa/XtDevTools/downloads/RI-2023.11/docs/gnu_gdb_ug.pdf
   - ~/xtensa/XtDevTools/downloads/RI-2023.11/docs/xtensa_debug_guide.pdf

Parent topic:*Run and Debug from Command-Line Environment / LINUX*

Note about the source code in the document

Example code shown in this document has the following copyright and BSD-3-Clause license:

Copyright 2024 NXP Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of the copyright holder nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written

permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS “AS IS” AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

1.5 Release Notes

1.5.1 MCUXpresso SDK Release Notes

Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK is a comprehensive software enablement package designed to simplify and accelerate application development with Arm Cortex-M-based devices from NXP, including its general purpose, crossover and Bluetooth-enabled MCUs. MCUXpresso SW and Tools for DSC further extends the SDK support to current 32-bit Digital Signal Controllers. The MCUXpresso SDK includes production-grade software with integrated RTOS (optional), integrated enabling software technologies (stacks and middleware), reference software, and more.

In addition to working seamlessly with the MCUXpresso IDE, the MCUXpresso SDK also supports and provides example projects for various toolchains. The Development tools chapter in the associated Release Notes provides details about toolchain support for your board. Support for the MCUXpresso Config Tools allows easy cloning of existing SDK examples and demos, allowing users to leverage the existing software examples provided by the SDK for their own projects.

Underscoring our commitment to high quality, the MCUXpresso SDK is MISRA compliant and checked with Coverity static analysis tools. For details on MCUXpresso SDK, see MCUXpresso-SDK: Software Development Kit for MCUXpresso.

MCUXpresso SDK

As part of the MCUXpresso software and tools, MCUXpresso SDK is the evolution of Kinetis SDK, includes support for LPC, DSC,PN76, and i.MX System-on-Chip (SoC). The same drivers, APIs, and middleware are still available with support for Kinetis, LPC, DSC, and i.MX silicon. The MCUXpresso SDK adds support for the MCUXpresso IDE, an Eclipse-based toolchain that works with all MCUXpresso SDKs. Easily import your SDK into the new toolchain to access to all of the available components, examples, and demos for your target silicon. In addition to the MCUXpresso IDE, support for the MCUXpresso Config Tools allows easy cloning of existing SDK examples and demos, allowing users to leverage the existing software examples provided by the SDK for their own projects.

In order to maintain compatibility with legacy Freescale code, the filenames and source code in MCUXpresso SDK containing the legacy Freescale prefix FSL has been left as is. The FSL prefix has been redefined as the NXP Foundation Software Library.

Development tools

The MCUXpresso SDK was tested with following development tools. Same versions or above are recommended.

- MCUXpresso IDE, Rev. 25.06.xx
- IAR Embedded Workbench for Arm, version is 9.60.4
- Keil MDK, version is 5.42
- MCUXpresso for VS Code v25.09
- GCC Arm Embedded Toolchain 14.2.x
- Xtensa Xplorer, version is 10.1.11
- Xtensa C Compiler, version is RI-2023.11

Supported development systems

This release supports board and devices listed in following table. The board and devices in bold were tested in this release.

Development boards	MCU devices
EVK-MIMXRT595	MIMXRT533SFAWC, MIMXRT533SFFOC, MIMXRT555SFAWC, MIMXRT555SFFOC, MIMXRT595SFAWC, **MIMXRT595SFFOC**

MCUXpresso SDK release package

The MCUXpresso SDK release package content is aligned with the silicon subfamily it supports. This includes the boards, CMSIS, devices, middleware, and RTOS support.

Device support The device folder contains the whole software enablement available for the specific System-on-Chip (SoC) subfamily. This folder includes clock-specific implementation, device register header files, device register feature header files, and the system configuration source files. Included with the standard SoC support are folders containing peripheral drivers, toolchain support, and a standard debug console. The device-specific header files provide a direct access to the microcontroller peripheral registers. The device header file provides an overall SoC memory mapped register definition. The folder also includes the feature header file for each peripheral on the microcontroller. The toolchain folder contains the startup code and linker files for each supported toolchain. The startup code efficiently transfers the code execution to the main() function.

Board support The boards folder provides the board-specific demo applications, driver examples, and middleware examples.

Demo application and other examples The demo applications demonstrate the usage of the peripheral drivers to achieve a system level solution. Each demo application contains a readme file that describes the operation of the demo and required setup steps. The driver examples demonstrate the capabilities of the peripheral drivers. Each example implements a common use case to help demonstrate the driver functionality.

RTOS

FreeRTOS Real-time operating system for microcontrollers from Amazon

Middleware

Wireless Connectivity Framework The Connectivity Framework is a software component that provides hardware abstraction modules to the upper layer connectivity stacks and components. It also provides a list of services and APIs, such as, Low power, Over the Air (OTA) Firmware update, File System, Security, Sensors, Serial Connectivity Interface (FSCI), and others. The Connectivity Framework modules are located in the *middleware|wireless|framework SDK* folder.

Wireless EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL For more information, see the MCUXpresso SDK EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer User's Guide.

Ethermind BT/BLE Stack nxp_bt_ble_stack

coreHTTP coreHTTP

PSA Test Suite Arm Platform Security Architecture Test Suite

mbedTLS mbedtls SSL/TLS library v3.x

wpa_supplicant-rtos NXP Wi-Fi WPA Supplicant

NXP Wi-Fi The MCUXpresso SDK provides driver for NXP Wi-Fi external modules. The Wi-Fi driver is integrated with LWIP TCPIP stack and demonstrated with several network applications (iperf and AWS IoT).

For more information, see Getting Started with NXP based Wireless Modules and i.MX RT Platform Running on RTOS (document: UM11441).

Voice Seeker (no AEC) VoiceSeeker is a multi-microphone voice control audio front-end signal processing solution. VoiceSeeker is not featuring acoustic echo cancellation (AEC).

Voice intelligent technology library Voice Intelligent Technology (VIT) Library provides wake word and voice command engine for voice control

VG-Lite GPU Library VGLite library for devices with VGLite graphics hardware acceleration engine

USB Type-C PD Stack See the *MCUXpresso SDK USB Type-C PD Stack User's Guide* (document MCUXSDKUSBPDUG) for more information

USB Host, Device, OTG Stack See the MCUXpresso SDK USB Stack User's Guide (document MCUXSDKUSBSUG) for more information.

TinyCBOR Concise Binary Object Representation (CBOR) Library

TF-M Trusted Firmware - M Library

SDMMC stack The SDMMC software is integrated with MCUXpresso SDK to support SD/MMC/SDIO standard specification. This also includes a host adapter layer for bare-metal/RTOS applications.

PKCS#11 The PKCS#11 standard specifies an application programming interface (API), called "Cryptoki," for devices that hold cryptographic information and perform cryptographic functions. Cryptoki follows a simple object based approach, addressing the goals of technology independence (any kind of device) and resource sharing (multiple applications accessing multiple devices), presenting to applications a common, logical view of the device called a "cryptographic token".

Multicore Multicore Software Development Kit

MCU Boot Open source MCU Bootloader.

mbedTLS mbedtls SSL/TLS library v2.x

lwIP The lwIP TCP/IP stack is pre-integrated with MCUXpresso SDK and runs on top of the MCUXpresso SDK Ethernet driver with Ethernet-capable devices/boards.

For details, see the *lwIP TCPIP Stack and MCUXpresso SDK Integration User's Guide* (document MCUXSDKLWIPUG).

lwIP is a small independent implementation of the TCP/IP protocol suite.

eIQ The package contains several example applications using the eIQ TensorFlow Lite for Microcontrollers library.

eIQ machine learning SDK containing:

- Arm CMSIS-NN library (neural network kernels optimized for Cortex-M cores)
- Inference engines:
  - TensorFlow Lite Micro
  - DeepView RT
- Example code for TensorFlow Lite Micro, Glow, and DeepView RT

LVGL LVGL Open Source Graphics Library

llhttp HTTP parser llhttp

LittleFS LittleFS filesystem stack

JPEG library JPEG library

FreeMASTER FreeMASTER communication driver for 32-bit platforms.

File systemFatfs The FatFs file system is integrated with the MCUXpresso SDK and can be used to access either the SD card or the USB memory stick when the SD card driver or the USB Mass Storage Device class implementation is used.

emWin The MCUXpresso SDK is pre-integrated with the SEGGER emWin GUI middleware. The AppWizard provides developers and designers with a flexible tool to create stunning user interface applications, without writing any code.

DSP Neural Networks DSP Neural Networks Framework based on Xtensa Neural Networks Library from Cadence Design Systems for Xtensa HiFi Audio Engines.

NatureDSP for FusionF1 Digital Signal Processing for Xtensa FusionF1 DSP Audio Engines.

DSP Audio Streamer DSP Audio Streamer Framework based on Xtensa Audio Framework from Cadence Design Systems for Xtensa DSP Audio Engines.

DSP Codecs Codecs for Cadence DSPs

cJSON Ultralightweight JSON parser in ANSI C

AWS IoT Amazon Web Service (AWS) IoT Core SDK.

NXP PSA CRYPTO DRIVER PSA crypto driver for crypto library integration via driver wrappers

CMSIS DSP Library The MCUXpresso SDK is shipped with the standard CMSIS development pack, including the prebuilt libraries.

Release contents

Provides an overview of the MCUXpresso SDK release package contents and locations.

Deliverable	Location
Boards	INSTALL_DIR/boards
Demo Applications	INSTALL_DIR/boards/<board_name>/demo_apps
Driver Examples	INSTALL_DIR/boards/<board_name>/driver_examples
eIQ examples	INSTALL_DIR/boards/<board_name>/eiq_examples
Board Project Template for MCUXpresso IDE NPW	INSTALL_DIR/boards/<board_name>/project_template
Driver, SoC header files, extension header files and feature header files, utilities	INSTALL_DIR/devices/<device_name>
CMSIS drivers	INSTALL_DIR/devices/<device_name>/cmsis_drivers
Peripheral drivers	INSTALL_DIR/devices/<device_name>/drivers
Toolchain linker files and startup code	INSTALL_DIR/devices/<device_name>/<toolchain_nam
Utilities such as debug console	INSTALL_DIR/devices/<device_name>/utilities
Device Project Template for MCUXpresso IDE NPW	INSTALL_DIR/devices/<device_name>/project_templat
CMSIS Arm Cortex-M header files, DSP library source	INSTALL_DIR/CMSIS
Components and board device drivers	INSTALL_DIR/components
RTOS	INSTALL_DIR/rtos
Release Notes, Getting Started Document and other documents	INSTALL_DIR/docs
Tools such as shared cmake files	INSTALL_DIR/tools
Middleware	INSTALL_DIR/middleware

Known issues

This section lists the known issues, limitations, and/or workarounds.

New Project Wizard compile failure

The following components request the user to manually select other components that they depend upon in order to compile.

These components depend on several other components and the New Project Wizard (NPW) is not able to decide which one is needed by the user.

Note: xxx means core variants, such as, cm0plus, cm33, cm4, cm33_nodsp.

Components:issdk_mag3110, issdk_host, systick, gpio_kinetis, gpio_lpc, issdk_mpl3115, sensor_fusion_agm01, sensor_fusion_agm01_lpc, issdk_mma845x, issdk_mma8491q, issdk_mma865x, issdk_mma9553, and CMSIS_RTOS2.CMSIS_RTOS2, and components which include cache driver, such as enet_qos.

Also for low-level adapter components, currently the different types of the same adapter cannot be selected at the same time.

For example, if there are two types of timer adapters, gpt_adapter and pit_adapter, only one can be selected as timer adapter

in one project at a time. Duplicate implementation of the function results in an error.

Note: Most of middleware components have complex dependencies and are not fully supported in new project wizard. Adding a middleware component may result in compile failure.

CMSIS PACK new project compile failure

The generated configuration cannot be applied globally. The components, serial_manager_usb_cdc_virtual and serial_manager_usb_cdc_virtual_xxx (xxx means core variants like cm0plus, cm33, cm4, and cm33_nodsp) are unsupported for new project wizard of CMSIS pack and will lead to compile failure if selected while creating new project(s).

IAR cannot debug RAM application with J-Link

Currently, IAR will call J-Link reset after the application is downloaded to SRAM, but such operation will cause SRAM data lost.

Here is a workaround to avoid real reset, with the cost of no any reset during the debugging, and hardware status uncleared.

1. Build and debug IAR project once and see the settings folder created.
2. Create the _.JLinkScript file in the settings folder with the following contents.

```
void ResetTarget(void) {
JLINK_TARGET_Halt();
}
```

3. Debug the project again and now it can work.

Wireless EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL

For more information, see the MCUXpresso SDK EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer User's Guide.

Examples hello_world_ns, secure_faults_ns, and secure_faults_trdc_ns have incorrect library path in GUI projects

When the affected examples are generated as GUI projects, the library linking the secure and non-secure worlds has an incorrect path set. This causes linking errors during project compilation.

Examples: hello_world_ns, hello_world_s, secure_faults_ns, secure_faults_s, secure_faults_trdc_ns, secure_faults_trdc_s

Affected toolchains: mdk, iar

Workaround: In the IDE project settings for the non-secure (_ns) project, find the linked library (named hello_world_s_CMSE_lib.o, or similar, depending on the example project) and replace the path to the library with <build_directory>/<secure_world_project_folder>/<IDE>/, replacing the subdirectory names with the build directory, the secure world project name, and IDE name.

1.6 ChangeLog

1.6.1 MCUXpresso SDK Changelog

Board Support Files

board

[25.06.00]

- Initial version

clock_config

[25.06.00]

- Initial version

pin_mux

[25.06.00]

- Initial version

ACMP

[2.4.0]

- New Feature
  - Supported the plateforms which don't have continuous mode.

[2.3.0]

- Improvements
  - Expose C0 register FILTER_CNT bitfield and FPR bitfield to the user.

[2.2.0]

- Improvements
  - Updated feature macros for roundrobin mode, window mode, filter mode, and 3V domain removes.

[2.1.0]

- New Feature
  - Supported the plateforms which don't have hysteresis mode.

[2.0.6]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the wrong comments, the DAC value should range from 0 to 255.

[2.0.5]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the out-of-bounds error of Coverity caused by missing an assert sentence to avoid the return value of ACMP_GetInstance() exceeding the array bounds.
  - Fixed the violations of MISRA C-2012 rules:
    * Rule 10.1, 14.4, 16.4, 17.7.

[2.0.4]

- Bug Fixes
  - Avoided changing w1c bit in ACMP_SetRoundRobinPreState().

[2.0.3]

- New Features
  - Added feature functions for usage of different power domains(1.8 V and 3 V). These functions are first enabled in ULP1. They are about:
    - ACMP_EnableLinkToDAC()
    - ACMP_SetDiscreteModeConfig()
    - ACMP_GetDefaultDiscreteModeConfig()

[2.0.2]

- Other Changes
  - Changed coding style of peripheral base address from "s_acmpBases" to "s_acmpBase".

[2.0.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed bug regarding the function "ACMP_SetRoundRobinConfig". It will not continue execution but returns directly after disabling round robin mode.

CACHE64

[2.0.12]

- Improvements
  - Add memory barrier when enabling/disabling cache.

[2.0.11]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed CERT INT30-C violations: check and guarantee address plus size is equal or smaller than UINT32_MAX.

[2.0.10]

- Improvements
  - Updated CACHE64_InvalidateCacheByRange(), CACHE64_CleanCacheByRange() and CACHE64_CleanInvalidateCacheByRange() to support some platforms that multiple regions in the memory map are remapped to create a continuous address space.

[2.0.9]

- Improvements
  - Removed assert(false) in CACHE64_GetInstanceByAddr.

[2.0.8]

- Improvements
  - Updated function CACHE64_GetInstanceByAddr() to support some devices that provide alias of cacheable memory section.

[2.0.7]

- Improvements
  - Check input parameter “size_byte” must be larger than 0.

[2.0.6]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed overflow for CACHE64_GetInstanceByAddr()/CACHE64_CleanCacheByRange()/CACHE64_Invalid APIs.

[2.0.5]

- Improvement
  - Made use of FSL_FEATURE_CACHE64_CTRL_HAS_NO_WRITE_BUF feature

[2.0.4]

- Improvement
  - Disable cache policy feature on SoC without CACHE64_POLSEL IP.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed doxygen issue.

[2.0.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of the MISRA C-2012 Rule 10.3.

[2.0.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of the MISRA C-2012 Rule 10.1, 10.3, 10.4 and 14.4.
  - Fixed doxygen issue.

[2.0.1]

- Improvements
  - Moved CLCR register configuration out of the while loop, it’s unnecessary to repeat this operation.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

CASSPER

[2.2.4]

- Fix MISRA-C 2012 issue.

[2.2.3]

- Added macro into CASPER_Init and CASPER_Deinit to support devices without clock and reset control.

[2.2.2]

- Enable hardware interleaving to RAMX0 and RAMX1 for CASPER by feature macro FSL_FEATURE_CASPER_RAM_HW_INTERLEAVE

[2.2.1]

- Fix MISRA C-2012 issue.

[2.2.0]

- Rework driver to support multiple curves at once.

[2.1.0]

- Add ECC NIST P-521 elliptic curve.

[2.0.10]

- Fix MISRA C-2012 issue.

[2.0.9]

- Remove unused function Jac_oncurve().
- Fix ECC384 build.

[2.0.8]

- Add feature macro for CASPER_RAM_OFFSET.

[2.0.7]

- Fix MISRA C-2012 issue.

[2.0.6]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fix IAR Pa082 warning

[2.0.5]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fix sign-compare warning

[2.0.4]

- For GCC compiler, enforce O1 optimize level, specifically to remove strict-aliasing option. This driver is very specific and requires -fno-strict-aliasing.

[2.0.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the bug for KPSDK-28107 RSUB, FILL and ZERO operations not implemented in enum _casper_operation.

[2.0.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed KPSDK-25015 CASPER_MEMCPY hard-fault on LPC55xx when both source and destination buffers are outside of CASPER_RAM.

[2.0.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the bug that KPSDK-24531 double_scalar_multiplication() result may be all zeroes for some specific input.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

CLOCK

[2.7.1]

- Improvements
  - Added return value for CLOCK_InitSysPfd CLOCK_InitAudioPfd.

[2.7.0]

- API changes
  - Added CLOCK_FroTuneToFreq and CLOCK_EnableFroClkFreq API.

[2.6.1]

- Improvements
  - Added lost comments for some enumerations.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of MISRA C-2012 rule 11.1.

[2.6.0]

- API changes
  - Added CLOCK_EnableFroClkRange API.
  - FRO clock name changed from FRO192M, FRO96M, FRO48M, FRO24M, FRO12M to FRO_DIV1,FRO_DIV2, FRO_DIV4, FRO_DIV8, FRO_DIV16.
- Bug Fixes
  - Added kAUX0_PLL_to_MIPI_DPHYESC_CLK, kAUX1_PLL_to_MIPI_DPHYESC_CLK for clock_attach_id_t.
  - Fixed the error usage of macro in CLOCK_DeinitSysPfd() function.

[2.5.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Updated enum sys_pll_mult_t and audio_pll_mult_t to fix the supported MULT values for PLLs.
  - Added kHCLK_to_OSTIMER_CLK for clock_attach_id_t.
  - Fixed the calculation of main_pll_clk, dsp_pll_clk, aux0_pll_clk, aux0_pll_clk.
  - Renamed “kFRO192M_to_CLKOUT” to “kFRO96M_to_CLKOUT” to align with RM.

[2.5.0]

- API change
  - Added CLOCK_SetClkinFreq API.
- Other Changes
  - Macro “CLK_CLK_IN” changed to “CLK_EXT_CLKIN”.

[2.4.0]

- API change
  - Added enableLowPower parameter in CLOCK_EnableSysOscClk().
- Other Changes
  - Fixed C++ build errors.
  - Added assert in CLOCK_SetFRGClock(), the FRG DIV should be always set to 0xFF according to Reference Manual.

[2.3.1]

- Other Changes:
  - Updated register access per the header file's change.

[2.3.0]

- New feature:
  - Moved SDK_DelayAtLeastUs function from clock driver to common driver.

[2.2.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Avoided waiting REQFLAG when divider configured to HALT in CLOCK_SetClkDiv().

[2.2.1]

- Added CLOCK_EnableLpOscClk() and CLOCK_EnableFroClk() API

[2.2.0]

- New feature
  - Added Deinit PLL&PFD API.
- API change
  - Added delay_us parameter in CLOCK_EnableSysOscClk()

[2.1.0]

- New feature
  - Adding new API CLOCK_DelayAtLeastUs() implemented by DWT to allow users set delay in unit of microsecond.

[2.0.1]

- Updated clock_attach_id_t elements, removing the FRG(Fractional Generator) clock source selection from CLOCK_AttachClk.
- Users need call CLOCK_SetFRGClock to set FRG clock source.

[2.0.0]

- initial version.

COMMON

[2.6.0]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fix CERT-C violations.

[2.5.0]

- New Features
  - Added new APIs InitCriticalSectionMeasurementContext, DisableGlobalIRQEx and EnableGlobalIRQEx so that user can measure the execution time of the protected sections.

[2.4.3]

- Improvements
  - Enable irqs that mount under irqsteer interrupt extender.

[2.4.2]

- Improvements
  - Add the macros to convert peripheral address to secure address or non-secure address.

[2.4.1]

- Improvements
  - Improve for the macro redefinition error when integrated with zephyr.

[2.4.0]

- New Features
  - Added EnableIRQWithPriority, IRQ_SetPriority, and IRQ_ClearPendingIRQ for ARM.
  - Added MSDK_EnableCpuCycleCounter, MSDK_GetCpuCycleCount for ARM.

[2.3.3]

- New Features
  - Added NETC into status group.

[2.3.2]

- Improvements
  - Make driver aarch64 compatible

[2.3.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed MAKE_VERSION overflow on 16-bit platforms.

[2.3.0]

- Improvements
  - Split the driver to common part and CPU architecture related part.

[2.2.10]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the ATOMIC macros build error in cpp files.

[2.2.9]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed MISRA C-2012 issue, 5.6, 5.8, 8.4, 8.5, 8.6, 10.1, 10.4, 17.7, 21.3.
  - Fixed SDK_Malloc issue that not allocate memory with required size.

[2.2.8]

- Improvements
  - Included stddef.h header file for MDK tool chain.
- New Features:
  - Added atomic modification macros.

[2.2.7]

- Other Change
  - Added MECC status group definition.

[2.2.6]

- Other Change
  - Added more status group definition.
- Bug Fixes
  - Undef __VECTOR_TABLE to avoid duplicate definition in cmsis_clang.h

[2.2.5]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed MISRA C-2012 rule-15.5.

[2.2.4]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed MISRA C-2012 rule-10.4.

[2.2.3]

- New Features
  - Provided better accuracy of SDK_DelayAtLeastUs with DWT, use macro SDK_DELAY_USE_DWT to enable this feature.
  - Modified the Cortex-M7 delay count divisor based on latest tests on RT series boards, this setting lets result be closer to actual delay time.

[2.2.2]

- New Features
  - Added include RTE_Components.h for CMSIS pack RTE.

[2.2.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violation of MISRA C-2012 Rule 3.1, 10.1, 10.3, 10.4, 11.6, 11.9.

[2.2.0]

- New Features
  - Moved SDK_DelayAtLeastUs function from clock driver to common driver.

[2.1.4]

- New Features
  - Added OTFAD into status group.

[2.1.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - MISRA C-2012 issue fixed.
    - Fixed the rule: rule-10.3.

[2.1.2]

- Improvements
  - Add SUPPRESS_FALL_THROUGH_WARNING() macro for the usage of suppressing fallthrough warning.

[2.1.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Deleted and optimized repeated macro.

[2.1.0]

- New Features
  - Added IRQ operation for XCC toolchain.
  - Added group IDs for newly supported drivers.

[2.0.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - MISRA C-2012 issue fixed.
    - Fixed the rule: rule-10.4.

[2.0.1]

- Improvements
  - Removed the implementation of LPC8XX Enable/DisableDeepSleepIRQ() function.
  - Added new feature macro switch "FSL_FEATURE_HAS_NO_NONCACHEABLE_SECTION" for specific SoCs which have no noncacheable sections, that helps avoid an unnecessary complex in link file and the startup file.
  - Updated the align(x) to **attribute**(aligned(x)) to support MDK v6 armclang compiler.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

CRC

[2.1.1]

- Fix MISRA issue.

[2.1.0]

- Add CRC_WriteSeed function.

[2.0.2]

- Fix MISRA issue.

[2.0.1]

- Fixed KPSDK-13362. MDK compiler issue when writing to WR_DATA with -O3 optimize for time.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

CTIMER

[2.3.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fix CERT INT30-C INT31-C issue.
  - Make API CTIMER_SetupPwm and CTIMER_UpdatePwmDutycycle return fail if pulse width register overflow.

[2.3.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Clear unexpected DMA request generated by RESET_PeripheralReset in API CTIMER_Init to avoid trigger DMA by mistake.

[2.3.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - MISRA C-2012 issue fixed: rule 10.7 and 12.2.

[2.3.0]

- Improvements
  - Added the CTIMER_SetPrescale(), CTIMER_GetCaptureValue(), CTIMER_EnableResetMatchChannel(), CTIMER_EnableStopMatchChannel(), CTIMER_EnableRisingEdgeCapture(), CTIMER_EnableFallingEdgeCapture(), CTIMER_SetShadowValue(),APIs Interface to reduce code complexity.

[2.2.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed SetupPwm() API only can use match 3 as period channel issue.

[2.2.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed use specified channel to setting the PWM period in SetupPwmPeriod() API.
  - Fixed Coverity Out-of-bounds issue.

[2.2.0]

- Improvements
  - Updated three API Interface to support Users to flexibly configure the PWM period and PWM output.
- Bug Fixes
  - MISRA C-2012 issue fixed: rule 8.4.

[2.1.0]

- Improvements
  - Added the CTIMER_GetOutputMatchStatus() API Interface.
  - Added feature macro for FSL_FEATURE_CTIMER_HAS_NO_CCR_CAP2 and FSL_FEATURE_CTIMER_HAS_NO_IR_CR2INT.

[2.0.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - MISRA C-2012 issue fixed: rule 10.3, 10.4, 10.6, 10.7 and 11.9.

[2.0.2]

- New Features
  - Added new API “CTIMER_GetTimerCountValue” to get the current timer count value.
  - Added a control macro to enable/disable the RESET and CLOCK code in current driver.
  - Added a new feature macro to update the API of CTimer driver for lpc8n04.

[2.0.1]

- Improvements
  - API Interface Change
    * Changed API interface by adding CTIMER_SetupPwmPeriod API and CTIMER_UpdatePwmPulsePeriod API, which both can set up the right PWM with high resolution.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

LPC_DMA

[2.5.3]

- Improvements
  - Add assert in DMA_SetChannelXferConfig to prevent XFERCOUNT value overflow.

[2.5.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Use separate “SET” and “CLR” registers to modify shared registers for all channels, in case of thread-safe issue.

[2.5.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violation of the MISRA C-2012 rule 11.6.

[2.5.0]

- Improvements
  - Added a new api DMA_SetChannelXferConfig to set DMA xfer config.

[2.4.4]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the issue that DMA_IRQHandle might generate redundant callbacks.
  - Fixed the issue that DMA driver cannot support channel bigger then 32.
  - Fixed violation of the MISRA C-2012 rule 13.5.

[2.4.3]

- Improvements
  - Added features FSL_FEATURE_DMA_DESCRIPTOR_ALIGN_SIZEn/FSL_FEATURE_DMA0_DESCRIPTOR_A to support the descriptor align size not constant in the two instances.

[2.4.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violation of the MISRA C-2012 rule 8.4.

[2.4.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of the MISRA C-2012 rules 5.7, 8.3.

[2.4.0]

- Improvements
  - Added new APIs DMA_LoadChannelDescriptor/DMA_ChannelIsBusy to support polling transfer case.
- Bug Fixes
  - Added address alignment check for descriptor source and destination address.
  - Added DMA_ALLOCATE_DATA_TRANSFER_BUFFER for application buffer allocation.
  - Fixed the sign-compare warning.
  - Fixed violations of the MISRA C-2012 rules 18.1, 10.4, 11.6, 10.7, 14.4, 16.3, 20.7, 10.8, 16.1, 17.7, 10.3, 3.1, 18.1.

[2.3.0]

- Bug Fixes
  - Removed DMA_HandleIRQ prototype definition from header file.
  - Added DMA_IRQHandle prototype definition in header file.

[2.2.5]

- Improvements
  - Added new API DMA_SetupChannelDescriptor to support configuring wrap descriptor.
  - Added wrap support in function DMA_SubmitChannelTransfer.

[2.2.4]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the issue that macro DMA_CHANNEL_CFER used wrong parameter to calculate DSTINC.

[2.2.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - Improved DMA driver Deinit function for correct logic order.
- Improvements
  - Added API DMA_SubmitChannelTransferParameter to support creating head descriptor directly.
  - Added API DMA_SubmitChannelDescriptor to support ping pong transfer.
  - Added macro DMA_ALLOCATE_HEAD_DESCRIPTOR/DMA_ALLOCATE_LINK_DESCRIPTOR to simplify DMA descriptor allocation.

[2.2.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Do not use software trigger when hardware trigger is enabled.

[2.2.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed Coverity issue.

[2.2.0]

- Improvements
  - Changed API DMA_SetupDMADescriptor to non-static.
  - Marked APIs below as deprecated.
    - DMA_PrepareTransfer.
    - DMA_Submit transfer.
  - Added new APIs as below:
    - DMA_SetChannelConfig.
    - DMA_PrepareChannelTransfer.
    - DMA_InstallDescriptorMemory.
    - DMA_SubmitChannelTransfer.
    - DMA_SetChannelConfigValid.
    - DMA_DoChannelSoftwareTrigger.
    - DMA_LoadChannelTransferConfig.

[2.0.1]

- Improvements
  - Added volatile for DMA descriptor member xfercfg to avoid optimization.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

DMIC

[2.3.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of MISRA C-2012 rule 10.1, 10.3, 10.4, 10.5, 10.6, 10.7, 10.8.

[2.3.2]

- New Features
  - Supported 4 channels in driver.

[2.3.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the issue that DMIC_EnableChannelDma and DMIC_EnableChannelFifo did not clean relevant bits.

[2.3.0]

- Improvements
  - Added new apis DMIC_ResetChannelDecimator/DMIC_EnableChannelGlobalSync/DMIC_DisableChann

[2.2.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of the MISRA C-2012 rules 14.4, 17.7, 10.4, 10.3, 10.8, 14.3.

[2.2.0]

- Bug Fixes
  - Corrected the usage of feature FSL_FEATURE_DMIC_IO_HAS_NO_BYPASS.

[2.1.1]

- Improvements
  - Added feature FSL_FEATURE_DMIC_HAS_NO_IOCFG for IOCFG register.

[2.1.0]

- New Features
  - Added API DMIC_EnbleChannelInterrupt/DMIC_EnbleChannelDma to replace API DMIC_SetOperationMode.
  - Added API DMIC_SetIOCFG and marked DMIC_ConfigIO as deprecated.
  - Added API DMIC_EnableChannelSignExtend to support sign extend feature.

[2.0.5]

- Improvements
  - Changed some parameters' value of DMIC_FifoChannel API, such as enable, resetn, and trig_level. This is not possible for the current code logic, so it improves the DMIC_FifoChannel logic and fixes incorrect math logic.

[2.0.4]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the issue that DMIC DMA driver(ver2.0.3) did not support calling DMIC_TransferReceiveDMA in DMA callback as it did before version 2.0.3. But calling DMIC_TransferReceiveDMA in callback is not recommended.

[2.0.3]

- New Features
- Supported linked transfer in DMIC DMA driver.
- Added new API DMIC_EnableChannelFifo/DMIC_DoFifoReset/DMIC_InstallDMADescriptor.

[2.0.2]

- New Features
  - Supported more channels in driver.

[2.0.1]

- New Features
  - Added a control macro to enable/disable the RESET and CLOCK code in current driver.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

DMIC_DMA

[2.4.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed coverity High Impact finding

[2.4.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of MISRA C-2012 rule 10.1, 10.3, 10.4, 10.5, 10.6, 10.7, 10.8.

[2.4.0]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the issue that DMIC_TransferAbortReceiveDMA can not disable dmic and dma request issue.

[2.3.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of the MISRA C-2012 rules 10.3.

[2.3.0]

- Refer DMIC driver change log 2.0.1 to 2.3.0

DSP

[2.0.1]

- Fixed Misra issue.

[2.0.0]

- initial version.

FLEXCOMM

[2.0.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed typos in FLEXCOMM15_DriverIRQHandler().
  - Fixed MISRA issues.
    - Fixed rules 10.1, 10.3, 10.4, 10.7, 10.8, 11.3, 11.6, 11.8, 11.9, 13.5.
- Improvements
  - Added instance calculation in FLEXCOMM16_DriverIRQHandler() to align with Flexcomm 14 and 15.

[2.0.1]

- Improvements
  - Added more IRQHandler code in drivers to adapt new devices.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

FLEXIO

[2.3.0]

- Improvements
  - Supported platforms which don't have DOZE mode control.
  - Added more pin control functions.

[2.2.3]

- Improvements
  - Adapter the FLEXIO driver to platforms which don't have system level interrupt controller, such as NVIC.

[2.2.2]

- Improvements
  - Release peripheral from reset if necessary in init function.

[2.2.1]

- Improvements
  - Added doxygen index parameter comment in FLEXIO_SetClockMode.

[2.2.0]

- New Features
  - Added new APIs to support FlexIO pin register.

[2.1.0]

- Improvements
  - Added API FLEXIO_SetClockMode to set flexio channel counter and source clock.

[2.0.4]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed MISRA 8.4 issues.

[2.0.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed MISRA 10.4 issues.

[2.0.2]

- Improvements
  - Split FLEXIO component which combines all flexio/flexio_uart/flexio_i2c/flexio_i2s drivers into several components: FlexIO component, flexio_uart component, flexio_i2c_master component, and flexio_i2s component.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed MISRA issues
    - Fixed rules 10.1, 10.3, 10.4, 10.7, 11.6, 11.9, 14.4, 17.7.

[2.0.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the dozen mode configuration error in FLEXIO_Init API. For enableInDoze = true, the configuration should be 0; for enableInDoze = false, the configuration should be 1.

FLEXIO_I2C

[2.6.2]

- Improvements
  - Added timeout for while loop in FLEXIO_I2C_MasterTransferBlocking().
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed build issues related to I2C_RETRY_TIMES.

[2.6.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed coverity issues

[2.6.0]

- Improvements
  - Supported platforms which don't have DOZE mode control.

[2.5.1]

- Improvements
  - Conditionally compile interrupt handling code to solve the problem of using this driver on CPU cores that do not support interrupts.

[2.5.0]

- Improvements
  - Split some functions, fixed CCM problem in file fsl_flexio_i2c_master.c.

[2.4.0]

- Improvements
  - Added delay of 1 clock cycle in FLEXIO_I2C_MasterTransferRunStateMachine to ensure that bus would be idle before next transfer if master is nacked.
  - Fixed issue that the restart setup time is less than the time in I2C spec by adding delay of 1 clock cycle before restart signal.

[2.3.0]

- Improvements
  - Used 3 timers instead of 2 to support transfer which is more than 14 bytes in single transfer.
  - Improved FLEXIO_I2C_MasterTransferGetCount so that the API can check whether the transfer is still in progress.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed MISRA 10.4 issues.

[2.2.0]

- New Features
  - Added timeout mechanism when waiting certain state in transfer API.
  - Added an API for checking bus pin status.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed COVERITY issue of useless call in FLEXIO_I2C_MasterTransferRunStateMachine.
  - Fixed MISRA issues
    - Fixed rules 10.1, 10.3, 10.4, 10.7, 11.6, 11.9, 14.4, 17.7.
  - Added codes in FLEXIO_I2C_MasterTransferCreateHandle to clear pending NVIC IRQ, disable internal IRQs before enabling NVIC IRQ.
  - Modified code so that during master's nonblocking transfer the start and slave address are sent after interrupts being enabled, in order to avoid potential issue of sending the start and slave address twice.

[2.1.7]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the issue that FLEXIO_I2C_MasterTransferBlocking did not wait for STOP bit sent.
  - Fixed COVERITY issue of useless call in FLEXIO_I2C_MasterTransferRunStateMachine.
  - Fixed the issue that I2C master did not check whether bus was busy before transfer.

[2.1.6]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the issue that I2C Master transfer APIs(blocking/non-blocking) did not support the situation of master transfer with subaddress and transfer data size being zero, which means no data followed the subaddress.

[2.1.5]

- Improvements
  - Unified component full name to FLEXIO I2C Driver.

[2.1.4]

- Bug Fixes
  - The following modifications support FlexIO using multiple instances:
    - Removed FLEXIO_Reset API in module Init APIs.
    - Updated module Deinit APIs to reset the shifter/timer config instead of disabling module/clock.
    - Updated module Enable APIs to only support enable operation.

[2.1.3]

- Improvements
  - Changed the prototype of FLEXIO_I2C_MasterInit to return kStatus_Success if initialized successfully or to return kStatus_InvalidArgument if "(srcClock_Hz / masterConfig->baudRate_Bps) / 2 - 1" exceeds 0xFFU.

[2.1.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the FLEXIO I2C issue where the master could not receive data from I2C slave in high baudrate.
  - Fixed the FLEXIO I2C issue where the master could not receive NAK when master sent non-existent addr.
  - Fixed the FLEXIO I2C issue where the master could not get transfer count successfully.
  - Fixed the FLEXIO I2C issue where the master could not receive data successfully when sending data first.
  - Fixed the Dozen mode configuration error in FLEXIO_I2C_MasterInit API. For enableInDoze = true, the configuration should be 0; for enableInDoze = false, the configuration should be 1.
  - Fixed the issue that FLEXIO_I2C_MasterTransferBlocking API called FLEXIO_I2C_MasterTransferCreateHandle, which lead to the s_flexioHandle/s_flexioIsr/s_flexioType variable being written. Then, if calling FLEXIO_I2C_MasterTransferBlocking API multiple times, the s_flexioHandle/s_flexioIsr/s_flexioType variable would not be written any more due to it being out of range. This lead to the following situation: NonBlocking transfer APIs could not work due to the fail of register IRQ.

[2.1.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Implemented the FLEXIO_I2C_MasterTransferBlocking API which is defined in header file but has no implementation in the C file.

[2.1.0]

- New Features
  - Added Transfer prefix in transactional APIs.
  - Added transferSize in handle structure to record the transfer size.

FLEXIO_I2S

[2.2.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of MISRA C-2012 rule 12.4.

[2.2.1]

- Improvements
  - Conditionally compile interrupt handling code to solve the problem of using this driver on CPU cores that do not support interrupts.

[2.2.0]

- New Features
  - Added timeout mechanism when waiting certain state in transfer API.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed IAR Pa082 warnings.
  - Fixed violations of the MISRA C-2012 rules 10.4, 14.4, 11.8, 11.9, 10.1, 17.7, 11.6, 10.3, 10.7.

[2.1.6]

- Bug Fixes
  - Added reset flexio before flexio i2s init to make sure flexio status is normal.

[2.1.5]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the issue that I2S driver used hard code for bitwidth setting.

[2.1.4]

- Improvements
  - Unified component's full name to FLEXIO I2S (DMA/EDMA) driver.

[2.1.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - The following modifications support FLEXIO using multiple instances:
    - Removed FLEXIO_Reset API in module Init APIs.
    - Updated module Deinit APIs to reset the shifter/timer config instead of disabling module/clock.
    - Updated module Enable APIs to only support enable operation.

[2.1.2]

- New Features
  - Added configure items for all pin polarity and data valid polarity.
  - Added default configure for pin polarity and data valid polarity.

[2.1.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed FlexIO I2S RX data read error and eDMA address error.
  - Fixed FlexIO I2S slave timer compare setting error.

[2.1.0]

- New Features
  - Added Transfer prefix in transactional APIs.
  - Added transferSize in handle structure to record the transfer size.

FLEXIO_MCU_LCD

[2.3.0]

- New Features
  - Supported passing an extra user defined parameter to GPIO functions to control the CS/RS/RDWR pin signal.

[2.2.0]

- Improvements
  - Supported platforms which don't have DOZE mode control.

[2.1.0]

- New Features
  - Supported transmit only data without command.

[2.0.8]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed bug that FLEXIO_MCULCD_Init return kStatus_Success even with invalid parameter.
  - Fixed glitch on WR, that when initially configure the timer pin as output, or change the pin back to disabled, the pin may be driven low causing glitch on bus. Configure the pin as bidirection output first then perform a subsequent write to change to output or dsiabled to avoid the issue.

[2.0.6]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed MISRA 10.4 issues when FLEXIO_MCULCD_DATA_BUS_WIDTH defined as signed value.

[2.0.5]

- Improvements
  - Changed FLEXIO_MCULCD_WriteDataArrayBlocking's data parameter to const type.

[2.0.4]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed MISRA 10.4 issues.

[2.0.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of the MISRA C-2012 rules 10.1, 10.3, 10.4, 10.6, 14.4, 17.7.

[2.0.2]

- Improvements
  - Unified component full name to FLEXIO_MCU_LCD (EDMA) driver.

[2.0.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - The following modification to support FlexIO using multiple instances:
    - Removed FLEXIO_Reset API in module Init APIs.
    - Updated module Deinit APIs to reset the shifter/timer configuration instead of disabling module and clock.
    - Updated module Enable APIs to only support enable operation.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

FLEXIO_MCU_LCD_SMARTDMA

[2.0.6]

- Other Changes
  - Add more MCXA devices support.

[2.0.5]

- Other Changes
  - Supported the MCXA platforms.
- New Features
  - Supported passing an extra user defined parameter to GPIO functions to control the RDWR pin signal.

[2.0.4]

- New Features
  - Supported the platforms which use FlexIO SHIFTER DMA to trigger SmartDMA, such as MCXN235, MCXN236.

[2.0.3]

- New Features
  - Supported transmit only data without command.

[2.0.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of the MISRA C-2012 rules 10.1, 10.3, 10.4, 10.6, 14.4, 17.7.

[2.0.1]

- Other Changes
  - Update driver implementation due to SMARTDMA driver update.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

FLEXIO_QSPI

[2.1.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fix FlexIO QSPI MDK build warning

[2.1.0]

- Improvements
  - Supported platforms which don't have DOZE mode control.

[2.0.0]

- New Features
  - Simplex QSPI.

FLEXIO_QSPI_SMARTDMA

[2.0.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fix FlexIO QSPI MDK build warning

[2.0.1]

- Improvements
  - Update driver to work with SmartDMA driver 2.11.0.

[2.0.0]

- New Features
  - Simplex QSPI.

FLEXIO_SPI

[2.4.3]

- Improvements
  - Make SPI_RETRY_TIMES configurable by CONFIG_SPI_RETRY_TIMES.

[2.4.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed FLEXIO_SPI_MasterTransferBlocking and FLEXIO_SPI_MasterTransferNonBlocking issue in CS continuous mode, the CS might not be continuous.

[2.4.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed coverity issues

[2.4.0]

- Improvements
  - Supported platforms which don't have DOZE mode control.

[2.3.5]

- Improvements
  - Conditionally compile interrupt handling code to solve the problem of using this driver on CPU cores that do not support interrupts.

[2.3.4]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the txData from void * to const void * in transmit API

[2.3.3]

- Bugfixes
  - Fixed cs-continuous mode.

[2.3.2]

- Improvements
  - Changed FLEXIO_SPI_DUMMYDATA to 0x00.

[2.3.1]

- Bugfixes
  - Fixed IRQ SHIFTBUF overrun issue when one FLEXIO instance used as multiple SPIs.

[2.3.0]

- New Features
  - Supported FLEXIO_SPI slave transfer with continuous master CS signal and CPHA=0.
  - Supported FLEXIO_SPI master transfer with continuous CS signal.
  - Support 32 bit transfer width.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed wrong timer compare configuration for dma/edma transfer.
  - Fixed wrong byte order of rx data if transfer width is 16 bit, since the we use shifter buffer bit swapped/byte swapped register to read in received data, so the high byte should be read from the high bits of the register when MSB.

[2.2.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed bug in FLEXIO_SPI_MasterTransferAbortEDMA that when aborting EDMA transfer EDMA_AbortTransfer should be used rather than EDMA_StopTransfer.

[2.2.0]

- Improvements
  - Added timeout mechanism when waiting certain states in transfer driver.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed MISRA 10.4 issues.
  - Added codes in FLEXIO_SPI_MasterTransferCreateHandle and FLEXIO_SPI_SlaveTransferCreateHandle to clear pending NVIC IRQ before enabling NVIC IRQ, to fix issue of pending IRQ interfering the on-going process.

[2.1.3]

- Improvements
  - Unified component full name to FLEXIO SPI(DMA/EDMA) Driver.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed MISRA issues
    - Fixed rules 10.1, 10.3, 10.4, 10.7, 11.6, 11.9, 14.4, 17.7.

[2.1.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - The following modification support FlexIO using multiple instances:
    - Removed FLEXIO_Reset API in module Init APIs.
    - Updated module Deinit APIs to reset the shifter/timer config instead of disabling module/clock.
    - Updated module Enable APIs to only support enable operation.

[2.1.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed bug where FLEXIO SPI transfer data is in 16 bit per frame mode with eDMA.
  - Fixed bug when FLEXIO SPI works in eDMA and interrupt mode with 16-bit per frame and Lsbfirst.
  - Fixed the Dozen mode configuration error in FLEXIO_SPI_MasterInit/FLEXIO_SPI_SlaveInit API. For enableInDoze = true, the configuration should be 0; for enableInDoze = false, the configuration should be 1.
- Improvements
  - Added #ifndef/#endif to allow users to change the default TX value at compile time.

[2.1.0]

- New Features
  - Added Transfer prefix in transactional APIs.
  - Added transferSize in handle structure to record the transfer size.
- Bug Fixes

  - Fixed the error register address return for 16-bit data write in FLEXIO_SPI_GetTxDataRegisterAddress.
  - Provided independent IRQHandler/transfer APIs for Master and slave to fix the baudrate limit issue.

FLEXIO_UART

[2.6.4]

- Improvements
  - Make UART_RETRY_TIMES configurable by CONFIG_UART_RETRY_TIMES.

[2.6.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed coverity issues

[2.6.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed coverity issues

[2.6.1]

- Improvements
  - Improve baudrate calculation method, to support higher frequency FlexIO clock source.

[2.6.0]

- Improvements
  - Supported platforms which don't have DOZE mode control.

[2.5.1]

- Improvements
  - Conditionally compile interrupt handling code to solve the problem of using this driver on CPU cores that do not support interrupts.

[2.5.0]

- Improvements
  - Added API FLEXIO_UART_FlushShifters to flush UART fifo.

[2.4.0]

- Improvements
  - Use separate data for TX and RX in flexio_uart_transfer_t.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed bug that when ring buffer is used, if some data is received in ring buffer first before calling FLEXIO_UART_TransferReceiveNonBlocking, the received data count returned by FLEXIO_UART_TransferGetReceiveCount is wrong.

[2.3.0]

- Improvements
  - Added check for baud rate's accuracy that returns kStatus_FLEXIO_UART_BaudrateNotSupport when the best achieved baud rate is not within 3% error of configured baud rate.
- Bug Fixes
  - Added codes in FLEXIO_UART_TransferCreateHandle to clear pending NVIC IRQ before enabling NVIC IRQ, to fix issue of pending IRQ interfering the on-going process.

[2.2.0]

- Improvements
  - Added timeout mechanism when waiting for certain states in transfer driver.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed MISRA 10.4 issues.

[2.1.6]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed IAR Pa082 warnings.
  - Fixed MISRA issues
    - Fixed rules 10.1, 10.3, 10.4, 10.7, 11.6, 11.9, 14.4, 17.7.

[2.1.5]

- Improvements
  - Triggered user callback after all the data in ringbuffer were received in FLEXIO_UART_TransferReceiveNonBlocking.

[2.1.4]

- Improvements
  - Unified component full name to FLEXIO UART(DMA/EDMA) Driver.

[2.1.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - The following modifications support FLEXIO using multiple instances:
    * Removed FLEXIO_Reset API in module Init APIs.
    * Updated module Deinit APIs to reset the shifter/timer configuration instead of disabling module and clock.
    * Updated module Enable APIs to only support enable operation.

[2.1.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the transfer count calculation issue in FLEXIO_UART_TransferGetReceiveCount, FLEXIO_UART_TransferGetSendCount, FLEXIO_UART_TransferGetReceiveCountDMA, FLEXIO_UART_TransferGetSendCountDMA, FLEXIO_UART_TransferGetReceiveCountEDMA and FLEXIO_UART_TransferGetSendCountEDMA.
  - Fixed the Dozen mode configuration error in FLEXIO_UART_Init API. For enableInDoze = true, the configuration should be 0; for enableInDoze = false, the configuration should be 1.
  - Added code to report errors if the user sets a too-low-baudrate which FLEXIO cannot reach.
  - Disabled FLEXIO_UART receive interrupt instead of all NVICs when reading data from ring buffer. If ring buffer is used, receive nonblocking will disable all NVIC interrupts to protect the ring buffer. This had negative effects on other IPs using interrupt.

[2.1.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Changed the API name FLEXIO_UART_StopRingBuffer to FLEXIO_UART_TransferStopRingBuffer to align with the definition in C file.

[2.1.0]

- New Features
  - Added Transfer prefix in transactional APIs.
  - Added txSize/rxSize in handle structure to record the transfer size.
- Bug Fixes
  - Added an error handle to handle the situation that data count is zero or data buffer is NULL.

FLEXSPI

[2.8.0]

- Bug Fixes
  - Introduced the **disableAhbReadResume** field in the flexspi_config_t structure to provide control over the AHBCR[RESUMEDISABLE] register bit.

  - Implemented a workaround for hardware erratum ERR052733 by setting the default value of **disableAhbReadResume** to **true**.
  - Fixed issue in FLEXSPI_TransferHandleIRQ where the transfer completion was incorrectly signaled despite pending read/write operations.
- New Features
  - Introduced a new function(FLEXSPI_UpdateAhbBuffersSettings) that allows users to update the AHB buffer configuration after the FLEXSPI module has been initialized

[2.7.0]

- New Features
  - Added new API to support address remapping.

[2.6.4]

- Improvements
  - Added new macro "FSL_SDK_ENABLE_FLEXSPI_RESET_CONTROL" to support driver level reset control.

[2.6.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed an issue which cause IPCR1[IPAREN] cleared by mistake.

[2.6.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Wait Bus IDLE before operation of FLEXSPI_SoftwareReset(), FLEXSPI_TransferBlocking() and FLEXSPI_TransferNonBlocking().

[2.6.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Updated code of reset peripheral.
  - Updated FLEXSPI_UpdateLUT() to check if input lut address is not in Flexspi AMBA region.
  - Updated FLEXSPI_Init() to check if input AHB buffer size exceeded maximum AHB size.

[2.6.0]

- New Features
  - Added new API to set AHB memory-mapped flash base address.
  - Added support of DLLxCR[REFPHASEGAP] bit field, it is recommended to set it as 0x2 if DLL calibration is enabled.

[2.5.1]

- Bugfixes
  - Fixed handling of W1C bits in the INTR register
  - Removed FIFO resets from FLEXSPI_CheckAndClearError
  - FLEXSPI_TransferBlocking is observing IPCMDDONE and then fetches the final status of the transfer
  - Fixed issue that FLEXSPI2_DriverIRQHandler not defined.

[2.5.0]

- Improvements
  - Supported word un-aligned access for write/read blocking/non-blocking API functions.
  - Fixed dead loop issue in DLL update function when using FRO clock source.
  - Fixed violations of the MISRA C-2012 Rule 10.3.

[2.4.0]

- Improvements
  - Isolated IP command parallel mode and AHB command parallel mode using feature MACRO.
  - Supported new column address shift feature for external memory.

[2.3.5]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of the MISRA C-2012 Rule 14.2.

[2.3.4]

- Bug Fixes
  - Updated flexspi_config_t structure and FlexSPI_Init to support new feature FSL_FEATURE_FLEXSPI_HAS_NO_MCR0_CONBINATION.

[2.3.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - Removed feature FSL_FEATURE_FLEXSPI_DQS_DELAY_PS for DLL delay setting. Changed to use feature FSL_FEATURE_FLEXSPI_DQS_DELAY_MIN to set slave delay target as 0 for DLL enable and clock frequency higher than 100MHz.

[2.3.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of the MISRA C-2012 Rule 8.4, 8.5, 10.1, 10.3, 10.4, 11.6 and 14.4.

[2.3.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Wait for bus to be idle before using it as access to external flash with new setting in FLEXSPI_SetFlashConfig() API.
  - Fixed the potential buffer overread and Tx FIFO overwrite issue in FLEXSPI_WriteBlocking.

[2.3.0]

- New Features
  - Added new API FLEXSPI_UpdateDllValue for users to update DLL value after updating flexspi root clock.
  - Corrected grammatical issues for comments.
  - Added support for new feature FSL_FEATURE_FLEXSPI_DQS_DELAY_PS in DLL configuration.

[2.2.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of the MISRA C-2012 Rule 10.1, 10.3 and 10.4.
  - Updated _flexspi_command from named enumerator into anonymous enumerator.

[2.2.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of the MISRA C-2012 Rule 10.1, 10.3, 10.4, 10.8, 11.9, 14.4, 15.7, 16.4, 17.7, 7.3.
  - Fixed IAR build warning Pe167.
  - Fixed the potential buffer overwrite and Rx FIFO overread issue in FLEXSPI_ReadBlocking.

[2.2.0]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed flag name typos: kFLEXSPI_IpTxFifoWatermarkEmpltyFlag to kFLEXSPI_IpTxFifoWatermarkEmptyFlag; kFLEXSPI_IpCommandExcutionDoneFlag to kFLEXSPI_IpCommandExecutionDoneFlag.
  - Fixed comments typos such as sequencen->sequence, levle->level.
  - Fixed FLSHCR2[ARDSEQID] field clean issue.
  - Updated flexspi_config_t structure and FlexSPI_Init to support new feature FSL_FEATURE_FLEXSPI_HAS_NO_MCR0_ATDFEN and FSL_FEATURE_FLEXSPI_HAS_NO_MCR0_ARDFEN.
  - Updated flexspi_flags_t structure to support new feature FSL_FEATURE_FLEXSPI_HAS_INTEN_AHBBUSERROREN.

[2.1.1]

- Improvements
  - Defaulted enable prefetch for AHB RX buffer configuration in FLEXSPI_GetDefaultConfig, which is align with the reset value in AHBRXBUFxCR0.
  - Added software workaround for ERR011377 in FLEXSPI_SetFlashConfig; added some delay after DLL lock status set to ensure correct data read/write.

[2.1.0]

- New Features
  - Added new API FLEXSPI_UpdateRxSampleClock for users to update read sample clock source after initialization.
  - Added reset peripheral operation in FLEXSPI_Init if required.

[2.0.5]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed FLEXSPI_UpdateLUT cannot do partial update issue.

[2.0.4]

- Bug Fixes
  - Reset flash size to zero for all ports in FLEXSPI_Init; fixed the possible out-of-range flash access with no error reported.

[2.0.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed AHB receive buffer size configuration issue. The FLEXSPI_AHBRXBUFCR0_BUFSZ field should configure 64 bits size, and currently the AHB receive buffer size is in bytes which means 8-bit, so the correct configuration should be config->ahbConfig.buffer[i].bufferSize / 8.

[2.0.2]

- New Features
  - Supported DQS write mask enable/disable feature during set FLEXSPI configuration.
  - Provided new API FLEXSPI_TransferUpdateSizeEDMA for users to update eDMA transfer size(SSIZE/DSIZE) per DMA transfer.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed invalid operation of FLEXSPI_Init to enable AHB bus Read Access to IP RX FIFO.
  - Fixed incorrect operation of FLEXSPI_Init to configure IP TX FIFO watermark.

[2.0.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the flag clear issue and AHB read Command index configuration issue in FLEXSPI_SetFlashConfig.
  - Updated FLEXSPI_UpdateLUT function to update LUT table from any index instead of previous command index.
  - Added bus idle wait in FLEXSPI_SetFlashConfig and FLEXSPI_UpdateLUT to ensure bus is idle before any change to FlexSPI controller.
  - Updated interrupt API FLEXSPI_TransferNonBlocking and interrupt handle flow FLEXSPI_TransferHandleIRQ.
  - Updated eDMA API FLEXSPI_TransferEDMA.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

FLEXSPI DMA Driver

[2.2.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of the MISRA C-2012 Rule 10.1, 10.3, 10.4, 10.8.

[2.2.0]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of the MISRA C-2012 Rule 10.1, 10.3.
- New Features
  - Updated name of FLEXSPI_TransferGetTransferCountDMA API.

[2.1.1]

- New Features
  - Updated driver to support feature FSL_FEATURE_FLEXSPI_DMA_MULTIPLE_DES.

[2.1.0]

- Bug Fixes
  - Updated enumaration flexspi_dma_transfer_nsize_t and remove the unsupported items.
- New Features
  - Updated driver for deprecating the multiple linked descriptors inside FLEXSPI_TransferDMA, only up to one linked descriptor is needed according to hardware update.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

FMEAS

[2.1.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - MISRA C-2012 issues fixed: rule 10.4, rule 10.8.

[2.1.0]

- Updated "FMEAS_GetFrequency","FMEAS_StartMeasure","FMEAS_IsMeasureComplete" API and add definition to match ASYNC_SYSCON.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version ported from LPCOpen.

GPIO

[2.1.7]

- Improvements
  - Enhanced GPIO_PinInit to enable clock internally.

[2.1.6]

- Bug Fixes
  - Clear bit before set it within GPIO_SetPinInterruptConfig() API.

[2.1.5]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of the MISRA C-2012 rules 3.1, 10.6, 10.7, 17.7.

[2.1.4]

- Improvements
  - Added API GPIO_PortGetInterruptStatus to retrieve interrupt status for whole port.
  - Corrected typos in header file.

[2.1.3]

- Improvements
  - Updated "GPIO_PinInit" API. If it has DIRCLR and DIRSET registers, use them at set 1 or clean 0.

[2.1.2]

- Improvements
  - Removed deprecated APIs.

[2.1.1]

- Improvements
  - API interface changes:
    * Refined naming of APIs while keeping all original APIs, marking them as deprecated. Original APIs will be removed in next release. The mainin change is updating APIs with prefix of _PinXXX() and _PorortXXX

[2.1.0]

- New Features
  - Added GPIO initialize API.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

HASHCRYPT

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

[2.0.1]

- Supported loading AES key from unaligned address.

[2.0.2]

- Supported loading AES key from unaligned address for different compiler and core variants.

[2.0.3]

- Remove SHA512 and AES ICB algorithm definitions

[2.0.4]

- Add SHA context switch support

[2.1.0]

- Update the register name and macro to align with new header.
- Fixed the sign-compare warning in hashcrypt_load_data.

[2.1.1]

- Fix MISRA C-2012.

[2.1.2]

- Support loading AES input data from unaligned address.

[2.1.3]

- Fix MISRA C-2012.

[2.1.4]

- Fix context switch cannot work when switching from AES.

[2.1.5]

- Add data synchronization barrier inside hashcrypt_sha_ldm_stm_16_words() to prevent possible optimization issue.

[2.2.0]

- Add AES-OFB and AES-CFB mixed IP/SW modes.

[2.2.1]

- Add data synchronization barrier inside hashcrypt_sha_ldm_stm_16_words() prevent compiler from reordering memory write when -O2 or higher is used.

[2.2.2]

- Add data synchronization barrier inside hashcrypt_sha_ldm_stm_16_words() to fix optimization issue

[2.2.3]

- Added check for size in hashcrypt_aes_one_block to prevent overflowing COUNT field in MEMCTRL register, if its bigger than COUNT field do a multiple runs.

[2.2.4]

- In all HASHCRYPT_AES_xx functions have been added setting CTRL_MODE bitfield to 0 after processing data, which decreases power consumption.

[2.2.5]

- Add data synchronization barrier and instruction synchronization barrier inside hashcrypt_sha_process_message_data() to fix optimization issue

[2.2.6]

- Add data synchronization barrier inside HASHCRYPT_SHA_Update() and hashcrypt_get_data() function to fix optimization issue on MDK and ARMGCC release targets

[2.2.7]

- Add data synchronization barrier inside HASHCRYPT_SHA_Update() to fix optimization issue on MCUX IDE release target

[2.2.8]

- Unify hashcrypt hashing behavior between aligned and unaligned input data

[2.2.9]

- Add handling of set ERROR bit in the STATUS register

[2.2.10]

- Fix missing error statement in hashcrypt_save_running_hash()

[2.2.11]

- Fix incorrect SHA-256 calculation for long messages with reload

[2.2.12]

- Fix hardfault issue on the Keil compiler due to unaligned memcpy() input on some optimization levels

[2.2.13]

- Added function hashcrypt_seed_prng() which loading random number into PRNG_SEED register before AES operation for SCA protection

[2.2.14]

- Modify function hashcrypt_get_data() to prevent issue with unaligned access

[2.2.15]

- Add wait on DIGEST BIT inside hashcrypt_sha_one_block() to fix issues with some optimization flags

[2.2.16]

- Add DSB instruction inside hashcrypt_sha_ldm_stm_16_words() to fix issues with some optimization flags

[2.2.17]

- Fix context size when hashcrypt built with reload feature

I2C

[2.3.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of the MISRA C-2012 rules 10.1.
  - Fixed issue that if master only sends address without data during I2C interrupt transfer, address nack cannot be detected.

[2.3.2]

- Improvement
  - Enable or disable timeout option according to enableTimeout.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed timeout value calculation error.
  - Fixed bug that the interrupt transfer cannot recover from the timeout error.

[2.3.1]

- Improvement
  - Before master transfer with transactional APIs, enable master function while disable slave function and vise versa for slave transfer to avoid the one affecting the other.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed bug in I2C_SlaveEnable that the slave enable/disable should not affect the other register bits.

[2.3.0]

- Improvement
  - Added new return codes kStatus_I2C_EventTimeout and kStatus_I2C_SclLowTimeout, and added the check for event timeout and SCL timeout in I2C master transfer.
  - Fixed bug in slave transfer that the address match event should be invoked before not after slave transmit/receive event.

[2.2.0]

- New Features
  - Added enumeration _i2c_status_flags to include all previous master and slave status flags, and added missing status flags.
  - Modified I2C_GetStatusFlags to get all I2C flags.
  - Added API I2C_ClearStatusFlags to clear all clearable flags not just master flags.
  - Modified master transactional APIs to enable bus event timeout interrupt during transfer, to avoid glitch on bus causing transfer hangs indefinitely.

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed bug that status flags and interrupt enable masks share the same enumerations by adding enumeration _i2c_interrupt_enable for all master and slave interrupt sources.

[2.1.0]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed bug that during master transfer, when master is nacked during slave probing or sending subaddress, the return status should be kStatus_I2C_Addr_Nak rather than kStatus_I2C_Nak.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed MISRA issues.
    - Fixed rules 10.1, 10.4, 13.5.
- New Features
  - Added macro I2C_MASTER_TRANSMIT_IGNORE_LAST_NACK, so that user can configure whether to ignore the last byte being nacked by slave during master transfer.

[2.0.8]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed I2C_MasterSetBaudRate issue that MSTSCLLOW and MSTSCLHIGH are incorrect when MSTTIME is odd.

[2.0.7]

- Bug Fixes
  - Two dividers, CLKDIV and MSTTIME are used to configure baudrate. According to reference manual, in order to generate 400kHz baudrate, the clock frequency after CLKDIV must be less than 2mHz. Fixed the bug that, the clock frequency after CLKDIV may be larger than 2mHz using the previous calculation method.
  - Fixed MISRA 10.1 issues.
  - Fixed wrong baudrate calculation when feature FSL_FEATURE_I2C_PREPCLKFRG_8MHZ is enabled.

[2.0.6]

- New Features
  - Added master timeout self-recovery support for feature FSL_FEATURE_I2C_TIMEOUT_RECOVERY.
- Bug Fixes
  - Eliminated IAR Pa082 warning.
  - Fixed MISRA issues.
    - Fixed rules 10.1, 10.3, 10.4, 10.7, 10.8, 11.3, 11.6, 11.8, 11.9, 13.5.

[2.0.5]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed wrong assignment for datasize in I2C_InitTransferStateMachineDMA.
  - Fixed wrong working flow in I2C_RunTransferStateMachineDMA to ensure master can work in no start flag and no stop flag mode.
  - Fixed wrong working flow in I2C_RunTransferStateMachine and added kReceiveDataBeginState in _i2c_transfer_states to ensure master can work in no start flag and no stop flag mode.
  - Fixed wrong handle state in I2C_MasterTransferDMAHandleIRQ. After all the data has been transfered or nak is returned, handle state should be changed to idle.
- Improvements
  - Rounded up the calculated divider value in I2C_MasterSetBaudRate.

[2.0.4]

- Improvements
  - Updated the I2C_WATI_TIMEOUT macro to unified name I2C_RETRY_TIMES
  - Updated the “I2C_MasterSetBaudRate” API to support baudrate configuration for feature QN9090.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed build warnning caused by uninitialized variable.
  - Fixed COVERITY issue of unchecked return value in I2C_RTOS_Transfer.

[2.0.3]

- Improvements
  - Unified the component full name to FLEXCOMM I2C(DMA/FREERTOS) driver.

[2.0.2]

- Improvements
  - In slave IRQ:
    1. Changed slave receive process to first set the I2C_SLVCTL_SLVCONTINUE_MASK to acknowledge the received data, then do data receive.
    2. Improved slave transmit process to set the I2C_SLVCTL_SLVCONTINUE_MASK immediately after writing the data.

[2.0.1]

- Improvements
  - Added I2C_WATI_TIMEOUT macro to allow users to specify the timeout times for waiting flags in functional API and blocking transfer API.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

I2S

[2.3.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed warning for comparison between pointer and integer.

[2.3.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Updated the value of TX/RX software transfer state machine after transfer contents are submitted to avoid race condition.

[2.3.0]

- Improvements
  - Added api I2S_InstallDMADescriptorMemory/I2S_TransferSendLoopDMA/I2S_TransferReceiveLoopD to support loop transfer.
  - Added api I2S_EmptyTxFifo to support blocking flush tx fifo.
  - Updated api I2S_TransferAbortDMA by removed the blocking flush tx fifo from this function.
- Bug Fixes
  - Removed the while loop in abort transfer function to fix the dead loop issue under specific user case.

[2.2.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of the MISRA C-2012 rules 8.4.

[2.2.1]

- Improvements
  - Added feature FSL_FEATURE_FLEXCOMM_INSTANCE_I2S_SUPPORT_SECONDARY_CHANNELn for the SOC has parts of instance support secondary channel.
- Bug Fixes
  - Added volatile statement for the state variable of i2s_handle and enable the mainline channel pair before enable interrupt to avoid the issue of code excution reordering which may cause the interrupt generated unexpectedly.

[2.2.0]

- Improvements
  - Added 8/16/24 bits mono data format transfer support in I2S driver.
  - Added new apis I2S_SetBitClockRate.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the PA082 build warning.
  - Fixed the sign-compare warning.

  - Fixed violations of the MISRA C-2012 rules 10.4, 10.8, 11.9, 10.1, 11.3, 13.5, 11.8, 10.3, 10.7.
  - Fixed the Operand don't affect result Coverity issue.

[2.1.0]

- Improvements
  - Added a feature for the FLEXCOMM which supports I2S and has interconnection with DMIC.
  - Used a feature to control PDMDATA instead of I2S_CFG1_PDMDATA.
  - Added member bytesPerFrame in i2s_dma_handle_t, used for DMA transfer width configure, instead of using sizeof(uint32_t) hardcode.
  - Used the macro provided by DMA driver to define the I2S DMA descriptor.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the issue that I2S DMA driver always generated duplicate callback.

[2.0.3]

- New Features
  - Added a feature to remove configuration for the second channel on LPC51U68.

[2.0.2]

- New Features
  - Added ENABLE_IRQ handle after register I2S interrupt handle.

[2.0.1]

- Improvements
  - Unified the component full name to FLEXCOMM I2S (DMA) driver.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

I2S_DMA

[2.3.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed data size limit does not match the macro DMA_MAX_TRANSFER_BYTES issue.

[2.3.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of the MISRA C-2012 rules 10.3.

[2.3.1]

- Refer I2S driver change log 2.0.1 to 2.3.1

I3C

[2.14.3]

- Improvements
  - Fixed Coverity CERT-C violations.
  - Used I3C_RSTS instead of I3C special feature macro.
  - Adapted the driver to support new platform.

[2.14.2]

- Improvements
  - Added timeout for ENTDAA process API.
  - Added build system macro to control the timeout setting.

[2.14.1]

- Improvements
  - Split the function I3C_MasterTransferBlocking to meet the HIS-CCM requirement.

[2.14.0]

- Improvements
  - Added the choice to set fast start header with push-pull speed when all targets addresses have MSB 0 instead of forcing to set it.
  - Deleted duplicated busy check in I3C_MasterStart function.

[2.13.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Disabled Rx auto-termination in repeated start interrupt event while transfer API doesn't enable it.
  - Waited the completion event after loading all Tx data in Tx FIFO.
- Improvements
  - Conditionally compile interrupt handling code to solve the problem of using this driver on CPU cores that do not support interrupts.

[2.13.0]

- New features
  - Added the hot-join support for I3C bus initialization API.
- Bug Fixes
  - Set read termination with START at the same time in case unknown issue.
  - Set MCTRL[TYPE] as 0 for DDR force exit.
- Improvements
  - Added the API to reset device count assigned by ENTDAA.
  - Provided the method to set global macro I3C_MAX_DEVCNT to determine how many device addresses ENTDAA can allocate at one time.
  - Initialized target management static array based on instance number for the case that multiple instances are used at the same time.

[2.12.0]

- Improvements
  - Added the slow clock parameter for Controller initialization function to calculate accurate timeout.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the issue that BAMATCH field can't be 0. BAMATCH should be 1 for 1MHz slow clock.

[2.11.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the issue that interrupt API transmits extra byte when subaddress and data size are null.
  - Fixed the slow clock calculation issue.

[2.11.0]

- New features
  - Added the START/ReSTART SCL delay setting for the Soc which supports this feature.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the issue that ENTDAA process waits Rx pending flag which causes problem when Rx watermark isn't 0. Just check the Rx FIFO count.

[2.10.8]

- Improvements
  - Support more instances.

[2.10.7]

- Improvements
  - Fixed the potential compile warning.

[2.10.6]

- New features
  - Added the I3C private read/write with 0x7E address as start.

[2.10.5]

- New features
  - Added I3C HDR-DDR transfer support.

[2.10.4]

- Improvements
  - Added one more option for master to not set RDTERM when doing I3C Common Command Code transfer.

[2.10.3]

- Improvements
  - Masked the slave IBI/MR/HJ request functions with feature macro.

[2.10.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Added workaround for errata ERR051617: I3C working with I2C mode creates the unintended Repeated START before actual STOP on some platforms.

[2.10.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the issue that DAA function doesn't wait until all Rx data is read out from FIFO after master control done flag is set.
  - Fixed the issue that DAA function could return directly although the disabled interrupts are not enabled back.

[2.10.0]

- New features
  - Added I3C extended IBI data support.

[2.9.0]

- Improvements
  - Added adaptive termination for master blocking transfer. Set termination with start signal when receiving bytes less than 256.

[2.8.2]

- Improvements
  - Fixed the build warning due to armgcc strict check.

[2.8.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of the MISRA C-2012 rules 17.7.

[2.8.0]

- Improvements
  - Added API I3C_MasterProcessDAASpecifiedBaudrate for temporary baud rate adjustment when I3C master assigns dynamic address.

[2.7.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the issue that I3C slave handle STOP event before finishing data transmission.

[2.7.0]

- Fixed the CCM problem in file fsl_i3c.c.
- Fixed the FSL_FEATURE_I3C_HAS_NO_SCONFIG_IDRAND usage issue in I3C_GetDefaultConfig and I3C_Init.

[2.6.0]

- Fixed the FSL_FEATURE_I3C_HAS_NO_SCONFIG_IDRAND usage issue in fsl_i3c.h.
- Changed some static functions in fsl_i3c.c as non-static and define the functions in fsl_i3c.h to make I3C DMA driver reuse:
  - I3C_GetIBIType
  - I3C_GetIBIAddress
  - I3C_SlaveCheckAndClearError
- Changed the handle pointer parameter in IRQ related funtions to void * type to make it reuse in I3C DMA driver.
- Added new API I3C_SlaveRequestIBIWithSingleData for slave to request single data byte, this API could be used regardless slave is working in non-blocking interrupt or non-blocking dma.
- Added new API I3C_MasterGetDeviceListAfterDAA for master application to get the device information list built up in DAA process.

[2.5.4]

- Improved I3C driver to avoid setting state twice in the SendCommandState of I3C_RunTransferStateMachine.
- Fixed MISRA violation of rule 20.9.
- Fixed the issue that I3C_MasterEmitRequest did not use Type I3C SDR.

[2.5.3]

- Updated driver for new feature FSL_FEATURE_I3C_HAS_NO_SCONFIG_BAMATCH and FSL_FEATURE_I3C_HAS_NO_SCONFIG_IDRAND.

[2.5.2]

- Updated driver for new feature FSL_FEATURE_I3C_HAS_NO_MERRWARN_TERM.
- Fixed the issue that call to I3C_MasterTransferBlocking API did not generate STOP signal when NAK status was returned.

[2.5.1]

- Improved the receive terminate size setting for interrupt transfer read, now it's set at beginning of transfer if the receive size is less than 256 bytes.

[2.5.0]

- Added new API I3C_MasterRepeatedStartWithRxSize to send repeated start signal with receive terminate size specified.
- Fixed the status used in I3C_RunTransferStateMachine, changed to use pending interrupts as status to be handled in the state machine.
- Fixed MISRA 2012 violation of rule 10.3, 10.7.

[2.4.0]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed kI3C_SlaveMatchedFlag interrupt is not properly handled in I3C_SlaveTransferHandleIRQ when it comes together with interrupt kI3C_SlaveBusStartFlag.
  - Fixed the inaccurate I2C baudrate calculation in I3C_MasterSetBaudRate.
  - Added new API I3C_MasterGetIBIRules to get registered IBI rules.
  - Added new variable isReadTerm in struct _i3c_master_handle for transfer state routine to check if MCTRL.RDTERM is configured for read transfer.
  - Changed to emit Auto IBI in transfer state routine for slave start flag assertion.
  - Fixed the slave maxWriteLength and maxReadLength does not be configured into SMAXLIMITS register issue.
  - Fixed incorrect state for IBI in I3C master interrupt transfer IRQ handle routine.
  - Added isHotJoin in i3c_slave_config_t to request hot-join event during slave init.

[2.3.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of the MISRA C-2012 rules 8.4, 17.7.
  - Fixed incorrect HotJoin event index in I3C_GetIBIType.

[2.3.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the issue that call of I3C_MasterTransferBlocking/I3C_MasterTransferNonBlocking fails for the case which receive length 1 byte of data.
  - Fixed the issue that STOP signal is not sent when NAK status is detected during execution of I3C_MasterTransferBlocking function.

[2.3.0]

- Improvements
  - Added I3C common driver APIs to initialize I3C with both master and slave configuration.
  - Updated I3C master transfer callback to function set structure to include callback invoke for IBI event and slave2master event.
  - Updated I3C master non-blocking transfer model and always enable the interrupts to be able to re-act to the slave start event and handle slave IBI.

[2.2.0]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the issue that I3C transfer size limit to 255 bytes.

[2.1.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Reset default hkeep value to kI3C_MasterHighKeeperNone in I3C_MasterGetDefaultConfig

[2.1.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed incorrect FIFO reset operation in I3C Master Transfer APIs.
  - Fixed i3c slave IRQ handler issue, slave transmit could be underrun because tx FIFO is not filled in time right after start flag detected.

[2.1.0]

- Added definitions and APIs for I3C slave functionality, updated previous I3C APIs to support I3C functionality.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

I3C_DMA

[2.1.9]

- Improvements
  - Fixed Coverity CERT-C violations.

[2.1.8]

- Bug Fixes
  - Updated the logic to handle Rx termination and complete event to adapt different situation.
- Improvements
  - Added the MCTRLDONE flag check after STOP request to ensure the completion of whole transfer operation.

[2.1.7]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the issue to use subaddress to read/write data with RT500/600 DMA.

[2.1.6]

- Improvements
  - Added the FSL_FEATURE_I3C_HAS_NO_MASTER_DMA_WDATA_REG to select the correct register to write data based on specific Soc.

[2.1.5]

- New features
  - Supported I3C HDR-DDR transfer with DMA.
- Improvements
  - Added workaround for RT500/600 I3C DMA transfer.
  - Removed I3C IRQ handler calling in the Tx EDMA callback. Previously driver doesn't use the END byte which can trigger the complete interrupt for controller sending and receiving, now let I3C event handler deal with I3C events.
  - Used linked DMA to transfer all I3C subaddress and data without handling of intermediate states, simplifying code logic.
  - Prepare the Tx DMA before I3C START to ensure there's no time delay between START and transmitting data.

[2.1.4]

- Improvements
  - Used linked DMA transfer to reduce the latency between DMA transfers previous data and the END byte.

[2.1.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the MISRA issue rule 10.4, 11.3.

[2.1.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the issue that I3C slave send the last byte data without using the END type register.

[2.1.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed MISRA issue rule 9.1.

[2.1.0]

- Improvements
  - Deleted legacy IBI data request code.

[2.0.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed issue that bus STOP occurs when Tx FIFO still takes data.
- Improvements
  - Fixed the build warning due to armgcc strict check.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

IAP

[2.1.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed misra issue.

[2.1.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed some macro undefined issue.
  - Put IAP_FlexspiNorInit API into RAM.

[2.1.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed misra issue.

[2.1.0]

- New Features
  - Added IAP_RunBootLoader() API

[2.0.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed doxygen issue.

[2.0.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Minor update for MISRA issue fix.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

INPUTMUX

[2.0.10]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed CERT-C violations.

[2.0.9]

- Improvements
  - Use INPUTMUX_CLOCKS to initialize the inputmux module clock to adapt to multiple inputmux instances.
  - Modify the API base type from INPUTMUX_Type to void.

[2.0.8]

- Improvements
  - Updated a feature macro usage for function INPUTMUX_EnableSignal.

[2.0.7]

- Improvements
  - Release peripheral from reset if necessary in init function.

[2.0.6]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the documentation wrong in API INPUTMUX_AttachSignal.

[2.0.5]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed build error because some devices has no sct.

[2.0.4]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of the MISRA C-2012 rule 10.4, 12.2 in INPUTMUX_EnableSignal() function.

[2.0.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of the MISRA C-2012 rules 10.4, 10.7, 12.2.

[2.0.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of the MISRA C-2012 rules 10.4, 12.2.

[2.0.1]

- Support channel mux setting in INPUTMUX_EnableSignal().

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

IOPCTL

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

LCDIF

[2.3.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed CERT-C violations.
  - Fixed wrong frame buffer configuration for overlay layers.

[2.3.0]

- New Features
  - Supported layer decompress mode for DC8000.

[2.2.0]

- New Features
  - Supported new layers and configurations for DC8000.
  - Added new APIs and configurations to support DBI interface.
- Bug Fixes
  - Update align calculation method, the old one can only be used when the align bytes' low bits are all zeros.

[2.1.2]

- Improvements
  - Release peripheral from reset if necessary in init function.

[2.1.1]

- Improvements
  - Added memory address conversion to support buffers which could only be accessed using alias address by non-core masters.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fix MISRA-C 2012 issues.

[2.1.0]

- Bug Fixes
  - Corrected the frame buffer pixel format name.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

LPADC

[2.9.3]

- Improvements
  - Add timeout for while loop code.

[2.9.2]

- Improvements
  - Fixed CERT-C issues.

[2.9.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed incorrect channel B FIFO selection logic.

[2.9.0]

- Bug Fixes
  - Add code to handle the case where GCC[GAIN_CAL] is a signed number.
  - Split LPADC_FinishAutoCalibration function into two functions.
  - Improved LPADC driver.

[2.8.4]

- Bug Fixes
  - Remove function 'LPADC_SetOffsetValue' assert statement, this statement may cause runtime errors in existing code.

[2.8.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed SDK lpadc driver examples compile issue, move condition 'commandId < ADC_CV_COUNT' to a more appropriate location.

[2.8.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the violations of MISRA C-2012 rule 18.1, 10.3, 10.1 and 10.4.

[2.8.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed LPADC sample mode enum name mistake.

[2.8.0]

- Improvements
  - Release peripheral from reset if necessary in init function.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed function LPADC_GetConvResult() issue.
  - Fixed function LPADC_SetConvCommandConfig() bugs.

[2.7.2]

- Improvements
  - Use feature macros instead of header file macros.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the violations of MISRA C-2012 rule 10.1, 10.3, 10.4 and 14.3.

[2.7.1]

- Improvements
  - Corrected descriptions of several functions.
  - Improved function LPADC_GetOffsetValue and LPADC_SetOffsetValue.
  - Revert changes of feature macros for lpadc.
  - Use feature macros instead of header file macros.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the violations of MISRA C-2012 rule 10.8.
  - Fixed the violations of MISRA C-2012 rule 10.1, 10.3, 10.4 and 14.3.

[2.7.0]

- Improvements
  - Added supports of CFG2 register.
  - Removed some useless macros.

[2.6.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the violations of MISRA C-2012 rules.
  - Fixed LPADC driver code compile error issue.

[2.6.1]

- Improvements
  - Updated the use of macros in the driver code.

[2.6.0]

- Improvements
  - Added the API LPADC_SetOffset12BitValue() to configure 12bit ADC conversion offset trim value manually.
  - Added the API LPADC_SetOffset16BitValue() to configure 16bit ADC conversion offset trim value manually.
  - Added API to set offset calibration mode.
  - Added configuration of alternate channel.
  - Updated auto calibration API and added calibration value conversion API.
- New feature
  - Added API LPADC_EnableHardwareTriggerCommandSelection() to enable trigger commands controlled by ADC_ETC.
  - Updated LPADC_DoAutoCalibration() to allow doing something else before the ADC initialization to be totally complete. Enhance initialization duration time of the ADC.
  - Added two new APIs to get/set calibration value.

[2.5.2]

- Improvements
  - Added while loop, LPADC_GetConvResult() will return only when the FIFO will not be empty.

[2.5.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed some typos in Lpadc driver comments.

[2.5.0]

- Improvements
  - Added missing items to enable trigger interrupts.

[2.4.0]

- New features
  - Added APIs to get/clear trigger status flags.

[2.3.0]

- Improvements
  - Removed LPADC_MeasureTemperature() function for the LPADC supports different temperature sensor calculation equations.

[2.2.1]

- Improvements
  - Optimized LPADC_MeasureTemperature() function to support the specific series with flash solidified calibration value.
  - Clean doxygen warnings.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of MISRA C-2012 rule 10.3, rule 10.8 and rule 17.7.

[2.2.0]

- New Feature
  - Added API LPADC_MeasureTemperature() to get correct temperature from the internal sensor.
- Improvements
  - Separated lpadc_conversion_resolution_mode_t with related feature macro.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the violations of MISRA C-2012 rules:
    - Rule 10.3, 10.4, 10.6, 10.7 and 17.7.

[2.1.1]

- Improvements
  - Updated the gain calibration formula.
  - Used feature to segregate the new item kLPADC_TriggerPriorityPreemptSubsequently.

[2.1.0]

- New Features
  - Added the API LPADC_SetOffsetValue() to support configure offset trim value manually.
  - Added the API LPADC_DoOffsetCalibration() to do offset calibration independently.
- Improvements
  - Improved the usage of macros and removed invalid macros.

[2.0.2]

- Improvements
  - Added support for platforms with 2 FIFOs and different calibration measures.

[2.0.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Ensured the API LPADC_SetConvCommandConfig configure related registers correctly.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

MIPI_DSI

[2.3.0]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed typo in member of dsi_transfer_t structure. The sendDscCmd and dscCmd shall be sendDcsCmd and dcsCmd.

[2.2.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed CERT-C violations.

[2.2.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed issue that VACTIVE setting shall equal to the number of active lines (height), no need to minus 1.
- Improvements
  - Update DSI_Deinit to reset peripheral.
  - Update DSI_DeinitDphy to power down DPHY using DPHY_PD_REG before powering down PLL.

[2.2.0]

- New Features
  - Added APIs to configure DBI FIFO and payload.
  - Supported new controls and configurations of DBI pixel format, PHY ready and ULPS for RT700.
  - Updated the DPI setting to use float for coefficient value for more accurate calculation.

[2.1.6]

- Improvements
  - Release peripheral from reset if necessary in init function.

[2.1.5]

- Other Changes
  - Changed to use new register naming.
  - Added workaround for Errata ERR011439. Avoid DCS long packet command writes with zero-length data payload in low-power mode, because the checksum is incorrect in this case.

[2.1.4]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the MISRA issues.

[2.1.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the DPI horizontal timing setting issue.

[2.1.2]

- Improvements
  - Supported long package read.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the bug that runs to hardfault when sending long packet with 4-byte unaligned address.

[2.1.1]

- Improvements
  - Some SOC compatibility improvement.

[2.1.0]

- Improvements
  - Improved for the platforms which does not support ULPS.

[2.0.6]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the timing issue that non-continuous HS clock mode does not work.

[2.0.5]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed kDSI_InterruptGroup1BtaTo and kDSI_InterruptGroup1HtxTo definition error.
- Improvements
  - Changed to override MIPI_DriverIRQHandler instead of MIPI_IRQHandler.

[2.0.4]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed MISRA C-2012 issues: 10.1, 10.3, 10.4, 10.4, 10.6, 10.7, 10.8, 11.3, 11.8, 12.2, 14.4, 16.4, 17.7.

[2.0.3]

- Improvement
  - Updated for combo phy header file.

[2.0.2]

- New Features
  - Supported sending separate DSI command from TX data array.
- Bug Fixes
  - Disabled all interrupts in DSI_Init.

[2.0.1]

- Improvements
  - Updated to support the DPHY which does not have internal DPHY PLL.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

MIPI_DSI_SMARTDMA

[2.3.2]

- Misc Changes
  - Updated for SMARTDMA driver firmware name change.

[2.3.1]

- New Features
  - Updated DSI_TransferWriteMemorySMARTDMA to support transfer format of input RGB565 and output RGB888 pixel data.

[2.3.0]

- New Features
  - Updated DSI_TransferWriteMemorySMARTDMA, dsi_smartdma_write_mem_transfer_t and dsi_smartdma_handle_t to support 2-dimensional data transfer for interleaved pixels.

[2.2.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed MISRA C-2012 issues: 10.1, 10.3, 11.3, 11.8, 14.4, 17.7.

[2.2.0]

- Improvements
  - Supported swap or don't swap the pixel byte before written to MIPI DSI FIFO.

[2.1.0]

- Improvements
  - Supported frame buffer format XRGB8888.
  - Added virtual channel setting in dsi_smartdma_write_mem_transfer_t, current driver only support channel 0, added for future enhancement.

[2.0.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the issue that driver handle not set to busy during transfer.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

MRT

[2.0.5]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed CERT INT31-C violations.

[2.0.4]

- Improvements
  - Don't reset MRT when there is not system level MRT reset functions.

[2.0.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of MISRA C-2012 rule 10.1 and 10.4.
  - Fixed the wrong count value assertion in MRT_StartTimer API.

[2.0.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of MISRA C-2012 rule 10.4.

[2.0.1]

- Added control macro to enable/disable the RESET and CLOCK code in current driver.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

MU

[2.3.0]

- New Features
  - Added MU_BUSY_POLL_COUNT parameter to prevent infinite polling loops in MU operations.
  - Added timeout mechanism to all polling loops in MU driver code.
  - Added new function MU_ReceiveMsgTimeout() to include timeout mechanism.
- Improvements
  - Updated function signatures to return status codes for better error handling:
    - Changed MU_ResetBothSides to return status_t instead of void
    - Updated MU_SendMsg to return status_t for timeout indication
    - Updated MU_ReceiveMsg to use MU_TIMEOUT_VALUE (0xFFFFFFFF) as a special return value to indicate timeout
  - Enhanced documentation across all functions to clarify timeout behavior and return values.

[2.2.0]

- New Features
  - Added API MU_GetRxStatusFlags.

[2.1.3]

- Improvements
  - Release peripheral from reset if necessary in init function.

[2.1.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed issue that MU_GetInstance() is defined but never used.

[2.1.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed general interrupt comment typo.

[2.1.0]

- Improvements
  - Added new enum mu_msg_reg_index_t.

[2.0.7]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed MU_GetInterruptsPending bug that can not get general interrupt status.

[2.0.6]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of the MISRA C-2012 rules 17.7.

[2.0.5]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of the MISRA C-2012 rules 14.4, 15.5.

[2.0.4]

- Improvements
  - Improved for the platforms which don't support reset assert interrupt and get the other core power mode.

[2.0.3]

- Bug fixes
  - MISRA C-2012 issue fixed.
    - Fixed rules, containing: rule-10.3, rule-14.4, rule-15.5.

[2.0.2]

- Improvements
  - Added support for MIMX8MQx.

[2.0.1]

- Improvements
  - Added support for MCIMX7Ux_M4.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

OSTIMER

[2.2.6]

- Improvements
  - Drop the check of MATCH_WR_RDY and ostimer counter value in OSTIMER_SetMatchRawValue. In most applications, they are useless and may bring at least 7 OSTimer ticks latency, which is unacceptable when OSTimer is working under slow peripheral clock.
  - Optimize software gray code to binary conversion: replaced loop-based implementation with branchless bitwise operations.

[2.2.5]

- Improvements
  - Support binary encoded ostimer.

[2.2.4]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed CERT INT31-C violations.

[2.2.3]

- Improvements
  - Disable and clear pending interrupts before disabling the OSTIMER clock to avoid interrupts being executed when the clock is already disabled.

[2.2.2]

- Improvements
  - Support devices with different OSTIMER instance name.

[2.2.1]

- Improvements
  - Release peripheral from reset if necessary in init function.

[2.2.0]

- Improvements
  - Move the PMC operation out of the OSTIMER driver to board specific files.
  - Added low level APIs to control OSTIMER MATCH and interrupt.

[2.1.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed MISRA-2012 rule 10.8.

[2.1.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - removes the suffix 'n' for some register names and bit fields' names
- Improvements
  - Added HW CODE GRAY feature supported by CODE GRAY in SYSCTRL register group.

[2.1.0]

- Bug Fixes
  - Added a workaround to fix the issue that no interrupt was reported when user set smaller period.
  - Fixed violation of MISRA C-2012 rule 10.3 and 11.9.
- Improvements
  - Added return value for the two APIs to set match value.
    - OSTIMER_SetMatchRawValue
    - OSTIMER_SetMatchValue

[2.0.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violation of MISRA C-2012 rule 10.3, 14.4, 17.7.

[2.0.2]

- Improvements
  - Added support for OSTIMER0

[2.0.1]

- Improvements
  - Removed the software reset function out of the initialization API.
  - Enabled interrupt directly instead of enabling deep sleep interrupt. Users need to enable the deep sleep interrupt in application code if needed.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

OTFAD

[2.1.4]

- Bug fixes
  - Fixed MISRA 2012 issue: 10.1.

[2.1.3]

- Bug fixes
  - Fixed the error that waiting for both FLEXSPI AHB idle and SEQ idle.

[2.1.2]

- Bug fixes
  - Fixed MISRA 2012 issue: 10.4.

[2.1.1]

- Improvements:
  - Hided some bits in CR and SR registers for selected platforms.
  - Fixed doxygen issues.

[2.1.0]

- Improvements:
  - Used boolean type to define 1-bit field concepts.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

PINT

[2.2.0]

- Fixed
  - Fixed the issue that clear interrupt flag when it's not handled. This causes events to be lost.
- Changed
  - Used one callback for one PINT instance. It's unnecessary to provide different callbacks for all PINT events.

[2.1.13]

- Improvements
  - Added instance array for PINT to adapt more devices.
  - Used release reset instead of reset PINT which may clear other related registers out of PINT.

[2.1.12]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed coverity issue.

[2.1.11]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed MISRA C-2012 rule 10.7 violation.

[2.1.10]

- New Features
  - Added the driver support for MCXN10 platform with combined interrupt handler.

[2.1.9]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed MISRA-2012 rule 8.4.

[2.1.8]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed MISRA-2012 rule 10.1 rule 10.4 rule 10.8 rule 18.1 rule 20.9.

[2.1.7]

- Improvements
  - Added fully support for the SECPINT, making it can be used just like PINT.

[2.1.6]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the bug of not enabling common pint clock when enabling security pint clock.

[2.1.5]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed issue for MISRA-2012 check.
    - Fixed rule 10.1 rule 10.3 rule 10.4 rule 10.8 rule 14.4.
  - Changed interrupt init order to make pin interrupt configuration more reasonable.

[2.1.4]

- Improvements
  - Added feature to control distinguish PINT/SECPINT relevant interrupt/clock configurations for PINT_Init and PINT_Deinit API.
  - Swapped the order of clearing PIN interrupt status flag and clearing pending NVIC interrupt in PINT_EnableCallback and PINT_EnableCallbackByIndex function.
  - Bug Fixes
    - Fixed build issue caused by incorrect macro definitions.

[2.1.3]

- Bug fix:
  - Updated PINT_PinInterruptClrStatus to clear PINT interrupt status when the bit is asserted and check whether was triggered by edge-sensitive mode.
  - Write 1 to IST corresponding bit will clear interrupt status only in edge-sensitive mode and will switch the active level for this pin in level-sensitive mode.
  - Fixed MISRA c-2012 rule 10.1, rule 10.6, rule 10.7.
  - Added FSL_FEATURE_SECPINT_NUMBER_OF_CONNECTED_OUTPUTS to distinguish IRQ relevant array definitions for SECPINT/PINT on lpc55s69 board.
  - Fixed PINT driver c++ build error and remove index offset operation.

[2.1.2]

- Improvement:
  - Improved way of initialization for SECPINT/PINT in PINT_Init API.

[2.1.1]

- Improvement:
  - Enabled secure pint interrupt and add secure interrupt handle.

[2.1.0]

- Added PINT_EnableCallbackByIndex/PINT_DisableCallbackByIndex APIs to enable/disable callback by index.

[2.0.2]

- Added control macro to enable/disable the RESET and CLOCK code in current driver.

[2.0.1]

- Bug fix:
  - Updated PINT driver to clear interrupt only in Edge sensitive.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

POWER

[2.6.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Set the high speed pads to low power mode in case there's current leakage.
  - Fixed bugs in EnableDeepSleepIRQ() and DisableDeepSleepIRQ().

[2.6.0]

- New feature
  - Added new API POWER_PmicPowerModeSelectControl() to allow users changing VDD1V8 and VDDCore state for various PMIC modes.

[2.5.0]

- New feature
  - Added new API POWER_SetVddCoreSupplySrc(), POWER_SetPmicCoreSupplyFunc() and POWER_SetVoltageForFreq() to allow users set VDDCORE voltage using a unified API with minimum volatage value.

[2.4.0]

- Bug Fixes
  - Removed HSPAD related configurations.

[2.3.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed MISRA issue in function POWER_GetLibVersion.
  - Cleared bit PDSLEEPCFG0[PMCREF_LP] when FRO or PLL enabled during deep sleep in function POWER_EnterDeepSleep.

[2.3.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Added PORCORE_LP bitfield in macro PCFG0_DEEP_SLEEP.
  - Updated pSlowSwitches calculation in function countPartitionSwitches.
  - Added PMC internal clock divider config in POWER_ApplyPD to decrease the PMC register access delay, incase the divider was enabled before.

[2.3.1]

- Updated powerFreqLevel array for B2 sample.

[2.3.0]

- Set MEMSEQNUM to 0x3F to turn on all partitions in parallel to decrease deep sleep wakeup time.
- Updated power_pad_vrange_val_t for supported PAD voltage range.

[2.2.2]

- Supported dual FRO frequency in deep sleep.

[2.2.1]

- Optimized MAINCLKSAFETY calculation.
- Used FRO48M instead of FRO192M as main clock source in deep sleep.

[2.2.0]

- Moved power lib implementaion to fsl_power.c

[2.1.0]

- Added LVD APIs.
- Added POWER_UpdatePmicRecoveryTime() API.

[2.0.4]

- Supported OTP switch RBB in deep sleep.

[2.0.3]

- Improved XIP recovery in deep sleep wakeup.

[2.0.2]

- Added POWER_SetDeepSleepClock() API to allow main clock source selection in deep sleep.
- Added POWER_SetPadVolRange() API

[2.0.1]

- Added POWER_UpdateOscSettlingTime() API to set on-board system osc settling time.

[2.0.0]

- initial version.

POWERQUAD

[2.2.0]

- New Features
  - Added new API PQ_Arctan2Fixed.

[2.1.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Remove PQ_WaitDone from PQ_ArctanFixed and PQ_ArctanhFixed because it is unnecessary.

[2.1.0]

- Improvements
  - Fixed typo issue for biquad related function name.
  - Changed operator from “%” into “&” to reduce heavy cycle for biquad functions.

[2.0.5]

- Improvements
  - Added a note in driver for FIR that powerquad has a hardware limitation, when using it for FIR increment calculation, the address of pSrc needs to be a continuous address.

[2.0.4]

- Improvements
  - Supported the platforms which don’t have PowerQuad clock and reset control.

[2.0.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of the MISRA C-2012 rules 8.4, 10.1, 10.3, 10.4, 10.6, and so on.

[2.0.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed array size issue in fsl_powerquad_data.h file.
  - Fixed vector function pipeline issue.

[2.0.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed build error in C++ mode.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

PUF

[2.2.0]

- Add support for kPUF_KeySlot4.
- Add new PUF_ClearKey() function, that clears a desired PUF internal HW key register.

[2.1.6]

- Changed wait time in PUF_Init(), when initialization fails it will try PUF_Powercycle() with shorter time. If this shorter time will also fail, initialization will be tried with worst case time as before.

[2.1.5]

- Use common SDK delay in puf_wait_usec().

[2.1.4]

- Replace register uint32_t ticksCount with volatile uint32_t ticksCount in puf_wait_usec() to prevent optimization out delay loop.

[2.1.3]

- Fix MISRA C-2012 issue.

[2.1.2]

- Update: Add automatic big to little endian swap for user (pre-shared) keys destinated to secret hardware bus (PUF key index 0).

[2.1.1]

- Fix ARMGCC build warning .

[2.1.0]

- Align driver with PUF SRAM controller registers on LPCXpresso55s16.
- Update initizalition logic .

[2.0.3]

- Fix MISRA C-2012 issue.

[2.0.2]

- New feature:
  - Add PUF configuration structure and support for PUF SRAM controller.
- Improvements:
  - Remove magic constants.

[2.0.1]

- Bug Fixes:
  - Fixed puf_wait_usec function optimization issue.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

RESET

[2.1.0]

- Improvements
  - Add RESET_ReleasePeripheralReset API.

[2.0.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed MISRA C-2012 rule 10.6 and rule 16.4.

[2.0.0]

- initial version.

RTC

[2.2.0]

- New Features
  - Created new APIs for the RTC driver.
    - RTC_EnableSubsecCounter
    - RTC_GetSubsecValue

[2.1.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed issue that RTC_GetWakeupCount may return wrong value.

[2.1.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - MISRA C-2012 issue fixed: rule 10.1, 10.4 and 10.7.

[2.1.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - MISRA C-2012 issue fixed: rule 10.3 and 11.9.

[2.1.0]

- Bug Fixes
  - Created new APIs for the RTC driver.
    - RTC_EnableTimer
    - RTC_EnableWakeUpTimerInterruptFromDPD
    - RTC_EnableAlarmTimerInterruptFromDPD
    - RTC_EnableWakeupTimer
    - RTC_GetEnabledWakeupTimer
    - RTC_SetSecondsTimerMatch
    - RTC_GetSecondsTimerMatch
    - RTC_SetSecondsTimerCount
    - RTC_GetSecondsTimerCount
  - deprecated legacy APIs for the RTC driver.
    - RTC_StartTimer
    - RTC_StopTimer
    - RTC_EnableInterrupts
    - RTC_DisableInterrupts
    - RTC_GetEnabledInterrupts

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

SCTIMER

[2.5.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed bug in SCTIMER_SetupCaptureAction: When kSCTIMER_Counter_H is selected, events 12-15 and capture registers 12-15 CAPn_H field can't be used.

[2.5.0]

- Improvements
  - Add SCTIMER_GetCaptureValue API to get capture value in capture registers.

[2.4.9]

- Improvements
  - Supported platforms which don't have system level SCTIMER reset.

[2.4.8]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the issue that the SCTIMER_UpdatePwmDutycycle() can't writes MATCH_H bit and RELOADn_H.

[2.4.7]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the issue that the SCTIMER_UpdatePwmDutycycle() can't configure 100% duty cycle PWM.

[2.4.6]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the issue where the H register was not written as a word along with the L register.
  - Fixed the issue that the SCTIMER_SetCOUNTValue() is not configured with high 16 bits in unify mode.

[2.4.5]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fix SCT_EV_STATE_STATEMSKn macro build error.

[2.4.4]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fix MISRA C-2012 issue 10.8.

[2.4.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the wrong way of writing CAPCTRL and REGMODE registers in SCTIMER_SetupCaptureAction.

[2.4.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed SCTIMER_SetupPwm 100% duty cycle issue.

[2.4.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the issue that MATCHn_H bit and RELOADn_H bit could not be written.

[2.4.0]

[2.3.0]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the potential overflow issue of pulseperiod variable in SCTIMER_SetupPwm/SCTIMER_UpdatePwmDutycycle API.
  - Fixed the issue of SCTIMER_CreateAndScheduleEvent API does not correctly work with 32 bit unified counter.
  - Fixed the issue of position of clear counter operation in SCTIMER_Init API.
- Improvements
  - Update SCTIMER_SetupPwm/SCTIMER_UpdatePwmDutycycle to support generate 0% and 100% PWM signal.
  - Add SCTIMER_SetupEventActiveDirection API to configure event activity direction.
  - Update SCTIMER_StartTimer/SCTIMER_StopTimer API to support start/stop low counter and high counter at the same time.
  - Add SCTIMER_SetCounterState/SCTIMER_GetCounterState API to write/read counter current state value.
  - Update APIs to make it meaningful.
    * SCTIMER_SetEventInState
    * SCTIMER_ClearEventInState
    * SCTIMER_GetEventInState

[2.2.0]

- Improvements
  - Updated for 16-bit register access.

[2.1.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the issue of uninitialized variables in SCTIMER_SetupPwm.
  - Fixed the issue that the Low 16-bit and high 16-bit work independently in SCTIMER driver.
- Improvements
  - Added an enumerable macro of unify counter for user.
    - kSCTIMER_Counter_U
  - Created new APIs for the RTC driver.
    - SCTIMER_SetupStateLdMethodAction
    - SCTIMER_SetupNextStateActionwithLdMethod
    - SCTIMER_SetCOUNTValue
    - SCTIMER_GetCOUNTValue
    - SCTIMER_SetEventInState
    - SCTIMER_ClearEventInState
    - SCTIMER_GetEventInState
  - Deprecated legacy APIs for the RTC driver.
    - SCTIMER_SetupNextStateAction

[2.1.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - MISRA C-2012 issue fixed: rule 10.3, 10.4, 10.6, 10.7, 11.9, 14.2 and 15.5.

[2.1.1]

- Improvements
  - Updated the register and macro names to align with the header of devices.

[2.1.0]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed issue where SCT application level Interrupt handler function is occupied by SCT driver.
  - Fixed issue where wrong value for INSYNC field inside SCTIMER_Init function.
  - Fixed issue to change Default value for INSYNC field inside SCTIMER_GetDefaultConfig.

[2.0.1]

- New Features
  - Added control macro to enable/disable the RESET and CLOCK code in current driver.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

SEMA42

[2.1.1]

- Improvements
  - Updated SEMA42_TryLock function to avoid unsigned integer operations wrap issue.

[2.1.0]

- New Features
  - Added SEMA42_BUSY_POLL_COUNT parameter to prevent infinite polling loops in SEMA42 operations.
  - Added timeout mechanism to all polling loops in SEMA42 driver code.
- Improvements
  - Updated SEMA42_Lock function to return status_t instead of void for better error handling.
  - Enhanced documentation to clarify timeout behavior and return values.

[2.0.4]

- Improvements
  - Release peripheral from reset if necessary in init function.

[2.0.3]

- Improvements
  - Changed to implement SEMA42_Lock base on SEMA42_TryLock.

[2.0.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of the MISRA C-2012 rules 17.7.

[2.0.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of the MISRA C-2012 rules 10.3, 10.4, 14.4, 18.1.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

SMARTDMA

[2.13.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fix RT500 FlexIO QSPI MDK build warning.

[2.13.2]

- Other Changes
  - Add more MCXN devices support.

[2.13.1]

- Other Changes
  - Add more MCXA devices support.

[2.13.0]

- New Features
  - Added MCXA keyscan firmware.
  - Added functions to control CTRL[EXF].

[2.12.0]

- New Features
  - Supported MCXA mculcd and camera functions.

[2.11.0]

- Improvements
  - Make the RT500 QSPI firmware can work with other display firmware in the same project.

[2.10.0]

- New Features
  - Added new camera APIs for MCXN SoCs to support more resolutions.

[2.9.1]

- New Features
  - Supported MCXN235, MCXN236.

[2.9.0]

- New Features
  - Supported MCXN camera functions.
  - Supported user to select individual firmware for MIPI or FLEXIO alone, or both.
  - Added new API of enabling DMA from FlexIO to a Buffer.
  - Added new APIs of setting MIPI-DSI to enter and exit ultra low power state.

[2.8.0]

- New Features
  - Supported converting the pixel data from RGB565 to RGB888.
  - Supported function to turn off certain pixel in a checker board pattern.

[2.7.0]

- New Features
  - Supported data transfer in 2-dimensional way.
  - Supported data transfer in XRGB8888 format and rotate 180 degree.
  - Supported to fill data in whenever there is room in MIPI controller's FIFO rather than using the tx FIFO in double buffered way.

[2.6.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed EZH_MIPIDSI_RGB565_DMA, EZH_MIPIDSI_RGB888_DMA, EZH_MIPIDSI_ARGB8888toRGB888_DMA issues that don't support some length.

[2.6.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed MISRA C-2012 issues: 8.4, 11.6, 17.7.

[2.6.1]

- Improvements
  - Optimized MIPI DSI APIs performance.

[2.6.0]

- Improvements
  - Optimized MIPI DSI APIs performance.
- New Features
  - Added new APIs to send MIPI DSI frame with 180 degree rotation.

[2.5.0]

- Improvements
  - Supported swap or don't swap the pixel byte before written to MIPI DSI FIFO.
  - Updated MIPI DSI firmware, make sure data has been sent out before calling callback function.

[2.4.0]

- Improvements
  - Added new APIs for MIPI DSI kSMARTDMA_MIPI_XRGB2RGB_DMA.

[2.3.0]

- Improvements
  - Added new APIs for FlexIO one SHIFTBUF, kSMARTDMA_FlexIO_DMA_ONELANE.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed kSMARTDMA_MIPI_RGB565_DMA color bias issue.

[2.2.0]

- Improvements
  - Added new APIs for MIPI DSI, kSMARTDMA_MIPI_RGB565_DMA and kSMARTDMA_MIPI_RGB888_DMA.
  - Supported install firmware and callback function dynamically.

[2.1.0]

- Improvements
  - Removed test APIs, including kSMARTDMA_LightOn, kSMARTDMA_LightOff, kSMARTDMA_Notify, and kSMARTDMA_Test.
  - Added new APIs, including kSMARTDMA_FlexIO_DMA_Reverse, kSMARTDMA_FlexIO_DMA_ARGB2RGB, kSMARTDMA_FlexIO_DMA_ARGB2RGB_Endian_Swap, and kSMARTDMA_FlexIO_DMA_ARGB2RGB_Endian_Swap_Reverse.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

MIPI DSI SOC level driver

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

SPI

[2.3.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the txData from void * to const void * in transmit API

[2.3.1]

- Improvements
  - Changed SPI_DUMMYDATA to 0x00.

[2.3.0]

- Update version.

[2.2.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of the MISRA C-2012 rules.

[2.2.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed MISRA 2012 10.4 issue.
  - Added code to clear FIFOs before transfer using DMA.

[2.2.0]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed bug that slave gets stuck during interrupt transfer.

[2.1.1]

- Improvements
  - Added timeout mechanism when waiting certain states in transfer driver.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed MISRA 10.1, 5.7 issues.

[2.1.0]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed Coverity issue of incrementing null pointer in SPI_TransferHandleIRQInternal.
  - Eliminated IAR Pa082 warnings.
  - Fixed MISRA issues.
    - Fixed rules 10.1, 10.3, 10.4, 10.7, 10.8, 11.3, 11.6, 11.8, 11.9, 13.5.
- New Features

  - Modified the definition of SPI_SSELPOL_MASK to support the socs that have only 3 SSEL pins.

[2.0.4]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the bug of using read only mode in DMA transfer. In DMA transfer mode, if transfer->txData is NULL, code attempts to read data from the address of 0x0 for configuring the last frame.
  - Fixed wrong assignment of handle->state. During transfer handle->state should be kSPI_Busy rather than kStatus_SPI_Busy.
- Improvements
  - Rounded up the calculated divider value in SPI_MasterSetBaud.

[2.0.3]

- Improvements
  - Added “SPI_FIFO_DEPTH(base)” with more definition.

[2.0.2]

- Improvements
  - Unified the component full name to FLEXCOMM SPI(DMA/FREERTOS) driver.

[2.0.1]

- Changed the data buffer from uint32_t to uint8_t which matches the real applications for SPI DMA driver.
- Added dummy data setup API to allow users to configure the dummy data to be transferred.
- Added new APIs for half-duplex transfer function. Users can not only send and receive data by one API in polling/interrupt/DMA way, but choose either to transmit first or to receive first. Besides, the PCS pin can be configured as assert status in transmission (between transmit and receive) by setting the isPcsAssertInTransfer to true.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

SPI_DMA

[2.2.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the bug half duplex mode can’t be used if data size is larger than 1024 bytes.

[2.2.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed MISRA 2012 11.6 issue..

[2.2.0]

- Improvements
  - Supported dataSize larger than 1024 data transmit.

TRNG

[2.0.19]

- New features:
  - Added support for MCXA and MCXL.

[2.0.18]

- Bug fix:
  - TRNG health checks now done in software on RT5xx and RT6xx.

[2.0.17]

- New features:
  - Add support for RT700.

[2.0.16]

- Improvements:
  - Added support for Dual oscillator mode.

[2.0.15]

- Other changes:
  - Changed TRNG_USER_CONFIG_DEFAULT_XXX values according to latest reccomended by design team.

[2.0.14]

- New features:
  - Add support for RW610 and RW612.

[2.0.13]

- Bug fix:
  - After deepsleep it might return error, added clearing bits in TRNG_GetRandomData() and generating new entropy.
  - Modified reloading entropy in TRNG_GetRandomData(), for some data length it doesn't reloading entropy correctly.

[2.0.12]

- Bug fix:
  - For KW34A4_SERIES, KW35A4_SERIES, KW36A4_SERIES set TRNG_USER_CONFIG_DEFAULT_OSC_DIV to kTRNG_RingOscDiv8.

[2.0.11]

- Bug fix:
  - Add clearing pending errors in TRNG_Init().

[2.0.10]

- Bug Fix:
  - Fixed doxygen issues.

[2.0.9]

- Bug Fix:
  - Fix HIS_CCM metrics issues.

[2.0.8]

- Bug fix:
  - For K32L2A41A_SERIES set TRNG_USER_CONFIG_DEFAULT_OSC_DIV to kTRNG_RingOscDiv4.

[2.0.7]

- Bug fix:
  - Fix MISRA 2004 issue rule 12.5.

[2.0.6]

- Bug fix:
  - For KW35Z4_SERIES set TRNG_USER_CONFIG_DEFAULT_OSC_DIV to kTRNG_RingOscDiv8.

[2.0.5]

- Improvements:
  - For FRQMIN, FRQMAX and OSCDIV, add possibility to use device specific preprocessor macro to define default value in TRNG user configuration structure.

[2.0.4]

- Bug Fix:
  - Fix MISRA-2012 issues.
    - Rule 10.1, rule 10.3, rule 13.5, rule 16.1.

[2.0.3]

- Improvements:
  - update TRNG_Init to restart new entropy generation.

[2.0.2]

- Improvements:
  - fix MISRA issues
    * Rule 14.4.

[2.0.1]

- New features:
  - Set default OSCDIV for Kinetis devices KL8x and KL28Z.
- Other changes:
  - Changed default OSCDIV for K81 to divide by 2.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

USART

[2.8.5]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed race condition during call of USART_EnableTxDMA and USART_EnableRxDMA.

[2.8.4]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed exclusive access in USART_TransferReceiveNonBlocking and USART_TransferSendNonBlocking.

[2.8.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of the MISRA C-2012 rules 10.3, 11.8.

[2.8.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of the MISRA C-2012 rules 14.2.

[2.8.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the Baud Rate Generator(BRG) configuration in 32kHz mode.

[2.8.0]

- New Features
  - Added the rx timeout interrupts and status flags of bus status.
  - Added new rx timeout configuration item in usart_config_t.
  - Added API USART_SetRxTimeoutConfig for rx timeout configuration.
- Improvements
  - When the calculated baudrate cannot meet user's configuration, lower OSR value is allewed to use.

[2.7.0]

- New Features
  - Added the missing interrupts and status flags of bus status.
  - Added the check of tx error, noise error framing error and parity error in interrupt handler.

[2.6.0]

- Improvements
  - Used separate data for TX and RX in usart_transfer_t.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed bug that when ring buffer is used, if some data is received in ring buffer first before calling USART_TransferReceiveNonBlocking, the received data count returned by USART_TransferGetReceiveCount is wrong.
- New Features
  - Added missing API USART_TransferGetSendCountDMA get send count using DMA.

[2.5.0]

- New Features
  - Added APIs USART_GetRxFifoCount/USART_GetTxFifoCount to get rx/tx FIFO data count.
  - Added APIs USART_SetRxFifoWatermark/USART_SetTxFifoWatermark to set rx/tx FIFO water mark.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed DMA transfer blocking issue by enabling tx idle interrupt after DMA transmission finishes.

[2.4.0]

- New Features
  - Modified usart_config_t, USART_Init and USART_GetDefaultConfig APIs so that the hardware flow control can be enabled during module initialization.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed MISRA 10.4 violation.

[2.3.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed bug that operation on INTENSET, INTENCLR, FIFOINTENSET and FIFOINTENCLR should use bitwise operation not 'or' operation.
  - Fixed bug that if rx interrupt occurrs before TX interrupt is enabled and after txDataSize is configured, the data will be sent early by mistake, thus TX interrupt will be enabled after data is sent out.
- Improvements
  - Added check for baud rate's accuracy that returns kStatus_USART_BaudrateNotSupport when the best achieved baud rate is not within 3% error of configured baud rate.

[2.3.0]

- New Features
  - Added APIs to configure 9-bit data mode, set slave address and send address.
  - Modified USART_TransferReceiveNonBlocking and USART_TransferHandleIRQ to use 9-bit mode in multi-slave system.

[2.2.0]

- New Features
  - Added the feature of supporting USART working at 32 kHz clocking mode.
- Improvements
  - Modified USART_TransferHandleIRQ so that txState will be set to idle only when all data has been sent out to bus.
  - Modified USART_TransferGetSendCount so that this API returns the real byte count that USART has sent out rather than the software buffer status.
  - Added timeout mechanism when waiting for certain states in transfer driver.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed MISRA 10.1 issues.
  - Fixed bug that operation on INTENSET, INTENCLR, FIFOINTENSET and FIFOINTENCLR should use bitwise operation not 'or' operation.
  - Fixed bug that if rx interrupt occurrs before TX interrupt is enabled and after txDataSize is configured, the data will be sent early by mistake, thus TX interrupt will be enabled after data is sent out.

[2.1.1]

- Improvements
  - Added check for transmitter idle in USART_TransferHandleIRQ and USART_TransferSendDMACallback to ensure all the data would be sent out to bus.
  - Modified USART_ReadBlocking so that if more than one receiver errors occur, all status flags will be cleared and the most severe error status will be returned.
- Bug Fixes
  - Eliminated IAR Pa082 warnings.
  - Fixed MISRA issues.
    - Fixed rules 10.1, 10.3, 10.4, 10.7, 10.8, 11.3, 11.6, 11.8, 11.9, 13.5.

[2.1.0]

- New Features
  - Added features to allow users to configure the USART to synchronous transfer(master and slave) mode.
- Bug Fixes
  - Modified USART_SetBaudRate to get more acurate configuration.

[2.0.3]

- New Features
  - Added new APIs to allow users to enable the CTS which determines whether CTS is used for flow control.

[2.0.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the bug where transfer abort APIs could not disable the interrupts. The FIFOINTENSET register should not be used to disable the interrupts, so use the FIFOINTENCLR register instead.

[2.0.1]

- Improvements
  - Unified the component full name to FLEXCOMM USART (DMA/FREERTOS) driver.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

USART_DMA

[2.6.0]

- Refer USART driver change log 2.0.1 to 2.6.0

USDHC

[2.8.6]

- Bug Fixes
  - Invalidate cache after blocking read.

[2.8.5]

- Improvements
  - Enable the driver to be AARCH64 compatible.

[2.8.4]

- Improvements
  - Add feature macro FSL_FEATURE_USDHC_HAS_NO_VS18.

[2.8.3]

- Improvements
  - Improved api USDHC_EnableAutoTuningForCmdAndData to adapt to new bit field name for USDHC_VEND_SPEC2 register.

[2.8.2]

- Improvements
  - Added feature macro FSL_FEATURE_USDHC_HAS_NO_VOLTAGE_SELECT.

[2.8.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of MISRA C-2012 rule 11.9.

[2.8.0]

- Improvements
  - Fixed the mmc boot transfer failed issue which is caused by the Dma complete interrupt not enabled.
  - Marked api USDHC_AdjustDelayForManualTuning as deprecated and added new api USDHC_SetTuingDelay/USDHC_GetTuningDelayStatus.
  - Improved the manual tuning flow accroding to specification.
  - Added memory address conversion to support buffers which could only be accessed using alias address by non-core masters.
  - Fixed violations of MISRA C-2012 rule 10.4.

[2.7.0]

- Improvements
  - Added api USDHC_TransferScatterGatherADMANonBlocking to support scatter gather transfer.
  - Added feature FSL_FEATURE_USDHC_REGISTER_HOST_CTRL_CAP_HAS_NO_RETUNING_TIME_COUNT for re-tuning time counter field in HOST_CTRL_CAP register.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of MISRA C-2012 rule 11.9, 10.1, 10.3, 10.4, 8.4.

[2.6.0]

- Improvements
  - Added api USDHC_SetStandardTuningCounter to support adjust tuning counter of Standard tuning.

[2.5.1]

- Improvements
  - Used different status code for command and data interrupt callback.
  - Added cache line invalidate for receive buffer in driver IRQ handler to fix CM7 speculative access issue.

[2.5.0]

- Improvements
  - Added new api USDHC_SetStrobeDllOverride for HS400 strobe dll override mode delay taps configurations.
  - Corrected the STROBE DLL configurations sequence.

[2.4.0]

- Improvements
  - Added feature macro for read/write burst length.
    - Disabled redundant interrupt per different transfer request.
    - Disabled interrupt and reset command/data pointer in handle when transfer completes.
- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of MISRA C-2012 rule 11.9, 15.7, 4.7, 16.4, 10.1, 10.3, 10.4, 11.3, 14.4, 10.6, 17.7, 16.1, 16.3.
  - Fixed PA082 build warning.
  - Fixed logically dead code Coverity issue.

[2.3.0]

- Improvements
  - Added USDHC_SetDataConfig API to support manual tuning.
  - Removed the limitaion that source clock must be bigger than the target in function USDHC_SetSdClock by using source clock frequency as target directly.
  - Added peripheral reset in USDHC_Init function.
  - Added tuning reset support in function USDHC_Reset function.

[2.2.8]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed out-of bounds write in function USDHC_ReceiveCommandResponse.

[2.2.7]

- Improvements
  - Added API USDHC_GetEnabledInterruptStatusFlags and used in USDHC_TransferHandleIRQ.
  - Removed useless member interruptFlags in usdhc_handle_t.

[2.2.6]

- Improvements
  - Added address align check for ADMA descriptor table address.
  - Changed USDHC_ADMA1_DESCRIPTOR_MAX_LENGTH_PER_ENTRY to (65536-4096) to make sure the data address is 4KB align for a transfer which need more than one ADMA1 descriptor.

[2.2.5]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed MDK 66-D warning.

[2.2.4]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed issue that real clock frequency wss mismatched with target clock frequency, which was caused by an incorrect prescaler calculation.
- New Features
  - Added control macro to enable/disable the CLOCK code in current driver.

[2.2.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed issue where AMDA did not disable with DMAEN clear.
- Improvements
  - Improved set clock function to check the output frequency range.

  - Dynamic set SDCLKFS during DDR enable or disable.

[2.2.2]

- Improvements
  - Improved read transfer cache maintain operation, combined clean, and invalidated them into one function.

[2.2.1]

- Bug Fixes
  - Disabled the invalidate cache operation for tuning.

[2.2.0]

- Improvements
  - Improved USDHC to support MMC boot feature.

[2.1.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed MISRA issue.

[2.1.2]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed Coverity issue.
  - Added base address and userData parameter for all callback functions.

[2.1.1]

- Improvements
  - Added cache maintain operation.
  - Added timeout status check for the DATA transfer which ignore error.
  - Added feature macro for SDR50/SDR104 mode.
  - Removed useless IRQ handler from different platforms.

[2.1.0]

- Improvements
  - Integrated tuning into transfer function.
  - Added strobe DLL feature.
  - Added enableAutoCommand23 in data structure.
  - Removed enable card clock function because the controller would handle the clock on/off.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

UTICK

[2.0.5]

- Improvements
  - Improved for SOC RW610.

[2.0.4]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed compile fail issue of no-supporting PD configuration in utick driver.

[2.0.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violations of MISRA C-2012 rules: 8.4, 14.4, 17.7

[2.0.2]

- Added new feature definition macro to enable/disable power control in drivers for some devices have no power control function.

[2.0.1]

- Added control macro to enable/disable the CLOCK code in current driver.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

WWDT

[2.1.10]

- Bug Fixes
  - Chek WWDT_RSTS instead of FSL_FEATURE_WWDT_HAS_NO_RESET to determine whether the peripheral can be reset.

[2.1.9]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violation of the MISRA C-2012 rule 10.4.

[2.1.8]

- Improvements
  - Updated the “WWDT_Init” API to add wait operation. Which can avoid the TV value read by CPU still be 0xFF (reset value) after WWDT_Init function returns.

[2.1.7]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed the issue that the watchdog reset event affected the system from PMC.
  - Fixed the issue of setting watchdog WDPROTECT field without considering the backwards compatibility.
  - Fixed the issue of clearing bit fields by mistake in the function of WWDT_ClearStatusFlags.

[2.1.5]

- Bug Fixes
  - deprecated a unusable API in WWWDT driver.
    - WWDT_Disable

[2.1.4]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed violation of the MISRA C-2012 rules Rule 10.1, 10.3, 10.4 and 11.9.
  - Fixed the issue of the inseparable process interrupted by other interrupt source.
    - WWDT_Init

[2.1.3]

- Bug Fixes
  - Fixed legacy issue when initializing the MOD register.

[2.1.2]

- Improvements
  - Updated the “WWDT_ClearStatusFlags” API and “WWDT_GetStatusFlags” API to match QN9090. WDTOF is not set in case of WD reset. Get info from PMC instead.

[2.1.1]

- New Features
  - Added new feature definition macro for devices which have no LCOK control bit in MOD register.
  - Implemented delay/retry in WWDT driver.

[2.1.0]

- Improvements
  - Added new parameter in configuration when initializing WWDT module. This parameter, which must be set, allows the user to deliver the WWDT clock frequency.

[2.0.0]

- Initial version.

1.7 Driver API Reference Manual

This section provides a link to the Driver API RM, detailing available drivers and their usage to help you integrate hardware efficiently.

MIMXRT595S

1.8 Middleware Documentation

Find links to detailed middleware documentation for key components. While not all onboard middleware is covered, this serves as a useful reference for configuration and development.

1.8.1 Wireless Connectivity Framework

framework

1.8.2 VG-Lite GPU Library

VGLite Graphics Driver

1.8.3 Multicore

Multicore SDK

1.8.4 MCU Boot

mcuboot_opensource

1.8.5 eIQ

eIQ

1.8.6 FreeMASTER

freemaster

1.8.7 AWS IoT

aws_iot

1.8.8 NXP Wi-Fi

Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, 802.15.4

1.8.9 FreeRTOS

FreeRTOS

1.8.10 Wireless EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL

EdgeFast Bluetooth

1.8.11 lwIP

lwIP

1.8.12 File systemFatfs

FatFs

1.8.13 DSP Audio Streamer

Xtensa Audio Framework (XAF)

Chapter 2

MIMXRT595S

2.1 ACMP: Analog Comparator Driver

void ACMP_Init(CMP_Type *base, const *acmp_config_t* *config)

Initializes the ACMP.

The default configuration can be got by calling ACMP_GetDefaultConfig().

Parameters

- base – ACMP peripheral base address.
- config – Pointer to ACMP configuration structure.

void ACMP_Deinit(CMP_Type *base)

Deinitializes the ACMP.

Parameters

- base – ACMP peripheral base address.

void ACMP_GetDefaultConfig(*acmp_config_t* *config)

Gets the default configuration for ACMP.

This function initializes the user configuration structure to default value. The default value are:

Example:

```
config->enableHighSpeed = false;
config->enableInvertOutput = false;
config->useUnfilteredOutput = false;
config->enablePinOut = false;
config->enableHysteresisBothDirections = false;
config->hysteresisMode = kACMP_hysteresisMode0;
```

Parameters

- config – Pointer to ACMP configuration structure.

void ACMP_Enable(CMP_Type *base, bool enable)

Enables or disables the ACMP.

Parameters

- base – ACMP peripheral base address.
- enable – True to enable the ACMP.

void ACMP_EnableLinkToDAC(CMP_Type *base, bool enable)

Enables the link from CMP to DAC enable.

When this bit is set, the DAC enable/disable is controlled by the bit CMP_C0[EN] instead of CMP_C1[DACEN].

Parameters

- base – ACMP peripheral base address.
- enable – Enable the feature or not.

void ACMP_SetChannelConfig(CMP_Type *base, const *acmp_channel_config_t* *config)

Sets the channel configuration.

Note that the plus/minus mux's setting is only valid when the positive/negative port's input isn't from DAC but from channel mux.

Example:

```
acmp_channel_config_t configStruct = {0};
configStruct.positivePortInput = kACMP_PortInputFromDAC;
configStruct.negativePortInput = kACMP_PortInputFromMux;
configStruct.minusMuxInput = 1U;
ACMP_SetChannelConfig(CMP0, &configStruct);
```

Parameters

- base – ACMP peripheral base address.
- config – Pointer to channel configuration structure.

void ACMP_EnableDMA(CMP_Type *base, bool enable)

Enables or disables DMA.

Parameters

- base – ACMP peripheral base address.
- enable – True to enable DMA.

void ACMP_EnableWindowMode(CMP_Type *base, bool enable)

Enables or disables window mode.

Parameters

- base – ACMP peripheral base address.
- enable – True to enable window mode.

void ACMP_SetFilterConfig(CMP_Type *base, const *acmp_filter_config_t* *config)

Configures the filter.

The filter can be enabled when the filter count is bigger than 1, the filter period is greater than 0 and the sample clock is from divided bus clock or the filter is bigger than 1 and the sample clock is from external clock. Detailed usage can be got from the reference manual.

Example:

```
acmp_filter_config_t configStruct = {0};
configStruct.filterCount = 5U;
configStruct.filterPeriod = 200U;
configStruct.enableSample = false;
ACMP_SetFilterConfig(CMP0, &configStruct);
```

Parameters

- base – ACMP peripheral base address.

- config – Pointer to filter configuration structure.

void ACMP_SetDACConfig(CMP_Type *base, const *acmp_dac_config_t* *config)

Configures the internal DAC.

Example:

```
acmp_dac_config_t configStruct = {0};
configStruct.referenceVoltageSource = kACMP_VrefSourceVin1;
configStruct.DACValue = 20U;
configStruct.enableOutput = false;
configStruct.workMode = kACMP_DACWorkLowSpeedMode;
ACMP_SetDACConfig(CMP0, &configStruct);
```

Parameters

- base – ACMP peripheral base address.
- config – Pointer to DAC configuration structure. "NULL" is for disabling the feature.

void ACMP_SetRoundRobinConfig(CMP_Type *base, const *acmp_round_robin_config_t* *config)

Configures the round robin mode.

Example:

```
acmp_round_robin_config_t configStruct = {0};
configStruct.fixedPort = kACMP_FixedPlusPort;
configStruct.fixedChannelNumber = 3U;
configStruct.checkerChannelMask = 0xF7U;
configStruct.sampleClockCount = 0U;
configStruct.delayModulus = 0U;
ACMP_SetRoundRobinConfig(CMP0, &configStruct);
```

Parameters

- base – ACMP peripheral base address.
- config – Pointer to round robin mode configuration structure. "NULL" is for disabling the feature.

void ACMP_SetRoundRobinPreState(CMP_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Defines the pre-set state of channels in round robin mode.

Note: The pre-state has different circuit with get-round-robin-result in the SOC even though they are same bits. So get-round-robin-result can't return the same value as the value are set by pre-state.

Parameters

- base – ACMP peripheral base address.
- mask – Mask of round robin channel index. Available range is channel0:0x01 to channel7:0x80.

static inline uint32_t ACMP_GetRoundRobinStatusFlags(CMP_Type *base)

Gets the channel input changed flags in round robin mode.

Parameters

- base – ACMP peripheral base address.

Returns

Mask of channel input changed asserted flags. Available range is channel0:0x01 to channel7:0x80.

void ACMP_ClearRoundRobinStatusFlags(CMP_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Clears the channel input changed flags in round robin mode.

Parameters

- base – ACMP peripheral base address.
- mask – Mask of channel index. Available range is channel0:0x01 to channel7:0x80.

static inline uint32_t ACMP_GetRoundRobinResult(CMP_Type *base)

Gets the round robin result.

Note that the set-pre-state has different circuit with get-round-robin-result in the SOC even though they are same bits. So ACMP_GetRoundRobinResult() can't return the same value as the value are set by ACMP_SetRoundRobinPreState.

Parameters

- base – ACMP peripheral base address.

Returns

Mask of round robin channel result. Available range is channel0:0x01 to channel7:0x80.

void ACMP_EnableInterrupts(CMP_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Enables interrupts.

Parameters

- base – ACMP peripheral base address.
- mask – Interrupts mask. See "_acmp_interrupt_enable".

void ACMP_DisableInterrupts(CMP_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Disables interrupts.

Parameters

- base – ACMP peripheral base address.
- mask – Interrupts mask. See "_acmp_interrupt_enable".

uint32_t ACMP_GetStatusFlags(CMP_Type *base)

Gets status flags.

Parameters

- base – ACMP peripheral base address.

Returns

Status flags asserted mask. See "_acmp_status_flags".

void ACMP_ClearStatusFlags(CMP_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Clears status flags.

Parameters

- base – ACMP peripheral base address.
- mask – Status flags mask. See "_acmp_status_flags".

void ACMP_SetDiscreteModeConfig(CMP_Type *base, const *acmp_discrete_mode_config_t* *config)

Configure the discrete mode.

Configure the discrete mode when supporting 3V domain with 1.8V core.

Parameters

- base – ACMP peripheral base address.
- config – Pointer to configuration structure. See "acmp_discrete_mode_config_t".

void ACMP_GetDefaultDiscreteModeConfig(*acmp_discrete_mode_config_t* *config)

Get the default configuration for discrete mode setting.

Parameters

- config – Pointer to configuration structure to be restored with the setting values.

FSL_ACMP_DRIVER_VERSION

ACMP driver version 2.4.0.

enum _acmp_interrupt_enable

Interrupt enable/disable mask.

Values:

enumerator kACMP_OutputRisingInterruptEnable

Enable the interrupt when comparator outputs rising.

enumerator kACMP_OutputFallingInterruptEnable

Enable the interrupt when comparator outputs falling.

enumerator kACMP_RoundRobinInterruptEnable

Enable the Round-Robin interrupt.

enum _acmp_status_flags

Status flag mask.

Values:

enumerator kACMP_OutputRisingEventFlag

Rising-edge on compare output has occurred.

enumerator kACMP_OutputFallingEventFlag

Falling-edge on compare output has occurred.

enumerator kACMP_OutputAssertEventFlag

Return the current value of the analog comparator output.

enum _acmp_offset_mode

Comparator hard block offset control.

If OFFSET level is 1, then there is no hysteresis in the case of positive port input crossing negative port input in the positive direction (or negative port input crossing positive port input in the negative direction). Hysteresis still exists for positive port input crossing negative port input in the falling direction. If OFFSET level is 0, then the hysteresis selected by acmp_hysteresis_mode_t is valid for both directions.

Values:

enumerator kACMP_OffsetLevel0

The comparator hard block output has level 0 offset internally.

enumerator kACMP_OffsetLevel1

The comparator hard block output has level 1 offset internally.

enum _acmp_hysteresis_mode

Comparator hard block hysteresis control.

See chip data sheet to get the actual hysteresis value with each level.

Values:

enumerator kACMP_HysteresisLevel0
Offset is level 0 and Hysteresis is level 0.

enumerator kACMP_HysteresisLevel1
Offset is level 0 and Hysteresis is level 1.

enumerator kACMP_HysteresisLevel2
Offset is level 0 and Hysteresis is level 2.

enumerator kACMP_HysteresisLevel3
Offset is level 0 and Hysteresis is level 3.

enum _acmp_reference_voltage_source
CMP Voltage Reference source.

Values:

enumerator kACMP_VrefSourceVin1
Vin1 is selected as resistor ladder network supply reference Vin.

enumerator kACMP_VrefSourceVin2
Vin2 is selected as resistor ladder network supply reference Vin.

enum _acmp_port_input
Port input source.

Values:

enumerator kACMP_PortInputFromDAC
Port input from the 8-bit DAC output.

enumerator kACMP_PortInputFromMux
Port input from the analog 8-1 mux.

enum _acmp_fixed_port
Fixed mux port.

Values:

enumerator kACMP_FixedPlusPort
Only the inputs to the Minus port are swept in each round.

enumerator kACMP_FixedMinusPort
Only the inputs to the Plus port are swept in each round.

enum _acmp_dac_work_mode
Internal DAC's work mode.

Values:

enumerator kACMP_DACWorkLowSpeedMode
DAC is selected to work in low speed and low power mode.

enumerator kACMP_DACWorkHighSpeedMode
DAC is selected to work in high speed high power mode.

typedef enum *_acmp_offset_mode* acmp_offset_mode_t
Comparator hard block offset control.

If OFFSET level is 1, then there is no hysteresis in the case of positive port input crossing negative port input in the positive direction (or negative port input crossing positive port input in the negative direction). Hysteresis still exists for positive port input crossing negative port input in the falling direction. If OFFSET level is 0, then the hysteresis selected by acmp_hysteresis_mode_t is valid for both directions.

typedef enum *_acmp_hysteresis_mode* acmp_hysteresis_mode_t
Comparator hard block hysteresis control.

See chip data sheet to get the actual hysteresis value with each level.

typedef enum *_acmp_reference_voltage_source* acmp_reference_voltage_source_t
CMP Voltage Reference source.

typedef enum *_acmp_port_input* acmp_port_input_t
Port input source.

typedef enum *_acmp_fixed_port* acmp_fixed_port_t
Fixed mux port.

typedef enum *_acmp_dac_work_mode* acmp_dac_work_mode_t
Internal DAC's work mode.

typedef struct *_acmp_config* acmp_config_t
Configuration for ACMP.

typedef struct *_acmp_channel_config* acmp_channel_config_t
Configuration for channel.

The comparator's port can be input from channel mux or DAC. If port input is from channel mux, detailed channel number for the mux should be configured.

typedef struct *_acmp_filter_config* acmp_filter_config_t
Configuration for filter.

typedef struct *_acmp_dac_config* acmp_dac_config_t
Configuration for DAC.

typedef struct *_acmp_round_robin_config* acmp_round_robin_config_t
Configuration for round robin mode.

typedef struct *_acmp_discrete_mode_config* acmp_discrete_mode_config_t
Configuration for discrete mode.

CMP_C0_CFx_MASK
The mask of status flags cleared by writing 1.

CMP_C1_CHNn_MASK

CMP_C2_CHnF_MASK

struct acmp_config
#include <fsl_acmp.h> Configuration for ACMP.

Public Members

acmp_offset_mode_t offsetMode
Offset mode.

acmp_hysteresis_mode_t hysteresisMode
Hysteresis mode.

bool enableHighSpeed
Enable High Speed (HS) comparison mode.

bool enableInvertOutput
Enable inverted comparator output.

bool useUnfilteredOutput

Set compare output(COUT) to equal COUTA(true) or COUT(false).

bool enablePinOut

The comparator output is available on the associated pin.

struct _acmp_channel_config

#include <fsl_acmp.h> Configuration for channel.

The comparator's port can be input from channel mux or DAC. If port input is from channel mux, detailed channel number for the mux should be configured.

Public Members

acmp_port_input_t positivePortInput

Input source of the comparator's positive port.

uint32_t plusMuxInput

Plus mux input channel(0~7).

acmp_port_input_t negativePortInput

Input source of the comparator's negative port.

uint32_t minusMuxInput

Minus mux input channel(0~7).

struct _acmp_filter_config

#include <fsl_acmp.h> Configuration for filter.

Public Members

bool enableSample

Using external SAMPLE as sampling clock input, or using divided bus clock.

uint32_t filterCount

Filter Sample Count. Available range is 1-7, 0 would cause the filter disabled.

uint32_t filterPeriod

Filter Sample Period. The divider to bus clock. Available range is 0-255.

struct _acmp_dac_config

#include <fsl_acmp.h> Configuration for DAC.

Public Members

acmp_reference_voltage_source_t referenceVoltageSource

Supply voltage reference source.

uint32_t DACValue

Value for DAC Output Voltage. Available range is 0-255.

bool enableOutput

Enable the DAC output.

struct _acmp_round_robin_config

#include <fsl_acmp.h> Configuration for round robin mode.

Public Members

acmp_fixed_port_t fixedPort
Fixed mux port.

uint32_t fixedChannelNumber
Indicates which channel is fixed in the fixed mux port.

uint32_t checkerChannelMask
Mask of checker channel index. Available range is channel0:0x01 to channel7:0x80 for round-robin checker.

uint32_t sampleClockCount
Specifies how many round-robin clock cycles(0~3) later the sample takes place.

uint32_t delayModulus
Comparator and DAC initialization delay modulus.

struct _acmp_discrete_mode_config
#include <fsl_acmp.h> Configuration for discrete mode.

Public Members

bool enablePositiveChannelDiscreteMode
Positive Channel Continuous Mode Enable. By default, the continuous mode is used.

bool enableNegativeChannelDiscreteMode
Negative Channel Continuous Mode Enable. By default, the continuous mode is used.

2.2 CACHE: CACHE Memory Controller

uint32_t CACHE64_GetInstance(CACHE64_POLSEL_Type *base)
Returns an instance number given peripheral base address.

Parameters

- base – The peripheral base address.

Returns
CACHE64_POLSEL instance number starting from 0.

uint32_t CACHE64_GetInstanceByAddr(uint32_t address)
brief Returns an instance number given physical memory address.

param address The physical memory address.

Returns
CACHE64_CTRL instance number starting from 0.

status_t CACHE64_Init(CACHE64_POLSEL_Type *base, const *cache64_config_t* *config)
Initializes an CACHE64 instance with the user configuration structure.

This function configures the CACHE64 module with user-defined settings. Call the CACHE64_GetDefaultConfig() function to configure the configuration structure and get the default configuration.

Parameters

- base – CACHE64_POLSEL peripheral base address.
- config – Pointer to a user-defined configuration structure.

Return values

kStatus_Success – CACHE64 initialize succeed

void CACHE64_GetDefaultConfig(*cache64_config_t* *config)

Gets the default configuration structure.

This function initializes the CACHE64 configuration structure to a default value. The default values are first region covers whole cacheable area, and policy set to write back.

Parameters

- config – Pointer to a configuration structure.

void CACHE64_EnableCache(CACHE64_CTRL_Type *base)

Enables the cache.

Parameters

- base – CACHE64_CTRL peripheral base address.

void CACHE64_DisableCache(CACHE64_CTRL_Type *base)

Disables the cache.

Parameters

- base – CACHE64_CTRL peripheral base address.

void CACHE64_InvalidateCache(CACHE64_CTRL_Type *base)

Invalidates the cache.

Parameters

- base – CACHE64_CTRL peripheral base address.

void CACHE64_InvalidateCacheByRange(uint32_t address, uint32_t size_byte)

Invalidates cache by range.

Note: Address and size should be aligned to “CACHE64_LINESIZE_BYTE”. The startAddr here will be forced to align to CACHE64_LINESIZE_BYTE if startAddr is not aligned. For the size_byte, application should make sure the alignment or make sure the right operation order if the size_byte is not aligned.

Parameters

- address – The physical address of cache.
- size_byte – size of the memory to be invalidated, should be larger than 0.

void CACHE64_CleanCache(CACHE64_CTRL_Type *base)

Cleans the cache.

Parameters

- base – CACHE64_CTRL peripheral base address.

void CACHE64_CleanCacheByRange(uint32_t address, uint32_t size_byte)

Cleans cache by range.

Note: Address and size should be aligned to “CACHE64_LINESIZE_BYTE”. The startAddr here will be forced to align to CACHE64_LINESIZE_BYTE if startAddr is not aligned. For the size_byte, application should make sure the alignment or make sure the right operation order if the size_byte is not aligned.

Parameters

- address – The physical address of cache.
- size_byte – size of the memory to be cleaned, should be larger than 0.

void CACHE64_CleanInvalidateCache(CACHE64_CTRL_Type *base)

Cleans and invalidates the cache.

Parameters

- base – CACHE64_CTRL peripheral base address.

void CACHE64_CleanInvalidateCacheByRange(uint32_t address, uint32_t size_byte)

Cleans and invalidate cache by range.

Note: Address and size should be aligned to "CACHE64_LINESIZE_BYTE". The startAddr here will be forced to align to CACHE64_LINESIZE_BYTE if startAddr is not aligned. For the size_byte, application should make sure the alignment or make sure the right operation order if the size_byte is not aligned.

Parameters

- address – The physical address of cache.
- size_byte – size of the memory to be Cleaned and Invalidated, should be larger than 0.

void CACHE64_EnableWriteBuffer(CACHE64_CTRL_Type *base, bool enable)

Enables/disables the write buffer.

Parameters

- base – CACHE64_CTRL peripheral base address.
- enable – The enable or disable flag. true - enable the write buffer. false - disable the write buffer.

static inline void ICACHE_InvalidateByRange(uint32_t address, uint32_t size_byte)

Invalidates instruction cache by range.

Note: Address and size should be aligned to CACHE64_LINESIZE_BYTE due to the cache operation unit FSL_FEATURE_CACHE64_CTRL_LINESIZE_BYTE. The startAddr here will be forced to align to the cache line size if startAddr is not aligned. For the size_byte, application should make sure the alignment or make sure the right operation order if the size_byte is not aligned.

Parameters

- address – The physical address.
- size_byte – size of the memory to be invalidated, should be larger than 0.

static inline void DCACHE_InvalidateByRange(uint32_t address, uint32_t size_byte)

Invalidates data cache by range.

Note: Address and size should be aligned to CACHE64_LINESIZE_BYTE due to the cache operation unit FSL_FEATURE_CACHE64_CTRL_LINESIZE_BYTE. The startAddr here will be forced to align to the cache line size if startAddr is not aligned. For the size_byte, application should make sure the alignment or make sure the right operation order if the size_byte is not aligned.

Parameters

- address – The physical address.
- size_byte – size of the memory to be invalidated, should be larger than 0.

static inline void DCACHE_CleanByRange(uint32_t address, uint32_t size_byte)

Clean data cache by range.

Note: Address and size should be aligned to CACHE64_LINESIZE_BYTE due to the cache operation unit FSL_FEATURE_CACHE64_CTRL_LINESIZE_BYTE. The startAddr here will be forced to align to the cache line size if startAddr is not aligned. For the size_byte, application should make sure the alignment or make sure the right operation order if the size_byte is not aligned.

Parameters

- address – The physical address.
- size_byte – size of the memory to be cleaned, should be larger than 0.

static inline void DCACHE_CleanInvalidateByRange(uint32_t address, uint32_t size_byte)

Cleans and Invalidates data cache by range.

Note: Address and size should be aligned to CACHE64_LINESIZE_BYTE due to the cache operation unit FSL_FEATURE_CACHE64_CTRL_LINESIZE_BYTE. The startAddr here will be forced to align to the cache line size if startAddr is not aligned. For the size_byte, application should make sure the alignment or make sure the right operation order if the size_byte is not aligned.

Parameters

- address – The physical address.
- size_byte – size of the memory to be Cleaned and Invalidated, should be larger than 0.

FSL_CACHE_DRIVER_VERSION

cache driver version.

enum _cache64_policy

Level 2 cache controller way size.

Values:

enumerator kCACHE64_PolicyNonCacheable

Non-cacheable

enumerator kCACHE64_PolicyWriteThrough

Write through

enumerator kCACHE64_PolicyWriteBack

Write back

typedef enum *_cache64_policy* cache64_policy_t

Level 2 cache controller way size.

typedef struct *_cache64_config* cache64_config_t

CACHE64 configuration structure.

CACHE64_LINESIZE_BYTE
cache line size.

CACHE64_REGION_NUM
cache region number.

CACHE64_REGION_ALIGNMENT
cache region alignment.

struct _cache64_config
#include <fsl_cache.h> CACHE64 configuration structure.

Public Members

uint32_t boundaryAddr[(3U) - 1]
< The cache controller can divide whole memory into 3 regions. Boundary address is the FlexSPI internal address (start from 0) instead of system address (start from FlexSPI AMBA base) to split adjacent regions and must be 1KB aligned. The boundary address itself locates in upper region. Cacheable policy for each region.

2.3 CASPER: The Cryptographic Accelerator and Signal Processing Engine with RAM sharing

2.4 casper_driver

FSL_CASPER_DRIVER_VERSION
CASPER driver version. Version 2.2.4.

Current version: 2.2.4

Change log:

- Version 2.0.0
  - Initial version
- Version 2.0.1
  - Bug fix KPSDK-24531 double_scalar_multiplication() result may be all zeroes for some specific input
- Version 2.0.2
  - Bug fix KPSDK-25015 CASPER_MEMCPY hard-fault on LPC55xx when both source and destination buffers are outside of CASPER_RAM
- Version 2.0.3
  - Bug fix KPSDK-28107 RSUB, FILL and ZERO operations not implemented in enum _casper_operation.
- Version 2.0.4
  - For GCC compiler, enforce O1 optimize level, specifically to remove strict-aliasing option. This driver is very specific and requires -fno-strict-aliasing.
- Version 2.0.5
  - Fix sign-compare warning.
- Version 2.0.6

  - Fix IAR Pa082 warning.
- Version 2.0.7
  - Fix MISRA-C 2012 issue.
- Version 2.0.8
  - Add feature macro for CASPER_RAM_OFFSET.
- Version 2.0.9
  - Remove unused function Jac_oncurve().
  - Fix ECC384 build.
- Version 2.0.10
  - Fix MISRA-C 2012 issue.
- Version 2.1.0
  - Add ECC NIST P-521 elliptic curve.
- Version 2.2.0
  - Rework driver to support multiple curves at once.
- Version 2.2.1
  - Fix MISRA-C 2012 issue.
- Version 2.2.2
  - Enable hardware interleaving to RAMX0 and RAMX1 for CASPER by feature macro FSL_FEATURE_CASPER_RAM_HW_INTERLEAVE
- Version 2.2.3
  - Added macro into CASPER_Init and CASPER_Deinit to support devices without clock and reset control.
- Version 2.2.4
  - Fix MISRA-C 2012 issue.

enum __casper_operation

CASPER operation.

Values:

enumerator kCASPER_OpMul6464NoSum

enumerator kCASPER_OpMul6464Sum

Walking 1 or more of J loop, doing r=a*b using 64x64=128

enumerator kCASPER_OpMul6464FullSum

Walking 1 or more of J loop, doing c,r=r+a*b using 64x64=128, but assume inner j loop

enumerator kCASPER_OpMul6464Reduce

Walking 1 or more of J loop, doing c,r=r+a*b using 64x64=128, but sum all of w.

enumerator kCASPER_OpAdd64

Walking 1 or more of J loop, doing c,r[-1]=r+a*b using 64x64=128, but skip 1st write

enumerator kCASPER_OpSub64

Walking add with off_AB, and in/out off_RES doing c,r=r+a+c using 64+64=65

enumerator kCASPER_OpDouble64

Walking subtract with off_AB, and in/out off_RES doing r=r-a using 64-64=64, with last borrow implicit if any

enumerator kCASPER_OpXor64
Walking add to self with off_RES doing c,r=r+r+c using 64+64=65

enumerator kCASPER_OpRSub64
Walking XOR with off_AB, and in/out off_RES doing r=r^a using 64^64=64

enumerator kCASPER_OpShiftLeft32
Walking subtract with off_AB, and in/out off_RES using r=a-r

enumerator kCASPER_OpShiftRight32
Walking shift left doing r1,r=(b*D)|r1, where D is 2^amt and is loaded by app (off_CD not used)

enumerator kCASPER_OpCopy
Walking shift right doing r,r1=(b*D)|r1, where D is 2^(32-amt) and is loaded by app (off_CD not used) and off_RES starts at MSW

enumerator kCASPER_OpRemask
Copy from ABoff to resoff, 64b at a time

enumerator kCASPER_OpFill
Copy and mask from ABoff to resoff, 64b at a time

enumerator kCASPER_OpZero
Fill RESOFF using 64 bits at a time with value in A and B

enumerator kCASPER_OpCompare
Fill RESOFF using 64 bits at a time of 0s

enumerator kCASPER_OpCompareFast
Compare two arrays, running all the way to the end

enum _casper_algo_t
Algorithm used for CASPER operation.

Values:

enumerator kCASPER_ECC_P256
ECC_P256

enumerator kCASPER_ECC_P384
ECC_P384

enumerator kCASPER_ECC_P521
ECC_P521

Values:

enumerator kCASPER_RamOffset_Result

enumerator kCASPER_RamOffset_Base

enumerator kCASPER_RamOffset_TempBase

enumerator kCASPER_RamOffset_Modulus

enumerator kCASPER_RamOffset_M64

typedef enum *_casper_operation* casper_operation_t
CASPER operation.

typedef enum *_casper_algo_t* casper_algo_t
Algorithm used for CASPER operation.

void CASPER_Init(CASPER_Type *base)

Enables clock and disables reset for CASPER peripheral.

Enable clock and disable reset for CASPER.

Parameters

- base – CASPER base address

void CASPER_Deinit(CASPER_Type *base)

Disables clock for CASPER peripheral.

Disable clock and enable reset.

Parameters

- base – CASPER base address

CASPER_CP

CASPER_CP_CTRL0

CASPER_CP_CTRL1

CASPER_CP_LOADER

CASPER_CP_STATUS

CASPER_CP_INTENSET

CASPER_CP_INTENCLR

CASPER_CP_INTSTAT

CASPER_CP_AREG

CASPER_CP_BREG

CASPER_CP_CREG

CASPER_CP_DREG

CASPER_CP_RES0

CASPER_CP_RES1

CASPER_CP_RES2

CASPER_CP_RES3

CASPER_CP_MASK

CASPER_CP_REMASK

CASPER_CP_LOCK

CASPER_CP_ID

CASPER_Wr32b(value, off)

CASPER_Wr64b(value, off)

CASPER_Rd32b(off)

N_wordlen_max

2.5 casper_driver_pkha

void CASPER_ModExp(CASPER_Type *base, const uint8_t *signature, const uint8_t *pubN, size_t wordLen, uint32_t pubE, uint8_t *plaintext)

Performs modular exponentiation - (A^E) mod N.

This function performs modular exponentiation.

Parameters

- base – CASPER base address
- signature – first addend (in little endian format)
- pubN – modulus (in little endian format)
- wordLen – Size of pubN in bytes
- pubE – exponent
- plaintext – **[out]** Output array to store result of operation (in little endian format)

void CASPER_ecc_init(*casper_algo_t* curve)

Initialize prime modulus mod in Casper memory .

Set the prime modulus mod in Casper memory and set N_wordlen according to selected algorithm.

Parameters

- curve – elliptic curve algoritm

void CASPER_ECC_SECP256R1_Mul(CASPER_Type *base, uint32_t resX[8], uint32_t resY[8], uint32_t X[8], uint32_t Y[8], uint32_t scalar[8])

Performs ECC secp256r1 point single scalar multiplication.

This function performs ECC secp256r1 point single scalar multiplication [resX; resY] = scalar * [X; Y] Coordinates are affine in normal form, little endian. Scalars are little endian. All arrays are little endian byte arrays, uint32_t type is used only to enforce the 32-bit alignment (0-mod-4 address).

Parameters

- base – CASPER base address
- resX – **[out]** Output X affine coordinate in normal form, little endian.
- resY – **[out]** Output Y affine coordinate in normal form, little endian.
- X – Input X affine coordinate in normal form, little endian.
- Y – Input Y affine coordinate in normal form, little endian.
- scalar – Input scalar integer, in normal form, little endian.

void CASPER_ECC_SECP256R1_MulAdd(CASPER_Type *base, uint32_t resX[8], uint32_t resY[8], uint32_t X1[8], uint32_t Y1[8], uint32_t scalar1[8], uint32_t X2[8], uint32_t Y2[8], uint32_t scalar2[8])

Performs ECC secp256r1 point double scalar multiplication.

This function performs ECC secp256r1 point double scalar multiplication [resX; resY] = scalar1 * [X1; Y1] + scalar2 * [X2; Y2] Coordinates are affine in normal form, little endian. Scalars are little endian. All arrays are little endian byte arrays, uint32_t type is used only to enforce the 32-bit alignment (0-mod-4 address).

Parameters

- base – CASPER base address
- resX – **[out]** Output X affine coordinate.
- resY – **[out]** Output Y affine coordinate.
- X1 – Input X1 affine coordinate.
- Y1 – Input Y1 affine coordinate.
- scalar1 – Input scalar1 integer.
- X2 – Input X2 affine coordinate.
- Y2 – Input Y2 affine coordinate.
- scalar2 – Input scalar2 integer.

void CASPER_ECC_SECP384R1_Mul(CASPER_Type *base, uint32_t resX[12], uint32_t resY[12], uint32_t X[12], uint32_t Y[12], uint32_t scalar[12])

Performs ECC secp384r1 point single scalar multiplication.

This function performs ECC secp384r1 point single scalar multiplication [resX; resY] = scalar * [X; Y] Coordinates are affine in normal form, little endian. Scalars are little endian. All arrays are little endian byte arrays, uint32_t type is used only to enforce the 32-bit alignment (0-mod-4 address).

Parameters

- base – CASPER base address
- resX – **[out]** Output X affine coordinate in normal form, little endian.
- resY – **[out]** Output Y affine coordinate in normal form, little endian.
- X – Input X affine coordinate in normal form, little endian.
- Y – Input Y affine coordinate in normal form, little endian.
- scalar – Input scalar integer, in normal form, little endian.

void CASPER_ECC_SECP384R1_MulAdd(CASPER_Type *base, uint32_t resX[12], uint32_t resY[12], uint32_t X1[12], uint32_t Y1[12], uint32_t scalar1[12], uint32_t X2[12], uint32_t Y2[12], uint32_t scalar2[12])

Performs ECC secp384r1 point double scalar multiplication.

This function performs ECC secp384r1 point double scalar multiplication [resX; resY] = scalar1 * [X1; Y1] + scalar2 * [X2; Y2] Coordinates are affine in normal form, little endian. Scalars are little endian. All arrays are little endian byte arrays, uint32_t type is used only to enforce the 32-bit alignment (0-mod-4 address).

Parameters

- base – CASPER base address
- resX – **[out]** Output X affine coordinate.
- resY – **[out]** Output Y affine coordinate.
- X1 – Input X1 affine coordinate.
- Y1 – Input Y1 affine coordinate.
- scalar1 – Input scalar1 integer.
- X2 – Input X2 affine coordinate.
- Y2 – Input Y2 affine coordinate.
- scalar2 – Input scalar2 integer.

void CASPER_ECC_SECP521R1_Mul(CASPER_Type *base, uint32_t resX[18], uint32_t resY[18], uint32_t X[18], uint32_t Y[18], uint32_t scalar[18])

Performs ECC secp521r1 point single scalar multiplication.

This function performs ECC secp521r1 point single scalar multiplication [resX; resY] = scalar * [X; Y] Coordinates are affine in normal form, little endian. Scalars are little endian. All arrays are little endian byte arrays, uint32_t type is used only to enforce the 32-bit alignment (0-mod-4 address).

Parameters

- base – CASPER base address
- resX – **[out]** Output X affine coordinate in normal form, little endian.
- resY – **[out]** Output Y affine coordinate in normal form, little endian.
- X – Input X affine coordinate in normal form, little endian.
- Y – Input Y affine coordinate in normal form, little endian.
- scalar – Input scalar integer, in normal form, little endian.

void CASPER_ECC_SECP521R1_MulAdd(CASPER_Type *base, uint32_t resX[18], uint32_t resY[18], uint32_t X1[18], uint32_t Y1[18], uint32_t scalar1[18], uint32_t X2[18], uint32_t Y2[18], uint32_t scalar2[18])

Performs ECC secp521r1 point double scalar multiplication.

This function performs ECC secp521r1 point double scalar multiplication [resX; resY] = scalar1 * [X1; Y1] + scalar2 * [X2; Y2] Coordinates are affine in normal form, little endian. Scalars are little endian. All arrays are little endian byte arrays, uint32_t type is used only to enforce the 32-bit alignment (0-mod-4 address).

Parameters

- base – CASPER base address
- resX – **[out]** Output X affine coordinate.
- resY – **[out]** Output Y affine coordinate.
- X1 – Input X1 affine coordinate.
- Y1 – Input Y1 affine coordinate.
- scalar1 – Input scalar1 integer.
- X2 – Input X2 affine coordinate.
- Y2 – Input Y2 affine coordinate.
- scalar2 – Input scalar2 integer.

void CASPER_ECC_equal(int *res, uint32_t *op1, uint32_t *op2)

void CASPER_ECC_equal_to_zero(int *res, uint32_t *op1)

2.6 Clock Driver

enum _clock_ip_name

Clock gate name used for CLOCK_EnableClock/CLOCK_DisableClock.

Values:

enumerator kCLOCK_IpInvalid
Invalid Ip Name.

enumerator kCLOCK_Dsp
Clock gate name: Dsp

enumerator kCLOCK_RomCtrlr
Clock gate name: RomCtrlr

enumerator kCLOCK_AxiSwitch
Clock gate name: AxiSwitch

enumerator kCLOCK_AxiCtrl
Clock gate name: AxiCtrl

enumerator kCLOCK_PowerQuad
Clock gate name: PowerQuad

enumerator kCLOCK_Casper
Clock gate name: Casper

enumerator kCLOCK_HashCrypt
Clock gate name: HashCrypt

enumerator kCLOCK_Puf
Clock gate name: Puf

enumerator kCLOCK_Rng
Clock gate name: Rng

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexspi0
Clock gate name: Flexspi0

enumerator kCLOCK_OtpCtrl
Clock gate name: OtpCtrl

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexspi1
Clock gate name: Flexspi1

enumerator kCLOCK_UsbhsPhy
Clock gate name: UsbhsPhy

enumerator kCLOCK_UsbhsDevice
Clock gate name: UsbhsDevice

enumerator kCLOCK_UsbhsHost
Clock gate name: UsbhsHost

enumerator kCLOCK_UsbhsSram
Clock gate name: UsbhsSram

enumerator kCLOCK_Sct
Clock gate name: Sct

enumerator kCLOCK_Gpu
Clock gate name: Gpu

enumerator kCLOCK_DisplayCtrl
Clock gate name: DisplayCtrl

enumerator kCLOCK_MipiDsiCtrl
Clock gate name: MipiDsiCtrl

enumerator kCLOCK_Smartdma
Clock gate name: Smartdma

enumerator kCLOCK_Sdio0
Clock gate name: Sdio0

enumerator kCLOCK_Sdio1
Clock gate name: Sdio1

enumerator kCLOCK_Acmp0
Clock gate name: Acmp0

enumerator kCLOCK_Adc0
Clock gate name: Adc0

enumerator kCLOCK_ShsGpio0
Clock gate name: ShsGpio0

enumerator kCLOCK_Utick0
Clock gate name: Utick0

enumerator kCLOCK_Wwdt0
Clock gate name: Wwdt0

enumerator kCLOCK_Pmc
Clock gate name: Pmc

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexcomm0
Clock gate name: Flexcomm0

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexcomm1
Clock gate name: Flexcomm1

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexcomm2
Clock gate name: Flexcomm2

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexcomm3
Clock gate name: Flexcomm3

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexcomm4
Clock gate name: Flexcomm4

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexcomm5
Clock gate name: Flexcomm5

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexcomm6
Clock gate name: Flexcomm6

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexcomm7
Clock gate name: Flexcomm7

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexcomm8
Clock gate name: Flexcomm8

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexcomm9
Clock gate name: Flexcomm9

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexcomm10
Clock gate name: Flexcomm10

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexcomm11
Clock gate name: Flexcomm11

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexcomm12
Clock gate name: Flexcomm12

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexcomm13
Clock gate name: Flexcomm13

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexcomm14
Clock gate name: Flexcomm14

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexcomm15
Clock gate name: Flexcomm15

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexcomm16
Clock gate name: Flexcomm16

enumerator kCLOCK_Usart0
Clock gate name: Usart0

enumerator kCLOCK_Usart1
Clock gate name: Usart1

enumerator kCLOCK_Usart2
Clock gate name: Usart2

enumerator kCLOCK_Usart3
Clock gate name: Usart3

enumerator kCLOCK_Usart4
Clock gate name: Usart4

enumerator kCLOCK_Usart5
Clock gate name: Usart5

enumerator kCLOCK_Usart6
Clock gate name: Usart6

enumerator kCLOCK_Usart7
Clock gate name: Usart7

enumerator kCLOCK_Usart8
Clock gate name: Usart8

enumerator kCLOCK_Usart9
Clock gate name: Usart9

enumerator kCLOCK_Usart10
Clock gate name: Usart10

enumerator kCLOCK_Usart11
Clock gate name: Usart11

enumerator kCLOCK_Usart12
Clock gate name: Usart12

enumerator kCLOCK_Usart13
Clock gate name: Usart13

enumerator kCLOCK_I2s0
Clock gate name: I2s0

enumerator kCLOCK_I2s1
Clock gate name: I2s1

enumerator kCLOCK_I2s2
Clock gate name: I2s2

enumerator kCLOCK_I2s3
Clock gate name: I2s3

enumerator kCLOCK_I2s4
Clock gate name: I2s4

enumerator kCLOCK_I2s5
Clock gate name: I2s5

enumerator kCLOCK_I2s6
Clock gate name: I2s6

enumerator kCLOCK_I2s7
Clock gate name: I2s7

enumerator kCLOCK_I2s8
Clock gate name: I2s8

enumerator kCLOCK_I2s9
Clock gate name: I2s9

enumerator kCLOCK_I2s10
Clock gate name: I2s10

enumerator kCLOCK_I2s11
Clock gate name: I2s11

enumerator kCLOCK_I2s12
Clock gate name: I2s12

enumerator kCLOCK_I2s13
Clock gate name: I2s13

enumerator kCLOCK_I2c0
Clock gate name: I2c0

enumerator kCLOCK_I2c1
Clock gate name: I2c1

enumerator kCLOCK_I2c2
Clock gate name: I2c2

enumerator kCLOCK_I2c3
Clock gate name: I2c3

enumerator kCLOCK_I2c4
Clock gate name: I2c4

enumerator kCLOCK_I2c5
Clock gate name: I2c5

enumerator kCLOCK_I2c6
Clock gate name: I2c6

enumerator kCLOCK_I2c7
Clock gate name: I2c7

enumerator kCLOCK_I2c8
Clock gate name: I2c8

enumerator kCLOCK_I2c9
Clock gate name: I2c9

enumerator kCLOCK_I2c10
Clock gate name: I2c10

enumerator kCLOCK_I2c11
Clock gate name: I2c11

enumerator kCLOCK_I2c12
Clock gate name: I2c12

enumerator kCLOCK_I2c13
Clock gate name: I2c13

enumerator kCLOCK_I2c15
Clock gate name: I2c15

enumerator kCLOCK_Spi0
Clock gate name: Spi0

enumerator kCLOCK_Spi1
Clock gate name: Spi1

enumerator kCLOCK_Spi2
Clock gate name: Spi2

enumerator kCLOCK_Spi3
Clock gate name: Spi3

enumerator kCLOCK_Spi4
Clock gate name: Spi4

enumerator kCLOCK_Spi5
Clock gate name: Spi5

enumerator kCLOCK_Spi6
Clock gate name: Spi6

enumerator kCLOCK_Spi7
Clock gate name: Spi7

enumerator kCLOCK_Spi8
Clock gate name: Spi8

enumerator kCLOCK_Spi9
Clock gate name: Spi9

enumerator kCLOCK_Spi10
Clock gate name: Spi10

enumerator kCLOCK_Spi11
Clock gate name: Spi11

enumerator kCLOCK_Spi12
Clock gate name: Spi12

enumerator kCLOCK_Spi13
Clock gate name: Spi13

enumerator kCLOCK_Spi14
Clock gate name: Spi14

enumerator kCLOCK_Spi16
Clock gate name: Spi16

enumerator kCLOCK_Dmic0
Clock gate name: Dmic0

enumerator kCLOCK_OsEventTimer
Clock gate name: OsEventTimer

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexio
Clock gate name: Flexio

enumerator kCLOCK_HsGpio0
Clock gate name: HsGpio0

enumerator kCLOCK_HsGpio1
Clock gate name: HsGpio1

enumerator kCLOCK_HsGpio2
Clock gate name: HsGpio2

enumerator kCLOCK_HsGpio3
Clock gate name: HsGpio3

enumerator kCLOCK_HsGpio4
Clock gate name: HsGpio4

enumerator kCLOCK_HsGpio5
Clock gate name: HsGpio5

enumerator kCLOCK_HsGpio6
Clock gate name: HsGpio6

enumerator kCLOCK_HsGpio7
Clock gate name: HsGpio7

enumerator kCLOCK_Crc
Clock gate name: Crc

enumerator kCLOCK_Dmac0
Clock gate name: Dmac0

enumerator kCLOCK_Dmac1
Clock gate name: Dmac1

enumerator kCLOCK_Mu
Clock gate name: Mu

enumerator kCLOCK_Sema
Clock gate name: Sema

enumerator kCLOCK_Freqme
Clock gate name: Freqme

enumerator kCLOCK_Ct32b0
Clock gate name: Ct32b0

enumerator kCLOCK_Ct32b1
Clock gate name: Ct32b1

enumerator kCLOCK_Ct32b2
Clock gate name: Ct32b2

enumerator kCLOCK_Ct32b3
Clock gate name: Ct32b3

enumerator kCLOCK_Ct32b4
Clock gate name: Ct32b4

enumerator kCLOCK_Rtc
Clock gate name: Rtc

enumerator kCLOCK_Mrt0
Clock gate name: Mrt0

enumerator kCLOCK_Wwdt1
Clock gate name: Wwdt1

enumerator kCLOCK_I3c0
Clock gate name: I3c0

enumerator kCLOCK_I3c1
Clock gate name: I3c1

enumerator kCLOCK_Pint
Clock gate name: Pint

enumerator kCLOCK_InputMux
Clock gate name: InputMux.

enum _clock_name
Clock name used to get clock frequency.

Values:

enumerator kCLOCK_CoreSysClk
Core clock (aka HCLK)

enumerator kCLOCK_BusClk
Bus clock (AHB/APB clock, aka HCLK)

enumerator kCLOCK_MclkClk
MCLK, to MCLK pin

enumerator kCLOCK_ClockOutClk
CLOCKOUT

enumerator kCLOCK_AdcClk
ADC

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexspi0Clk
FlexSpi0

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexspi1Clk
FlexSpi1

enumerator kCLOCK_SctClk
SCT

enumerator kCLOCK_Wdt0Clk
Watchdog0

enumerator kCLOCK_Wdt1Clk
Watchdog1

enumerator kCLOCK_SystickClk
Systick

enumerator kCLOCK_Sdio0Clk
SDIO0

enumerator kCLOCK_Sdio1Clk
SDIO1

enumerator kCLOCK_I3cClk
I3C0 and I3C1

enumerator kCLOCK_UsbClk
USB0

enumerator kCLOCK_DmicClk
Digital Mic clock

enumerator kCLOCK_DspCpuClk
DSP clock

enumerator kCLOCK_AcmpClk
Acmp clock

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexcomm0Clk
Flexcomm0Clock

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexcomm1Clk
Flexcomm1Clock

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexcomm2Clk
Flexcomm2Clock

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexcomm3Clk
Flexcomm3Clock

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexcomm4Clk
Flexcomm4Clock

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexcomm5Clk
Flexcomm5Clock

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexcomm6Clk
Flexcomm6Clock

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexcomm7Clk
Flexcomm7Clock

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexcomm8Clk
Flexcomm8Clock

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexcomm9Clk
Flexcomm9Clock

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexcomm10Clk
Flexcomm10Clock

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexcomm11Clk
Flexcomm11Clock

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexcomm12Clk
Flexcomm12Clock

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexcomm13Clk
Flexcomm13Clock

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexcomm14Clk
Flexcomm14Clock

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexcomm15Clk
Flexcomm15Clock

enumerator kCLOCK_Flexcomm16Clk
Flexcomm16Clock

enumerator kCLOCK_FlexioClk
FlexIO

enumerator kCLOCK_GpuClk
GPU Core

enumerator kCLOCK_DcPixelClk
DCNano Pixel Clock

enumerator kCLOCK_MipiDphyClk
MIPI D-PHY Bit Clock

enumerator kCLOCK_MipiDphyEscRxClk
MIPI D-PHY RX Clock

enumerator kCLOCK_MipiDphyEscTxClk
MIPI D-PHY TX Clock

enum _clock_pfd
PLL PFD clock name.

Values:

enumerator kCLOCK_Pfd0
PLL PFD0

enumerator kCLOCK_Pfd1
PLL PFD1

enumerator kCLOCK_Pfd2
PLL PFD2

enumerator kCLOCK_Pfd3
PLL PFD3

enum _clock_attach_id
The enumerator of clock attach Id.

Values:

enumerator kFRO_DIV8_to_SYS_PLL
Attach FRO_DIV8 to SYS_PLL.

enumerator kOSC_CLK_to_SYS_PLL
Attach OSC_CLK to SYS_PLL.

enumerator kNONE_to_SYS_PLL
Attach NONE to SYS_PLL.

enumerator kFRO_DIV8_to_AUDIO_PLL
Attach FRO_DIV8 to AUDIO_PLL.

enumerator kOSC_CLK_to_AUDIO_PLL
Attach OSC_CLK to AUDIO_PLL.

enumerator kNONE_to_AUDIO_PLL
Attach NONE to AUDIO_PLL.

enumerator kLPOSC_to_MAIN_CLK
Attach LPOSC to MAIN_CLK.

enumerator kFRO_DIV2_to_MAIN_CLK
Attach Fro_DIV2 to MAIN_CLK.

enumerator kFRO_DIV4_to_MAIN_CLK
Attach Fro_DIV4 to MAIN_CLK.

enumerator kFRO_DIV8_to_MAIN_CLK
Attach Fro_DIV8 to MAIN_CLK.

enumerator kFRO_DIV16_to_MAIN_CLK
Attach Fro_DIV16 to MAIN_CLK.

enumerator kOSC_CLK_to_MAIN_CLK
Attach OSC_CLK to MAIN_CLK.

enumerator kFRO_DIV1_to_MAIN_CLK
Attach FRO_DIV1 to MAIN_CLK.

enumerator kMAIN_PLL_to_MAIN_CLK
Attach MAIN_PLL to MAIN_CLK.

enumerator kOSC32K_to_MAIN_CLK
Attach OSC32K to MAIN_CLK.

enumerator kFRO_DIV1_to_DSP_MAIN_CLK
Attach Fro_DIV1 to DSP_MAIN_CLK.

enumerator kOSC_CLK_to_DSP_MAIN_CLK
Attach OSC_CLK to DSP_MAIN_CLK.

enumerator kLPOSC_to_DSP_MAIN_CLK
Attach LPOSC to DSP_MAIN_CLK.

enumerator kMAIN_PLL_to_DSP_MAIN_CLK
Attach MAIN_PLL to DSP_MAIN_CLK.

enumerator kDSP_PLL_to_DSP_MAIN_CLK
Attach DSP_PLL to DSP_MAIN_CLK.

enumerator kOSC32K_to_DSP_MAIN_CLK
Attach OSC32K to DSP_MAIN_CLK.

enumerator kLPOSC_to_UTICK_CLK
Attach LPOSC to UTICK_CLK.

enumerator kNONE_to_UTICK_CLK
Attach NONE to UTICK_CLK.

enumerator kLPOSC_to_WDT0_CLK
Attach LPOSC to WDT0_CLK.

enumerator kNONE_to_WDT0_CLK
Attach NONE to WDT0_CLK.

enumerator kLPOSC_to_WDT1_CLK
Attach LPOSC to WDT1_CLK.

enumerator kNONE_to_WDT1_CLK
Attach NONE to WDT1_CLK.

enumerator kOSC32K_to_32KHZWAKE_CLK
Attach OSC32K to 32KHZWAKE_CLK.

enumerator kLPOSC_DIV32_to_32KHZWAKE_CLK
Attach LPOSC_DIV32 to 32KHZWAKE_CLK.

enumerator kNONE_to_32KHZWAKE_CLK
Attach NONE to 32KHZWAKE_CLK.

enumerator kMAIN_CLK_DIV_to_SYSTICK_CLK
Attach MAIN_CLK_DIV to SYSTICK_CLK.

enumerator kLPOSC_to_SYSTICK_CLK
Attach LPOSC to SYSTICK_CLK.

enumerator kOSC32K_to_SYSTICK_CLK
Attach OSC32K to SYSTICK_CLK.

enumerator kNONE_to_SYSTICK_CLK
Attach NONE to SYSTICK_CLK.

enumerator kMAIN_CLK_to_SDIO0_CLK
Attach MAIN_CLK to SDIO0_CLK.

enumerator kMAIN_PLL_to_SDIO0_CLK
Attach MAIN_PLL to SDIO0_CLK.

enumerator kAUX0_PLL_to_SDIO0_CLK
Attach AUX0_PLL to SDIO0_CLK.

enumerator kFRO_DIV2_to_SDIO0_CLK
Attach FRO_DIV2 to SDIO0_CLK.

enumerator kAUX1_PLL_to_SDIO0_CLK
Attach AUX1_PLL to SDIO0_CLK.

enumerator kNONE_to_SDIO0_CLK
Attach NONE to SDIO0_CLK.

enumerator kMAIN_CLK_to_SDIO1_CLK
Attach MAIN_CLK to SDIO1_CLK.

enumerator kMAIN_PLL_to_SDIO1_CLK
Attach MAIN_PLL to SDIO1_CLK.

enumerator kAUX0_PLL_to_SDIO1_CLK
Attach AUX0_PLL to SDIO1_CLK.

enumerator kFRO_DIV2_to_SDIO1_CLK
Attach FRO_DIV2 to SDIO1_CLK.

enumerator kAUX1_PLL_to_SDIO1_CLK
Attach AUX1_PLL to SDIO1_CLK.

enumerator kNONE_to_SDIO1_CLK
Attach NONE to SDIO1_CLK.

enumerator kMAIN_CLK_to_CTIMER0
Attach MAIN_CLK to CTIMER0.

enumerator kFRO_DIV1_to_CTIMER0
Attach FRO_DIV1 to CTIMER0.

enumerator kAUDIO_PLL_to_CTIMER0
Attach AUDIO_PLL to CTIMER0.

enumerator kMASTER_CLK_to_CTIMER0
Attach MASTER_CLK to CTIMER0.

enumerator k32K_WAKE_CLK_to_CTIMER0
Attach 32K_WAKE_CLK to CTIMER0.

enumerator kNONE_to_CTIMER0
Attach NONE to CTIMER0.

enumerator kMAIN_CLK_to_CTIMER1
Attach MAIN_CLK to CTIMER1.

enumerator kFRO_DIV1_to_CTIMER1
Attach FRO_DIV1 to CTIMER1.

enumerator kAUDIO_PLL_to_CTIMER1
Attach AUDIO_PLL to CTIMER1.

enumerator kMASTER_CLK_to_CTIMER1
Attach MASTER_CLK to CTIMER1.

enumerator k32K_WAKE_CLK_to_CTIMER1
Attach 32K_WAKE_CLK to CTIMER1.

enumerator kNONE_to_CTIMER1
Attach NONE to CTIMER1.

enumerator kMAIN_CLK_to_CTIMER2
Attach MAIN_CLK to CTIMER2.

enumerator kFRO_DIV1_to_CTIMER2
Attach FRO_DIV1 to CTIMER2.

enumerator kAUDIO_PLL_to_CTIMER2
Attach AUDIO_PLL to CTIMER2.

enumerator kMASTER_CLK_to_CTIMER2
Attach MASTER_CLK to CTIMER2.

enumerator k32K_WAKE_CLK_to_CTIMER2
Attach 32K_WAKE_CLK to CTIMER2.

enumerator kNONE_to_CTIMER2
Attach NONE to CTIMER2.

enumerator kMAIN_CLK_to_CTIMER3
Attach MAIN_CLK to CTIMER3.

enumerator kFRO_DIV1_to_CTIMER3
Attach FRO_DIV1 to CTIMER3.

enumerator kAUDIO_PLL_to_CTIMER3
Attach AUDIO_PLL to CTIMER3.

enumerator kMASTER_CLK_to_CTIMER3
Attach MASTER_CLK to CTIMER3.

enumerator k32K_WAKE_CLK_to_CTIMER3
Attach 32K_WAKE_CLK to CTIMER3.

enumerator kNONE_to_CTIMER3
Attach NONE to CTIMER3.

enumerator kMAIN_CLK_to_CTIMER4
Attach MAIN_CLK to CTIMER4.

enumerator kFRO_DIV1_to_CTIMER4
Attach FRO_DIV1 to CTIMER4.

enumerator kAUDIO_PLL_to_CTIMER4
Attach AUDIO_PLL to CTIMER4.

enumerator kMASTER_CLK_to_CTIMER4
Attach MASTER_CLK to CTIMER4.

enumerator k32K_WAKE_CLK_to_CTIMER4
Attach 32K_WAKE_CLK to CTIMER4.

enumerator kNONE_to_CTIMER4
Attach NONE to CTIMER4.

enumerator kMAIN_CLK_to_FLEXSPI0_CLK
Attach MAIN_CLK to FLEXSPI0_CLK.

enumerator kMAIN_PLL_to_FLEXSPI0_CLK
Attach MAIN_PLL to FLEXSPI0_CLK.

enumerator kAUX0_PLL_to_FLEXSPI0_CLK
Attach AUX0_PLL to FLEXSPI0_CLK.

enumerator kFRO_DIV1_to_FLEXSPI0_CLK
Attach FRO_DIV1 to FLEXSPI0_CLK.

enumerator kAUX1_PLL_to_FLEXSPI0_CLK
Attach AUX1_PLL to FLEXSPI0_CLK.

enumerator kFRO_DIV4_to_FLEXSPI0_CLK
Attach FRO_DIV4 to FLEXSPI0_CLK.

enumerator kFRO_DIV8_to_FLEXSPI0_CLK
Attach FRO_DIV8 to FLEXSPI0_CLK.

enumerator kNONE_to_FLEXSPI0_CLK
Attach NONE to FLEXSPI0_CLK.

enumerator kMAIN_CLK_to_FLEXSPI1_CLK
Attach MAIN_CLK to FLEXSPI1_CLK.

enumerator kMAIN_PLL_to_FLEXSPI1_CLK
Attach MAIN_PLL to FLEXSPI1_CLK.

enumerator kAUX0_PLL_to_FLEXSPI1_CLK
Attach AUX0_PLL to FLEXSPI1_CLK.

enumerator kFRO_DIV1_to_FLEXSPI1_CLK
Attach FRO_DIV1 to FLEXSPI1_CLK.

enumerator kAUX1_PLL_to_FLEXSPI1_CLK
Attach AUX1_PLL to FLEXSPI1_CLK.

enumerator kNONE_to_FLEXSPI1_CLK
Attach NONE to FLEXSPI1_CLK.

enumerator kOSC_CLK_to_USB_CLK
Attach OSC_CLK to USB_CLK.

enumerator kMAIN_CLK_to_USB_CLK
Attach MAIN_CLK to USB_CLK.

enumerator kAUX0_PLL_to_USB_CLK
Attach AUX0_PLL to USB_CLK.

enumerator kNONE_to_USB_CLK
Attach NONE to USB_CLK.

enumerator kMAIN_CLK_to_SCT_CLK
Attach MAIN_CLK to SCT_CLK.

enumerator kMAIN_PLL_to_SCT_CLK
Attach MAIN_PLL to SCT_CLK.

enumerator kAUX0_PLL_to_SCT_CLK
Attach AUX0_PLL to SCT_CLK.

enumerator kFRO_DIV1_to_SCT_CLK
Attach FRO_DIV1 to SCT_CLK.

enumerator kAUX1_PLL_to_SCT_CLK
Attach AUX1_PLL to SCT_CLK.

enumerator kAUDIO_PLL_to_SCT_CLK
Attach AUDIO_PLL to SCT_CLK.

enumerator kNONE_to_SCT_CLK
Attach NONE to SCT_CLK.

enumerator kLPOSC_to_OSTIMER_CLK
Attach LPOSC to OSTIMER_CLK.

enumerator kOSC32K_to_OSTIMER_CLK
Attach OSC32K to OSTIMER_CLK.

enumerator kHCLK_to_OSTIMER_CLK
Attach HCLK to OSTIMER_CLK.

enumerator kNONE_to_OSTIMER_CLK
Attach NONE to OSTIMER_CLK.

enumerator kFRO_DIV8_to_MCLK_CLK
Attach FRO_DIV8 to MCLK_CLK.

enumerator kAUDIO_PLL_to_MCLK_CLK
Attach AUDIO_PLL to MCLK_CLK.

enumerator kNONE_to_MCLK_CLK
Attach NONE to MCLK_CLK.

enumerator kFRO_DIV4_to_DMIC
Attach FRO_DIV4 to DMIC.

enumerator kAUDIO_PLL_to_DMIC
Attach AUDIO_PLL to DMIC.

enumerator kMASTER_CLK_to_DMIC
Attach MASTER_CLK to DMIC.

enumerator kLPOSC_to_DMIC
Attach LPOSC to DMIC.

enumerator k32K_WAKE_CLK_to_DMIC
Attach 32K_WAKE_CLK to DMIC.

enumerator kNONE_to_DMIC
Attach NONE to DMIC.

enumerator kFRO_DIV4_to_FLEXCOMM0
Attach FRO_DIV4 to FLEXCOMM0.

enumerator kAUDIO_PLL_to_FLEXCOMM0
Attach AUDIO_PLL to FLEXCOMM0.

enumerator kMASTER_CLK_to_FLEXCOMM0
Attach MASTER_CLK to FLEXCOMM0.

enumerator kFRG_to_FLEXCOMM0
Attach FRG to FLEXCOMM0.

enumerator kNONE_to_FLEXCOMM0
Attach NONE to FLEXCOMM0.

enumerator kFRO_DIV4_to_FLEXCOMM1
Attach FRO_DIV4 to FLEXCOMM1.

enumerator kAUDIO_PLL_to_FLEXCOMM1
Attach AUDIO_PLL to FLEXCOMM1.

enumerator kMASTER_CLK_to_FLEXCOMM1
Attach MASTER_CLK to FLEXCOMM1.

enumerator kFRG_to_FLEXCOMM1
Attach FRG to FLEXCOMM1.

enumerator kNONE_to_FLEXCOMM1
Attach NONE to FLEXCOMM1.

enumerator kFRO_DIV4_to_FLEXCOMM2
Attach FRO_DIV4 to FLEXCOMM2.

enumerator kAUDIO_PLL_to_FLEXCOMM2
Attach AUDIO_PLL to FLEXCOMM2.

enumerator kMASTER_CLK_to_FLEXCOMM2
Attach MASTER_CLK to FLEXCOMM2.

enumerator kFRG_to_FLEXCOMM2
Attach FRG to FLEXCOMM2.

enumerator kNONE_to_FLEXCOMM2
Attach NONE to FLEXCOMM2.

enumerator kFRO_DIV4_to_FLEXCOMM3
Attach FRO_DIV4 to FLEXCOMM3.

enumerator kAUDIO_PLL_to_FLEXCOMM3
Attach AUDIO_PLL to FLEXCOMM3.

enumerator kMASTER_CLK_to_FLEXCOMM3
Attach MASTER_CLK to FLEXCOMM3.

enumerator kFRG_to_FLEXCOMM3
Attach FRG to FLEXCOMM3.

enumerator kNONE_to_FLEXCOMM3
Attach NONE to FLEXCOMM3.

enumerator kFRO_DIV4_to_FLEXCOMM4
Attach FRO_DIV4 to FLEXCOMM4.

enumerator kAUDIO_PLL_to_FLEXCOMM4
Attach AUDIO_PLL to FLEXCOMM4.

enumerator kMASTER_CLK_to_FLEXCOMM4
Attach MASTER_CLK to FLEXCOMM4.

enumerator kFRG_to_FLEXCOMM4
Attach FRG to FLEXCOMM4.

enumerator kNONE_to_FLEXCOMM4
Attach NONE to FLEXCOMM4.

enumerator kFRO_DIV4_to_FLEXCOMM5
Attach FRO_DIV4 to FLEXCOMM5.

enumerator kAUDIO_PLL_to_FLEXCOMM5
Attach AUDIO_PLL to FLEXCOMM5.

enumerator kMASTER_CLK_to_FLEXCOMM5
Attach MASTER_CLK to FLEXCOMM5.

enumerator kFRG_to_FLEXCOMM5
Attach FRG to FLEXCOMM5.

enumerator kNONE_to_FLEXCOMM5
Attach NONE to FLEXCOMM5.

enumerator kFRO_DIV4_to_FLEXCOMM6
Attach FRO_DIV4 to FLEXCOMM6.

enumerator kAUDIO_PLL_to_FLEXCOMM6
Attach AUDIO_PLL to FLEXCOMM6.

enumerator kMASTER_CLK_to_FLEXCOMM6
Attach MASTER_CLK to FLEXCOMM6.

enumerator kFRG_to_FLEXCOMM6
Attach FRG to FLEXCOMM6.

enumerator kNONE_to_FLEXCOMM6
Attach NONE to FLEXCOMM6.

enumerator kFRO_DIV4_to_FLEXCOMM7
Attach FRO_DIV4 to FLEXCOMM7.

enumerator kAUDIO_PLL_to_FLEXCOMM7
Attach AUDIO_PLL to FLEXCOMM7.

enumerator kMASTER_CLK_to_FLEXCOMM7
Attach MASTER_CLK to FLEXCOMM7.

enumerator kFRG_to_FLEXCOMM7
Attach FRG to FLEXCOMM7.

enumerator kNONE_to_FLEXCOMM7
Attach NONE to FLEXCOMM7.

enumerator kFRO_DIV4_to_FLEXCOMM8
Attach FRO_DIV4 to FLEXCOMM8.

enumerator kAUDIO_PLL_to_FLEXCOMM8
Attach AUDIO_PLL to FLEXCOMM8.

enumerator kMASTER_CLK_to_FLEXCOMM8
Attach MASTER_CLK to FLEXCOMM8.

enumerator kFRG_to_FLEXCOMM8
Attach FRG to FLEXCOMM8.

enumerator kNONE_to_FLEXCOMM8
Attach NONE to FLEXCOMM8.

enumerator kFRO_DIV4_to_FLEXCOMM9
Attach FRO_DIV4 to FLEXCOMM9.

enumerator kAUDIO_PLL_to_FLEXCOMM9
Attach AUDIO_PLL to FLEXCOMM9.

enumerator kMASTER_CLK_to_FLEXCOMM9
Attach MASTER_CLK to FLEXCOMM9.

enumerator kFRG_to_FLEXCOMM9
Attach FRG to FLEXCOMM9.

enumerator kNONE_to_FLEXCOMM9
Attach NONE to FLEXCOMM9.

enumerator kFRO_DIV4_to_FLEXCOMM10
Attach FRO_DIV4 to FLEXCOMM10.

enumerator kAUDIO_PLL_to_FLEXCOMM10
Attach AUDIO_PLL to FLEXCOMM10.

enumerator kMASTER_CLK_to_FLEXCOMM10
Attach MASTER_CLK to FLEXCOMM10.

enumerator kFRG_to_FLEXCOMM10
Attach FRG to FLEXCOMM10.

enumerator kNONE_to_FLEXCOMM10
Attach NONE to FLEXCOMM10.

enumerator kFRO_DIV4_to_FLEXCOMM11
Attach FRO_DIV4 to FLEXCOMM11.

enumerator kAUDIO_PLL_to_FLEXCOMM11
Attach AUDIO_PLL to FLEXCOMM11.

enumerator kMASTER_CLK_to_FLEXCOMM11
Attach MASTER_CLK to FLEXCOMM11.

enumerator kFRG_to_FLEXCOMM11
Attach FRG to FLEXCOMM11.

enumerator kNONE_to_FLEXCOMM11
Attach NONE to FLEXCOMM11.

enumerator kFRO_DIV4_to_FLEXCOMM12
Attach FRO_DIV4 to FLEXCOMM12.

enumerator kAUDIO_PLL_to_FLEXCOMM12
Attach AUDIO_PLL to FLEXCOMM12.

enumerator kMASTER_CLK_to_FLEXCOMM12
Attach MASTER_CLK to FLEXCOMM12.

enumerator kFRG_to_FLEXCOMM12
Attach FRG to FLEXCOMM12.

enumerator kNONE_to_FLEXCOMM12
Attach NONE to FLEXCOMM12.

enumerator kFRO_DIV4_to_FLEXCOMM13
Attach FRO_DIV4 to FLEXCOMM13.

enumerator kAUDIO_PLL_to_FLEXCOMM13
Attach AUDIO_PLL to FLEXCOMM13.

enumerator kMASTER_CLK_to_FLEXCOMM13
Attach MASTER_CLK to FLEXCOMM13.

enumerator kFRG_to_FLEXCOMM13
Attach FRG to FLEXCOMM13.

enumerator kNONE_to_FLEXCOMM13
Attach NONE to FLEXCOMM13.

enumerator kFRO_DIV4_to_FLEXCOMM14
Attach FRO_DIV4 to FLEXCOMM14.

enumerator kAUDIO_PLL_to_FLEXCOMM14
Attach AUDIO_PLL to FLEXCOMM14.

enumerator kMASTER_CLK_to_FLEXCOMM14
Attach MASTER_CLK to FLEXCOMM14.

enumerator kFRG_to_FLEXCOMM14
Attach FRG to FLEXCOMM14.

enumerator kNONE_to_FLEXCOMM14
Attach NONE to FLEXCOMM14.

enumerator kFRO_DIV4_to_FLEXCOMM15
Attach FRO_DIV4 to FLEXCOMM15.

enumerator kAUDIO_PLL_to_FLEXCOMM15
Attach AUDIO_PLL to FLEXCOMM15.

enumerator kMASTER_CLK_to_FLEXCOMM15
Attach MASTER_CLK to FLEXCOMM15.

enumerator kFRG_to_FLEXCOMM15
Attach FRG to FLEXCOMM15.

enumerator kNONE_to_FLEXCOMM15
Attach NONE to FLEXCOMM15.

enumerator kFRO_DIV4_to_FLEXCOMM16
Attach FRO_DIV4 to FLEXCOMM16.

enumerator kAUDIO_PLL_to_FLEXCOMM16
Attach AUDIO_PLL to FLEXCOMM16.

enumerator kMASTER_CLK_to_FLEXCOMM16
Attach MASTER_CLK to FLEXCOMM16.

enumerator kFRG_to_FLEXCOMM16
Attach FRG to FLEXCOMM16.

enumerator kNONE_to_FLEXCOMM16
Attach NONE to FLEXCOMM16.

enumerator kFRO_DIV2_to_FLEXIO
Attach FRO_DIV2 to FLEXIO.

enumerator kAUDIO_PLL_to_FLEXIO
Attach AUDIO_PLL to FLEXIO.

enumerator kMASTER_CLK_to_FLEXIO
Attach MASTER_CLK to FLEXIO.

enumerator kFRG_to_FLEXIO
Attach FRG to FLEXIO.

enumerator kNONE_to_FLEXIO
Attach NONE to FLEXIO.

enumerator kMAIN_CLK_to_I3C_CLK
Attach MAIN_CLK to I3C_CLK.

enumerator kFRO_DIV8_to_I3C_CLK
Attach FRO_DIV8 to I3C_CLK.

enumerator kNONE_to_I3C_CLK
Attach NONE to I3C_CLK.

enumerator kI3C_CLK_to_I3C_TC_CLK
Attach I3C_CLK to I3C_TC_CLK.

enumerator kLPOSC_to_I3C_TC_CLK
Attach LPOSC to I3C_TC_CLK.

enumerator kNONE_to_I3C_TC_CLK
Attach NONE to I3C_TC_CLK.

enumerator kMAIN_CLK_to_ACMP_CLK
Attach MAIN_CLK to ACMP_CLK.

enumerator kFRO_DIV4_to_ACMP_CLK
Attach FRO_DIV4 to ACMP_CLK.

enumerator kAUX0_PLL_to_ACMP_CLK
Attach AUX0_PLL to ACMP_CLK.

enumerator kAUX1_PLL_to_ACMP_CLK
Attach AUX1_PLL to ACMP_CLK.

enumerator kNONE_to_ACMP_CLK
Attach NONE to ACMP_CLK.

enumerator kOSC_CLK_to_ADC_CLK
Attach OSC_CLK to ADC_CLK.

enumerator kLPOSC_to_ADC_CLK
Attach LPOSC to ADC_CLK.

enumerator kFRO_DIV4_to_ADC_CLK
Attach FRO_DIV4 to ADC_CLK.

enumerator kMAIN_PLL_to_ADC_CLK
Attach MAIN_PLL to ADC_CLK.

enumerator kAUX0_PLL_to_ADC_CLK
Attach AUX0_PLL to ADC_CLK.

enumerator kAUX1_PLL_to_ADC_CLK
Attach AUX1_PLL to ADC_CLK.

enumerator kOSC_CLK_to_CLKOUT
Attach OSC_CLK to CLKOUT.

enumerator kLPOSC_to_CLKOUT
Attach LPOSC to CLKOUT.

enumerator kFRO_DIV2_to_CLKOUT
Attach FRO_DIV2 to CLKOUT.

enumerator kMAIN_CLK_to_CLKOUT
Attach MAIN_CLK to CLKOUT.

enumerator kDSP_MAIN_to_CLKOUT
Attach DSP_MAIN to CLKOUT.

enumerator kMAIN_PLL_to_CLKOUT
Attach MAIN_PLL to CLKOUT.

enumerator kAUX0_PLL_to_CLKOUT
Attach AUX0_PLL to CLKOUT.

enumerator kDSP_PLL_to_CLKOUT
Attach DSP_PLL to CLKOUT.

enumerator kAUX1_PLL_to_CLKOUT
Attach AUX1_PLL to CLKOUT.

enumerator kAUDIO_PLL_to_CLKOUT
Attach AUDIO_PLL to CLKOUT.

enumerator kOSC32K_to_CLKOUT
Attach OSC32K to CLKOUT.

enumerator kNONE_to_CLKOUT
Attach NONE to CLKOUT.

enumerator kMAIN_CLK_to_GPU_CLK
Attach MAIN_CLK to GPU_CLK.

enumerator kFRO_DIV1_to_GPU_CLK
Attach FRO_DIV1 to GPU_CLK.

enumerator kMAIN_PLL_to_GPU_CLK
Attach MAIN_PLL to GPU_CLK.

enumerator kAUX0_PLL_to_GPU_CLK
Attach AUX0_PLL to GPU_CLK.

enumerator kAUX1_PLL_to_GPU_CLK
Attach AUX1_PLL to GPU_CLK.

enumerator kNONE_to_GPU_CLK
Attach NONE to GPU_CLK.

enumerator kFRO_DIV1_to_MIPI_DPHY_CLK
Attach FRO_DIV1 to MIPI_DPHY_CLK.

enumerator kMAIN_PLL_to_MIPI_DPHY_CLK
Attach MAIN_PLL to MIPI_DPHY_CLK.

enumerator kAUX0_PLL_to_MIPI_DPHY_CLK
Attach AUX0_PLL to MIPI_DPHY_CLK.

enumerator kAUX1_PLL_to_MIPI_DPHY_CLK
Attach AUX1_PLL to MIPI_DPHY_CLK.

enumerator kNONE_to_MIPI_DPHY_CLK
Attach NONE to MIPI_DPHY_CLK.

enumerator kFRO_DIV1_to_MIPI_DPHYESC_CLK
Attach FRO_DIV1 to MIPI_DPHYESC_CLK.

enumerator kFRO_DIV16_to_MIPI_DPHYESC_CLK
Attach FRO_DIV16 to MIPI_DPHYESC_CLK.

enumerator kAUX0_PLL_to_MIPI_DPHYESC_CLK
Attach AUX0_PLL to MIPI_DPHYESC_CLK.

enumerator kAUX1_PLL_to_MIPI_DPHYESC_CLK
Attach AUX1_PLL to MIPI_DPHYESC_CLK.

enumerator kMIPI_DPHY_CLK_to_DCPIXEL_CLK
Attach MIPI_DPHY_CLK to DCPIXEL_CLK.

enumerator kMAIN_CLK_to_DCPIXEL_CLK
Attach MAIN_CLK to DCPIXEL_CLK.

enumerator kFRO_DIV1_to_DCPIXEL_CLK
Attach FRO_DIV1 to DCPIXEL_CLK.

enumerator kMAIN_PLL_to_DCPIXEL_CLK
Attach MAIN_PLL to DCPIXEL_CLK.

enumerator kAUX0_PLL_to_DCPIXEL_CLK
Attach AUX0_PLL to DCPIXEL_CLK.

enumerator kAUX1_PLL_to_DCPIXEL_CLK
Attach AUX1_PLL to DCPIXEL_CLK.

enumerator kNONE_to_DCPIXEL_CLK
Attach NONE to DCPIXEL_CLK.

enum _clock_div_name
Clock dividers.

Values:

enumerator kCLOCK_DivAudioPllClk
Audio Pll Clk Divider.

enumerator kCLOCK_DivMainPllClk
Main Pll Clk Divider.

enumerator kCLOCK_DivDspPllClk
Dsp Pll Clk Divider.

enumerator kCLOCK_DivAux0PllClk
Aux0 Pll Clk Divider.

enumerator kCLOCK_DivAux1PllClk
Aux1 Pll Clk Divider.

enumerator kCLOCK_DivPfc0Clk
Pfc0 Clk Divider.

enumerator kCLOCK_DivPfc1Clk
Pfc1 Clk Divider.

enumerator kCLOCK_DivSysCpuAhbClk
Sys Cpu Ahb Clk Divider.

enumerator kCLOCK_Div32KhzWakeClk
Khz Wake Clk Divider.

enumerator kCLOCK_DivSystickClk
Systick Clk Divider.

enumerator kCLOCK_DivSdio0Clk
Sdio0 Clk Divider.

enumerator kCLOCK_DivSdio1Clk
Sdio1 Clk Divider.

enumerator kCLOCK_DivFlexspi0Clk
Flexspi0 Clk Divider.

enumerator kCLOCK_DivFlexspi1Clk
Flexspi1 Clk Divider.

enumerator kCLOCK_DivUsbHsFclk
Usb Hs Fclk Divider.

enumerator kCLOCK_DivSctClk
Sct Clk Divider.

enumerator kCLOCK_DivMclkClk
Mclk Clk Divider.

enumerator kCLOCK_DivDmicClk
Dmic Clk Divider.

enumerator kCLOCK_DivPLLFRGClk
P L L F R G Clk Divider.

enumerator kCLOCK_DivFlexioClk
Flexio Clk Divider.

enumerator kCLOCK_DivI3cClk
I3c Clk Divider.

enumerator kCLOCK_DivI3cTcClk
I3c Tc Clk Divider.

enumerator kCLOCK_DivI3cSlowClk
I3c Slow Clk Divider.

enumerator kCLOCK_DivDspCpuClk
Dsp Cpu Clk Divider.

enumerator kCLOCK_DivAcmpClk
Acmp Clk Divider.

enumerator kCLOCK_DivAdcClk
Adc Clk Divider.

enumerator kCLOCK_DivLowFreqClk
Low Freq Clk Divider.

enumerator kCLOCK_DivClockOut
Clock Out Divider.

enumerator kCLOCK_DivGpuClk
Gpu Clk Divider.

enumerator kCLOCK_DivDcPixelClk
Dc Pixel Clk Divider.

enumerator kCLOCK_DivDphyClk
Dphy Clk Divider.

enumerator kCLOCK_DivDphyEscRxClk
Dphy Esc Rx Clk Divider.

enumerator kCLOCK_DivDphyEscTxClk
Dphy Esc Tx Clk Divider.

enum _sys_pll_src
SysPLL Reference Input Clock Source.

Values:

enumerator kCLOCK_SysPllFroDiv8Clk
FRO_DIV8 clock

enumerator kCLOCK_SysPllXtalIn
OSC clock

enumerator kCLOCK_SysPllNone
Gated to reduce power

enum _sys_pll_mult
SysPLL Multiplication Factor.

Values:

enumerator kCLOCK_SysPllMult16
Divide by 16

enumerator kCLOCK_SysPllMult17
Divide by 17

enumerator kCLOCK_SysPllMult18
Divide by 18

enumerator kCLOCK_SysPllMult19
Divide by 19

enumerator kCLOCK_SysPllMult20
Divide by 20

enumerator kCLOCK_SysPllMult21
Divide by 21

enumerator kCLOCK_SysPllMult22
Divide by 22

enum _audio_pll_src
AudioPll Reference Input Clock Source.

Values:

enumerator kCLOCK_AudioPllFroDiv8Clk
FRO_DIV8 clock

enumerator kCLOCK_AudioPllXtalIn
OSC clock

enumerator kCLOCK_AudioPllNone
Gated to reduce power

enum _audio_pll_mult
AudioPll Multiplication Factor.

Values:

enumerator kCLOCK_AudioPllMult16
Divide by 16

enumerator kCLOCK_AudioPllMult17
Divide by 17

enumerator kCLOCK_AudioPllMult18
Divide by 18

enumerator kCLOCK_AudioPllMult19
Divide by 19

enumerator kCLOCK_AudioPllMult20
Divide by 20

enumerator kCLOCK_AudioPllMult21
Divide by 21

enumerator kCLOCK_AudioPllMult22
Divide by 22

enum _clock_fro_output_en
FRO output enable.

Values:

enumerator kCLOCK_FroDiv1OutEn
Enable Fro Div1 output.

enumerator kCLOCK_FroDiv2OutEn
Enable Fro Div2 output.

enumerator kCLOCK_FroDiv4OutEn
Enable Fro Div4 output.

enumerator kCLOCK_FroDiv8OutEn
Enable Fro Div8 output.

enumerator kCLOCK_FroDiv16OutEn
Enable Fro Div16 output.

enumerator kCLOCK_FroAllOutEn

enum _clock_fro_freq
FRO frequence configuration.

Values:

enumerator kCLOCK_Fro192M
192MHz FRO clock.

enumerator kCLOCK_Fro96M
96MHz FRO clock.

typedef enum *_clock_ip_name* clock_ip_name_t
Clock gate name used for CLOCK_EnableClock/CLOCK_DisableClock.

typedef enum *_clock_name* clock_name_t
Clock name used to get clock frequency.

typedef enum *_clock_pfd* clock_pfd_t
PLL PFD clock name.

typedef enum *_clock_attach_id* clock_attach_id_t
The enumerator of clock attach Id.

typedef enum *_clock_div_name* clock_div_name_t
Clock dividers.

typedef enum *_sys_pll_src* sys_pll_src_t
SysPLL Reference Input Clock Source.

typedef enum *_sys_pll_mult* sys_pll_mult_t
SysPLL Multiplication Factor.

typedef struct *_clock_sys_pll_config* clock_sys_pll_config_t
PLL configuration for SYSPLL.

typedef enum *_audio_pll_src* audio_pll_src_t
AudioPll Reference Input Clock Source.

typedef enum *_audio_pll_mult* audio_pll_mult_t
AudioPll Multiplication Factor.

typedef struct *_clock_audio_pll_config* clock_audio_pll_config_t
PLL configuration for SYSPLL.

typedef struct *_clock_frg_clk_config* clock_frg_clk_config_t
PLL configuration for FRG.

typedef enum *_clock_fro_output_en* clock_fro_output_en_t
FRO output enable.

typedef enum *_clock_fro_freq* clock_fro_freq_t
FRO frequence configuration.

volatile uint32_t g_xtalFreq

External XTAL (SYSOSC) clock frequency.

The XTAL (YSOSC) clock frequency in Hz, when the clock is setup, use the function CLOCK_SetXtalFreq to set the value in to clock driver. For example, if XTAL is 16MHz,

```
CLOCK_SetXtalFreq(160000000);
```

volatile uint32_t g_clkinFreq

External CLK_IN pin clock frequency (clkin) clock frequency.

The CLK_IN pin (clkin) clock frequency in Hz, when the clock is setup, use the function CLOCK_SetClkinFreq to set the value in to clock driver. For example, if CLK_IN is 16MHz,

```
CLOCK_SetClkinFreq(160000000);
```

volatile uint32_t g_mclkFreq

External MCLK IN clock frequency.

The MCLK IN clock frequency in Hz, when the clock is setup, use the function CLOCK_SetMclkFreq to set the value in to clock driver. For example, if MCLK IN is 16MHz,

```
CLOCK_SetMclkFreq(160000000);
```

static inline void CLOCK_EnableClock(*clock_ip_name_t* clk)

static inline void CLOCK_DisableClock(*clock_ip_name_t* clk)

void CLOCK_AttachClk(*clock_attach_id_t* connection)

Configure the clock selection muxes.

Parameters

- connection – : Clock to be configured.

Returns

Nothing

void CLOCK_SetClkDiv(*clock_div_name_t* div_name, uint32_t divider)

Setup peripheral clock dividers.

Parameters

- div_name – : Clock divider name
- divider – : Value to be divided. Divided clock frequency = Undivided clock frequency / divider.

Returns

Nothing

uint32_t CLOCK_GetFreq(*clock_name_t* clockName)

Return Frequency of selected clock.

Returns

Frequency of selected clock

uint32_t CLOCK_GetFRGClock(uint32_t id)

Return Input frequency for the Fractional baud rate generator.

Returns

Input Frequency for FRG

void CLOCK_SetFRGClock(const *clock_frg_clk_config_t* *config)

Set output of the Fractional baud rate generator.

Parameters

- config – : Configuration to set to FRGn clock.

uint32_t CLOCK_GetSysPllFreq(void)

Return Frequency of SYSPLL.

Returns

Frequency of SYSPLL

uint32_t CLOCK_GetSysPfdFreq(*clock_pfd_t* pfd)

Get current output frequency of specific System PLL PFD.

Parameters

- pfd – : pfd name to get frequency.

Returns

Frequency of SYSPLL PFD.

uint32_t CLOCK_GetAudioPllFreq(void)

Return Frequency of AUDIO PLL.

Returns

Frequency of AUDIO PLL

uint32_t CLOCK_GetAudioPfdFreq(*clock_pfd_t* pfd)

Get current output frequency of specific Audio PLL PFD.

Parameters

- pfd – : pfd name to get frequency.

Returns

Frequency of AUDIO PLL PFD.

uint32_t CLOCK_GetMainClkFreq(void)

Return Frequency of main clk.

Returns

Frequency of main clk

uint32_t CLOCK_GetDspMainClkFreq(void)

Return Frequency of DSP main clk.

Returns

Frequency of DSP main clk

uint32_t CLOCK_GetAcmpClkFreq(void)

Return Frequency of ACMP clk.

Returns

Frequency of ACMP clk

uint32_t CLOCK_GetDmicClkFreq(void)

Return Frequency of DMIC clk.

Returns

Frequency of DMIC clk

uint32_t CLOCK_GetUsbClkFreq(void)

Return Frequency of USB clk.

Returns

Frequency of USB clk

uint32_t CLOCK_GetSdioClkFreq(uint32_t id)

Return Frequency of SDIO clk.

Parameters

- id – : SDIO index to get frequency.

Returns

Frequency of SDIO clk

uint32_t CLOCK_GetI3cClkFreq(void)

Return Frequency of I3C clk.

Returns

Frequency of I3C clk

uint32_t CLOCK_GetSystickClkFreq(void)

Return Frequency of systick clk.

Returns

Frequency of systick clk

uint32_t CLOCK_GetWdtClkFreq(uint32_t id)

Return Frequency of WDT clk.

Parameters

- id – : WDT index to get frequency.

Returns

Frequency of WDT clk

uint32_t CLOCK_GetMclkClkFreq(void)

Return output Frequency of mclk.

Returns

Frequency of mclk output clk

uint32_t CLOCK_GetSctClkFreq(void)

Return Frequency of sct.

Returns

Frequency of sct clk

void CLOCK_EnableSysOscClk(bool enable, bool enableLowPower, uint32_t delay_us)

Enable/Disable sys osc clock from external crystal clock.

Parameters

- enable – : true to enable system osc clock, false to bypass system osc.
- enableLowPower – : true to enable low power mode, false to enable high gain mode.
- delay_us – : Delay time after OSC power up.

void CLOCK_EnableFroClk(uint32_t divOutEnable)

Enable/Disable FRO clock output.

Parameters

- divOutEnable – : Or'ed value of clock_fro_output_en_t to enable certain clock freq output.

void CLOCK_EnableFroClkFreq(uint32_t targetFreq, uint32_t divOutEnable)

Enable/Disable FRO clock output with specified frequency using the FRO Tuner.

Parameters

- targetFreq – target fro frequency.
- divOutEnable – Or'ed value of clock_fro_output_en_t to enable certain clock freq output.

void CLOCK_EnableFroClkRange(*clock_fro_freq_t* froFreq, uint32_t divOutEnable)

Enable/Disable FRO192M or FRO96M clock output.

Parameters

- froFreq – : target fro frequency.
- divOutEnable – : Or'ed value of clock_fro_output_en_t to enable certain clock freq output.

void CLOCK_EnableLpOscClk(void)

Enable LPOSC 1MHz clock.

static inline uint32_t CLOCK_GetXtalInClkFreq(void)

Return Frequency of sys osc Clock.

Returns

Frequency of sys osc Clock. Or CLK_IN pin frequency.

static inline uint32_t CLOCK_GetMclkInClkFreq(void)

Return Frequency of MCLK Input Clock.

Returns

Frequency of MCLK input Clock.

static inline uint32_t CLOCK_GetLpOscFreq(void)

Return Frequency of Lower power osc.

Returns

Frequency of LPOSC

static inline uint32_t CLOCK_GetOsc32KFreq(void)

Return Frequency of 32kHz osc.

Returns

Frequency of 32kHz osc

static inline void CLOCK_EnableOsc32K(bool enable)

Enables and disables 32kHz osc.

Parameters

- enable – : true to enable 32k osc clock, false to disable clock

static inline uint32_t CLOCK_GetWakeClk32KFreq(void)

Return Frequency of 32khz wake clk.

Returns

Frequency of 32kHz wake clk

static inline void CLOCK_SetXtalFreq(uint32_t freq)

Set the XTALIN (system OSC) frequency based on board setting.

Parameters

- freq – : The XTAL input clock frequency in Hz.

static inline void CLOCK_SetClkinFreq(uint32_t freq)

Set the CLKIN (CLKIN pin) frequency based on board setting.

Parameters

- freq – : The CLK_IN pin input clock frequency in Hz.

static inline void CLOCK_SetMclkFreq(uint32_t freq)

Set the MCLK IN frequency based on board setting.

Parameters

- freq – : The MCLK input clock frequency in Hz.

uint32_t CLOCK_GetFlexcommClkFreq(uint32_t id)

Return Frequency of Flexcomm functional Clock.

Parameters

- id – : flexcomm index to get frequency.

Returns

Frequency of Flexcomm functional Clock

uint32_t CLOCK_GetFlexioClkFreq(void)

Return Frequency of Flexio functional Clock.

Returns

Frequency of Flexcomm functional Clock

uint32_t CLOCK_GetCtimerClkFreq(uint32_t id)

Return Frequency of Ctimer Clock.

Parameters

- id – : ctimer index to get frequency.

Returns

Frequency of Ctimer Clock

uint32_t CLOCK_GetClockOutClkFreq(void)

Return Frequency of ClockOut.

Returns

Frequency of ClockOut

uint32_t CLOCK_GetAdcClkFreq(void)

Return Frequency of Adc Clock.

Returns

Frequency of Adc Clock.

uint32_t CLOCK_GetFlexspiClkFreq(uint32_t id)

Return Frequency of FLEXSPI Clock.

Parameters

- id – : flexspi index to get frequency.

Returns

Frequency of Flexspi.

uint32_t CLOCK_GetGpuClkFreq(void)

Return Frequency of GPU functional Clock.

Returns

Frequency of GPU functional Clock

uint32_t CLOCK_GetDcPixelClkFreq(void)

Return Frequency of DCNano Pixel functional Clock.

Returns

Frequency of DCNano pixel functional Clock

uint32_t CLOCK_GetMipiDphyClkFreq(void)

Return Frequency of MIPI DPHY functional Clock.

Returns

Frequency of MIPI DPHY functional Clock

uint32_t CLOCK_GetMipiDphyEscRxClkFreq(void)

Return Frequency of MIPI DPHY Esc RX functional Clock.

Returns

Frequency of MIPI DPHY Esc RX functional Clock

uint32_t CLOCK_GetMipiDphyEscTxClkFreq(void)

Return Frequency of MIPI DPHY Esc Tx functional Clock.

Returns

Frequency of MIPI DPHY Esc Tx functional Clock

void CLOCK_InitSysPll(const *clock_sys_pll_config_t* *config)

Initialize the System PLL.

Parameters

- config – : Configuration to set to PLL.

static inline void CLOCK_DeinitSysPll(void)

brief Deinit the System PLL. param none.

status_t CLOCK_InitSysPfd(*clock_pfd_t* pfd, uint8_t divider)

Initialize the System PLL PFD.

Note: It is recommended that PFD settings are kept between 12-35.

Parameters

- pfd – : Which PFD clock to enable.
- divider – : The PFD divider value.

Returns

kStatus_Success if successfully, kStatus_Timeout if timeout happen.

static inline void CLOCK_DeinitSysPfd(*clock_pfd_t* pfd)

brief Disable the audio PLL PFD. param pfd : Which PFD clock to disable.

void CLOCK_InitAudioPll(const *clock_audio_pll_config_t* *config)

Initialize the audio PLL.

Parameters

- config – : Configuration to set to PLL.

static inline void CLOCK_DeinitAudioPll(void)

brief Deinit the Audio PLL. param none.

status_t CLOCK_InitAudioPfd(*clock_pfd_t* pfd, uint8_t divider)

Initialize the audio PLL PFD.

Note: It is recommended that PFD settings are kept between 12-35.

Parameters

- pfd – : Which PFD clock to enable.

- divider – : The PFD divider value.

Returns
kStatus_Success if successfully, kStatus_Timeout if timeout happen.

static inline void CLOCK_DeinitAudioPfd(uint32_t pfd)

brief Disable the audio PLL PFD. param pfd : Which PFD clock to disable.

status_t CLOCK_FroTuneToFreq(uint32_t targetFreq)

Tune the FRO to the specified frequency.

Note:

This API can be used to tune the FRO to an accurate frequency periodicly using the reference clock(crystal

oscillator). Make sure the reference clock is enabled before calling this API and the reference clock can be disabled after this API call.

Parameters

- targetFreq – The target frequency.

Return values

- true – The FRO is tuned successfully.
- false – The FRO is not tuned to the target frequency.

void CLOCK_EnableFroTuning(bool enable)

Enable/Disable FRO tuning. On enable, the function will wait until FRO is close to the target frequency.

void CLOCK_EnableUsbHs0DeviceClock(*clock_attach_id_t* src, uint8_t divider)

Enable USB HS device clock.

This function enables USB HS device clock.

void CLOCK_DisableUsbHs0DeviceClock(void)

Disable USB HS device clock.

This function disables USB HS device clock.

void CLOCK_EnableUsbHs0HostClock(*clock_attach_id_t* src, uint8_t divider)

Enable USB HS host clock.

This function enables USB HS host clock.

void CLOCK_DisableUsbHs0HostClock(void)

Disable USB HS host clock.

This function disables USB HS host clock.

bool CLOCK_EnableUsbHs0PhyPllClock(*clock_attach_id_t* src, uint32_t freq)

brief Enable USB hs0PhyPll clock.

param src USB HS clock source. param freq The frequency specified by src. retval true The clock is set successfully. retval false The clock source is invalid to get proper USB HS clock.

void CLOCK_DisableUsbHs0PhyPllClock(void)

Disable USB hs0PhyPll clock.

This function disables USB hs0PhyPll clock.

FSL_CLOCK_DRIVER_VERSION
: CLOCK driver version 2.7.1.

SDK_DEVICE_MAXIMUM_CPU_CLOCK_FREQUENCY

CLOCK_GetFlexCommClkFreq

CLOCK_GetCTimerClkFreq

MIPI_DSI_HOST_CLOCKS
: Clock ip name array for MIPI DSI.

LCDIF_CLOCKS
: Clock ip name array for LCDIF.

SCT_CLOCKS
: Clock ip name array for SCT.

USBD_CLOCKS
: Clock ip name array for USBD.

FLEXSPI_CLOCKS
: Clock ip name array for FlexSPI.

CACHE64_CLOCKS
: Clock ip name array for Cache64.

TRNG_CLOCKS
: Clock ip name array for RNG.

PUF_CLOCKS
: Clock ip name array for PUF.

HASHCRYPT_CLOCKS
: Clock ip name array for HashCrypt.

CASPER_CLOCKS
: Clock ip name array for Casper.

POWERQUAD_CLOCKS
: Clock ip name array for Powerquad.

LPADC_CLOCKS
: Clock ip name array for ADC.

CMP_CLOCKS
: Clock ip name array for ACMP.

USDHC_CLOCKS
: Clock ip name array for uSDHC.

WWDT_CLOCKS
: Clock ip name array for WWDT.

UTICK_CLOCKS
: Clock ip name array for UTICK.

FLEXIO_CLOCKS
: Clock ip name array for FlexIO.

OSTIMER_CLOCKS
: Clock ip name array for OSTimer.

FLEXCOMM_CLOCKS
: Clock ip name array for FLEXCOMM.

USART_CLOCKS
: Clock ip name array for LPUART.

I2C_CLOCKS
: Clock ip name array for I2C.

SPI_CLOCKS
: Clock ip name array for SPI.

I2S_CLOCKS
: Clock ip name array for FLEXI2S.

DMIC_CLOCKS
: Clock ip name array for DMIC.

SEMA42_CLOCKS
: Clock ip name array for SEMA.

MU_CLOCKS
: Clock ip name array for MUA.

DMA_CLOCKS
: Clock ip name array for DMA.

CRC_CLOCKS
: Clock ip name array for CRC.

GPIO_CLOCKS
: Clock ip name array for GPIO.

PINT_CLOCKS
: Clock ip name array for PINT.

I3C_CLOCKS
: Clock ip name array for I3C.

MRT_CLOCKS
: Clock ip name array for MRT.

RTC_CLOCKS
: Clock ip name array for RTC.

CTIMER_CLOCKS
: Clock ip name array for CT32B.

CLK_GATE_REG_OFFSET_SHIFT
: Clock gate name used for CLOCK_EnableClock/CLOCK_DisableClock.

CLK_GATE_REG_OFFSET_MASK

CLK_GATE_BIT_SHIFT_SHIFT

CLK_GATE_BIT_SHIFT_MASK

CLK_GATE_DEFINE(reg_offset, bit_shift)

CLK_GATE_ABSTRACT_REG_OFFSET(x)

CLK_GATE_ABSTRACT_BITS_SHIFT(x)

CLK_CTL0_PSCCTL0

CLK_CTL0_PSCCTL1

CLK_CTL0_PSCCTL2

CLK_CTL1_PSCCTL0

CLK_CTL1_PSCCTL1

CLK_CTL1_PSCCTL2

SYSPLL0CLKSEL_OFFSET

Clock Mux Switches The encoding is as follows each connection identified is 32bits wide starting from LSB upwards.

[31 30 29:28 27:25 24:14 13:11 10:0] [CLKCTL index]:[FRODIVSEL onoff]:[FRODIVSEL]:[MUXB choice]:[MUXB offset]:[MUXA choice]:[MUXA offset] FRODIVSEL onoff '1' means need to set FRODIVSEL. MUX offset 0 means end of descriptor.

MAINCLKSELA_OFFSET

MAINCLKSELB_OFFSET

FLEXSPI0FCLKSEL_OFFSET

FLEXSPI1FCLKSEL_OFFSET

SCTFCLKSEL_OFFSET

USBHSFCLKSEL_OFFSET

SDIO0FCLKSEL_OFFSET

SDIO1FCLKSEL_OFFSET

ADC0FCLKSEL0_OFFSET

ADC0FCLKSEL1_OFFSET

UTICKFCLKSEL_OFFSET

WDT0FCLKSEL_OFFSET

A32KHZWAKECLKSEL_OFFSET

SYSTICKFCLKSEL_OFFSET

DPHYCLKSEL_OFFSET

DPHYESCCLKSEL_OFFSET

GPUCLKSEL_OFFSET

DCPIXELCLKSEL_OFFSET

AUDIOPLL0CLKSEL_OFFSET

DSPCPUCLKSELA_OFFSET

DSPCPUCLKSELB_OFFSET

OSEVENTTFCLKSEL_OFFSET

FC0FCLKSEL_OFFSET

FC1FCLKSEL_OFFSET

FC2FCLKSEL_OFFSET

FC3FCLKSEL_OFFSET

FC4FCLKSEL_OFFSET

FC5FCLKSEL_OFFSET

FC6FCLKSEL_OFFSET

FC7FCLKSEL_OFFSET

FC8FCLKSEL_OFFSET

FC9FCLKSEL_OFFSET

FC10FCLKSEL_OFFSET

FC11FCLKSEL_OFFSET

FC12FCLKSEL_OFFSET

FC13FCLKSEL_OFFSET

FC14FCLKSEL_OFFSET

FC15FCLKSEL_OFFSET

FC16FCLKSEL_OFFSET

FLEXIOCLKSEL_OFFSET

DMIC0FCLKSEL_OFFSET

CT32BIT0FCLKSEL_OFFSET

CT32BIT1FCLKSEL_OFFSET

CT32BIT2FCLKSEL_OFFSET

CT32BIT3FCLKSEL_OFFSET

CT32BIT4FCLKSEL_OFFSET

AUDIOMCLKSEL_OFFSET

CLKOUTSEL0_OFFSET

CLKOUTSEL1_OFFSET

I3C01FCLKSEL_OFFSET

I3C01FCLKSTCSEL_OFFSET

I3C01FCLKSTSTCLKSEL_OFFSET

WDT1FCLKSEL_OFFSET

ACMP0FCLKSEL_OFFSET

LOWFREQCLKDIV_OFFSET

MAINPLLCLKDIV_OFFSET

DSPPLLCLKDIV_OFFSET

AUX0PLLCLKDIV_OFFSET

AUX1PLLCLKDIV_OFFSET

SYSCPUAHBCLKDIV_OFFSET

PFC0CLKDIV_OFFSET

PFC1CLKDIV_OFFSET

FLEXSPI0FCLKDIV_OFFSET

FLEXSPI1FCLKDIV_OFFSET

SCTFCLKDIV_OFFSET

USBHSFCLKDIV_OFFSET

SDIO0FCLKDIV_OFFSET

SDIO1FCLKDIV_OFFSET

ADC0FCLKDIV_OFFSET

A32KHZWAKECLKDIV_OFFSET

SYSTICKFCLKDIV_OFFSET

DPHYCLKDIV_OFFSET

DPHYESCRXCLKDIV_OFFSET

DPHYESCTXCLKDIV_OFFSET

GPUCLKDIV_OFFSET

DCPIXELCLKDIV_OFFSET

AUDIOPLLCLKDIV_OFFSET

DSPCPUCLKDIV_OFFSET

FLEXIOCLKDIV_OFFSET

FRGPLLCLKDIV_OFFSET

DMIC0FCLKDIV_OFFSET

AUDIOMCLKDIV_OFFSET

CLKOUTFCLKDIV_OFFSET

I3C01FCLKSTCDIV_OFFSET

I3C01FCLKSDIV_OFFSET

I3C01FCLKDIV_OFFSET

ACMP0FCLKDIV_OFFSET

CLKCTL0_TUPLE_MUXA(reg, choice)

CLKCTL0_TUPLE_MUXB(reg, choice)

CLKCTL1_TUPLE_MUXA(reg, choice)

CLKCTL1_TUPLE_MUXB(reg, choice)

CLKCTL_TUPLE_FRODIVSEL(choice)

CLKCTL_TUPLE_REG(base, tuple)

CLKCTL_TUPLE_SEL(tuple)

Values:

enumerator kCLOCK_FrgMainClk
Main System clock

enumerator kCLOCK_FrgPllDiv
Main pll clock divider

enumerator kCLOCK_FrgFroDiv4
FRO_DIV4

sys_pll_src_t sys_pll_src
Reference Input Clock Source

uint32_t numerator
30 bit numerator of fractional loop divider.

uint32_t denominator
30 bit numerator of fractional loop divider.

sys_pll_mult_t sys_pll_mult
Multiplication Factor

audio_pll_src_t audio_pll_src
Reference Input Clock Source

uint32_t numerator
30 bit numerator of fractional loop divider.

uint32_t denominator
30 bit numerator of fractional loop divider.

audio_pll_mult_t audio_pll_mult
Multiplication Factor

uint8_t num
FRG clock, [0 - 16]: Flexcomm, [17]: Flexio

enum *_clock_frg_clk_config* sfg_clock_src

uint8_t divider
Denominator of the fractional divider.

uint8_t mult
Numerator of the fractional divider.

struct _clock_sys_pll_config
#include <fsl_clock.h> PLL configuration for SYSPLL.

struct _clock_audio_pll_config
#include <fsl_clock.h> PLL configuration for SYSPLL.

struct _clock_frg_clk_config
#include <fsl_clock.h> PLL configuration for FRG.

2.7 CRC: Cyclic Redundancy Check Driver

FSL_CRC_DRIVER_VERSION

CRC driver version. Version 2.1.1.

Current version: 2.1.1

Change log:

- Version 2.0.0
  - initial version
- Version 2.0.1
  - add explicit type cast when writing to WR_DATA
- Version 2.0.2
  - Fix MISRA issue
- Version 2.1.0
  - Add CRC_WriteSeed function
- Version 2.1.1
  - Fix MISRA issue

enum _crc_polynomial

CRC polynomials to use.

Values:

enumerator kCRC_Polynomial_CRC_CCITT

x^16+x^12+x^5+1

enumerator kCRC_Polynomial_CRC_16

x^16+x^15+x^2+1

enumerator kCRC_Polynomial_CRC_32

x^32+x^26+x^23+x^22+x^16+x^12+x^11+x^10+x^8+x^7+x^5+x^4+x^2+x+1

typedef enum *_crc_polynomial* crc_polynomial_t

CRC polynomials to use.

typedef struct *_crc_config* crc_config_t

CRC protocol configuration.

This structure holds the configuration for the CRC protocol.

void CRC_Init(CRC_Type *base, const *crc_config_t* *config)

Enables and configures the CRC peripheral module.

This functions enables the CRC peripheral clock in the LPC SYSCON block. It also configures the CRC engine and starts checksum computation by writing the seed.

Parameters

- base – CRC peripheral address.
- config – CRC module configuration structure.

static inline void CRC_Deinit(CRC_Type *base)

Disables the CRC peripheral module.

This functions disables the CRC peripheral clock in the LPC SYSCON block.

Parameters

- base – CRC peripheral address.

void CRC_Reset(CRC_Type *base)

resets CRC peripheral module.

Parameters

- base – CRC peripheral address.

void CRC_WriteSeed(CRC_Type *base, uint32_t seed)

Write seed to CRC peripheral module.

Parameters

- base – CRC peripheral address.
- seed – CRC Seed value.

void CRC_GetDefaultConfig(*crc_config_t* *config)

Loads default values to CRC protocol configuration structure.

Loads default values to CRC protocol configuration structure. The default values are:

```
config->polynomial = kCRC_Polynomial_CRC_CCITT;
config->reverseIn = false;
config->complementIn = false;
config->reverseOut = false;
config->complementOut = false;
config->seed = 0xFFFFU;
```

Parameters

- config – CRC protocol configuration structure

void CRC_GetConfig(CRC_Type *base, *crc_config_t* *config)

Loads actual values configured in CRC peripheral to CRC protocol configuration structure.

The values, including seed, can be used to resume CRC calculation later.

Parameters

- base – CRC peripheral address.
- config – CRC protocol configuration structure

void CRC_WriteData(CRC_Type *base, const uint8_t *data, size_t dataSize)

Writes data to the CRC module.

Writes input data buffer bytes to CRC data register.

Parameters

- base – CRC peripheral address.
- data – Input data stream, MSByte in data[0].
- dataSize – Size of the input data buffer in bytes.

static inline uint32_t CRC_Get32bitResult(CRC_Type *base)

Reads 32-bit checksum from the CRC module.

Reads CRC data register.

Parameters

- base – CRC peripheral address.

Returns

final 32-bit checksum, after configured bit reverse and complement operations.

static inline uint16_t CRC_Get16bitResult(CRC_Type *base)

Reads 16-bit checksum from the CRC module.

Reads CRC data register.

Parameters

- base – CRC peripheral address.

Returns

final 16-bit checksum, after configured bit reverse and complement operations.

CRC_DRIVER_USE_CRC16_CCITT_FALSE_AS_DEFAULT

Default configuration structure filled by CRC_GetDefaultConfig(). Uses CRC-16/CCITT-FALSE as default.

struct _crc_config

#include <fsl_crc.h> CRC protocol configuration.

This structure holds the configuration for the CRC protocol.

Public Members

crc_polynomial_t polynomial

CRC polynomial.

bool reverseIn

Reverse bits on input.

bool complementIn

Perform 1's complement on input.

bool reverseOut

Reverse bits on output.

bool complementOut

Perform 1's complement on output.

uint32_t seed

Starting checksum value.

2.8 CTIMER: Standard counter/timers

void CTIMER_Init(CTIMER_Type *base, const *ctimer_config_t* *config)

Ungates the clock and configures the peripheral for basic operation.

Note: This API should be called at the beginning of the application before using the driver.

Parameters

- base – Ctimer peripheral base address
- config – Pointer to the user configuration structure.

void CTIMER_Deinit(CTIMER_Type *base)

Gates the timer clock.

Parameters

- base – Ctimer peripheral base address

void CTIMER_GetDefaultConfig(*ctimer_config_t* *config)

Fills in the timers configuration structure with the default settings.

The default values are:

```
config->mode = kCTIMER_TimerMode;
config->input = kCTIMER_Capture_0;
config->prescale = 0;
```

Parameters

- config – Pointer to the user configuration structure.

status_t CTIMER_SetupPwmPeriod(CTIMER_Type *base, const *ctimer_match_t* pwmPeriodChannel, *ctimer_match_t* matchChannel, uint32_t pwmPeriod, uint32_t pulsePeriod, bool enableInt)

Configures the PWM signal parameters.

Enables PWM mode on the match channel passed in and will then setup the match value and other match parameters to generate a PWM signal. This function can manually assign the specified channel to set the PWM cycle.

Note: When setting PWM output from multiple output pins, all should use the same PWM period

---

Parameters

- base – Ctimer peripheral base address
- pwmPeriodChannel – Specify the channel to control the PWM period
- matchChannel – Match pin to be used to output the PWM signal
- pwmPeriod – PWM period match value
- pulsePeriod – Pulse width match value
- enableInt – Enable interrupt when the timer value reaches the match value of the PWM pulse, if it is 0 then no interrupt will be generated.

Returns

kStatus_Success on success kStatus_Fail If matchChannel is equal to pwmPeriodChannel; this channel is reserved to set the PWM cycle If PWM pulse width register value is larger than 0xFFFFFFFF.

status_t CTIMER_SetupPwm(CTIMER_Type *base, const *ctimer_match_t* pwmPeriodChannel, *ctimer_match_t* matchChannel, uint8_t dutyCyclePercent, uint32_t pwmFreq_Hz, uint32_t srcClock_Hz, bool enableInt)

Configures the PWM signal parameters.

Enables PWM mode on the match channel passed in and will then setup the match value and other match parameters to generate a PWM signal. This function can manually assign the specified channel to set the PWM cycle.

Note: When setting PWM output from multiple output pins, all should use the same PWM frequency. Please use CTIMER_SetupPwmPeriod to set up the PWM with high resolution.

Parameters

- base – Ctimer peripheral base address
- pwmPeriodChannel – Specify the channel to control the PWM period
- matchChannel – Match pin to be used to output the PWM signal
- dutyCyclePercent – PWM pulse width; the value should be between 0 to 100
- pwmFreq_Hz – PWM signal frequency in Hz
- srcClock_Hz – Timer counter clock in Hz
- enableInt – Enable interrupt when the timer value reaches the match value of the PWM pulse, if it is 0 then no interrupt will be generated.

static inline void CTIMER_UpdatePwmPulsePeriod(CTIMER_Type *base, *ctimer_match_t* matchChannel, uint32_t pulsePeriod)

Updates the pulse period of an active PWM signal.

Parameters

- base – Ctimer peripheral base address
- matchChannel – Match pin to be used to output the PWM signal
- pulsePeriod – New PWM pulse width match value

status_t CTIMER_UpdatePwmDutycycle(CTIMER_Type *base, const *ctimer_match_t* pwmPeriodChannel, *ctimer_match_t* matchChannel, uint8_t dutyCyclePercent)

Updates the duty cycle of an active PWM signal.

Note: Please use CTIMER_SetupPwmPeriod to update the PWM with high resolution. This function can manually assign the specified channel to set the PWM cycle.

Parameters

- base – Ctimer peripheral base address
- pwmPeriodChannel – Specify the channel to control the PWM period
- matchChannel – Match pin to be used to output the PWM signal
- dutyCyclePercent – New PWM pulse width; the value should be between 0 to 100

Returns

kStatus_Success on success kStatus_Fail If PWM pulse width register value is larger than 0xFFFFFFFF.

static inline void CTIMER_EnableInterrupts(CTIMER_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Enables the selected Timer interrupts.

Parameters

- base – Ctimer peripheral base address
- mask – The interrupts to enable. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration ctimer_interrupt_enable_t

static inline void CTIMER_DisableInterrupts(CTIMER_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Disables the selected Timer interrupts.

Parameters

- base – Ctimer peripheral base address
- mask – The interrupts to enable. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration ctimer_interrupt_enable_t

static inline uint32_t CTIMER_GetEnabledInterrupts(CTIMER_Type *base)

Gets the enabled Timer interrupts.

Parameters

- base – Ctimer peripheral base address

Returns

The enabled interrupts. This is the logical OR of members of the enumeration ctimer_interrupt_enable_t

static inline uint32_t CTIMER_GetStatusFlags(CTIMER_Type *base)

Gets the Timer status flags.

Parameters

- base – Ctimer peripheral base address

Returns

The status flags. This is the logical OR of members of the enumeration ctimer_status_flags_t

static inline void CTIMER_ClearStatusFlags(CTIMER_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Clears the Timer status flags.

Parameters

- base – Ctimer peripheral base address
- mask – The status flags to clear. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration ctimer_status_flags_t

static inline void CTIMER_StartTimer(CTIMER_Type *base)

Starts the Timer counter.

Parameters

- base – Ctimer peripheral base address

static inline void CTIMER_StopTimer(CTIMER_Type *base)

Stops the Timer counter.

Parameters

- base – Ctimer peripheral base address

FSL_CTIMER_DRIVER_VERSION

Version 2.3.3

enum _ctimer_capture_channel

List of Timer capture channels.

Values:

enumerator kCTIMER_Capture_0

Timer capture channel 0

enumerator kCTIMER_Capture_1
Timer capture channel 1

enumerator kCTIMER_Capture_3
Timer capture channel 3

enum _ctimer_capture_edge
List of capture edge options.

Values:

enumerator kCTIMER_Capture_RiseEdge
Capture on rising edge

enumerator kCTIMER_Capture_FallEdge
Capture on falling edge

enumerator kCTIMER_Capture_BothEdge
Capture on rising and falling edge

enum _ctimer_match
List of Timer match registers.

Values:

enumerator kCTIMER_Match_0
Timer match register 0

enumerator kCTIMER_Match_1
Timer match register 1

enumerator kCTIMER_Match_2
Timer match register 2

enumerator kCTIMER_Match_3
Timer match register 3

enum _ctimer_external_match
List of external match.

Values:

enumerator kCTIMER_External_Match_0
External match 0

enumerator kCTIMER_External_Match_1
External match 1

enumerator kCTIMER_External_Match_2
External match 2

enumerator kCTIMER_External_Match_3
External match 3

enum _ctimer_match_output_control
List of output control options.

Values:

enumerator kCTIMER_Output_NoAction
No action is taken

enumerator kCTIMER_Output_Clear
Clear the EM bit/output to 0

enumerator kCTIMER_Output_Set
Set the EM bit/output to 1

enumerator kCTIMER_Output_Toggle
Toggle the EM bit/output

enum _ctimer_timer_mode
List of Timer modes.

Values:

enumerator kCTIMER_TimerMode

enumerator kCTIMER_IncreaseOnRiseEdge

enumerator kCTIMER_IncreaseOnFallEdge

enumerator kCTIMER_IncreaseOnBothEdge

enum _ctimer_interrupt_enable
List of Timer interrupts.

Values:

enumerator kCTIMER_Match0InterruptEnable
Match 0 interrupt

enumerator kCTIMER_Match1InterruptEnable
Match 1 interrupt

enumerator kCTIMER_Match2InterruptEnable
Match 2 interrupt

enumerator kCTIMER_Match3InterruptEnable
Match 3 interrupt

enum _ctimer_status_flags
List of Timer flags.

Values:

enumerator kCTIMER_Match0Flag
Match 0 interrupt flag

enumerator kCTIMER_Match1Flag
Match 1 interrupt flag

enumerator kCTIMER_Match2Flag
Match 2 interrupt flag

enumerator kCTIMER_Match3Flag
Match 3 interrupt flag

enum ctimer_callback_type_t
Callback type when registering for a callback. When registering a callback an array of function pointers is passed the size could be 1 or 8, the callback type will tell that.

Values:

enumerator kCTIMER_SingleCallback
Single Callback type where there is only one callback for the timer. based on the status flags different channels needs to be handled differently

enumerator kCTIMER_MultipleCallback

Multiple Callback type where there can be 8 valid callbacks, one per channel. for both match/capture

typedef enum *_ctimer_capture_channel* ctimer_capture_channel_t

List of Timer capture channels.

typedef enum *_ctimer_capture_edge* ctimer_capture_edge_t

List of capture edge options.

typedef enum *_ctimer_match* ctimer_match_t

List of Timer match registers.

typedef enum *_ctimer_external_match* ctimer_external_match_t

List of external match.

typedef enum *_ctimer_match_output_control* ctimer_match_output_control_t

List of output control options.

typedef enum *_ctimer_timer_mode* ctimer_timer_mode_t

List of Timer modes.

typedef enum *_ctimer_interrupt_enable* ctimer_interrupt_enable_t

List of Timer interrupts.

typedef enum *_ctimer_status_flags* ctimer_status_flags_t

List of Timer flags.

typedef void (*ctimer_callback_t)(uint32_t flags)

typedef struct *_ctimer_match_config* ctimer_match_config_t

Match configuration.

This structure holds the configuration settings for each match register.

typedef struct *_ctimer_config* ctimer_config_t

Timer configuration structure.

This structure holds the configuration settings for the Timer peripheral. To initialize this structure to reasonable defaults, call the CTIMER_GetDefaultConfig() function and pass a pointer to the configuration structure instance.

The configuration structure can be made constant so as to reside in flash.

void CTIMER_SetupMatch(CTIMER_Type *base, *ctimer_match_t* matchChannel, const *ctimer_match_config_t* *config)

Setup the match register.

User configuration is used to setup the match value and action to be taken when a match occurs.

Parameters

- base – Ctimer peripheral base address
- matchChannel – Match register to configure
- config – Pointer to the match configuration structure

uint32_t CTIMER_GetOutputMatchStatus(CTIMER_Type *base, uint32_t matchChannel)

Get the status of output match.

This function gets the status of output MAT, whether or not this output is connected to a pin. This status is driven to the MAT pins if the match function is selected via IOCON. 0 = LOW. 1 = HIGH.

Parameters

- base – Ctimer peripheral base address
- matchChannel – External match channel, user can obtain the status of multiple match channels at the same time by using the logic of "|" enumeration ctimer_external_match_t

Returns

The mask of external match channel status flags. Users need to use the _ctimer_external_match type to decode the return variables.

void CTIMER_SetupCapture(CTIMER_Type *base, *ctimer_capture_channel_t* capture, *ctimer_capture_edge_t* edge, bool enableInt)

Setup the capture.

Parameters

- base – Ctimer peripheral base address
- capture – Capture channel to configure
- edge – Edge on the channel that will trigger a capture
- enableInt – Flag to enable channel interrupts, if enabled then the registered call back is called upon capture

static inline uint32_t CTIMER_GetTimerCountValue(CTIMER_Type *base)

Get the timer count value from TC register.

Parameters

- base – Ctimer peripheral base address.

Returns

return the timer count value.

void CTIMER_RegisterCallBack(CTIMER_Type *base, *ctimer_callback_t* *cb_func, *ctimer_callback_type_t* cb_type)

Register callback.

This function configures CTimer Callback in following modes:

- Single Callback: cb_func should be pointer to callback function pointer For example: ctimer_callback_t ctimer_callback = pwm_match_callback; CTIMER_RegisterCallBack(CTIMER, &ctimer_callback, kCTIMER_SingleCallback);
- Multiple Callback: cb_func should be pointer to array of callback function pointers Each element corresponds to Interrupt Flag in IR register. For example: ctimer_callback_t ctimer_callback_table[] = { ctimer_match0_callback, NULL, NULL, ctimer_match3_callback, NULL, NULL, NULL, NULL}; CTIMER_RegisterCallBack(CTIMER, &ctimer_callback_table[0], kCTIMER_MultipleCallback);

Parameters

- base – Ctimer peripheral base address
- cb_func – Pointer to callback function pointer
- cb_type – callback function type, singular or multiple

static inline void CTIMER_Reset(CTIMER_Type *base)

Reset the counter.

The timer counter and prescale counter are reset on the next positive edge of the APB clock.

Parameters

- base – Ctimer peripheral base address

static inline void CTIMER_SetPrescale(CTIMER_Type *base, uint32_t prescale)

Setup the timer prescale value.

Specifies the maximum value for the Prescale Counter.

Parameters

- base – Ctimer peripheral base address
- prescale – Prescale value

static inline uint32_t CTIMER_GetCaptureValue(CTIMER_Type *base, *ctimer_capture_channel_t* capture)

Get capture channel value.

Get the counter/timer value on the corresponding capture channel.

Parameters

- base – Ctimer peripheral base address
- capture – Select capture channel

Returns

The timer count capture value.

static inline void CTIMER_EnableResetMatchChannel(CTIMER_Type *base, *ctimer_match_t* match, bool enable)

Enable reset match channel.

Set the specified match channel reset operation.

Parameters

- base – Ctimer peripheral base address
- match – match channel used
- enable – Enable match channel reset operation.

static inline void CTIMER_EnableStopMatchChannel(CTIMER_Type *base, *ctimer_match_t* match, bool enable)

Enable stop match channel.

Set the specified match channel stop operation.

Parameters

- base – Ctimer peripheral base address.
- match – match channel used.
- enable – Enable match channel stop operation.

static inline void CTIMER_EnableMatchChannelReload(CTIMER_Type *base, *ctimer_match_t* match, bool enable)

Enable reload channel falling edge.

Enable the specified match channel reload match shadow value.

Parameters

- base – Ctimer peripheral base address.
- match – match channel used.
- enable – Enable .

static inline void CTIMER_EnableRisingEdgeCapture(CTIMER_Type *base, *ctimer_capture_channel_t* capture, bool enable)

Enable capture channel rising edge.

Sets the specified capture channel for rising edge capture.

Parameters

- base – Ctimer peripheral base address.
- capture – capture channel used.
- enable – Enable rising edge capture.

static inline void CTIMER_EnableFallingEdgeCapture(CTIMER_Type *base, *ctimer_capture_channel_t* capture, bool enable)

Enable capture channel falling edge.

Sets the specified capture channel for falling edge capture.

Parameters

- base – Ctimer peripheral base address.
- capture – capture channel used.
- enable – Enable falling edge capture.

static inline void CTIMER_SetShadowValue(CTIMER_Type *base, *ctimer_match_t* match, uint32_t matchvalue)

Set the specified match shadow channel.

Parameters

- base – Ctimer peripheral base address.
- match – match channel used.
- matchvalue – Reload the value of the corresponding match register.

struct __ctimer_match_config

#include <fsl_ctimer.h> Match configuration.

This structure holds the configuration settings for each match register.

Public Members

uint32_t matchValue

This is stored in the match register

bool enableCounterReset

true: Match will reset the counter false: Match will not reser the counter

bool enableCounterStop

true: Match will stop the counter false: Match will not stop the counter

ctimer_match_output_control_t outControl

Action to be taken on a match on the EM bit/output

bool outPinInitState

Initial value of the EM bit/output

bool enableInterrupt

true: Generate interrupt upon match false: Do not generate interrupt on match

struct _ctimer_config

#include <fsl_ctimer.h> Timer configuration structure.

This structure holds the configuration settings for the Timer peripheral. To initialize this structure to reasonable defaults, call the CTIMER_GetDefaultConfig() function and pass a pointer to the configuration structure instance.

The configuration structure can be made constant so as to reside in flash.

Public Members

ctimer_timer_mode_t mode

Timer mode

ctimer_capture_channel_t input

Input channel to increment the timer, used only in timer modes that rely on this input signal to increment TC

uint32_t prescale

Prescale value

2.9 DMA: Direct Memory Access Controller Driver

void DMA_Init(DMA_Type *base)

Initializes DMA peripheral.

This function enable the DMA clock, set descriptor table and enable DMA peripheral.

Parameters

- base – DMA peripheral base address.

void DMA_Deinit(DMA_Type *base)

Deinitializes DMA peripheral.

This function gates the DMA clock.

Parameters

- base – DMA peripheral base address.

void DMA_InstallDescriptorMemory(DMA_Type *base, void *addr)

Install DMA descriptor memory.

This function used to register DMA descriptor memory for linked transfer, a typical case is ping pong transfer which will request more than one DMA descriptor memory space, although current DMA driver has a default DMA descriptor buffer, but it support one DMA descriptor for one channel only.

Parameters

- base – DMA base address.
- addr – DMA descriptor address

static inline bool DMA_ChannelIsActive(DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel)

Return whether DMA channel is processing transfer.

Parameters

- base – DMA peripheral base address.
- channel – DMA channel number.

Returns
True for active state, false otherwise.

static inline bool DMA_ChannelIsBusy(DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel)
Return whether DMA channel is busy.

Parameters

- base – DMA peripheral base address.
- channel – DMA channel number.

Returns
True for busy state, false otherwise.

static inline void DMA_EnableChannelInterrupts(DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel)
Enables the interrupt source for the DMA transfer.

Parameters

- base – DMA peripheral base address.
- channel – DMA channel number.

static inline void DMA_DisableChannelInterrupts(DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel)
Disables the interrupt source for the DMA transfer.

Parameters

- base – DMA peripheral base address.
- channel – DMA channel number.

static inline void DMA_EnableChannel(DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel)
Enable DMA channel.

Parameters

- base – DMA peripheral base address.
- channel – DMA channel number.

static inline void DMA_DisableChannel(DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel)
Disable DMA channel.

Parameters

- base – DMA peripheral base address.
- channel – DMA channel number.

static inline void DMA_EnableChannelPeriphRq(DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel)
Set PERIPHREQEN of channel configuration register.

Parameters

- base – DMA peripheral base address.
- channel – DMA channel number.

static inline void DMA_DisableChannelPeriphRq(DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel)
Get PERIPHREQEN value of channel configuration register.

Parameters

- base – DMA peripheral base address.
- channel – DMA channel number.

Returns
True for enabled PeriphRq, false for disabled.

void DMA_ConfigureChannelTrigger(DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel, *dma_channel_trigger_t* *trigger)

Set trigger settings of DMA channel.

Deprecated:

Do not use this function. It has been superceded by DMA_SetChannelConfig.

Parameters

- base – DMA peripheral base address.
- channel – DMA channel number.
- trigger – trigger configuration.

void DMA_SetChannelConfig(DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel, *dma_channel_trigger_t* *trigger, bool isPeriph)

set channel config.

This function provide a interface to configure channel configuration reisters.

Parameters

- base – DMA base address.
- channel – DMA channel number.
- trigger – channel configurations structure.
- isPeriph – true is periph request, false is not.

static inline uint32_t DMA_SetChannelXferConfig(bool reload, bool clrTrig, bool intA, bool intB, uint8_t width, uint8_t srcInc, uint8_t dstInc, uint32_t bytes)

DMA channel xfer transfer configurations.

Parameters

- reload – true is reload link descriptor after current exhaust, false is not
- clrTrig – true is clear trigger status, wait software trigger, false is not
- intA – enable interruptA
- intB – enable interruptB
- width – transfer width
- srcInc – source address interleave size
- dstInc – destination address interleave size
- bytes – transfer bytes

Returns

The vaule of xfer config

uint32_t DMA_GetRemainingBytes(DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel)

Gets the remaining bytes of the current DMA descriptor transfer.

Parameters

- base – DMA peripheral base address.
- channel – DMA channel number.

Returns

The number of bytes which have not been transferred yet.

static inline void DMA_SetChannelPriority(DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel, *dma_priority_t* priority)

Set priority of channel configuration register.

Parameters

- base – DMA peripheral base address.
- channel – DMA channel number.
- priority – Channel priority value.

static inline *dma_priority_t* DMA_GetChannelPriority(DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel)

Get priority of channel configuration register.

Parameters

- base – DMA peripheral base address.
- channel – DMA channel number.

Returns

Channel priority value.

static inline void DMA_SetChannelConfigValid(DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel)

Set channel configuration valid.

Parameters

- base – DMA peripheral base address.
- channel – DMA channel number.

static inline void DMA_DoChannelSoftwareTrigger(DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel)

Do software trigger for the channel.

Parameters

- base – DMA peripheral base address.
- channel – DMA channel number.

static inline void DMA_LoadChannelTransferConfig(DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel, uint32_t xfer)

Load channel transfer configurations.

Parameters

- base – DMA peripheral base address.
- channel – DMA channel number.
- xfer – transfer configurations.

void DMA_CreateDescriptor(*dma_descriptor_t* *desc, *dma_xfercfg_t* *xfercfg, void *srcAddr, void *dstAddr, void *nextDesc)

Create application specific DMA descriptor to be used in a chain in transfer.

Deprecated:

Do not use this function. It has been superceded by DMA_SetupDescriptor.

Parameters

- desc – DMA descriptor address.
- xfercfg – Transfer configuration for DMA descriptor.
- srcAddr – Address of last item to transmit

- dstAddr – Address of last item to receive.
- nextDesc – Address of next descriptor in chain.

void DMA_SetupDescriptor(*dma_descriptor_t* *desc, uint32_t xfercfg, void *srcStartAddr, void *dstStartAddr, void *nextDesc)

setup dma descriptor

Note: This function do not support configure wrap descriptor.

Parameters

- desc – DMA descriptor address.
- xfercfg – Transfer configuration for DMA descriptor.
- srcStartAddr – Start address of source address.
- dstStartAddr – Start address of destination address.
- nextDesc – Address of next descriptor in chain.

void DMA_SetupChannelDescriptor(*dma_descriptor_t* *desc, uint32_t xfercfg, void *srcStartAddr, void *dstStartAddr, void *nextDesc, *dma_burst_wrap_t* wrapType, uint32_t burstSize)

setup dma channel descriptor

Note: This function support configure wrap descriptor.

Parameters

- desc – DMA descriptor address.
- xfercfg – Transfer configuration for DMA descriptor.
- srcStartAddr – Start address of source address.
- dstStartAddr – Start address of destination address.
- nextDesc – Address of next descriptor in chain.
- wrapType – burst wrap type.
- burstSize – burst size, reference _dma_burst_size.

void DMA_LoadChannelDescriptor(DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel, *dma_descriptor_t* *descriptor)

load channel transfer decriptor.

This function can be used to load desscriptor to driver internal channel descriptor that is used to start DMA transfer, the head descriptor table is defined in DMA driver, it is useful for the case:

a. for the polling transfer, application can allocate a local descriptor memory table to prepare a descriptor firstly and then call this api to load the configured descriptor to driver descriptor table.

```
DMA_Init(DMA0);
DMA_EnableChannel(DMA0, DEMO_DMA_CHANNEL);
DMA_SetupDescriptor(desc, xferCfg, s_srcBuffer, &s_destBuffer[0], NULL);
DMA_LoadChannelDescriptor(DMA0, DEMO_DMA_CHANNEL, (dma_descriptor_t *)desc);
DMA_DoChannelSoftwareTrigger(DMA0, DEMO_DMA_CHANNEL);
while(DMA_ChannelIsBusy(DMA0, DEMO_DMA_CHANNEL))
{}
```

Parameters

- base – DMA base address.

- channel – DMA channel.
- descriptor – configured DMA descriptor.

void DMA_AbortTransfer(*dma_handle_t* *handle)

Abort running transfer by handle.

This function aborts DMA transfer specified by handle.

Parameters

- handle – DMA handle pointer.

void DMA_CreateHandle(*dma_handle_t* *handle, DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel)

Creates the DMA handle.

This function is called if using transaction API for DMA. This function initializes the internal state of DMA handle.

Parameters

- handle – DMA handle pointer. The DMA handle stores callback function and parameters.
- base – DMA peripheral base address.
- channel – DMA channel number.

void DMA_SetCallback(*dma_handle_t* *handle, *dma_callback* callback, void *userData)

Installs a callback function for the DMA transfer.

This callback is called in DMA IRQ handler. Use the callback to do something after the current major loop transfer completes.

Parameters

- handle – DMA handle pointer.
- callback – DMA callback function pointer.
- userData – Parameter for callback function.

void DMA_PrepareTransfer(*dma_transfer_config_t* *config, void *srcAddr, void *dstAddr, uint32_t byteWidth, uint32_t transferBytes, *dma_transfer_type_t* type, void *nextDesc)

Prepares the DMA transfer structure.

Deprecated:

Do not use this function. It has been superceded by DMA_PrepareChannelTransfer. This function prepares the transfer configuration structure according to the user input.

Note: The data address and the data width must be consistent. For example, if the SRC is 4 bytes, so the source address must be 4 bytes aligned, or it shall result in source address error(SAE).

Parameters

- config – The user configuration structure of type dma_transfer_t.
- srcAddr – DMA transfer source address.
- dstAddr – DMA transfer destination address.
- byteWidth – DMA transfer destination address width(bytes).
- transferBytes – DMA transfer bytes to be transferred.

- type – DMA transfer type.
- nextDesc – Chain custom descriptor to transfer.

void DMA_PrepareChannelTransfer(*dma_channel_config_t* *config, void *srcStartAddr, void *dstStartAddr, uint32_t xferCfg, *dma_transfer_type_t* type, *dma_channel_trigger_t* *trigger, void *nextDesc)

Prepare channel transfer configurations.

This function used to prepare channel transfer configurations.

Parameters

- config – Pointer to DMA channel transfer configuration structure.
- srcStartAddr – source start address.
- dstStartAddr – destination start address.
- xferCfg – xfer configuration, user can reference DMA_CHANNEL_XFER about to how to get xferCfg value.
- type – transfer type.
- trigger – DMA channel trigger configurations.
- nextDesc – address of next descriptor.

status_t DMA_SubmitTransfer(*dma_handle_t* *handle, *dma_transfer_config_t* *config)

Submits the DMA transfer request.

Deprecated:

Do not use this function. It has been superceded by DMA_SubmitChannelTransfer.

This function submits the DMA transfer request according to the transfer configuration structure. If the user submits the transfer request repeatedly, this function packs an unprocessed request as a TCD and enables scatter/gather feature to process it in the next time.

Parameters

- handle – DMA handle pointer.
- config – Pointer to DMA transfer configuration structure.

Return values

- kStatus_DMA_Success – It means submit transfer request succeed.
- kStatus_DMA_QueueFull – It means TCD queue is full. Submit transfer request is not allowed.
- kStatus_DMA_Busy – It means the given channel is busy, need to submit request later.

void DMA_SubmitChannelTransferParameter(*dma_handle_t* *handle, uint32_t xferCfg, void *srcStartAddr, void *dstStartAddr, void *nextDesc)

Submit channel transfer paramter directly.

This function used to configue channel head descriptor that is used to start DMA transfer, the head descriptor table is defined in DMA driver, it is useful for the case:

a. for the single transfer, application doesn't need to allocate descriptor table, the head descriptor can be used for it.

```
  DMA_SetChannelConfig(base, channel, trigger, isPeriph);
  DMA_CreateHandle(handle, base, channel)
  DMA_SubmitChannelTransferParameter(handle, DMA_CHANNEL_XFER(reload, clrTrig,␣
↪intA, intB, width, srcInc, dstInc,
bytes), srcStartAddr, dstStartAddr, NULL);
  DMA_StartTransfer(handle)
```

b. for the linked transfer, application should responsible for link descriptor, for example, if 4 transfer is required, then application should prepare three descriptor table with macro , the head descriptor in driver can be used for the first transfer descriptor.

```
  define link descriptor table in application with macro
  DMA_ALLOCATE_LINK_DESCRIPTOR(nextDesc[3]);

  DMA_SetupDescriptor(nextDesc0,  DMA_CHANNEL_XFER(reload, clrTrig, intA, intB, width,
↪ srcInc, dstInc, bytes),
srcStartAddr, dstStartAddr, nextDesc1);
  DMA_SetupDescriptor(nextDesc1,  DMA_CHANNEL_XFER(reload, clrTrig, intA, intB, width,
↪ srcInc, dstInc, bytes),
srcStartAddr, dstStartAddr, nextDesc2);
  DMA_SetupDescriptor(nextDesc2,  DMA_CHANNEL_XFER(reload, clrTrig, intA, intB, width,
↪ srcInc, dstInc, bytes),
srcStartAddr, dstStartAddr, NULL);
  DMA_SetChannelConfig(base, channel, trigger, isPeriph);
  DMA_CreateHandle(handle, base, channel)
  DMA_SubmitChannelTransferParameter(handle, DMA_CHANNEL_XFER(reload, clrTrig,␣
↪intA, intB, width, srcInc, dstInc,
bytes), srcStartAddr, dstStartAddr, nextDesc0);
  DMA_StartTransfer(handle);
```

Parameters

- handle – Pointer to DMA handle.
- xferCfg – xfer configuration, user can reference DMA_CHANNEL_XFER about to how to get xferCfg value.
- srcStartAddr – source start address.
- dstStartAddr – destination start address.
- nextDesc – address of next descriptor.

void DMA_SubmitChannelDescriptor(*dma_handle_t* *handle, *dma_descriptor_t* *descriptor)

Submit channel descriptor.

This function used to configue channel head descriptor that is used to start DMA transfer, the head descriptor table is defined in DMA driver, this functiono is typical for the ping pong case:

a. for the ping pong case, application should responsible for the descriptor, for example, application should prepare two descriptor table with macro.

```
  define link descriptor table in application with macro
  DMA_ALLOCATE_LINK_DESCRIPTOR(nextDesc[2]);

  DMA_SetupDescriptor(nextDesc0,  DMA_CHANNEL_XFER(reload, clrTrig, intA, intB, width,
↪ srcInc, dstInc, bytes),
srcStartAddr, dstStartAddr, nextDesc1);
  DMA_SetupDescriptor(nextDesc1,  DMA_CHANNEL_XFER(reload, clrTrig, intA, intB, width,
↪ srcInc, dstInc, bytes),
srcStartAddr, dstStartAddr, nextDesc0);
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
  DMA_SetChannelConfig(base, channel, trigger, isPeriph);
  DMA_CreateHandle(handle, base, channel)
  DMA_SubmitChannelDescriptor(handle,  nextDesc0);
  DMA_StartTransfer(handle);
```

Parameters

- handle – Pointer to DMA handle.
- descriptor – descriptor to submit.

status_t DMA_SubmitChannelTransfer(*dma_handle_t* *handle, *dma_channel_config_t* *config)

Submits the DMA channel transfer request.

This function submits the DMA transfer request according to the transfer configuration structure. If the user submits the transfer request repeatedly, this function packs an unprocessed request as a TCD and enables scatter/gather feature to process it in the next time. It is used for the case:

a. for the single transfer, application doesn't need to allocate descriptor table, the head descriptor can be used for it.

```
DMA_CreateHandle(handle, base, channel)
DMA_PrepareChannelTransfer(config,srcStartAddr,dstStartAddr,xferCfg,type,trigger,NULL);
DMA_SubmitChannelTransfer(handle, config)
DMA_StartTransfer(handle)
```

b. for the linked transfer, application should responsible for link descriptor, for example, if 4 transfer is required, then application should prepare three descriptor table with macro , the head descriptor in driver can be used for the first transfer descriptor.

```
  define link descriptor table in application with macro
  DMA_ALLOCATE_LINK_DESCRIPTOR(nextDesc);
  DMA_SetupDescriptor(nextDesc0,  DMA_CHANNEL_XFER(reload, clrTrig, intA, intB, width,
↪ srcInc, dstInc, bytes),
srcStartAddr, dstStartAddr, nextDesc1);
  DMA_SetupDescriptor(nextDesc1,  DMA_CHANNEL_XFER(reload, clrTrig, intA, intB, width,
↪ srcInc, dstInc, bytes),
srcStartAddr, dstStartAddr, nextDesc2);
  DMA_SetupDescriptor(nextDesc2,  DMA_CHANNEL_XFER(reload, clrTrig, intA, intB, width,
↪ srcInc, dstInc, bytes),
srcStartAddr, dstStartAddr, NULL);
  DMA_CreateHandle(handle, base, channel)
  DMA_PrepareChannelTransfer(config,srcStartAddr,dstStartAddr,xferCfg,type,trigger,
↪nextDesc0);
  DMA_SubmitChannelTransfer(handle, config)
  DMA_StartTransfer(handle)
```

c. for the ping pong case, application should responsible for link descriptor, for example, application should prepare two descriptor table with macro , the head descriptor in driver can be used for the first transfer descriptor.

```
  define link descriptor table in application with macro
  DMA_ALLOCATE_LINK_DESCRIPTOR(nextDesc);

  DMA_SetupDescriptor(nextDesc0,  DMA_CHANNEL_XFER(reload, clrTrig, intA, intB, width,
↪ srcInc, dstInc, bytes),
srcStartAddr, dstStartAddr, nextDesc1);
  DMA_SetupDescriptor(nextDesc1,  DMA_CHANNEL_XFER(reload, clrTrig, intA, intB, width,
↪ srcInc, dstInc, bytes),
srcStartAddr, dstStartAddr, nextDesc0);
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
DMA_CreateHandle(handle, base, channel)
DMA_PrepareChannelTransfer(config,srcStartAddr,dstStartAddr,xferCfg,type,trigger,
↪nextDesc0);
DMA_SubmitChannelTransfer(handle, config)
DMA_StartTransfer(handle)
```

Parameters

- handle – DMA handle pointer.
- config – Pointer to DMA transfer configuration structure.

Return values

- kStatus_DMA_Success – It means submit transfer request succeed.
- kStatus_DMA_QueueFull – It means TCD queue is full. Submit transfer request is not allowed.
- kStatus_DMA_Busy – It means the given channel is busy, need to submit request later.

void DMA_StartTransfer(*dma_handle_t* *handle)

DMA start transfer.

This function enables the channel request. User can call this function after submitting the transfer request It will trigger transfer start with software trigger only when hardware trigger is not used.

Parameters

- handle – DMA handle pointer.

void DMA_IRQHandle(DMA_Type *base)

DMA IRQ handler for descriptor transfer complete.

This function clears the channel major interrupt flag and call the callback function if it is not NULL.

Parameters

- base – DMA base address.

FSL_DMA_DRIVER_VERSION

DMA driver version.

Version 2.5.3.

_dma_transfer_status DMA transfer status

Values:

enumerator kStatus_DMA_Busy

Channel is busy and can't handle the transfer request.

_dma_addr_interleave_size dma address interleave size

Values:

enumerator kDMA_AddressInterleave0xWidth

dma source/destination address no interleave

enumerator kDMA_AddressInterleave1xWidth

dma source/destination address interleave 1xwidth

enumerator kDMA_AddressInterleave2xWidth
dma source/destination address interleave 2xwidth

enumerator kDMA_AddressInterleave4xWidth
dma source/destination address interleave 3xwidth

_dma_transfer_width dma transfer width

Values:

enumerator kDMA_Transfer8BitWidth
dma channel transfer bit width is 8 bit

enumerator kDMA_Transfer16BitWidth
dma channel transfer bit width is 16 bit

enumerator kDMA_Transfer32BitWidth
dma channel transfer bit width is 32 bit

enum _dma_priority
DMA channel priority.

Values:

enumerator kDMA_ChannelPriority0
Highest channel priority - priority 0

enumerator kDMA_ChannelPriority1
Channel priority 1

enumerator kDMA_ChannelPriority2
Channel priority 2

enumerator kDMA_ChannelPriority3
Channel priority 3

enumerator kDMA_ChannelPriority4
Channel priority 4

enumerator kDMA_ChannelPriority5
Channel priority 5

enumerator kDMA_ChannelPriority6
Channel priority 6

enumerator kDMA_ChannelPriority7
Lowest channel priority - priority 7

enum _dma_int
DMA interrupt flags.

Values:

enumerator kDMA_IntA
DMA interrupt flag A

enumerator kDMA_IntB
DMA interrupt flag B

enumerator kDMA_IntError
DMA interrupt flag error

enum _dma_trigger_type

DMA trigger type.

Values:

enumerator kDMA_NoTrigger

Trigger is disabled

enumerator kDMA_LowLevelTrigger

Low level active trigger

enumerator kDMA_HighLevelTrigger

High level active trigger

enumerator kDMA_FallingEdgeTrigger

Falling edge active trigger

enumerator kDMA_RisingEdgeTrigger

Rising edge active trigger

_dma_burst_size DMA burst size

Values:

enumerator kDMA_BurstSize1

burst size 1 transfer

enumerator kDMA_BurstSize2

burst size 2 transfer

enumerator kDMA_BurstSize4

burst size 4 transfer

enumerator kDMA_BurstSize8

burst size 8 transfer

enumerator kDMA_BurstSize16

burst size 16 transfer

enumerator kDMA_BurstSize32

burst size 32 transfer

enumerator kDMA_BurstSize64

burst size 64 transfer

enumerator kDMA_BurstSize128

burst size 128 transfer

enumerator kDMA_BurstSize256

burst size 256 transfer

enumerator kDMA_BurstSize512

burst size 512 transfer

enumerator kDMA_BurstSize1024

burst size 1024 transfer

enum _dma_trigger_burst

DMA trigger burst.

Values:

enumerator kDMA_SingleTransfer
Single transfer

enumerator kDMA_LevelBurstTransfer
Burst transfer driven by level trigger

enumerator kDMA_EdgeBurstTransfer1
Perform 1 transfer by edge trigger

enumerator kDMA_EdgeBurstTransfer2
Perform 2 transfers by edge trigger

enumerator kDMA_EdgeBurstTransfer4
Perform 4 transfers by edge trigger

enumerator kDMA_EdgeBurstTransfer8
Perform 8 transfers by edge trigger

enumerator kDMA_EdgeBurstTransfer16
Perform 16 transfers by edge trigger

enumerator kDMA_EdgeBurstTransfer32
Perform 32 transfers by edge trigger

enumerator kDMA_EdgeBurstTransfer64
Perform 64 transfers by edge trigger

enumerator kDMA_EdgeBurstTransfer128
Perform 128 transfers by edge trigger

enumerator kDMA_EdgeBurstTransfer256
Perform 256 transfers by edge trigger

enumerator kDMA_EdgeBurstTransfer512
Perform 512 transfers by edge trigger

enumerator kDMA_EdgeBurstTransfer1024
Perform 1024 transfers by edge trigger

enum _dma_burst_wrap
DMA burst wrapping.

Values:

enumerator kDMA_NoWrap
Wrapping is disabled

enumerator kDMA_SrcWrap
Wrapping is enabled for source

enumerator kDMA_DstWrap
Wrapping is enabled for destination

enumerator kDMA_SrcAndDstWrap
Wrapping is enabled for source and destination

enum _dma_transfer_type
DMA transfer type.

Values:

enumerator kDMA_MemoryToMemory
Transfer from memory to memory (increment source and destination)

enumerator kDMA_PeripheralToMemory
Transfer from peripheral to memory (increment only destination)

enumerator kDMA_MemoryToPeripheral
Transfer from memory to peripheral (increment only source)

enumerator kDMA_StaticToStatic
Peripheral to static memory (do not increment source or destination)

typedef struct *_dma_descriptor* dma_descriptor_t
DMA descriptor structure.

typedef struct *_dma_xfercfg* dma_xfercfg_t
DMA transfer configuration.

typedef enum *_dma_priority* dma_priority_t
DMA channel priority.

typedef enum *_dma_int* dma_irq_t
DMA interrupt flags.

typedef enum *_dma_trigger_type* dma_trigger_type_t
DMA trigger type.

typedef enum *_dma_trigger_burst* dma_trigger_burst_t
DMA trigger burst.

typedef enum *_dma_burst_wrap* dma_burst_wrap_t
DMA burst wrapping.

typedef enum *_dma_transfer_type* dma_transfer_type_t
DMA transfer type.

typedef struct *_dma_channel_trigger* dma_channel_trigger_t
DMA channel trigger.

typedef struct *_dma_channel_config* dma_channel_config_t
DMA channel trigger.

typedef struct *_dma_transfer_config* dma_transfer_config_t
DMA transfer configuration.

typedef void (*dma_callback)(struct *_dma_handle* *handle, void *userData, bool transferDone, uint32_t intmode)
Define Callback function for DMA.

typedef struct *_dma_handle* dma_handle_t
DMA transfer handle structure.

DMA_MAX_TRANSFER_COUNT
DMA max transfer size.

FSL_FEATURE_DMA_LINK_DESCRIPTOR_ALIGN_SIZE
DMA channel numbers.

DMA head link descriptor table align size

DMA_ALLOCATE_HEAD_DESCRIPTORS(name, number)
DMA head descriptor table allocate macro To simplify user interface, this macro will help allocate descriptor memory, user just need to provide the name and the number for the allocate descriptor.

Parameters

- name – Allocate decriptor name.
- number – Number of descriptor to be allocated.

DMA_ALLOCATE_HEAD_DESCRIPTORS_AT_NONCACHEABLE(name, number)

DMA head descriptor table allocate macro at noncacheable section To simplify user interface, this macro will help allocate descriptor memory at noncacheable section, user just need to provide the name and the number for the allocate descriptor.

Parameters

- name – Allocate decriptor name.
- number – Number of descriptor to be allocated.

DMA_ALLOCATE_LINK_DESCRIPTORS(name, number)

DMA link descriptor table allocate macro To simplify user interface, this macro will help allocate descriptor memory, user just need to provide the name and the number for the allocate descriptor.

Parameters

- name – Allocate decriptor name.
- number – Number of descriptor to be allocated.

DMA_ALLOCATE_LINK_DESCRIPTORS_AT_NONCACHEABLE(name, number)

DMA link descriptor table allocate macro at noncacheable section To simplify user interface, this macro will help allocate descriptor memory at noncacheable section, user just need to provide the name and the number for the allocate descriptor.

Parameters

- name – Allocate decriptor name.
- number – Number of descriptor to be allocated.

DMA_ALLOCATE_DATA_TRANSFER_BUFFER(name, width)

DMA transfer buffer address need to align with the transfer width.

DMA_CHANNEL_GROUP(channel)

DMA_CHANNEL_INDEX(base, channel)

DMA_COMMON_REG_GET(base, channel, reg)

DMA linked descriptor address algin size.

DMA_COMMON_CONST_REG_GET(base, channel, reg)

DMA_COMMON_REG_SET(base, channel, reg, value)

DMA_DESCRIPTOR_END_ADDRESS(start, inc, bytes, width)

DMA descriptor end address calculate.

Parameters

- start – start address
- inc – address interleave size
- bytes – transfer bytes
- width – transfer width

DMA_CHANNEL_XFER(reload, clrTrig, intA, intB, width, srcInc, dstInc, bytes)

struct _dma_descriptor

#include <fsl_dma.h> DMA descriptor structure.

Public Members

volatile uint32_t xfercfg
: Transfer configuration

void *srcEndAddr
: Last source address of DMA transfer

void *dstEndAddr
: Last destination address of DMA transfer

void *linkToNextDesc
: Address of next DMA descriptor in chain

struct _dma_xfercfg
: *#include <fsl_dma.h>* DMA transfer configuration.

Public Members

bool valid
: Descriptor is ready to transfer

bool reload
: Reload channel configuration register after current descriptor is exhausted

bool swtrig
: Perform software trigger. Transfer if fired when 'valid' is set

bool clrtrig
: Clear trigger

bool intA
: Raises IRQ when transfer is done and set IRQA status register flag

bool intB
: Raises IRQ when transfer is done and set IRQB status register flag

uint8_t byteWidth
: Byte width of data to transfer

uint8_t srcInc
: Increment source address by 'srcInc' x 'byteWidth'

uint8_t dstInc
: Increment destination address by 'dstInc' x 'byteWidth'

uint16_t transferCount
: Number of transfers

struct _dma_channel_trigger
: *#include <fsl_dma.h>* DMA channel trigger.

Public Members

dma_trigger_type_t type
: Select hardware trigger as edge triggered or level triggered.

dma_trigger_burst_t burst
: Select whether hardware triggers cause a single or burst transfer.

dma_burst_wrap_t wrap
Select wrap type, source wrap or dest wrap, or both.

struct __dma__channel__config
#include <fsl_dma.h> DMA channel trigger.

Public Members

void *srcStartAddr
Source data address

void *dstStartAddr
Destination data address

void *nextDesc
Chain custom descriptor

uint32_t xferCfg
channel transfer configurations

dma_channel_trigger_t *trigger
DMA trigger type

bool isPeriph
select the request type

struct __dma__transfer__config
#include <fsl_dma.h> DMA transfer configuration.

Public Members

uint8_t *srcAddr
Source data address

uint8_t *dstAddr
Destination data address

uint8_t *nextDesc
Chain custom descriptor

dma_xfercfg_t xfercfg
Transfer options

bool isPeriph
DMA transfer is driven by peripheral

struct __dma__handle
#include <fsl_dma.h> DMA transfer handle structure.

Public Members

dma_callback callback
Callback function. Invoked when transfer of descriptor with interrupt flag finishes

void *userData
Callback function parameter

DMA_Type *base
DMA peripheral base address

uint8_t channel
DMA channel number

2.10 DMIC: Digital Microphone

2.11 DMIC DMA Driver

status_t DMIC_TransferCreateHandleDMA(DMIC_Type *base, *dmic_dma_handle_t* *handle, *dmic_dma_transfer_callback_t* callback, void *userData, *dma_handle_t* *rxDmaHandle)

Initializes the DMIC handle which is used in transactional functions.

Parameters

- base – DMIC peripheral base address.
- handle – Pointer to dmic_dma_handle_t structure.
- callback – Callback function.
- userData – User data.
- rxDmaHandle – User-requested DMA handle for RX DMA transfer.

status_t DMIC_TransferReceiveDMA(DMIC_Type *base, *dmic_dma_handle_t* *handle, *dmic_transfer_t* *xfer, uint32_t channel)

Receives data using DMA.

This function receives data using DMA. This is a non-blocking function, which returns right away. When all data is received, the receive callback function is called.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.
- handle – Pointer to usart_dma_handle_t structure.
- xfer – DMIC DMA transfer structure. See dmic_transfer_t.
- channel – DMIC start channel number.

Return values
kStatus_Success –

void DMIC_TransferAbortReceiveDMA(DMIC_Type *base, *dmic_dma_handle_t* *handle)

Aborts the received data using DMA.

This function aborts the received data using DMA.

Parameters

- base – DMIC peripheral base address
- handle – Pointer to dmic_dma_handle_t structure

status_t DMIC_TransferGetReceiveCountDMA(DMIC_Type *base, *dmic_dma_handle_t* *handle, uint32_t *count)

Get the number of bytes that have been received.

This function gets the number of bytes that have been received.

Parameters

- base – DMIC peripheral base address.
- handle – DMIC handle pointer.

- count – Receive bytes count.

Return values

- kStatus_NoTransferInProgress – No receive in progress.
- kStatus_InvalidArgument – Parameter is invalid.
- kStatus_Success – Get successfully through the parameter count;

void DMIC_InstallDMADescriptorMemory(*dmic_dma_handle_t* *handle, void *linkAddr, size_t linkNum)

Install DMA descriptor memory.

This function used to register DMA descriptor memory for linked transfer, a typical case is ping pong transfer which will request more than one DMA descriptor memory space, it should be called after DMIC_TransferCreateHandleDMA. User should be take care about the address of DMA descriptor pool which required align with 16BYTE at least.

Parameters

- handle – Pointer to DMA channel transfer handle.
- linkAddr – DMA link descriptor address.
- linkNum – DMA link descriptor number.

FSL_DMIC_DMA_DRIVER_VERSION

DMIC DMA driver version 2.4.2.

typedef struct *_dmic_transfer* dmic_transfer_t

DMIC transfer structure.

typedef struct *_dmic_dma_handle* dmic_dma_handle_t

typedef void (*dmic_dma_transfer_callback_t)(DMIC_Type *base, *dmic_dma_handle_t* *handle, *status_t* status, void *userData)

DMIC transfer callback function.

struct _dmic_transfer

#include <fsl_dmic_dma.h> DMIC transfer structure.

Public Members

void *data

The buffer of data to be transfer.

uint8_t dataWidth

DMIC support 16bit/32bit

size_t dataSize

The byte count to be transfer.

uint8_t dataAddrInterleaveSize

destination address interleave size

struct *_dmic_transfer* *linkTransfer

use to support link transfer

struct _dmic_dma_handle

#include <fsl_dmic_dma.h> DMIC DMA handle.

Public Members

DMIC_Type *base
DMIC peripheral base address.

dma_handle_t *rxDmaHandle
The DMA RX channel used.

dmic_dma_transfer_callback_t callback
Callback function.

void *userData
DMIC callback function parameter.

size_t transferSize
Size of the data to receive.

volatile uint8_t state
Internal state of DMIC DMA transfer

uint32_t channel
DMIC channel used.

bool isChannelValid
DMIC channel initialization flag

dma_descriptor_t *desLink
descriptor pool pointer

size_t linkNum
number of descriptor in descriptors pool

2.12 DMIC Driver

uint32_t DMIC_GetInstance(DMIC_Type *base)
Get the DMIC instance from peripheral base address.

Parameters

- base – DMIC peripheral base address.

Returns
DMIC instance.

void DMIC_Init(DMIC_Type *base)
Turns DMIC Clock on.

Parameters

- base – : DMIC base

Returns
Nothing

void DMIC_DeInit(DMIC_Type *base)
Turns DMIC Clock off.

Parameters

- base – : DMIC base

Returns
Nothing

void DMIC_SetOperationMode(DMIC_Type *base, *operation_mode_t* mode)

Set DMIC operating mode.

Deprecated:

Do not use this function. It has been superceded by DMIC_EnableChannelInterrupt, DMIC_EnableChannelDma.

Parameters

- base – : The base address of DMIC interface
- mode – : DMIC mode

Returns

Nothing

void DMIC_Use2fs(DMIC_Type *base, bool use2fs)

Configure Clock scaling.

Parameters

- base – : The base address of DMIC interface
- use2fs – : clock scaling

Returns

Nothing

void DMIC_CfgChannelDc(DMIC_Type *base, *dmic_channel_t* channel, *dc_removal_t* dc_cut_level, uint32_t post_dc_gain_reduce, bool saturate16bit)

Configure DMIC channel.

Parameters

- base – : The base address of DMIC interface
- channel – : DMIC channel
- dc_cut_level – : dc_removal_t, Cut off Frequency
- post_dc_gain_reduce – : Fine gain adjustment in the form of a number of bits to downshift.
- saturate16bit – : If selects 16-bit saturation.

static inline void DMIC_EnableChannelSignExtend(DMIC_Type *base, *dmic_channel_t* channel, bool enable)

Enbale channel sign extend which allows processing of 24bit audio data on 32bit machines.

Parameters

- base – : The base address of DMIC interface
- channel – : DMIC channel
- enable – : true is enable sign extend, false is disable sign extend

void DMIC_ConfigChannel(DMIC_Type *base, *dmic_channel_t* channel, *stereo_side_t* side, *dmic_channel_config_t* *channel_config)

Configure DMIC channel.

Parameters

- base – : The base address of DMIC interface
- channel – : DMIC channel
- side – : stereo_side_t, choice of left or right

- channel_config – : Channel configuration

Returns
Nothing

void DMIC_EnableChannnel(DMIC_Type *base, uint32_t channelmask)

Enable a particualr channel.

Parameters

- base – : The base address of DMIC interface
- channelmask – reference _dmic_channel_mask

Returns
Nothing

void DMIC_FifoChannel(DMIC_Type *base, uint32_t channel, uint32_t trig_level, uint32_t enable, uint32_t resetn)

Configure fifo settings for DMIC channel.

Parameters

- base – : The base address of DMIC interface
- channel – : DMIC channel
- trig_level – : FIFO trigger level
- enable – : FIFO level
- resetn – : FIFO reset

Returns
Nothing

static inline void DMIC_EnableChannelInterrupt(DMIC_Type *base, *dmic_channel_t* channel, bool enable)

Enable a particualr channel interrupt request.

Parameters

- base – : The base address of DMIC interface
- channel – : Channel selection
- enable – : true is enable, false is disable

static inline void DMIC_EnableChannelDma(DMIC_Type *base, *dmic_channel_t* channel, bool enable)

Enable a particualr channel dma request.

Parameters

- base – : The base address of DMIC interface
- channel – : Channel selection
- enable – : true is enable, false is disable

static inline void DMIC_EnableChannelFifo(DMIC_Type *base, *dmic_channel_t* channel, bool enable)

Enable a particualr channel fifo.

Parameters

- base – : The base address of DMIC interface
- channel – : Channel selection
- enable – : true is enable, false is disable

static inline void DMIC_DoFifoReset(DMIC_Type *base, *dmic_channel_t* channel)

Channel fifo reset.

Parameters

- base – : The base address of DMIC interface
- channel – : Channel selection

static inline uint32_t DMIC_FifoGetStatus(DMIC_Type *base, uint32_t channel)

Get FIFO status.

Parameters

- base – : The base address of DMIC interface
- channel – : DMIC channel

Returns

FIFO status

static inline void DMIC_FifoClearStatus(DMIC_Type *base, uint32_t channel, uint32_t mask)

Clear FIFO status.

Parameters

- base – : The base address of DMIC interface
- channel – : DMIC channel
- mask – : Bits to be cleared

Returns

FIFO status

static inline uint32_t DMIC_FifoGetData(DMIC_Type *base, uint32_t channel)

Get FIFO data.

Parameters

- base – : The base address of DMIC interface
- channel – : DMIC channel

Returns

FIFO data

static inline uint32_t DMIC_FifoGetAddress(DMIC_Type *base, uint32_t channel)

Get FIFO address.

Parameters

- base – : The base address of DMIC interface
- channel – : DMIC channel

Returns

FIFO data

void DMIC_ResetChannelDecimator(DMIC_Type *base, uint32_t channelMask, bool reset)

DMIC channel Decimator reset.

Parameters

- base – : The base address of DMIC interface
- channelMask – : DMIC channel mask, reference _dmic_channel_mask
- reset – : true is reset decimator, false is release decimator.

static inline void DMIC_EnableChannelGlobalSync(DMIC_Type *base, uint32_t channelMask, uint32_t syncCounter)

Enable DMIC channel global sync function.

Parameters

- base – : The base address of DMIC interface
- channelMask – : DMIC channel mask, reference _dmic_channel_mask
- syncCounter – :sync counter will trigger a pulse whenever count reaches CCOUNTVAL. If CCOUNTVAL is set to 0, there will be a pulse on every cycle

static inline void DMIC_DisableChannelGlobalSync(DMIC_Type *base, uint32_t channelMask)

Disbale DMIC channel global sync function.

Parameters

- base – : The base address of DMIC interface
- channelMask – : DMIC channel mask, reference _dmic_channel_mask

void DMIC_EnableIntCallback(DMIC_Type *base, *dmic_callback_t* cb)

Enable callback.

This function enables the interrupt for the selected DMIC peripheral. The callback function is not enabled until this function is called.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the DMIC peripheral.
- cb – callback Pointer to store callback function.

Return values

None. –

void DMIC_DisableIntCallback(DMIC_Type *base, *dmic_callback_t* cb)

Disable callback.

This function disables the interrupt for the selected DMIC peripheral.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the DMIC peripheral.
- cb – callback Pointer to store callback function..

Return values

None. –

static inline void DMIC_SetGainNoiseEstHwvad(DMIC_Type *base, uint32_t value)

Sets the gain value for the noise estimator.

Parameters

- base – DMIC base pointer
- value – gain value for the noise estimator.

Return values

None. –

static inline void DMIC_SetGainSignalEstHwvad(DMIC_Type *base, uint32_t value)

Sets the gain value for the signal estimator.

Parameters

- base – DMIC base pointer
- value – gain value for the signal estimator.

Return values
None. –

static inline void DMIC_SetFilterCtrlHwvad(DMIC_Type *base, uint32_t value)

Sets the hwvad filter cutoff frequency parameter.

Parameters

- base – DMIC base pointer
- value – cut off frequency value.

Return values
None. –

static inline void DMIC_SetInputGainHwvad(DMIC_Type *base, uint32_t value)

Sets the input gain of hwvad.

Parameters

- base – DMIC base pointer
- value – input gain value for hwvad.

Return values
None. –

static inline void DMIC_CtrlClrIntrHwvad(DMIC_Type *base, bool st10)

Clears hwvad internal interrupt flag.

Parameters

- base – DMIC base pointer
- st10 – bit value.

Return values
None. –

static inline void DMIC_FilterResetHwvad(DMIC_Type *base, bool rstt)

Resets hwvad filters.

Parameters

- base – DMIC base pointer
- rstt – Reset bit value.

Return values
None. –

static inline uint16_t DMIC_GetNoiseEnvlpEst(DMIC_Type *base)

Gets the value from output of the filter z7.

Parameters

- base – DMIC base pointer

Return values
output – of filter z7.

void DMIC_HwvadEnableIntCallback(DMIC_Type *base, *dmic_hwvad_callback_t* vadcb)

Enable hwvad callback.

This function enables the hwvad interrupt for the selected DMIC peripheral. The callback function is not enabled until this function is called.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the DMIC peripheral.

- vadcb – callback Pointer to store callback function.

Return values
None. –

void DMIC_HwvadDisableIntCallback(DMIC_Type *base, *dmic_hwvad_callback_t* vadcb)

Disable callback.

This function disables the hwvad interrupt for the selected DMIC peripheral.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the DMIC peripheral.
- vadcb – callback Pointer to store callback function..

Return values
None. –

FSL_DMIC_DRIVER_VERSION

DMIC driver version 2.3.3.

_dmic_status DMIC transfer status.

Values:

enumerator kStatus_DMIC_Busy
DMIC is busy

enumerator kStatus_DMIC_Idle
DMIC is idle

enumerator kStatus_DMIC_OverRunError
DMIC over run Error

enumerator kStatus_DMIC_UnderRunError
DMIC under run Error

enum _operation_mode

DMIC different operation modes.

Values:

enumerator kDMIC_OperationModeInterrupt
Interrupt mode

enumerator kDMIC_OperationModeDma
DMA mode

enum _stereo_side

DMIC left/right values.

Values:

enumerator kDMIC_Left
Left Stereo channel

enumerator kDMIC_Right
Right Stereo channel

enum pdm_div_t

DMIC Clock pre-divider values.

Values:

enumerator kDMIC_PdmDiv1
DMIC pre-divider set in divide by 1

enumerator kDMIC_PdmDiv2
DMIC pre-divider set in divide by 2

enumerator kDMIC_PdmDiv3
DMIC pre-divider set in divide by 3

enumerator kDMIC_PdmDiv4
DMIC pre-divider set in divide by 4

enumerator kDMIC_PdmDiv6
DMIC pre-divider set in divide by 6

enumerator kDMIC_PdmDiv8
DMIC pre-divider set in divide by 8

enumerator kDMIC_PdmDiv12
DMIC pre-divider set in divide by 12

enumerator kDMIC_PdmDiv16
DMIC pre-divider set in divide by 16

enumerator kDMIC_PdmDiv24
DMIC pre-divider set in divide by 24

enumerator kDMIC_PdmDiv32
DMIC pre-divider set in divide by 32

enumerator kDMIC_PdmDiv48
DMIC pre-divider set in divide by 48

enumerator kDMIC_PdmDiv64
DMIC pre-divider set in divide by 64

enumerator kDMIC_PdmDiv96
DMIC pre-divider set in divide by 96

enumerator kDMIC_PdmDiv128
DMIC pre-divider set in divide by 128

enum _compensation
Pre-emphasis Filter coefficient value for 2FS and 4FS modes.

Values:

enumerator kDMIC_CompValueZero
Compensation 0

enumerator kDMIC_CompValueNegativePoint16
Compensation -0.16

enumerator kDMIC_CompValueNegativePoint15
Compensation -0.15

enumerator kDMIC_CompValueNegativePoint13
Compensation -0.13

enum _dc_removal
DMIC DC filter control values.

Values:

enumerator kDMIC_DcNoRemove
Flat response no filter

enumerator kDMIC_DcCut155
Cut off Frequency is 155 Hz

enumerator kDMIC_DcCut78
Cut off Frequency is 78 Hz

enumerator kDMIC_DcCut39
Cut off Frequency is 39 Hz

enum _dmic_channel
DMIC Channel number.

Values:

enumerator kDMIC_Channel0
DMIC channel 0

enumerator kDMIC_Channel1
DMIC channel 1

enumerator kDMIC_ChannelMAX
Maximum number of DMIC channels

_dmic_channel_mask DMIC Channel mask.

Values:

enumerator kDMIC_EnableChannel0
DMIC channel 0 mask

enumerator kDMIC_EnableChannel1
DMIC channel 1 mask

enum _dmic_phy_sample_rate
DMIC and decimator sample rates.

Values:

enumerator kDMIC_PhyFullSpeed
Decimator gets one sample per each chosen clock edge of PDM interface

enumerator kDMIC_PhyHalfSpeed
PDM clock to Microphone is halved, decimator receives each sample twice

typedef enum *_operation_mode* operation_mode_t
DMIC different operation modes.

typedef enum *_stereo_side* stereo_side_t
DMIC left/right values.

typedef enum *_compensation* compensation_t
Pre-emphasis Filter coefficient value for 2FS and 4FS modes.

typedef enum *_dc_removal* dc_removal_t
DMIC DC filter control values.

typedef enum *_dmic_channel* dmic_channel_t
DMIC Channel number.

typedef enum *_dmic_phy_sample_rate* dmic_phy_sample_rate_t
DMIC and decimator sample rates.

typedef struct *_dmic_channel_config* dmic_channel_config_t
DMIC Channel configuration structure.

typedef void (*dmic_callback_t)(void)
DMIC Callback function.

typedef void (*dmic_hwvad_callback_t)(void)
HWVAD Callback function.

struct _dmic_channel_config
#include <fsl_dmic.h> DMIC Channel configuration structure.

Public Members

pdm_div_t divhfclk
DMIC Clock pre-divider values

uint32_t osr
oversampling rate(CIC decimation rate) for PCM

uint32_t gainshft
4FS PCM data gain control

compensation_t preac2coef
Pre-emphasis Filter coefficient value for 2FS

compensation_t preac4coef
Pre-emphasis Filter coefficient value for 4FS

dc_removal_t dc_cut_level
DMIC DC filter control values.

uint32_t post_dc_gain_reduce
Fine gain adjustment in the form of a number of bits to downshift

dmic_phy_sample_rate_t sample_rate
DMIC and decimator sample rates

bool saturate16bit
Selects 16-bit saturation. 0 means results roll over if out range and do not saturate. 1 means if the result overflows, it saturates at 0xFFFF for positive overflow and 0x8000 for negative overflow.

bool enableSignExtend
sign extend feature which allows processing of 24bit audio data on 32bit machine

2.13 DSP Driver

enum _dsp_static_vec_sel
Fusion DSP vector table select.

Values:

enumerator kDSP_StatVecSelPrimary

enumerator kDSP_StatVecSelAlternate

typedef enum *_dsp_static_vec_sel* dsp_static_vec_sel_t
Fusion DSP vector table select.

typedef struct *_dsp_copy_image* dsp_copy_image_t
Structure for DSP copy image to destination address.

Defines start and destination address for copying image with given size.

void DSP_Init(void)
Initializing DSP core.

Power up DSP Enable DSP clock Reset DSP peripheral

static inline void DSP_SetVecRemap(*dsp_static_vec_sel_t* statVecSel, uint32_t remap)
Set Fusion DSP static vector table remap.

Parameters

- statVecSel – static vector base address selection
- remap – static vector remap, valid value from 0x0U to 0xFFFU

void DSP_CopyImage(*dsp_copy_image_t* *dspCopyImage)
Copy DSP image to destination address.

Copy DSP image from source address to destination address with given size.

Parameters

- dspCopyImage – Structure contains information for DSP copy image to destination address.

void DSP_Deinit(void)
Deinitializing DSP core.

static inline void DSP_Start(void)
Start DSP core.

static inline void DSP_Stop(void)
Stop DSP core.

FSL_DSP_DRIVER_VERSION
dsp driver version 2.0.1.

uint32_t *srcAddr

uint32_t *destAddr

uint32_t size

struct _dsp_copy_image
#include <fsl_dsp.h> Structure for DSP copy image to destination address.

Defines start and destination address for copying image with given size.

2.14 FLEXCOMM: FLEXCOMM Driver

2.15 FLEXCOMM Driver

FSL_FLEXCOMM_DRIVER_VERSION
FlexCOMM driver version 2.0.2.

enum FLEXCOMM_PERIPH_T
FLEXCOMM peripheral modes.

Values:

enumerator FLEXCOMM_PERIPH_NONE
No peripheral

enumerator FLEXCOMM_PERIPH_USART
USART peripheral

enumerator FLEXCOMM_PERIPH_SPI
SPI Peripheral

enumerator FLEXCOMM_PERIPH_I2C
I2C Peripheral

enumerator FLEXCOMM_PERIPH_I2S_TX
I2S TX Peripheral

enumerator FLEXCOMM_PERIPH_I2S_RX
I2S RX Peripheral

typedef void (*flexcomm_irq_handler_t)(void *base, void *handle)
Typedef for interrupt handler.

IRQn_Type const kFlexcommIrqs[]
Array with IRQ number for each FLEXCOMM module.

uint32_t FLEXCOMM_GetInstance(void *base)
Returns instance number for FLEXCOMM module with given base address.

status_t FLEXCOMM_Init(void *base, *FLEXCOMM_PERIPH_T* periph)
Initializes FLEXCOMM and selects peripheral mode according to the second parameter.

void FLEXCOMM_SetIRQHandler(void *base, *flexcomm_irq_handler_t* handler, void *flexcommHandle)
Sets IRQ handler for given FLEXCOMM module. It is used by drivers register IRQ handler according to FLEXCOMM mode.

2.16 FlexIO: FlexIO Driver

2.17 FlexIO Driver

void FLEXIO_GetDefaultConfig(*flexio_config_t* *userConfig)
Gets the default configuration to configure the FlexIO module. The configuration can used directly to call the FLEXIO_Configure().

Example:

```
flexio_config_t config;
FLEXIO_GetDefaultConfig(&config);
```

Parameters

- userConfig – pointer to flexio_config_t structure

void FLEXIO_Init(FLEXIO_Type *base, const *flexio_config_t* *userConfig)

Configures the FlexIO with a FlexIO configuration. The configuration structure can be filled by the user or be set with default values by FLEXIO_GetDefaultConfig().

Example

```
flexio_config_t config = {
.enableFlexio = true,
.enableInDoze = false,
.enableInDebug = true,
.enableFastAccess = false
};
FLEXIO_Configure(base, &config);
```

Parameters

- base – FlexIO peripheral base address
- userConfig – pointer to flexio_config_t structure

void FLEXIO_Deinit(FLEXIO_Type *base)

Gates the FlexIO clock. Call this API to stop the FlexIO clock.

Note: After calling this API, call the FLEXO_Init to use the FlexIO module.

Parameters

- base – FlexIO peripheral base address

uint32_t FLEXIO_GetInstance(FLEXIO_Type *base)

Get instance number for FLEXIO module.

Parameters

- base – FLEXIO peripheral base address.

void FLEXIO_Reset(FLEXIO_Type *base)

Resets the FlexIO module.

Parameters

- base – FlexIO peripheral base address

static inline void FLEXIO_Enable(FLEXIO_Type *base, bool enable)

Enables the FlexIO module operation.

Parameters

- base – FlexIO peripheral base address
- enable – true to enable, false to disable.

static inline uint32_t FLEXIO_ReadPinInput(FLEXIO_Type *base)

Reads the input data on each of the FlexIO pins.

Parameters

- base – FlexIO peripheral base address

Returns

FlexIO pin input data

static inline uint8_t FLEXIO_GetShifterState(FLEXIO_Type *base)

Gets the current state pointer for state mode use.

Parameters

- base – FlexIO peripheral base address

Returns

current State pointer

void FLEXIO_SetShifterConfig(FLEXIO_Type *base, uint8_t index, const *flexio_shifter_config_t* *shifterConfig)

Configures the shifter with the shifter configuration. The configuration structure covers both the SHIFTCTL and SHIFTCFG registers. To configure the shifter to the proper mode, select which timer controls the shifter to shift, whether to generate start bit/stop bit, and the polarity of start bit and stop bit.

Example

```
flexio_shifter_config_t config = {
.timerSelect = 0,
.timerPolarity = kFLEXIO_ShifterTimerPolarityOnPositive,
.pinConfig = kFLEXIO_PinConfigOpenDrainOrBidirection,
.pinPolarity = kFLEXIO_PinActiveLow,
.shifterMode = kFLEXIO_ShifterModeTransmit,
.inputSource = kFLEXIO_ShifterInputFromPin,
.shifterStop = kFLEXIO_ShifterStopBitHigh,
.shifterStart = kFLEXIO_ShifterStartBitLow
};
FLEXIO_SetShifterConfig(base, &config);
```

Parameters

- base – FlexIO peripheral base address
- index – Shifter index
- shifterConfig – Pointer to flexio_shifter_config_t structure

void FLEXIO_SetTimerConfig(FLEXIO_Type *base, uint8_t index, const *flexio_timer_config_t* *timerConfig)

Configures the timer with the timer configuration. The configuration structure covers both the TIMCTL and TIMCFG registers. To configure the timer to the proper mode, select trigger source for timer and the timer pin output and the timing for timer.

Example

```
flexio_timer_config_t config = {
.triggerSelect = FLEXIO_TIMER_TRIGGER_SEL_SHIFTnSTAT(0),
.triggerPolarity = kFLEXIO_TimerTriggerPolarityActiveLow,
.triggerSource = kFLEXIO_TimerTriggerSourceInternal,
.pinConfig = kFLEXIO_PinConfigOpenDrainOrBidirection,
.pinSelect = 0,
.pinPolarity = kFLEXIO_PinActiveHigh,
.timerMode = kFLEXIO_TimerModeDual8BitBaudBit,
.timerOutput = kFLEXIO_TimerOutputZeroNotAffectedByReset,
.timerDecrement = kFLEXIO_TimerDecSrcOnFlexIOClockShiftTimerOutput,
.timerReset = kFLEXIO_TimerResetOnTimerPinEqualToTimerOutput,
.timerDisable = kFLEXIO_TimerDisableOnTimerCompare,
.timerEnable = kFLEXIO_TimerEnableOnTriggerHigh,
.timerStop = kFLEXIO_TimerStopBitEnableOnTimerDisable,
.timerStart = kFLEXIO_TimerStartBitEnabled
};
FLEXIO_SetTimerConfig(base, &config);
```

Parameters

- base – FlexIO peripheral base address
- index – Timer index
- timerConfig – Pointer to the flexio_timer_config_t structure

static inline void FLEXIO_SetClockMode(FLEXIO_Type *base, uint8_t index, *flexio_timer_decrement_source_t* clocksource)

This function set the value of the prescaler on flexio channels.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FlexIO simulated peripheral type.
- index – Timer index
- clocksource – Set clock value

static inline void FLEXIO_EnableShifterStatusInterrupts(FLEXIO_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Enables the shifter status interrupt. The interrupt generates when the corresponding SSF is set.

Note: For multiple shifter status interrupt enable, for example, two shifter status enable, can calculate the mask by using ((1 « shifter index0) | (1 « shifter index1))

Parameters

- base – FlexIO peripheral base address
- mask – The shifter status mask which can be calculated by (1 « shifter index)

static inline void FLEXIO_DisableShifterStatusInterrupts(FLEXIO_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Disables the shifter status interrupt. The interrupt won't generate when the corresponding SSF is set.

Note: For multiple shifter status interrupt enable, for example, two shifter status enable, can calculate the mask by using ((1 « shifter index0) | (1 « shifter index1))

Parameters

- base – FlexIO peripheral base address
- mask – The shifter status mask which can be calculated by (1 « shifter index)

static inline void FLEXIO_EnableShifterErrorInterrupts(FLEXIO_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Enables the shifter error interrupt. The interrupt generates when the corresponding SEF is set.

Note: For multiple shifter error interrupt enable, for example, two shifter error enable, can calculate the mask by using ((1 « shifter index0) | (1 « shifter index1))

Parameters

- base – FlexIO peripheral base address
- mask – The shifter error mask which can be calculated by (1 « shifter index)

static inline void FLEXIO_DisableShifterErrorInterrupts(FLEXIO_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Disables the shifter error interrupt. The interrupt won't generate when the corresponding SEF is set.

Note: For multiple shifter error interrupt enable, for example, two shifter error enable, can calculate the mask by using ((1 « shifter index0) | (1 « shifter index1))

Parameters

- base – FlexIO peripheral base address
- mask – The shifter error mask which can be calculated by (1 « shifter index)

static inline void FLEXIO_EnableTimerStatusInterrupts(FLEXIO_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Enables the timer status interrupt. The interrupt generates when the corresponding SSF is set.

Note: For multiple timer status interrupt enable, for example, two timer status enable, can calculate the mask by using ((1 « timer index0) | (1 « timer index1))

Parameters

- base – FlexIO peripheral base address
- mask – The timer status mask which can be calculated by (1 « timer index)

static inline void FLEXIO_DisableTimerStatusInterrupts(FLEXIO_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Disables the timer status interrupt. The interrupt won't generate when the corresponding SSF is set.

Note: For multiple timer status interrupt enable, for example, two timer status enable, can calculate the mask by using ((1 « timer index0) | (1 « timer index1))

Parameters

- base – FlexIO peripheral base address
- mask – The timer status mask which can be calculated by (1 « timer index)

static inline uint32_t FLEXIO_GetShifterStatusFlags(FLEXIO_Type *base)

Gets the shifter status flags.

Parameters

- base – FlexIO peripheral base address

Returns

Shifter status flags

static inline void FLEXIO_ClearShifterStatusFlags(FLEXIO_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Clears the shifter status flags.

Note: For clearing multiple shifter status flags, for example, two shifter status flags, can calculate the mask by using ((1 « shifter index0) | (1 « shifter index1))

Parameters

- base – FlexIO peripheral base address

- mask – The shifter status mask which can be calculated by (1 « shifter index)

static inline uint32_t FLEXIO_GetShifterErrorFlags(FLEXIO_Type *base)

Gets the shifter error flags.

Parameters

- base – FlexIO peripheral base address

Returns

Shifter error flags

static inline void FLEXIO_ClearShifterErrorFlags(FLEXIO_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Clears the shifter error flags.

Note: For clearing multiple shifter error flags, for example, two shifter error flags, can calculate the mask by using ((1 « shifter index0) | (1 « shifter index1))

Parameters

- base – FlexIO peripheral base address
- mask – The shifter error mask which can be calculated by (1 « shifter index)

static inline uint32_t FLEXIO_GetTimerStatusFlags(FLEXIO_Type *base)

Gets the timer status flags.

Parameters

- base – FlexIO peripheral base address

Returns

Timer status flags

static inline void FLEXIO_ClearTimerStatusFlags(FLEXIO_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Clears the timer status flags.

Note: For clearing multiple timer status flags, for example, two timer status flags, can calculate the mask by using ((1 « timer index0) | (1 « timer index1))

Parameters

- base – FlexIO peripheral base address
- mask – The timer status mask which can be calculated by (1 « timer index)

static inline void FLEXIO_EnableShifterStatusDMA(FLEXIO_Type *base, uint32_t mask, bool enable)

Enables/disables the shifter status DMA. The DMA request generates when the corresponding SSF is set.

Note: For multiple shifter status DMA enables, for example, calculate the mask by using ((1 « shifter index0) | (1 « shifter index1))

Parameters

- base – FlexIO peripheral base address
- mask – The shifter status mask which can be calculated by (1 « shifter index)

- enable – True to enable, false to disable.

uint32_t FLEXIO_GetShifterBufferAddress(FLEXIO_Type *base, *flexio_shifter_buffer_type_t* type, uint8_t index)

Gets the shifter buffer address for the DMA transfer usage.

Parameters

- base – FlexIO peripheral base address
- type – Shifter type of flexio_shifter_buffer_type_t
- index – Shifter index

Returns

Corresponding shifter buffer index

status_t FLEXIO_RegisterHandleIRQ(void *base, void *handle, *flexio_isr_t* isr)

Registers the handle and the interrupt handler for the FlexIO-simulated peripheral.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FlexIO simulated peripheral type.
- handle – Pointer to the handler for FlexIO simulated peripheral.
- isr – FlexIO simulated peripheral interrupt handler.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Successfully create the handle.
- kStatus_OutOfRange – The FlexIO type/handle/ISR table out of range.

status_t FLEXIO_UnregisterHandleIRQ(void *base)

Unregisters the handle and the interrupt handler for the FlexIO-simulated peripheral.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FlexIO simulated peripheral type.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Successfully create the handle.
- kStatus_OutOfRange – The FlexIO type/handle/ISR table out of range.

static inline void FLEXIO_ClearPortOutput(FLEXIO_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Sets the output level of the multiple FLEXIO pins to the logic 0.

Parameters

- base – FlexIO peripheral base address
- mask – FLEXIO pin number mask

static inline void FLEXIO_SetPortOutput(FLEXIO_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Sets the output level of the multiple FLEXIO pins to the logic 1.

Parameters

- base – FlexIO peripheral base address
- mask – FLEXIO pin number mask

static inline void FLEXIO_TogglePortOutput(FLEXIO_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Reverses the current output logic of the multiple FLEXIO pins.

Parameters

- base – FlexIO peripheral base address
- mask – FLEXIO pin number mask

static inline void FLEXIO_PinWrite(FLEXIO_Type *base, uint32_t pin, uint8_t output)

Sets the output level of the FLEXIO pins to the logic 1 or 0.

Parameters

- base – FlexIO peripheral base address
- pin – FLEXIO pin number.
- output – FLEXIO pin output logic level.
  - 0: corresponding pin output low-logic level.
  - 1: corresponding pin output high-logic level.

static inline void FLEXIO_EnablePinOutput(FLEXIO_Type *base, uint32_t pin)

Enables the FLEXIO output pin function.

Parameters

- base – FlexIO peripheral base address
- pin – FLEXIO pin number.

static inline uint32_t FLEXIO_PinRead(FLEXIO_Type *base, uint32_t pin)

Reads the current input value of the FLEXIO pin.

Parameters

- base – FlexIO peripheral base address
- pin – FLEXIO pin number.

Return values

FLEXIO – port input value

- 0: corresponding pin input low-logic level.
- 1: corresponding pin input high-logic level.

static inline uint32_t FLEXIO_GetPinStatus(FLEXIO_Type *base, uint32_t pin)

Gets the FLEXIO input pin status.

Parameters

- base – FlexIO peripheral base address
- pin – FLEXIO pin number.

Return values

FLEXIO – port input status

- 0: corresponding pin input capture no status.
- 1: corresponding pin input capture rising or falling edge.

static inline void FLEXIO_SetPinLevel(FLEXIO_Type *base, uint8_t pin, bool level)

Sets the FLEXIO output pin level.

Parameters

- base – FlexIO peripheral base address
- pin – FlexIO pin number.
- level – FlexIO output pin level to set, can be either 0 or 1.

static inline bool FLEXIO_GetPinOverride(const FLEXIO_Type *const base, uint8_t pin)

Gets the enabled status of a FLEXIO output pin.

Parameters

- base – FlexIO peripheral base address

- pin – FlexIO pin number.

Return values

FlexIO – port enabled status

- 0: corresponding output pin is in disabled state.
- 1: corresponding output pin is in enabled state.

static inline void FLEXIO_ConfigPinOverride(FLEXIO_Type *base, uint8_t pin, bool enabled)

Enables or disables a FLEXIO output pin.

Parameters

- base – FlexIO peripheral base address
- pin – Flexio pin number.
- enabled – Enable or disable the FlexIO pin.

static inline void FLEXIO_ClearPortStatus(FLEXIO_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Clears the multiple FLEXIO input pins status.

Parameters

- base – FlexIO peripheral base address
- mask – FLEXIO pin number mask

FSL_FLEXIO_DRIVER_VERSION

FlexIO driver version.

enum _flexio_timer_trigger_polarity

Define time of timer trigger polarity.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerTriggerPolarityActiveHigh

Active high.

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerTriggerPolarityActiveLow

Active low.

enum _flexio_timer_trigger_source

Define type of timer trigger source.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerTriggerSourceExternal

External trigger selected.

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerTriggerSourceInternal

Internal trigger selected.

enum _flexio_pin_config

Define type of timer/shifter pin configuration.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_PinConfigOutputDisabled

Pin output disabled.

enumerator kFLEXIO_PinConfigOpenDrainOrBidirection

Pin open drain or bidirectional output enable.

enumerator kFLEXIO_PinConfigBidirectionOutputData

Pin bidirectional output data.

enumerator kFLEXIO_PinConfigOutput
Pin output.

enum _flexio_pin_polarity
Definition of pin polarity.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_PinActiveHigh
Active high.

enumerator kFLEXIO_PinActiveLow
Active low.

enum _flexio_timer_mode
Define type of timer work mode.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerModeDisabled
Timer Disabled.

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerModeDual8BitBaudBit
Dual 8-bit counters baud/bit mode.

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerModeDual8BitPWM
Dual 8-bit counters PWM mode.

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerModeSingle16Bit
Single 16-bit counter mode.

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerModeDual8BitPWMLow
Dual 8-bit counters PWM Low mode.

enum _flexio_timer_output
Define type of timer initial output or timer reset condition.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerOutputOneNotAffectedByReset
Logic one when enabled and is not affected by timer reset.

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerOutputZeroNotAffectedByReset
Logic zero when enabled and is not affected by timer reset.

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerOutputOneAffectedByReset
Logic one when enabled and on timer reset.

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerOutputZeroAffectedByReset
Logic zero when enabled and on timer reset.

enum _flexio_timer_decrement_source
Define type of timer decrement.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerDecSrcOnFlexIOClockShiftTimerOutput
Decrement counter on FlexIO clock, Shift clock equals Timer output.

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerDecSrcOnTriggerInputShiftTimerOutput
Decrement counter on Trigger input (both edges), Shift clock equals Timer output.

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerDecSrcOnPinInputShiftPinInput
Decrement counter on Pin input (both edges), Shift clock equals Pin input.

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerDecSrcOnTriggerInputShiftTriggerInput
Decrement counter on Trigger input (both edges), Shift clock equals Trigger input.

enum _flexio_timer_reset_condition
Define type of timer reset condition.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerResetNever
Timer never reset.

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerResetOnTimerPinEqualToTimerOutput
Timer reset on Timer Pin equal to Timer Output.

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerResetOnTimerTriggerEqualToTimerOutput
Timer reset on Timer Trigger equal to Timer Output.

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerResetOnTimerPinRisingEdge
Timer reset on Timer Pin rising edge.

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerResetOnTimerTriggerRisingEdge
Timer reset on Trigger rising edge.

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerResetOnTimerTriggerBothEdge
Timer reset on Trigger rising or falling edge.

enum _flexio_timer_disable_condition
Define type of timer disable condition.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerDisableNever
Timer never disabled.

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerDisableOnPreTimerDisable
Timer disabled on Timer N-1 disable.

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerDisableOnTimerCompare
Timer disabled on Timer compare.

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerDisableOnTimerCompareTriggerLow
Timer disabled on Timer compare and Trigger Low.

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerDisableOnPinBothEdge
Timer disabled on Pin rising or falling edge.

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerDisableOnPinBothEdgeTriggerHigh
Timer disabled on Pin rising or falling edge provided Trigger is high.

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerDisableOnTriggerFallingEdge
Timer disabled on Trigger falling edge.

enum _flexio_timer_enable_condition
Define type of timer enable condition.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerEnabledAlways
Timer always enabled.

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerEnableOnPrevTimerEnable
Timer enabled on Timer N-1 enable.

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerEnableOnTriggerHigh
Timer enabled on Trigger high.

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerEnableOnTriggerHighPinHigh
Timer enabled on Trigger high and Pin high.

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerEnableOnPinRisingEdge
Timer enabled on Pin rising edge.

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerEnableOnPinRisingEdgeTriggerHigh
Timer enabled on Pin rising edge and Trigger high.

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerEnableOnTriggerRisingEdge
Timer enabled on Trigger rising edge.

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerEnableOnTriggerBothEdge
Timer enabled on Trigger rising or falling edge.

enum _flexio_timer_stop_bit_condition
Define type of timer stop bit generate condition.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerStopBitDisabled
Stop bit disabled.

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerStopBitEnableOnTimerCompare
Stop bit is enabled on timer compare.

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerStopBitEnableOnTimerDisable
Stop bit is enabled on timer disable.

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerStopBitEnableOnTimerCompareDisable
Stop bit is enabled on timer compare and timer disable.

enum _flexio_timer_start_bit_condition
Define type of timer start bit generate condition.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerStartBitDisabled
Start bit disabled.

enumerator kFLEXIO_TimerStartBitEnabled
Start bit enabled.

enum _flexio_timer_output_state
FlexIO as PWM channel output state.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_PwmLow
The output state of PWM channel is low

enumerator kFLEXIO_PwmHigh
The output state of PWM channel is high

enum _flexio_shifter_timer_polarity
Define type of timer polarity for shifter control.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_ShifterTimerPolarityOnPositive
Shift on positive edge of shift clock.

enumerator kFLEXIO_ShifterTimerPolarityOnNegitive
Shift on negative edge of shift clock.

enum _flexio_shifter_mode
Define type of shifter working mode.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_ShifterDisabled
Shifter is disabled.

enumerator kFLEXIO_ShifterModeReceive
Receive mode.

enumerator kFLEXIO_ShifterModeTransmit
Transmit mode.

enumerator kFLEXIO_ShifterModeMatchStore
Match store mode.

enumerator kFLEXIO_ShifterModeMatchContinuous
Match continuous mode.

enumerator kFLEXIO_ShifterModeState
SHIFTBUF contents are used for storing programmable state attributes.

enumerator kFLEXIO_ShifterModeLogic
SHIFTBUF contents are used for implementing programmable logic look up table.

enum _flexio_shifter_input_source
Define type of shifter input source.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_ShifterInputFromPin
Shifter input from pin.

enumerator kFLEXIO_ShifterInputFromNextShifterOutput
Shifter input from Shifter N+1.

enum _flexio_shifter_stop_bit
Define of STOP bit configuration.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_ShifterStopBitDisable
Disable shifter stop bit.

enumerator kFLEXIO_ShifterStopBitLow
Set shifter stop bit to logic low level.

enumerator kFLEXIO_ShifterStopBitHigh
Set shifter stop bit to logic high level.

enum _flexio_shifter_start_bit
Define type of START bit configuration.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_ShifterStartBitDisabledLoadDataOnEnable
Disable shifter start bit, transmitter loads data on enable.

enumerator kFLEXIO_ShifterStartBitDisabledLoadDataOnShift
Disable shifter start bit, transmitter loads data on first shift.

enumerator kFLEXIO_ShifterStartBitLow
Set shifter start bit to logic low level.

enumerator kFLEXIO_ShifterStartBitHigh
Set shifter start bit to logic high level.

enum _flexio_shifter_buffer_type
Define FlexIO shifter buffer type.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_ShifterBuffer
Shifter Buffer N Register.

enumerator kFLEXIO_ShifterBufferBitSwapped
Shifter Buffer N Bit Byte Swapped Register.

enumerator kFLEXIO_ShifterBufferByteSwapped
Shifter Buffer N Byte Swapped Register.

enumerator kFLEXIO_ShifterBufferBitByteSwapped
Shifter Buffer N Bit Swapped Register.

enumerator kFLEXIO_ShifterBufferNibbleByteSwapped
Shifter Buffer N Nibble Byte Swapped Register.

enumerator kFLEXIO_ShifterBufferHalfWordSwapped
Shifter Buffer N Half Word Swapped Register.

enumerator kFLEXIO_ShifterBufferNibbleSwapped
Shifter Buffer N Nibble Swapped Register.

enum _flexio_gpio_direction
FLEXIO gpio direction definition.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_DigitalInput
Set current pin as digital input

enumerator kFLEXIO_DigitalOutput
Set current pin as digital output

enum _flexio_pin_input_config
FLEXIO gpio input config.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_InputInterruptDisabled
Interrupt request is disabled.

enumerator kFLEXIO_InputInterruptEnable
Interrupt request is enable.

enumerator kFLEXIO_FlagRisingEdgeEnable
Input pin flag on rising edge.

enumerator kFLEXIO_FlagFallingEdgeEnable
Input pin flag on falling edge.

typedef enum *_flexio_timer_trigger_polarity* flexio_timer_trigger_polarity_t
Define time of timer trigger polarity.

typedef enum *_flexio_timer_trigger_source* flexio_timer_trigger_source_t
Define type of timer trigger source.

typedef enum *_flexio_pin_config* flexio_pin_config_t
Define type of timer/shifter pin configuration.

typedef enum *_flexio_pin_polarity* flexio_pin_polarity_t
Definition of pin polarity.

typedef enum *_flexio_timer_mode* flexio_timer_mode_t
Define type of timer work mode.

typedef enum *_flexio_timer_output* flexio_timer_output_t
Define type of timer initial output or timer reset condition.

typedef enum *_flexio_timer_decrement_source* flexio_timer_decrement_source_t
Define type of timer decrement.

typedef enum *_flexio_timer_reset_condition* flexio_timer_reset_condition_t
Define type of timer reset condition.

typedef enum *_flexio_timer_disable_condition* flexio_timer_disable_condition_t
Define type of timer disable condition.

typedef enum *_flexio_timer_enable_condition* flexio_timer_enable_condition_t
Define type of timer enable condition.

typedef enum *_flexio_timer_stop_bit_condition* flexio_timer_stop_bit_condition_t
Define type of timer stop bit generate condition.

typedef enum *_flexio_timer_start_bit_condition* flexio_timer_start_bit_condition_t
Define type of timer start bit generate condition.

typedef enum *_flexio_timer_output_state* flexio_timer_output_state_t
FlexIO as PWM channel output state.

typedef enum *_flexio_shifter_timer_polarity* flexio_shifter_timer_polarity_t
Define type of timer polarity for shifter control.

typedef enum *_flexio_shifter_mode* flexio_shifter_mode_t
Define type of shifter working mode.

typedef enum *_flexio_shifter_input_source* flexio_shifter_input_source_t
Define type of shifter input source.

typedef enum *_flexio_shifter_stop_bit* flexio_shifter_stop_bit_t
Define of STOP bit configuration.

typedef enum *_flexio_shifter_start_bit* flexio_shifter_start_bit_t
Define type of START bit configuration.

typedef enum *_flexio_shifter_buffer_type* flexio_shifter_buffer_type_t
Define FlexIO shifter buffer type.

typedef struct *_flexio_config_* flexio_config_t
Define FlexIO user configuration structure.

typedef struct *_flexio_timer_config* flexio_timer_config_t
Define FlexIO timer configuration structure.

typedef struct *_flexio_shifter_config* flexio_shifter_config_t
Define FlexIO shifter configuration structure.

typedef enum *_flexio_gpio_direction* flexio_gpio_direction_t

FLEXIO gpio direction definition.

typedef enum *_flexio_pin_input_config* flexio_pin_input_config_t

FLEXIO gpio input config.

typedef struct *_flexio_gpio_config* flexio_gpio_config_t

The FLEXIO pin configuration structure.

Each pin can only be configured as either an output pin or an input pin at a time. If configured as an input pin, use inputConfig param. If configured as an output pin, use outputLogic.

typedef void (*flexio_isr_t)(void *base, void *handle)

typedef for FlexIO simulated driver interrupt handler.

FLEXIO_Type *const s_flexioBases[]

Pointers to flexio bases for each instance.

const *clock_ip_name_t* s_flexioClocks[]

Pointers to flexio clocks for each instance.

void FLEXIO_SetPinConfig(FLEXIO_Type *base, uint32_t pin, *flexio_gpio_config_t* *config)

Configure a FLEXIO pin used by the board.

To Config the FLEXIO PIN, define a pin configuration, as either input or output, in the user file. Then, call the FLEXIO_SetPinConfig() function.

This is an example to define an input pin or an output pin configuration.

```
Define a digital input pin configuration,
flexio_gpio_config_t config =
{
  kFLEXIO_DigitalInput,
  0U,
  kFLEXIO_FlagRisingEdgeEnable | kFLEXIO_InputInterruptEnable,
}
Define a digital output pin configuration,
flexio_gpio_config_t config =
{
  kFLEXIO_DigitalOutput,
  0U,
  0U
}
```

Parameters

- base – FlexIO peripheral base address
- pin – FLEXIO pin number.
- config – FLEXIO pin configuration pointer.

FLEXIO_TIMER_TRIGGER_SEL_PININPUT(x)

Calculate FlexIO timer trigger.

FLEXIO_TIMER_TRIGGER_SEL_SHIFTnSTAT(x)

FLEXIO_TIMER_TRIGGER_SEL_TIMn(x)

struct _flexio_config_

#include <fsl_flexio.h> Define FlexIO user configuration structure.

Public Members

bool enableFlexio
: Enable/disable FlexIO module

bool enableInDoze
: Enable/disable FlexIO operation in doze mode

bool enableInDebug
: Enable/disable FlexIO operation in debug mode

bool enableFastAccess
: Enable/disable fast access to FlexIO registers, fast access requires the FlexIO clock to be at least twice the frequency of the bus clock.

struct __flexio__timer__config
: *#include <fsl_flexio.h>* Define FlexIO timer configuration structure.

Public Members

uint32_t triggerSelect
: The internal trigger selection number using MACROs.

flexio_timer_trigger_polarity_t triggerPolarity
: Trigger Polarity.

flexio_timer_trigger_source_t triggerSource
: Trigger Source, internal (see 'trgsel') or external.

flexio_pin_config_t pinConfig
: Timer Pin Configuration.

uint32_t pinSelect
: Timer Pin number Select.

flexio_pin_polarity_t pinPolarity
: Timer Pin Polarity.

flexio_timer_mode_t timerMode
: Timer work Mode.

flexio_timer_output_t timerOutput
: Configures the initial state of the Timer Output and whether it is affected by the Timer reset.

flexio_timer_decrement_source_t timerDecrement
: Configures the source of the Timer decrement and the source of the Shift clock.

flexio_timer_reset_condition_t timerReset
: Configures the condition that causes the timer counter (and optionally the timer output) to be reset.

flexio_timer_disable_condition_t timerDisable
: Configures the condition that causes the Timer to be disabled and stop decrementing.

flexio_timer_enable_condition_t timerEnable
: Configures the condition that causes the Timer to be enabled and start decrementing.

flexio_timer_stop_bit_condition_t timerStop
: Timer STOP Bit generation.

flexio_timer_start_bit_condition_t timerStart
Timer STRAT Bit generation.

uint32_t timerCompare
Value for Timer Compare N Register.

struct __flexio_shifter_config
#include <fsl_flexio.h> Define FlexIO shifter configuration structure.

Public Members

uint32_t timerSelect
Selects which Timer is used for controlling the logic/shift register and generating the Shift clock.

flexio_shifter_timer_polarity_t timerPolarity
Timer Polarity.

flexio_pin_config_t pinConfig
Shifter Pin Configuration.

uint32_t pinSelect
Shifter Pin number Select.

flexio_pin_polarity_t pinPolarity
Shifter Pin Polarity.

flexio_shifter_mode_t shifterMode
Configures the mode of the Shifter.

uint32_t parallelWidth
Configures the parallel width when using parallel mode.

flexio_shifter_input_source_t inputSource
Selects the input source for the shifter.

flexio_shifter_stop_bit_t shifterStop
Shifter STOP bit.

flexio_shifter_start_bit_t shifterStart
Shifter START bit.

struct __flexio_gpio_config
#include <fsl_flexio.h> The FLEXIO pin configuration structure.

Each pin can only be configured as either an output pin or an input pin at a time. If configured as an input pin, use inputConfig param. If configured as an output pin, use outputLogic.

Public Members

flexio_gpio_direction_t pinDirection
FLEXIO pin direction, input or output

uint8_t outputLogic
Set a default output logic, which has no use in input

uint8_t inputConfig
Set an input config

2.18 FlexIO I2C Master Driver

status_t FLEXIO_I2C_CheckForBusyBus(*FLEXIO_I2C_Type* *base)

Make sure the bus isn't already pulled down.

Check the FLEXIO pin status to see whether either of SDA and SCL pin is pulled down.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure..

Return values

- kStatus_Success –
- kStatus_FLEXIO_I2C_Busy –

status_t FLEXIO_I2C_MasterInit(*FLEXIO_I2C_Type* *base, *flexio_i2c_master_config_t* *masterConfig, uint32_t srcClock_Hz)

Ungates the FlexIO clock, resets the FlexIO module, and configures the FlexIO I2C hardware configuration.

Example

```
FLEXIO_I2C_Type base = {
.flexioBase = FLEXIO,
.SDAPinIndex = 0,
.SCLPinIndex = 1,
.shifterIndex = {0,1},
.timerIndex = {0,1}
};
flexio_i2c_master_config_t config = {
.enableInDoze = false,
.enableInDebug = true,
.enableFastAccess = false,
.baudRate_Bps = 100000
};
FLEXIO_I2C_MasterInit(base, &config, srcClock_Hz);
```

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure.
- masterConfig – Pointer to flexio_i2c_master_config_t structure.
- srcClock_Hz – FlexIO source clock in Hz.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Initialization successful
- kStatus_InvalidArgument – The source clock exceed upper range limitation

void FLEXIO_I2C_MasterDeinit(*FLEXIO_I2C_Type* *base)

De-initializes the FlexIO I2C master peripheral. Calling this API Resets the FlexIO I2C master shifer and timer config, module can't work unless the FLEXIO_I2C_MasterInit is called.

Parameters

- base – pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure.

void FLEXIO_I2C_MasterGetDefaultConfig(*flexio_i2c_master_config_t* *masterConfig)

Gets the default configuration to configure the FlexIO module. The configuration can be used directly for calling the FLEXIO_I2C_MasterInit().

Example:

```
flexio_i2c_master_config_t config;
FLEXIO_I2C_MasterGetDefaultConfig(&config);
```

Parameters

- masterConfig – Pointer to flexio_i2c_master_config_t structure.

static inline void FLEXIO_I2C_MasterEnable(*FLEXIO_I2C_Type* *base, bool enable)

Enables/disables the FlexIO module operation.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure.
- enable – Pass true to enable module, false does not have any effect.

uint32_t FLEXIO_I2C_MasterGetStatusFlags(*FLEXIO_I2C_Type* *base)

Gets the FlexIO I2C master status flags.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure

Returns

Status flag, use status flag to AND _flexio_i2c_master_status_flags can get the related status.

void FLEXIO_I2C_MasterClearStatusFlags(*FLEXIO_I2C_Type* *base, uint32_t mask)

Clears the FlexIO I2C master status flags.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure.
- mask – Status flag. The parameter can be any combination of the following values:
  - kFLEXIO_I2C_RxFullFlag
  - kFLEXIO_I2C_ReceiveNakFlag

void FLEXIO_I2C_MasterEnableInterrupts(*FLEXIO_I2C_Type* *base, uint32_t mask)

Enables the FlexIO i2c master interrupt requests.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure.
- mask – Interrupt source. Currently only one interrupt request source:
  - kFLEXIO_I2C_TransferCompleteInterruptEnable

void FLEXIO_I2C_MasterDisableInterrupts(*FLEXIO_I2C_Type* *base, uint32_t mask)

Disables the FlexIO I2C master interrupt requests.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure.
- mask – Interrupt source.

void FLEXIO_I2C_MasterSetBaudRate(*FLEXIO_I2C_Type* *base, uint32_t baudRate_Bps, uint32_t srcClock_Hz)

Sets the FlexIO I2C master transfer baudrate.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure
- baudRate_Bps – the baud rate value in HZ

- srcClock_Hz – source clock in HZ

void FLEXIO_I2C_MasterStart(*FLEXIO_I2C_Type* *base, uint8_t address, *flexio_i2c_direction_t* direction)

Sends START + 7-bit address to the bus.

Note: This API should be called when the transfer configuration is ready to send a START signal and 7-bit address to the bus. This is a non-blocking API, which returns directly after the address is put into the data register but the address transfer is not finished on the bus. Ensure that the kFLEXIO_I2C_RxFullFlag status is asserted before calling this API.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure.
- address – 7-bit address.
- direction – transfer direction. This parameter is one of the values in flexio_i2c_direction_t:
  - kFLEXIO_I2C_Write: Transmit
  - kFLEXIO_I2C_Read: Receive

void FLEXIO_I2C_MasterStop(*FLEXIO_I2C_Type* *base)

Sends the stop signal on the bus.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure.

void FLEXIO_I2C_MasterRepeatedStart(*FLEXIO_I2C_Type* *base)

Sends the repeated start signal on the bus.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure.

void FLEXIO_I2C_MasterAbortStop(*FLEXIO_I2C_Type* *base)

Sends the stop signal when transfer is still on-going.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure.

void FLEXIO_I2C_MasterEnableAck(*FLEXIO_I2C_Type* *base, bool enable)

Configures the sent ACK/NAK for the following byte.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure.
- enable – True to configure send ACK, false configure to send NAK.

status_t FLEXIO_I2C_MasterSetTransferCount(*FLEXIO_I2C_Type* *base, uint16_t count)

Sets the number of bytes to be transferred from a start signal to a stop signal.

Note: Call this API before a transfer begins because the timer generates a number of clocks according to the number of bytes that need to be transferred.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure.

- count – Number of bytes need to be transferred from a start signal to a re-start/stop signal

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Successfully configured the count.
- kStatus_InvalidArgument – Input argument is invalid.

static inline void FLEXIO_I2C_MasterWriteByte(*FLEXIO_I2C_Type* *base, uint32_t data)

Writes one byte of data to the I2C bus.

Note: This is a non-blocking API, which returns directly after the data is put into the data register but the data transfer is not finished on the bus. Ensure that the TxEmptyFlag is asserted before calling this API.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure.
- data – a byte of data.

static inline uint8_t FLEXIO_I2C_MasterReadByte(*FLEXIO_I2C_Type* *base)

Reads one byte of data from the I2C bus.

Note: This is a non-blocking API, which returns directly after the data is read from the data register. Ensure that the data is ready in the register.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure.

Returns

data byte read.

status_t FLEXIO_I2C_MasterWriteBlocking(*FLEXIO_I2C_Type* *base, const uint8_t *txBuff, uint8_t txSize)

Sends a buffer of data in bytes.

Note: This function blocks via polling until all bytes have been sent.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure.
- txBuff – The data bytes to send.
- txSize – The number of data bytes to send.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Successfully write data.
- kStatus_FLEXIO_I2C_Nak – Receive NAK during writing data.
- kStatus_FLEXIO_I2C_Timeout – Timeout polling status flags.

status_t FLEXIO_I2C_MasterReadBlocking(*FLEXIO_I2C_Type* *base, uint8_t *rxBuff, uint8_t rxSize)

Receives a buffer of bytes.

Note: This function blocks via polling until all bytes have been received.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure.
- rxBuff – The buffer to store the received bytes.
- rxSize – The number of data bytes to be received.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Successfully read data.
- kStatus_FLEXIO_I2C_Timeout – Timeout polling status flags.

status_t FLEXIO_I2C_MasterTransferBlocking(*FLEXIO_I2C_Type* *base, *flexio_i2c_master_transfer_t* *xfer)

Performs a master polling transfer on the I2C bus.

Note: The API does not return until the transfer succeeds or fails due to receiving NAK.

Parameters

- base – pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure.
- xfer – pointer to flexio_i2c_master_transfer_t structure.

Returns

status of status_t.

status_t FLEXIO_I2C_MasterTransferCreateHandle(*FLEXIO_I2C_Type* *base, *flexio_i2c_master_handle_t* *handle, *flexio_i2c_master_transfer_callback_t* callback, void *userData)

Initializes the I2C handle which is used in transactional functions.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure.
- handle – Pointer to flexio_i2c_master_handle_t structure to store the transfer state.
- callback – Pointer to user callback function.
- userData – User param passed to the callback function.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Successfully create the handle.
- kStatus_OutOfRange – The FlexIO type/handle/isr table out of range.

status_t FLEXIO_I2C_MasterTransferNonBlocking(*FLEXIO_I2C_Type* *base, *flexio_i2c_master_handle_t* *handle, *flexio_i2c_master_transfer_t* *xfer)

Performs a master interrupt non-blocking transfer on the I2C bus.

Note: The API returns immediately after the transfer initiates. Call FLEXIO_I2C_MasterTransferGetCount to poll the transfer status to check whether the

transfer is finished. If the return status is not kStatus_FLEXIO_I2C_Busy, the transfer is finished.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure
- handle – Pointer to flexio_i2c_master_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state
- xfer – pointer to flexio_i2c_master_transfer_t structure

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Successfully start a transfer.
- kStatus_FLEXIO_I2C_Busy – FlexIO I2C is not idle, is running another transfer.

status_t FLEXIO_I2C_MasterTransferGetCount(*FLEXIO_I2C_Type* *base, *flexio_i2c_master_handle_t* *handle, size_t *count)

Gets the master transfer status during a interrupt non-blocking transfer.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure.
- handle – Pointer to flexio_i2c_master_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state.
- count – Number of bytes transferred so far by the non-blocking transaction.

Return values

- kStatus_InvalidArgument – count is Invalid.
- kStatus_NoTransferInProgress – There is not a non-blocking transaction currently in progress.
- kStatus_Success – Successfully return the count.

void FLEXIO_I2C_MasterTransferAbort(*FLEXIO_I2C_Type* *base, *flexio_i2c_master_handle_t* *handle)

Aborts an interrupt non-blocking transfer early.

Note: This API can be called at any time when an interrupt non-blocking transfer initiates to abort the transfer early.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure
- handle – Pointer to flexio_i2c_master_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state

void FLEXIO_I2C_MasterTransferHandleIRQ(void *i2cType, void *i2cHandle)

Master interrupt handler.

Parameters

- i2cType – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure
- i2cHandle – Pointer to flexio_i2c_master_transfer_t structure

FSL_FLEXIO_I2C_MASTER_DRIVER_VERSION

FlexIO I2C transfer status.

Values:

enumerator kStatus_FLEXIO_I2C_Busy
I2C is busy doing transfer.

enumerator kStatus_FLEXIO_I2C_Idle
I2C is busy doing transfer.

enumerator kStatus_FLEXIO_I2C_Nak
NAK received during transfer.

enumerator kStatus_FLEXIO_I2C_Timeout
Timeout polling status flags.

enum _flexio_i2c_master_interrupt
Define FlexIO I2C master interrupt mask.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_I2C_TxEmptyInterruptEnable
Tx buffer empty interrupt enable.

enumerator kFLEXIO_I2C_RxFullInterruptEnable
Rx buffer full interrupt enable.

enum _flexio_i2c_master_status_flags
Define FlexIO I2C master status mask.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_I2C_TxEmptyFlag
Tx shifter empty flag.

enumerator kFLEXIO_I2C_RxFullFlag
Rx shifter full/Transfer complete flag.

enumerator kFLEXIO_I2C_ReceiveNakFlag
Receive NAK flag.

enum _flexio_i2c_direction
Direction of master transfer.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_I2C_Write
Master send to slave.

enumerator kFLEXIO_I2C_Read
Master receive from slave.

typedef enum *_flexio_i2c_direction* flexio_i2c_direction_t
Direction of master transfer.

typedef struct *_flexio_i2c_type* FLEXIO_I2C_Type
Define FlexIO I2C master access structure typedef.

typedef struct *_flexio_i2c_master_config* flexio_i2c_master_config_t
Define FlexIO I2C master user configuration structure.

typedef struct *_flexio_i2c_master_transfer* flexio_i2c_master_transfer_t

Define FlexIO I2C master transfer structure.

typedef struct *_flexio_i2c_master_handle* flexio_i2c_master_handle_t

FlexIO I2C master handle typedef.

typedef void (*flexio_i2c_master_transfer_callback_t)(*FLEXIO_I2C_Type* *base, *flexio_i2c_master_handle_t* *handle, *status_t* status, void *userData)

FlexIO I2C master transfer callback typedef.

I2C_RETRY_TIMES

Retry times for waiting flag.

struct _flexio_i2c_type

#include <fsl_flexio_i2c_master.h> Define FlexIO I2C master access structure typedef.

Public Members

FLEXIO_Type *flexioBase

FlexIO base pointer.

uint8_t SDAPinIndex

Pin select for I2C SDA.

uint8_t SCLPinIndex

Pin select for I2C SCL.

uint8_t shifterIndex[2]

Shifter index used in FlexIO I2C.

uint8_t timerIndex[3]

Timer index used in FlexIO I2C.

uint32_t baudrate

Master transfer baudrate, used to calculate delay time.

struct _flexio_i2c_master_config

#include <fsl_flexio_i2c_master.h> Define FlexIO I2C master user configuration structure.

Public Members

bool enableMaster

Enables the FlexIO I2C peripheral at initialization time.

bool enableInDoze

Enable/disable FlexIO operation in doze mode.

bool enableInDebug

Enable/disable FlexIO operation in debug mode.

bool enableFastAccess

Enable/disable fast access to FlexIO registers, fast access requires the FlexIO clock to be at least twice the frequency of the bus clock.

uint32_t baudRate_Bps

Baud rate in Bps.

struct _flexio_i2c_master_transfer

#include <fsl_flexio_i2c_master.h> Define FlexIO I2C master transfer structure.

Public Members

uint32_t flags
: Transfer flag which controls the transfer, reserved for FlexIO I2C.

uint8_t slaveAddress
: 7-bit slave address.

flexio_i2c_direction_t direction
: Transfer direction, read or write.

uint32_t subaddress
: Sub address. Transferred MSB first.

uint8_t subaddressSize
: Size of sub address.

uint8_t volatile *data
: Transfer buffer.

volatile size_t dataSize
: Transfer size.

struct __flexio_i2c_master_handle
: *#include <fsl_flexio_i2c_master.h>* Define FlexIO I2C master handle structure.

Public Members

flexio_i2c_master_transfer_t transfer
: FlexIO I2C master transfer copy.

size_t transferSize
: Total bytes to be transferred.

uint8_t state
: Transfer state maintained during transfer.

flexio_i2c_master_transfer_callback_t completionCallback
: Callback function called at transfer event. Callback function called at transfer event.

void *userData
: Callback parameter passed to callback function.

bool needRestart
: Whether master needs to send re-start signal.

2.19 FlexIO I2S Driver

void FLEXIO_I2S_Init(*FLEXIO_I2S_Type* *base, const *flexio_i2s_config_t* *config)
: Initializes the FlexIO I2S.

  This API configures FlexIO pins and shifter to I2S and configures the FlexIO I2S with a configuration structure. The configuration structure can be filled by the user, or be set with default values by FLEXIO_I2S_GetDefaultConfig().

  Note: This API should be called at the beginning of the application to use the FlexIO I2S driver. Otherwise, any access to the FlexIO I2S module can cause hard fault because the clock is not enabled.

Parameters

- base – FlexIO I2S base pointer
- config – FlexIO I2S configure structure.

void FLEXIO_I2S_GetDefaultConfig(*flexio_i2s_config_t* *config)

Sets the FlexIO I2S configuration structure to default values.

The purpose of this API is to get the configuration structure initialized for use in FLEXIO_I2S_Init(). Users may use the initialized structure unchanged in FLEXIO_I2S_Init() or modify some fields of the structure before calling FLEXIO_I2S_Init().

Parameters

- config – pointer to master configuration structure

void FLEXIO_I2S_Deinit(*FLEXIO_I2S_Type* *base)

De-initializes the FlexIO I2S.

Calling this API resets the FlexIO I2S shifter and timer config. After calling this API, call the FLEXO_I2S_Init to use the FlexIO I2S module.

Parameters

- base – FlexIO I2S base pointer

static inline void FLEXIO_I2S_Enable(*FLEXIO_I2S_Type* *base, bool enable)

Enables/disables the FlexIO I2S module operation.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type
- enable – True to enable, false dose not have any effect.

uint32_t FLEXIO_I2S_GetStatusFlags(*FLEXIO_I2S_Type* *base)

Gets the FlexIO I2S status flags.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure

Returns

Status flag, which are ORed by the enumerators in the _flexio_i2s_status_flags.

void FLEXIO_I2S_EnableInterrupts(*FLEXIO_I2S_Type* *base, uint32_t mask)

Enables the FlexIO I2S interrupt.

This function enables the FlexIO UART interrupt.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure
- mask – interrupt source

void FLEXIO_I2S_DisableInterrupts(*FLEXIO_I2S_Type* *base, uint32_t mask)

Disables the FlexIO I2S interrupt.

This function enables the FlexIO UART interrupt.

Parameters

- base – pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure
- mask – interrupt source

static inline void FLEXIO_I2S_TxEnableDMA(*FLEXIO_I2S_Type* *base, bool enable)

Enables/disables the FlexIO I2S Tx DMA requests.

Parameters

- base – FlexIO I2S base pointer
- enable – True means enable DMA, false means disable DMA.

static inline void FLEXIO_I2S_RxEnableDMA(*FLEXIO_I2S_Type* *base, bool enable)

Enables/disables the FlexIO I2S Rx DMA requests.

Parameters

- base – FlexIO I2S base pointer
- enable – True means enable DMA, false means disable DMA.

static inline uint32_t FLEXIO_I2S_TxGetDataRegisterAddress(*FLEXIO_I2S_Type* *base)

Gets the FlexIO I2S send data register address.

This function returns the I2S data register address, mainly used by DMA/eDMA.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure

Returns

FlexIO i2s send data register address.

static inline uint32_t FLEXIO_I2S_RxGetDataRegisterAddress(*FLEXIO_I2S_Type* *base)

Gets the FlexIO I2S receive data register address.

This function returns the I2S data register address, mainly used by DMA/eDMA.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure

Returns

FlexIO i2s receive data register address.

void FLEXIO_I2S_MasterSetFormat(*FLEXIO_I2S_Type* *base, *flexio_i2s_format_t* *format, uint32_t srcClock_Hz)

Configures the FlexIO I2S audio format in master mode.

Audio format can be changed in run-time of FlexIO I2S. This function configures the sample rate and audio data format to be transferred.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure
- format – Pointer to FlexIO I2S audio data format structure.
- srcClock_Hz – I2S master clock source frequency in Hz.

void FLEXIO_I2S_SlaveSetFormat(*FLEXIO_I2S_Type* *base, *flexio_i2s_format_t* *format)

Configures the FlexIO I2S audio format in slave mode.

Audio format can be changed in run-time of FlexIO I2S. This function configures the sample rate and audio data format to be transferred.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure
- format – Pointer to FlexIO I2S audio data format structure.

status_t FLEXIO_I2S_WriteBlocking(*FLEXIO_I2S_Type* *base, uint8_t bitWidth, uint8_t *txData, size_t size)

Sends data using a blocking method.

Note: This function blocks via polling until data is ready to be sent.

Parameters

- base – FlexIO I2S base pointer.
- bitWidth – How many bits in a audio word, usually 8/16/24/32 bits.
- txData – Pointer to the data to be written.
- size – Bytes to be written.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Successfully write data.
- kStatus_FLEXIO_I2C_Timeout – Timeout polling status flags.

static inline void FLEXIO_I2S_WriteData(*FLEXIO_I2S_Type* *base, uint8_t bitWidth, uint32_t data)

Writes data into a data register.

Parameters

- base – FlexIO I2S base pointer.
- bitWidth – How many bits in a audio word, usually 8/16/24/32 bits.
- data – Data to be written.

status_t FLEXIO_I2S_ReadBlocking(*FLEXIO_I2S_Type* *base, uint8_t bitWidth, uint8_t *rxData, size_t size)

Receives a piece of data using a blocking method.

Note: This function blocks via polling until data is ready to be sent.

Parameters

- base – FlexIO I2S base pointer
- bitWidth – How many bits in a audio word, usually 8/16/24/32 bits.
- rxData – Pointer to the data to be read.
- size – Bytes to be read.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Successfully read data.
- kStatus_FLEXIO_I2C_Timeout – Timeout polling status flags.

static inline uint32_t FLEXIO_I2S_ReadData(*FLEXIO_I2S_Type* *base)

Reads a data from the data register.

Parameters

- base – FlexIO I2S base pointer

Returns

Data read from data register.

void FLEXIO_I2S_TransferTxCreateHandle(*FLEXIO_I2S_Type* *base, *flexio_i2s_handle_t* *handle, *flexio_i2s_callback_t* callback, void *userData)

Initializes the FlexIO I2S handle.

This function initializes the FlexIO I2S handle which can be used for other FlexIO I2S transactional APIs. Call this API once to get the initialized handle.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure
- handle – Pointer to flexio_i2s_handle_t structure to store the transfer state.
- callback – FlexIO I2S callback function, which is called while finished a block.
- userData – User parameter for the FlexIO I2S callback.

void FLEXIO_I2S_TransferSetFormat(*FLEXIO_I2S_Type* *base, *flexio_i2s_handle_t* *handle, *flexio_i2s_format_t* *format, uint32_t srcClock_Hz)

Configures the FlexIO I2S audio format.

Audio format can be changed at run-time of FlexIO I2S. This function configures the sample rate and audio data format to be transferred.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure.
- handle – FlexIO I2S handle pointer.
- format – Pointer to audio data format structure.
- srcClock_Hz – FlexIO I2S bit clock source frequency in Hz. This parameter should be 0 while in slave mode.

void FLEXIO_I2S_TransferRxCreateHandle(*FLEXIO_I2S_Type* *base, *flexio_i2s_handle_t* *handle, *flexio_i2s_callback_t* callback, void *userData)

Initializes the FlexIO I2S receive handle.

This function initializes the FlexIO I2S handle which can be used for other FlexIO I2S transactional APIs. Call this API once to get the initialized handle.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure.
- handle – Pointer to flexio_i2s_handle_t structure to store the transfer state.
- callback – FlexIO I2S callback function, which is called while finished a block.
- userData – User parameter for the FlexIO I2S callback.

status_t FLEXIO_I2S_TransferSendNonBlocking(*FLEXIO_I2S_Type* *base, *flexio_i2s_handle_t* *handle, *flexio_i2s_transfer_t* *xfer)

Performs an interrupt non-blocking send transfer on FlexIO I2S.

Note: The API returns immediately after transfer initiates. Call FLEXIO_I2S_GetRemainingBytes to poll the transfer status and check whether the transfer is finished. If the return status is 0, the transfer is finished.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure.

- handle – Pointer to flexio_i2s_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state
- xfer – Pointer to flexio_i2s_transfer_t structure

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Successfully start the data transmission.
- kStatus_FLEXIO_I2S_TxBusy – Previous transmission still not finished, data not all written to TX register yet.
- kStatus_InvalidArgument – The input parameter is invalid.

status_t FLEXIO_I2S_TransferReceiveNonBlocking(*FLEXIO_I2S_Type* *base, *flexio_i2s_handle_t* *handle, *flexio_i2s_transfer_t* *xfer)

Performs an interrupt non-blocking receive transfer on FlexIO I2S.

Note: The API returns immediately after transfer initiates. Call FLEXIO_I2S_GetRemainingBytes to poll the transfer status to check whether the transfer is finished. If the return status is 0, the transfer is finished.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure.
- handle – Pointer to flexio_i2s_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state
- xfer – Pointer to flexio_i2s_transfer_t structure

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Successfully start the data receive.
- kStatus_FLEXIO_I2S_RxBusy – Previous receive still not finished.
- kStatus_InvalidArgument – The input parameter is invalid.

void FLEXIO_I2S_TransferAbortSend(*FLEXIO_I2S_Type* *base, *flexio_i2s_handle_t* *handle)

Aborts the current send.

Note: This API can be called at any time when interrupt non-blocking transfer initiates to abort the transfer in a early time.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure.
- handle – Pointer to flexio_i2s_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state

void FLEXIO_I2S_TransferAbortReceive(*FLEXIO_I2S_Type* *base, *flexio_i2s_handle_t* *handle)

Aborts the current receive.

Note: This API can be called at any time when interrupt non-blocking transfer initiates to abort the transfer in a early time.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure.

- handle – Pointer to flexio_i2s_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state

status_t FLEXIO_I2S_TransferGetSendCount(*FLEXIO_I2S_Type* *base, *flexio_i2s_handle_t* *handle, size_t *count)

Gets the remaining bytes to be sent.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure.
- handle – Pointer to flexio_i2s_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state
- count – Bytes sent.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Succeed get the transfer count.
- kStatus_NoTransferInProgress – There is not a non-blocking transaction currently in progress.

status_t FLEXIO_I2S_TransferGetReceiveCount(*FLEXIO_I2S_Type* *base, *flexio_i2s_handle_t* *handle, size_t *count)

Gets the remaining bytes to be received.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure.
- handle – Pointer to flexio_i2s_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state
- count – Bytes recieved.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Succeed get the transfer count.
- kStatus_NoTransferInProgress – There is not a non-blocking transaction currently in progress.

Returns

count Bytes received.

void FLEXIO_I2S_TransferTxHandleIRQ(void *i2sBase, void *i2sHandle)

Tx interrupt handler.

Parameters

- i2sBase – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure.
- i2sHandle – Pointer to flexio_i2s_handle_t structure

void FLEXIO_I2S_TransferRxHandleIRQ(void *i2sBase, void *i2sHandle)

Rx interrupt handler.

Parameters

- i2sBase – Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure.
- i2sHandle – Pointer to flexio_i2s_handle_t structure.

FSL_FLEXIO_I2S_DRIVER_VERSION

FlexIO I2S driver version 2.2.2.

FlexIO I2S transfer status.

Values:

enumerator kStatus_FLEXIO_I2S_Idle
FlexIO I2S is in idle state

enumerator kStatus_FLEXIO_I2S_TxBusy
FlexIO I2S Tx is busy

enumerator kStatus_FLEXIO_I2S_RxBusy
FlexIO I2S Tx is busy

enumerator kStatus_FLEXIO_I2S_Error
FlexIO I2S error occurred

enumerator kStatus_FLEXIO_I2S_QueueFull
FlexIO I2S transfer queue is full.

enumerator kStatus_FLEXIO_I2S_Timeout
FlexIO I2S timeout polling status flags.

enum _flexio_i2s_master_slave
Master or slave mode.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_I2S_Master
Master mode

enumerator kFLEXIO_I2S_Slave
Slave mode

_flexio_i2s_interrupt_enable Define FlexIO FlexIO I2S interrupt mask.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_I2S_TxDataRegEmptyInterruptEnable
Transmit buffer empty interrupt enable.

enumerator kFLEXIO_I2S_RxDataRegFullInterruptEnable
Receive buffer full interrupt enable.

_flexio_i2s_status_flags Define FlexIO FlexIO I2S status mask.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_I2S_TxDataRegEmptyFlag
Transmit buffer empty flag.

enumerator kFLEXIO_I2S_RxDataRegFullFlag
Receive buffer full flag.

enum _flexio_i2s_sample_rate
Audio sample rate.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_I2S_SampleRate8KHz
Sample rate 8000Hz

enumerator kFLEXIO_I2S_SampleRate11025Hz
Sample rate 11025Hz

enumerator kFLEXIO_I2S_SampleRate12KHz
Sample rate 12000Hz

enumerator kFLEXIO_I2S_SampleRate16KHz
Sample rate 16000Hz

enumerator kFLEXIO_I2S_SampleRate22050Hz
Sample rate 22050Hz

enumerator kFLEXIO_I2S_SampleRate24KHz
Sample rate 24000Hz

enumerator kFLEXIO_I2S_SampleRate32KHz
Sample rate 32000Hz

enumerator kFLEXIO_I2S_SampleRate44100Hz
Sample rate 44100Hz

enumerator kFLEXIO_I2S_SampleRate48KHz
Sample rate 48000Hz

enumerator kFLEXIO_I2S_SampleRate96KHz
Sample rate 96000Hz

enum _flexio_i2s_word_width
Audio word width.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_I2S_WordWidth8bits
Audio data width 8 bits

enumerator kFLEXIO_I2S_WordWidth16bits
Audio data width 16 bits

enumerator kFLEXIO_I2S_WordWidth24bits
Audio data width 24 bits

enumerator kFLEXIO_I2S_WordWidth32bits
Audio data width 32 bits

typedef struct *_flexio_i2s_type* FLEXIO_I2S_Type
Define FlexIO I2S access structure typedef.

typedef enum *_flexio_i2s_master_slave* flexio_i2s_master_slave_t
Master or slave mode.

typedef struct *_flexio_i2s_config* flexio_i2s_config_t
FlexIO I2S configure structure.

typedef struct *_flexio_i2s_format* flexio_i2s_format_t
FlexIO I2S audio format, FlexIO I2S only support the same format in Tx and Rx.

typedef enum *_flexio_i2s_sample_rate* flexio_i2s_sample_rate_t
Audio sample rate.

typedef enum *_flexio_i2s_word_width* flexio_i2s_word_width_t
Audio word width.

typedef struct *_flexio_i2s_transfer* flexio_i2s_transfer_t

Define FlexIO I2S transfer structure.

typedef struct *_flexio_i2s_handle* flexio_i2s_handle_t

typedef void (*flexio_i2s_callback_t)(*FLEXIO_I2S_Type* *base, *flexio_i2s_handle_t* *handle, *status_t* status, void *userData)

FlexIO I2S xfer callback prototype.

I2S_RETRY_TIMES

Retry times for waiting flag.

FLEXIO_I2S_XFER_QUEUE_SIZE

FlexIO I2S transfer queue size, user can refine it according to use case.

struct flexio_i2s_type

#include <fsl_flexio_i2s.h> Define FlexIO I2S access structure typedef.

Public Members

FLEXIO_Type *flexioBase

FlexIO base pointer

uint8_t txPinIndex

Tx data pin index in FlexIO pins

uint8_t rxPinIndex

Rx data pin index

uint8_t bclkPinIndex

Bit clock pin index

uint8_t fsPinIndex

Frame sync pin index

uint8_t txShifterIndex

Tx data shifter index

uint8_t rxShifterIndex

Rx data shifter index

uint8_t bclkTimerIndex

Bit clock timer index

uint8_t fsTimerIndex

Frame sync timer index

struct flexio_i2s_config

#include <fsl_flexio_i2s.h> FlexIO I2S configure structure.

Public Members

bool enableI2S

Enable FlexIO I2S

flexio_i2s_master_slave_t masterSlave

Master or slave

flexio_pin_polarity_t txPinPolarity

Tx data pin polarity, active high or low

flexio_pin_polarity_t rxPinPolarity
Rx data pin polarity

flexio_pin_polarity_t bclkPinPolarity
Bit clock pin polarity

flexio_pin_polarity_t fsPinPolarity
Frame sync pin polarity

flexio_shifter_timer_polarity_t txTimerPolarity
Tx data valid on bclk rising or falling edge

flexio_shifter_timer_polarity_t rxTimerPolarity
Rx data valid on bclk rising or falling edge

struct __flexio_i2s_format
#include <fsl_flexio_i2s.h> FlexIO I2S audio format, FlexIO I2S only support the same format in Tx and Rx.

Public Members

uint8_t bitWidth
Bit width of audio data, always 8/16/24/32 bits

uint32_t sampleRate_Hz
Sample rate of the audio data

struct __flexio_i2s_transfer
#include <fsl_flexio_i2s.h> Define FlexIO I2S transfer structure.

Public Members

uint8_t *data
Data buffer start pointer

size_t dataSize
Bytes to be transferred.

struct __flexio_i2s_handle
#include <fsl_flexio_i2s.h> Define FlexIO I2S handle structure.

Public Members

uint32_t state
Internal state

flexio_i2s_callback_t callback
Callback function called at transfer event

void *userData
Callback parameter passed to callback function

uint8_t bitWidth
Bit width for transfer, 8/16/24/32bits

flexio_i2s_transfer_t queue[(4U)]
Transfer queue storing queued transfer

size_t transferSize[(4U)]

Data bytes need to transfer

volatile uint8_t queueUser

Index for user to queue transfer

volatile uint8_t queueDriver

Index for driver to get the transfer data and size

2.20 FlexIO SPI Driver

void FLEXIO_SPI_MasterInit(*FLEXIO_SPI_Type* *base, *flexio_spi_master_config_t* *masterConfig, uint32_t srcClock_Hz)

Ungates the FlexIO clock, resets the FlexIO module, configures the FlexIO SPI master hardware, and configures the FlexIO SPI with FlexIO SPI master configuration. The configuration structure can be filled by the user, or be set with default values by the FLEXIO_SPI_MasterGetDefaultConfig().

Example

```
FLEXIO_SPI_Type spiDev = {
.flexioBase = FLEXIO,
.SDOPinIndex = 0,
.SDIPinIndex = 1,
.SCKPinIndex = 2,
.CSnPinIndex = 3,
.shifterIndex = {0,1},
.timerIndex = {0,1}
};
flexio_spi_master_config_t config = {
.enableMaster = true,
.enableInDoze = false,
.enableInDebug = true,
.enableFastAccess = false,
.baudRate_Bps = 500000,
.phase = kFLEXIO_SPI_ClockPhaseFirstEdge,
.direction = kFLEXIO_SPI_MsbFirst,
.dataMode = kFLEXIO_SPI_8BitMode
};
FLEXIO_SPI_MasterInit(&spiDev, &config, srcClock_Hz);
```

Note: 1.FlexIO SPI master only support CPOL = 0, which means clock inactive low. 2.For FlexIO SPI master, the input valid time is 1.5 clock cycles, for slave the output valid time is 2.5 clock cycles. So if FlexIO SPI master communicates with other spi IPs, the maximum baud rate is FlexIO clock frequency divided by 2*2=4. If FlexIO SPI master communicates with FlexIO SPI slave, the maximum baud rate is FlexIO clock frequency divided by (1.5+2.5)*2=8.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.
- masterConfig – Pointer to the flexio_spi_master_config_t structure.
- srcClock_Hz – FlexIO source clock in Hz.

void FLEXIO_SPI_MasterDeinit(*FLEXIO_SPI_Type* *base)

Resets the FlexIO SPI timer and shifter config.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type.

void FLEXIO_SPI_MasterGetDefaultConfig(*flexio_spi_master_config_t* *masterConfig)

Gets the default configuration to configure the FlexIO SPI master. The configuration can be used directly by calling the FLEXIO_SPI_MasterConfigure(). Example:

```
flexio_spi_master_config_t masterConfig;
FLEXIO_SPI_MasterGetDefaultConfig(&masterConfig);
```

Parameters

- masterConfig – Pointer to the flexio_spi_master_config_t structure.

void FLEXIO_SPI_SlaveInit(*FLEXIO_SPI_Type* *base, *flexio_spi_slave_config_t* *slaveConfig)

Ungates the FlexIO clock, resets the FlexIO module, configures the FlexIO SPI slave hardware configuration, and configures the FlexIO SPI with FlexIO SPI slave configuration. The configuration structure can be filled by the user, or be set with default values by the FLEXIO_SPI_SlaveGetDefaultConfig().

Note: 1.Only one timer is needed in the FlexIO SPI slave. As a result, the second timer index is ignored. 2.FlexIO SPI slave only support CPOL = 0, which means clock inactive low. 3.For FlexIO SPI master, the input valid time is 1.5 clock cycles, for slave the output valid time is 2.5 clock cycles. So if FlexIO SPI slave communicates with other spi IPs, the maximum baud rate is FlexIO clock frequency divided by 3*2=6. If FlexIO SPI slave communicates with FlexIO SPI master, the maximum baud rate is FlexIO clock frequency divided by (1.5+2.5)*2=8. Example

```
FLEXIO_SPI_Type spiDev = {
.flexioBase = FLEXIO,
.SDOPinIndex = 0,
.SDIPinIndex = 1,
.SCKPinIndex = 2,
.CSnPinIndex = 3,
.shifterIndex = {0,1},
.timerIndex = {0}
};
flexio_spi_slave_config_t config = {
.enableSlave = true,
.enableInDoze = false,
.enableInDebug = true,
.enableFastAccess = false,
.phase = kFLEXIO_SPI_ClockPhaseFirstEdge,
.direction = kFLEXIO_SPI_MsbFirst,
.dataMode = kFLEXIO_SPI_8BitMode
};
FLEXIO_SPI_SlaveInit(&spiDev, &config);
```

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.
- slaveConfig – Pointer to the flexio_spi_slave_config_t structure.

void FLEXIO_SPI_SlaveDeinit(*FLEXIO_SPI_Type* *base)

Gates the FlexIO clock.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type.

void FLEXIO_SPI_SlaveGetDefaultConfig(*flexio_spi_slave_config_t* *slaveConfig)

Gets the default configuration to configure the FlexIO SPI slave. The configuration can be used directly for calling the FLEXIO_SPI_SlaveConfigure(). Example:

```
flexio_spi_slave_config_t slaveConfig;
FLEXIO_SPI_SlaveGetDefaultConfig(&slaveConfig);
```

Parameters

- slaveConfig – Pointer to the flexio_spi_slave_config_t structure.

uint32_t FLEXIO_SPI_GetStatusFlags(*FLEXIO_SPI_Type* *base)

Gets FlexIO SPI status flags.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.

Returns

status flag; Use the status flag to AND the following flag mask and get the status.

- kFLEXIO_SPI_TxEmptyFlag
- kFLEXIO_SPI_RxEmptyFlag

void FLEXIO_SPI_ClearStatusFlags(*FLEXIO_SPI_Type* *base, uint32_t mask)

Clears FlexIO SPI status flags.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.
- mask – status flag The parameter can be any combination of the following values:
  - kFLEXIO_SPI_TxEmptyFlag
  - kFLEXIO_SPI_RxEmptyFlag

void FLEXIO_SPI_EnableInterrupts(*FLEXIO_SPI_Type* *base, uint32_t mask)

Enables the FlexIO SPI interrupt.

This function enables the FlexIO SPI interrupt.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.
- mask – interrupt source. The parameter can be any combination of the following values:
  - kFLEXIO_SPI_RxFullInterruptEnable
  - kFLEXIO_SPI_TxEmptyInterruptEnable

void FLEXIO_SPI_DisableInterrupts(*FLEXIO_SPI_Type* *base, uint32_t mask)

Disables the FlexIO SPI interrupt.

This function disables the FlexIO SPI interrupt.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.
- mask – interrupt source The parameter can be any combination of the following values:
  - kFLEXIO_SPI_RxFullInterruptEnable
  - kFLEXIO_SPI_TxEmptyInterruptEnable

void FLEXIO_SPI_EnableDMA(*FLEXIO_SPI_Type* *base, uint32_t mask, bool enable)

Enables/disables the FlexIO SPI transmit DMA. This function enables/disables the FlexIO SPI Tx DMA, which means that asserting the kFLEXIO_SPI_TxEmptyFlag does/doesn't trigger the DMA request.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.
- mask – SPI DMA source.
- enable – True means enable DMA, false means disable DMA.

static inline uint32_t FLEXIO_SPI_GetTxDataRegisterAddress(*FLEXIO_SPI_Type* *base, *flexio_spi_shift_direction_t* direction)

Gets the FlexIO SPI transmit data register address for MSB first transfer.

This function returns the SPI data register address, which is mainly used by DMA/eDMA.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.
- direction – Shift direction of MSB first or LSB first.

Returns

FlexIO SPI transmit data register address.

static inline uint32_t FLEXIO_SPI_GetRxDataRegisterAddress(*FLEXIO_SPI_Type* *base, *flexio_spi_shift_direction_t* direction)

Gets the FlexIO SPI receive data register address for the MSB first transfer.

This function returns the SPI data register address, which is mainly used by DMA/eDMA.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.
- direction – Shift direction of MSB first or LSB first.

Returns

FlexIO SPI receive data register address.

static inline void FLEXIO_SPI_Enable(*FLEXIO_SPI_Type* *base, bool enable)

Enables/disables the FlexIO SPI module operation.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type.
- enable – True to enable, false does not have any effect.

void FLEXIO_SPI_MasterSetBaudRate(*FLEXIO_SPI_Type* *base, uint32_t baudRate_Bps, uint32_t srcClockHz)

Sets baud rate for the FlexIO SPI transfer, which is only used for the master.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.
- baudRate_Bps – Baud Rate needed in Hz.
- srcClockHz – SPI source clock frequency in Hz.

static inline void FLEXIO_SPI_WriteData(*FLEXIO_SPI_Type* *base, *flexio_spi_shift_direction_t* direction, uint32_t data)

Writes one byte of data, which is sent using the MSB method.

Note: This is a non-blocking API, which returns directly after the data is put into the data register but the data transfer is not finished on the bus. Ensure that the TxEmptyFlag is asserted before calling this API.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.
- direction – Shift direction of MSB first or LSB first.
- data – 8/16/32 bit data.

static inline uint32_t FLEXIO_SPI_ReadData(*FLEXIO_SPI_Type* *base, *flexio_spi_shift_direction_t* direction)

Reads 8 bit/16 bit data.

Note: This is a non-blocking API, which returns directly after the data is read from the data register. Ensure that the RxFullFlag is asserted before calling this API.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.
- direction – Shift direction of MSB first or LSB first.

Returns

8 bit/16 bit data received.

status_t FLEXIO_SPI_WriteBlocking(*FLEXIO_SPI_Type* *base, *flexio_spi_shift_direction_t* direction, const uint8_t *buffer, size_t size)

Sends a buffer of data bytes.

Note: This function blocks using the polling method until all bytes have been sent.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.
- direction – Shift direction of MSB first or LSB first.
- buffer – The data bytes to send.
- size – The number of data bytes to send.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Successfully create the handle.
- kStatus_FLEXIO_SPI_Timeout – The transfer timed out and was aborted.

status_t FLEXIO_SPI_ReadBlocking(*FLEXIO_SPI_Type* *base, *flexio_spi_shift_direction_t* direction, uint8_t *buffer, size_t size)

Receives a buffer of bytes.

Note: This function blocks using the polling method until all bytes have been received.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.
- direction – Shift direction of MSB first or LSB first.
- buffer – The buffer to store the received bytes.
- size – The number of data bytes to be received.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Successfully create the handle.
- kStatus_FLEXIO_SPI_Timeout – The transfer timed out and was aborted.

status_t FLEXIO_SPI_MasterTransferBlocking(*FLEXIO_SPI_Type* *base, *flexio_spi_transfer_t* *xfer)

Receives a buffer of bytes.

Note: This function blocks via polling until all bytes have been received.

Parameters

- base – pointer to FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure
- xfer – FlexIO SPI transfer structure, see flexio_spi_transfer_t.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Successfully create the handle.
- kStatus_FLEXIO_SPI_Timeout – The transfer timed out and was aborted.

void FLEXIO_SPI_FlushShifters(*FLEXIO_SPI_Type* *base)

Flush tx/rx shifters.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.

status_t FLEXIO_SPI_MasterTransferCreateHandle(*FLEXIO_SPI_Type* *base, *flexio_spi_master_handle_t* *handle, *flexio_spi_master_transfer_callback_t* callback, void *userData)

Initializes the FlexIO SPI Master handle, which is used in transactional functions.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.
- handle – Pointer to the flexio_spi_master_handle_t structure to store the transfer state.
- callback – The callback function.
- userData – The parameter of the callback function.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Successfully create the handle.
- kStatus_OutOfRange – The FlexIO type/handle/ISR table out of range.

status_t FLEXIO_SPI_MasterTransferNonBlocking(*FLEXIO_SPI_Type* *base, *flexio_spi_master_handle_t* *handle, *flexio_spi_transfer_t* *xfer)

Master transfer data using IRQ.

This function sends data using IRQ. This is a non-blocking function, which returns right away. When all data is sent out/received, the callback function is called.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.
- handle – Pointer to the flexio_spi_master_handle_t structure to store the transfer state.
- xfer – FlexIO SPI transfer structure. See flexio_spi_transfer_t.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Successfully start a transfer.
- kStatus_InvalidArgument – Input argument is invalid.
- kStatus_FLEXIO_SPI_Busy – SPI is not idle, is running another transfer.

void FLEXIO_SPI_MasterTransferAbort(*FLEXIO_SPI_Type* *base, *flexio_spi_master_handle_t* *handle)

Aborts the master data transfer, which used IRQ.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.
- handle – Pointer to the flexio_spi_master_handle_t structure to store the transfer state.

status_t FLEXIO_SPI_MasterTransferGetCount(*FLEXIO_SPI_Type* *base, *flexio_spi_master_handle_t* *handle, size_t *count)

Gets the data transfer status which used IRQ.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.
- handle – Pointer to the flexio_spi_master_handle_t structure to store the transfer state.
- count – Number of bytes transferred so far by the non-blocking transaction.

Return values

- kStatus_InvalidArgument – count is Invalid.
- kStatus_Success – Successfully return the count.

void FLEXIO_SPI_MasterTransferHandleIRQ(void *spiType, void *spiHandle)

FlexIO SPI master IRQ handler function.

Parameters

- spiType – Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.
- spiHandle – Pointer to the flexio_spi_master_handle_t structure to store the transfer state.

status_t FLEXIO_SPI_SlaveTransferCreateHandle(*FLEXIO_SPI_Type* *base,
flexio_spi_slave_handle_t *handle,
flexio_spi_slave_transfer_callback_t callback,
void *userData)

Initializes the FlexIO SPI Slave handle, which is used in transactional functions.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.
- handle – Pointer to the flexio_spi_slave_handle_t structure to store the transfer state.
- callback – The callback function.
- userData – The parameter of the callback function.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Successfully create the handle.
- kStatus_OutOfRange – The FlexIO type/handle/ISR table out of range.

status_t FLEXIO_SPI_SlaveTransferNonBlocking(*FLEXIO_SPI_Type* *base,
flexio_spi_slave_handle_t *handle,
flexio_spi_transfer_t *xfer)

Slave transfer data using IRQ.

This function sends data using IRQ. This is a non-blocking function, which returns right away. When all data is sent out/received, the callback function is called.

Parameters

- handle – Pointer to the flexio_spi_slave_handle_t structure to store the transfer state.
- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.
- xfer – FlexIO SPI transfer structure. See flexio_spi_transfer_t.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Successfully start a transfer.
- kStatus_InvalidArgument – Input argument is invalid.
- kStatus_FLEXIO_SPI_Busy – SPI is not idle; it is running another transfer.

static inline void FLEXIO_SPI_SlaveTransferAbort(*FLEXIO_SPI_Type* *base,
flexio_spi_slave_handle_t *handle)

Aborts the slave data transfer which used IRQ, share same API with master.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.
- handle – Pointer to the flexio_spi_slave_handle_t structure to store the transfer state.

static inline *status_t* FLEXIO_SPI_SlaveTransferGetCount(*FLEXIO_SPI_Type* *base,
flexio_spi_slave_handle_t *handle,
size_t *count)

Gets the data transfer status which used IRQ, share same API with master.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.
- handle – Pointer to the flexio_spi_slave_handle_t structure to store the transfer state.

- count – Number of bytes transferred so far by the non-blocking transaction.

Return values

- kStatus_InvalidArgument – count is Invalid.
- kStatus_Success – Successfully return the count.

void FLEXIO_SPI_SlaveTransferHandleIRQ(void *spiType, void *spiHandle)

FlexIO SPI slave IRQ handler function.

Parameters

- spiType – Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.
- spiHandle – Pointer to the flexio_spi_slave_handle_t structure to store the transfer state.

FSL_FLEXIO_SPI_DRIVER_VERSION

FlexIO SPI driver version.

Error codes for the FlexIO SPI driver.

Values:

enumerator kStatus_FLEXIO_SPI_Busy

FlexIO SPI is busy.

enumerator kStatus_FLEXIO_SPI_Idle

SPI is idle

enumerator kStatus_FLEXIO_SPI_Error

FlexIO SPI error.

enumerator kStatus_FLEXIO_SPI_Timeout

FlexIO SPI timeout polling status flags.

enum _flexio_spi_clock_phase

FlexIO SPI clock phase configuration.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_SPI_ClockPhaseFirstEdge

First edge on SPSCK occurs at the middle of the first cycle of a data transfer.

enumerator kFLEXIO_SPI_ClockPhaseSecondEdge

First edge on SPSCK occurs at the start of the first cycle of a data transfer.

enum _flexio_spi_shift_direction

FlexIO SPI data shifter direction options.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_SPI_MsbFirst

Data transfers start with most significant bit.

enumerator kFLEXIO_SPI_LsbFirst

Data transfers start with least significant bit.

enum _flexio_spi_data_bitcount_mode

FlexIO SPI data length mode options.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_SPI_8BitMode

8-bit data transmission mode.

enumerator kFLEXIO_SPI_16BitMode
16-bit data transmission mode.

enumerator kFLEXIO_SPI_32BitMode
32-bit data transmission mode.

enum _flexio_spi_interrupt_enable
Define FlexIO SPI interrupt mask.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_SPI_TxEmptyInterruptEnable
Transmit buffer empty interrupt enable.

enumerator kFLEXIO_SPI_RxFullInterruptEnable
Receive buffer full interrupt enable.

enum _flexio_spi_status_flags
Define FlexIO SPI status mask.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_SPI_TxBufferEmptyFlag
Transmit buffer empty flag.

enumerator kFLEXIO_SPI_RxBufferFullFlag
Receive buffer full flag.

enum _flexio_spi_dma_enable
Define FlexIO SPI DMA mask.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_SPI_TxDmaEnable
Tx DMA request source

enumerator kFLEXIO_SPI_RxDmaEnable
Rx DMA request source

enumerator kFLEXIO_SPI_DmaAllEnable
All DMA request source

enum _flexio_spi_transfer_flags
Define FlexIO SPI transfer flags.

Note: Use kFLEXIO_SPI_csContinuous and one of the other flags to OR together to form the transfer flag.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_SPI_8bitMsb
FlexIO SPI 8-bit MSB first

enumerator kFLEXIO_SPI_8bitLsb
FlexIO SPI 8-bit LSB first

enumerator kFLEXIO_SPI_16bitMsb
FlexIO SPI 16-bit MSB first

enumerator kFLEXIO_SPI_16bitLsb
FlexIO SPI 16-bit LSB first

enumerator kFLEXIO_SPI_32bitMsb
FlexIO SPI 32-bit MSB first

enumerator kFLEXIO_SPI_32bitLsb
FlexIO SPI 32-bit LSB first

enumerator kFLEXIO_SPI_csContinuous
Enable the CS signal continuous mode

typedef enum *_flexio_spi_clock_phase* flexio_spi_clock_phase_t
FlexIO SPI clock phase configuration.

typedef enum *_flexio_spi_shift_direction* flexio_spi_shift_direction_t
FlexIO SPI data shifter direction options.

typedef enum *_flexio_spi_data_bitcount_mode* flexio_spi_data_bitcount_mode_t
FlexIO SPI data length mode options.

typedef struct *_flexio_spi_type* FLEXIO_SPI_Type
Define FlexIO SPI access structure typedef.

typedef struct *_flexio_spi_master_config* flexio_spi_master_config_t
Define FlexIO SPI master configuration structure.

typedef struct *_flexio_spi_slave_config* flexio_spi_slave_config_t
Define FlexIO SPI slave configuration structure.

typedef struct *_flexio_spi_transfer* flexio_spi_transfer_t
Define FlexIO SPI transfer structure.

typedef struct *_flexio_spi_master_handle* flexio_spi_master_handle_t
typedef for flexio_spi_master_handle_t in advance.

typedef *flexio_spi_master_handle_t* flexio_spi_slave_handle_t
Slave handle is the same with master handle.

typedef void (*flexio_spi_master_transfer_callback_t)(*FLEXIO_SPI_Type* *base, *flexio_spi_master_handle_t* *handle, *status_t* status, void *userData)
FlexIO SPI master callback for finished transmit.

typedef void (*flexio_spi_slave_transfer_callback_t)(*FLEXIO_SPI_Type* *base, *flexio_spi_slave_handle_t* *handle, *status_t* status, void *userData)
FlexIO SPI slave callback for finished transmit.

FLEXIO_SPI_DUMMYDATA
FlexIO SPI dummy transfer data, the data is sent while txData is NULL.

SPI_RETRY_TIMES
Retry times for waiting flag.

FLEXIO_SPI_XFER_DATA_FORMAT(flag)
Get the transfer data format of width and bit order.

struct _flexio_spi_type
#include <fsl_flexio_spi.h> Define FlexIO SPI access structure typedef.

Public Members

FLEXIO_Type *flexioBase
FlexIO base pointer.

uint8_t SDOPinIndex
: Pin select for data output. To set SDO pin in Hi-Z state, user needs to mux the pin as GPIO input and disable all pull up/down in application.

uint8_t SDIPinIndex
: Pin select for data input.

uint8_t SCKPinIndex
: Pin select for clock.

uint8_t CSnPinIndex
: Pin select for enable.

uint8_t shifterIndex[2]
: Shifter index used in FlexIO SPI.

uint8_t timerIndex[2]
: Timer index used in FlexIO SPI.

struct __flexio_spi_master_config
: *#include <fsl_flexio_spi.h>* Define FlexIO SPI master configuration structure.

Public Members

bool enableMaster
: Enable/disable FlexIO SPI master after configuration.

bool enableInDoze
: Enable/disable FlexIO operation in doze mode.

bool enableInDebug
: Enable/disable FlexIO operation in debug mode.

bool enableFastAccess
: Enable/disable fast access to FlexIO registers, fast access requires the FlexIO clock to be at least twice the frequency of the bus clock.

uint32_t baudRate_Bps
: Baud rate in Bps.

flexio_spi_clock_phase_t phase
: Clock phase.

flexio_spi_data_bitcount_mode_t dataMode
: 8bit or 16bit mode.

struct __flexio_spi_slave_config
: *#include <fsl_flexio_spi.h>* Define FlexIO SPI slave configuration structure.

Public Members

bool enableSlave
: Enable/disable FlexIO SPI slave after configuration.

bool enableInDoze
: Enable/disable FlexIO operation in doze mode.

bool enableInDebug
: Enable/disable FlexIO operation in debug mode.

bool enableFastAccess
: Enable/disable fast access to FlexIO registers, fast access requires the FlexIO clock to be at least twice the frequency of the bus clock.

flexio_spi_clock_phase_t phase
: Clock phase.

flexio_spi_data_bitcount_mode_t dataMode
: 8bit or 16bit mode.

struct _flexio_spi_transfer
: *#include <fsl_flexio_spi.h>* Define FlexIO SPI transfer structure.

Public Members

const uint8_t *txData
: Send buffer.

uint8_t *rxData
: Receive buffer.

size_t dataSize
: Transfer bytes.

uint8_t flags
: FlexIO SPI control flag, MSB first or LSB first.

struct _flexio_spi_master_handle
: *#include <fsl_flexio_spi.h>* Define FlexIO SPI handle structure.

Public Members

const uint8_t *txData
: Transfer buffer.

uint8_t *rxData
: Receive buffer.

size_t transferSize
: Total bytes to be transferred.

volatile size_t txRemainingBytes
: Send data remaining in bytes.

volatile size_t rxRemainingBytes
: Receive data remaining in bytes.

volatile uint32_t state
: FlexIO SPI internal state.

uint8_t bytePerFrame
: SPI mode, 2bytes or 1byte in a frame

flexio_spi_shift_direction_t direction
: Shift direction.

flexio_spi_master_transfer_callback_t callback
: FlexIO SPI callback.

void *userData
Callback parameter.

bool isCsContinuous
Is current transfer using CS continuous mode.

uint32_t timer1Cfg
TIMER1 TIMCFG regiser value backup.

2.21 FlexIO UART Driver

status_t FLEXIO_UART_Init(*FLEXIO_UART_Type* *base, const *flexio_uart_config_t* *userConfig, uint32_t srcClock_Hz)

Ungates the FlexIO clock, resets the FlexIO module, configures FlexIO UART hardware, and configures the FlexIO UART with FlexIO UART configuration. The configuration structure can be filled by the user or be set with default values by FLEXIO_UART_GetDefaultConfig().

Example

```
FLEXIO_UART_Type base = {
.flexioBase = FLEXIO,
.TxPinIndex = 0,
.RxPinIndex = 1,
.shifterIndex = {0,1},
.timerIndex = {0,1}
};
flexio_uart_config_t config = {
.enableInDoze = false,
.enableInDebug = true,
.enableFastAccess = false,
.baudRate_Bps = 115200U,
.bitCountPerChar = 8
};
FLEXIO_UART_Init(base, &config, srcClock_Hz);
```

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure.
- userConfig – Pointer to the flexio_uart_config_t structure.
- srcClock_Hz – FlexIO source clock in Hz.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Configuration success.
- kStatus_FLEXIO_UART_BaudrateNotSupport – Baudrate is not supported for current clock source frequency.

void FLEXIO_UART_Deinit(*FLEXIO_UART_Type* *base)

Resets the FlexIO UART shifter and timer config.

Note: After calling this API, call the FLEXO_UART_Init to use the FlexIO UART module.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to FLEXIO_UART_Type structure

void FLEXIO_UART_GetDefaultConfig(*flexio_uart_config_t* *userConfig)

Gets the default configuration to configure the FlexIO UART. The configuration can be used directly for calling the FLEXIO_UART_Init(). Example:

```
flexio_uart_config_t config;
FLEXIO_UART_GetDefaultConfig(&userConfig);
```

Parameters

- userConfig – Pointer to the flexio_uart_config_t structure.

uint32_t FLEXIO_UART_GetStatusFlags(*FLEXIO_UART_Type* *base)

Gets the FlexIO UART status flags.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure.

Returns

FlexIO UART status flags.

void FLEXIO_UART_ClearStatusFlags(*FLEXIO_UART_Type* *base, uint32_t mask)

Gets the FlexIO UART status flags.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure.
- mask – Status flag. The parameter can be any combination of the following values:
  - kFLEXIO_UART_TxDataRegEmptyFlag
  - kFLEXIO_UART_RxEmptyFlag
  - kFLEXIO_UART_RxOverRunFlag

void FLEXIO_UART_EnableInterrupts(*FLEXIO_UART_Type* *base, uint32_t mask)

Enables the FlexIO UART interrupt.

This function enables the FlexIO UART interrupt.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure.
- mask – Interrupt source.

void FLEXIO_UART_DisableInterrupts(*FLEXIO_UART_Type* *base, uint32_t mask)

Disables the FlexIO UART interrupt.

This function disables the FlexIO UART interrupt.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure.
- mask – Interrupt source.

static inline uint32_t FLEXIO_UART_GetTxDataRegisterAddress(*FLEXIO_UART_Type* *base)

Gets the FlexIO UARt transmit data register address.

This function returns the UART data register address, which is mainly used by DMA/eDMA.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure.

Returns
FlexIO UART transmit data register address.

static inline uint32_t FLEXIO_UART_GetRxDataRegisterAddress(*FLEXIO_UART_Type* *base)

Gets the FlexIO UART receive data register address.

This function returns the UART data register address, which is mainly used by DMA/eDMA.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure.

Returns
FlexIO UART receive data register address.

static inline void FLEXIO_UART_EnableTxDMA(*FLEXIO_UART_Type* *base, bool enable)

Enables/disables the FlexIO UART transmit DMA. This function enables/disables the FlexIO UART Tx DMA, which means asserting the kFLEXIO_UART_TxDataRegEmptyFlag does/doesn't trigger the DMA request.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure.
- enable – True to enable, false to disable.

static inline void FLEXIO_UART_EnableRxDMA(*FLEXIO_UART_Type* *base, bool enable)

Enables/disables the FlexIO UART receive DMA. This function enables/disables the FlexIO UART Rx DMA, which means asserting kFLEXIO_UART_RxDataRegFullFlag does/doesn't trigger the DMA request.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure.
- enable – True to enable, false to disable.

static inline void FLEXIO_UART_Enable(*FLEXIO_UART_Type* *base, bool enable)

Enables/disables the FlexIO UART module operation.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type.
- enable – True to enable, false does not have any effect.

static inline void FLEXIO_UART_WriteByte(*FLEXIO_UART_Type* *base, const uint8_t *buffer)

Writes one byte of data.

Note: This is a non-blocking API, which returns directly after the data is put into the data register. Ensure that the TxEmptyFlag is asserted before calling this API.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure.
- buffer – The data bytes to send.

static inline void FLEXIO_UART_ReadByte(*FLEXIO_UART_Type* *base, uint8_t *buffer)

Reads one byte of data.

Note: This is a non-blocking API, which returns directly after the data is read from the data register. Ensure that the RxFullFlag is asserted before calling this API.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure.
- buffer – The buffer to store the received bytes.

status_t FLEXIO_UART_WriteBlocking(*FLEXIO_UART_Type* *base, const uint8_t *txData, size_t txSize)

Sends a buffer of data bytes.

Note: This function blocks using the polling method until all bytes have been sent.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure.
- txData – The data bytes to send.
- txSize – The number of data bytes to send.

Return values

- kStatus_FLEXIO_UART_Timeout – Transmission timed out and was aborted.
- kStatus_Success – Successfully wrote all data.

status_t FLEXIO_UART_ReadBlocking(*FLEXIO_UART_Type* *base, uint8_t *rxData, size_t rxSize)

Receives a buffer of bytes.

Note: This function blocks using the polling method until all bytes have been received.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure.
- rxData – The buffer to store the received bytes.
- rxSize – The number of data bytes to be received.

Return values

- kStatus_FLEXIO_UART_Timeout – Transmission timed out and was aborted.
- kStatus_Success – Successfully received all data.

status_t FLEXIO_UART_TransferCreateHandle(*FLEXIO_UART_Type* *base, *flexio_uart_handle_t* *handle, *flexio_uart_transfer_callback_t* callback, void *userData)

Initializes the UART handle.

This function initializes the FlexIO UART handle, which can be used for other FlexIO UART transactional APIs. Call this API once to get the initialized handle.

The UART driver supports the "background" receiving, which means that users can set up a RX ring buffer optionally. Data received is stored into the ring buffer even when the user doesn't call the FLEXIO_UART_TransferReceiveNonBlocking() API. If there is already data received in the ring buffer, users can get the received data from the ring buffer directly. The ring buffer is disabled if passing NULL as ringBuffer.

Parameters

- base – to FLEXIO_UART_Type structure.

- handle – Pointer to the flexio_uart_handle_t structure to store the transfer state.
- callback – The callback function.
- userData – The parameter of the callback function.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Successfully create the handle.
- kStatus_OutOfRange – The FlexIO type/handle/ISR table out of range.

void FLEXIO_UART_TransferStartRingBuffer(*FLEXIO_UART_Type* *base, *flexio_uart_handle_t* *handle, uint8_t *ringBuffer, size_t ringBufferSize)

Sets up the RX ring buffer.

This function sets up the RX ring buffer to a specific UART handle.

When the RX ring buffer is used, data received is stored into the ring buffer even when the user doesn't call the UART_ReceiveNonBlocking() API. If there is already data received in the ring buffer, users can get the received data from the ring buffer directly.

Note: When using the RX ring buffer, one byte is reserved for internal use. In other words, if ringBufferSize is 32, only 31 bytes are used for saving data.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure.
- handle – Pointer to the flexio_uart_handle_t structure to store the transfer state.
- ringBuffer – Start address of ring buffer for background receiving. Pass NULL to disable the ring buffer.
- ringBufferSize – Size of the ring buffer.

void FLEXIO_UART_TransferStopRingBuffer(*FLEXIO_UART_Type* *base, *flexio_uart_handle_t* *handle)

Aborts the background transfer and uninstalls the ring buffer.

This function aborts the background transfer and uninstalls the ring buffer.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure.
- handle – Pointer to the flexio_uart_handle_t structure to store the transfer state.

status_t FLEXIO_UART_TransferSendNonBlocking(*FLEXIO_UART_Type* *base, *flexio_uart_handle_t* *handle, *flexio_uart_transfer_t* *xfer)

Transmits a buffer of data using the interrupt method.

This function sends data using an interrupt method. This is a non-blocking function, which returns directly without waiting for all data to be written to the TX register. When all data is written to the TX register in ISR, the FlexIO UART driver calls the callback function and passes the kStatus_FLEXIO_UART_TxIdle as status parameter.

Note: The kStatus_FLEXIO_UART_TxIdle is passed to the upper layer when all data is written to the TX register. However, it does not ensure that all data is sent out.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure.
- handle – Pointer to the flexio_uart_handle_t structure to store the transfer state.
- xfer – FlexIO UART transfer structure. See flexio_uart_transfer_t.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Successfully starts the data transmission.
- kStatus_UART_TxBusy – Previous transmission still not finished, data not written to the TX register.

void FLEXIO_UART_TransferAbortSend(*FLEXIO_UART_Type* *base, *flexio_uart_handle_t* *handle)

Aborts the interrupt-driven data transmit.

This function aborts the interrupt-driven data sending. Get the remainBytes to find out how many bytes are still not sent out.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure.
- handle – Pointer to the flexio_uart_handle_t structure to store the transfer state.

status_t FLEXIO_UART_TransferGetSendCount(*FLEXIO_UART_Type* *base, *flexio_uart_handle_t* *handle, size_t *count)

Gets the number of bytes sent.

This function gets the number of bytes sent driven by interrupt.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure.
- handle – Pointer to the flexio_uart_handle_t structure to store the transfer state.
- count – Number of bytes sent so far by the non-blocking transaction.

Return values

- kStatus_NoTransferInProgress – transfer has finished or no transfer in progress.
- kStatus_Success – Successfully return the count.

status_t FLEXIO_UART_TransferReceiveNonBlocking(*FLEXIO_UART_Type* *base, *flexio_uart_handle_t* *handle, *flexio_uart_transfer_t* *xfer, size_t *receivedBytes)

Receives a buffer of data using the interrupt method.

This function receives data using the interrupt method. This is a non-blocking function, which returns without waiting for all data to be received. If the RX ring buffer is used and not empty, the data in ring buffer is copied and the parameter receivedBytes shows how many bytes are copied from the ring buffer. After copying, if the data in ring buffer is not enough to read, the receive request is saved by the UART driver. When new data arrives, the receive request is serviced first. When all data is received, the UART driver notifies the upper layer through a callback function and passes the status parameter kStatus_UART_RxIdle. For example, if the upper layer needs 10 bytes but there are only 5 bytes in the ring buffer, the 5 bytes are copied to xfer->data. This function returns with the parameter receivedBytes set to 5. For the last 5 bytes, newly arrived data is saved from the

xfer->data[5]. When 5 bytes are received, the UART driver notifies upper layer. If the RX ring buffer is not enabled, this function enables the RX and RX interrupt to receive data to xfer->data. When all data is received, the upper layer is notified.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure.
- handle – Pointer to the flexio_uart_handle_t structure to store the transfer state.
- xfer – UART transfer structure. See flexio_uart_transfer_t.
- receivedBytes – Bytes received from the ring buffer directly.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Successfully queue the transfer into the transmit queue.
- kStatus_FLEXIO_UART_RxBusy – Previous receive request is not finished.

void FLEXIO_UART_TransferAbortReceive(*FLEXIO_UART_Type* *base, *flexio_uart_handle_t* *handle)

Aborts the receive data which was using IRQ.

This function aborts the receive data which was using IRQ.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure.
- handle – Pointer to the flexio_uart_handle_t structure to store the transfer state.

status_t FLEXIO_UART_TransferGetReceiveCount(*FLEXIO_UART_Type* *base, *flexio_uart_handle_t* *handle, size_t *count)

Gets the number of bytes received.

This function gets the number of bytes received driven by interrupt.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure.
- handle – Pointer to the flexio_uart_handle_t structure to store the transfer state.
- count – Number of bytes received so far by the non-blocking transaction.

Return values

- kStatus_NoTransferInProgress – transfer has finished or no transfer in progress.
- kStatus_Success – Successfully return the count.

void FLEXIO_UART_TransferHandleIRQ(void *uartType, void *uartHandle)

FlexIO UART IRQ handler function.

This function processes the FlexIO UART transmit and receives the IRQ request.

Parameters

- uartType – Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure.
- uartHandle – Pointer to the flexio_uart_handle_t structure to store the transfer state.

void FLEXIO_UART_FlushShifters(*FLEXIO_UART_Type* *base)

Flush tx/rx shifters.

Parameters

- base – Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure.

FSL_FLEXIO_UART_DRIVER_VERSION

FlexIO UART driver version.

Error codes for the UART driver.

Values:

enumerator kStatus_FLEXIO_UART_TxBusy

Transmitter is busy.

enumerator kStatus_FLEXIO_UART_RxBusy

Receiver is busy.

enumerator kStatus_FLEXIO_UART_TxIdle

UART transmitter is idle.

enumerator kStatus_FLEXIO_UART_RxIdle

UART receiver is idle.

enumerator kStatus_FLEXIO_UART_ERROR

ERROR happens on UART.

enumerator kStatus_FLEXIO_UART_RxRingBufferOverrun

UART RX software ring buffer overrun.

enumerator kStatus_FLEXIO_UART_RxHardwareOverrun

UART RX receiver overrun.

enumerator kStatus_FLEXIO_UART_Timeout

UART times out.

enumerator kStatus_FLEXIO_UART_BaudrateNotSupport

Baudrate is not supported in current clock source

enum _flexio_uart_bit_count_per_char

FlexIO UART bit count per char.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_UART_7BitsPerChar

7-bit data characters

enumerator kFLEXIO_UART_8BitsPerChar

8-bit data characters

enumerator kFLEXIO_UART_9BitsPerChar

9-bit data characters

enum _flexio_uart_interrupt_enable

Define FlexIO UART interrupt mask.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_UART_TxDataRegEmptyInterruptEnable

Transmit buffer empty interrupt enable.

enumerator kFLEXIO_UART_RxDataRegFullInterruptEnable
Receive buffer full interrupt enable.

enum _flexio_uart_status_flags
Define FlexIO UART status mask.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXIO_UART_TxDataRegEmptyFlag
Transmit buffer empty flag.

enumerator kFLEXIO_UART_RxDataRegFullFlag
Receive buffer full flag.

enumerator kFLEXIO_UART_RxOverRunFlag
Receive buffer over run flag.

typedef enum *_flexio_uart_bit_count_per_char* flexio_uart_bit_count_per_char_t
FlexIO UART bit count per char.

typedef struct *_flexio_uart_type* FLEXIO_UART_Type
Define FlexIO UART access structure typedef.

typedef struct *_flexio_uart_config* flexio_uart_config_t
Define FlexIO UART user configuration structure.

typedef struct *_flexio_uart_transfer* flexio_uart_transfer_t
Define FlexIO UART transfer structure.

typedef struct *_flexio_uart_handle* flexio_uart_handle_t

typedef void (*flexio_uart_transfer_callback_t)(*FLEXIO_UART_Type* *base, *flexio_uart_handle_t* *handle, *status_t* status, void *userData)
FlexIO UART transfer callback function.

UART_RETRY_TIMES
Retry times for waiting flag.

struct _flexio_uart_type
#include <fsl_flexio_uart.h> Define FlexIO UART access structure typedef.

Public Members

FLEXIO_Type *flexioBase
FlexIO base pointer.

uint8_t TxPinIndex
Pin select for UART_Tx.

uint8_t RxPinIndex
Pin select for UART_Rx.

uint8_t shifterIndex[2]
Shifter index used in FlexIO UART.

uint8_t timerIndex[2]
Timer index used in FlexIO UART.

struct _flexio_uart_config
#include <fsl_flexio_uart.h> Define FlexIO UART user configuration structure.

Public Members

bool enableUart
: Enable/disable FlexIO UART TX & RX.

bool enableInDoze
: Enable/disable FlexIO operation in doze mode

bool enableInDebug
: Enable/disable FlexIO operation in debug mode

bool enableFastAccess
: Enable/disable fast access to FlexIO registers, fast access requires the FlexIO clock to be at least twice the frequency of the bus clock.

uint32_t baudRate_Bps
: Baud rate in Bps.

flexio_uart_bit_count_per_char_t bitCountPerChar
: number of bits, 7/8/9 -bit

struct __flexio_uart_transfer
: *#include <fsl_flexio_uart.h>* Define FlexIO UART transfer structure.

Public Members

size_t dataSize
: Transfer size

struct __flexio_uart_handle
: *#include <fsl_flexio_uart.h>* Define FLEXIO UART handle structure.

Public Members

const uint8_t *volatile txData
: Address of remaining data to send.

volatile size_t txDataSize
: Size of the remaining data to send.

uint8_t *volatile rxData
: Address of remaining data to receive.

volatile size_t rxDataSize
: Size of the remaining data to receive.

size_t txDataSizeAll
: Total bytes to be sent.

size_t rxDataSizeAll
: Total bytes to be received.

uint8_t *rxRingBuffer
: Start address of the receiver ring buffer.

size_t rxRingBufferSize
: Size of the ring buffer.

volatile uint16_t rxRingBufferHead
: Index for the driver to store received data into ring buffer.

volatile uint16_t rxRingBufferTail
: Index for the user to get data from the ring buffer.

flexio_uart_transfer_callback_t callback
: Callback function.

void *userData
: UART callback function parameter.

volatile uint8_t txState
: TX transfer state.

volatile uint8_t rxState
: RX transfer state

union ___unnamed77___

Public Members

uint8_t *data
: The buffer of data to be transfer.

uint8_t *rxData
: The buffer to receive data.

const uint8_t *txData
: The buffer of data to be sent.

2.22 FLEXSPI: Flexible Serial Peripheral Interface Driver

uint32_t FLEXSPI_GetInstance(FLEXSPI_Type *base)
: Get the instance number for FLEXSPI.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI base pointer.

status_t FLEXSPI_CheckAndClearError(FLEXSPI_Type *base, uint32_t status)
: Check and clear IP command execution errors.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI base pointer.
- status – interrupt status.

void FLEXSPI_Init(FLEXSPI_Type *base, const *flexspi_config_t* *config)
: Initializes the FLEXSPI module and internal state.

This function enables the clock for FLEXSPI and also configures the FLEXSPI with the input configure parameters. Users should call this function before any FLEXSPI operations.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address.
- config – FLEXSPI configure structure.

void FLEXSPI_GetDefaultConfig(*flexspi_config_t* *config)

Gets default settings for FLEXSPI.

Parameters

- config – FLEXSPI configuration structure.

void FLEXSPI_Deinit(FLEXSPI_Type *base)

Deinitializes the FLEXSPI module.

Clears the FLEXSPI state and FLEXSPI module registers.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address.

void FLEXSPI_UpdateDllValue(FLEXSPI_Type *base, *flexspi_device_config_t* *config, *flexspi_port_t* port)

Update FLEXSPI DLL value depending on currently flexspi root clock.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address.
- config – Flash configuration parameters.
- port – FLEXSPI Operation port.

void FLEXSPI_SetFlashConfig(FLEXSPI_Type *base, *flexspi_device_config_t* *config, *flexspi_port_t* port)

Configures the connected device parameter.

This function configures the connected device relevant parameters, such as the size, command, and so on. The flash configuration value cannot have a default value. The user needs to configure it according to the connected device.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address.
- config – Flash configuration parameters.
- port – FLEXSPI Operation port.

void FLEXSPI_SoftwareReset(FLEXSPI_Type *base)

Software reset for the FLEXSPI logic.

This function sets the software reset flags for both AHB and buffer domain and resets both AHB buffer and also IP FIFOs.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address.

static inline void FLEXSPI_Enable(FLEXSPI_Type *base, bool enable)

Enables or disables the FLEXSPI module.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address.
- enable – True means enable FLEXSPI, false means disable.

void FLEXSPI_UpdateAhbBuffersSettings(FLEXSPI_Type *base, *flexspi_ahbBuffers_ctrl_t* *ptrAhbBufferCtrl)

Update all AHB buffers' settings, including buffer size, master ID.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address.

- ptrAhbBufferCtrl – Pointer to structure flexspi_ahbBuffers_ctrl_t which store all AHB buffers' settings.

static inline void FLEXSPI_EnableInterrupts(FLEXSPI_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Enables the FLEXSPI interrupts.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address.
- mask – FLEXSPI interrupt source.

static inline void FLEXSPI_DisableInterrupts(FLEXSPI_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Disable the FLEXSPI interrupts.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address.
- mask – FLEXSPI interrupt source.

static inline void FLEXSPI_EnableTxDMA(FLEXSPI_Type *base, bool enable)

Enables or disables FLEXSPI IP Tx FIFO DMA requests.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address.
- enable – Enable flag for transmit DMA request. Pass true for enable, false for disable.

static inline void FLEXSPI_EnableRxDMA(FLEXSPI_Type *base, bool enable)

Enables or disables FLEXSPI IP Rx FIFO DMA requests.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address.
- enable – Enable flag for receive DMA request. Pass true for enable, false for disable.

static inline uint32_t FLEXSPI_GetTxFifoAddress(FLEXSPI_Type *base)

Gets FLEXSPI IP tx fifo address for DMA transfer.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address.

Return values

The – tx fifo address.

static inline uint32_t FLEXSPI_GetRxFifoAddress(FLEXSPI_Type *base)

Gets FLEXSPI IP rx fifo address for DMA transfer.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address.

Return values

The – rx fifo address.

static inline void FLEXSPI_ResetFifos(FLEXSPI_Type *base, bool txFifo, bool rxFifo)

Clears the FLEXSPI IP FIFO logic.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address.
- txFifo – Pass true to reset TX FIFO.
- rxFifo – Pass true to reset RX FIFO.

static inline void FLEXSPI_GetFifoCounts(FLEXSPI_Type *base, size_t *txCount, size_t *rxCount)

Gets the valid data entries in the FLEXSPI FIFOs.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address.
- txCount – **[out]** Pointer through which the current number of bytes in the transmit FIFO is returned. Pass NULL if this value is not required.
- rxCount – **[out]** Pointer through which the current number of bytes in the receive FIFO is returned. Pass NULL if this value is not required.

static inline uint32_t FLEXSPI_GetInterruptStatusFlags(FLEXSPI_Type *base)

Get the FLEXSPI interrupt status flags.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address.

Return values

interrupt – status flag, use status flag to AND flexspi_flags_t could get the related status.

static inline void FLEXSPI_ClearInterruptStatusFlags(FLEXSPI_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Get the FLEXSPI interrupt status flags.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address.
- mask – FLEXSPI interrupt source.

static inline void FLEXSPI_GetDataLearningPhase(FLEXSPI_Type *base, uint8_t *portAPhase, uint8_t *portBPhase)

Gets the sampling clock phase selection after Data Learning.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address.
- portAPhase – Pointer to a uint8_t type variable to receive the selected clock phase on PORTA.
- portBPhase – Pointer to a uint8_t type variable to receive the selected clock phase on PORTB.

static inline *flexspi_arb_command_source_t* FLEXSPI_GetArbitratorCommandSource(FLEXSPI_Type *base)

Gets the trigger source of current command sequence granted by arbitrator.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address.

Return values

trigger – source of current command sequence.

static inline *flexspi_ip_error_code_t* FLEXSPI_GetIPCommandErrorCode(FLEXSPI_Type *base, uint8_t *index)

Gets the error code when IP command error detected.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address.
- index – Pointer to a uint8_t type variable to receive the sequence index when error detected.

Return values
error – code when IP command error detected.

static inline *flexspi_ahb_error_code_t* FLEXSPI_GetAHBCommandErrorCode(FLEXSPI_Type *base, uint8_t *index)

Gets the error code when AHB command error detected.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address.
- index – Pointer to a uint8_t type variable to receive the sequence index when error detected.

Return values
error – code when AHB command error detected.

static inline bool FLEXSPI_GetBusIdleStatus(FLEXSPI_Type *base)

Returns whether the bus is idle.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address.

Return values

- true – Bus is idle.
- false – Bus is busy.

void FLEXSPI_UpdateRxSampleClock(FLEXSPI_Type *base, *flexspi_read_sample_clock_t* clockSource)

Update read sample clock source.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address.
- clockSource – clockSource of type flexspi_read_sample_clock_t

void FLEXSPI_UpdateLUT(FLEXSPI_Type *base, uint32_t index, const uint32_t *cmd, uint32_t count)

Updates the LUT table.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address.
- index – From which index start to update. It could be any index of the LUT table, which also allows user to update command content inside a command. Each command consists of up to 8 instructions and occupy 4*32-bit memory.
- cmd – Command sequence array.
- count – Number of sequences.

static inline void FLEXSPI_WriteData(FLEXSPI_Type *base, uint32_t data, uint8_t fifoIndex)

Writes data into FIFO.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address
- data – The data bytes to send
- fifoIndex – Destination fifo index.

static inline uint32_t FLEXSPI_ReadData(FLEXSPI_Type *base, uint8_t fifoIndex)

Receives data from data FIFO.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address
- fifoIndex – Source fifo index.

Returns

The data in the FIFO.

status_t FLEXSPI_WriteBlocking(FLEXSPI_Type *base, uint8_t *buffer, size_t size)

Sends a buffer of data bytes using blocking method.

Note: This function blocks via polling until all bytes have been sent.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address
- buffer – The data bytes to send
- size – The number of data bytes to send

Return values

- kStatus_Success – write success without error
- kStatus_FLEXSPI_SequenceExecutionTimeout – sequence execution timeout
- kStatus_FLEXSPI_IpCommandSequenceError – IP command sequence error detected
- kStatus_FLEXSPI_IpCommandGrantTimeout – IP command grant timeout detected

status_t FLEXSPI_ReadBlocking(FLEXSPI_Type *base, uint8_t *buffer, size_t size)

Receives a buffer of data bytes using a blocking method.

Note: This function blocks via polling until all bytes have been sent.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address
- buffer – The data bytes to send
- size – The number of data bytes to receive

Return values

- kStatus_Success – read success without error
- kStatus_FLEXSPI_SequenceExecutionTimeout – sequence execution timeout
- kStatus_FLEXSPI_IpCommandSequenceError – IP command sequencen error detected
- kStatus_FLEXSPI_IpCommandGrantTimeout – IP command grant timeout detected

status_t FLEXSPI_TransferBlocking(FLEXSPI_Type *base, *flexspi_transfer_t* *xfer)

Execute command to transfer a buffer data bytes using a blocking method.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address
- xfer – pointer to the transfer structure.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – command transfer success without error
- kStatus_FLEXSPI_SequenceExecutionTimeout – sequence execution timeout
- kStatus_FLEXSPI_IpCommandSequenceError – IP command sequence error detected
- kStatus_FLEXSPI_IpCommandGrantTimeout – IP command grant timeout detected

void FLEXSPI_TransferCreateHandle(FLEXSPI_Type *base, *flexspi_handle_t* *handle, *flexspi_transfer_callback_t* callback, void *userData)

Initializes the FLEXSPI handle which is used in transactional functions.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address.
- handle – pointer to flexspi_handle_t structure to store the transfer state.
- callback – pointer to user callback function.
- userData – user parameter passed to the callback function.

status_t FLEXSPI_TransferNonBlocking(FLEXSPI_Type *base, *flexspi_handle_t* *handle, *flexspi_transfer_t* *xfer)

Performs a interrupt non-blocking transfer on the FLEXSPI bus.

Note: Calling the API returns immediately after transfer initiates. The user needs to call FLEXSPI_GetTransferCount to poll the transfer status to check whether the transfer is finished. If the return status is not kStatus_FLEXSPI_Busy, the transfer is finished. For FLEXSPI_Read, the dataSize should be multiple of rx watermark level, or FLEXSPI could not read data properly.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address.
- handle – pointer to flexspi_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state.
- xfer – pointer to flexspi_transfer_t structure.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Successfully start the data transmission.
- kStatus_FLEXSPI_Busy – Previous transmission still not finished.

status_t FLEXSPI_TransferGetCount(FLEXSPI_Type *base, *flexspi_handle_t* *handle, size_t *count)

Gets the master transfer status during a interrupt non-blocking transfer.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address.
- handle – pointer to flexspi_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state.
- count – Number of bytes transferred so far by the non-blocking transaction.

Return values

- kStatus_InvalidArgument – count is Invalid.
- kStatus_Success – Successfully return the count.

void FLEXSPI_TransferAbort(FLEXSPI_Type *base, *flexspi_handle_t* *handle)

Aborts an interrupt non-blocking transfer early.

Note: This API can be called at any time when an interrupt non-blocking transfer initiates to abort the transfer early.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address.
- handle – pointer to flexspi_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state

void FLEXSPI_TransferHandleIRQ(FLEXSPI_Type *base, *flexspi_handle_t* *handle)

Master interrupt handler.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address.
- handle – pointer to flexspi_handle_t structure.

FSL_FLEXSPI_DRIVER_VERSION

FLEXSPI driver version.

Status structure of FLEXSPI.

Values:

enumerator kStatus_FLEXSPI_Busy

FLEXSPI is busy

enumerator kStatus_FLEXSPI_SequenceExecutionTimeout

Sequence execution timeout error occurred during FLEXSPI transfer.

enumerator kStatus_FLEXSPI_IpCommandSequenceError

IP command Sequence execution timeout error occurred during FLEXSPI transfer.

enumerator kStatus_FLEXSPI_IpCommandGrantTimeout

IP command grant timeout error occurred during FLEXSPI transfer.

CMD definition of FLEXSPI, use to form LUT instruction, _flexspi_command.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXSPI_Command_STOP

Stop execution, deassert CS.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_Command_SDR

Transmit Command code to Flash, using SDR mode.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_Command_RADDR_SDR
Transmit Row Address to Flash, using SDR mode.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_Command_CADDR_SDR
Transmit Column Address to Flash, using SDR mode.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_Command_MODE1_SDR
Transmit 1-bit Mode bits to Flash, using SDR mode.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_Command_MODE2_SDR
Transmit 2-bit Mode bits to Flash, using SDR mode.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_Command_MODE4_SDR
Transmit 4-bit Mode bits to Flash, using SDR mode.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_Command_MODE8_SDR
Transmit 8-bit Mode bits to Flash, using SDR mode.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_Command_WRITE_SDR
Transmit Programming Data to Flash, using SDR mode.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_Command_READ_SDR
Receive Read Data from Flash, using SDR mode.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_Command_LEARN_SDR
Receive Read Data or Preamble bit from Flash, SDR mode.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_Command_DATSZ_SDR
Transmit Read/Program Data size (byte) to Flash, SDR mode.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_Command_DUMMY_SDR
Leave data lines undriven by FlexSPI controller.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_Command_DUMMY_RWDS_SDR
Leave data lines undriven by FlexSPI controller, dummy cycles decided by RWDS.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_Command_DDR
Transmit Command code to Flash, using DDR mode.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_Command_RADDR_DDR
Transmit Row Address to Flash, using DDR mode.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_Command_CADDR_DDR
Transmit Column Address to Flash, using DDR mode.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_Command_MODE1_DDR
Transmit 1-bit Mode bits to Flash, using DDR mode.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_Command_MODE2_DDR
Transmit 2-bit Mode bits to Flash, using DDR mode.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_Command_MODE4_DDR
Transmit 4-bit Mode bits to Flash, using DDR mode.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_Command_MODE8_DDR
Transmit 8-bit Mode bits to Flash, using DDR mode.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_Command_WRITE_DDR
Transmit Programming Data to Flash, using DDR mode.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_Command_READ_DDR
Receive Read Data from Flash, using DDR mode.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_Command_LEARN_DDR
Receive Read Data or Preamble bit from Flash, DDR mode.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_Command_DATSZ_DDR
Transmit Read/Program Data size (byte) to Flash, DDR mode.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_Command_DUMMY_DDR
Leave data lines undriven by FlexSPI controller.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_Command_DUMMY_RWDS_DDR
Leave data lines undriven by FlexSPI controller, dummy cycles decided by RWDS.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_Command_JUMP_ON_CS
Stop execution, deassert CS and save operand[7:0] as the instruction start pointer for next sequence

enum _flexspi_pad
pad definition of FLEXSPI, use to form LUT instruction.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXSPI_1PAD
Transmit command/address and transmit/receive data only through DATA0/DATA1.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_2PAD
Transmit command/address and transmit/receive data only through DATA[1:0].

enumerator kFLEXSPI_4PAD
Transmit command/address and transmit/receive data only through DATA[3:0].

enumerator kFLEXSPI_8PAD
Transmit command/address and transmit/receive data only through DATA[7:0].

enum _flexspi_flags
FLEXSPI interrupt status flags.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXSPI_SequenceExecutionTimeoutFlag
Sequence execution timeout.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_AhbBusTimeoutFlag
AHB Bus timeout.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_SckStoppedBecauseTxEmptyFlag
SCK is stopped during command sequence because Async TX FIFO empty.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_SckStoppedBecauseRxFullFlag
SCK is stopped during command sequence because Async RX FIFO full.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_DataLearningFailedFlag
Data learning failed.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_IpTxFifoWatermarkEmptyFlag
IP TX FIFO WaterMark empty.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_IpRxFifoWatermarkAvailableFlag
IP RX FIFO WaterMark available.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_AhbCommandSequenceErrorFlag
AHB triggered Command Sequences Error.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_IpCommandSequenceErrorFlag
IP triggered Command Sequences Error.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_AhbCommandGrantTimeoutFlag
AHB triggered Command Sequences Grant Timeout.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_IpCommandGrantTimeoutFlag
IP triggered Command Sequences Grant Timeout.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_IpCommandExecutionDoneFlag
IP triggered Command Sequences Execution finished.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_AllInterruptFlags
All flags.

enum _flexspi_read_sample_clock
FLEXSPI sample clock source selection for Flash Reading.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXSPI_ReadSampleClkLoopbackInternally
Dummy Read strobe generated by FlexSPI Controller and loopback internally.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_ReadSampleClkLoopbackFromDqsPad
Dummy Read strobe generated by FlexSPI Controller and loopback from DQS pad.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_ReadSampleClkLoopbackFromSckPad
SCK output clock and loopback from SCK pad.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_ReadSampleClkExternalInputFromDqsPad
Flash provided Read strobe and input from DQS pad.

enum _flexspi_cs_interval_cycle_unit
FLEXSPI interval unit for flash device select.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXSPI_CsIntervalUnit1SckCycle
Chip selection interval: CSINTERVAL * 1 serial clock cycle.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_CsIntervalUnit256SckCycle
Chip selection interval: CSINTERVAL * 256 serial clock cycle.

enum _flexspi_ahb_write_wait_unit
FLEXSPI AHB wait interval unit for writing.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXSPI_AhbWriteWaitUnit2AhbCycle
AWRWAIT unit is 2 ahb clock cycle.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_AhbWriteWaitUnit8AhbCycle
AWRWAIT unit is 8 ahb clock cycle.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_AhbWriteWaitUnit32AhbCycle
AWRWAIT unit is 32 ahb clock cycle.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_AhbWriteWaitUnit128AhbCycle
AWRWAIT unit is 128 ahb clock cycle.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_AhbWriteWaitUnit512AhbCycle
AWRWAIT unit is 512 ahb clock cycle.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_AhbWriteWaitUnit2048AhbCycle
AWRWAIT unit is 2048 ahb clock cycle.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_AhbWriteWaitUnit8192AhbCycle
AWRWAIT unit is 8192 ahb clock cycle.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_AhbWriteWaitUnit32768AhbCycle
AWRWAIT unit is 32768 ahb clock cycle.

enum _flexspi_ip_error_code
Error Code when IP command Error detected.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXSPI_IpCmdErrorNoError
No error.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_IpCmdErrorJumpOnCsInIpCmd
IP command with JMP_ON_CS instruction used.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_IpCmdErrorUnknownOpCode
Unknown instruction opcode in the sequence.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_IpCmdErrorSdrDummyInDdrSequence
Instruction DUMMY_SDR/DUMMY_RWDS_SDR used in DDR sequence.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_IpCmdErrorDdrDummyInSdrSequence
Instruction DUMMY_DDR/DUMMY_RWDS_DDR used in SDR sequence.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_IpCmdErrorInvalidAddress
Flash access start address exceed the whole flash address range (A1/A2/B1/B2).

enumerator kFLEXSPI_IpCmdErrorSequenceExecutionTimeout
Sequence execution timeout.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_IpCmdErrorFlashBoundaryAcrosss
Flash boundary crossed.

enum _flexspi_ahb_error_code
Error Code when AHB command Error detected.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXSPI_AhbCmdErrorNoError
No error.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_AhbCmdErrorJumpOnCsInWriteCmd
AHB Write command with JMP_ON_CS instruction used in the sequence.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_AhbCmdErrorUnknownOpCode
Unknown instruction opcode in the sequence.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_AhbCmdErrorSdrDummyInDdrSequence
Instruction DUMMY_SDR/DUMMY_RWDS_SDR used in DDR sequence.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_AhbCmdErrorDdrDummyInSdrSequence
Instruction DUMMY_DDR/DUMMY_RWDS_DDR used in SDR sequence.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_AhbCmdSequenceExecutionTimeout
Sequence execution timeout.

enum _flexspi_port
FLEXSPI operation port select.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXSPI_PortA1
Access flash on A1 port.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_PortA2
Access flash on A2 port.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_PortB1
Access flash on B1 port.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_PortB2
Access flash on B2 port.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_PortCount

enum _flexspi_arb_command_source
Trigger source of current command sequence granted by arbitrator.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXSPI_AhbReadCommand

enumerator kFLEXSPI_AhbWriteCommand

enumerator kFLEXSPI_IpCommand

enumerator kFLEXSPI_SuspendedCommand

enum _flexspi_command_type
Command type.

Values:

enumerator kFLEXSPI_Command
FlexSPI operation: Only command, both TX and Rx buffer are ignored.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_Config
FlexSPI operation: Configure device mode, the TX fifo size is fixed in LUT.

enumerator kFLEXSPI_Read

enumerator kFLEXSPI_Write

typedef enum *_flexspi_pad* flexspi_pad_t
pad definition of FLEXSPI, use to form LUT instruction.

typedef enum *_flexspi_flags* flexspi_flags_t
FLEXSPI interrupt status flags.

typedef enum *_flexspi_read_sample_clock* flexspi_read_sample_clock_t
FLEXSPI sample clock source selection for Flash Reading.

typedef enum *_flexspi_cs_interval_cycle_unit* flexspi_cs_interval_cycle_unit_t
FLEXSPI interval unit for flash device select.

typedef enum *_flexspi_ahb_write_wait_unit* flexspi_ahb_write_wait_unit_t
FLEXSPI AHB wait interval unit for writing.

typedef enum *_flexspi_ip_error_code* flexspi_ip_error_code_t
Error Code when IP command Error detected.

typedef enum *_flexspi_ahb_error_code* flexspi_ahb_error_code_t
Error Code when AHB command Error detected.

typedef enum *_flexspi_port* flexspi_port_t
FLEXSPI operation port select.

typedef enum *_flexspi_arb_command_source* flexspi_arb_command_source_t
Trigger source of current command sequence granted by arbitrator.

typedef enum *_flexspi_command_type* flexspi_command_type_t
Command type.

typedef struct *_flexspi_ahbBuffer_config* flexspi_ahbBuffer_config_t

typedef struct *_flexspi_ahbBuffers_ctrl* flexspi_ahbBuffers_ctrl_t
Structure to control all AHB buffers.

typedef struct *_flexspi_config* flexspi_config_t
FLEXSPI configuration structure.

typedef struct *_flexspi_device_config* flexspi_device_config_t
External device configuration items.

typedef struct *_flexspi_transfer* flexspi_transfer_t
Transfer structure for FLEXSPI.

typedef struct *_flexspi_handle* flexspi_handle_t

typedef void (*flexspi_transfer_callback_t)(FLEXSPI_Type *base, *flexspi_handle_t* *handle, *status_t* status, void *userData)
FLEXSPI transfer callback function.

typedef struct *_flexspi_addr_map_config* flexspi_addr_map_config_t
Address mapping configuration structure.

FSL_FEATURE_FLEXSPI_AHB_BUFFER_COUNT

FLEXSPI_LUT_SEQ(cmd0, pad0, op0, cmd1, pad1, op1)
Formula to form FLEXSPI instructions in LUT table.

struct _flexspi_ahbBuffer_config
#include <fsl_flexspi.h>

Public Members

uint8_t priority
This priority for AHB Master Read which this AHB RX Buffer is assigned.

uint8_t masterIndex
AHB Master ID the AHB RX Buffer is assigned.

uint16_t bufferSize
AHB buffer size in byte.

bool enablePrefetch
AHB Read Prefetch Enable for current AHB RX Buffer corresponding Master, allows prefetch disable/enable separately for each master.

struct _flexspi_ahbBuffers_ctrl
#include <fsl_flexspi.h> Structure to control all AHB buffers.

Public Members

flexspi_ahbBuffer_config_t buffer[FSL_FEATURE_FLEXSPI_AHB_BUFFER_COUNTn(0)]
Configurations of all AHB buffers.

struct _flexspi_config
#include <fsl_flexspi.h> FLEXSPI configuration structure.

Public Members

flexspi_read_sample_clock_t rxSampleClock
Sample Clock source selection for Flash Reading.

bool enableSckFreeRunning
Enable/disable SCK output free-running.

bool enableDoze
Enable/disable doze mode support.

bool enableHalfSpeedAccess
Enable/disable divide by 2 of the clock for half speed commands.

bool enableSameConfigForAll
Enable/disable same configuration for all connected devices when enabled, same configuration in FLASHA1CRx is applied to all.

uint16_t seqTimeoutCycle
Timeout wait cycle for command sequence execution, timeout after ahbGrantTimeoutCyle*1024 serial root clock cycles.

uint8_t ipGrantTimeoutCycle
Timeout wait cycle for IP command grant, timeout after ipGrantTimeoutCycle*1024 AHB clock cycles.

uint8_t txWatermark
FLEXSPI IP transmit watermark value.

uint8_t rxWatermark
FLEXSPI receive watermark value.

struct _flexspi_device_config
#include <fsl_flexspi.h> External device configuration items.

Public Members

uint32_t flexspiRootClk
FLEXSPI serial root clock.

bool isSck2Enabled
FLEXSPI use SCK2.

uint32_t flashSize
Flash size in KByte.

bool addressShift
Address shift.

flexspi_cs_interval_cycle_unit_t CSIntervalUnit
CS interval unit, 1 or 256 cycle.

uint16_t CSInterval
: CS line assert interval, multiply CS interval unit to get the CS line assert interval cycles.

uint8_t CSHoldTime
: CS line hold time.

uint8_t CSSetupTime
: CS line setup time.

uint8_t dataValidTime
: Data valid time for external device.

uint8_t columnspace
: Column space size.

bool enableWordAddress
: If enable word address.

uint8_t AWRSeqIndex
: Sequence ID for AHB write command.

uint8_t AWRSeqNumber
: Sequence number for AHB write command.

uint8_t ARDSeqIndex
: Sequence ID for AHB read command.

uint8_t ARDSeqNumber
: Sequence number for AHB read command.

flexspi_ahb_write_wait_unit_t AHBWriteWaitUnit
: AHB write wait unit.

uint16_t AHBWriteWaitInterval
: AHB write wait interval, multiply AHB write interval unit to get the AHB write wait cycles.

bool enableWriteMask
: Enable/Disable FLEXSPI drive DQS pin as write mask when writing to external device.

bool isFroClockSource
: Is FRO clock source or not.

struct __flexspi__transfer
: *#include <fsl_flexspi.h>* Transfer structure for FLEXSPI.

Public Members

uint32_t deviceAddress
: Operation device address.

flexspi_port_t port
: Operation port.

flexspi_command_type_t cmdType
: Execution command type.

uint8_t seqIndex
: Sequence ID for command.

uint8_t SeqNumber
Sequence number for command.

uint32_t *data
Data buffer.

size_t dataSize
Data size in bytes.

struct __flexspi__handle
#include <fsl_flexspi.h> Transfer handle structure for FLEXSPI.

Public Members

uint32_t state
Internal state for FLEXSPI transfer

uint8_t *data
Data buffer.

size_t dataSize
Remaining Data size in bytes.

size_t transferTotalSize
Total Data size in bytes.

flexspi_transfer_callback_t completionCallback
Callback for users while transfer finish or error occurred

void *userData
FLEXSPI callback function parameter.

struct __flexspi__addr__map__config
#include <fsl_flexspi.h> Address mapping configuration structure.

Public Members

uint32_t addrStart
Remapping start address.

uint32_t addrEnd
Remapping end address.

uint32_t addrOffset
Address offset.

bool remapEnable
Enable address remapping.

struct ahbConfig

Public Members

uint8_t ahbGrantTimeoutCycle
Timeout wait cycle for AHB command grant, timeout after ahbGrantTimeoutCyle*1024 AHB clock cycles.

uint16_t ahbBusTimeoutCycle

Timeout wait cycle for AHB read/write access, timeout after ahbBusTimeoutCycle*1024 AHB clock cycles.

uint8_t resumeWaitCycle

Wait cycle for idle state before suspended command sequence resume, timeout after ahbBusTimeoutCycle AHB clock cycles.

flexspi_ahbBuffer_config_t buffer[FSL_FEATURE_FLEXSPI_AHB_BUFFER_COUNTn(0)]

AHB buffer size.

bool enableClearAHBBufferOpt

Enable/disable automatically clean AHB RX Buffer and TX Buffer when FLEXSPI returns STOP mode ACK.

bool enableReadAddressOpt

Enable/disable remove AHB read burst start address alignment limitation. when enable, there is no AHB read burst start address alignment limitation.

bool enableAHBPrefetch

Enable/disable AHB read prefetch feature, when enabled, FLEXSPI will fetch more data than current AHB burst.

bool enableAHBBufferable

Enable/disable AHB bufferable write access support, when enabled, FLEXSPI return before waiting for command execution finished.

bool enableAHBCachable

Enable AHB bus cachable read access support.

2.23 FLEXSPI DMA Driver

void FLEXSPI_TransferCreateHandleDMA(FLEXSPI_Type *base, *flexspi_dma_handle_t* *handle, *flexspi_dma_callback_t* callback, void *userData, *dma_handle_t* *txDmaHandle, *dma_handle_t* *rxDmaHandle)

Initializes the FLEXSPI handle for transfer which is used in transactional functions and set the callback.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address
- handle – Pointer to flexspi_dma_handle_t structure
- callback – FLEXSPI callback, NULL means no callback.
- userData – User callback function data.
- txDmaHandle – User requested DMA handle for TX DMA transfer.
- rxDmaHandle – User requested DMA handle for RX DMA transfer.

void FLEXSPI_TransferUpdateSizeDMA(FLEXSPI_Type *base, *flexspi_dma_handle_t* *handle, *flexspi_dma_transfer_nsize_t* nsize)

Update FLEXSPI DMA transfer source data transfer size(SSIZE) and destination data transfer size(DSIZE).

See also:

flexspi_dma_transfer_nsize_t .

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address
- handle – Pointer to flexspi_dma_handle_t structure
- nsize – FLEXSPI DMA transfer data transfer size(SSIZE/DSIZE), by default the size is kFLEXPSI_DMAnSize1Bytes(one byte).

status_t FLEXSPI_TransferDMA(FLEXSPI_Type *base, *flexspi_dma_handle_t* *handle, *flexspi_transfer_t* *xfer)

Transfers FLEXSPI data using an dma non-blocking method.

This function writes/receives data to/from the FLEXSPI transmit/receive FIFO. This function is non-blocking.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address.
- handle – Pointer to flexspi_dma_handle_t structure
- xfer – FLEXSPI transfer structure.

Return values

- kStatus_FLEXSPI_Busy – FLEXSPI is busy transfer.
- kStatus_InvalidArgument – The watermark configuration is invalid, the watermark should be power of 2 to do successfully DMA transfer.
- kStatus_Success – FLEXSPI successfully start dma transfer.

void FLEXSPI_TransferAbortDMA(FLEXSPI_Type *base, *flexspi_dma_handle_t* *handle)

Aborts the transfer data using dma.

This function aborts the transfer data using dma.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address.
- handle – Pointer to flexspi_dma_handle_t structure

status_t FLEXSPI_TransferGetTransferCountDMA(FLEXSPI_Type *base, *flexspi_dma_handle_t* *handle, size_t *count)

Gets the transferred counts of transfer.

Parameters

- base – FLEXSPI peripheral base address.
- handle – Pointer to flexspi_dma_handle_t structure.
- count – Bytes transfer.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Succeed get the transfer count.
- kStatus_NoTransferInProgress – There is not a non-blocking transaction currently in progress.

FSL_FLEXSPI_DMA_DRIVER_VERSION

FLEXSPI DMA driver version 2.2.1.

enum _flexspi_dma_ntransfer_size

dma transfer configuration

Values:

enumerator kFLEXPSI_DMAnSize1Bytes
Source/Destination data transfer size is 1 byte every time

enumerator kFLEXPSI_DMAnSize2Bytes
Source/Destination data transfer size is 2 bytes every time

enumerator kFLEXPSI_DMAnSize4Bytes
Source/Destination data transfer size is 4 bytes every time

typedef struct *_flexspi_dma_handle* flexspi_dma_handle_t

typedef void (*flexspi_dma_callback_t)(FLEXSPI_Type *base, *flexspi_dma_handle_t* *handle, *status_t* status, void *userData)
FLEXSPI dma transfer callback function for finish and error.

typedef enum *_flexspi_dma_ntransfer_size* flexspi_dma_transfer_nsize_t
dma transfer configuration

struct _flexspi_dma_handle
#include <fsl_flexspi_dma.h> FLEXSPI DMA transfer handle, users should not touch the content of the handle.

Public Members

dma_handle_t *txDmaHandle
dma handler for FLEXSPI Tx.

dma_handle_t *rxDmaHandle
dma handler for FLEXSPI Rx.

size_t transferSize
Bytes need to transfer.

flexspi_dma_transfer_nsize_t nsize
dma SSIZE/DSIZE in each transfer.

uint8_t nbytes
dma minor byte transfer count initially configured.

uint8_t count
The transfer data count in a DMA request.

uint32_t state
Internal state for FLEXSPI dma transfer.

flexspi_dma_callback_t completionCallback
A callback function called after the dma transfer is finished.

void *userData
User callback parameter

2.24 FMEAS: Frequency Measure Driver

static inline void FMEAS_StartMeasure(*FMEAS_SYSCON_Type* *base)
Starts a frequency measurement cycle.

Parameters

- base – : SYSCON peripheral base address.

static inline bool FMEAS_IsMeasureComplete(*FMEAS_SYSCON_Type* *base)

Indicates when a frequency measurement cycle is complete.

Parameters

- base – : SYSCON peripheral base address.

Returns

true if a measurement cycle is active, otherwise false.

uint32_t FMEAS_GetFrequency(*FMEAS_SYSCON_Type* *base, uint32_t refClockRate)

Returns the computed value for a frequency measurement cycle.

Parameters

- base – : SYSCON peripheral base address.
- refClockRate – : Reference clock rate used during the frequency measurement cycle.

Returns

Frequency in Hz.

FSL_FMEAS_DRIVER_VERSION

Defines LPC Frequency Measure driver version 2.1.1.

typedef FREQME_Type FMEAS_SYSCON_Type

FMEAS_SYSCON_FREQMECTRL_CAPVAL_MASK

FMEAS_SYSCON_FREQMECTRL_CAPVAL_SHIFT

FMEAS_SYSCON_FREQMECTRL_CAPVAL

FMEAS_SYSCON_FREQMECTRL_PROG_MASK

FMEAS_SYSCON_FREQMECTRL_PROG_SHIFT

FMEAS_SYSCON_FREQMECTRL_PROG

2.25 Hashcrypt: The Cryptographic Accelerator

2.26 Hashcrypt Background HASH

void HASHCRYPT_SHA_SetCallback(HASHCRYPT_Type *base, *hashcrypt_hash_ctx_t* *ctx, *hashcrypt_callback_t* callback, void *userData)

Initializes the HASHCRYPT handle for background hashing.

This function initializes the hash context for background hashing (Non-blocking) APIs. This is less typical interface to hash function, but can be used for parallel processing, when main CPU has something else to do. Example is digital signature RSASSA-PKCS1-V1_5-VERIFY((n,e),M,S) algorithm, where background hashing of M can be started, then CPU can compute S^e mod n (in parallel with background hashing) and once the digest becomes available, CPU can proceed to comparison of EM with EM'.

Parameters

- base – HASHCRYPT peripheral base address.
- ctx – **[out]** Hash context.
- callback – Callback function.

- userData – User data (to be passed as an argument to callback function, once callback is invoked from isr).

status_t HASHCRYPT_SHA_UpdateNonBlocking(HASHCRYPT_Type *base, *hashcrypt_hash_ctx_t* *ctx, const uint8_t *input, size_t inputSize)

Create running hash on given data.

Configures the HASHCRYPT to compute new running hash as AHB master and returns immediately. HASHCRYPT AHB Master mode supports only aligned input address and can be called only once per continuous block of data. Every call to this function must be preceded with HASHCRYPT_SHA_Init() and finished with HASHCRYPT_SHA_Finish(). Once callback function is invoked by HASHCRYPT isr, it should set a flag for the main application to finalize the hashing (padding) and to read out the final digest by calling HASHCRYPT_SHA_Finish().

Parameters

- base – HASHCRYPT peripheral base address
- ctx – Specifies callback. Last incomplete 512-bit block of the input is copied into clear buffer for padding.
- input – 32-bit word aligned pointer to Input data.
- inputSize – Size of input data in bytes (must be word aligned)

Returns

Status of the hash update operation.

2.27 Hashcrypt common functions

FSL_HASHCRYPT_DRIVER_VERSION

HASHCRYPT driver version. Version 2.2.16.

Current version: 2.2.16

Change log:

- Version 2.0.0
  - Initial version
- Version 2.0.1
  - Support loading AES key from unaligned address
- Version 2.0.2
  - Support loading AES key from unaligned address for different compiler and core variants
- Version 2.0.3
  - Remove SHA512 and AES ICB algorithm definitions
- Version 2.0.4
  - Add SHA context switch support
- Version 2.1.0
  - Update the register name and macro to align with new header.
- Version 2.1.1
  - Fix MISRA C-2012.
- Version 2.1.2

  - Support loading AES input data from unaligned address.
- Version 2.1.3
  - Fix MISRA C-2012.
- Version 2.1.4
  - Fix context switch cannot work when switching from AES.
- Version 2.1.5
  - Add data synchronization barrier inside hashcrypt_sha_ldm_stm_16_words() to prevent possible optimization issue.
- Version 2.2.0
  - Add AES-OFB and AES-CFB mixed IP/SW modes.
- Version 2.2.1
  - Add data synchronization barrier inside hashcrypt_sha_ldm_stm_16_words() prevent compiler from reordering memory write when -O2 or higher is used.
- Version 2.2.2
  - Add data synchronization barrier inside hashcrypt_sha_ldm_stm_16_words() to fix optimization issue
- Version 2.2.3
  - Added check for size in hashcrypt_aes_one_block to prevent overflowing COUNT field in MEMCTRL register, if its bigger than COUNT field do a multiple runs.
- Version 2.2.4
  - In all HASHCRYPT_AES_xx functions have been added setting CTRL_MODE bitfield to 0 after processing data, which decreases power consumption.
- Version 2.2.5
  - Add data synchronization barrier and instruction synchronization barrier inside hashcrypt_sha_process_message_data() to fix optimization issue
- Version 2.2.6
  - Add data synchronization barrier inside HASHCRYPT_SHA_Update() and hashcrypt_get_data() function to fix optimization issue on MDK and ARMGCC release targets
- Version 2.2.7
  - Add data synchronization barrier inside HASHCRYPT_SHA_Update() to fix optimization issue on MCUX IDE release target
- Version 2.2.8
  - Unify hashcrypt hashing behavior between aligned and unaligned input data
- Version 2.2.9
  - Add handling of set ERROR bit in the STATUS register
- Version 2.2.10
  - Fix missing error statement in hashcrypt_save_running_hash()
- Version 2.2.11
  - Fix incorrect SHA-256 calculation for long messages with reload
- Version 2.2.12

  - Fix hardfault issue on the Keil compiler due to unaligned memcpy() input on some optimization levels
- Version 2.2.13
  - Added function hashcrypt_seed_prng() which loading random number into PRNG_SEED register before AES operation for SCA protection
- Version 2.2.14
  - Modify function hashcrypt_get_data() to prevent issue with unaligned access
- Version 2.2.15
  - Add wait on DIGEST BIT inside hashcrypt_sha_one_block() to fix issues with some optimization flags
- Version 2.2.16
  - Add DSB instruction inside hashcrypt_sha_ldm_stm_16_words() to fix issues with some optimization flags
- Version 2.2.17
  - Fix context size when hashcrypt built with reload feature

enum _hashcrypt_algo_t

Algorithm used for Hashcrypt operation.

Values:

enumerator kHASHCRYPT_Sha1

SHA_1

enumerator kHASHCRYPT_Sha256

SHA_256

enumerator kHASHCRYPT_Aes

AES

typedef enum *_hashcrypt_algo_t* hashcrypt_algo_t

Algorithm used for Hashcrypt operation.

void HASHCRYPT_Init(HASHCRYPT_Type *base)

Enables clock and disables reset for HASHCRYPT peripheral.

Enable clock and disable reset for HASHCRYPT.

Parameters

- base – HASHCRYPT base address

void HASHCRYPT_Deinit(HASHCRYPT_Type *base)

Disables clock for HASHCRYPT peripheral.

Disable clock and enable reset.

Parameters

- base – HASHCRYPT base address

HASHCRYPT_MODE_SHA1

Algorithm definitions correspond with the values for Mode field in Control register !

HASHCRYPT_MODE_SHA256

HASHCRYPT_MODE_AES

2.28 Hashcrypt AES

enum _hashcrypt_aes_mode_t

AES mode.

Values:

enumerator kHASHCRYPT_AesEcb

AES ECB mode

enumerator kHASHCRYPT_AesCbc

AES CBC mode

enumerator kHASHCRYPT_AesCtr

AES CTR mode

enum _hashcrypt_aes_keysize_t

Size of AES key.

Values:

enumerator kHASHCRYPT_Aes128

AES 128 bit key

enumerator kHASHCRYPT_Aes192

AES 192 bit key

enumerator kHASHCRYPT_Aes256

AES 256 bit key

enumerator kHASHCRYPT_InvalidKey

AES invalid key

enum _hashcrypt_key

HASHCRYPT key source selection.

Values:

enumerator kHASHCRYPT_UserKey

HASHCRYPT user key

enumerator kHASHCRYPT_SecretKey

HASHCRYPT secret key (dedicated hw bus from PUF)

typedef enum *_hashcrypt_aes_mode_t* hashcrypt_aes_mode_t

AES mode.

typedef enum *_hashcrypt_aes_keysize_t* hashcrypt_aes_keysize_t

Size of AES key.

typedef enum *_hashcrypt_key* hashcrypt_key_t

HASHCRYPT key source selection.

typedef struct *_hashcrypt_handle* hashcrypt_handle_t

struct _hashcrypt_handle __attribute__ ((aligned))

status_t HASHCRYPT_AES_SetKey(HASHCRYPT_Type *base, *hashcrypt_handle_t* *handle, const uint8_t *key, size_t keySize)

Set AES key to hashcrypt_handle_t struct and optionally to HASHCRYPT.

Sets the AES key for encryption/decryption with the hashcrypt_handle_t structure. The hashcrypt_handle_t input argument specifies key source.

Parameters

- base – HASHCRYPT peripheral base address.
- handle – Handle used for the request.
- key – 0-mod-4 aligned pointer to AES key.
- keySize – AES key size in bytes. Shall equal 16, 24 or 32.

Returns
status from set key operation

status_t HASHCRYPT_AES_EncryptEcb(HASHCRYPT_Type *base, *hashcrypt_handle_t* *handle, const uint8_t *plaintext, uint8_t *ciphertext, size_t size)

Encrypts AES on one or multiple 128-bit block(s).

Encrypts AES. The source plaintext and destination ciphertext can overlap in system memory.

Parameters

- base – HASHCRYPT peripheral base address
- handle – Handle used for this request.
- plaintext – Input plain text to encrypt
- ciphertext – **[out]** Output cipher text
- size – Size of input and output data in bytes. Must be multiple of 16 bytes.

Returns
Status from encrypt operation

status_t HASHCRYPT_AES_DecryptEcb(HASHCRYPT_Type *base, *hashcrypt_handle_t* *handle, const uint8_t *ciphertext, uint8_t *plaintext, size_t size)

Decrypts AES on one or multiple 128-bit block(s).

Decrypts AES. The source ciphertext and destination plaintext can overlap in system memory.

Parameters

- base – HASHCRYPT peripheral base address
- handle – Handle used for this request.
- ciphertext – Input plain text to encrypt
- plaintext – **[out]** Output cipher text
- size – Size of input and output data in bytes. Must be multiple of 16 bytes.

Returns
Status from decrypt operation

status_t HASHCRYPT_AES_EncryptCbc(HASHCRYPT_Type *base, *hashcrypt_handle_t* *handle, const uint8_t *plaintext, uint8_t *ciphertext, size_t size, const uint8_t iv[16])

Encrypts AES using CBC block mode.

Parameters

- base – HASHCRYPT peripheral base address
- handle – Handle used for this request.
- plaintext – Input plain text to encrypt

- ciphertext – **[out]** Output cipher text
- size – Size of input and output data in bytes. Must be multiple of 16 bytes.
- iv – Input initial vector to combine with the first input block.

Returns
Status from encrypt operation

status_t HASHCRYPT_AES_DecryptCbc(HASHCRYPT_Type *base, *hashcrypt_handle_t* *handle, const uint8_t *ciphertext, uint8_t *plaintext, size_t size, const uint8_t iv[16])

Decrypts AES using CBC block mode.

Parameters

- base – HASHCRYPT peripheral base address
- handle – Handle used for this request.
- ciphertext – Input cipher text to decrypt
- plaintext – **[out]** Output plain text
- size – Size of input and output data in bytes. Must be multiple of 16 bytes.
- iv – Input initial vector to combine with the first input block.

Returns
Status from decrypt operation

status_t HASHCRYPT_AES_CryptCtr(HASHCRYPT_Type *base, *hashcrypt_handle_t* *handle, const uint8_t *input, uint8_t *output, size_t size, uint8_t counter[16U], uint8_t counterlast[16U], size_t *szLeft)

Encrypts or decrypts AES using CTR block mode.

Encrypts or decrypts AES using CTR block mode. AES CTR mode uses only forward AES cipher and same algorithm for encryption and decryption. The only difference between encryption and decryption is that, for encryption, the input argument is plain text and the output argument is cipher text. For decryption, the input argument is cipher text and the output argument is plain text.

Parameters

- base – HASHCRYPT peripheral base address
- handle – Handle used for this request.
- input – Input data for CTR block mode
- output – **[out]** Output data for CTR block mode
- size – Size of input and output data in bytes
- counter – **[inout]** Input counter (updates on return)
- counterlast – **[out]** Output cipher of last counter, for chained CTR calls (statefull encryption). NULL can be passed if chained calls are not used.
- szLeft – **[out]** Output number of bytes in left unused in counterlast block. NULL can be passed if chained calls are not used.

Returns
Status from encrypt operation

status_t HASHCRYPT_AES_CryptOfb(HASHCRYPT_Type *base, *hashcrypt_handle_t* *handle, const uint8_t *input, uint8_t *output, size_t size, const uint8_t iv[16U])

Encrypts or decrypts AES using OFB block mode.

Encrypts or decrypts AES using OFB block mode. AES OFB mode uses only forward AES cipher and same algorithm for encryption and decryption. The only difference between encryption and decryption is that, for encryption, the input argument is plain text and the output argument is cipher text. For decryption, the input argument is cipher text and the output argument is plain text.

Parameters

- base – HASHCRYPT peripheral base address
- handle – Handle used for this request.
- input – Input data for OFB block mode
- output – **[out]** Output data for OFB block mode
- size – Size of input and output data in bytes
- iv – Input initial vector to combine with the first input block.

Returns

Status from encrypt operation

status_t HASHCRYPT_AES_EncryptCfb(HASHCRYPT_Type *base, *hashcrypt_handle_t* *handle, const uint8_t *plaintext, uint8_t *ciphertext, size_t size, const uint8_t iv[16])

Encrypts AES using CFB block mode.

Parameters

- base – HASHCRYPT peripheral base address
- handle – Handle used for this request.
- plaintext – Input plain text to encrypt
- ciphertext – **[out]** Output cipher text
- size – Size of input and output data in bytes. Must be multiple of 16 bytes.
- iv – Input initial vector to combine with the first input block.

Returns

Status from encrypt operation

status_t HASHCRYPT_AES_DecryptCfb(HASHCRYPT_Type *base, *hashcrypt_handle_t* *handle, const uint8_t *ciphertext, uint8_t *plaintext, size_t size, const uint8_t iv[16])

Decrypts AES using CFB block mode.

Parameters

- base – HASHCRYPT peripheral base address
- handle – Handle used for this request.
- ciphertext – Input cipher text to decrypt
- plaintext – **[out]** Output plaintext text
- size – Size of input and output data in bytes. Must be multiple of 16 bytes.
- iv – Input initial vector to combine with the first input block.

Returns

Status from encrypt operation

HASHCRYPT_AES_BLOCK_SIZE
AES block size in bytes

AES_ENCRYPT

AES_DECRYPT

struct _hashcrypt_handle
#include <fsl_hashcrypt.h> Specify HASHCRYPT's key resource.

Public Members

uint32_t keyWord[8]
Copy of user key (set by HASHCRYPT_AES_SetKey().

hashcrypt_key_t keyType
For operations with key (such as AES encryption/decryption), specify key type.

2.29 Hashcrypt HASH

typedef struct *_hashcrypt_hash_ctx_t* hashcrypt_hash_ctx_t
Storage type used to save hash context.

typedef void (*hashcrypt_callback_t)(HASHCRYPT_Type *base, *hashcrypt_hash_ctx_t* *ctx, *status_t* status, void *userData)
HASHCRYPT background hash callback function.

status_t HASHCRYPT_SHA(HASHCRYPT_Type *base, *hashcrypt_algo_t* algo, const uint8_t *input, size_t inputSize, uint8_t *output, size_t *outputSize)
Create HASH on given data.

Perform the full SHA in one function call. The function is blocking.

Parameters

- base – HASHCRYPT peripheral base address
- algo – Underlaying algorithm to use for hash computation.
- input – Input data
- inputSize – Size of input data in bytes
- output – **[out]** Output hash data
- outputSize – **[out]** Output parameter storing the size of the output hash in bytes

Returns
Status of the one call hash operation.

status_t HASHCRYPT_SHA_Init(HASHCRYPT_Type *base, *hashcrypt_hash_ctx_t* *ctx, *hashcrypt_algo_t* algo)
Initialize HASH context.

This function initializes the HASH.

Parameters

- base – HASHCRYPT peripheral base address
- ctx – **[out]** Output hash context

- algo – Underlaying algorithm to use for hash computation.

Returns
Status of initialization

status_t HASHCRYPT_SHA_Update(HASHCRYPT_Type *base, *hashcrypt_hash_ctx_t* *ctx, const uint8_t *input, size_t inputSize)

Add data to current HASH.

Add data to current HASH. This can be called repeatedly with an arbitrary amount of data to be hashed. The functions blocks. If it returns kStatus_Success, the running hash has been updated (HASHCRYPT has processed the input data), so the memory at input pointer can be released back to system. The HASHCRYPT context buffer is updated with the running hash and with all necessary information to support possible context switch.

Parameters

- base – HASHCRYPT peripheral base address
- ctx – **[inout]** HASH context
- input – Input data
- inputSize – Size of input data in bytes

Returns
Status of the hash update operation

status_t HASHCRYPT_SHA_Finish(HASHCRYPT_Type *base, *hashcrypt_hash_ctx_t* *ctx, uint8_t *output, size_t *outputSize)

Finalize hashing.

Outputs the final hash (computed by HASHCRYPT_HASH_Update()) and erases the context.

Parameters

- base – HASHCRYPT peripheral base address
- ctx – **[inout]** Input hash context
- output – **[out]** Output hash data
- outputSize – **[inout]** Optional parameter (can be passed as NULL). On function entry, it specifies the size of output[] buffer. On function return, it stores the number of updated output bytes.

Returns
Status of the hash finish operation

HASHCRYPT_HASH_CTX_SIZE

HASHCRYPT HASH Context size.

struct __hashcrypt_hash_ctx_t

#include <fsl_hashcrypt.h> Storage type used to save hash context.

Public Members

uint32_t x[31]

storage

2.30 I2C: Inter-Integrated Circuit Driver

2.31 I2C DMA Driver

void I2C_MasterTransferCreateHandleDMA(I2C_Type *base, *i2c_master_dma_handle_t* *handle, *i2c_master_dma_transfer_callback_t* callback, void *userData, *dma_handle_t* *dmaHandle)

Init the I2C handle which is used in transactional functions.

Parameters

- base – I2C peripheral base address
- handle – pointer to i2c_master_dma_handle_t structure
- callback – pointer to user callback function
- userData – user param passed to the callback function
- dmaHandle – DMA handle pointer

status_t I2C_MasterTransferDMA(I2C_Type *base, *i2c_master_dma_handle_t* *handle, *i2c_master_transfer_t* *xfer)

Performs a master dma non-blocking transfer on the I2C bus.

Parameters

- base – I2C peripheral base address
- handle – pointer to i2c_master_dma_handle_t structure
- xfer – pointer to transfer structure of i2c_master_transfer_t

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Sucessully complete the data transmission.
- kStatus_I2C_Busy – Previous transmission still not finished.
- kStatus_I2C_Timeout – Transfer error, wait signal timeout.
- kStatus_I2C_ArbitrationLost – Transfer error, arbitration lost.
- kStataus_I2C_Nak – Transfer error, receive Nak during transfer.

status_t I2C_MasterTransferGetCountDMA(I2C_Type *base, *i2c_master_dma_handle_t* *handle, size_t *count)

Get master transfer status during a dma non-blocking transfer.

Parameters

- base – I2C peripheral base address
- handle – pointer to i2c_master_dma_handle_t structure
- count – Number of bytes transferred so far by the non-blocking transaction.

void I2C_MasterTransferAbortDMA(I2C_Type *base, *i2c_master_dma_handle_t* *handle)

Abort a master dma non-blocking transfer in a early time.

Parameters

- base – I2C peripheral base address
- handle – pointer to i2c_master_dma_handle_t structure

FSL_I2C_DMA_DRIVER_VERSION

I2C DMA driver version.

typedef struct *_i2c_master_dma_handle* i2c_master_dma_handle_t

I2C master dma handle typedef.

typedef void (*i2c_master_dma_transfer_callback_t)(I2C_Type *base, *i2c_master_dma_handle_t* *handle, *status_t* status, void *userData)

I2C master dma transfer callback typedef.

typedef void (*flexcomm_i2c_dma_master_irq_handler_t)(I2C_Type *base, *i2c_master_dma_handle_t* *handle)

Typedef for master dma handler.

I2C_MAX_DMA_TRANSFER_COUNT

Maximum lenght of single DMA transfer (determined by capability of the DMA engine)

struct _i2c_master_dma_handle

#include <fsl_i2c_dma.h> I2C master dma transfer structure.

Public Members

uint8_t state

Transfer state machine current state.

uint32_t transferCount

Indicates progress of the transfer

uint32_t remainingBytesDMA

Remaining byte count to be transferred using DMA.

uint8_t *buf

Buffer pointer for current state.

bool checkAddrNack

Whether to check the nack signal is detected during addressing.

dma_handle_t *dmaHandle

The DMA handler used.

i2c_master_transfer_t transfer

Copy of the current transfer info.

i2c_master_dma_transfer_callback_t completionCallback

Callback function called after dma transfer finished.

void *userData

Callback parameter passed to callback function.

2.32 I2C Driver

FSL_I2C_DRIVER_VERSION

I2C driver version.

I2C status return codes.

Values:

enumerator kStatus_I2C_Busy

The master is already performing a transfer.

enumerator kStatus_I2C_Idle

The slave driver is idle.

enumerator kStatus_I2C_Nak
The slave device sent a NAK in response to a byte.

enumerator kStatus_I2C_InvalidParameter
Unable to proceed due to invalid parameter.

enumerator kStatus_I2C_BitError
Transferred bit was not seen on the bus.

enumerator kStatus_I2C_ArbitrationLost
Arbitration lost error.

enumerator kStatus_I2C_NoTransferInProgress
Attempt to abort a transfer when one is not in progress.

enumerator kStatus_I2C_DmaRequestFail
DMA request failed.

enumerator kStatus_I2C_StartStopError
Start and stop error.

enumerator kStatus_I2C_UnexpectedState
Unexpected state.

enumerator kStatus_I2C_Timeout
Timeout when waiting for I2C master/slave pending status to set to continue transfer.

enumerator kStatus_I2C_Addr_Nak
NAK received for Address

enumerator kStatus_I2C_EventTimeout
Timeout waiting for bus event.

enumerator kStatus_I2C_SclLowTimeout
Timeout SCL signal remains low.

enum _i2c_status_flags
I2C status flags.

Note: These enums are meant to be OR'd together to form a bit mask.

Values:

enumerator kI2C_MasterPendingFlag
The I2C module is waiting for software interaction. bit 0

enumerator kI2C_MasterArbitrationLostFlag
The arbitration of the bus was lost. There was collision on the bus. bit 4

enumerator kI2C_MasterStartStopErrorFlag
There was an error during start or stop phase of the transaction. bit 6

enumerator kI2C_MasterIdleFlag
The I2C master idle status. bit 5

enumerator kI2C_MasterRxReadyFlag
The I2C master rx ready status. bit 1

enumerator kI2C_MasterTxReadyFlag
The I2C master tx ready status. bit 2

enumerator kI2C_MasterAddrNackFlag
The I2C master address nack status. bit 7

enumerator kI2C_MasterDataNackFlag
The I2C master data nack status. bit 3

enumerator kI2C_SlavePendingFlag
The I2C module is waiting for software interaction. bit 8

enumerator kI2C_SlaveNotStretching
Indicates whether the slave is currently stretching clock (0 = yes, 1 = no). bit 11

enumerator kI2C_SlaveSelected
Indicates whether the slave is selected by an address match. bit 14

enumerator kI2C_SaveDeselected
Indicates that slave was previously deselected (deselect event took place, w1c). bit 15

enumerator kI2C_SlaveAddressedFlag
One of the I2C slave's 4 addresses is matched. bit 22

enumerator kI2C_SlaveReceiveFlag
Slave receive data available. bit 9

enumerator kI2C_SlaveTransmitFlag
Slave data can be transmitted. bit 10

enumerator kI2C_SlaveAddress0MatchFlag
Slave address0 match. bit 20

enumerator kI2C_SlaveAddress1MatchFlag
Slave address1 match. bit 12

enumerator kI2C_SlaveAddress2MatchFlag
Slave address2 match. bit 13

enumerator kI2C_SlaveAddress3MatchFlag
Slave address3 match. bit 21

enumerator kI2C_MonitorReadyFlag
The I2C monitor ready interrupt. bit 16

enumerator kI2C_MonitorOverflowFlag
The monitor data overrun interrupt. bit 17

enumerator kI2C_MonitorActiveFlag
The monitor is active. bit 18

enumerator kI2C_MonitorIdleFlag
The monitor idle interrupt. bit 19

enumerator kI2C_EventTimeoutFlag
The bus event timeout interrupt. bit 24

enumerator kI2C_SclTimeoutFlag
The SCL timeout interrupt. bit 25

enumerator kI2C_MasterAllClearFlags

enumerator kI2C_SlaveAllClearFlags

enumerator kI2C_CommonAllClearFlags

enum _i2c_interrupt_enable

I2C interrupt enable.

Note: These enums are meant to be OR'd together to form a bit mask.

Values:

enumerator kI2C_MasterPendingInterruptEnable

The I2C master communication pending interrupt.

enumerator kI2C_MasterArbitrationLostInterruptEnable

The I2C master arbitration lost interrupt.

enumerator kI2C_MasterStartStopErrorInterruptEnable

The I2C master start/stop timing error interrupt.

enumerator kI2C_SlavePendingInterruptEnable

The I2C slave communication pending interrupt.

enumerator kI2C_SlaveNotStretchingInterruptEnable

The I2C slave not streching interrupt, deep-sleep mode can be entered only when this interrupt occurs.

enumerator kI2C_SlaveDeselectedInterruptEnable

The I2C slave deselection interrupt.

enumerator kI2C_MonitorReadyInterruptEnable

The I2C monitor ready interrupt.

enumerator kI2C_MonitorOverflowInterruptEnable

The monitor data overrun interrupt.

enumerator kI2C_MonitorIdleInterruptEnable

The monitor idle interrupt.

enumerator kI2C_EventTimeoutInterruptEnable

The bus event timeout interrupt.

enumerator kI2C_SclTimeoutInterruptEnable

The SCL timeout interrupt.

enumerator kI2C_MasterAllInterruptEnable

enumerator kI2C_SlaveAllInterruptEnable

enumerator kI2C_CommonAllInterruptEnable

I2C_RETRY_TIMES

Retry times for waiting flag.

I2C_MASTER_TRANSMIT_IGNORE_LAST_NACK

Whether to ignore the nack signal of the last byte during master transmit.

I2C_STAT_MSTCODE_IDLE

Master Idle State Code

I2C_STAT_MSTCODE_RXREADY

Master Receive Ready State Code

I2C_STAT_MSTCODE_TXREADY

Master Transmit Ready State Code

I2C_STAT_MSTCODE_NACKADR
: Master NACK by slave on address State Code

I2C_STAT_MSTCODE_NACKDAT
: Master NACK by slave on data State Code

I2C_STAT_SLVST_ADDR

I2C_STAT_SLVST_RX

I2C_STAT_SLVST_TX

2.33 I2C Master Driver

void I2C_MasterGetDefaultConfig(*i2c_master_config_t* *masterConfig)

Provides a default configuration for the I2C master peripheral.

This function provides the following default configuration for the I2C master peripheral:

```
masterConfig->enableMaster            = true;
masterConfig->baudRate_Bps            = 100000U;
masterConfig->enableTimeout           = false;
```

After calling this function, you can override any settings in order to customize the configuration, prior to initializing the master driver with I2C_MasterInit().

Parameters

- masterConfig – **[out]** User provided configuration structure for default values. Refer to i2c_master_config_t.

void I2C_MasterInit(I2C_Type *base, const *i2c_master_config_t* *masterConfig, uint32_t srcClock_Hz)

Initializes the I2C master peripheral.

This function enables the peripheral clock and initializes the I2C master peripheral as described by the user provided configuration. A software reset is performed prior to configuration.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.
- masterConfig – User provided peripheral configuration. Use I2C_MasterGetDefaultConfig() to get a set of defaults that you can override.
- srcClock_Hz – Frequency in Hertz of the I2C functional clock. Used to calculate the baud rate divisors, filter widths, and timeout periods.

void I2C_MasterDeinit(I2C_Type *base)

Deinitializes the I2C master peripheral.

This function disables the I2C master peripheral and gates the clock. It also performs a software reset to restore the peripheral to reset conditions.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.

uint32_t I2C_GetInstance(I2C_Type *base)

Returns an instance number given a base address.

If an invalid base address is passed, debug builds will assert. Release builds will just return instance number 0.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.

Returns

I2C instance number starting from 0.

static inline void I2C_MasterReset(I2C_Type *base)

Performs a software reset.

Restores the I2C master peripheral to reset conditions.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.

static inline void I2C_MasterEnable(I2C_Type *base, bool enable)

Enables or disables the I2C module as master.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.
- enable – Pass true to enable or false to disable the specified I2C as master.

uint32_t I2C_GetStatusFlags(I2C_Type *base)

Gets the I2C status flags.

A bit mask with the state of all I2C status flags is returned. For each flag, the corresponding bit in the return value is set if the flag is asserted.

See also:

_i2c_status_flags.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.

Returns

State of the status flags:

- 1: related status flag is set.
- 0: related status flag is not set.

static inline void I2C_ClearStatusFlags(I2C_Type *base, uint32_t statusMask)

Clears the I2C status flag state.

Refer to kI2C_CommonAllClearStatusFlags, kI2C_MasterAllClearStatusFlags and kI2C_SlaveAllClearStatusFlags to see the clearable flags. Attempts to clear other flags has no effect.

See also:

_i2c_status_flags, _i2c_master_status_flags and _i2c_slave_status_flags.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.

- statusMask – A bitmask of status flags that are to be cleared. The mask is composed of the members in kI2C_CommonAllClearStatusFlags, kI2C_MasterAllClearStatusFlags and kI2C_SlaveAllClearStatusFlags. You may pass the result of a previous call to I2C_GetStatusFlags().

static inline void I2C_MasterClearStatusFlags(I2C_Type *base, uint32_t statusMask)

Clears the I2C master status flag state.

Deprecated:

Do not use this function. It has been superceded by I2C_ClearStatusFlags The following status register flags can be cleared:

- kI2C_MasterArbitrationLostFlag
- kI2C_MasterStartStopErrorFlag

Attempts to clear other flags has no effect.

See also:

_i2c_status_flags.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.
- statusMask – A bitmask of status flags that are to be cleared. The mask is composed of _i2c_status_flags enumerators OR'd together. You may pass the result of a previous call to I2C_GetStatusFlags().

static inline void I2C_EnableInterrupts(I2C_Type *base, uint32_t interruptMask)

Enables the I2C interrupt requests.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.
- interruptMask – Bit mask of interrupts to enable. See _i2c_interrupt_enable for the set of constants that should be OR'd together to form the bit mask.

static inline void I2C_DisableInterrupts(I2C_Type *base, uint32_t interruptMask)

Disables the I2C interrupt requests.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.
- interruptMask – Bit mask of interrupts to disable. See _i2c_interrupt_enable for the set of constants that should be OR'd together to form the bit mask.

static inline uint32_t I2C_GetEnabledInterrupts(I2C_Type *base)

Returns the set of currently enabled I2C interrupt requests.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.

Returns

A bitmask composed of _i2c_interrupt_enable enumerators OR'd together to indicate the set of enabled interrupts.

void I2C_MasterSetBaudRate(I2C_Type *base, uint32_t baudRate_Bps, uint32_t srcClock_Hz)

Sets the I2C bus frequency for master transactions.

The I2C master is automatically disabled and re-enabled as necessary to configure the baud rate. Do not call this function during a transfer, or the transfer is aborted.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.
- srcClock_Hz – I2C functional clock frequency in Hertz.
- baudRate_Bps – Requested bus frequency in bits per second.

void I2C_MasterSetTimeoutValue(I2C_Type *base, uint8_t timeout_Ms, uint32_t srcClock_Hz)

Sets the I2C bus timeout value.

If the SCL signal remains low or bus does not have event longer than the timeout value, kI2C_SclTimeoutFlag or kI2C_EventTimeoutFlag is set. This can indicete the bus is held by slave or any fault occurs to the I2C module.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.
- timeout_Ms – Timeout value in millisecond.
- srcClock_Hz – I2C functional clock frequency in Hertz.

static inline bool I2C_MasterGetBusIdleState(I2C_Type *base)

Returns whether the bus is idle.

Requires the master mode to be enabled.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.

Return values

- true – Bus is busy.
- false – Bus is idle.

status_t I2C_MasterStart(I2C_Type *base, uint8_t address, *i2c_direction_t* direction)

Sends a START on the I2C bus.

This function is used to initiate a new master mode transfer by sending the START signal. The slave address is sent following the I2C START signal.

Parameters

- base – I2C peripheral base pointer
- address – 7-bit slave device address.
- direction – Master transfer directions(transmit/receive).

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Successfully send the start signal.
- kStatus_I2C_Busy – Current bus is busy.

status_t I2C_MasterStop(I2C_Type *base)

Sends a STOP signal on the I2C bus.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Successfully send the stop signal.
- kStatus_I2C_Timeout – Send stop signal failed, timeout.

static inline *status_t* I2C_MasterRepeatedStart(I2C_Type *base, uint8_t address, *i2c_direction_t* direction)

Sends a REPEATED START on the I2C bus.

Parameters

- base – I2C peripheral base pointer
- address – 7-bit slave device address.
- direction – Master transfer directions(transmit/receive).

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Successfully send the start signal.
- kStatus_I2C_Busy – Current bus is busy but not occupied by current I2C master.

status_t I2C_MasterWriteBlocking(I2C_Type *base, const void *txBuff, size_t txSize, uint32_t flags)

Performs a polling send transfer on the I2C bus.

Sends up to *txSize* number of bytes to the previously addressed slave device. The slave may reply with a NAK to any byte in order to terminate the transfer early. If this happens, this function returns kStatus_I2C_Nak.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.
- txBuff – The pointer to the data to be transferred.
- txSize – The length in bytes of the data to be transferred.
- flags – Transfer control flag to control special behavior like suppressing start or stop, for normal transfers use kI2C_TransferDefaultFlag

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Data was sent successfully.
- kStatus_I2C_Busy – Another master is currently utilizing the bus.
- kStatus_I2C_Nak – The slave device sent a NAK in response to a byte.
- kStatus_I2C_ArbitrationLost – Arbitration lost error.

status_t I2C_MasterReadBlocking(I2C_Type *base, void *rxBuff, size_t rxSize, uint32_t flags)

Performs a polling receive transfer on the I2C bus.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.
- rxBuff – The pointer to the data to be transferred.
- rxSize – The length in bytes of the data to be transferred.
- flags – Transfer control flag to control special behavior like suppressing start or stop, for normal transfers use kI2C_TransferDefaultFlag

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Data was received successfully.
- kStatus_I2C_Busy – Another master is currently utilizing the bus.
- kStatus_I2C_Nak – The slave device sent a NAK in response to a byte.
- kStatus_I2C_ArbitrationLost – Arbitration lost error.

status_t I2C_MasterTransferBlocking(I2C_Type *base, *i2c_master_transfer_t* *xfer)

Performs a master polling transfer on the I2C bus.

Note: The API does not return until the transfer succeeds or fails due to arbitration lost or receiving a NAK.

Parameters

- base – I2C peripheral base address.
- xfer – Pointer to the transfer structure.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Successfully complete the data transmission.
- kStatus_I2C_Busy – Previous transmission still not finished.
- kStatus_I2C_Timeout – Transfer error, wait signal timeout.
- kStatus_I2C_ArbitrationLost – Transfer error, arbitration lost.
- kStataus_I2C_Nak – Transfer error, receive NAK during transfer.
- kStataus_I2C_Addr_Nak – Transfer error, receive NAK during addressing.

void I2C_MasterTransferCreateHandle(I2C_Type *base, *i2c_master_handle_t* *handle, *i2c_master_transfer_callback_t* callback, void *userData)

Creates a new handle for the I2C master non-blocking APIs.

The creation of a handle is for use with the non-blocking APIs. Once a handle is created, there is not a corresponding destroy handle. If the user wants to terminate a transfer, the I2C_MasterTransferAbort() API shall be called.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.
- handle – **[out]** Pointer to the I2C master driver handle.
- callback – User provided pointer to the asynchronous callback function.
- userData – User provided pointer to the application callback data.

status_t I2C_MasterTransferNonBlocking(I2C_Type *base, *i2c_master_handle_t* *handle, *i2c_master_transfer_t* *xfer)

Performs a non-blocking transaction on the I2C bus.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.
- handle – Pointer to the I2C master driver handle.
- xfer – The pointer to the transfer descriptor.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – The transaction was started successfully.
- kStatus_I2C_Busy – Either another master is currently utilizing the bus, or a non-blocking transaction is already in progress.

status_t I2C_MasterTransferGetCount(I2C_Type *base, *i2c_master_handle_t* *handle, size_t *count)

Returns number of bytes transferred so far.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.
- handle – Pointer to the I2C master driver handle.
- count – **[out]** Number of bytes transferred so far by the non-blocking transaction.

Return values

- kStatus_Success –
- kStatus_I2C_Busy –

status_t I2C_MasterTransferAbort(I2C_Type *base, *i2c_master_handle_t* *handle)

Terminates a non-blocking I2C master transmission early.

Note: It is not safe to call this function from an IRQ handler that has a higher priority than the I2C peripheral's IRQ priority.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.
- handle – Pointer to the I2C master driver handle.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – A transaction was successfully aborted.
- kStatus_I2C_Timeout – Timeout during polling for flags.

void I2C_MasterTransferHandleIRQ(I2C_Type *base, *i2c_master_handle_t* *handle)

Reusable routine to handle master interrupts.

Note: This function does not need to be called unless you are reimplementing the non-blocking API's interrupt handler routines to add special functionality.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.
- handle – Pointer to the I2C master driver handle.

enum _i2c_direction

Direction of master and slave transfers.

Values:

enumerator kI2C_Write

Master transmit.

enumerator kI2C_Read

Master receive.

enum _i2c_master_transfer_flags

Transfer option flags.

Note: These enumerations are intended to be OR'd together to form a bit mask of options for the _i2c_master_transfer::flags field.

Values:

enumerator kI2C_TransferDefaultFlag
Transfer starts with a start signal, stops with a stop signal.

enumerator kI2C_TransferNoStartFlag
Don't send a start condition, address, and sub address

enumerator kI2C_TransferRepeatedStartFlag
Send a repeated start condition

enumerator kI2C_TransferNoStopFlag
Don't send a stop condition.

enum _i2c_transfer_states
States for the state machine used by transactional APIs.

Values:

enumerator kIdleState

enumerator kTransmitSubaddrState

enumerator kTransmitDataState

enumerator kReceiveDataBeginState

enumerator kReceiveDataState

enumerator kReceiveLastDataState

enumerator kStartState

enumerator kStopState

enumerator kWaitForCompletionState

typedef enum *_i2c_direction* i2c_direction_t
Direction of master and slave transfers.

typedef struct *_i2c_master_config* i2c_master_config_t
Structure with settings to initialize the I2C master module.

This structure holds configuration settings for the I2C peripheral. To initialize this structure to reasonable defaults, call the I2C_MasterGetDefaultConfig() function and pass a pointer to your configuration structure instance.

The configuration structure can be made constant so it resides in flash.

typedef struct *_i2c_master_transfer* i2c_master_transfer_t
I2C master transfer typedef.

typedef struct *_i2c_master_handle* i2c_master_handle_t
I2C master handle typedef.

typedef void (*i2c_master_transfer_callback_t)(I2C_Type *base, *i2c_master_handle_t* *handle, *status_t* completionStatus, void *userData)
Master completion callback function pointer type.

This callback is used only for the non-blocking master transfer API. Specify the callback you wish to use in the call to I2C_MasterTransferCreateHandle().

Param base
The I2C peripheral base address.

Param completionStatus
Either kStatus_Success or an error code describing how the transfer completed.

Param userData
Arbitrary pointer-sized value passed from the application.

struct _i2c_master_config

#include <fsl_i2c.h> Structure with settings to initialize the I2C master module.

This structure holds configuration settings for the I2C peripheral. To initialize this structure to reasonable defaults, call the I2C_MasterGetDefaultConfig() function and pass a pointer to your configuration structure instance.

The configuration structure can be made constant so it resides in flash.

Public Members

bool enableMaster

Whether to enable master mode.

uint32_t baudRate_Bps

Desired baud rate in bits per second.

bool enableTimeout

Enable internal timeout function.

uint8_t timeout_Ms

Event timeout and SCL low timeout value.

struct _i2c_master_transfer

#include <fsl_i2c.h> Non-blocking transfer descriptor structure.

This structure is used to pass transaction parameters to the I2C_MasterTransferNonBlocking() API.

Public Members

uint32_t flags

Bit mask of options for the transfer. See enumeration _i2c_master_transfer_flags for available options. Set to 0 or kI2C_TransferDefaultFlag for normal transfers.

uint8_t slaveAddress

The 7-bit slave address.

i2c_direction_t direction

Either kI2C_Read or kI2C_Write.

uint32_t subaddress

Sub address. Transferred MSB first.

size_t subaddressSize

Length of sub address to send in bytes. Maximum size is 4 bytes.

void *data

Pointer to data to transfer.

size_t dataSize

Number of bytes to transfer.

struct _i2c_master_handle

#include <fsl_i2c.h> Driver handle for master non-blocking APIs.

Note: The contents of this structure are private and subject to change.

Public Members

uint8_t state
: Transfer state machine current state.

uint32_t transferCount
: Indicates progress of the transfer

uint32_t remainingBytes
: Remaining byte count in current state.

uint8_t *buf
: Buffer pointer for current state.

bool checkAddrNack
: Whether to check the nack signal is detected during addressing.

i2c_master_transfer_t transfer
: Copy of the current transfer info.

i2c_master_transfer_callback_t completionCallback
: Callback function pointer.

void *userData
: Application data passed to callback.

2.34 I2C Slave Driver

void I2C_SlaveGetDefaultConfig(*i2c_slave_config_t* *slaveConfig)

Provides a default configuration for the I2C slave peripheral.

This function provides the following default configuration for the I2C slave peripheral:

```
slaveConfig->enableSlave = true;
slaveConfig->address0.disable = false;
slaveConfig->address0.address = 0u;
slaveConfig->address1.disable = true;
slaveConfig->address2.disable = true;
slaveConfig->address3.disable = true;
slaveConfig->busSpeed = kI2C_SlaveStandardMode;
```

After calling this function, override any settings to customize the configuration, prior to initializing the master driver with I2C_SlaveInit(). Be sure to override at least the *address0.address* member of the configuration structure with the desired slave address.

Parameters

- slaveConfig – **[out]** User provided configuration structure that is set to default values. Refer to i2c_slave_config_t.

status_t I2C_SlaveInit(I2C_Type *base, const *i2c_slave_config_t* *slaveConfig, uint32_t srcClock_Hz)

Initializes the I2C slave peripheral.

This function enables the peripheral clock and initializes the I2C slave peripheral as described by the user provided configuration.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.
- slaveConfig – User provided peripheral configuration. Use I2C_SlaveGetDefaultConfig() to get a set of defaults that you can override.

- srcClock_Hz – Frequency in Hertz of the I2C functional clock. Used to calculate CLKDIV value to provide enough data setup time for master when slave stretches the clock.

void I2C_SlaveSetAddress(I2C_Type *base, *i2c_slave_address_register_t* addressRegister, uint8_t address, bool addressDisable)

Configures Slave Address n register.

This function writes new value to Slave Address register.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.
- addressRegister – The module supports multiple address registers. The parameter determines which one shall be changed.
- address – The slave address to be stored to the address register for matching.
- addressDisable – Disable matching of the specified address register.

void I2C_SlaveDeinit(I2C_Type *base)

Deinitializes the I2C slave peripheral.

This function disables the I2C slave peripheral and gates the clock. It also performs a software reset to restore the peripheral to reset conditions.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.

static inline void I2C_SlaveEnable(I2C_Type *base, bool enable)

Enables or disables the I2C module as slave.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.
- enable – True to enable or flase to disable.

static inline void I2C_SlaveClearStatusFlags(I2C_Type *base, uint32_t statusMask)

Clears the I2C status flag state.

The following status register flags can be cleared:

- slave deselected flag

Attempts to clear other flags has no effect.

See also:

_i2c_slave_flags.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.
- statusMask – A bitmask of status flags that are to be cleared. The mask is composed of _i2c_slave_flags enumerators OR'd together. You may pass the result of a previous call to I2C_SlaveGetStatusFlags().

status_t I2C_SlaveWriteBlocking(I2C_Type *base, const uint8_t *txBuff, size_t txSize)

Performs a polling send transfer on the I2C bus.

The function executes blocking address phase and blocking data phase.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.
- txBuff – The pointer to the data to be transferred.
- txSize – The length in bytes of the data to be transferred.

Returns
kStatus_Success Data has been sent.

Returns
kStatus_Fail Unexpected slave state (master data write while master read from slave is expected).

status_t I2C_SlaveReadBlocking(I2C_Type *base, uint8_t *rxBuff, size_t rxSize)

Performs a polling receive transfer on the I2C bus.

The function executes blocking address phase and blocking data phase.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.
- rxBuff – The pointer to the data to be transferred.
- rxSize – The length in bytes of the data to be transferred.

Returns
kStatus_Success Data has been received.

Returns
kStatus_Fail Unexpected slave state (master data read while master write to slave is expected).

void I2C_SlaveTransferCreateHandle(I2C_Type *base, *i2c_slave_handle_t* *handle, *i2c_slave_transfer_callback_t* callback, void *userData)

Creates a new handle for the I2C slave non-blocking APIs.

The creation of a handle is for use with the non-blocking APIs. Once a handle is created, there is not a corresponding destroy handle. If the user wants to terminate a transfer, the I2C_SlaveTransferAbort() API shall be called.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.
- handle – **[out]** Pointer to the I2C slave driver handle.
- callback – User provided pointer to the asynchronous callback function.
- userData – User provided pointer to the application callback data.

status_t I2C_SlaveTransferNonBlocking(I2C_Type *base, *i2c_slave_handle_t* *handle, uint32_t eventMask)

Starts accepting slave transfers.

Call this API after calling I2C_SlaveInit() and I2C_SlaveTransferCreateHandle() to start processing transactions driven by an I2C master. The slave monitors the I2C bus and pass events to the callback that was passed into the call to I2C_SlaveTransferCreateHandle(). The callback is always invoked from the interrupt context.

If no slave Tx transfer is busy, a master read from slave request invokes kI2C_SlaveTransmitEvent callback. If no slave Rx transfer is busy, a master write to slave request invokes kI2C_SlaveReceiveEvent callback.

The set of events received by the callback is customizable. To do so, set the *eventMask* parameter to the OR'd combination of i2c_slave_transfer_event_t enumerators for the events you wish to receive. The kI2C_SlaveTransmitEvent and kI2C_SlaveReceiveEvent events are always enabled and do not need to be included in the mask. Alternatively, you can pass 0 to get a default set of only the transmit and receive events that are always enabled. In

addition, the kI2C_SlaveAllEvents constant is provided as a convenient way to enable all events.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.
- handle – Pointer to i2c_slave_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state.
- eventMask – Bit mask formed by OR'ing together i2c_slave_transfer_event_t enumerators to specify which events to send to the callback. Other accepted values are 0 to get a default set of only the transmit and receive events, and kI2C_SlaveAllEvents to enable all events.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Slave transfers were successfully started.
- kStatus_I2C_Busy – Slave transfers have already been started on this handle.

status_t I2C_SlaveSetSendBuffer(I2C_Type *base, volatile *i2c_slave_transfer_t* *transfer, const void *txData, size_t txSize, uint32_t eventMask)

Starts accepting master read from slave requests.

The function can be called in response to kI2C_SlaveTransmitEvent callback to start a new slave Tx transfer from within the transfer callback.

The set of events received by the callback is customizable. To do so, set the *eventMask* parameter to the OR'd combination of i2c_slave_transfer_event_t enumerators for the events you wish to receive. The kI2C_SlaveTransmitEvent and kI2C_SlaveReceiveEvent events are always enabled and do not need to be included in the mask. Alternatively, you can pass 0 to get a default set of only the transmit and receive events that are always enabled. In addition, the kI2C_SlaveAllEvents constant is provided as a convenient way to enable all events.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.
- transfer – Pointer to i2c_slave_transfer_t structure.
- txData – Pointer to data to send to master.
- txSize – Size of txData in bytes.
- eventMask – Bit mask formed by OR'ing together i2c_slave_transfer_event_t enumerators to specify which events to send to the callback. Other accepted values are 0 to get a default set of only the transmit and receive events, and kI2C_SlaveAllEvents to enable all events.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Slave transfers were successfully started.
- kStatus_I2C_Busy – Slave transfers have already been started on this handle.

status_t I2C_SlaveSetReceiveBuffer(I2C_Type *base, volatile *i2c_slave_transfer_t* *transfer, void *rxData, size_t rxSize, uint32_t eventMask)

Starts accepting master write to slave requests.

The function can be called in response to kI2C_SlaveReceiveEvent callback to start a new slave Rx transfer from within the transfer callback.

The set of events received by the callback is customizable. To do so, set the *eventMask* parameter to the OR'd combination of i2c_slave_transfer_event_t enumerators for the events

you wish to receive. The kI2C_SlaveTransmitEvent and kI2C_SlaveReceiveEvent events are always enabled and do not need to be included in the mask. Alternatively, you can pass 0 to get a default set of only the transmit and receive events that are always enabled. In addition, the kI2C_SlaveAllEvents constant is provided as a convenient way to enable all events.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.
- transfer – Pointer to i2c_slave_transfer_t structure.
- rxData – Pointer to data to store data from master.
- rxSize – Size of rxData in bytes.
- eventMask – Bit mask formed by OR'ing together i2c_slave_transfer_event_t enumerators to specify which events to send to the callback. Other accepted values are 0 to get a default set of only the transmit and receive events, and kI2C_SlaveAllEvents to enable all events.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Slave transfers were successfully started.
- kStatus_I2C_Busy – Slave transfers have already been started on this handle.

static inline uint32_t I2C_SlaveGetReceivedAddress(I2C_Type *base, volatile *i2c_slave_transfer_t* *transfer)

Returns the slave address sent by the I2C master.

This function should only be called from the address match event callback kI2C_SlaveAddressMatchEvent.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.
- transfer – The I2C slave transfer.

Returns

The 8-bit address matched by the I2C slave. Bit 0 contains the R/w direction bit, and the 7-bit slave address is in the upper 7 bits.

void I2C_SlaveTransferAbort(I2C_Type *base, *i2c_slave_handle_t* *handle)

Aborts the slave non-blocking transfers.

Note: This API could be called at any time to stop slave for handling the bus events.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.
- handle – Pointer to i2c_slave_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state.

Return values

- kStatus_Success –
- kStatus_I2C_Idle –

status_t I2C_SlaveTransferGetCount(I2C_Type *base, *i2c_slave_handle_t* *handle, size_t *count)

Gets the slave transfer remaining bytes during a interrupt non-blocking transfer.

Parameters

- base – I2C base pointer.
- handle – pointer to i2c_slave_handle_t structure.
- count – Number of bytes transferred so far by the non-blocking transaction.

Return values

- kStatus_InvalidArgument – count is Invalid.
- kStatus_Success – Successfully return the count.

void I2C_SlaveTransferHandleIRQ(I2C_Type *base, *i2c_slave_handle_t* *handle)

Reusable routine to handle slave interrupts.

Note: This function does not need to be called unless you are reimplementing the non blocking API's interrupt handler routines to add special functionality.

Parameters

- base – The I2C peripheral base address.
- handle – Pointer to i2c_slave_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state.

enum _i2c_slave_address_register

I2C slave address register.

Values:

enumerator kI2C_SlaveAddressRegister0

Slave Address 0 register.

enumerator kI2C_SlaveAddressRegister1

Slave Address 1 register.

enumerator kI2C_SlaveAddressRegister2

Slave Address 2 register.

enumerator kI2C_SlaveAddressRegister3

Slave Address 3 register.

enum _i2c_slave_address_qual_mode

I2C slave address match options.

Values:

enumerator kI2C_QualModeMask

The SLVQUAL0 field (qualAddress) is used as a logical mask for matching address0.

enumerator kI2C_QualModeExtend

The SLVQUAL0 (qualAddress) field is used to extend address 0 matching in a range of addresses.

enum _i2c_slave_bus_speed

I2C slave bus speed options.

Values:

enumerator kI2C_SlaveStandardMode

enumerator kI2C_SlaveFastMode

enumerator kI2C_SlaveFastModePlus

enumerator kI2C_SlaveHsMode

enum _i2c_slave_transfer_event

Set of events sent to the callback for non blocking slave transfers.

These event enumerations are used for two related purposes. First, a bit mask created by OR'ing together events is passed to I2C_SlaveTransferNonBlocking() in order to specify which events to enable. Then, when the slave callback is invoked, it is passed the current event through its *transfer* parameter.

Note: These enumerations are meant to be OR'd together to form a bit mask of events.

Values:

enumerator kI2C_SlaveAddressMatchEvent

Received the slave address after a start or repeated start.

enumerator kI2C_SlaveTransmitEvent

Callback is requested to provide data to transmit (slave-transmitter role).

enumerator kI2C_SlaveReceiveEvent

Callback is requested to provide a buffer in which to place received data (slave-receiver role).

enumerator kI2C_SlaveCompletionEvent

All data in the active transfer have been consumed.

enumerator kI2C_SlaveDeselectedEvent

The slave function has become deselected (SLVSEL flag changing from 1 to 0.

enumerator kI2C_SlaveAllEvents

Bit mask of all available events.

enum _i2c_slave_fsm

I2C slave software finite state machine states.

Values:

enumerator kI2C_SlaveFsmAddressMatch

enumerator kI2C_SlaveFsmReceive

enumerator kI2C_SlaveFsmTransmit

typedef enum *_i2c_slave_address_register* i2c_slave_address_register_t

I2C slave address register.

typedef struct *_i2c_slave_address* i2c_slave_address_t

Data structure with 7-bit Slave address and Slave address disable.

typedef enum *_i2c_slave_address_qual_mode* i2c_slave_address_qual_mode_t

I2C slave address match options.

typedef enum *_i2c_slave_bus_speed* i2c_slave_bus_speed_t

I2C slave bus speed options.

typedef struct *_i2c_slave_config* i2c_slave_config_t

Structure with settings to initialize the I2C slave module.

This structure holds configuration settings for the I2C slave peripheral. To initialize this structure to reasonable defaults, call the I2C_SlaveGetDefaultConfig() function and pass a pointer to your configuration structure instance.

The configuration structure can be made constant so it resides in flash.

typedef enum *_i2c_slave_transfer_event* i2c_slave_transfer_event_t

Set of events sent to the callback for non blocking slave transfers.

These event enumerations are used for two related purposes. First, a bit mask created by OR'ing together events is passed to I2C_SlaveTransferNonBlocking() in order to specify which events to enable. Then, when the slave callback is invoked, it is passed the current event through its *transfer* parameter.

Note: These enumerations are meant to be OR'd together to form a bit mask of events.

typedef struct *_i2c_slave_handle* i2c_slave_handle_t

I2C slave handle typedef.

typedef struct *_i2c_slave_transfer* i2c_slave_transfer_t

I2C slave transfer structure.

typedef void (*i2c_slave_transfer_callback_t)(I2C_Type *base, volatile *i2c_slave_transfer_t* *transfer, void *userData)

Slave event callback function pointer type.

This callback is used only for the slave non-blocking transfer API. To install a callback, use the I2C_SlaveSetCallback() function after you have created a handle.

Param base
Base address for the I2C instance on which the event occurred.

Param transfer
Pointer to transfer descriptor containing values passed to and/or from the callback.

Param userData
Arbitrary pointer-sized value passed from the application.

typedef enum *_i2c_slave_fsm* i2c_slave_fsm_t

I2C slave software finite state machine states.

typedef void (*flexcomm_i2c_master_irq_handler_t)(I2C_Type *base, *i2c_master_handle_t* *handle)

Typedef for master interrupt handler.

typedef void (*flexcomm_i2c_slave_irq_handler_t)(I2C_Type *base, *i2c_slave_handle_t* *handle)

Typedef for slave interrupt handler.

struct __i2c_slave_address

#include <fsl_i2c.h> Data structure with 7-bit Slave address and Slave address disable.

Public Members

uint8_t address

7-bit Slave address SLVADR.

bool addressDisable

Slave address disable SADISABLE.

struct __i2c_slave_config

#include <fsl_i2c.h> Structure with settings to initialize the I2C slave module.

This structure holds configuration settings for the I2C slave peripheral. To initialize this structure to reasonable defaults, call the I2C_SlaveGetDefaultConfig() function and pass a pointer to your configuration structure instance.

The configuration structure can be made constant so it resides in flash.

Public Members

i2c_slave_address_t address0
: Slave's 7-bit address and disable.

i2c_slave_address_t address1
: Alternate slave 7-bit address and disable.

i2c_slave_address_t address2
: Alternate slave 7-bit address and disable.

i2c_slave_address_t address3
: Alternate slave 7-bit address and disable.

i2c_slave_address_qual_mode_t qualMode
: Qualify mode for slave address 0.

uint8_t qualAddress
: Slave address qualifier for address 0.

i2c_slave_bus_speed_t busSpeed
: Slave bus speed mode. If the slave function stretches SCL to allow for software response, it must provide sufficient data setup time to the master before releasing the stretched clock. This is accomplished by inserting one clock time of CLKDIV at that point. The busSpeed value is used to configure CLKDIV such that one clock time is greater than the tSU;DAT value noted in the I2C bus specification for the I2C mode that is being used. If the busSpeed mode is unknown at compile time, use the longest data setup time kI2C_SlaveStandardMode (250 ns)

bool enableSlave
: Enable slave mode.

struct __i2c__slave__transfer
: *#include <fsl_i2c.h>* I2C slave transfer structure.

Public Members

i2c_slave_handle_t *handle
: Pointer to handle that contains this transfer.

i2c_slave_transfer_event_t event
: Reason the callback is being invoked.

uint8_t receivedAddress
: Matching address send by master. 7-bits plus R/nW bit0

uint32_t eventMask
: Mask of enabled events.

uint8_t *rxData
: Transfer buffer for receive data

const uint8_t *txData
: Transfer buffer for transmit data

size_t txSize
: Transfer size

size_t rxSize
: Transfer size

size_t transferredCount

Number of bytes transferred during this transfer.

status_t completionStatus

Success or error code describing how the transfer completed. Only applies for kI2C_SlaveCompletionEvent.

struct _i2c_slave_handle

#include <fsl_i2c.h> I2C slave handle structure.

Note: The contents of this structure are private and subject to change.

Public Members

volatile *i2c_slave_transfer_t* transfer

I2C slave transfer.

volatile bool isBusy

Whether transfer is busy.

volatile *i2c_slave_fsm_t* slaveFsm

slave transfer state machine.

i2c_slave_transfer_callback_t callback

Callback function called at transfer event.

void *userData

Callback parameter passed to callback.

2.35 I2S: I2S Driver

2.36 I2S_BRIDGE: I2S bridging and signal sharing configuration

enum _i2s_bridge_share_set_index

I2S Bridge share set.

Values:

enumerator kI2S_BRIDGE_OriginalSignal

Original FLEXCOMM I2S signals

enumerator kI2S_BRIDGE_ShareSet0

share set 0 signals

enumerator kI2S_BRIDGE_ShareSet1

share set 1 signals

enum _i2s_bridge_signal

I2S signal.

Values:

enumerator kI2S_BRIDGE_SignalSCK

SCK signal

enumerator kI2S_BRIDGE_SignalWS
WS signal

enumerator kI2S_BRIDGE_SignalDataIn
Data in signal

enumerator kI2S_BRIDGE_SignalDataOut
Data out signal

enum _i2s_bridge_share_src
I2S signal source.

Values:

enumerator kI2S_BRIDGE_Flexcomm0
Shared signal comes from FLEXCOMM0

enumerator kI2S_BRIDGE_Flexcomm1
Shared signal comes from FLEXCOMM1

enumerator kI2S_BRIDGE_Flexcomm2
Shared signal comes from FLEXCOMM2

enumerator kI2S_BRIDGE_Flexcomm3
Shared signal comes from FLEXCOMM3

enumerator kI2S_BRIDGE_Flexcomm4
Shared signal comes from FLEXCOMM4

enumerator kI2S_BRIDGE_Flexcomm5
Shared signal comes from FLEXCOMM5

enumerator kI2S_BRIDGE_Flexcomm6
Shared signal comes from FLEXCOMM6

enumerator kI2S_BRIDGE_Flexcomm7
Shared signal comes from FLEXCOMM7

enum _i2s_bridge_dataout_mask
I2S Bridge shared data out mask.

Values:

enumerator kI2S_BRIDGE_Flexcomm0DataOut
FLEXCOMM0 DATAOUT Output Enable

enumerator kI2S_BRIDGE_Flexcomm1DataOut
FLEXCOMM1 DATAOUT Output Enable

enumerator kI2S_BRIDGE_Flexcomm2DataOut
FLEXCOMM2 DATAOUT Output Enable

enumerator kI2S_BRIDGE_Flexcomm3DataOut
FLEXCOMM3 DATAOUT Output Enable

enumerator kI2S_BRIDGE_Flexcomm4DataOut
FLEXCOMM4 DATAOUT Output Enable

enumerator kI2S_BRIDGE_Flexcomm5DataOut
FLEXCOMM5 DATAOUT Output Enable

enumerator kI2S_BRIDGE_Flexcomm6DataOut
FLEXCOMM6 DATAOUT Output Enable

enumerator kI2S_BRIDGE_Flexcomm7DataOut
FLEXCOMM7 DATAOUT Output Enable

typedef enum *_i2s_bridge_signal* i2s_bridge_signal_t
I2S signal.

FSL_I2S_BRIDGE_DRIVER_VERSION
Group I2S Bridge driver version for SDK.

Version 2.0.0.

void I2S_BRIDGE_SetFlexcommShareSet(uint32_t flexCommIndex, uint32_t sckSet, uint32_t wsSet, uint32_t dataInSet, uint32_t dataOutSet)
I2S Bridge share set selection for flexcomm instance.

Parameters

- flexCommIndex – index of flexcomm, refer to RM for supported FLEXCOMM instances.
- sckSet – share set for sck, refer to _i2s_bridge_share_set_index
- wsSet – share set for ws, refer to _i2s_bridge_share_set_index
- dataInSet – share set for data in, refer to _i2s_bridge_share_set_index
- dataOutSet – share set for data out, refer to _i2s_bridge_share_set_index

void I2S_BRIDGE_SetFlexcommSignalShareSet(uint32_t flexCommIndex, *i2s_bridge_signal_t* signal, uint32_t set)
I2S Bridge share set selection for a separate signal.

Parameters

- flexCommIndex – index of flexcomm, refer to RM for supported FLEXCOMM instances.
- signal – The signal need to be configured.
- set – share set for the signal, refer to _i2s_bridge_share_set_index

void I2S_BRIDGE_SetShareSetSrc(uint32_t setIndex, uint32_t sckShareSrc, uint32_t wsShareSrc, uint32_t dataInShareSrc, uint32_t dataOutShareSrc)
I2S Bridge share set source configure.

Parameters

- setIndex – index of share set, refer _i2s_bridge_share_set_index
- sckShareSrc – sck source for this share set, refer to _i2s_bridge_share_src
- wsShareSrc – ws source for this share set, refer to _i2s_bridge_share_src
- dataInShareSrc – data in source for this share set, refer to _i2s_bridge_share_src
- dataOutShareSrc – data out source for this share set, refer to _i2s_bridge_dataout_mask

void I2S_BRIDGE_SetShareSignalSrc(uint32_t setIndex, *i2s_bridge_signal_t* signal, uint32_t shareSrc)
I2S Bridge shared signal source selection for a share set.

Parameters

- setIndex – index of share set, refer to _i2s_bridge_share_set_index
- signal – the shared signal to be configured
- shareSrc – the signal selection, refer to _i2s_bridge_share_src.

2.37 I2S DMA Driver

void I2S_TxTransferCreateHandleDMA(I2S_Type *base, *i2s_dma_handle_t* *handle, *dma_handle_t* *dmaHandle, *i2s_dma_transfer_callback_t* callback, void *userData)

Initializes handle for transfer of audio data.

Parameters

- base – I2S base pointer.
- handle – pointer to handle structure.
- dmaHandle – pointer to dma handle structure.
- callback – function to be called back when transfer is done or fails.
- userData – pointer to data passed to callback.

status_t I2S_TxTransferSendDMA(I2S_Type *base, *i2s_dma_handle_t* *handle, *i2s_transfer_t* transfer)

Begins or queue sending of the given data.

Parameters

- base – I2S base pointer.
- handle – pointer to handle structure.
- transfer – data buffer.

Return values

- kStatus_Success –
- kStatus_I2S_Busy – if all queue slots are occupied with unsent buffers.

void I2S_TransferAbortDMA(I2S_Type *base, *i2s_dma_handle_t* *handle)

Aborts transfer of data.

Parameters

- base – I2S base pointer.
- handle – pointer to handle structure.

void I2S_RxTransferCreateHandleDMA(I2S_Type *base, *i2s_dma_handle_t* *handle, *dma_handle_t* *dmaHandle, *i2s_dma_transfer_callback_t* callback, void *userData)

Initializes handle for reception of audio data.

Parameters

- base – I2S base pointer.
- handle – pointer to handle structure.
- dmaHandle – pointer to dma handle structure.
- callback – function to be called back when transfer is done or fails.
- userData – pointer to data passed to callback.

status_t I2S_RxTransferReceiveDMA(I2S_Type *base, *i2s_dma_handle_t* *handle, *i2s_transfer_t* transfer)

Begins or queue reception of data into given buffer.

Parameters

- base – I2S base pointer.

- handle – pointer to handle structure.
- transfer – data buffer.

Return values

- kStatus_Success –
- kStatus_I2S_Busy – if all queue slots are occupied with buffers which are not full.

void I2S_DMACallback(*dma_handle_t* *handle, void *userData, bool transferDone, uint32_t tcds)

Invoked from DMA interrupt handler.

Parameters

- handle – pointer to DMA handle structure.
- userData – argument for user callback.
- transferDone – if transfer was done.
- tcds –

void I2S_TransferInstallLoopDMADescriptorMemory(*i2s_dma_handle_t* *handle, void *dmaDescriptorAddr, size_t dmaDescriptorNum)

Install DMA descriptor memory for loop transfer only.

This function used to register DMA descriptor memory for the i2s loop dma transfer.

It must be callbed before I2S_TransferSendLoopDMA/I2S_TransferReceiveLoopDMA and after I2S_RxTransferCreateHandleDMA/I2S_TxTransferCreateHandleDMA.

User should be take care about the address of DMA descriptor pool which required align with 16BYTE at least.

Parameters

- handle – Pointer to i2s DMA transfer handle.
- dmaDescriptorAddr – DMA descriptor start address.
- dmaDescriptorNum – DMA descriptor number.

status_t I2S_TransferSendLoopDMA(I2S_Type *base, *i2s_dma_handle_t* *handle, *i2s_transfer_t* *xfer, uint32_t loopTransferCount)

Send link transfer data using DMA.

This function receives data using DMA. This is a non-blocking function, which returns right away. When all data is received, the receive callback function is called.

This function support loop transfer, such as A->B->...->A, the loop transfer chain will be converted into a chain of descriptor and submit to dma. Application must be aware of that the more counts of the loop transfer, then more DMA descriptor memory required, user can use function I2S_InstallDMADescriptorMemory to register the dma descriptor memory.

As the DMA support maximum 1024 transfer count, so application must be aware of that this transfer function support maximum 1024 samples in each transfer, otherwise assert error or error status will be returned. Once the loop transfer start, application can use function I2S_TransferAbortDMA to stop the loop transfer.

Parameters

- base – I2S peripheral base address.
- handle – Pointer to usart_dma_handle_t structure.
- xfer – I2S DMA transfer structure. See i2s_transfer_t.
- loopTransferCount – loop count

Return values
kStatus_Success –

status_t I2S_TransferReceiveLoopDMA(I2S_Type *base, *i2s_dma_handle_t* *handle, *i2s_transfer_t* *xfer, uint32_t loopTransferCount)

Receive link transfer data using DMA.

This function receives data using DMA. This is a non-blocking function, which returns right away. When all data is received, the receive callback function is called.

This function support loop transfer, such as A->B->...->A, the loop transfer chain will be converted into a chain of descriptor and submit to dma. Application must be aware of that the more counts of the loop transfer, then more DMA descriptor memory required, user can use function I2S_InstallDMADescriptorMemory to register the dma descriptor memory.

As the DMA support maximum 1024 transfer count, so application must be aware of that this transfer function support maximum 1024 samples in each transfer, otherwise assert error or error status will be returned. Once the loop transfer start, application can use function I2S_TransferAbortDMA to stop the loop transfer.

Parameters

- base – I2S peripheral base address.
- handle – Pointer to usart_dma_handle_t structure.
- xfer – I2S DMA transfer structure. See i2s_transfer_t.
- loopTransferCount – loop count

Return values
kStatus_Success –

FSL_I2S_DMA_DRIVER_VERSION

I2S DMA driver version 2.3.3.

typedef struct *_i2s_dma_handle* i2s_dma_handle_t

Members not to be accessed / modified outside of the driver.

typedef void (*i2s_dma_transfer_callback_t)(I2S_Type *base, *i2s_dma_handle_t* *handle, *status_t* completionStatus, void *userData)

Callback function invoked from DMA API on completion.

Param base
I2S base pointer.

Param handle
pointer to I2S transaction.

Param completionStatus
status of the transaction.

Param userData
optional pointer to user arguments data.

struct _i2s_dma_handle

#include <fsl_i2s_dma.h> i2s dma handle

Public Members

uint32_t state

Internal state of I2S DMA transfer

uint8_t bytesPerFrame

bytes per frame

i2s_dma_transfer_callback_t completionCallback
Callback function pointer

void *userData
Application data passed to callback

dma_handle_t *dmaHandle
DMA handle

volatile *i2s_transfer_t* i2sQueue[(4U)]
Transfer queue storing transfer buffers

volatile uint8_t queueUser
Queue index where user's next transfer will be stored

volatile uint8_t queueDriver
Queue index of buffer actually used by the driver

dma_descriptor_t *i2sLoopDMADescriptor
descriptor pool pointer

size_t i2sLoopDMADescriptorNum
number of descriptor in descriptors pool

2.38 I2S Driver

void I2S_TxInit(I2S_Type *base, const *i2s_config_t* *config)
Initializes the FLEXCOMM peripheral for I2S transmit functionality.

Ungates the FLEXCOMM clock and configures the module for I2S transmission using a configuration structure. The configuration structure can be custom filled or set with default values by I2S_TxGetDefaultConfig().

Note: This API should be called at the beginning of the application to use the I2S driver.

Parameters

- base – I2S base pointer.
- config – pointer to I2S configuration structure.

void I2S_RxInit(I2S_Type *base, const *i2s_config_t* *config)
Initializes the FLEXCOMM peripheral for I2S receive functionality.

Ungates the FLEXCOMM clock and configures the module for I2S receive using a configuration structure. The configuration structure can be custom filled or set with default values by I2S_RxGetDefaultConfig().

Note: This API should be called at the beginning of the application to use the I2S driver.

Parameters

- base – I2S base pointer.
- config – pointer to I2S configuration structure.

void I2S_TxGetDefaultConfig(*i2s_config_t* *config)

Sets the I2S Tx configuration structure to default values.

This API initializes the configuration structure for use in I2S_TxInit(). The initialized structure can remain unchanged in I2S_TxInit(), or it can be modified before calling I2S_TxInit(). Example:

```
i2s_config_t config;
I2S_TxGetDefaultConfig(&config);
```

Default values:

```
config->masterSlave = kI2S_MasterSlaveNormalMaster;
config->mode = kI2S_ModeI2sClassic;
config->rightLow = false;
config->leftJust = false;
config->pdmData = false;
config->sckPol = false;
config->wsPol = false;
config->divider = 1;
config->oneChannel = false;
config->dataLength = 16;
config->frameLength = 32;
config->position = 0;
config->watermark = 4;
config->txEmptyZero = true;
config->pack48 = false;
```

Parameters

- config – pointer to I2S configuration structure.

void I2S_RxGetDefaultConfig(*i2s_config_t* *config)

Sets the I2S Rx configuration structure to default values.

This API initializes the configuration structure for use in I2S_RxInit(). The initialized structure can remain unchanged in I2S_RxInit(), or it can be modified before calling I2S_RxInit(). Example:

```
i2s_config_t config;
I2S_RxGetDefaultConfig(&config);
```

Default values:

```
config->masterSlave = kI2S_MasterSlaveNormalSlave;
config->mode = kI2S_ModeI2sClassic;
config->rightLow = false;
config->leftJust = false;
config->pdmData = false;
config->sckPol = false;
config->wsPol = false;
config->divider = 1;
config->oneChannel = false;
config->dataLength = 16;
config->frameLength = 32;
config->position = 0;
config->watermark = 4;
config->txEmptyZero = false;
config->pack48 = false;
```

Parameters

- config – pointer to I2S configuration structure.

void I2S_Deinit(I2S_Type *base)

De-initializes the I2S peripheral.

This API gates the FLEXCOMM clock. The I2S module can't operate unless I2S_TxInit or I2S_RxInit is called to enable the clock.

Parameters

- base – I2S base pointer.

void I2S_SetBitClockRate(I2S_Type *base, uint32_t sourceClockHz, uint32_t sampleRate, uint32_t bitWidth, uint32_t channelNumbers)

Transmitter/Receiver bit clock rate configurations.

Parameters

- base – SAI base pointer.
- sourceClockHz – bit clock source frequency.
- sampleRate – audio data sample rate.
- bitWidth – audio data bitWidth.
- channelNumbers – audio channel numbers.

void I2S_TxTransferCreateHandle(I2S_Type *base, *i2s_handle_t* *handle, *i2s_transfer_callback_t* callback, void *userData)

Initializes handle for transfer of audio data.

Parameters

- base – I2S base pointer.
- handle – pointer to handle structure.
- callback – function to be called back when transfer is done or fails.
- userData – pointer to data passed to callback.

status_t I2S_TxTransferNonBlocking(I2S_Type *base, *i2s_handle_t* *handle, *i2s_transfer_t* transfer)

Begins or queue sending of the given data.

Parameters

- base – I2S base pointer.
- handle – pointer to handle structure.
- transfer – data buffer.

Return values

- kStatus_Success –
- kStatus_I2S_Busy – if all queue slots are occupied with unsent buffers.

void I2S_TxTransferAbort(I2S_Type *base, *i2s_handle_t* *handle)

Aborts sending of data.

Parameters

- base – I2S base pointer.
- handle – pointer to handle structure.

void I2S_RxTransferCreateHandle(I2S_Type *base, *i2s_handle_t* *handle, *i2s_transfer_callback_t* callback, void *userData)

Initializes handle for reception of audio data.

Parameters

- base – I2S base pointer.
- handle – pointer to handle structure.
- callback – function to be called back when transfer is done or fails.
- userData – pointer to data passed to callback.

status_t I2S_RxTransferNonBlocking(I2S_Type *base, *i2s_handle_t* *handle, *i2s_transfer_t* transfer)

Begins or queue reception of data into given buffer.

Parameters

- base – I2S base pointer.
- handle – pointer to handle structure.
- transfer – data buffer.

Return values

- kStatus_Success –
- kStatus_I2S_Busy – if all queue slots are occupied with buffers which are not full.

void I2S_RxTransferAbort(I2S_Type *base, *i2s_handle_t* *handle)

Aborts receiving of data.

Parameters

- base – I2S base pointer.
- handle – pointer to handle structure.

status_t I2S_TransferGetCount(I2S_Type *base, *i2s_handle_t* *handle, size_t *count)

Returns number of bytes transferred so far.

Parameters

- base – I2S base pointer.
- handle – pointer to handle structure.
- count – **[out]** number of bytes transferred so far by the non-blocking transaction.

Return values

- kStatus_Success –
- kStatus_NoTransferInProgress – there is no non-blocking transaction currently in progress.

status_t I2S_TransferGetErrorCount(I2S_Type *base, *i2s_handle_t* *handle, size_t *count)

Returns number of buffer underruns or overruns.

Parameters

- base – I2S base pointer.
- handle – pointer to handle structure.
- count – **[out]** number of transmit errors encountered so far by the non-blocking transaction.

Return values

- kStatus_Success –

- kStatus_NoTransferInProgress – there is no non-blocking transaction currently in progress.

static inline void I2S_Enable(I2S_Type *base)

Enables I2S operation.

Parameters

- base – I2S base pointer.

void I2S_EnableSecondaryChannel(I2S_Type *base, uint32_t channel, bool oneChannel, uint32_t position)

Enables I2S secondary channel.

Parameters

- base – I2S base pointer.
- channel – seondary channel channel number, reference _i2s_secondary_channel.
- oneChannel – true is treated as single channel, functionality left channel for this pair.
- position – define the location within the frame of the data, should not bigger than 0x1FFU.

static inline void I2S_DisableSecondaryChannel(I2S_Type *base, uint32_t channel)

Disables I2S secondary channel.

Parameters

- base – I2S base pointer.
- channel – seondary channel channel number, reference _i2s_secondary_channel.

static inline void I2S_Disable(I2S_Type *base)

Disables I2S operation.

Parameters

- base – I2S base pointer.

static inline void I2S_EnableInterrupts(I2S_Type *base, uint32_t interruptMask)

Enables I2S FIFO interrupts.

Parameters

- base – I2S base pointer.
- interruptMask – bit mask of interrupts to enable. See i2s_flags_t for the set of constants that should be OR'd together to form the bit mask.

static inline void I2S_DisableInterrupts(I2S_Type *base, uint32_t interruptMask)

Disables I2S FIFO interrupts.

Parameters

- base – I2S base pointer.
- interruptMask – bit mask of interrupts to enable. See i2s_flags_t for the set of constants that should be OR'd together to form the bit mask.

static inline uint32_t I2S_GetEnabledInterrupts(I2S_Type *base)

Returns the set of currently enabled I2S FIFO interrupts.

Parameters

- base – I2S base pointer.

Returns
A bitmask composed of i2s_flags_t enumerators OR'd together to indicate the set of enabled interrupts.

status_t I2S_EmptyTxFifo(I2S_Type *base)

Flush the valid data in TX fifo.

Parameters

- base – I2S base pointer.

Returns
kStatus_Fail empty TX fifo failed, kStatus_Success empty tx fifo success.

void I2S_TxHandleIRQ(I2S_Type *base, *i2s_handle_t* *handle)

Invoked from interrupt handler when transmit FIFO level decreases.

Parameters

- base – I2S base pointer.
- handle – pointer to handle structure.

void I2S_RxHandleIRQ(I2S_Type *base, *i2s_handle_t* *handle)

Invoked from interrupt handler when receive FIFO level decreases.

Parameters

- base – I2S base pointer.
- handle – pointer to handle structure.

FSL_I2S_DRIVER_VERSION

I2S driver version 2.3.2.

_i2s_status I2S status codes.

Values:

enumerator kStatus_I2S_BufferComplete
Transfer from/into a single buffer has completed

enumerator kStatus_I2S_Done
All buffers transfers have completed

enumerator kStatus_I2S_Busy
Already performing a transfer and cannot queue another buffer

enum _i2s_flags

I2S flags.

Note: These enums are meant to be OR'd together to form a bit mask.

Values:

enumerator kI2S_TxErrorFlag
TX error interrupt

enumerator kI2S_TxLevelFlag
TX level interrupt

enumerator kI2S_RxErrorFlag
RX error interrupt

enumerator kI2S_RxLevelFlag
RX level interrupt

enum _i2s_master_slave
Master / slave mode.

Values:

enumerator kI2S_MasterSlaveNormalSlave
Normal slave

enumerator kI2S_MasterSlaveWsSyncMaster
WS synchronized master

enumerator kI2S_MasterSlaveExtSckMaster
Master using existing SCK

enumerator kI2S_MasterSlaveNormalMaster
Normal master

enum _i2s_mode
I2S mode.

Values:

enumerator kI2S_ModeI2sClassic
I2S classic mode

enumerator kI2S_ModeDspWs50
DSP mode, WS having 50% duty cycle

enumerator kI2S_ModeDspWsShort
DSP mode, WS having one clock long pulse

enumerator kI2S_ModeDspWsLong
DSP mode, WS having one data slot long pulse

_i2s_secondary_channel I2S secondary channel.

Values:

enumerator kI2S_SecondaryChannel1
secondary channel 1

enumerator kI2S_SecondaryChannel2
secondary channel 2

enumerator kI2S_SecondaryChannel3
secondary channel 3

typedef enum *_i2s_flags* i2s_flags_t
I2S flags.

Note: These enums are meant to be OR'd together to form a bit mask.

typedef enum *_i2s_master_slave* i2s_master_slave_t
Master / slave mode.

typedef enum *_i2s_mode* i2s_mode_t
I2S mode.

typedef struct *_i2s_config* i2s_config_t

I2S configuration structure.

typedef struct *_i2s_transfer* i2s_transfer_t

Buffer to transfer from or receive audio data into.

typedef struct *_i2s_handle* i2s_handle_t

Transactional state of the intialized transfer or receive I2S operation.

typedef void (*i2s_transfer_callback_t)(I2S_Type *base, *i2s_handle_t* *handle, *status_t* completionStatus, void *userData)

Callback function invoked from transactional API on completion of a single buffer transfer.

Param base
I2S base pointer.

Param handle
pointer to I2S transaction.

Param completionStatus
status of the transaction.

Param userData
optional pointer to user arguments data.

I2S_NUM_BUFFERS

Number of buffers .

struct _i2s_config

#include <fsl_i2s.h> I2S configuration structure.

Public Members

i2s_master_slave_t masterSlave

Master / slave configuration

i2s_mode_t mode

I2S mode

bool rightLow

Right channel data in low portion of FIFO

bool leftJust

Left justify data in FIFO

bool pdmData

Data source is the D-Mic subsystem

bool sckPol

SCK polarity

bool wsPol

WS polarity

uint16_t divider

Flexcomm function clock divider (1 - 4096)

bool oneChannel

true mono, false stereo

uint8_t dataLength

Data length (4 - 32)

uint16_t frameLength
: Frame width (4 - 512)

uint16_t position
: Data position in the frame

uint8_t watermark
: FIFO trigger level

bool txEmptyZero
: Transmit zero when buffer becomes empty or last item

bool pack48
: Packing format for 48-bit data (false - 24 bit values, true - alternating 32-bit and 16-bit values)

struct _i2s_transfer
: *#include <fsl_i2s.h>* Buffer to transfer from or receive audio data into.

Public Members

uint8_t *data
: Pointer to data buffer.

size_t dataSize
: Buffer size in bytes.

struct _i2s_handle
: *#include <fsl_i2s.h>* Members not to be accessed / modified outside of the driver.

Public Members

volatile uint32_t state
: State of transfer

i2s_transfer_callback_t completionCallback
: Callback function pointer

void *userData
: Application data passed to callback

bool oneChannel
: true mono, false stereo

uint8_t dataLength
: Data length (4 - 32)

bool pack48
: Packing format for 48-bit data (false - 24 bit values, true - alternating 32-bit and 16-bit values)

uint8_t watermark
: FIFO trigger level

bool useFifo48H
: When dataLength 17-24: true use FIFOWR48H, false use FIFOWR

volatile *i2s_transfer_t* i2sQueue[(4U)]
: Transfer queue storing transfer buffers

volatile uint8_t queueUser
: Queue index where user's next transfer will be stored

volatile uint8_t queueDriver
: Queue index of buffer actually used by the driver

volatile uint32_t errorCount
: Number of buffer underruns/overruns

volatile uint32_t transferCount
: Number of bytes transferred

2.39 I3C: I3C Driver

FSL_I3C_DRIVER_VERSION
: I3C driver version.

I3C status return codes.

Values:

enumerator kStatus_I3C_Busy
: The master is already performing a transfer.

enumerator kStatus_I3C_Idle
: The slave driver is idle.

enumerator kStatus_I3C_Nak
: The slave device sent a NAK in response to an address.

enumerator kStatus_I3C_WriteAbort
: The slave device sent a NAK in response to a write.

enumerator kStatus_I3C_Term
: The master terminates slave read.

enumerator kStatus_I3C_HdrParityError
: Parity error from DDR read.

enumerator kStatus_I3C_CrcError
: CRC error from DDR read.

enumerator kStatus_I3C_ReadFifoError
: Read from M/SRDATAB register when FIFO empty.

enumerator kStatus_I3C_WriteFifoError
: Write to M/SWDATAB register when FIFO full.

enumerator kStatus_I3C_MsgError
: Message SDR/DDR mismatch or read/write message in wrong state

enumerator kStatus_I3C_InvalidReq
: Invalid use of request.

enumerator kStatus_I3C_Timeout
: The module has stalled too long in a frame.

enumerator kStatus_I3C_SlaveCountExceed
: The I3C slave count has exceed the definition in I3C_MAX_DEVCNT.

enumerator kStatus_I3C_IBIWon
The I3C slave event IBI or MR or HJ won the arbitration on a header address.

enumerator kStatus_I3C_OverrunError
Slave internal from-bus buffer/FIFO overrun.

enumerator kStatus_I3C_UnderrunError
Slave internal to-bus buffer/FIFO underrun

enumerator kStatus_I3C_UnderrunNak
Slave internal from-bus buffer/FIFO underrun and NACK error

enumerator kStatus_I3C_InvalidStart
Slave invalid start flag

enumerator kStatus_I3C_SdrParityError
SDR parity error

enumerator kStatus_I3C_S0S1Error
S0 or S1 error

enum _i3c_hdr_mode
I3C HDR modes.

Values:

enumerator kI3C_HDRModeNone

enumerator kI3C_HDRModeDDR

enumerator kI3C_HDRModeTSP

enumerator kI3C_HDRModeTSL

typedef enum *_i3c_hdr_mode* i3c_hdr_mode_t
I3C HDR modes.

typedef struct *_i3c_device_info* i3c_device_info_t
I3C device information.

I3C_RETRY_TIMES
Max loops to wait for I3C operation status complete.

This is the maximum number of loops to wait for I3C operation status complete. If set to 0, it will wait indefinitely.

I3C_MAX_DEVCNT

I3C_IBI_BUFF_SIZE

struct i3c_device_info
#include <fsl_i3c.h> I3C device information.

Public Members

uint8_t dynamicAddr
Device dynamic address.

uint8_t staticAddr
Static address.

uint8_t dcr
Device characteristics register information.

uint8_t bcr
: Bus characteristics register information.

uint16_t vendorID
: Device vendor ID(manufacture ID).

uint32_t partNumber
: Device part number info

uint16_t maxReadLength
: Maximum read length.

uint16_t maxWriteLength
: Maximum write length.

uint8_t hdrMode
: Support hdr mode, could be OR logic in i3c_hdr_mode.

2.40 I3C Common Driver

typedef struct *_i3c_config* i3c_config_t
: Structure with settings to initialize the I3C module, could both initialize master and slave functionality.

  This structure holds configuration settings for the I3C peripheral. To initialize this structure to reasonable defaults, call the I3C_GetDefaultConfig() function and pass a pointer to your configuration structure instance.

  The configuration structure can be made constant so it resides in flash.

uint32_t I3C_GetInstance(I3C_Type *base)
: Get which instance current I3C is used.

  Parameters

  - base – The I3C peripheral base address.

void I3C_GetDefaultConfig(*i3c_config_t* *config)
: Provides a default configuration for the I3C peripheral, the configuration covers both master functionality and slave functionality.

  This function provides the following default configuration for I3C:

```
config->enableMaster                = kI3C_MasterCapable;
config->disableTimeout               = false;
config->hKeep                      = kI3C_MasterHighKeeperNone;
config->enableOpenDrainStop          = true;
config->enableOpenDrainHigh          = true;
config->baudRate_Hz.i2cBaud          = 400000U;
config->baudRate_Hz.i3cPushPullBaud  = 12500000U;
config->baudRate_Hz.i3cOpenDrainBaud = 2500000U;
config->masterDynamicAddress         = 0x0AU;
config->slowClock_Hz                 = 1000000U;
config->enableSlave                  = true;
config->vendorID                     = 0x11BU;
config->enableRandomPart             = false;
config->partNumber                   = 0;
config->dcr                        = 0;
config->bcr = 0;
config->hdrMode             = (uint8_t)kI3C_HDRModeDDR;
config->nakAllRequest        = false;
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
config->ignoreS0S1Error     = false;
config->offline             = false;
config->matchSlaveStartStop = false;
```

After calling this function, you can override any settings in order to customize the configuration, prior to initializing the common I3C driver with I3C_Init().

Parameters

- config – **[out]** User provided configuration structure for default values. Refer to i3c_config_t.

void I3C_Init(I3C_Type *base, const *i3c_config_t* *config, uint32_t sourceClock_Hz)

Initializes the I3C peripheral. This function enables the peripheral clock and initializes the I3C peripheral as described by the user provided configuration. This will initialize both the master peripheral and slave peripheral so that I3C module could work as pure master, pure slave or secondary master, etc. A software reset is performed prior to configuration.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- config – User provided peripheral configuration. Use I3C_GetDefaultConfig() to get a set of defaults that you can override.
- sourceClock_Hz – Frequency in Hertz of the I3C functional clock. Used to calculate the baud rate divisors, filter widths, and timeout periods.

struct _i3c_config

#include <fsl_i3c.h> Structure with settings to initialize the I3C module, could both initialize master and slave functionality.

This structure holds configuration settings for the I3C peripheral. To initialize this structure to reasonable defaults, call the I3C_GetDefaultConfig() function and pass a pointer to your configuration structure instance.

The configuration structure can be made constant so it resides in flash.

Public Members

i3c_master_enable_t enableMaster

Enable master mode.

bool disableTimeout

Whether to disable timeout to prevent the ERRWARN.

i3c_master_hkeep_t hKeep

High keeper mode setting.

bool enableOpenDrainStop

Whether to emit open-drain speed STOP.

bool enableOpenDrainHigh

Enable Open-Drain High to be 1 PPBAUD count for i3c messages, or 1 ODBAUD.

i3c_baudrate_hz_t baudRate_Hz

Desired baud rate settings.

uint8_t masterDynamicAddress

Main master dynamic address configuration.

uint32_t maxWriteLength
: Maximum write length.

uint32_t maxReadLength
: Maximum read length.

bool enableSlave
: Whether to enable slave.

uint8_t staticAddr
: Static address.

uint16_t vendorID
: Device vendor ID(manufacture ID).

uint32_t partNumber
: Device part number info

uint8_t dcr
: Device characteristics register information.

uint8_t bcr
: Bus characteristics register information.

uint8_t hdrMode
: Support hdr mode, could be OR logic in enumeration:i3c_hdr_mode_t.

bool nakAllRequest
: Whether to reply NAK to all requests except broadcast CCC.

bool ignoreS0S1Error
: Whether to ignore S0/S1 error in SDR mode.

bool offline
: Whether to wait 60 us of bus quiet or HDR request to ensure slave track SDR mode safely.

bool matchSlaveStartStop
: Whether to assert start/stop status only the time slave is addressed.

2.41 I3C Master DMA Driver

typedef struct *_i3c_master_dma_handle* i3c_master_dma_handle_t

typedef struct *_i3c_master_dma_callback* i3c_master_dma_callback_t
: i3c master callback functions.

void I3C_MasterTransferCreateHandleDMA(I3C_Type *base, *i3c_master_dma_handle_t* *handle, const *i3c_master_dma_callback_t* *callback, void *userData, *dma_handle_t* *rxDmaHandle, *dma_handle_t* *txDmaHandle)
: Create a new handle for the I3C master DMA APIs.

  The creation of a handle is for use with the DMA APIs. Once a handle is created, there is not a corresponding destroy handle. If the user wants to terminate a transfer, the I3C_MasterTransferAbortDMA() API shall be called.

  For devices where the I3C send and receive DMA requests are OR'd together, the *txDmaHandle* parameter is ignored and may be set to NULL.

  Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- handle – Pointer to the I3C master driver handle.
- callback – User provided pointer to the asynchronous callback function.
- userData – User provided pointer to the application callback data.
- rxDmaHandle – Handle for the DMA receive channel. Created by the user prior to calling this function.
- txDmaHandle – Handle for the DMA transmit channel. Created by the user prior to calling this function.

status_t I3C_MasterTransferDMA(I3C_Type *base, *i3c_master_dma_handle_t* *handle, *i3c_master_transfer_t* *transfer)

Performs a non-blocking DMA-based transaction on the I3C bus.

The callback specified when the *handle* was created is invoked when the transaction has completed.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- handle – Pointer to the I3C master driver handle.
- transfer – The pointer to the transfer descriptor.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – The transaction was started successfully.
- kStatus_I3C_Busy – Either another master is currently utilizing the bus, or another DMA transaction is already in progress.

status_t I3C_MasterTransferGetCountDMA(I3C_Type *base, *i3c_master_dma_handle_t* *handle, size_t *count)

Returns number of bytes transferred so far.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- handle – Pointer to the I3C master driver handle.
- count – **[out]** Number of bytes transferred so far by the non-blocking transaction.

Return values

- kStatus_Success –
- kStatus_NoTransferInProgress – There is not a DMA transaction currently in progress.

void I3C_MasterTransferAbortDMA(I3C_Type *base, *i3c_master_dma_handle_t* *handle)

Terminates a non-blocking I3C master transmission early.

Note: It is not safe to call this function from an IRQ handler that has a higher priority than the DMA peripheral's IRQ priority.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- handle – Pointer to the I3C master driver handle.

void I3C_MasterTransferDMAHandleIRQ(I3C_Type *base, void *i3cHandle)

Reusable routine to handle master interrupts.

Note: This function does not need to be called unless you are reimplementing the non-blocking API's interrupt handler routines to add special functionality.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- handle – Pointer to the I3C master DMA driver handle.

void (*slave2Master)(I3C_Type *base, void *userData)

Transfer complete callback

void (*ibiCallback)(I3C_Type *base, *i3c_master_dma_handle_t* *handle, *i3c_ibi_type_t* ibiType, *i3c_ibi_state_t* ibiState)

IBI event callback

void (*transferComplete)(I3C_Type *base, *i3c_master_dma_handle_t* *handle, *status_t* status, void *userData)

Transfer complete callback

I3C_Type *base

I3C base pointer.

uint8_t state

Transfer state machine current state.

uint32_t transferCount

Indicates progress of the transfer

uint8_t subaddressBuffer[4]

Saving subaddress command.

uint8_t subaddressCount

Saving command count.

i3c_master_transfer_t transfer

Copy of the current transfer info.

i3c_master_dma_callback_t callback

Callback function pointer.

void *userData

Application data passed to callback.

dma_handle_t *rxDmaHandle

Handle for receive DMA channel.

dma_handle_t *txDmaHandle

Handle for transmit DMA channel.

uint8_t ibiAddress

Slave address which request IBI.

uint8_t *ibiBuff

Pointer to IBI buffer to keep ibi bytes.

size_t ibiPayloadSize

IBI payload size.

i3c_ibi_type_t ibiType
IBI type.

uint32_t transDataSize
Transferred data size.

uint8_t workaroundBuff[16]
Workaround buffer to store temporary data.

uint32_t event
Reason the callback is being invoked.

uint8_t *txData
Transfer buffer

size_t txDataSize
Transfer size

uint8_t *rxData
Transfer buffer

size_t rxDataSize
Transfer size

status_t completionStatus
Success or error code describing how the transfer completed. Only applies for kI3C_SlaveCompletionEvent.

I3C_Type *base
I3C base pointer.

i3c_slave_dma_transfer_t transfer
I3C slave transfer copy.

bool isBusy
Whether transfer is busy.

bool wasTransmit
Whether the last transfer was a transmit.

uint32_t eventMask
Mask of enabled events.

i3c_slave_dma_callback_t callback
Callback function called at transfer event.

dma_handle_t *rxDmaHandle
Handle for receive DMA channel.

dma_handle_t *txDmaHandle
Handle for transmit DMA channel.

void *userData
Callback parameter passed to callback.

struct __i3c_master_dma_callback
#include <fsl_i3c_dma.h> i3c master callback functions.

struct __i3c_master_dma_handle
#include <fsl_i3c_dma.h> Driver handle for master DMA APIs.

Note: The contents of this structure are private and subject to change.

2.42 I3C Master Driver

void I3C_MasterGetDefaultConfig(*i3c_master_config_t* *masterConfig)

Provides a default configuration for the I3C master peripheral.

This function provides the following default configuration for the I3C master peripheral:

```
masterConfig->enableMaster            = kI3C_MasterOn;
masterConfig->disableTimeout          = false;
masterConfig->hKeep                   = kI3C_MasterHighKeeperNone;
masterConfig->enableOpenDrainStop     = true;
masterConfig->enableOpenDrainHigh     = true;
masterConfig->baudRate_Hz             = 100000U;
masterConfig->busType                 = kI3C_TypeI2C;
```

After calling this function, you can override any settings in order to customize the configuration, prior to initializing the master driver with I3C_MasterInit().

Parameters

- masterConfig – **[out]** User provided configuration structure for default values. Refer to i3c_master_config_t.

void I3C_MasterInit(I3C_Type *base, const *i3c_master_config_t* *masterConfig, uint32_t sourceClock_Hz)

Initializes the I3C master peripheral.

This function enables the peripheral clock and initializes the I3C master peripheral as described by the user provided configuration. A software reset is performed prior to configuration.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- masterConfig – User provided peripheral configuration. Use I3C_MasterGetDefaultConfig() to get a set of defaults that you can override.
- sourceClock_Hz – Frequency in Hertz of the I3C functional clock. Used to calculate the baud rate divisors, filter widths, and timeout periods.

void I3C_MasterDeinit(I3C_Type *base)

Deinitializes the I3C master peripheral.

This function disables the I3C master peripheral and gates the clock. It also performs a software reset to restore the peripheral to reset conditions.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.

status_t I3C_MasterCheckAndClearError(I3C_Type *base, uint32_t status)

status_t I3C_MasterWaitForCtrlDone(I3C_Type *base, bool waitIdle)

status_t I3C_CheckForBusyBus(I3C_Type *base)

static inline void I3C_MasterEnable(I3C_Type *base, *i3c_master_enable_t* enable)

Set I3C module master mode.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- enable – Enable master mode.

void I3C_SlaveGetDefaultConfig(*i3c_slave_config_t* *slaveConfig)

Provides a default configuration for the I3C slave peripheral.

This function provides the following default configuration for the I3C slave peripheral:

```
slaveConfig->enableslave              = true;
```

After calling this function, you can override any settings in order to customize the configuration, prior to initializing the slave driver with I3C_SlaveInit().

Parameters

- slaveConfig – **[out]** User provided configuration structure for default values. Refer to i3c_slave_config_t.

void I3C_SlaveInit(I3C_Type *base, const *i3c_slave_config_t* *slaveConfig, uint32_t slowClock_Hz)

Initializes the I3C slave peripheral.

This function enables the peripheral clock and initializes the I3C slave peripheral as described by the user provided configuration.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- slaveConfig – User provided peripheral configuration. Use I3C_SlaveGetDefaultConfig() to get a set of defaults that you can override.
- slowClock_Hz – Frequency in Hertz of the I3C slow clock. Used to calculate the bus match condition values. If FSL_FEATURE_I3C_HAS_NO_SCONFIG_BAMATCH defines as 1, this parameter is useless.

void I3C_SlaveDeinit(I3C_Type *base)

Deinitializes the I3C slave peripheral.

This function disables the I3C slave peripheral and gates the clock.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.

static inline void I3C_SlaveEnable(I3C_Type *base, bool isEnable)

Enable/Disable Slave.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- isEnable – Enable or disable.

static inline uint32_t I3C_MasterGetStatusFlags(I3C_Type *base)

Gets the I3C master status flags.

A bit mask with the state of all I3C master status flags is returned. For each flag, the corresponding bit in the return value is set if the flag is asserted.

See also:

_i3c_master_flags

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.

Returns

State of the status flags:

- 1: related status flag is set.
- 0: related status flag is not set.

static inline void I3C_MasterClearStatusFlags(I3C_Type *base, uint32_t statusMask)

Clears the I3C master status flag state.

The following status register flags can be cleared:

- kI3C_MasterSlaveStartFlag
- kI3C_MasterControlDoneFlag
- kI3C_MasterCompleteFlag
- kI3C_MasterArbitrationWonFlag
- kI3C_MasterSlave2MasterFlag

Attempts to clear other flags has no effect.

See also:

_i3c_master_flags.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- statusMask – A bitmask of status flags that are to be cleared. The mask is composed of _i3c_master_flags enumerators OR'd together. You may pass the result of a previous call to I3C_MasterGetStatusFlags().

static inline uint32_t I3C_MasterGetErrorStatusFlags(I3C_Type *base)

Gets the I3C master error status flags.

A bit mask with the state of all I3C master error status flags is returned. For each flag, the corresponding bit in the return value is set if the flag is asserted.

See also:

_i3c_master_error_flags

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.

Returns

State of the error status flags:

- 1: related status flag is set.
- 0: related status flag is not set.

static inline void I3C_MasterClearErrorStatusFlags(I3C_Type *base, uint32_t statusMask)

Clears the I3C master error status flag state.

See also:

_i3c_master_error_flags.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- statusMask – A bitmask of error status flags that are to be cleared. The mask is composed of _i3c_master_error_flags enumerators OR'd together. You may pass the result of a previous call to I3C_MasterGetStatusFlags().

i3c_master_state_t I3C_MasterGetState(I3C_Type *base)

Gets the I3C master state.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.

Returns

I3C master state.

static inline uint32_t I3C_SlaveGetStatusFlags(I3C_Type *base)

Gets the I3C slave status flags.

A bit mask with the state of all I3C slave status flags is returned. For each flag, the corresponding bit in the return value is set if the flag is asserted.

See also:

_i3c_slave_flags

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.

Returns

State of the status flags:

- 1: related status flag is set.
- 0: related status flag is not set.

static inline void I3C_SlaveClearStatusFlags(I3C_Type *base, uint32_t statusMask)

Clears the I3C slave status flag state.

The following status register flags can be cleared:

- kI3C_SlaveBusStartFlag
- kI3C_SlaveMatchedFlag
- kI3C_SlaveBusStopFlag

Attempts to clear other flags has no effect.

See also:

_i3c_slave_flags.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- statusMask – A bitmask of status flags that are to be cleared. The mask is composed of _i3c_slave_flags enumerators OR'd together. You may pass the result of a previous call to I3C_SlaveGetStatusFlags().

static inline uint32_t I3C_SlaveGetErrorStatusFlags(I3C_Type *base)

Gets the I3C slave error status flags.

A bit mask with the state of all I3C slave error status flags is returned. For each flag, the corresponding bit in the return value is set if the flag is asserted.

See also:

_i3c_slave_error_flags

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.

Returns

State of the error status flags:

- 1: related status flag is set.
- 0: related status flag is not set.

static inline void I3C_SlaveClearErrorStatusFlags(I3C_Type *base, uint32_t statusMask)

Clears the I3C slave error status flag state.

See also:

_i3c_slave_error_flags.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- statusMask – A bitmask of error status flags that are to be cleared. The mask is composed of _i3c_slave_error_flags enumerators OR'd together. You may pass the result of a previous call to I3C_SlaveGetErrorStatusFlags().

i3c_slave_activity_state_t I3C_SlaveGetActivityState(I3C_Type *base)

Gets the I3C slave state.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.

Returns

I3C slave activity state, refer i3c_slave_activity_state_t.

status_t I3C_SlaveCheckAndClearError(I3C_Type *base, uint32_t status)

static inline void I3C_MasterEnableInterrupts(I3C_Type *base, uint32_t interruptMask)

Enables the I3C master interrupt requests.

All flags except kI3C_MasterBetweenFlag and kI3C_MasterNackDetectFlag can be enabled as interrupts.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- interruptMask – Bit mask of interrupts to enable. See _i3c_master_flags for the set of constants that should be OR'd together to form the bit mask.

static inline void I3C_MasterDisableInterrupts(I3C_Type *base, uint32_t interruptMask)

Disables the I3C master interrupt requests.

All flags except kI3C_MasterBetweenFlag and kI3C_MasterNackDetectFlag can be enabled as interrupts.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- interruptMask – Bit mask of interrupts to disable. See _i3c_master_flags for the set of constants that should be OR'd together to form the bit mask.

static inline uint32_t I3C_MasterGetEnabledInterrupts(I3C_Type *base)

Returns the set of currently enabled I3C master interrupt requests.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.

Returns

A bitmask composed of _i3c_master_flags enumerators OR'd together to indicate the set of enabled interrupts.

static inline uint32_t I3C_MasterGetPendingInterrupts(I3C_Type *base)

Returns the set of pending I3C master interrupt requests.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.

Returns

A bitmask composed of _i3c_master_flags enumerators OR'd together to indicate the set of pending interrupts.

static inline void I3C_SlaveEnableInterrupts(I3C_Type *base, uint32_t interruptMask)

Enables the I3C slave interrupt requests.

Only below flags can be enabled as interrupts.

- kI3C_SlaveBusStartFlag
- kI3C_SlaveMatchedFlag
- kI3C_SlaveBusStopFlag
- kI3C_SlaveRxReadyFlag
- kI3C_SlaveTxReadyFlag
- kI3C_SlaveDynamicAddrChangedFlag
- kI3C_SlaveReceivedCCCFlag
- kI3C_SlaveErrorFlag
- kI3C_SlaveHDRCommandMatchFlag
- kI3C_SlaveCCCHandledFlag
- kI3C_SlaveEventSentFlag

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- interruptMask – Bit mask of interrupts to enable. See _i3c_slave_flags for the set of constants that should be OR'd together to form the bit mask.

static inline void I3C_SlaveDisableInterrupts(I3C_Type *base, uint32_t interruptMask)

Disables the I3C slave interrupt requests.

Only below flags can be disabled as interrupts.

- kI3C_SlaveBusStartFlag
- kI3C_SlaveMatchedFlag

- kI3C_SlaveBusStopFlag
- kI3C_SlaveRxReadyFlag
- kI3C_SlaveTxReadyFlag
- kI3C_SlaveDynamicAddrChangedFlag
- kI3C_SlaveReceivedCCCFlag
- kI3C_SlaveErrorFlag
- kI3C_SlaveHDRCommandMatchFlag
- kI3C_SlaveCCCHandledFlag
- kI3C_SlaveEventSentFlag

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- interruptMask – Bit mask of interrupts to disable. See _i3c_slave_flags for the set of constants that should be OR'd together to form the bit mask.

static inline uint32_t I3C_SlaveGetEnabledInterrupts(I3C_Type *base)

Returns the set of currently enabled I3C slave interrupt requests.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.

Returns

A bitmask composed of _i3c_slave_flags enumerators OR'd together to indicate the set of enabled interrupts.

static inline uint32_t I3C_SlaveGetPendingInterrupts(I3C_Type *base)

Returns the set of pending I3C slave interrupt requests.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.

Returns

A bitmask composed of _i3c_slave_flags enumerators OR'd together to indicate the set of pending interrupts.

static inline void I3C_MasterEnableDMA(I3C_Type *base, bool enableTx, bool enableRx, uint32_t width)

Enables or disables I3C master DMA requests.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- enableTx – Enable flag for transmit DMA request. Pass true for enable, false for disable.
- enableRx – Enable flag for receive DMA request. Pass true for enable, false for disable.
- width – DMA read/write unit in bytes.

static inline uint32_t I3C_MasterGetTxFifoAddress(I3C_Type *base, uint32_t width)

Gets I3C master transmit data register address for DMA transfer.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- width – DMA read/write unit in bytes.

Returns
The I3C Master Transmit Data Register address.

static inline uint32_t I3C_MasterGetRxFifoAddress(I3C_Type *base, uint32_t width)

Gets I3C master receive data register address for DMA transfer.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- width – DMA read/write unit in bytes.

Returns
The I3C Master Receive Data Register address.

static inline void I3C_SlaveEnableDMA(I3C_Type *base, bool enableTx, bool enableRx, uint32_t width)

Enables or disables I3C slave DMA requests.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- enableTx – Enable flag for transmit DMA request. Pass true for enable, false for disable.
- enableRx – Enable flag for receive DMA request. Pass true for enable, false for disable.
- width – DMA read/write unit in bytes.

static inline uint32_t I3C_SlaveGetTxFifoAddress(I3C_Type *base, uint32_t width)

Gets I3C slave transmit data register address for DMA transfer.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- width – DMA read/write unit in bytes.

Returns
The I3C Slave Transmit Data Register address.

static inline uint32_t I3C_SlaveGetRxFifoAddress(I3C_Type *base, uint32_t width)

Gets I3C slave receive data register address for DMA transfer.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- width – DMA read/write unit in bytes.

Returns
The I3C Slave Receive Data Register address.

static inline void I3C_MasterSetWatermarks(I3C_Type *base, *i3c_tx_trigger_level_t* txLvl, *i3c_rx_trigger_level_t* rxLvl, bool flushTx, bool flushRx)

Sets the watermarks for I3C master FIFOs.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- txLvl – Transmit FIFO watermark level. The kI3C_MasterTxReadyFlag flag is set whenever the number of words in the transmit FIFO reaches *txLvl*.
- rxLvl – Receive FIFO watermark level. The kI3C_MasterRxReadyFlag flag is set whenever the number of words in the receive FIFO reaches *rxLvl*.

- flushTx – true if TX FIFO is to be cleared, otherwise TX FIFO remains unchanged.
- flushRx – true if RX FIFO is to be cleared, otherwise RX FIFO remains unchanged.

static inline void I3C_MasterGetFifoCounts(I3C_Type *base, size_t *rxCount, size_t *txCount)

Gets the current number of bytes in the I3C master FIFOs.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- txCount – **[out]** Pointer through which the current number of bytes in the transmit FIFO is returned. Pass NULL if this value is not required.
- rxCount – **[out]** Pointer through which the current number of bytes in the receive FIFO is returned. Pass NULL if this value is not required.

static inline void I3C_SlaveSetWatermarks(I3C_Type *base, *i3c_tx_trigger_level_t* txLvl, *i3c_rx_trigger_level_t* rxLvl, bool flushTx, bool flushRx)

Sets the watermarks for I3C slave FIFOs.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- txLvl – Transmit FIFO watermark level. The kI3C_SlaveTxReadyFlag flag is set whenever the number of words in the transmit FIFO reaches *txLvl*.
- rxLvl – Receive FIFO watermark level. The kI3C_SlaveRxReadyFlag flag is set whenever the number of words in the receive FIFO reaches *rxLvl*.
- flushTx – true if TX FIFO is to be cleared, otherwise TX FIFO remains unchanged.
- flushRx – true if RX FIFO is to be cleared, otherwise RX FIFO remains unchanged.

static inline void I3C_SlaveGetFifoCounts(I3C_Type *base, size_t *rxCount, size_t *txCount)

Gets the current number of bytes in the I3C slave FIFOs.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- txCount – **[out]** Pointer through which the current number of bytes in the transmit FIFO is returned. Pass NULL if this value is not required.
- rxCount – **[out]** Pointer through which the current number of bytes in the receive FIFO is returned. Pass NULL if this value is not required.

void I3C_MasterSetBaudRate(I3C_Type *base, const *i3c_baudrate_hz_t* *baudRate_Hz, uint32_t sourceClock_Hz)

Sets the I3C bus frequency for master transactions.

The I3C master is automatically disabled and re-enabled as necessary to configure the baud rate. Do not call this function during a transfer, or the transfer is aborted.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- baudRate_Hz – Pointer to structure of requested bus frequency in Hertz.
- sourceClock_Hz – I3C functional clock frequency in Hertz.

static inline bool I3C_MasterGetBusIdleState(I3C_Type *base)

Returns whether the bus is idle.

Requires the master mode to be enabled.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.

Return values

- true – Bus is busy.
- false – Bus is idle.

status_t I3C_MasterStartWithRxSize(I3C_Type *base, *i3c_bus_type_t* type, uint8_t address, *i3c_direction_t* dir, uint8_t rxSize)

Sends a START signal and slave address on the I2C/I3C bus, receive size is also specified in the call.

This function is used to initiate a new master mode transfer. First, the bus state is checked to ensure that another master is not occupying the bus. Then a START signal is transmitted, followed by the 7-bit address specified in the a address parameter. Note that this function does not actually wait until the START and address are successfully sent on the bus before returning.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- type – The bus type to use in this transaction.
- address – 7-bit slave device address, in bits [6:0].
- dir – Master transfer direction, either kI3C_Read or kI3C_Write. This parameter is used to set the R/w bit (bit 0) in the transmitted slave address.
- rxSize – Read terminate size for the followed read transfer, limit to 255 bytes.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – START signal and address were successfully enqueued in the transmit FIFO.
- kStatus_I3C_Busy – Another master is currently utilizing the bus.

status_t I3C_MasterStart(I3C_Type *base, *i3c_bus_type_t* type, uint8_t address, *i3c_direction_t* dir)

Sends a START signal and slave address on the I2C/I3C bus.

This function is used to initiate a new master mode transfer. First, the bus state is checked to ensure that another master is not occupying the bus. Then a START signal is transmitted, followed by the 7-bit address specified in the *address* parameter. Note that this function does not actually wait until the START and address are successfully sent on the bus before returning.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- type – The bus type to use in this transaction.
- address – 7-bit slave device address, in bits [6:0].
- dir – Master transfer direction, either kI3C_Read or kI3C_Write. This parameter is used to set the R/w bit (bit 0) in the transmitted slave address.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – START signal and address were successfully enqueued in the transmit FIFO.
- kStatus_I3C_Busy – Another master is currently utilizing the bus.

status_t I3C_MasterRepeatedStartWithRxSize(I3C_Type *base, *i3c_bus_type_t* type, uint8_t address, *i3c_direction_t* dir, uint8_t rxSize)

Sends a repeated START signal and slave address on the I2C/I3C bus, receive size is also specified in the call.

This function is used to send a Repeated START signal when a transfer is already in progress. Like I3C_MasterStart(), it also sends the specified 7-bit address. Call this API also configures the read terminate size for the following read transfer. For example, set the rxSize = 2, the following read transfer will be terminated after two bytes of data received. Write transfer will not be affected by the rxSize configuration.

Note: This function exists primarily to maintain compatible APIs between I3C and I2C drivers, as well as to better document the intent of code that uses these APIs.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- type – The bus type to use in this transaction.
- address – 7-bit slave device address, in bits [6:0].
- dir – Master transfer direction, either kI3C_Read or kI3C_Write. This parameter is used to set the R/w bit (bit 0) in the transmitted slave address.
- rxSize – Read terminate size for the followed read transfer, limit to 255 bytes.

Return values

kStatus_Success – Repeated START signal and address were successfully enqueued in the transmit FIFO.

static inline *status_t* I3C_MasterRepeatedStart(I3C_Type *base, *i3c_bus_type_t* type, uint8_t address, *i3c_direction_t* dir)

Sends a repeated START signal and slave address on the I2C/I3C bus.

This function is used to send a Repeated START signal when a transfer is already in progress. Like I3C_MasterStart(), it also sends the specified 7-bit address.

Note: This function exists primarily to maintain compatible APIs between I3C and I2C drivers, as well as to better document the intent of code that uses these APIs.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- type – The bus type to use in this transaction.
- address – 7-bit slave device address, in bits [6:0].
- dir – Master transfer direction, either kI3C_Read or kI3C_Write. This parameter is used to set the R/w bit (bit 0) in the transmitted slave address.

Return values

kStatus_Success – Repeated START signal and address were successfully enqueued in the transmit FIFO.

status_t I3C_MasterSend(I3C_Type *base, const void *txBuff, size_t txSize, uint32_t flags)

Performs a polling send transfer on the I2C/I3C bus.

Sends up to *txSize* number of bytes to the previously addressed slave device. The slave may reply with a NAK to any byte in order to terminate the transfer early. If this happens, this function returns kStatus_I3C_Nak.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- txBuff – The pointer to the data to be transferred.
- txSize – The length in bytes of the data to be transferred.
- flags – Bit mask of options for the transfer. See enumeration _i3c_master_transfer_flags for available options.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Data was sent successfully.
- kStatus_I3C_Busy – Another master is currently utilizing the bus.
- kStatus_I3C_Timeout – The module has stalled too long in a frame.
- kStatus_I3C_Nak – The slave device sent a NAK in response to an address.
- kStatus_I3C_WriteAbort – The slave device sent a NAK in response to a write.
- kStatus_I3C_MsgError – Message SDR/DDR mismatch or read/write message in wrong state.
- kStatus_I3C_WriteFifoError – Write to M/SWDATAB register when FIFO full.
- kStatus_I3C_InvalidReq – Invalid use of request.

status_t I3C_MasterReceive(I3C_Type *base, void *rxBuff, size_t rxSize, uint32_t flags)

Performs a polling receive transfer on the I2C/I3C bus.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- rxBuff – The pointer to the data to be transferred.
- rxSize – The length in bytes of the data to be transferred.
- flags – Bit mask of options for the transfer. See enumeration _i3c_master_transfer_flags for available options.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Data was received successfully.
- kStatus_I3C_Busy – Another master is currently utilizing the bus.
- kStatus_I3C_Timeout – The module has stalled too long in a frame.
- kStatus_I3C_Term – The master terminates slave read.
- kStatus_I3C_HdrParityError – Parity error from DDR read.
- kStatus_I3C_CrcError – CRC error from DDR read.
- kStatus_I3C_MsgError – Message SDR/DDR mismatch or read/write message in wrong state.
- kStatus_I3C_ReadFifoError – Read from M/SRDATAB register when FIFO empty.

- kStatus_I3C_InvalidReq – Invalid use of request.

status_t I3C_MasterStop(I3C_Type *base)

Sends a STOP signal on the I2C/I3C bus.

This function does not return until the STOP signal is seen on the bus, or an error occurs.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – The STOP signal was successfully sent on the bus and the transaction terminated.
- kStatus_I3C_Busy – Another master is currently utilizing the bus.
- kStatus_I3C_Timeout – The module has stalled too long in a frame.
- kStatus_I3C_InvalidReq – Invalid use of request.

void I3C_MasterEmitRequest(I3C_Type *base, *i3c_bus_request_t* masterReq)

I3C master emit request.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- masterReq – I3C master request of type i3c_bus_request_t

static inline void I3C_MasterEmitIBIResponse(I3C_Type *base, *i3c_ibi_response_t* ibiResponse)

I3C master emit request.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- ibiResponse – I3C master emit IBI response of type i3c_ibi_response_t

void I3C_MasterRegisterIBI(I3C_Type *base, *i3c_register_ibi_addr_t* *ibiRule)

I3C master register IBI rule.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- ibiRule – Pointer to ibi rule description of type i3c_register_ibi_addr_t

void I3C_MasterGetIBIRules(I3C_Type *base, *i3c_register_ibi_addr_t* *ibiRule)

I3C master get IBI rule.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- ibiRule – Pointer to store the read out ibi rule description.

i3c_ibi_type_t I3C_GetIBIType(I3C_Type *base)

I3C master get IBI Type.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.

Return values

i3c_ibi_type_t – Type of i3c_ibi_type_t.

static inline uint8_t I3C_GetIBIAddress(I3C_Type *base)

I3C master get IBI Address.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.

Return values

The – 8-bit IBI address.

status_t I3C_MasterProcessDAASpecifiedBaudrate(I3C_Type *base, uint8_t *addressList, uint32_t count, *i3c_master_daa_baudrate_t* *daaBaudRate)

Performs a DAA in the i3c bus with specified temporary baud rate.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- addressList – The pointer for address list which is used to do DAA.
- count – The address count in the address list.
- daaBaudRate – The temporary baud rate in DAA process, NULL for using initial setting. The initial setting is set back between the completion of the DAA and the return of this function.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – The transaction was started successfully.
- kStatus_I3C_Busy – Either another master is currently utilizing the bus, or a non-blocking transaction is already in progress.
- kStatus_I3C_SlaveCountExceed – The I3C slave count has exceed the definition in I3C_MAX_DEVCNT.

static inline *status_t* I3C_MasterProcessDAA(I3C_Type *base, uint8_t *addressList, uint32_t count)

Performs a DAA in the i3c bus.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- addressList – The pointer for address list which is used to do DAA.
- count – The address count in the address list. The initial setting is set back between the completion of the DAA and the return of this function.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – The transaction was started successfully.
- kStatus_I3C_Busy – Either another master is currently utilizing the bus, or a non-blocking transaction is already in progress.
- kStatus_I3C_SlaveCountExceed – The I3C slave count has exceed the definition in I3C_MAX_DEVCNT.

i3c_device_info_t *I3C_MasterGetDeviceListAfterDAA(I3C_Type *base, uint8_t *count)

Get device information list after DAA process is done.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- count – **[out]** The pointer to store the available device count.

Returns

Pointer to the i3c_device_info_t array.

void I3C_MasterClearDeviceCount(I3C_Type *base)

Clear the global device count which represents current devices number on the bus. When user resets all dynamic addresses on the bus, should call this API.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.

status_t I3C_MasterTransferBlocking(I3C_Type *base, *i3c_master_transfer_t* *transfer)

Performs a master polling transfer on the I2C/I3C bus.

Note: The API does not return until the transfer succeeds or fails due to error happens during transfer.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- transfer – Pointer to the transfer structure.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Data was received successfully.
- kStatus_I3C_Busy – Another master is currently utilizing the bus.
- kStatus_I3C_IBIWon – The I3C slave event IBI or MR or HJ won the arbitration on a header address.
- kStatus_I3C_Timeout – The module has stalled too long in a frame.
- kStatus_I3C_Nak – The slave device sent a NAK in response to an address.
- kStatus_I3C_WriteAbort – The slave device sent a NAK in response to a write.
- kStatus_I3C_Term – The master terminates slave read.
- kStatus_I3C_HdrParityError – Parity error from DDR read.
- kStatus_I3C_CrcError – CRC error from DDR read.
- kStatus_I3C_MsgError – Message SDR/DDR mismatch or read/write message in wrong state.
- kStatus_I3C_ReadFifoError – Read from M/SRDATAB register when FIFO empty.
- kStatus_I3C_WriteFifoError – Write to M/SWDATAB register when FIFO full.
- kStatus_I3C_InvalidReq – Invalid use of request.

status_t I3C_SlaveSend(I3C_Type *base, const void *txBuff, size_t txSize)

Performs a polling send transfer on the I3C bus.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- txBuff – The pointer to the data to be transferred.
- txSize – The length in bytes of the data to be transferred.

Returns

Error or success status returned by API.

status_t I3C_SlaveReceive(I3C_Type *base, void *rxBuff, size_t rxSize)

Performs a polling receive transfer on the I3C bus.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- rxBuff – The pointer to the data to be transferred.
- rxSize – The length in bytes of the data to be transferred.

Returns

Error or success status returned by API.

void I3C_MasterTransferCreateHandle(I3C_Type *base, *i3c_master_handle_t* *handle, const *i3c_master_transfer_callback_t* *callback, void *userData)

Creates a new handle for the I3C master non-blocking APIs.

The creation of a handle is for use with the non-blocking APIs. Once a handle is created, there is not a corresponding destroy handle. If the user wants to terminate a transfer, the I3C_MasterTransferAbort() API shall be called.

Note: The function also enables the NVIC IRQ for the input I3C. Need to notice that on some SoCs the I3C IRQ is connected to INTMUX, in this case user needs to enable the associated INTMUX IRQ in application.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- handle – **[out]** Pointer to the I3C master driver handle.
- callback – User provided pointer to the asynchronous callback function.
- userData – User provided pointer to the application callback data.

status_t I3C_MasterTransferNonBlocking(I3C_Type *base, *i3c_master_handle_t* *handle, *i3c_master_transfer_t* *transfer)

Performs a non-blocking transaction on the I2C/I3C bus.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- handle – Pointer to the I3C master driver handle.
- transfer – The pointer to the transfer descriptor.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – The transaction was started successfully.
- kStatus_I3C_Busy – Either another master is currently utilizing the bus, or a non-blocking transaction is already in progress.

status_t I3C_MasterTransferGetCount(I3C_Type *base, *i3c_master_handle_t* *handle, size_t *count)

Returns number of bytes transferred so far.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- handle – Pointer to the I3C master driver handle.
- count – **[out]** Number of bytes transferred so far by the non-blocking transaction.

Return values

- kStatus_Success –
- kStatus_NoTransferInProgress – There is not a non-blocking transaction currently in progress.

void I3C_MasterTransferAbort(I3C_Type *base, *i3c_master_handle_t* *handle)

Terminates a non-blocking I3C master transmission early.

Note: It is not safe to call this function from an IRQ handler that has a higher priority than the I3C peripheral's IRQ priority.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- handle – Pointer to the I3C master driver handle.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – A transaction was successfully aborted.
- kStatus_I3C_Idle – There is not a non-blocking transaction currently in progress.

void I3C_MasterTransferHandleIRQ(I3C_Type *base, void *intHandle)

Reusable routine to handle master interrupts.

Note: This function does not need to be called unless you are reimplementing the non-blocking API's interrupt handler routines to add special functionality.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- intHandle – Pointer to the I3C master driver handle.

enum _i3c_master_flags

I3C master peripheral flags.

The following status register flags can be cleared:

- kI3C_MasterSlaveStartFlag
- kI3C_MasterControlDoneFlag
- kI3C_MasterCompleteFlag
- kI3C_MasterArbitrationWonFlag
- kI3C_MasterSlave2MasterFlag

All flags except kI3C_MasterBetweenFlag and kI3C_MasterNackDetectFlag can be enabled as interrupts.

Note: These enums are meant to be OR'd together to form a bit mask.

Values:

enumerator kI3C_MasterBetweenFlag

Between messages/DAAs flag

enumerator kI3C_MasterNackDetectFlag
NACK detected flag

enumerator kI3C_MasterSlaveStartFlag
Slave request start flag

enumerator kI3C_MasterControlDoneFlag
Master request complete flag

enumerator kI3C_MasterCompleteFlag
Transfer complete flag

enumerator kI3C_MasterRxReadyFlag
Rx data ready in Rx buffer flag

enumerator kI3C_MasterTxReadyFlag
Tx buffer ready for Tx data flag

enumerator kI3C_MasterArbitrationWonFlag
Header address won arbitration flag

enumerator kI3C_MasterErrorFlag
Error occurred flag

enumerator kI3C_MasterSlave2MasterFlag
Switch from slave to master flag

enumerator kI3C_MasterClearFlags

enum _i3c_master_error_flags
I3C master error flags to indicate the causes.

Note: These enums are meant to be OR'd together to form a bit mask.

Values:

enumerator kI3C_MasterErrorNackFlag
Slave NACKed the last address

enumerator kI3C_MasterErrorWriteAbortFlag
Slave NACKed the write data

enumerator kI3C_MasterErrorParityFlag
Parity error from DDR read

enumerator kI3C_MasterErrorCrcFlag
CRC error from DDR read

enumerator kI3C_MasterErrorReadFlag
Read from MRDATAB register when FIFO empty

enumerator kI3C_MasterErrorWriteFlag
Write to MWDATAB register when FIFO full

enumerator kI3C_MasterErrorMsgFlag
Message SDR/DDR mismatch or read/write message in wrong state

enumerator kI3C_MasterErrorInvalidReqFlag
Invalid use of request

enumerator kI3C_MasterErrorTimeoutFlag
The module has stalled too long in a frame

enumerator kI3C_MasterAllErrorFlags
All error flags

enum _i3c_master_state
I3C working master state.

Values:

enumerator kI3C_MasterStateIdle
Bus stopped.

enumerator kI3C_MasterStateSlvReq
Bus stopped but slave holding SDA low.

enumerator kI3C_MasterStateMsgSdr
In SDR Message mode from using MWMSG_SDR.

enumerator kI3C_MasterStateNormAct
In normal active SDR mode.

enumerator kI3C_MasterStateDdr
In DDR Message mode.

enumerator kI3C_MasterStateDaa
In ENTDAA mode.

enumerator kI3C_MasterStateIbiAck
Waiting on IBI ACK/NACK decision.

enumerator kI3C_MasterStateIbiRcv
Receiving IBI.

enum _i3c_master_enable
I3C master enable configuration.

Values:

enumerator kI3C_MasterOff
Master off.

enumerator kI3C_MasterOn
Master on.

enumerator kI3C_MasterCapable
Master capable.

enum _i3c_master_hkeep
I3C high keeper configuration.

Values:

enumerator kI3C_MasterHighKeeperNone
Use PUR to hold SCL high.

enumerator kI3C_MasterHighKeeperWiredIn
Use pin_HK controls.

enumerator kI3C_MasterPassiveSDA
Hi-Z for Bus Free and hold SDA.

enumerator kI3C_MasterPassiveSDASCL
Hi-Z both for Bus Free, and can Hi-Z SDA for hold.

enum _i3c_bus_request

Emits the requested operation when doing in pieces vs. by message.

Values:

enumerator kI3C_RequestNone

No request.

enumerator kI3C_RequestEmitStartAddr

Request to emit start and address on bus.

enumerator kI3C_RequestEmitStop

Request to emit stop on bus.

enumerator kI3C_RequestIbiAckNack

Manual IBI ACK or NACK.

enumerator kI3C_RequestProcessDAA

Process DAA.

enumerator kI3C_RequestForceExit

Request to force exit.

enumerator kI3C_RequestAutoIbi

Hold in stopped state, but Auto-emit START,7E.

enum _i3c_bus_type

Bus type with EmitStartAddr.

Values:

enumerator kI3C_TypeI3CSdr

SDR mode of I3C.

enumerator kI3C_TypeI2C

Standard i2c protocol.

enumerator kI3C_TypeI3CDdr

HDR-DDR mode of I3C.

enum _i3c_ibi_response

IBI response.

Values:

enumerator kI3C_IbiRespAck

ACK with no mandatory byte.

enumerator kI3C_IbiRespNack

NACK.

enumerator kI3C_IbiRespAckMandatory

ACK with mandatory byte.

enumerator kI3C_IbiRespManual

Reserved.

enum _i3c_ibi_type

IBI type.

Values:

enumerator kI3C_IbiNormal

In-band interrupt.

enumerator kI3C_IbiHotJoin
slave hot join.

enumerator kI3C_IbiMasterRequest
slave master ship request.

enum _i3c_ibi_state
IBI state.

Values:

enumerator kI3C_IbiReady
In-band interrupt ready state, ready for user to handle.

enumerator kI3C_IbiDataBuffNeed
In-band interrupt need data buffer for data receive.

enumerator kI3C_IbiAckNackPending
In-band interrupt Ack/Nack pending for decision.

enum _i3c_direction
Direction of master and slave transfers.

Values:

enumerator kI3C_Write
Master transmit.

enumerator kI3C_Read
Master receive.

enum _i3c_tx_trigger_level
Watermark of TX int/dma trigger level.

Values:

enumerator kI3C_TxTriggerOnEmpty
Trigger on empty.

enumerator kI3C_TxTriggerUntilOneQuarterOrLess
Trigger on 1/4 full or less.

enumerator kI3C_TxTriggerUntilOneHalfOrLess
Trigger on 1/2 full or less.

enumerator kI3C_TxTriggerUntilOneLessThanFull
Trigger on 1 less than full or less.

enum _i3c_rx_trigger_level
Watermark of RX int/dma trigger level.

Values:

enumerator kI3C_RxTriggerOnNotEmpty
Trigger on not empty.

enumerator kI3C_RxTriggerUntilOneQuarterOrMore
Trigger on 1/4 full or more.

enumerator kI3C_RxTriggerUntilOneHalfOrMore
Trigger on 1/2 full or more.

enumerator kI3C_RxTriggerUntilThreeQuarterOrMore
Trigger on 3/4 full or more.

enum _i3c_rx_term_ops

I3C master read termination operations.

Values:

enumerator kI3C_RxTermDisable

Master doesn't terminate read, used for CCC transfer.

enumerator kI3C_RxAutoTerm

Master auto terminate read after receiving specified bytes(<=255).

enumerator kI3C_RxTermLastByte

Master terminates read at any time after START, no length limitation.

enum _i3c_start_scl_delay

I3C start SCL delay options.

Values:

enumerator kI3C_NoDelay

No delay.

enumerator kI3C_IncreaseSclHalfPeriod

Increases SCL clock period by 1/2.

enumerator kI3C_IncreaseSclOnePeriod

Increases SCL clock period by 1.

enumerator kI3C_IncreaseSclOneAndHalfPeriod

Increases SCL clock period by 1 1/2

enum _i3c_master_transfer_flags

Transfer option flags.

Note: These enumerations are intended to be OR'd together to form a bit mask of options for the _i3c_master_transfer::flags field.

Values:

enumerator kI3C_TransferDefaultFlag

Transfer starts with a start signal, stops with a stop signal.

enumerator kI3C_TransferNoStartFlag

Don't send a start condition, address, and sub address

enumerator kI3C_TransferRepeatedStartFlag

Send a repeated start condition

enumerator kI3C_TransferNoStopFlag

Don't send a stop condition.

enumerator kI3C_TransferWordsFlag

Transfer in words, else transfer in bytes.

enumerator kI3C_TransferDisableRxTermFlag

Disable Rx termination. Note: It's for I3C CCC transfer.

enumerator kI3C_TransferRxAutoTermFlag

Set Rx auto-termination. Note: It's adaptive based on Rx size(<=255 bytes) except in I3C_MasterReceive.

enumerator kI3C_TransferStartWithBroadcastAddr
Start transfer with 0x7E, then read/write data with device address.

typedef enum *_i3c_master_state* i3c_master_state_t
I3C working master state.

typedef enum *_i3c_master_enable* i3c_master_enable_t
I3C master enable configuration.

typedef enum *_i3c_master_hkeep* i3c_master_hkeep_t
I3C high keeper configuration.

typedef enum *_i3c_bus_request* i3c_bus_request_t
Emits the requested operation when doing in pieces vs. by message.

typedef enum *_i3c_bus_type* i3c_bus_type_t
Bus type with EmitStartAddr.

typedef enum *_i3c_ibi_response* i3c_ibi_response_t
IBI response.

typedef enum *_i3c_ibi_type* i3c_ibi_type_t
IBI type.

typedef enum *_i3c_ibi_state* i3c_ibi_state_t
IBI state.

typedef enum *_i3c_direction* i3c_direction_t
Direction of master and slave transfers.

typedef enum *_i3c_tx_trigger_level* i3c_tx_trigger_level_t
Watermark of TX int/dma trigger level.

typedef enum *_i3c_rx_trigger_level* i3c_rx_trigger_level_t
Watermark of RX int/dma trigger level.

typedef enum *_i3c_rx_term_ops* i3c_rx_term_ops_t
I3C master read termination operations.

typedef enum *_i3c_start_scl_delay* i3c_start_scl_delay_t
I3C start SCL delay options.

typedef struct *_i3c_register_ibi_addr* i3c_register_ibi_addr_t
Structure with setting master IBI rules and slave registry.

typedef struct *_i3c_baudrate* i3c_baudrate_hz_t
Structure with I3C baudrate settings.

typedef struct *_i3c_master_daa_baudrate* i3c_master_daa_baudrate_t
I3C DAA baud rate configuration.

typedef struct *_i3c_master_config* i3c_master_config_t
Structure with settings to initialize the I3C master module.

This structure holds configuration settings for the I3C peripheral. To initialize this structure to reasonable defaults, call the I3C_MasterGetDefaultConfig() function and pass a pointer to your configuration structure instance.

The configuration structure can be made constant so it resides in flash.

typedef struct *_i3c_master_transfer* i3c_master_transfer_t

typedef struct *_i3c_master_handle* i3c_master_handle_t

typedef struct *_i3c_master_transfer_callback* i3c_master_transfer_callback_t

i3c master callback functions.

typedef void (*i3c_master_isr_t)(I3C_Type *base, void *handle)

Typedef for master interrupt handler.

struct _i3c_register_ibi_addr

#include <fsl_i3c.h> Structure with setting master IBI rules and slave registry.

Public Members

uint8_t address[5]

Address array for registry.

bool i3cFastStart

Allow the START header to run as push-pull speed if all dynamic addresses take MSB 0.

bool ibiHasPayload

Whether the address array has mandatory IBI byte.

struct _i3c_baudrate

#include <fsl_i3c.h> Structure with I3C baudrate settings.

Public Members

uint32_t i2cBaud

Desired I2C baud rate in Hertz.

uint32_t i3cPushPullBaud

Desired I3C push-pull baud rate in Hertz.

uint32_t i3cOpenDrainBaud

Desired I3C open-drain baud rate in Hertz.

struct _i3c_master_daa_baudrate

#include <fsl_i3c.h> I3C DAA baud rate configuration.

Public Members

uint32_t sourceClock_Hz

FCLK, function clock in Hertz.

uint32_t i3cPushPullBaud

Desired I3C push-pull baud rate in Hertz.

uint32_t i3cOpenDrainBaud

Desired I3C open-drain baud rate in Hertz.

struct _i3c_master_config

#include <fsl_i3c.h> Structure with settings to initialize the I3C master module.

This structure holds configuration settings for the I3C peripheral. To initialize this structure to reasonable defaults, call the I3C_MasterGetDefaultConfig() function and pass a pointer to your configuration structure instance.

The configuration structure can be made constant so it resides in flash.

Public Members

i3c_master_enable_t enableMaster
: Enable master mode.

bool disableTimeout
: Whether to disable timeout to prevent the ERRWARN.

i3c_master_hkeep_t hKeep
: High keeper mode setting.

bool enableOpenDrainStop
: Whether to emit open-drain speed STOP.

bool enableOpenDrainHigh
: Enable Open-Drain High to be 1 PPBAUD count for i3c messages, or 1 ODBAUD.

i3c_baudrate_hz_t baudRate_Hz
: Desired baud rate settings.

struct _i3c_master_transfer_callback
: *#include <fsl_i3c.h>* i3c master callback functions.

Public Members

void (*slave2Master)(I3C_Type *base, void *userData)
: Transfer complete callback

void (*ibiCallback)(I3C_Type *base, *i3c_master_handle_t* *handle, *i3c_ibi_type_t* ibiType, *i3c_ibi_state_t* ibiState)
: IBI event callback

void (*transferComplete)(I3C_Type *base, *i3c_master_handle_t* *handle, *status_t* completionStatus, void *userData)
: Transfer complete callback

struct _i3c_master_transfer
: *#include <fsl_i3c.h>* Non-blocking transfer descriptor structure.

  This structure is used to pass transaction parameters to the I3C_MasterTransferNonBlocking() API.

Public Members

uint32_t flags
: Bit mask of options for the transfer. See enumeration _i3c_master_transfer_flags for available options. Set to 0 or kI3C_TransferDefaultFlag for normal transfers.

uint8_t slaveAddress
: The 7-bit slave address.

i3c_direction_t direction
: Either kI3C_Read or kI3C_Write.

uint32_t subaddress
: Sub address. Transferred MSB first.

size_t subaddressSize
: Length of sub address to send in bytes. Maximum size is 4 bytes.

void *data
: Pointer to data to transfer.

size_t dataSize
: Number of bytes to transfer.

i3c_bus_type_t busType
: bus type.

i3c_ibi_response_t ibiResponse
: ibi response during transfer.

struct _i3c_master_handle
: *#include <fsl_i3c.h>* Driver handle for master non-blocking APIs.

Note: The contents of this structure are private and subject to change.

Public Members

uint8_t state
: Transfer state machine current state.

uint32_t remainingBytes
: Remaining byte count in current state.

i3c_rx_term_ops_t rxTermOps
: Read termination operation.

i3c_master_transfer_t transfer
: Copy of the current transfer info.

uint8_t ibiAddress
: Slave address which request IBI.

uint8_t *ibiBuff
: Pointer to IBI buffer to keep ibi bytes.

size_t ibiPayloadSize
: IBI payload size.

i3c_ibi_type_t ibiType
: IBI type.

i3c_master_transfer_callback_t callback
: Callback functions pointer.

void *userData
: Application data passed to callback.

2.43 I3C Slave DMA Driver

void I3C_SlaveTransferCreateHandleDMA(I3C_Type *base, *i3c_slave_dma_handle_t* *handle, *i3c_slave_dma_callback_t* callback, void *userData, *dma_handle_t* *rxDmaHandle, *dma_handle_t* *txDmaHandle)

Create a new handle for the I3C slave DMA APIs.

The creation of a handle is for use with the DMA APIs. Once a handle is created, there is not a corresponding destroy handle. If the user wants to terminate a transfer, the I3C_SlaveTransferAbortDMA() API shall be called.

For devices where the I3C send and receive DMA requests are OR'd together, the *txDmaHandle* parameter is ignored and may be set to NULL.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- handle – Pointer to the I3C slave driver handle.
- callback – User provided pointer to the asynchronous callback function.
- userData – User provided pointer to the application callback data.
- rxDmaHandle – Handle for the DMA receive channel. Created by the user prior to calling this function.
- txDmaHandle – Handle for the DMA transmit channel. Created by the user prior to calling this function.

status_t I3C_SlaveTransferDMA(I3C_Type *base, *i3c_slave_dma_handle_t* *handle, *i3c_slave_dma_transfer_t* *transfer, uint32_t eventMask)

Prepares for a non-blocking DMA-based transaction on the I3C bus.

The API will do DMA configuration according to the input transfer descriptor, and the data will be transferred when there's bus master requesting transfer from/to this slave. So the timing of call to this API need be aligned with master application to ensure the transfer is executed as expected. Callback specified when the *handle* was created is invoked when the transaction has completed.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- handle – Pointer to the I3C slave driver handle.
- transfer – The pointer to the transfer descriptor.
- eventMask – Bit mask formed by OR'ing together i3c_slave_transfer_event_t enumerators to specify which events to send to the callback. The transmit and receive events is not allowed to be enabled.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – The transaction was started successfully.
- kStatus_I3C_Busy – Either another master is currently utilizing the bus, or another DMA transaction is already in progress.

void I3C_SlaveTransferAbortDMA(I3C_Type *base, *i3c_slave_dma_handle_t* *handle)

Abort a slave dma non-blocking transfer in a early time.

Parameters

- base – I3C peripheral base address
- handle – pointer to i3c_slave_dma_handle_t structure

void I3C_SlaveTransferDMAHandleIRQ(I3C_Type *base, void *i3cHandle)

Reusable routine to handle slave interrupts.

Note: This function does not need to be called unless you are reimplementing the non-blocking API's interrupt handler routines to add special functionality.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- handle – Pointer to the I3C slave DMA driver handle.

typedef struct *_i3c_slave_dma_handle* i3c_slave_dma_handle_t

typedef struct *_i3c_slave_dma_transfer* i3c_slave_dma_transfer_t

I3C slave transfer structure.

typedef void (*i3c_slave_dma_callback_t)(I3C_Type *base, *i3c_slave_dma_transfer_t* *transfer, void *userData)

Slave event callback function pointer type.

This callback is used only for the slave DMA transfer API.

Param base
Base address for the I3C instance on which the event occurred.

Param handle
Pointer to slave DMA transfer handle.

Param transfer
Pointer to transfer descriptor containing values passed to and/or from the callback.

Param userData
Arbitrary pointer-sized value passed from the application.

struct _i3c_slave_dma_transfer

#include <fsl_i3c_dma.h> I3C slave transfer structure.

struct _i3c_slave_dma_handle

#include <fsl_i3c_dma.h> I3C slave dma handle structure.

Note: The contents of this structure are private and subject to change.

2.44 I3C Slave Driver

void I3C_SlaveGetDefaultConfig(*i3c_slave_config_t* *slaveConfig)

Provides a default configuration for the I3C slave peripheral.

This function provides the following default configuration for the I3C slave peripheral:

```
slaveConfig->enableslave              = true;
```

After calling this function, you can override any settings in order to customize the configuration, prior to initializing the slave driver with I3C_SlaveInit().

Parameters

- slaveConfig – **[out]** User provided configuration structure for default values. Refer to i3c_slave_config_t.

void I3C_SlaveInit(I3C_Type *base, const *i3c_slave_config_t* *slaveConfig, uint32_t slowClock_Hz)

Initializes the I3C slave peripheral.

This function enables the peripheral clock and initializes the I3C slave peripheral as described by the user provided configuration.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- slaveConfig – User provided peripheral configuration. Use I3C_SlaveGetDefaultConfig() to get a set of defaults that you can override.
- slowClock_Hz – Frequency in Hertz of the I3C slow clock. Used to calculate the bus match condition values. If FSL_FEATURE_I3C_HAS_NO_SCONFIG_BAMATCH defines as 1, this parameter is useless.

void I3C_SlaveDeinit(I3C_Type *base)

Deinitializes the I3C slave peripheral.

This function disables the I3C slave peripheral and gates the clock.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.

static inline void I3C_SlaveEnable(I3C_Type *base, bool isEnable)

Enable/Disable Slave.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- isEnable – Enable or disable.

static inline uint32_t I3C_SlaveGetStatusFlags(I3C_Type *base)

Gets the I3C slave status flags.

A bit mask with the state of all I3C slave status flags is returned. For each flag, the corresponding bit in the return value is set if the flag is asserted.

See also:

_i3c_slave_flags

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.

Returns

State of the status flags:

- 1: related status flag is set.
- 0: related status flag is not set.

static inline void I3C_SlaveClearStatusFlags(I3C_Type *base, uint32_t statusMask)

Clears the I3C slave status flag state.

The following status register flags can be cleared:

- kI3C_SlaveBusStartFlag
- kI3C_SlaveMatchedFlag
- kI3C_SlaveBusStopFlag

Attempts to clear other flags has no effect.

See also:

_i3c_slave_flags.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- statusMask – A bitmask of status flags that are to be cleared. The mask is composed of _i3c_slave_flags enumerators OR'd together. You may pass the result of a previous call to I3C_SlaveGetStatusFlags().

static inline uint32_t I3C_SlaveGetErrorStatusFlags(I3C_Type *base)

Gets the I3C slave error status flags.

A bit mask with the state of all I3C slave error status flags is returned. For each flag, the corresponding bit in the return value is set if the flag is asserted.

See also:

_i3c_slave_error_flags

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.

Returns

State of the error status flags:

- 1: related status flag is set.
- 0: related status flag is not set.

static inline void I3C_SlaveClearErrorStatusFlags(I3C_Type *base, uint32_t statusMask)

Clears the I3C slave error status flag state.

See also:

_i3c_slave_error_flags.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- statusMask – A bitmask of error status flags that are to be cleared. The mask is composed of _i3c_slave_error_flags enumerators OR'd together. You may pass the result of a previous call to I3C_SlaveGetErrorStatusFlags().

i3c_slave_activity_state_t I3C_SlaveGetActivityState(I3C_Type *base)

Gets the I3C slave state.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.

Returns

I3C slave activity state, refer i3c_slave_activity_state_t.

status_t I3C_SlaveCheckAndClearError(I3C_Type *base, uint32_t status)

static inline void I3C_SlaveEnableInterrupts(I3C_Type *base, uint32_t interruptMask)

Enables the I3C slave interrupt requests.

Only below flags can be enabled as interrupts.

- kI3C_SlaveBusStartFlag
- kI3C_SlaveMatchedFlag
- kI3C_SlaveBusStopFlag
- kI3C_SlaveRxReadyFlag
- kI3C_SlaveTxReadyFlag
- kI3C_SlaveDynamicAddrChangedFlag
- kI3C_SlaveReceivedCCCFlag
- kI3C_SlaveErrorFlag
- kI3C_SlaveHDRCommandMatchFlag
- kI3C_SlaveCCCHandledFlag
- kI3C_SlaveEventSentFlag

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- interruptMask – Bit mask of interrupts to enable. See _i3c_slave_flags for the set of constants that should be OR'd together to form the bit mask.

static inline void I3C_SlaveDisableInterrupts(I3C_Type *base, uint32_t interruptMask)

Disables the I3C slave interrupt requests.

Only below flags can be disabled as interrupts.

- kI3C_SlaveBusStartFlag
- kI3C_SlaveMatchedFlag
- kI3C_SlaveBusStopFlag
- kI3C_SlaveRxReadyFlag
- kI3C_SlaveTxReadyFlag
- kI3C_SlaveDynamicAddrChangedFlag
- kI3C_SlaveReceivedCCCFlag
- kI3C_SlaveErrorFlag
- kI3C_SlaveHDRCommandMatchFlag
- kI3C_SlaveCCCHandledFlag
- kI3C_SlaveEventSentFlag

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- interruptMask – Bit mask of interrupts to disable. See _i3c_slave_flags for the set of constants that should be OR'd together to form the bit mask.

static inline uint32_t I3C_SlaveGetEnabledInterrupts(I3C_Type *base)

Returns the set of currently enabled I3C slave interrupt requests.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.

Returns
A bitmask composed of _i3c_slave_flags enumerators OR'd together to indicate the set of enabled interrupts.

static inline uint32_t I3C_SlaveGetPendingInterrupts(I3C_Type *base)

Returns the set of pending I3C slave interrupt requests.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.

Returns
A bitmask composed of _i3c_slave_flags enumerators OR'd together to indicate the set of pending interrupts.

static inline void I3C_SlaveEnableDMA(I3C_Type *base, bool enableTx, bool enableRx, uint32_t width)

Enables or disables I3C slave DMA requests.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- enableTx – Enable flag for transmit DMA request. Pass true for enable, false for disable.
- enableRx – Enable flag for receive DMA request. Pass true for enable, false for disable.
- width – DMA read/write unit in bytes.

static inline uint32_t I3C_SlaveGetTxFifoAddress(I3C_Type *base, uint32_t width)

Gets I3C slave transmit data register address for DMA transfer.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- width – DMA read/write unit in bytes.

Returns
The I3C Slave Transmit Data Register address.

static inline uint32_t I3C_SlaveGetRxFifoAddress(I3C_Type *base, uint32_t width)

Gets I3C slave receive data register address for DMA transfer.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- width – DMA read/write unit in bytes.

Returns
The I3C Slave Receive Data Register address.

static inline void I3C_SlaveSetWatermarks(I3C_Type *base, *i3c_tx_trigger_level_t* txLvl, *i3c_rx_trigger_level_t* rxLvl, bool flushTx, bool flushRx)

Sets the watermarks for I3C slave FIFOs.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- txLvl – Transmit FIFO watermark level. The kI3C_SlaveTxReadyFlag flag is set whenever the number of words in the transmit FIFO reaches *txLvl*.

- rxLvl – Receive FIFO watermark level. The kI3C_SlaveRxReadyFlag flag is set whenever the number of words in the receive FIFO reaches *rxLvl*.
- flushTx – true if TX FIFO is to be cleared, otherwise TX FIFO remains unchanged.
- flushRx – true if RX FIFO is to be cleared, otherwise RX FIFO remains unchanged.

static inline void I3C_SlaveGetFifoCounts(I3C_Type *base, size_t *rxCount, size_t *txCount)

Gets the current number of bytes in the I3C slave FIFOs.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- txCount – **[out]** Pointer through which the current number of bytes in the transmit FIFO is returned. Pass NULL if this value is not required.
- rxCount – **[out]** Pointer through which the current number of bytes in the receive FIFO is returned. Pass NULL if this value is not required.

status_t I3C_SlaveSend(I3C_Type *base, const void *txBuff, size_t txSize)

Performs a polling send transfer on the I3C bus.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- txBuff – The pointer to the data to be transferred.
- txSize – The length in bytes of the data to be transferred.

Returns

Error or success status returned by API.

status_t I3C_SlaveReceive(I3C_Type *base, void *rxBuff, size_t rxSize)

Performs a polling receive transfer on the I3C bus.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- rxBuff – The pointer to the data to be transferred.
- rxSize – The length in bytes of the data to be transferred.

Returns

Error or success status returned by API.

void I3C_SlaveTransferCreateHandle(I3C_Type *base, *i3c_slave_handle_t* *handle, *i3c_slave_transfer_callback_t* callback, void *userData)

Creates a new handle for the I3C slave non-blocking APIs.

The creation of a handle is for use with the non-blocking APIs. Once a handle is created, there is not a corresponding destroy handle. If the user wants to terminate a transfer, the I3C_SlaveTransferAbort() API shall be called.

Note: The function also enables the NVIC IRQ for the input I3C. Need to notice that on some SoCs the I3C IRQ is connected to INTMUX, in this case user needs to enable the associated INTMUX IRQ in application.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- handle – **[out]** Pointer to the I3C slave driver handle.

- callback – User provided pointer to the asynchronous callback function.
- userData – User provided pointer to the application callback data.

status_t I3C_SlaveTransferNonBlocking(I3C_Type *base, *i3c_slave_handle_t* *handle, uint32_t eventMask)

Starts accepting slave transfers.

Call this API after calling I2C_SlaveInit() and I3C_SlaveTransferCreateHandle() to start processing transactions driven by an I2C master. The slave monitors the I2C bus and pass events to the callback that was passed into the call to I3C_SlaveTransferCreateHandle(). The callback is always invoked from the interrupt context.

The set of events received by the callback is customizable. To do so, set the *eventMask* parameter to the OR'd combination of i3c_slave_transfer_event_t enumerators for the events you wish to receive. The kI3C_SlaveTransmitEvent and kI3C_SlaveReceiveEvent events are always enabled and do not need to be included in the mask. Alternatively, you can pass 0 to get a default set of only the transmit and receive events that are always enabled. In addition, the kI3C_SlaveAllEvents constant is provided as a convenient way to enable all events.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- handle – Pointer to struct: _i3c_slave_handle structure which stores the transfer state.
- eventMask – Bit mask formed by OR'ing together i3c_slave_transfer_event_t enumerators to specify which events to send to the callback. Other accepted values are 0 to get a default set of only the transmit and receive events, and kI3C_SlaveAllEvents to enable all events.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Slave transfers were successfully started.
- kStatus_I3C_Busy – Slave transfers have already been started on this handle.

status_t I3C_SlaveTransferGetCount(I3C_Type *base, *i3c_slave_handle_t* *handle, size_t *count)

Gets the slave transfer status during a non-blocking transfer.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- handle – Pointer to i2c_slave_handle_t structure.
- count – **[out]** Pointer to a value to hold the number of bytes transferred. May be NULL if the count is not required.

Return values

- kStatus_Success –
- kStatus_NoTransferInProgress –

void I3C_SlaveTransferAbort(I3C_Type *base, *i3c_slave_handle_t* *handle)

Aborts the slave non-blocking transfers.

Note: This API could be called at any time to stop slave for handling the bus events.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.

- handle – Pointer to struct: _i3c_slave_handle structure which stores the transfer state.

Return values

- kStatus_Success –
- kStatus_I3C_Idle –

void I3C_SlaveTransferHandleIRQ(I3C_Type *base, void *intHandle)

Reusable routine to handle slave interrupts.

Note: This function does not need to be called unless you are reimplementing the non blocking API's interrupt handler routines to add special functionality.

Parameters

- base – The I3C peripheral base address.
- intHandle – Pointer to struct: _i3c_slave_handle structure which stores the transfer state.

enum _i3c_slave_flags

I3C slave peripheral flags.

The following status register flags can be cleared:

- kI3C_SlaveBusStartFlag
- kI3C_SlaveMatchedFlag
- kI3C_SlaveBusStopFlag

Only below flags can be enabled as interrupts.

- kI3C_SlaveBusStartFlag
- kI3C_SlaveMatchedFlag
- kI3C_SlaveBusStopFlag
- kI3C_SlaveRxReadyFlag
- kI3C_SlaveTxReadyFlag
- kI3C_SlaveDynamicAddrChangedFlag
- kI3C_SlaveReceivedCCCFlag
- kI3C_SlaveErrorFlag
- kI3C_SlaveHDRCommandMatchFlag
- kI3C_SlaveCCCHandledFlag
- kI3C_SlaveEventSentFlag

Note: These enums are meant to be OR'd together to form a bit mask.

Values:

enumerator kI3C_SlaveNotStopFlag

Slave status not stop flag

enumerator kI3C_SlaveMessageFlag

Slave status message, indicating slave is listening to the bus traffic or responding

enumerator kI3C_SlaveRequiredReadFlag
Slave status required, either is master doing SDR read from slave, or is IBI pushing out.

enumerator kI3C_SlaveRequiredWriteFlag
Slave status request write, master is doing SDR write to slave, except slave in ENTDAA mode

enumerator kI3C_SlaveBusDAAFlag
I3C bus is in ENTDAA mode

enumerator kI3C_SlaveBusHDRModeFlag
I3C bus is in HDR mode

enumerator kI3C_SlaveBusStartFlag
Start/Re-start event is seen since the bus was last cleared

enumerator kI3C_SlaveMatchedFlag
Slave address(dynamic/static) matched since last cleared

enumerator kI3C_SlaveBusStopFlag
Stop event is seen since the bus was last cleared

enumerator kI3C_SlaveRxReadyFlag
Rx data ready in rx buffer flag

enumerator kI3C_SlaveTxReadyFlag
Tx buffer ready for Tx data flag

enumerator kI3C_SlaveDynamicAddrChangedFlag
Slave dynamic address has been assigned, re-assigned, or lost

enumerator kI3C_SlaveReceivedCCCFlag
Slave received Common command code

enumerator kI3C_SlaveErrorFlag
Error occurred flag

enumerator kI3C_SlaveHDRCommandMatchFlag
High data rate command match

enumerator kI3C_SlaveCCCHandledFlag
Slave received Common command code is handled by I3C module

enumerator kI3C_SlaveEventSentFlag
Slave IBI/P2P/MR/HJ event has been sent

enumerator kI3C_SlaveIbiDisableFlag
Slave in band interrupt is disabled.

enumerator kI3C_SlaveMasterRequestDisabledFlag
Slave master request is disabled.

enumerator kI3C_SlaveHotJoinDisabledFlag
Slave Hot-Join is disabled.

enumerator kI3C_SlaveClearFlags
All flags which are cleared by the driver upon starting a transfer.

enumerator kI3C_SlaveAllIrqFlags

enum _i3c_slave_error_flags

I3C slave error flags to indicate the causes.

Note: These enums are meant to be OR'd together to form a bit mask.

Values:

enumerator kI3C_SlaveErrorOverrunFlag
Slave internal from-bus buffer/FIFO overrun.

enumerator kI3C_SlaveErrorUnderrunFlag
Slave internal to-bus buffer/FIFO underrun

enumerator kI3C_SlaveErrorUnderrunNakFlag
Slave internal from-bus buffer/FIFO underrun and NACK error

enumerator kI3C_SlaveErrorTermFlag
Terminate error from master

enumerator kI3C_SlaveErrorInvalidStartFlag
Slave invalid start flag

enumerator kI3C_SlaveErrorSdrParityFlag
SDR parity error

enumerator kI3C_SlaveErrorHdrParityFlag
HDR parity error

enumerator kI3C_SlaveErrorHdrCRCFlag
HDR-DDR CRC error

enumerator kI3C_SlaveErrorS0S1Flag
S0 or S1 error

enumerator kI3C_SlaveErrorOverreadFlag
Over-read error

enumerator kI3C_SlaveErrorOverwriteFlag
Over-write error

enum _i3c_slave_event

I3C slave.event.

Values:

enumerator kI3C_SlaveEventNormal
Normal mode.

enumerator kI3C_SlaveEventIBI
In band interrupt event.

enumerator kI3C_SlaveEventMasterReq
Master request event.

enumerator kI3C_SlaveEventHotJoinReq
Hot-join event.

enum _i3c_slave_activity_state

I3C slave.activity state.

Values:

enumerator kI3C_SlaveNoLatency
Normal bus operation

enumerator kI3C_SlaveLatency1Ms
1ms of latency.

enumerator kI3C_SlaveLatency100Ms
100ms of latency.

enumerator kI3C_SlaveLatency10S
10s latency.

enum _i3c_slave_transfer_event
Set of events sent to the callback for non blocking slave transfers.

These event enumerations are used for two related purposes. First, a bit mask created by OR'ing together events is passed to I3C_SlaveTransferNonBlocking() in order to specify which events to enable. Then, when the slave callback is invoked, it is passed the current event through its *transfer* parameter.

Note: These enumerations are meant to be OR'd together to form a bit mask of events.

Values:

enumerator kI3C_SlaveAddressMatchEvent
Received the slave address after a start or repeated start.

enumerator kI3C_SlaveTransmitEvent
Callback is requested to provide data to transmit (slave-transmitter role).

enumerator kI3C_SlaveReceiveEvent
Callback is requested to provide a buffer in which to place received data (slave-receiver role).

enumerator kI3C_SlaveRequiredTransmitEvent
Callback is requested to provide a buffer in which to place received data (slave-receiver role).

enumerator kI3C_SlaveStartEvent
A start/repeated start was detected.

enumerator kI3C_SlaveHDRCommandMatchEvent
Slave Match HDR Command.

enumerator kI3C_SlaveCompletionEvent
A stop was detected, completing the transfer.

enumerator kI3C_SlaveRequestSentEvent
Slave request event sent.

enumerator kI3C_SlaveReceivedCCCEvent
Slave received CCC event, need to handle by application.

enumerator kI3C_SlaveAllEvents
Bit mask of all available events.

typedef enum *_i3c_slave_event* i3c_slave_event_t
I3C slave.event.

typedef enum *_i3c_slave_activity_state* i3c_slave_activity_state_t
I3C slave.activity state.

typedef struct *_i3c_slave_config* i3c_slave_config_t

Structure with settings to initialize the I3C slave module.

This structure holds configuration settings for the I3C peripheral. To initialize this structure to reasonable defaults, call the I3C_SlaveGetDefaultConfig() function and pass a pointer to your configuration structure instance.

The configuration structure can be made constant so it resides in flash.

typedef enum *_i3c_slave_transfer_event* i3c_slave_transfer_event_t

Set of events sent to the callback for non blocking slave transfers.

These event enumerations are used for two related purposes. First, a bit mask created by OR'ing together events is passed to I3C_SlaveTransferNonBlocking() in order to specify which events to enable. Then, when the slave callback is invoked, it is passed the current event through its *transfer* parameter.

Note: These enumerations are meant to be OR'd together to form a bit mask of events.

typedef struct *_i3c_slave_transfer* i3c_slave_transfer_t

I3C slave transfer structure.

typedef struct *_i3c_slave_handle* i3c_slave_handle_t

typedef void (*i3c_slave_transfer_callback_t)(I3C_Type *base, *i3c_slave_transfer_t* *transfer, void *userData)

Slave event callback function pointer type.

This callback is used only for the slave non-blocking transfer API. To install a callback, use the I3C_SlaveSetCallback() function after you have created a handle.

Param base
Base address for the I3C instance on which the event occurred.

Param transfer
Pointer to transfer descriptor containing values passed to and/or from the callback.

Param userData
Arbitrary pointer-sized value passed from the application.

typedef void (*i3c_slave_isr_t)(I3C_Type *base, void *handle)

Typedef for slave interrupt handler.

struct i3c_slave_config

#include <fsl_i3c.h> Structure with settings to initialize the I3C slave module.

This structure holds configuration settings for the I3C peripheral. To initialize this structure to reasonable defaults, call the I3C_SlaveGetDefaultConfig() function and pass a pointer to your configuration structure instance.

The configuration structure can be made constant so it resides in flash.

Public Members

bool enableSlave

Whether to enable slave.

uint8_t staticAddr

Static address.

uint16_t vendorID
: Device vendor ID(manufacture ID).

uint32_t partNumber
: Device part number info

uint8_t dcr
: Device characteristics register information.

uint8_t bcr
: Bus characteristics register information.

uint8_t hdrMode
: Support hdr mode, could be OR logic in enumeration:i3c_hdr_mode_t.

bool nakAllRequest
: Whether to reply NAK to all requests except broadcast CCC.

bool ignoreS0S1Error
: Whether to ignore S0/S1 error in SDR mode.

bool offline
: Whether to wait 60 us of bus quiet or HDR request to ensure slave track SDR mode safely.

bool matchSlaveStartStop
: Whether to assert start/stop status only the time slave is addressed.

uint32_t maxWriteLength
: Maximum write length.

uint32_t maxReadLength
: Maximum read length.

struct __i3c_slave_transfer
: *#include <fsl_i3c.h>* I3C slave transfer structure.

Public Members

uint32_t event
: Reason the callback is being invoked.

uint8_t *txData
: Transfer buffer

size_t txDataSize
: Transfer size

uint8_t *rxData
: Transfer buffer

size_t rxDataSize
: Transfer size

status_t completionStatus
: Success or error code describing how the transfer completed. Only applies for kI3C_SlaveCompletionEvent.

size_t transferredCount
: Number of bytes actually transferred since start or last repeated start.

struct _i3c_slave_handle

#include <fsl_i3c.h> I3C slave handle structure.

Note: The contents of this structure are private and subject to change.

Public Members

i3c_slave_transfer_t transfer
I3C slave transfer copy.

bool isBusy
Whether transfer is busy.

bool wasTransmit
Whether the last transfer was a transmit.

uint32_t eventMask
Mask of enabled events.

uint32_t transferredCount
Count of bytes transferred.

i3c_slave_transfer_callback_t callback
Callback function called at transfer event.

void *userData
Callback parameter passed to callback.

size_t txFifoSize
Tx Fifo size

2.45 IAP Boot Driver

typedef struct *_iap_boot_option* iap_boot_option_t
IAP boot option.

void IAP_RunBootLoader(*iap_boot_option_t* *option)
Invoke into ROM with specified boot parameters.

Parameters

- option – Boot parameters. Refer to iap_boot_option_t.

IAP_BOOT_OPTION_TAG
IAP boot option tag

IAP_BOOT_OPTION_MODE_MASTER
IAP boot option mode

IAP_BOOT_OPTION_MODE_ISP

struct _iap_boot_option
#include <fsl_iap.h> IAP boot option.

union option

Public Members

struct *_iap_boot_option* B

uint32_t U

struct B

Public Members

uint32_t bootImageIndex
reserved field.

uint32_t instance
FlexSPI boot image index for FlexSPI NOR flash.

uint32_t bootInterface
Only used when boot interface is FlexSPI/SD/MMC.

uint32_t mode
RT500: 0: USART 2: SPI 3: USB HID 4:FlexSPI 6:SD 7:MMC. RT600: 0: USART 1: I2C 2: SPI 3: USB HID 4:FlexSPI 7:SD 8:MMC

2.46 IAP: In Application Programming Driver

FSL_IAP_DRIVER_VERSION
IAP driver version.

2.47 IAP FlexSPI Driver

FlexSPI Driver status group.

Values:

enumerator kStatusGroup_FlexSPI

enumerator kStatusGroup_FlexSPINOR

enum _flexspi_status
FlexSPI Driver status.

Values:

enumerator kStatus_FLEXSPI_Success
API is executed successfully

enumerator kStatus_FLEXSPI_Fail
API is executed fails

enumerator kStatus_FLEXSPI_InvalidArgument
Invalid argument

enumerator kStatus_FLEXSPI_SequenceExecutionTimeout
The FlexSPI Sequence Execution timeout

enumerator kStatus_FLEXSPI_InvalidSequence
The FlexSPI LUT sequence invalid

enumerator kStatus_FLEXSPI_DeviceTimeout
The FlexSPI device timeout

enumerator kStatus_FLEXSPINOR_ProgramFail
Status for Page programming failure

enumerator kStatus_FLEXSPINOR_EraseSectorFail
Status for Sector Erase failure

enumerator kStatus_FLEXSPINOR_EraseAllFail
Status for Chip Erase failure

enumerator kStatus_FLEXSPINOR_WaitTimeout
Status for timeout

enumerator kStatus_FLEXSPINOR_NotSupported

enumerator kStatus_FLEXSPINOR_WriteAlignmentError
Status for Alignement error

enumerator kStatus_FLEXSPINOR_CommandFailure
Status for Erase/Program Verify Error

enumerator kStatus_FLEXSPINOR_SFDP_NotFound
Status for SFDP read failure

enumerator kStatus_FLEXSPINOR_Unsupported_SFDP_Version
Status for Unrecognized SFDP version

enumerator kStatus_FLEXSPINOR_Flash_NotFound
Status for Flash detection failure

enumerator kStatus_FLEXSPINOR_DTRRead_DummyProbeFailed
Status for DDR Read dummy probe failure

Flash Configuration Option0 device_type.

Values:

enumerator kSerialNorCfgOption_Tag

enumerator kSerialNorCfgOption_DeviceType_ReadSFDP_SDR

enumerator kSerialNorCfgOption_DeviceType_ReadSFDP_DDR

enumerator kSerialNorCfgOption_DeviceType_HyperFLASH1V8

enumerator kSerialNorCfgOption_DeviceType_HyperFLASH3V0

enumerator kSerialNorCfgOption_DeviceType_MacronixOctalDDR

enumerator kSerialNorCfgOption_DeviceType_MacronixOctalSDR

enumerator kSerialNorCfgOption_DeviceType_MicronOctalDDR

enumerator kSerialNorCfgOption_DeviceType_MicronOctalSDR

enumerator kSerialNorCfgOption_DeviceType_AdestoOctalDDR

enumerator kSerialNorCfgOption_DeviceType_AdestoOctalSDR

Flash Configuration Option0 quad_mode_setting.

Values:

enumerator kSerialNorQuadMode_NotConfig

enumerator kSerialNorQuadMode_StatusReg1_Bit6

enumerator kSerialNorQuadMode_StatusReg2_Bit1

enumerator kSerialNorQuadMode_StatusReg2_Bit7

enumerator kSerialNorQuadMode_StatusReg2_Bit1_0x31

Flash Configuration Option0 misc_mode.

Values:

enumerator kSerialNorEnhanceMode_Disabled

enumerator kSerialNorEnhanceMode_0_4_4_Mode

enumerator kSerialNorEnhanceMode_0_8_8_Mode

enumerator kSerialNorEnhanceMode_DataOrderSwapped

enumerator kSerialNorEnhanceMode_2ndPinMux

FLEXSPI_RESET_PIN boot configurations in OTP.

Values:

enumerator kFlashResetLogic_Disabled

enumerator kFlashResetLogic_ResetPin

enumerator kFlashResetLogic_JedecHwReset

Flash Configuration Option1 flash_connection.

Values:

enumerator kSerialNorConnection_SinglePortA

enumerator kSerialNorConnection_Parallel

enumerator kSerialNorConnection_SinglePortB

enumerator kSerialNorConnection_BothPorts

Flash Device Mode Configuration Sequence.

Values:

enumerator kRestoreSequence_None

enumerator kRestoreSequence_HW_Reset

enumerator kRestoreSequence_4QPI_FF

enumerator kRestoreSequence_5QPI_FF

enumerator kRestoreSequence_8QPI_FF

enumerator kRestoreSequence_Send_F0

enumerator kRestoreSequence_Send_66_99

enumerator kRestoreSequence_Send_6699_9966

enumerator kRestoreSequence_Send_06_FF

Flash Config Mode Definition.

Values:

enumerator kFlashInstMode_ExtendedSpi

enumerator kFlashInstMode_0_4_4_SDR

enumerator kFlashInstMode_0_4_4_DDR

enumerator kFlashInstMode_QPI_SDR

enumerator kFlashInstMode_QPI_DDR

enumerator kFlashInstMode_OPI_SDR

enumerator kFlashInstMode_OPI_DDR

Flash Device Type Definition.

Values:

enumerator kFlexSpiDeviceType_SerialNOR
Flash devices are Serial NOR

enumerator kFlexSpiDeviceType_SerialNAND
Flash devices are Serial NAND

enumerator kFlexSpiDeviceType_SerialRAM
Flash devices are Serial RAM/HyperFLASH

enumerator kFlexSpiDeviceType_MCP_NOR_NAND
Flash device is MCP device, A1 is Serial NOR, A2 is Serial NAND

enumerator kFlexSpiDeviceType_MCP_NOR_RAM
Flash deivce is MCP device, A1 is Serial NOR, A2 is Serial RAMs

Flash Pad Definitions.

Values:

enumerator kSerialFlash_1Pad

enumerator kSerialFlash_2Pads

enumerator kSerialFlash_4Pads

enumerator kSerialFlash_8Pads

Flash Configuration Command Type.

Values:

enumerator kDeviceConfigCmdType_Generic
Generic command, for example: configure dummy cycles, drive strength, etc

enumerator kDeviceConfigCmdType_QuadEnable
Quad Enable command

enumerator kDeviceConfigCmdType_Spi2Xpi
Switch from SPI to DPI/QPI/OPI mode

enumerator kDeviceConfigCmdType_Xpi2Spi
Switch from DPI/QPI/OPI to SPI mode

enumerator kDeviceConfigCmdType_Spi2NoCmd
Switch to 0-4-4/0-8-8 mode

enumerator kDeviceConfigCmdType_Reset
Reset device command

enum _FlexSPIOperationType
FlexSPI Operation Type.

Values:

enumerator kFlexSpiOperation_Command
FlexSPI operation: Only command, both TX and

enumerator kFlexSpiOperation_Config
RX buffer are ignored. FlexSPI operation: Configure device mode, the

enumerator kFlexSpiOperation_Write
TX FIFO size is fixed in LUT. FlexSPI operation: Write, only TX buffer is

enumerator kFlexSpiOperation_Read
effective FlexSPI operation: Read, only Rx Buffer is

enumerator kFlexSpiOperation_End
effective.

typedef struct *_serial_nor_config_option* serial_nor_config_option_t
Serial NOR Configuration Option.

typedef struct *_lut_sequence* flexspi_lut_seq_t
FlexSPI LUT Sequence structure.

typedef struct *_FlexSPIConfig* flexspi_mem_config_block_t
FlexSPI Memory Configuration Block.

typedef enum *_FlexSPIOperationType* flexspi_operation_t
FlexSPI Operation Type.

typedef struct *_FlexSpiXfer* flexspi_xfer_t
FlexSPI Transfer Context.

typedef struct *_flexspi_nor_config* flexspi_nor_config_t
Serial NOR configuration block.

AT_QUICKACCESS_SECTION_CODE (status_t IAP_FlexspiNorInit(uint32_t instance, flexspi_nor_config_t *config))
Initialize Serial NOR devices via FlexSPI.

This function configures the FlexSPI controller with the arguments pointed by param config.

Parameters

- instance – FlexSPI controller instance, only support 0.
- config – The Flash configuration block. Refer to flexspi_nor_config_t.

Returns
The status flags. This is a member of the enumeration _flexspi_status

status_t IAP_FlexspiNorPageProgram(uint32_t instance, *flexspi_nor_config_t* *config, uint32_t dstAddr, const uint32_t *src)

Program data to Serial NOR via FlexSPI.

This function Program data to specified destination address.

Parameters

- instance – FlexSPI controller instance, only support 0.
- config – The Flash configuration block. Refer to flexspi_nor_config_t.
- dstAddr – The destination address to be programmed.
- src – Points to the buffer which hold the data to be programmed.

Returns
The status flags. This is a member of the enumeration _flexspi_status

status_t IAP_FlexspiNorEraseAll(uint32_t instance, *flexspi_nor_config_t* *config)

Erase all the Serial NOR devices connected on FlexSPI.

Parameters

- instance – FlexSPI controller instance, only support 0.
- config – The Flash configuration block. Refer to flexspi_nor_config_t.

Returns
The status flags. This is a member of the enumeration _flexspi_status

status_t IAP_FlexspiNorErase(uint32_t instance, *flexspi_nor_config_t* *config, uint32_t start, uint32_t length)

Erase Flash Region specified by address and length.

Parameters

- instance – FlexSPI controller instance, only support 0.
- config – The Flash configuration block. Refer to flexspi_nor_config_t.
- start – The start address to be erased.
- length – The length to be erased.

Returns
The status flags. This is a member of the enumeration _flexspi_status

status_t IAP_FlexspiNorEraseSector(uint32_t instance, *flexspi_nor_config_t* *config, uint32_t address)

Erase one sector specified by address.

Parameters

- instance – FlexSPI controller instance, only support 0.
- config – The Flash configuration block. Refer to flexspi_nor_config_t.
- address – The address of the sector to be erased.

Returns
The status flags. This is a member of the enumeration _flexspi_status

status_t IAP_FlexspiNorEraseBlock(uint32_t instance, *flexspi_nor_config_t* *config, uint32_t address)

Erase one block specified by address.

Parameters

- instance – FlexSPI controller instance, only support 0.
- config – The Flash configuration block. Refer to flexspi_nor_config_t.
- address – The address of the block to be erased.

Returns

The status flags. This is a member of the enumeration _flexspi_status

status_t IAP_FlexspiNorGetConfig(uint32_t instance, *flexspi_nor_config_t* *config, *serial_nor_config_option_t* *option)

Get FlexSPI NOR Configuration Block based on specified option.

Parameters

- instance – FlexSPI controller instance, only support 0.
- config – The Flash configuration block. Refer to flexspi_nor_config_t.
- option – The Flash Configuration Option block. Refer to serial_nor_config_option_t.

Returns

The status flags. This is a member of the enumeration _flexspi_status

status_t IAP_FlexspiNorRead(uint32_t instance, *flexspi_nor_config_t* *config, uint32_t *dst, uint32_t start, uint32_t bytes)

Read data from Flexspi NOR Flash.

Parameters

- instance – FlexSPI controller instance, only support 0.
- config – The Flash configuration block. Refer to flexspi_nor_config_t.
- dst – Buffer address used to store the read data.
- start – The Read address.
- bytes – The Read size

Returns

The status flags. This is a member of the enumeration _flexspi_status

status_t IAP_FlexspiXfer(uint32_t instance, *flexspi_xfer_t* *xfer)

Get FlexSPI Xfer data.

Parameters

- instance – FlexSPI controller instance, only support 0.
- xfer – The FlexSPI Transfer Context block. Refer to flexspi_xfer_t.

Returns

The status flags. This is a member of the enumeration _flexspi_status

status_t IAP_FlexspiUpdateLut(uint32_t instance, uint32_t seqIndex, const uint32_t *lutBase, uint32_t numberOfSeq)

Update FlexSPI Lookup table.

Parameters

- instance – FlexSPI controller instance, only support 0.
- seqIndex – The index of FlexSPI LUT to be updated.

- lutBase – Points to the buffer which hold the LUT data to be programmed.
- numberOfSeq – The number of LUT seq that need to be updated.

Returns
The status flags. This is a member of the enumeration _flexspi_status

status_t IAP_FlexspiSetClockSource(uint32_t clockSrc)

Set the clock source for FlexSPI.

Parameters

- clockSrc – Clock source for flexspi interface.

Returns
The status flags. This is a member of the enumeration _flexspi_status

void IAP_FlexspiConfigClock(uint32_t instance, uint32_t freqOption, uint32_t sampleClkMode)

Configure the flexspi interface clock frequency and data sample mode.

Parameters

- instance – FlexSPI controller instance, only support 0.
- freqOption – FlexSPI interface clock frequency selection.
- sampleClkMode – FlexSPI controller data sample mode.

Returns
The status flags. This is a member of the enumeration _flexspi_status

AT_QUICKACCESS_SECTION_CODE (status_t IAP_FlexspiNorAutoConfig(uint32_t instance, flexspi_nor_config_t *config, serial_nor_config_option_t *option))

Configure flexspi nor automatically.

Parameters

- instance – FlexSPI controller instance, only support 0.
- config – The Flash configuration block. Refer to flexspi_nor_config_t.
- option – The Flash Configuration Option block. Refer to serial_nor_config_option_t.

Returns
The status flags. This is a member of the enumeration _flexspi_status

NOR_CMD_INDEX_READ

FlexSPI LUT command.

0

NOR_CMD_INDEX_READSTATUS

1

NOR_CMD_INDEX_WRITEENABLE

2

NOR_CMD_INDEX_ERASESECTOR

3

NOR_CMD_INDEX_PAGEPROGRAM

4

NOR_CMD_INDEX_CHIPERASE

5

NOR_CMD_INDEX_DUMMY
6

NOR_CMD_INDEX_ERASEBLOCK
7

NOR_CMD_LUT_SEQ_IDX_READ
0 READ LUT sequence id in lookupTable stored in config block

NOR_CMD_LUT_SEQ_IDX_READSTATUS
1 Read Status LUT sequence id in lookupTable stored in config block

NOR_CMD_LUT_SEQ_IDX_READSTATUS_XPI
2 Read status DPI/QPI/OPI sequence id in lookupTable stored in config block

NOR_CMD_LUT_SEQ_IDX_WRITEENABLE
3 Write Enable sequence id in lookupTable stored in config block

NOR_CMD_LUT_SEQ_IDX_WRITEENABLE_XPI
4 Write Enable DPI/QPI/OPI sequence id in lookupTable stored in config block

NOR_CMD_LUT_SEQ_IDX_ERASESECTOR
5 Erase Sector sequence id in lookupTable stored in config block

NOR_CMD_LUT_SEQ_IDX_ERASEBLOCK
8 Erase Block sequence id in lookupTable stored in config block

NOR_CMD_LUT_SEQ_IDX_PAGEPROGRAM
9 Program sequence id in lookupTable stored in config block

NOR_CMD_LUT_SEQ_IDX_CHIPERASE
11 Chip Erase sequence in lookupTable id stored in config block

NOR_CMD_LUT_SEQ_IDX_READ_SFDP
13 Read SFDP sequence in lookupTable id stored in config block

NOR_CMD_LUT_SEQ_IDX_RESTORE_NOCMD
14 Restore 0-4-4/0-8-8 mode sequence id in lookupTable stored in config block

NOR_CMD_LUT_SEQ_IDX_EXIT_NOCMD
15 Exit 0-4-4/0-8-8 mode sequence id in lookupTable stored in config blobk

struct _serial_nor_config_option
#include <fsl_iap.h> Serial NOR Configuration Option.

union flash_run_context_t
#include <fsl_iap.h> Flash Run Context.

Public Members

struct *flash_run_context_t* B

uint32_t U

struct _lut_sequence
#include <fsl_iap.h> FlexSPI LUT Sequence structure.

Public Members

uint8_t seqNum

Sequence Number, valid number: 1-16

uint8_t seqId

Sequence Index, valid number: 0-15

struct flexspi_dll_time_t

#include <fsl_iap.h> FlexSPI Dll Time Block.

struct _FlexSPIConfig

#include <fsl_iap.h> FlexSPI Memory Configuration Block.

Public Members

uint32_t tag

[0x000-0x003] Tag, fixed value 0x42464346UL

uint32_t version

[0x004-0x007] Version,[31:24] -'V', [23:16] - Major, [15:8] - Minor, [7:0] - bugfix

uint32_t reserved0

[0x008-0x00b] Reserved for future use

uint8_t readSampleClkSrc

[0x00c-0x00c] Read Sample Clock Source, valid value: 0/1/3

uint8_t csHoldTime

[0x00d-0x00d] CS hold time, default value: 3

uint8_t csSetupTime

[0x00e-0x00e] CS setup time, default value: 3

uint8_t columnAddressWidth

[0x00f-0x00f] Column Address with, for HyperBus protocol, it is fixed to 3, For

uint8_t deviceModeCfgEnable

Serial NAND, need to refer to datasheet [0x010-0x010] Device Mode Configure enable flag, 1 - Enable, 0 - Disable

uint8_t deviceModeType

[0x011-0x011] Specify the configuration command type:Quad Enable, DPI/QPI/OPI switch,

uint16_t waitTimeCfgCommands

Generic configuration, etc. [0x012-0x013] Wait time for all configuration commands, unit: 100us, Used for

flexspi_lut_seq_t deviceModeSeq

DPI/QPI/OPI switch or reset command [0x014-0x017] Device mode sequence info, [7:0] - LUT sequence id, [15:8] - LUt

uint32_t deviceModeArg

sequence number, [31:16] Reserved [0x018-0x01b] Argument/Parameter for device configuration

uint8_t configCmdEnable

[0x01c-0x01c] Configure command Enable Flag, 1 - Enable, 0 - Disable

uint8_t configModeType[3]

[0x01d-0x01f] Configure Mode Type, similar as deviceModeTpe

flexspi_lut_seq_t configCmdSeqs[3]

[0x020-0x02b] Sequence info for Device Configuration command, similar as deviceModeSeq

uint32_t reserved1

[0x02c-0x02f] Reserved for future use

uint32_t configCmdArgs[3]

[0x030-0x03b] Arguments/Parameters for device Configuration commands

uint32_t reserved2

[0x03c-0x03f] Reserved for future use

uint32_t controllerMiscOption

[0x040-0x043] Controller Misc Options, see Misc feature bit definitions for more

uint8_t deviceType

details [0x044-0x044] Device Type: See Flash Type Definition for more details

uint8_t sflashPadType

[0x045-0x045] Serial Flash Pad Type: 1 - Single, 2 - Dual, 4 - Quad, 8 - Octal

uint8_t serialClkFreq

[0x046-0x046] Serial Flash Frequencey, device specific definitions, See System Boot

uint8_t lutCustomSeqEnable

Chapter for more details [0x047-0x047] LUT customization Enable, it is required if the program/erase cannot

uint32_t reserved3[2]

be done using 1 LUT sequence, currently, only applicable to HyperFLASH [0x048-0x04f] Reserved for future use

uint32_t sflashA1Size

[0x050-0x053] Size of Flash connected to A1

uint32_t sflashA2Size

[0x054-0x057] Size of Flash connected to A2

uint32_t sflashB1Size

[0x058-0x05b] Size of Flash connected to B1

uint32_t sflashB2Size

[0x05c-0x05f] Size of Flash connected to B2

uint32_t csPadSettingOverride

[0x060-0x063] CS pad setting override value

uint32_t sclkPadSettingOverride

[0x064-0x067] SCK pad setting override value

uint32_t dataPadSettingOverride

[0x068-0x06b] data pad setting override value

uint32_t dqsPadSettingOverride

[0x06c-0x06f] DQS pad setting override value

uint32_t timeoutInMs

[0x070-0x073] Timeout threshold for read status command

uint32_t commandInterval
: [0x074-0x077] CS deselect interval between two commands

flexspi_dll_time_t dataValidTime[2]
: [0x078-0x07b] CLK edge to data valid time for PORT A and PORT B

uint16_t busyOffset
: [0x07c-0x07d] Busy offset, valid value: 0-31

uint16_t busyBitPolarity
: [0x07e-0x07f] Busy flag polarity, 0 - busy flag is 1 when flash device is busy, 1 -

uint32_t lookupTable[64]
: busy flag is 0 when flash device is busy [0x080-0x17f] Lookup table holds Flash command sequences

flexspi_lut_seq_t lutCustomSeq[12]
: [0x180-0x1af] Customizable LUT Sequences

uint32_t reserved4[4]
: [0x1b0-0x1bf] Reserved for future use

struct _FlexSpiXfer
: *#include <fsl_iap.h>* FlexSPI Transfer Context.

Public Members

flexspi_operation_t operation
: FlexSPI operation

uint32_t baseAddress
: FlexSPI operation base address

uint32_t seqId
: Sequence Id

uint32_t seqNum
: Sequence Number

bool isParallelModeEnable
: Is a parallel transfer

uint32_t *txBuffer
: Tx buffer

uint32_t txSize
: Tx size in bytes

uint32_t *rxBuffer
: Rx buffer

uint32_t rxSize
: Rx size in bytes

struct _flexspi_nor_config
: *#include <fsl_iap.h>* Serial NOR configuration block.

Public Members

flexspi_mem_config_block_t memConfig
Common memory configuration info via FlexSPI

uint32_t pageSize
Page size of Serial NOR

uint32_t sectorSize
Sector size of Serial NOR

uint8_t ipcmdSerialClkFreq
Clock frequency for IP command

uint8_t isUniformBlockSize
Sector/Block size is the same

uint8_t isDataOrderSwapped
Data order (D0, D1, D2, D3) is swapped (D1,D0, D3, D2)

uint8_t reserved0[1]
Reserved for future use

uint8_t serialNorType
Serial NOR Flash type: 0/1/2/3

uint8_t needExitNoCmdMode
Need to exit NoCmd mode before other IP command

uint8_t halfClkForNonReadCmd
Half the Serial Clock for non-read command: true/false

uint8_t needRestoreNoCmdMode
Need to Restore NoCmd mode after IP commmand execution

uint32_t blockSize
Block size

uint32_t flashStateCtx
Flash State Context

uint32_t reserve2[10]
Reserved for future use

union option0

Public Members

struct *_serial_nor_config_option* B

uint32_t U

struct B

Public Members

uint32_t max_freq
Maximum supported Frequency

uint32_t misc_mode
miscellaneous mode

uint32_t quad_mode_setting
Quad mode setting

uint32_t cmd_pads
Command pads

uint32_t query_pads
SFDP read pads

uint32_t device_type
Device type

uint32_t option_size
Option size, in terms of uint32_t, size = (option_size + 1) * 4

uint32_t tag
Tag, must be 0x0C

union option1

Public Members

struct *_serial_nor_config_option* B

uint32_t U

struct B

Public Members

uint32_t dummy_cycles
Dummy cycles before read

uint32_t status_override
Override status register value during device mode configuration

uint32_t pinmux_group
The pinmux group selection

uint32_t dqs_pinmux_group
The DQS Pinmux Group Selection

uint32_t drive_strength
The Drive Strength of FlexSPI Pads

uint32_t flash_connection
Flash connection option: 0 - Single Flash connected to port A, 1 -

struct B

2.48 IAP OTP Driver

OTP Status Group.

Values:

enumerator kStatusGroup_OtpGroup

OTP Error Status definitions.

Values:

enumerator kStatus_OTP_InvalidAddress
Invalid OTP address

enumerator kStatus_OTP_ProgramFail
Program Fail

enumerator kStatus_OTP_CrcFail
CrcCheck Fail

enumerator kStatus_OTP_Error
Errors happened during OTP operation

enumerator kStatus_OTP_EccCheckFail
Ecc Check failed during OTP operation

enumerator kStatus_OTP_Locked
OTP Fuse field has been locked

enumerator kStatus_OTP_Timeout
OTP operation time out

enumerator kStatus_OTP_CrcCheckPass
OTP CRC Check Pass

status_t IAP_OtpInit(uint32_t src_clk_freq)
Initialize OTP controller.

This function enables OTP Controller clock.

Parameters

- src_clk_freq – The Frequency of the source clock of OTP controller

Returns
kStatus_Success

status_t IAP_OtpDeinit(void)
De-Initialize OTP controller.

This functin disables OTP Controller Clock.

Returns
kStatus_Success

status_t IAP_OtpFuseRead(uint32_t addr, uint32_t *data)
Read Fuse value from OTP Fuse Block.

This function read fuse data from OTP Fuse block to specified data buffer.

Parameters

- addr – Fuse address
- data – Buffer to hold the data read from OTP Fuse block

Returns
kStatus_Success - Data read from OTP Fuse block successfully kStatus_InvalidArgument - data pointer is invalid kStatus_OTP_EccCheckFail - Ecc Check Failed kStatus_OTP_Error - Other Errors

status_t IAP_OtpFuseProgram(uint32_t addr, uint32_t data, bool lock)

Program value to OTP Fuse block.

This function program data to specified OTP Fuse address.

Parameters

- addr – Fuse address
- data – data to be programmed into OTP Fuse block
- lock – lock the fuse field or not

Returns

kStatus_Success - Data has been programmed into OTP Fuse block successfully kStatus_OTP_ProgramFail - Fuse programming failed kStatus_OTP_Locked - The address to be programmed into is locked kStatus_OTP_Error - Other Errors

status_t IAP_OtpShadowRegisterReload(void)

Reload all shadow registers from OTP fuse block.

This function reloads all the shadow registers from OTP Fuse block

Returns

kStatus_Success - Shadow registers' reloadding succeeded. kStatus_OTP_EccCheckFail - Ecc Check Failed kStatus_OTP_Error - Other Errors

status_t IAP_OtpCrcCheck(uint32_t start_addr, uint32_t end_addr, uint32_t crc_addr)

Do CRC Check via OTP controller.

This function checks whether data in specified fuse address ranges match the crc value in the specified CRC address and return the actual crc value as needed.

Parameters

- start_addr – Start address of selected Fuse address range
- end_addr – End address of selected Fuse address range
- crc_addr – Address that hold CRC data

Returns

kStatus_Success CRC check succeeded, CRC value matched. kStatus_InvalidArgument - Invalid Argument kStatus_OTP_EccCheckFail Ecc Check Failed kStatus_OTP_CrcFail CRC Check Failed

status_t IAP_OtpCrcCalc(uint32_t *src, uint32_t numberOfWords, uint32_t *crcChecksum)

Calculate the CRC checksum for specified data for OTP.

This function calculates the CRC checksum for specified data for OTP

Parameters

- src – the source address of data
- numberOfWords – number of Fuse words
- crcChecksum – Buffer to store the CRC checksum

Returns

kStatus_Success CRC checksum is computed successfully. kStatus_InvalidArgument - Invalid Argument

2.49 INPUTMUX: Input Multiplexing Driver

FSL_INPUTMUX_DRIVER_VERSION

Group interrupt driver version for SDK.

enum _inputmux_connection_t

INPUTMUX connections type.

Values:

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Sct0PinInp0ToSct0

SCT INMUX.

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Sct0PinInp1ToSct0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Sct0PinInp2ToSct0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Sct0PinInp3ToSct0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Sct0PinInp4ToSct0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Sct0PinInp5ToSct0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Sct0PinInp6ToSct0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Sct0PinInp7ToSct0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer0Mat0ToSct0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer1Mat0ToSct0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer2Mat0ToSct0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer3Mat0ToSct0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer4Mat0ToSct0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_AdcIrqToSct0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioIntBmatchToSct0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Usb0FrameToggleToSct0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Cmp0OutToSct0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_SharedI2s0SclkToSct0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_SharedI2s1SclkToSct0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_SharedI2s0WsToSct0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_SharedI2s1WsToSct0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_MclkToSct0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_ArmTxevToSct0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_DebugHaltedToSct0

Pin Interrupt.

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin0ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin1ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin2ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin3ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin4ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin5ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin6ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin7ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin8ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin9ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin10ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin11ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin12ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin13ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin14ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin15ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin16ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin17ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin18ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin19ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin20ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin21ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin22ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin23ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin24ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin25ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin26ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin27ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin28ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin29ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin30ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin31ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin0ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin1ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin2ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin3ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin4ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin5ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin6ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin7ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin8ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin9ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin10ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin11ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin12ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin13ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin14ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin15ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin16ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin17ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin18ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin19ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin20ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin21ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin22ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin23ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin24ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin25ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin26ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin27ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin28ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin29ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin30ToPintsel

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin31ToPintsel

DSP Interrupt.

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm0ToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm1ToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm2ToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm3ToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm4ToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm5ToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm6ToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm7ToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm14ToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm16ToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioInt0ToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioInt1ToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioInt2ToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioInt3ToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioInt4ToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioInt5ToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioInt6ToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioInt7ToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_NsHsGpioInt0ToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_NsHsGpioInt1ToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Wdt1ToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac0ToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac1ToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_MuBToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Utick0ToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Mrt0ToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_OsEventTimerToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer0ToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer1ToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer2ToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer3ToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer4ToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_RtcToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_I3c0ToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_I3c1ToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmic0ToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_HwvadToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_LcdifToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpuToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_SmartDmaToDspInterrupt

enumerator kINPUTMUX_FlexioToDspInterrupt

Frequency measure.

enumerator kINPUTMUX_XtalinToFreqmeas

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Fro12mToFreqmeas

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Fro192mToFreqmeas

enumerator kINPUTMUX_LposcToFreqmeas

enumerator kINPUTMUX_32KhzOscToFreqmeas

enumerator kINPUTMUX_MainSysClkToFreqmeas

enumerator kINPUTMUX_FreqmeGpioClkToFreqmeas

enumerator kINPUTMUX_ClockOutToFreqmeas

SMARTDMA input mux.

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin0ToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin1ToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin2ToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin3ToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin4ToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin5ToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin6ToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin7ToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin0ToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin1ToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin2ToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin3ToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin4ToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin5ToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin6ToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioPort1Pin7ToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm0IrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm1IrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm2IrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm3IrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm4IrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm5IrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm6IrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm7IrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm14IrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm16IrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_I3c0IrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_I3c1IrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_FlexioIrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioInt0Irq0ToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioInt0Irq1ToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioInt0Irq2ToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioInt0Irq3ToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioInt0Irq4ToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioInt0Irq5ToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioInt0Irq6ToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioInt0Irq7ToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_NsGpioHsIrq0ToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_NsGpioHsIrq1ToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Sct0IrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer0IrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer1IrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer2IrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer3IrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer4IrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Utick0IrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Mrt0IrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_RtcLite0IrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_OsEventIrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Wdt0IrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Wdt1IrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Adc0IrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_AcmpIrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmic0ToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_HwvadToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Sdio0IrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Sdio1IrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Usb0IrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Usb0NeedClkToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_LcdifIrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpuIrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0IrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1IrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_PowerquadIrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_FlexspiIrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_DspTieExpstate1ToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_SctOut8ToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_SctOut9ToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_T4Mat3ToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_T4Mat2ToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_T3Mat3ToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_T3Mat2ToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_ArmTxevToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpiointBmatchToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_MipiIrqToSmartDmaInput

enumerator kINPUTMUX_UsbFsToggleToSmartDmaInput

CTmier0 capture input mux.

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp0ToTimer0CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp1ToTimer0CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp2ToTimer0CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp3ToTimer0CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp4ToTimer0CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp5ToTimer0CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp6ToTimer0CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp7ToTimer0CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp8ToTimer0CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp9ToTimer0CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp10ToTimer0CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp11ToTimer0CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp12ToTimer0CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp13ToTimer0CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp14ToTimer0CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp15ToTimer0CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_SharedI2s0WsToTimer0CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_SharedI2s1WsToTimer0CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Usb1FrameToggleToTimer0CaptureChannels

CTmier1 capture input mux.

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp0ToTimer1CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp1ToTimer1CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp2ToTimer1CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp3ToTimer1CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp4ToTimer1CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp5ToTimer1CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp6ToTimer1CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp7ToTimer1CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp8ToTimer1CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp9ToTimer1CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp10ToTimer1CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp11ToTimer1CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp12ToTimer1CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp13ToTimer1CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp14ToTimer1CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp15ToTimer1CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_SharedI2s0WsToTimer1CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_SharedI2s1WsToTimer1CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Usb1FrameToggleToTimer1CaptureChannels

CTmier2 capture input mux.

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp0ToTimer2CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp1ToTimer2CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp2ToTimer2CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp3ToTimer2CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp4ToTimer2CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp5ToTimer2CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp6ToTimer2CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp7ToTimer2CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp8ToTimer2CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp9ToTimer2CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp10ToTimer2CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp11ToTimer2CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp12ToTimer2CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp13ToTimer2CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp14ToTimer2CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp15ToTimer2CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_SharedI2s0WsToTimer2CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_SharedI2s1WsToTimer2CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Usb1FrameToggleToTimer2CaptureChannels

CTmier3 capture input mux.

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp0ToTimer3CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp1ToTimer3CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp2ToTimer3CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp3ToTimer3CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp4ToTimer3CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp5ToTimer3CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp6ToTimer3CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp7ToTimer3CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp8ToTimer3CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp9ToTimer3CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp10ToTimer3CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp11ToTimer3CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp12ToTimer3CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp13ToTimer3CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp14ToTimer3CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp15ToTimer3CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_SharedI2s0WsToTimer3CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_SharedI2s1WsToTimer3CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Usb1FrameToggleToTimer3CaptureChannels

CTmier4 capture input mux.

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp0ToTimer4CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp1ToTimer4CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp2ToTimer4CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp3ToTimer4CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp4ToTimer4CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp5ToTimer4CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp6ToTimer4CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp7ToTimer4CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp8ToTimer4CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp9ToTimer4CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp10ToTimer4CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp11ToTimer4CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp12ToTimer4CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp13ToTimer4CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp14ToTimer4CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_CtInp15ToTimer4CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_SharedI2s0WsToTimer4CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_SharedI2s1WsToTimer4CaptureChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Usb1FrameToggleToTimer4CaptureChannels

DMA0 ITRIG.

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioInt0ToDma0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioInt1ToDma0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioInt2ToDma0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioInt3ToDma0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer0M0ToDma0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer0M1ToDma0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer1M0ToDma0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer1M1ToDma0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer2M0ToDma0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer2M1ToDma0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer3M0ToDma0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer3M1ToDma0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer4M0ToDma0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer4M1ToDma0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0TrigOutAToDma0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0TrigOutBToDma0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0TrigOutCToDma0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0TrigOutDToDma0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_SctDma0ToDma0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_SctDma1ToDma0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_HashCryptOutToDma0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_AcmpToDma0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexspi0RxToDma0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexspi0TxToDma0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_AdcToDma0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexspi1RxToDma0

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexspi1TxToDma0

DMA1 ITRIG.

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioInt0ToDma1

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioInt1ToDma1

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioInt2ToDma1

enumerator kINPUTMUX_GpioInt3ToDma1

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer0M0ToDma1

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer0M1ToDma1

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer1M0ToDma1

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer1M1ToDma1

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer2M0ToDma1

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer2M1ToDma1

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer3M0ToDma1

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer3M1ToDma1

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer4M0ToDma1

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Ctimer4M1ToDma1

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0TrigOutAToDma1

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0TrigOutBToDma1

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0TrigOutCToDma1

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0TrigOutDToDma1

enumerator kINPUTMUX_SctDma0ToDma1

enumerator kINPUTMUX_SctDma1ToDma1

enumerator kINPUTMUX_HashCryptOutToDma1

enumerator kINPUTMUX_AcmpToDma1

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexspi0RxToDma1

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexspi0TxToDma1

enumerator kINPUTMUX_AdcToDma1

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexspi1RxToDma1

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexspi1TxToDma1

DMA0 OTRIG.

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel0ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel1ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel2ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel3ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel4ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel5ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel6ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel7ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel8ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel9ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel10ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel11ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel12ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel13ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel14ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel15ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel16ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel17ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel18ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel19ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel20ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel21ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel22ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel23ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel24ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel25ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel26ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel27ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel28ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel29ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel30ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel31ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel32ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel33ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel34ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel35ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma0OtrigChannel36ToTriginChannels
DMA1 OTRIG.

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel0ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel1ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel2ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel3ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel4ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel5ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel6ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel7ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel8ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel9ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel10ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel11ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel12ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel13ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel14ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel15ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel16ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel17ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel18ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel19ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel20ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel21ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel22ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel23ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel24ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel25ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel26ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel27ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel28ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel29ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel30ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel31ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel32ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel33ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel34ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel35ToTriginChannels

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dma1OtrigChannel36ToTriginChannels

enum _inputmux_signal_t

INPUTMUX signal enable/disable type.

Values:

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac0InputTriggerPint0Ena

DMA0 input trigger source enable.

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac0InputTriggerPint1Ena

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac0InputTriggerPint2Ena

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac0InputTriggerPint3Ena

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac0InputTriggerCtimer0M0Ena

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac0InputTriggerCtimer0M1Ena

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac0InputTriggerCtimer1M0Ena

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac0InputTriggerCtimer1M1Ena

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac0InputTriggerCtimer2M0Ena

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac0InputTriggerCtimer2M1Ena

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac0InputTriggerCtimer3M0Ena

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac0InputTriggerCtimer3M1Ena

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac0InputTriggerCtimer4M0Ena

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac0InputTriggerCtimer4M1Ena

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac0InputTriggerDma0OutAEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac0InputTriggerDma0OutBEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac0InputTriggerDma0OutCEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac0InputTriggerDma0OutDEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac0InputTriggerSctDmac0Ena

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac0InputTriggerSctDmac1Ena

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac0InputTriggerHashOutEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac0InputTriggerAcmpEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac0InputTriggerFlexspi0RxEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac0InputTriggerFlexspi0TxEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac0InputTriggerAdcEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac0InputTriggerFlexspi1RxEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac0InputTriggerFlexspi1TxEna

DMA1 input trigger source enable.

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac1InputTriggerPint0Ena

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac1InputTriggerPint1Ena

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac1InputTriggerPint2Ena

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac1InputTriggerPint3Ena

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac1InputTriggerCtimer0M0Ena

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac1InputTriggerCtimer0M1Ena

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac1InputTriggerCtimer1M0Ena

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac1InputTriggerCtimer1M1Ena

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac1InputTriggerCtimer2M0Ena

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac1InputTriggerCtimer2M1Ena

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac1InputTriggerCtimer3M0Ena

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac1InputTriggerCtimer3M1Ena

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac1InputTriggerCtimer4M0Ena

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac1InputTriggerCtimer4M1Ena

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac1InputTriggerDma1OutAEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac1InputTriggerDma1OutBEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac1InputTriggerDma1OutCEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac1InputTriggerDma1OutDEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac1InputTriggerSctDmac0Ena

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac1InputTriggerSctDmac1Ena

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac1InputTriggerHashOutEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac1InputTriggerAcmpEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac1InputTriggerFlexspi0RxEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac1InputTriggerFlexspi0TxEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac1InputTriggerAdcEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac1InputTriggerFlexspi1RxEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmac1InputTriggerFlexspi1TxEna
DMA0 REQ signal.

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm0RxToDmac0Ch0RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm0TxToDmac0Ch1RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm1RxToDmac0Ch2RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm1TxToDmac0Ch3RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm2RxToDmac0Ch4RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm2TxToDmac0Ch5RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm3RxToDmac0Ch6RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm3TxToDmac0Ch7RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm4RxToDmac0Ch8RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm4TxToDmac0Ch9RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm5RxToDmac0Ch10RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm5TxToDmac0Ch11RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm6RxToDmac0Ch12RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm6TxToDmac0Ch13RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm7RxToDmac0Ch14RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm7TxToDmac0Ch15RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmic0Ch0ToDmac0Ch16RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm8RxToDmac0Ch16RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmic0Ch1ToDmac0Ch17RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm8TxToDmac0Ch17RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmic0Ch2ToDmac0Ch18RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm9RxToDmac0Ch18RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmic0Ch3ToDmac0Ch19RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm9TxToDmac0Ch19RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmic0Ch4ToDmac0Ch20RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm10RxToDmac0Ch20RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmic0Ch5ToDmac0Ch21RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm10TxToDmac0Ch21RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmic0Ch6ToDmac0Ch22RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm13RxToDmac0Ch22RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmic0Ch7ToDmac0Ch23RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm13TxToDmac0Ch23RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_I3c0RxToDmac0Ch24RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_I3c0TxToDmac0Ch25RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm14RxToDmac0Ch26RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm14TxToDmac0Ch27RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm16RxToDmac0Ch28RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm16TxToDmac0Ch29RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_I3c1RxToDmac0Ch30RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_I3c1TxToDmac0Ch31RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm11RxToDmac0Ch32RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm11TxToDmac0Ch33RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm12RxToDmac0Ch34RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm12TxToDmac0Ch35RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_HashCryptToDmac0Ch36RequestEna
DMA1 REQ signal.

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm0RxToDmac1Ch0RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm0TxToDmac1Ch1RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm1RxToDmac1Ch2RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm1TxToDmac1Ch3RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm2RxToDmac1Ch4RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm2TxToDmac1Ch5RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm3RxToDmac1Ch6RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm3TxToDmac1Ch7RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm4RxToDmac1Ch8RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm4TxToDmac1Ch9RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm5RxToDmac1Ch10RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm5TxToDmac1Ch11RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm6RxToDmac1Ch12RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm6TxToDmac1Ch13RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm7RxToDmac1Ch14RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm7TxToDmac1Ch15RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmic0Ch0ToDmac1Ch16RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm8RxToDmac1Ch16RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmic0Ch1ToDmac1Ch17RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm8TxToDmac1Ch17RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmic0Ch2ToDmac1Ch18RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm9RxToDmac1Ch18RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmic0Ch3ToDmac1Ch19RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm9TxToDmac1Ch19RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmic0Ch4ToDmac1Ch20RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm10RxToDmac1Ch20RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmic0Ch5ToDmac1Ch21RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm10TxToDmac1Ch21RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmic0Ch6ToDmac1Ch22RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm13RxToDmac1Ch22RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Dmic0Ch7ToDmac1Ch23RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm13TxToDmac1Ch23RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_I3c0RxToDmac1Ch24RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_I3c0TxToDmac1Ch25RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm14RxToDmac1Ch26RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm14TxToDmac1Ch27RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm16RxToDmac1Ch28RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm16TxToDmac1Ch29RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_I3c1RxToDmac1Ch30RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_I3c1TxToDmac1Ch31RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm11RxToDmac1Ch32RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm11TxToDmac1Ch33RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm12RxToDmac1Ch34RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_Flexcomm12TxToDmac1Ch35RequestEna

enumerator kINPUTMUX_HashCryptToDmac1Ch36RequestEna

typedef enum *_inputmux_connection_t* inputmux_connection_t

INPUTMUX connections type.

typedef enum *_inputmux_signal_t* inputmux_signal_t

INPUTMUX signal enable/disable type.

void INPUTMUX_Init(void *base)

Initialize INPUTMUX peripheral.

This function enables the INPUTMUX clock.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the INPUTMUX peripheral.

Return values

None. –

void INPUTMUX_AttachSignal(void *base, uint16_t index, *inputmux_connection_t* connection)

Attaches a signal.

This function attaches multiplexed signals from INPUTMUX to target signals. For example, to attach GPIO PORT0 Pin 5 to PINT peripheral, do the following:

```
INPUTMUX_AttachSignal(INPUTMUX, 2, kINPUTMUX_GpioPort0Pin5ToPintsel);
```

In this example, INTMUX has 8 registers for PINT, PINT_SEL0~PINT_SEL7. With parameter index specified as 2, this function configures register PINT_SEL2.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the INPUTMUX peripheral.
- index – The serial number of destination register in the group of INPUTMUX registers with same name.
- connection – Applies signal from source signals collection to target signal.

Return values

None. –

void INPUTMUX_EnableSignal(void *base, *inputmux_signal_t* signal, bool enable)

Enable/disable a signal.

This function gates the INPUTPMUX clock.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the INPUTMUX peripheral.
- signal – Enable signal register id and bit offset.
- enable – Selects enable or disable.

Return values

None. –

void INPUTMUX_Deinit(void *base)

Deinitialize INPUTMUX peripheral.

This function disables the INPUTMUX clock.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the INPUTMUX peripheral.

Return values

None. –

SCT0_PMUX_ID

Periphinmux IDs.

PINTSEL_PMUX_ID

DSP_INT_PMUX_ID

DMA0_ITRIG_PMUX_ID

DMA0_OTRIG_PMUX_ID

DMA0_CHMUX_SEL0_ID

DMA1_ITRIG_PMUX_ID

DMA1_OTRIG_PMUX_ID

DMA1_CHMUX_SEL0_ID

CT32BIT0_CAP_PMUX_ID

CT32BIT1_CAP_PMUX_ID

CT32BIT2_CAP_PMUX_ID

CT32BIT3_CAP_PMUX_ID

CT32BIT4_CAP_PMUX_ID

FREQMEAS_PMUX_ID

SMART_DMA_PMUX_ID

DMA0_REQ_ENA0_ID

DMA1_REQ_ENA0_ID

DMA0_ITRIG_EN0_ID

DMA1_ITRIG_EN0_ID

ENA_SHIFT

PMUX_SHIFT

CHMUX_AVL_SHIFT

CHMUX_OFF_SHIFT

CHMUX_VAL_SHIFT

2.50 IOPCTL: Input/Output Pad Controller

LPC_IOPCTL_DRIVER_VERSION

IOPCTL driver version 2.0.0.

typedef struct *_iopctl_group* iopctl_group_t

Array of IOPCTL pin definitions passed to IOPCTL_SetPinMuxing() must be in this format.

__STATIC_INLINE void IOPCTL_PinMuxSet (IOPCTL_Type *base, uint8_t port, uint8_t pin, uint32_t modefunc)

Sets I/O Pad Control pin mux.

Parameters

- base – : The base of IOPCTL peripheral on the chip
- port – : Port to mux
- pin – : Pin to mux
- modefunc – : OR'ed values of type IOPCTL_*

Returns

Nothing

__STATIC_INLINE void IOPCTL_SetPinMuxing (IOPCTL_Type *base, const iopctl_group_t *pinArray, uint32_t arrayLength)

Set all I/O Control pin muxing.

Parameters

- base – : The base of IOPCTL peripheral on the chip
- pinArray – : Pointer to array of pin mux selections
- arrayLength – : Number of entries in pinArray

Returns

Nothing

FSL_COMPONENT_ID

IOPCTL_FUNC0

IOPCTL function and mode selection definitions.

Note: See the User Manual for specific modes and functions supported by the various pins.
Selects pin function 0

IOPCTL_FUNC1

Selects pin function 1

IOPCTL_FUNC2

Selects pin function 2

IOPCTL_FUNC3

Selects pin function 3

IOPCTL_FUNC4

Selects pin function 4

IOPCTL_FUNC5

Selects pin function 5

IOPCTL_FUNC6
: Selects pin function 6

IOPCTL_FUNC7
: Selects pin function 7

IOPCTL_FUNC8
: Selects pin function 8

IOPCTL_FUNC9
: Selects pin function 9

IOPCTL_FUNC10
: Selects pin function 10

IOPCTL_FUNC11
: Selects pin function 11

IOPCTL_FUNC12
: Selects pin function 12

IOPCTL_FUNC13
: Selects pin function 13

IOPCTL_FUNC14
: Selects pin function 14

IOPCTL_FUNC15
: Selects pin function 15

IOPCTL_PUPD_EN
: Enables Pullup / Pulldown

IOPCTL_PULLDOWN_EN
: Selects pull-down function

IOPCTL_PULLUP_EN
: Selects pull-up function

IOPCTL_INBUF_EN
: Enables buffer function on input

IOPCTL_SLEW_RATE
: Slew Rate Control

IOPCTL_FULLDRIVE_EN
: Selects full drive

IOPCTL_ANAMUX_EN
: Enables analog mux function by setting 0 to bit 7

IOPCTL_PSEDRAIN_EN
: Enables pseudo output drain function

IOPCTL_INV_EN
: Enables invert function on input

struct _iopctl_group
: *#include <fsl_iopctl.h>* Array of IOPCTL pin definitions passed to IOPCTL_SetPinMuxing() must be in this format.

2.51 Common Driver

FSL_COMMON_DRIVER_VERSION
: common driver version.

DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_NONE
: No debug console.

DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_UART
: Debug console based on UART.

DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_LPUART
: Debug console based on LPUART.

DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_LPSCI
: Debug console based on LPSCI.

DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_USBCDC
: Debug console based on USBCDC.

DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_FLEXCOMM
: Debug console based on FLEXCOMM.

DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_IUART
: Debug console based on i.MX UART.

DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_VUSART
: Debug console based on LPC_VUSART.

DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_MINI_USART
: Debug console based on LPC_USART.

DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_SWO
: Debug console based on SWO.

DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_QSCI
: Debug console based on QSCI.

MIN(a, b)
: Computes the minimum of *a* and *b*.

MAX(a, b)
: Computes the maximum of *a* and *b*.

UINT16_MAX
: Max value of uint16_t type.

UINT32_MAX
: Max value of uint32_t type.

SDK_ATOMIC_LOCAL_ADD(addr, val)
: Add value *val* from the variable at address *address*.

SDK_ATOMIC_LOCAL_SUB(addr, val)
: Subtract value *val* to the variable at address *address*.

SDK_ATOMIC_LOCAL_SET(addr, bits)
: Set the bits specifiled by *bits* to the variable at address *address*.

SDK_ATOMIC_LOCAL_CLEAR(addr, bits)
: Clear the bits specifiled by *bits* to the variable at address *address*.

SDK_ATOMIC_LOCAL_TOGGLE(addr, bits)

Toggle the bits specifiled by *bits* to the variable at address *address*.

SDK_ATOMIC_LOCAL_CLEAR_AND_SET(addr, clearBits, setBits)

For the variable at address *address*, clear the bits specifiled by *clearBits* and set the bits specifiled by *setBits*.

SDK_ATOMIC_LOCAL_COMPARE_AND_SET(addr, expected, newValue)

For the variable at address *address*, check whether the value equal to *expected*. If value same as *expected* then update *newValue* to address and return **true** , else return **false** .

SDK_ATOMIC_LOCAL_TEST_AND_SET(addr, newValue)

For the variable at address *address*, set as *newValue* value and return old value.

USEC_TO_COUNT(us, clockFreqInHz)

Macro to convert a microsecond period to raw count value

COUNT_TO_USEC(count, clockFreqInHz)

Macro to convert a raw count value to microsecond

MSEC_TO_COUNT(ms, clockFreqInHz)

Macro to convert a millisecond period to raw count value

COUNT_TO_MSEC(count, clockFreqInHz)

Macro to convert a raw count value to millisecond

SDK_ISR_EXIT_BARRIER

SDK_SIZEALIGN(var, alignbytes)

Macro to define a variable with L1 d-cache line size alignment

Macro to define a variable with L2 cache line size alignment

Macro to change a value to a given size aligned value

AT_NONCACHEABLE_SECTION(var)

Define a variable *var*, and place it in non-cacheable section.

AT_NONCACHEABLE_SECTION_ALIGN(var, alignbytes)

Define a variable *var*, and place it in non-cacheable section, the start address of the variable is aligned to *alignbytes*.

AT_NONCACHEABLE_SECTION_INIT(var)

Define a variable *var* with initial value, and place it in non-cacheable section.

AT_NONCACHEABLE_SECTION_ALIGN_INIT(var, alignbytes)

Define a variable *var* with initial value, and place it in non-cacheable section, the start address of the variable is aligned to *alignbytes*.

enum _status_groups

Status group numbers.

Values:

enumerator kStatusGroup_Generic

Group number for generic status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_FLASH

Group number for FLASH status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_LPSPI

Group number for LPSPI status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_FLEXIO_SPI
Group number for FLEXIO SPI status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_DSPI
Group number for DSPI status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_FLEXIO_UART
Group number for FLEXIO UART status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_FLEXIO_I2C
Group number for FLEXIO I2C status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_LPI2C
Group number for LPI2C status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_UART
Group number for UART status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_I2C
Group number for UART status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_LPSCI
Group number for LPSCI status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_LPUART
Group number for LPUART status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_SPI
Group number for SPI status code.

enumerator kStatusGroup_XRDC
Group number for XRDC status code.

enumerator kStatusGroup_SEMA42
Group number for SEMA42 status code.

enumerator kStatusGroup_SDHC
Group number for SDHC status code

enumerator kStatusGroup_SDMMC
Group number for SDMMC status code

enumerator kStatusGroup_SAI
Group number for SAI status code

enumerator kStatusGroup_MCG
Group number for MCG status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_SCG
Group number for SCG status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_SDSPI
Group number for SDSPI status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_FLEXIO_I2S
Group number for FLEXIO I2S status codes

enumerator kStatusGroup_FLEXIO_MCULCD
Group number for FLEXIO LCD status codes

enumerator kStatusGroup_FLASHIAP
Group number for FLASHIAP status codes

enumerator kStatusGroup_FLEXCOMM_I2C
Group number for FLEXCOMM I2C status codes

enumerator kStatusGroup_I2S
Group number for I2S status codes

enumerator kStatusGroup_IUART
Group number for IUART status codes

enumerator kStatusGroup_CSI
Group number for CSI status codes

enumerator kStatusGroup_MIPI_DSI
Group number for MIPI DSI status codes

enumerator kStatusGroup_SDRAMC
Group number for SDRAMC status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_POWER
Group number for POWER status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_ENET
Group number for ENET status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_PHY
Group number for PHY status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_TRGMUX
Group number for TRGMUX status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_SMARTCARD
Group number for SMARTCARD status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_LMEM
Group number for LMEM status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_QSPI
Group number for QSPI status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_DMA
Group number for DMA status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_EDMA
Group number for EDMA status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_DMAMGR
Group number for DMAMGR status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_FLEXCAN
Group number for FlexCAN status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_LTC
Group number for LTC status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_FLEXIO_CAMERA
Group number for FLEXIO CAMERA status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_LPC_SPI
Group number for LPC_SPI status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_LPC_USART
Group number for LPC_USART status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_DMIC
Group number for DMIC status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_SDIF
Group number for SDIF status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_SPIFI
Group number for SPIFI status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_OTP
Group number for OTP status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_MCAN
Group number for MCAN status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_CAAM
Group number for CAAM status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_ECSPI
Group number for ECSPI status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_USDHC
Group number for USDHC status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_LPC_I2C
Group number for LPC_I2C status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_DCP
Group number for DCP status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_MSCAN
Group number for MSCAN status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_ESAI
Group number for ESAI status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_FLEXSPI
Group number for FLEXSPI status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_MMDC
Group number for MMDC status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_PDM
Group number for MIC status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_SDMA
Group number for SDMA status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_ICS
Group number for ICS status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_SPDIF
Group number for SPDIF status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_LPC_MINISPI
Group number for LPC_MINISPI status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_HASHCRYPT
Group number for Hashcrypt status codes

enumerator kStatusGroup_LPC_SPI_SSP
Group number for LPC_SPI_SSP status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_I3C
Group number for I3C status codes

enumerator kStatusGroup_LPC_I2C_1
Group number for LPC_I2C_1 status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_NOTIFIER
Group number for NOTIFIER status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_DebugConsole
Group number for debug console status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_SEMC
Group number for SEMC status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_ApplicationRangeStart
Starting number for application groups.

enumerator kStatusGroup_IAP
Group number for IAP status codes

enumerator kStatusGroup_SFA
Group number for SFA status codes

enumerator kStatusGroup_SPC
Group number for SPC status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_PUF
Group number for PUF status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_TOUCH_PANEL
Group number for touch panel status codes

enumerator kStatusGroup_VBAT
Group number for VBAT status codes

enumerator kStatusGroup_XSPI
Group number for XSPI status codes

enumerator kStatusGroup_PNGDEC
Group number for PNGDEC status codes

enumerator kStatusGroup_JPEGDEC
Group number for JPEGDEC status codes

enumerator kStatusGroup_AUDMIX
Group number for AUDMIX status codes

enumerator kStatusGroup_HAL_GPIO
Group number for HAL GPIO status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_HAL_UART
Group number for HAL UART status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_HAL_TIMER
Group number for HAL TIMER status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_HAL_SPI
Group number for HAL SPI status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_HAL_I2C
Group number for HAL I2C status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_HAL_FLASH
Group number for HAL FLASH status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_HAL_PWM
Group number for HAL PWM status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_HAL_RNG
Group number for HAL RNG status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_HAL_I2S
Group number for HAL I2S status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_HAL_ADC_SENSOR
Group number for HAL ADC SENSOR status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_TIMERMANAGER
Group number for TiMER MANAGER status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_SERIALMANAGER
Group number for SERIAL MANAGER status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_LED
Group number for LED status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_BUTTON
Group number for BUTTON status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_EXTERN_EEPROM
Group number for EXTERN EEPROM status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_SHELL
Group number for SHELL status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_MEM_MANAGER
Group number for MEM MANAGER status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_LIST
Group number for List status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_OSA
Group number for OSA status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_COMMON_TASK
Group number for Common task status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_MSG
Group number for messaging status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_SDK_OCOTP
Group number for OCOTP status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_SDK_FLEXSPINOR
Group number for FLEXSPINOR status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_CODEC
Group number for codec status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_ASRC
Group number for codec status ASRC.

enumerator kStatusGroup_OTFAD
Group number for codec status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_SDIOSLV
Group number for SDIOSLV status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_MECC
Group number for MECC status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_ENET_QOS
Group number for ENET_QOS status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_LOG
Group number for LOG status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_I3CBUS
Group number for I3CBUS status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_QSCI
Group number for QSCI status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_ELEMU
Group number for ELEMU status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_QUEUEDSPI
Group number for QSPI status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_POWER_MANAGER
Group number for POWER_MANAGER status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_IPED
Group number for IPED status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_ELS_PKC
Group number for ELS PKC status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_CSS_PKC
Group number for CSS PKC status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_HOSTIF
Group number for HOSTIF status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_CLIF
Group number for CLIF status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_BMA
Group number for BMA status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_NETC
Group number for NETC status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_ELE
Group number for ELE status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_GLIKEY
Group number for GLIKEY status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_AON_POWER
Group number for AON_POWER status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_AON_COMMON
Group number for AON_COMMON status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_ENDAT3
Group number for ENDAT3 status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_HIPERFACE
Group number for HIPERFACE status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_NPX
Group number for NPX status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_ELA_CSEC
Group number for ELA_CSEC status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_FLEXIO_T_FORMAT
Group number for T-format status codes.

enumerator kStatusGroup_FLEXIO_A_FORMAT
Group number for A-format status codes.

Generic status return codes.

Values:

enumerator kStatus_Success
Generic status for Success.

enumerator kStatus_Fail
Generic status for Fail.

enumerator kStatus_ReadOnly
Generic status for read only failure.

enumerator kStatus_OutOfRange
Generic status for out of range access.

enumerator kStatus_InvalidArgument
Generic status for invalid argument check.

enumerator kStatus_Timeout
Generic status for timeout.

enumerator kStatus_NoTransferInProgress
Generic status for no transfer in progress.

enumerator kStatus_Busy
Generic status for module is busy.

enumerator kStatus_NoData
Generic status for no data is found for the operation.

typedef int32_t status_t
Type used for all status and error return values.

void *SDK_Malloc(size_t size, size_t alignbytes)
Allocate memory with given alignment and aligned size.

This is provided to support the dynamically allocated memory used in cache-able region.

Parameters

- size – The length required to malloc.
- alignbytes – The alignment size.

Return values
The – allocated memory.

void SDK_Free(void *ptr)

Free memory.

Parameters

- ptr – The memory to be release.

void SDK_DelayAtLeastUs(uint32_t delayTime_us, uint32_t coreClock_Hz)

Delay at least for some time. Please note that, this API uses while loop for delay, different run-time environments make the time not precise, if precise delay count was needed, please implement a new delay function with hardware timer.

Parameters

- delayTime_us – Delay time in unit of microsecond.
- coreClock_Hz – Core clock frequency with Hz.

static inline *status_t* EnableIRQ(IRQn_Type interrupt)

Enable specific interrupt.

Enable LEVEL1 interrupt. For some devices, there might be multiple interrupt levels. For example, there are NVIC and intmux. Here the interrupts connected to NVIC are the LEVEL1 interrupts, because they are routed to the core directly. The interrupts connected to intmux are the LEVEL2 interrupts, they are routed to NVIC first then routed to core.

This function only enables the LEVEL1 interrupts. The number of LEVEL1 interrupts is indicated by the feature macro FSL_FEATURE_NUMBER_OF_LEVEL1_INT_VECTORS.

Parameters

- interrupt – The IRQ number.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Interrupt enabled successfully
- kStatus_Fail – Failed to enable the interrupt

static inline *status_t* DisableIRQ(IRQn_Type interrupt)

Disable specific interrupt.

Disable LEVEL1 interrupt. For some devices, there might be multiple interrupt levels. For example, there are NVIC and intmux. Here the interrupts connected to NVIC are the LEVEL1 interrupts, because they are routed to the core directly. The interrupts connected to intmux are the LEVEL2 interrupts, they are routed to NVIC first then routed to core.

This function only disables the LEVEL1 interrupts. The number of LEVEL1 interrupts is indicated by the feature macro FSL_FEATURE_NUMBER_OF_LEVEL1_INT_VECTORS.

Parameters

- interrupt – The IRQ number.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Interrupt disabled successfully
- kStatus_Fail – Failed to disable the interrupt

static inline *status_t* EnableIRQWithPriority(IRQn_Type interrupt, uint8_t priNum)

Enable the IRQ, and also set the interrupt priority.

Only handle LEVEL1 interrupt. For some devices, there might be multiple interrupt levels. For example, there are NVIC and intmux. Here the interrupts connected to NVIC are the LEVEL1 interrupts, because they are routed to the core directly. The interrupts connected to intmux are the LEVEL2 interrupts, they are routed to NVIC first then routed to core.

This function only handles the LEVEL1 interrupts. The number of LEVEL1 interrupts is indicated by the feature macro FSL_FEATURE_NUMBER_OF_LEVEL1_INT_VECTORS.

Parameters

- interrupt – The IRQ to Enable.
- priNum – Priority number set to interrupt controller register.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Interrupt priority set successfully
- kStatus_Fail – Failed to set the interrupt priority.

static inline *status_t* IRQ_SetPriority(IRQn_Type interrupt, uint8_t priNum)

Set the IRQ priority.

Only handle LEVEL1 interrupt. For some devices, there might be multiple interrupt levels. For example, there are NVIC and intmux. Here the interrupts connected to NVIC are the LEVEL1 interrupts, because they are routed to the core directly. The interrupts connected to intmux are the LEVEL2 interrupts, they are routed to NVIC first then routed to core.

This function only handles the LEVEL1 interrupts. The number of LEVEL1 interrupts is indicated by the feature macro FSL_FEATURE_NUMBER_OF_LEVEL1_INT_VECTORS.

Parameters

- interrupt – The IRQ to set.
- priNum – Priority number set to interrupt controller register.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Interrupt priority set successfully
- kStatus_Fail – Failed to set the interrupt priority.

static inline *status_t* IRQ_ClearPendingIRQ(IRQn_Type interrupt)

Clear the pending IRQ flag.

Only handle LEVEL1 interrupt. For some devices, there might be multiple interrupt levels. For example, there are NVIC and intmux. Here the interrupts connected to NVIC are the LEVEL1 interrupts, because they are routed to the core directly. The interrupts connected to intmux are the LEVEL2 interrupts, they are routed to NVIC first then routed to core.

This function only handles the LEVEL1 interrupts. The number of LEVEL1 interrupts is indicated by the feature macro FSL_FEATURE_NUMBER_OF_LEVEL1_INT_VECTORS.

Parameters

- interrupt – The flag which IRQ to clear.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Interrupt priority set successfully
- kStatus_Fail – Failed to set the interrupt priority.

static inline uint32_t DisableGlobalIRQ(void)

Disable the global IRQ.

Disable the global interrupt and return the current primask register. User is required to provided the primask register for the EnableGlobalIRQ().

Returns
Current primask value.

static inline void EnableGlobalIRQ(uint32_t primask)

Enable the global IRQ.

Set the primask register with the provided primask value but not just enable the primask. The idea is for the convenience of integration of RTOS. some RTOS get its own management

mechanism of primask. User is required to use the EnableGlobalIRQ() and DisableGlobalIRQ() in pair.

Parameters

- primask – value of primask register to be restored. The primask value is supposed to be provided by the DisableGlobalIRQ().

static inline bool _SDK_AtomicLocalCompareAndSet(uint32_t *addr, uint32_t expected, uint32_t newValue)

static inline uint32_t _SDK_AtomicTestAndSet(uint32_t *addr, uint32_t newValue)

FSL_DRIVER_TRANSFER_DOUBLE_WEAK_IRQ

Macro to use the default weak IRQ handler in drivers.

MAKE_STATUS(group, code)

Construct a status code value from a group and code number.

MAKE_VERSION(major, minor, bugfix)

Construct the version number for drivers.

The driver version is a 32-bit number, for both 32-bit platforms(such as Cortex M) and 16-bit platforms(such as DSC).

```
| Unused    || Major Version || Minor Version ||  Bug Fix    |
31       25  24          17  16          9  8           0
```

ARRAY_SIZE(x)

Computes the number of elements in an array.

UINT64_H(X)

Macro to get upper 32 bits of a 64-bit value

UINT64_L(X)

Macro to get lower 32 bits of a 64-bit value

SUPPRESS_FALL_THROUGH_WARNING()

For switch case code block, if case section ends without "break;" statement, there wil be fallthrough warning with compiler flag -Wextra or -Wimplicit-fallthrough=n when using armgcc. To suppress this warning, "SUPPRESS_FALL_THROUGH_WARNING();" need to be added at the end of each case section which misses "break;"statement.

MSDK_REG_SECURE_ADDR(x)

Convert the register address to the one used in secure mode.

MSDK_REG_NONSECURE_ADDR(x)

Convert the register address to the one used in non-secure mode.

MSDK_INVALID_IRQ_HANDLER

Invalid IRQ handler address.

2.52 LCDIF: LCD interface

status_t LCDIF_Init(LCDIF_Type *base)

Initialize the LCDIF.

This function initializes the LCDIF to work.

Parameters

- base – LCDIF peripheral base address.

Return values

kStatus_Success – Initialize successfully.

void LCDIF_Deinit(LCDIF_Type *base)

De-initialize the LCDIF.

This function disables the LCDIF peripheral clock.

Parameters

- base – LCDIF peripheral base address.

void LCDIF_DpiModeGetDefaultConfig(*lcdif_dpi_config_t* *config)

Get the default configuration for to initialize the LCDIF.

The default configuration value is:

```
config->panelWidth = 0;
config->panelHeight = 0;
config->hsw = 0;
config->hfp = 0;
config->hbp = 0;
config->vsw = 0;
config->vfp = 0;
config->vbp = 0;
config->polarityFlags = kLCDIF_VsyncActiveLow | kLCDIF_HsyncActiveLow | kLCDIF_
↪DataEnableActiveHigh |
kLCDIF_DriveDataOnFallingClkEdge; config->format = kLCDIF_Output24Bit;
```

Parameters

- config – Pointer to the LCDIF configuration.

status_t LCDIF_DpiModeSetConfig(LCDIF_Type *base, uint8_t displayIndex, const *lcdif_dpi_config_t* *config)

Initialize the LCDIF to work in DPI mode.

This function configures the LCDIF DPI display.

Parameters

- base – LCDIF peripheral base address.
- displayIndex – Display index.
- config – Pointer to the configuration structure.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Initialize successfully.
- kStatus_InvalidArgument – Initialize failed because of invalid argument.

status_t LCDIF_DbiModeSetConfig(LCDIF_Type *base, uint8_t displayIndex, const *lcdif_dbi_config_t* *config)

Initialize the LCDIF to work in DBI mode.

This function configures the LCDIF DBI display.

Parameters

- base – LCDIF peripheral base address.
- displayIndex – Display index.
- config – Pointer to the configuration structure.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Initialize successfully.

- kStatus_InvalidArgument – Initialize failed because of invalid argument.

void LCDIF_DbiModeGetDefaultConfig(*lcdif_dbi_config_t* *config)

Get the default configuration to initialize the LCDIF DBI mode.

The default configuration value is:

```
config->swizzle         = kLCDIF_DbiOutSwizzleRGB;
config->format          = kLCDIF_DbiOutD8RGB332;
config->acTimeUnit      = 0;
config->type            = kLCDIF_DbiTypeA_ClockedE;
config->reversePolarity = false;
config->writeWRPeriod   = 3U;
config->writeWRAssert   = 0U;
config->writeCSAssert   = 0U;
config->writeWRDeassert = 0U;
config->writeCSDeassert = 0U;
config->typeCTas        = 1U;
config->typeCSCLTwrl    = 1U;
config->typeCSCLTwrh    = 1U;
```

Parameters

- config – Pointer to the LCDIF DBI configuration.

static inline void LCDIF_DbiReset(LCDIF_Type *base, uint8_t displayIndex)

Reset the DBI module.

Parameters

- displayIndex – Display index.
- base – LCDIF peripheral base address.

static inline bool LCDIF_DbiIsTypeCFifoFull(LCDIF_Type *base, uint8_t displayIndex)

Check whether the FIFO is full in DBI mode type C.

Parameters

- base – LCDIF peripheral base address.
- displayIndex – Display index.

Return values

- true – FIFO full.
- false – FIFO not full.

void LCDIF_DbiSelectArea(LCDIF_Type *base, uint8_t displayIndex, uint16_t startX, uint16_t startY, uint16_t endX, uint16_t endY, bool isTiled)

Select the update area in DBI mode.

Parameters

- base – LCDIF peripheral base address.
- displayIndex – Display index.
- startX – X coordinate for start pixel.
- startY – Y coordinate for start pixel.
- endX – X coordinate for end pixel.
- endY – Y coordinate for end pixel.
- isTiled – true if the pixel data is tiled.

static inline void LCDIF_DbiSendCommand(LCDIF_Type *base, uint8_t displayIndex, uint8_t cmd)

Send command to DBI port.

Parameters

- base – LCDIF peripheral base address.
- displayIndex – Display index.
- cmd – the DBI command to send.

void LCDIF_DbiSendData(LCDIF_Type *base, uint8_t displayIndex, const uint8_t *data, uint32_t dataLen_Byte)

brief Send data to DBI port.

Can be used to send light weight data to panel. To send pixel data in frame buffer, use LCDIF_DbiWriteMem.

param base LCDIF peripheral base address. param displayIndex Display index. param data pointer to data buffer. param dataLen_Byte data buffer length in byte.

void LCDIF_DbiSendCommandAndData(LCDIF_Type *base, uint8_t displayIndex, uint8_t cmd, const uint8_t *data, uint32_t dataLen_Byte)

Send command followed by data to DBI port.

Parameters

- base – LCDIF peripheral base address.
- displayIndex – Display index.
- cmd – the DBI command to send.
- data – pointer to data buffer.
- dataLen_Byte – data buffer length in byte.

static inline void LCDIF_DbiWriteMem(LCDIF_Type *base, uint8_t displayIndex)

Send pixel data in frame buffer to panel controller memory.

This function starts sending the pixel data in frame buffer to panel controller, user can monitor interrupt kLCDIF_Display0FrameDoneInterrupt to know when then data sending finished.

Parameters

- base – LCDIF peripheral base address.
- displayIndex – Display index.

void LCDIF_SetFrameBufferConfig(LCDIF_Type *base, uint8_t displayIndex, const *lcdif_fb_config_t* *config)

Configure the LCDIF frame buffer.

@Note: For LCDIF of version DC8000 there can be 3 layers in the pre-processing, compared with the older version. Apart from the video layer, there are also 2 overlay layers which shares the same configurations. Use this API to configure the legacy video layer, and use LCDIF_SetOverlayFrameBufferConfig to configure the overlay layers.

Parameters

- base – LCDIF peripheral base address.
- displayIndex – Display index.
- config – Pointer to the configuration structure.

void LCDIF_FrameBufferGetDefaultConfig(*lcdif_fb_config_t* *config)

Get default frame buffer configuration.

@Note: For LCDIF of version DC8000 there can be 3 layers in the pre-processing, compared with the older version. Apart from the video layer, there are also 2 overlay layers which shares the same configurations. Use this API to get the default configuration for all the 3 layers.

The default configuration is

```
config->enable = true;
config->enableGamma = false;
config->format = kLCDIF_PixelFormatRGB565;
```

Parameters

- config – Pointer to the configuration structure.

static inline void LCDIF_SetFrameBufferAddr(LCDIF_Type *base, uint8_t displayIndex, uint32_t address)

Set the frame buffer to LCDIF.

Note: The address must be 128 bytes aligned.

Parameters

- base – LCDIF peripheral base address.
- displayIndex – Display index.
- address – Frame buffer address.

void LCDIF_SetFrameBufferStride(LCDIF_Type *base, uint8_t displayIndex, uint32_t strideBytes)

Set the frame buffer stride.

Parameters

- base – LCDIF peripheral base address.
- displayIndex – Display index.
- strideBytes – The stride in byte.

void LCDIF_SetDitherConfig(LCDIF_Type *base, uint8_t displayIndex, const *lcdif_dither_config_t* *config)

Set the dither configuration.

Parameters

- base – LCDIF peripheral base address.
- displayIndex – Index to configure.
- config – Pointer to the configuration structure.

void LCDIF_SetGammaData(LCDIF_Type *base, uint8_t displayIndex, uint16_t startIndex, const uint32_t *gamma, uint16_t gammaLen)

Set the gamma translation values to the LCDIF gamma table.

Parameters

- base – LCDIF peripheral base address.
- displayIndex – Display index.
- startIndex – Start index in the gamma table that the value will be set to.

- gamma – The gamma values to set to the gamma table in LCDIF, could be defined using LCDIF_MAKE_GAMMA_VALUE.
- gammaLen – The length of the gamma.

static inline void LCDIF_EnableInterrupts(LCDIF_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Enables LCDIF interrupt requests.

Parameters

- base – LCDIF peripheral base address.
- mask – The interrupts to enable, pass in as OR'ed value of _lcdif_interrupt.

static inline void LCDIF_DisableInterrupts(LCDIF_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Disable LCDIF interrupt requests.

Parameters

- base – LCDIF peripheral base address.
- mask – The interrupts to disable, pass in as OR'ed value of _lcdif_interrupt.

static inline uint32_t LCDIF_GetAndClearInterruptPendingFlags(LCDIF_Type *base)

Get and clear LCDIF interrupt pending status.

Note: The interrupt must be enabled, otherwise the interrupt flags will not assert.

Parameters

- base – LCDIF peripheral base address.

Returns

The interrupt pending status.

void LCDIF_CursorGetDefaultConfig(*lcdif_cursor_config_t* *config)

Get the hardware cursor default configuration.

The default configuration values are:

```
config->enable = true;
config->format = kLCDIF_CursorMasked;
config->hotspotOffsetX = 0;
config->hotspotOffsetY = 0;
```

Parameters

- config – Pointer to the hardware cursor configuration structure.

void LCDIF_SetCursorConfig(LCDIF_Type *base, const *lcdif_cursor_config_t* *config)

Configure the cursor.

Parameters

- base – LCDIF peripheral base address.
- config – Cursor configuration.

static inline void LCDIF_SetCursorHotspotPosition(LCDIF_Type *base, uint16_t x, uint16_t y)

Set the cursor hotspot postion.

Parameters

- base – LCDIF peripheral base address.
- x – X coordinate of the hotspot, range 0 ~ 8191.

- y – Y coordinate of the hotspot, range 0 ~ 8191.

static inline void LCDIF_SetCursorBufferAddress(LCDIF_Type *base, uint32_t address)

Set the cursor memory address.

Parameters

- base – LCDIF peripheral base address.
- address – Memory address.

void LCDIF_SetCursorColor(LCDIF_Type *base, uint32_t background, uint32_t foreground)

Set the cursor color.

Parameters

- base – LCDIF peripheral base address.
- background – Background color, could be defined use LCDIF_MAKE_CURSOR_COLOR
- foreground – Foreground color, could be defined use LCDIF_MAKE_CURSOR_COLOR

FSL_LCDIF_DRIVER_VERSION

enum _lcdif_polarity_flags

LCDIF signal polarity flags.

Values:

enumerator kLCDIF_VsyncActiveLow

VSYNC active low.

enumerator kLCDIF_VsyncActiveHigh

VSYNC active high.

enumerator kLCDIF_HsyncActiveLow

HSYNC active low.

enumerator kLCDIF_HsyncActiveHigh

HSYNC active high.

enumerator kLCDIF_DataEnableActiveLow

Data enable line active low.

enumerator kLCDIF_DataEnableActiveHigh

Data enable line active high.

enumerator kLCDIF_DriveDataOnFallingClkEdge

Drive data on falling clock edge, capture data on rising clock edge.

enumerator kLCDIF_DriveDataOnRisingClkEdge

Drive data on falling clock edge, capture data on rising clock edge.

enum _lcdif_output_format

LCDIF DPI output format.

Values:

enumerator kLCDIF_Output16BitConfig1

16-bit configuration 1. RGB565: XXXXXXXX_RRRRRGGG_GGGBBBBB.

enumerator kLCDIF_Output16BitConfig2

16-bit configuration 2. RGB565: XXXRRRRR_XXGGGGGG_XXXBBBBB.

enumerator kLCDIF_Output16BitConfig3
16-bit configuration 3. RGB565: XXRRRRRX_XXGGGGGG_XXBBBBBX.

enumerator kLCDIF_Output18BitConfig1
18-bit configuration 1. RGB666: XXXXXXRR_RRRRGGGG_GGBBBBBB.

enumerator kLCDIF_Output18BitConfig2
18-bit configuration 2. RGB666: XXRRRRRR_XXGGGGGG_XXBBBBBB.

enumerator kLCDIF_Output24Bit
24-bit.

enum _lcdif_fb_format
LCDIF frame buffer pixel format.

Values:

enumerator kLCDIF_PixelFormatXRGB444
XRGB4444, deprecated, use kLCDIF_PixelFormatXRGB4444 instead.

enumerator kLCDIF_PixelFormatXRGB4444
XRGB4444, 16-bit each pixel, 4-bit each element. R4G4B4 in reference manual.

enumerator kLCDIF_PixelFormatXRGB1555
XRGB1555, 16-bit each pixel, 5-bit each element. R5G5B5 in reference manual.

enumerator kLCDIF_PixelFormatRGB565
RGB565, 16-bit each pixel. R5G6B5 in reference manual.

enumerator kLCDIF_PixelFormatXRGB8888
XRGB8888, 32-bit each pixel, 8-bit each element. R8G8B8 in reference manual.

enum _lcdif_interrupt
LCDIF interrupt and status.

Values:

enumerator kLCDIF_Display0FrameDoneInterrupt
The last pixel of visible area in frame is shown.

enum _lcdif_cursor_format
LCDIF cursor format.

Values:

enumerator kLCDIF_CursorMasked
Masked format.

enumerator kLCDIF_CursorARGB8888
ARGB8888.

enum _lcdif_dbi_cmd_flag
LCDIF DBI command flag.

Values:

enumerator kLCDIF_DbiCmdAddress
Send address (or command).

enumerator kLCDIF_DbiCmdWriteMem
Start write memory.

enumerator kLCDIF_DbiCmdData
Send data.

enumerator kLCDIF_DbiCmdReadMem

Start read memory.

enum _lcdif_dbi_out_format

LCDIF DBI output format.

Values:

enumerator kLCDIF_DbiOutD8RGB332

8-bit data bus width, pixel RGB332. For type A or B. 1 pixel sent in 1 cycle.

enumerator kLCDIF_DbiOutD8RGB444

8-bit data bus width, pixel RGB444. For type A or B. 2 pixels sent in 3 cycles.

enumerator kLCDIF_DbiOutD8RGB565

8-bit data bus width, pixel RGB565. For type A or B. 1 pixel sent in 2 cycles.

enumerator kLCDIF_DbiOutD8RGB666

8-bit data bus width, pixel RGB666. For type A or B. 1 pixel sent in 3 cycles, data bus 2 LSB not used.

enumerator kLCDIF_DbiOutD8RGB888

8-bit data bus width, pixel RGB888. For type A or B. 1 pixel sent in 3 cycles.

enumerator kLCDIF_DbiOutD9RGB666

9-bit data bus width, pixel RGB666. For type A or B. 1 pixel sent in 2 cycles.

enumerator kLCDIF_DbiOutD16RGB332

16-bit data bus width, pixel RGB332. For type A or B. 2 pixels sent in 1 cycle.

enumerator kLCDIF_DbiOutD16RGB444

16-bit data bus width, pixel RGB444. For type A or B. 1 pixel sent in 1 cycle, data bus 4 MSB not used.

enumerator kLCDIF_DbiOutD16RGB565

16-bit data bus width, pixel RGB565. For type A or B. 1 pixel sent in 1 cycle.

enumerator kLCDIF_DbiOutD16RGB666Option1

16-bit data bus width, pixel RGB666. For type A or B. 2 pixels sent in 3 cycles.

enumerator kLCDIF_DbiOutD16RGB666Option2

16-bit data bus width, pixel RGB666. For type A or B. 1 pixel sent in 2 cycles.

enumerator kLCDIF_DbiOutD16RGB888Option1

16-bit data bus width, pixel RGB888. For type A or B. 2 pixels sent in 3 cycles.

enumerator kLCDIF_DbiOutD16RGB888Option2

16-bit data bus width, pixel RGB888. For type A or B. 1 pixel sent in 2 cycles.

enumerator kLCDIF_DbiOutD1RGB565Option1

1-bit data bus width, pixel RGB565. For type C option 1, use extra bit to distinguish Data and Command (DC).

enumerator kLCDIF_DbiOutD1RGB565Option2

1-bit data bus width, pixel RGB565. For type C option 2, use extra byte to distinguish Data and Command (DC).

enumerator kLCDIF_DbiOutD1RGB565Option3

1-bit data bus width, pixel RGB565. For type C option 3, use extra DC line to distinguish Data and Command (DC).

enumerator kLCDIF_DbiOutD1RG888Option1

1-bit data bus width, pixel RGB888. For type C option 1, use extra bit to distinguish Data and Command (DC).

enumerator kLCDIF_DbiOutD1RG888Option2

1-bit data bus width, pixel RGB888. For type C option 2, use extra byte to distinguish Data and Command (DC).

enumerator kLCDIF_DbiOutD1RG888Option3

1-bit data bus width, pixel RGB888. For type C option 3, use extra DC line to distinguish Data and Command (DC).

enum _lcdif_dbi_type

LCDIF DBI type.

Values:

enumerator kLCDIF_DbiTypeA_FixedE

Selects DBI type A fixed E mode, 68000, Motorola mode.

enumerator kLCDIF_DbiTypeA_ClockedE

Selects DBI Type A Clocked E mode, 68000, Motorola mode.

enumerator kLCDIF_DbiTypeB

Selects DBI type B, 8080, Intel mode.

enumerator kLCDIF_DbiTypeC

Selects DBI type C, SPI mode.

enum _lcdif_dbi_out_swizzle

LCDIF DBI output swizzle.

Values:

enumerator kLCDIF_DbiOutSwizzleRGB

RGB

enumerator kLCDIF_DbiOutSwizzleBGR

BGR

typedef enum *_lcdif_output_format* lcdif_output_format_t

LCDIF DPI output format.

typedef struct *_lcdif_dpi_config* lcdif_dpi_config_t

Configuration for LCDIF module to work in DBI mode.

typedef enum *_lcdif_fb_format* lcdif_fb_format_t

LCDIF frame buffer pixel format.

typedef struct *_lcdif_fb_config* lcdif_fb_config_t

LCDIF frame buffer configuration.

typedef enum *_lcdif_cursor_format* lcdif_cursor_format_t

LCDIF cursor format.

typedef struct *_lcdif_cursor_config* lcdif_cursor_config_t

LCDIF cursor configuration.

typedef struct *_lcdif_dither_config* lcdif_dither_config_t

LCDIF dither configuration.

a. Decide which bit of pixel color to enhance. This is configured by the lcdif_dither_config_t::redSize, lcdif_dither_config_t::greenSize, and lcdif_dither_config_t::blueSize. For example, setting redSize=6 means it is the 6th bit starting from the MSB that we want to enhance, in other words, it is the RedColor[2]bit from RedColor[7:0]. greenSize and blueSize function in the same way.

b. Create the look-up table. a. The Look-Up Table includes 16 entries, 4 bits for each. b. The Look-Up Table provides a value U[3:0] through the index X[1:0] and Y[1:0]. c. The color value RedColor[3:0] is used to compare with this U[3:0]. d. If RedColor[3:0] > U[3:0], and RedColor[7:2] is not 6'b111111, then the final color value is: NewRedColor = RedColor[7:2] + 1'b1. e. If RedColor[3:0] <= U[3:0], then NewRedColor = RedColor[7:2].

typedef enum *_lcdif_dbi_out_format* lcdif_dbi_out_format_t

LCDIF DBI output format.

typedef enum *_lcdif_dbi_type* lcdif_dbi_type_t

LCDIF DBI type.

typedef enum *_lcdif_dbi_out_swizzle* lcdif_dbi_out_swizzle_t

LCDIF DBI output swizzle.

typedef struct *_lcdif_dbi_config* lcdif_dbi_config_t

LCDIF DBI configuration.

LCDIF_MAKE_CURSOR_COLOR(r, g, b)

Construct the cursor color, every element should be in the range of 0 ~ 255.

LCDIF_MAKE_GAMMA_VALUE(r, g, b)

Construct the gamma value set to LCDIF gamma table, every element should be in the range of 0~255.

LCDIF_ALIGN_ADDR(addr, align)

Calculate the aligned address for LCDIF buffer.

LCDIF_FB_ALIGN

The frame buffer should be 128 byte aligned.

LCDIF_GAMMA_INDEX_MAX

Gamma index max value.

LCDIF_CURSOR_SIZE

The cursor size is 32 x 32.

LCDIF_FRAMEBUFFERCONFIG0_OUTPUT_MASK

LCDIF_ADDR_CPU_2_IP(addr)

struct _lcdif_dpi_config

#include <fsl_lcdif.h> Configuration for LCDIF module to work in DBI mode.

Public Members

uint16_t panelWidth

Display panel width, pixels per line.

uint16_t panelHeight

Display panel height, how many lines per panel.

uint8_t hsw

HSYNC pulse width.

uint8_t hfp
Horizontal front porch.

uint8_t hbp
Horizontal back porch.

uint8_t vsw
VSYNC pulse width.

uint8_t vfp
Vrtical front porch.

uint8_t vbp
Vertical back porch.

uint32_t polarityFlags
OR'ed value of _lcdif_polarity_flags, used to contol the signal polarity.

lcdif_output_format_t format
DPI output format.

struct __lcdif_fb_config
#include <fsl_lcdif.h> LCDIF frame buffer configuration.

Public Members

bool enable
Enable the frame buffer output.

bool enableGamma
Enable the gamma correction.

lcdif_fb_format_t format
Frame buffer pixel format.

struct __lcdif_cursor_config
#include <fsl_lcdif.h> LCDIF cursor configuration.

Public Members

bool enable
Enable the cursor or not.

lcdif_cursor_format_t format
Cursor format.

uint8_t hotspotOffsetX
Offset of the hotspot to top left point, range 0 ~ 31

uint8_t hotspotOffsetY
Offset of the hotspot to top left point, range 0 ~ 31

struct __lcdif_dither_config
#include <fsl_lcdif.h> LCDIF dither configuration.

a. Decide which bit of pixel color to enhance. This is configured by the lcdif_dither_config_t::redSize, lcdif_dither_config_t::greenSize, and lcdif_dither_config_t::blueSize. For example, setting redSize=6 means it is the 6th bit starting from the MSB that we want to enhance, in other words, it is the RedColor[2]bit from RedColor[7:0]. greenSize and blueSize function in the same way.

b. Create the look-up table. a. The Look-Up Table includes 16 entries, 4 bits for each. b. The Look-Up Table provides a value U[3:0] through the index X[1:0] and Y[1:0]. c. The color value RedColor[3:0] is used to compare with this U[3:0]. d. If RedColor[3:0] > U[3:0], and RedColor[7:2] is not 6'b111111, then the final color value is: NewRedColor = RedColor[7:2] + 1'b1. e. If RedColor[3:0] <= U[3:0], then NewRedColor = RedColor[7:2].

Public Members

bool enable

Enable or not.

uint8_t redSize

Red color size, valid region 4-8.

uint8_t greenSize

Green color size, valid region 4-8.

uint8_t blueSize

Blue color size, valid region 4-8.

uint32_t low

Low part of the look up table.

uint32_t high

High part of the look up table.

struct __lcdif_dbi_config

#include <fsl_lcdif.h> LCDIF DBI configuration.

Public Members

lcdif_dbi_out_swizzle_t swizzle

Swizzle.

lcdif_dbi_out_format_t format

Output format.

uint8_t acTimeUnit

Time unit for AC characteristics.

lcdif_dbi_type_t type

DBI type.

bool reversePolarity

Reverse the DC pin polarity.

uint16_t writeWRPeriod

WR signal period, Cycle number = writeWRPeriod * (acTimeUnit + 1), must be no less than 3. Only for type A and type b.

uint8_t writeWRAssert

Cycle number = writeWRAssert * (acTimeUnit + 1), only for type A and type B. With kLCDIF_DbiTypeA_FixedE: Not used. With kLCDIF_DbiTypeA_ClockedE: Time to assert E. With kLCDIF_DbiTypeB: Time to assert WRX.

uint8_t writeCSAssert

Cycle number = writeCSAssert * (acTimeUnit + 1), only for type A and type B. With kLCDIF_DbiTypeA_FixedE: Time to assert CSX. With kLCDIF_DbiTypeA_ClockedE: Not used. With kLCDIF_DbiTypeB: Time to assert CSX.

uint16_t writeWRDeassert

Cycle number = writeWRDeassert * (acTimeUnit + 1), only for type A and type B. With kLCDIF_DbiTypeA_FixedE: Not used. With kLCDIF_DbiTypeA_ClockedE: Time to de-assert E. With kLCDIF_DbiTypeB: Time to de-assert WRX.

uint16_t writeCSDeassert

Cycle number = writeCSDeassert * (acTimeUnit + 1), only for type A and type B. With kLCDIF_DbiTypeA_FixedE: Time to de-assert CSX. With kLCDIF_DbiTypeA_ClockedE: Not used. With kLCDIF_DbiTypeB: Time to de-assert CSX.

uint8_t typeCTas

How many sdaClk cycles in Tas phase, only for Type C option 3, at least 1.

uint8_t typeCSCLTwrl

How many sdaClk cycles in Twrl phase, only for Type C, at least 1.

uint8_t typeCSCLTwrh

How many sdaClk cycles in Twrh phase, only for Type C, at least 1.

2.53 LPADC: 12-bit SAR Analog-to-Digital Converter Driver

enum _lpadc_status_flags

Define hardware flags of the module.

Values:

enumerator kLPADC_ResultFIFO0OverflowFlag

Indicates that more data has been written to the Result FIFO 0 than it can hold.

enumerator kLPADC_ResultFIFO0ReadyFlag

Indicates when the number of valid datawords in the result FIFO 0 is greater than the setting watermark level.

enumerator kLPADC_TriggerExceptionFlag

Indicates that a trigger exception event has occurred.

enumerator kLPADC_TriggerCompletionFlag

Indicates that a trigger completion event has occurred.

enumerator kLPADC_CalibrationReadyFlag

Indicates that the calibration process is done.

enumerator kLPADC_ActiveFlag

Indicates that the ADC is in active state.

enumerator kLPADC_ResultFIFOOverflowFlag

To compilitable with old version, do not recommend using this, please use kLPADC_ResultFIFO0OverflowFlag as instead.

enumerator kLPADC_ResultFIFOReadyFlag

To compilitable with old version, do not recommend using this, please use kLPADC_ResultFIFO0ReadyFlag as instead.

enum _lpadc_interrupt_enable

Define interrupt switchers of the module.

Note: LPADC of different chips supports different number of trigger sources, please check the Reference Manual for details.

Values:

enumerator kLPADC_ResultFIFO0OverflowInterruptEnable
Configures ADC to generate overflow interrupt requests when FOF0 flag is asserted.

enumerator kLPADC_FIFO0WatermarkInterruptEnable
Configures ADC to generate watermark interrupt requests when RDY0 flag is asserted.

enumerator kLPADC_ResultFIFOOverflowInterruptEnable
To compilitable with old version, do not recommend using this, please use kLPADC_ResultFIFO0OverflowInterruptEnable as instead.

enumerator kLPADC_FIFOWatermarkInterruptEnable
To compilitable with old version, do not recommend using this, please use kLPADC_FIFO0WatermarkInterruptEnable as instead.

enumerator kLPADC_TriggerExceptionInterruptEnable
Configures ADC to generate trigger exception interrupt.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger0CompletionInterruptEnable
Configures ADC to generate interrupt when trigger 0 completion.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger1CompletionInterruptEnable
Configures ADC to generate interrupt when trigger 1 completion.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger2CompletionInterruptEnable
Configures ADC to generate interrupt when trigger 2 completion.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger3CompletionInterruptEnable
Configures ADC to generate interrupt when trigger 3 completion.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger4CompletionInterruptEnable
Configures ADC to generate interrupt when trigger 4 completion.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger5CompletionInterruptEnable
Configures ADC to generate interrupt when trigger 5 completion.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger6CompletionInterruptEnable
Configures ADC to generate interrupt when trigger 6 completion.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger7CompletionInterruptEnable
Configures ADC to generate interrupt when trigger 7 completion.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger8CompletionInterruptEnable
Configures ADC to generate interrupt when trigger 8 completion.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger9CompletionInterruptEnable
Configures ADC to generate interrupt when trigger 9 completion.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger10CompletionInterruptEnable
Configures ADC to generate interrupt when trigger 10 completion.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger11CompletionInterruptEnable
Configures ADC to generate interrupt when trigger 11 completion.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger12CompletionInterruptEnable
Configures ADC to generate interrupt when trigger 12 completion.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger13CompletionInterruptEnable
Configures ADC to generate interrupt when trigger 13 completion.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger14CompletionInterruptEnable
Configures ADC to generate interrupt when trigger 14 completion.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger15CompletionInterruptEnable

Configures ADC to generate interrupt when trigger 15 completion.

enum _lpadc_trigger_status_flags

The enumerator of lpadc trigger status flags, including interrupted flags and completed flags.

Note: LPADC of different chips supports different number of trigger sources, please check the Reference Manual for details.

Values:

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger0InterruptedFlag

Trigger 0 is interrupted by a high priority exception.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger1InterruptedFlag

Trigger 1 is interrupted by a high priority exception.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger2InterruptedFlag

Trigger 2 is interrupted by a high priority exception.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger3InterruptedFlag

Trigger 3 is interrupted by a high priority exception.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger4InterruptedFlag

Trigger 4 is interrupted by a high priority exception.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger5InterruptedFlag

Trigger 5 is interrupted by a high priority exception.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger6InterruptedFlag

Trigger 6 is interrupted by a high priority exception.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger7InterruptedFlag

Trigger 7 is interrupted by a high priority exception.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger8InterruptedFlag

Trigger 8 is interrupted by a high priority exception.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger9InterruptedFlag

Trigger 9 is interrupted by a high priority exception.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger10InterruptedFlag

Trigger 10 is interrupted by a high priority exception.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger11InterruptedFlag

Trigger 11 is interrupted by a high priority exception.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger12InterruptedFlag

Trigger 12 is interrupted by a high priority exception.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger13InterruptedFlag

Trigger 13 is interrupted by a high priority exception.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger14InterruptedFlag

Trigger 14 is interrupted by a high priority exception.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger15InterruptedFlag

Trigger 15 is interrupted by a high priority exception.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger0CompletedFlag

Trigger 0 is completed and trigger 0 has enabled completion interrupts.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger1CompletedFlag
Trigger 1 is completed and trigger 1 has enabled completion interrupts.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger2CompletedFlag
Trigger 2 is completed and trigger 2 has enabled completion interrupts.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger3CompletedFlag
Trigger 3 is completed and trigger 3 has enabled completion interrupts.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger4CompletedFlag
Trigger 4 is completed and trigger 4 has enabled completion interrupts.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger5CompletedFlag
Trigger 5 is completed and trigger 5 has enabled completion interrupts.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger6CompletedFlag
Trigger 6 is completed and trigger 6 has enabled completion interrupts.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger7CompletedFlag
Trigger 7 is completed and trigger 7 has enabled completion interrupts.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger8CompletedFlag
Trigger 8 is completed and trigger 8 has enabled completion interrupts.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger9CompletedFlag
Trigger 9 is completed and trigger 9 has enabled completion interrupts.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger10CompletedFlag
Trigger 10 is completed and trigger 10 has enabled completion interrupts.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger11CompletedFlag
Trigger 11 is completed and trigger 11 has enabled completion interrupts.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger12CompletedFlag
Trigger 12 is completed and trigger 12 has enabled completion interrupts.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger13CompletedFlag
Trigger 13 is completed and trigger 13 has enabled completion interrupts.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger14CompletedFlag
Trigger 14 is completed and trigger 14 has enabled completion interrupts.

enumerator kLPADC_Trigger15CompletedFlag
Trigger 15 is completed and trigger 15 has enabled completion interrupts.

enum _lpadc_sample_scale_mode
Define enumeration of sample scale mode.

The sample scale mode is used to reduce the selected ADC analog channel input voltage level by a factor. The maximum possible voltage on the ADC channel input should be considered when selecting a scale mode to ensure that the reducing factor always results voltage level at or below the VREFH reference. This reducing capability allows conversion of analog inputs higher than VREFH. A-side and B-side channel inputs are both scaled using the scale mode.

Values:

enumerator kLPADC_SamplePartScale
Use divided input voltage signal. (For scale select,please refer to the reference manual).

enumerator kLPADC_SampleFullScale
Full scale (Factor of 1).

enum _lpadc_sample_channel_mode

Define enumeration of channel sample mode.

The channel sample mode configures the channel with single-end/differential/dual-single-end, side A/B.

Values:

enumerator kLPADC_SampleChannelSingleEndSideA

Single-end mode, only A-side channel is converted.

enumerator kLPADC_SampleChannelSingleEndSideB

Single-end mode, only B-side channel is converted.

enumerator kLPADC_SampleChannelDiffBothSideAB

Differential mode, the ADC result is (CHnA-CHnB).

enumerator kLPADC_SampleChannelDiffBothSideBA

Differential mode, the ADC result is (CHnB-CHnA).

enumerator kLPADC_SampleChannelDiffBothSide

Differential mode, the ADC result is (CHnA-CHnB).

enumerator kLPADC_SampleChannelDualSingleEndBothSide

Dual-Single-Ended Mode. Both A side and B side channels are converted independently.

enum _lpadc_hardware_average_mode

Define enumeration of hardware average selection.

It Selects how many ADC conversions are averaged to create the ADC result. An internal storage buffer is used to capture temporary results while the averaging iterations are executed.

Note: Some enumerator values are not available on some devices, mainly depends on the size of AVGS field in CMDH register.

Values:

enumerator kLPADC_HardwareAverageCount1

Single conversion.

enumerator kLPADC_HardwareAverageCount2

2 conversions averaged.

enumerator kLPADC_HardwareAverageCount4

4 conversions averaged.

enumerator kLPADC_HardwareAverageCount8

8 conversions averaged.

enumerator kLPADC_HardwareAverageCount16

16 conversions averaged.

enumerator kLPADC_HardwareAverageCount32

32 conversions averaged.

enumerator kLPADC_HardwareAverageCount64

64 conversions averaged.

enumerator kLPADC_HardwareAverageCount128

128 conversions averaged.

enum _lpadc_sample_time_mode

Define enumeration of sample time selection.

The shortest sample time maximizes conversion speed for lower impedance inputs. Extending sample time allows higher impedance inputs to be accurately sampled. Longer sample times can also be used to lower overall power consumption when command looping and sequencing is configured and high conversion rates are not required.

Values:

enumerator kLPADC_SampleTimeADCK3

3 ADCK cycles total sample time.

enumerator kLPADC_SampleTimeADCK5

5 ADCK cycles total sample time.

enumerator kLPADC_SampleTimeADCK7

7 ADCK cycles total sample time.

enumerator kLPADC_SampleTimeADCK11

11 ADCK cycles total sample time.

enumerator kLPADC_SampleTimeADCK19

19 ADCK cycles total sample time.

enumerator kLPADC_SampleTimeADCK35

35 ADCK cycles total sample time.

enumerator kLPADC_SampleTimeADCK67

69 ADCK cycles total sample time.

enumerator kLPADC_SampleTimeADCK131

131 ADCK cycles total sample time.

enum _lpadc_hardware_compare_mode

Define enumeration of hardware compare mode.

After an ADC channel input is sampled and converted and any averaging iterations are performed, this mode setting guides operation of the automatic compare function to optionally only store when the compare operation is true. When compare is enabled, the conversion result is compared to the compare values.

Values:

enumerator kLPADC_HardwareCompareDisabled

Compare disabled.

enumerator kLPADC_HardwareCompareStoreOnTrue

Compare enabled. Store on true.

enumerator kLPADC_HardwareCompareRepeatUntilTrue

Compare enabled. Repeat channel acquisition until true.

enum _lpadc_conversion_resolution_mode

Define enumeration of conversion resolution mode.

Configure the resolution bit in specific conversion type. For detailed resolution accuracy, see to lpadc_sample_channel_mode_t

Values:

enumerator kLPADC_ConversionResolutionStandard

Standard resolution. Single-ended 12-bit conversion, Differential 13-bit conversion with 2's complement output.

enumerator kLPADC_ConversionResolutionHigh

High resolution. Single-ended 16-bit conversion; Differential 16-bit conversion with 2's complement output.

enum _lpadc_conversion_average_mode

Define enumeration of conversion averages mode.

Configure the converion average number for auto-calibration.

Note: Some enumerator values are not available on some devices, mainly depends on the size of CAL_AVGS field in CTRL register.

Values:

enumerator kLPADC_ConversionAverage1

Single conversion.

enumerator kLPADC_ConversionAverage2

2 conversions averaged.

enumerator kLPADC_ConversionAverage4

4 conversions averaged.

enumerator kLPADC_ConversionAverage8

8 conversions averaged.

enumerator kLPADC_ConversionAverage16

16 conversions averaged.

enumerator kLPADC_ConversionAverage32

32 conversions averaged.

enumerator kLPADC_ConversionAverage64

64 conversions averaged.

enumerator kLPADC_ConversionAverage128

128 conversions averaged.

enum _lpadc_reference_voltage_mode

Define enumeration of reference voltage source.

For detail information, need to check the SoC's specification.

Values:

enumerator kLPADC_ReferenceVoltageAlt1

Option 1 setting.

enumerator kLPADC_ReferenceVoltageAlt2

Option 2 setting.

enumerator kLPADC_ReferenceVoltageAlt3

Option 3 setting.

enum _lpadc_power_level_mode

Define enumeration of power configuration.

Configures the ADC for power and performance. In the highest power setting the highest conversion rates will be possible. Refer to the device data sheet for power and performance capabilities for each setting.

Values:

enumerator kLPADC_PowerLevelAlt1
Lowest power setting.

enumerator kLPADC_PowerLevelAlt2
Next lowest power setting.

enumerator kLPADC_PowerLevelAlt3
...

enumerator kLPADC_PowerLevelAlt4
Highest power setting.

enum _lpadc_offset_calibration_mode
Define enumeration of offset calibration mode.

Values:

enumerator kLPADC_OffsetCalibration12bitMode
12 bit offset calibration mode.

enumerator kLPADC_OffsetCalibration16bitMode
16 bit offset calibration mode.

enum _lpadc_trigger_priority_policy
Define enumeration of trigger priority policy.

This selection controls how higher priority triggers are handled.

Note: **kLPADC_TriggerPriorityPreemptSubsequently** is not available on some devices, mainly depends on the size of TPRICTRL field in CFG register.

Values:

enumerator kLPADC_ConvPreemptImmediatelyNotAutoResumed
If a higher priority trigger is detected during command processing, the current conversion is aborted and the new command specified by the trigger is started, when higher priority conversion finishes, the preempted conversion is not automatically resumed or restarted.

enumerator kLPADC_ConvPreemptSoftlyNotAutoResumed
If a higher priority trigger is received during command processing, the current conversion is completed (including averaging iterations and compare function if enabled) and stored to the result FIFO before the higher priority trigger/command is initiated, when higher priority conversion finishes, the preempted conversion is not resumed or restarted.

enumerator kLPADC_ConvPreemptImmediatelyAutoRestarted
If a higher priority trigger is detected during command processing, the current conversion is aborted and the new command specified by the trigger is started, when higher priority conversion finishes, the preempted conversion will automatically be restarted.

enumerator kLPADC_ConvPreemptSoftlyAutoRestarted
If a higher priority trigger is received during command processing, the current conversion is completed (including averaging iterations and compare function if enabled) and stored to the result FIFO before the higher priority trigger/command is initiated, when higher priority conversion finishes, the preempted conversion will automatically be restarted.

enumerator kLPADC_ConvPreemptImmediatelyAutoResumed

If a higher priority trigger is detected during command processing, the current conversion is aborted and the new command specified by the trigger is started, when higher priority conversion finishes, the preempted conversion will automatically be resumed.

enumerator kLPADC_ConvPreemptSoftlyAutoResumed

If a higher priority trigger is received during command processing, the current conversion is completed (including averaging iterations and compare function if enabled) and stored to the result FIFO before the higher priority trigger/command is initiated, when higher priority conversion finishes, the preempted conversion will be automatically be resumed.

enumerator kLPADC_TriggerPriorityPreemptImmediately

Legacy support is not recommended as it only ensures compatibility with older versions.

enumerator kLPADC_TriggerPriorityPreemptSoftly

Legacy support is not recommended as it only ensures compatibility with older versions.

enumerator kLPADC_TriggerPriorityExceptionDisabled

High priority trigger exception disabled.

typedef enum *_lpadc_sample_scale_mode* lpadc_sample_scale_mode_t

Define enumeration of sample scale mode.

The sample scale mode is used to reduce the selected ADC analog channel input voltage level by a factor. The maximum possible voltage on the ADC channel input should be considered when selecting a scale mode to ensure that the reducing factor always results voltage level at or below the VREFH reference. This reducing capability allows conversion of analog inputs higher than VREFH. A-side and B-side channel inputs are both scaled using the scale mode.

typedef enum *_lpadc_sample_channel_mode* lpadc_sample_channel_mode_t

Define enumeration of channel sample mode.

The channel sample mode configures the channel with single-end/differential/dual-single-end, side A/B.

typedef enum *_lpadc_hardware_average_mode* lpadc_hardware_average_mode_t

Define enumeration of hardware average selection.

It Selects how many ADC conversions are averaged to create the ADC result. An internal storage buffer is used to capture temporary results while the averaging iterations are executed.

Note: Some enumerator values are not available on some devices, mainly depends on the size of AVGS field in CMDH register.

---

typedef enum *_lpadc_sample_time_mode* lpadc_sample_time_mode_t

Define enumeration of sample time selection.

The shortest sample time maximizes conversion speed for lower impedance inputs. Extending sample time allows higher impedance inputs to be accurately sampled. Longer sample times can also be used to lower overall power consumption when command looping and sequencing is configured and high conversion rates are not required.

typedef enum *_lpadc_hardware_compare_mode* lpadc_hardware_compare_mode_t

Define enumeration of hardware compare mode.

After an ADC channel input is sampled and converted and any averaging iterations are performed, this mode setting guides operation of the automatic compare function to optionally

only store when the compare operation is true. When compare is enabled, the conversion result is compared to the compare values.

typedef enum *_lpadc_conversion_resolution_mode* lpadc_conversion_resolution_mode_t

Define enumeration of conversion resolution mode.

Configure the resolution bit in specific conversion type. For detailed resolution accuracy, see to lpadc_sample_channel_mode_t

typedef enum *_lpadc_conversion_average_mode* lpadc_conversion_average_mode_t

Define enumeration of conversion averages mode.

Configure the converion average number for auto-calibration.

Note: Some enumerator values are not available on some devices, mainly depends on the size of CAL_AVGS field in CTRL register.

---

typedef enum *_lpadc_reference_voltage_mode* lpadc_reference_voltage_source_t

Define enumeration of reference voltage source.

For detail information, need to check the SoC's specification.

typedef enum *_lpadc_power_level_mode* lpadc_power_level_mode_t

Define enumeration of power configuration.

Configures the ADC for power and performance. In the highest power setting the highest conversion rates will be possible. Refer to the device data sheet for power and performance capabilities for each setting.

typedef enum *_lpadc_offset_calibration_mode* lpadc_offset_calibration_mode_t

Define enumeration of offset calibration mode.

typedef enum *_lpadc_trigger_priority_policy* lpadc_trigger_priority_policy_t

Define enumeration of trigger priority policy.

This selection controls how higher priority triggers are handled.

Note: **kLPADC_TriggerPriorityPreemptSubsequently** is not available on some devices, mainly depends on the size of TPRICTRL field in CFG register.

---

typedef struct *_lpadc_calibration_value* lpadc_calibration_value_t

A structure of calibration value.

LPADC_CONVERSION_COMPLETE_TIMEOUT

Max loops to wait for LPADC conversion complete.

When doing calibration, driver will wait for the completion of conversion. This parameter defines how many loops to check completion before return timeout. If defined as 0, driver will wait forever until completion.

LPADC_CALIBRATION_READY_TIMEOUT

Max loops to wait for LPADC calibration ready.

Before doing calibration, driver will wait for the calibration ready. This parameter defines how many loops to check the calibration ready. If defined as 0, driver will wait forever until ready.

LPADC_GAIN_CAL_READY_TIMEOUT

Max loops to wait for LPADC gain calibration GAIN_CAL ready.

Before doing calibration, driver will wait for the gain calibration GAIN_CAL ready. This parameter defines how many loops to check the gain calibration GAIN_CAL ready. If defined as 0, driver will wait forever until ready.

LPADC_GET_ACTIVE_COMMAND_STATUS(statusVal)

Define the MACRO function to get command status from status value.

The statusVal is the return value from LPADC_GetStatusFlags().

LPADC_GET_ACTIVE_TRIGGER_STATUE(statusVal)

Define the MACRO function to get trigger status from status value.

The statusVal is the return value from LPADC_GetStatusFlags().

void LPADC_Init(ADC_Type *base, const *lpadc_config_t* *config)

Initializes the LPADC module.

Parameters

- base – LPADC peripheral base address.
- config – Pointer to configuration structure. See "lpadc_config_t".

void LPADC_GetDefaultConfig(*lpadc_config_t* *config)

Gets an available pre-defined settings for initial configuration.

This function initializes the converter configuration structure with an available settings. The default values are:

```
config->enableInDozeMode        = true;
config->enableAnalogPreliminary = false;
config->powerUpDelay            = 0x80;
config->referenceVoltageSource  = kLPADC_ReferenceVoltageAlt1;
config->powerLevelMode          = kLPADC_PowerLevelAlt1;
config->triggerPriorityPolicy   = kLPADC_TriggerPriorityPreemptImmediately;
config->enableConvPause         = false;
config->convPauseDelay          = 0U;
config->FIFOWatermark           = 0U;
```

Parameters

- config – Pointer to configuration structure.

void LPADC_Deinit(ADC_Type *base)

De-initializes the LPADC module.

Parameters

- base – LPADC peripheral base address.

static inline void LPADC_Enable(ADC_Type *base, bool enable)

Switch on/off the LPADC module.

Parameters

- base – LPADC peripheral base address.
- enable – switcher to the module.

static inline void LPADC_DoResetFIFO(ADC_Type *base)

Do reset the conversion FIFO.

Parameters

- base – LPADC peripheral base address.

static inline void LPADC_DoResetConfig(ADC_Type *base)

Do reset the module's configuration.

Reset all ADC internal logic and registers, except the Control Register (ADCx_CTRL).

Parameters

- base – LPADC peripheral base address.

static inline uint32_t LPADC_GetStatusFlags(ADC_Type *base)

Get status flags.

Parameters

- base – LPADC peripheral base address.

Returns

status flags' mask. See to _lpadc_status_flags.

static inline void LPADC_ClearStatusFlags(ADC_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Clear status flags.

Only the flags can be cleared by writing ADCx_STATUS register would be cleared by this API.

Parameters

- base – LPADC peripheral base address.
- mask – Mask value for flags to be cleared. See to _lpadc_status_flags.

static inline uint32_t LPADC_GetTriggerStatusFlags(ADC_Type *base)

Get trigger status flags to indicate which trigger sequences have been completed or interrupted by a high priority trigger exception.

Parameters

- base – LPADC peripheral base address.

Returns

The OR'ed value of _lpadc_trigger_status_flags.

static inline void LPADC_ClearTriggerStatusFlags(ADC_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Clear trigger status flags.

Parameters

- base – LPADC peripheral base address.
- mask – The mask of trigger status flags to be cleared, should be the OR'ed value of _lpadc_trigger_status_flags.

static inline void LPADC_EnableInterrupts(ADC_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Enable interrupts.

Parameters

- base – LPADC peripheral base address.
- mask – Mask value for interrupt events. See to _lpadc_interrupt_enable.

static inline void LPADC_DisableInterrupts(ADC_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Disable interrupts.

Parameters

- base – LPADC peripheral base address.
- mask – Mask value for interrupt events. See to _lpadc_interrupt_enable.

static inline void LPADC_EnableFIFOWatermarkDMA(ADC_Type *base, bool enable)

Switch on/off the DMA trigger for FIFO watermark event.

Parameters

- base – LPADC peripheral base address.
- enable – Switcher to the event.

static inline uint32_t LPADC_GetConvResultCount(ADC_Type *base)

Get the count of result kept in conversion FIFO.

Parameters

- base – LPADC peripheral base address.

Returns

The count of result kept in conversion FIFO.

bool LPADC_GetConvResult(ADC_Type *base, *lpadc_conv_result_t* *result)

Get the result in conversion FIFO.

Parameters

- base – LPADC peripheral base address.
- result – Pointer to structure variable that keeps the conversion result in conversion FIFO.

Returns

Status whether FIFO entry is valid.

void LPADC_GetConvResultBlocking(ADC_Type *base, *lpadc_conv_result_t* *result)

Get the result in conversion FIFO using blocking method.

Parameters

- base – LPADC peripheral base address.
- result – Pointer to structure variable that keeps the conversion result in conversion FIFO.

void LPADC_SetConvTriggerConfig(ADC_Type *base, uint32_t triggerId, const *lpadc_conv_trigger_config_t* *config)

Configure the conversion trigger source.

Each programmable trigger can launch the conversion command in command buffer.

Parameters

- base – LPADC peripheral base address.
- triggerId – ID for each trigger. Typically, the available value range is from 0.
- config – Pointer to configuration structure. See to lpadc_conv_trigger_config_t.

void LPADC_GetDefaultConvTriggerConfig(*lpadc_conv_trigger_config_t* *config)

Gets an available pre-defined settings for trigger's configuration.

This function initializes the trigger's configuration structure with an available settings. The default values are:

```
config->targetCommandId       = 0U;
config->delayPower            = 0U;
config->priority              = 0U;
config->channelAFIFOSelect    = 0U;
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
config->channelBFIFOSelect     = 0U;
config->enableHardwareTrigger  = false;
```

Parameters

- config – Pointer to configuration structure.

static inline void LPADC_DoSoftwareTrigger(ADC_Type *base, uint32_t triggerIdMask)

Do software trigger to conversion command.

Parameters

- base – LPADC peripheral base address.
- triggerIdMask – Mask value for software trigger indexes, which count from zero.

void LPADC_SetConvCommandConfig(ADC_Type *base, uint32_t commandId, const *lpadc_conv_command_config_t* *config)

Configure conversion command.

Note: The number of compare value register on different chips is different, that is mean in some chips, some command buffers do not have the compare functionality.

Parameters

- base – LPADC peripheral base address.
- commandId – ID for command in command buffer. Typically, the available value range is 1 - 15.
- config – Pointer to configuration structure. See to lpadc_conv_command_config_t.

void LPADC_GetDefaultConvCommandConfig(*lpadc_conv_command_config_t* *config)

Gets an available pre-defined settings for conversion command's configuration.

This function initializes the conversion command's configuration structure with an available settings. The default values are:

```
config->sampleScaleMode             = kLPADC_SampleFullScale;
config->channelBScaleMode           = kLPADC_SampleFullScale;
config->sampleChannelMode           = kLPADC_SampleChannelSingleEndSideA;
config->channelNumber               = 0U;
config->channelBNumber              = 0U;
config->chainedNextCommandNumber    = 0U;
config->enableAutoChannelIncrement = false;
config->loopCount                   = 0U;
config->hardwareAverageMode         = kLPADC_HardwareAverageCount1;
config->sampleTimeMode              = kLPADC_SampleTimeADCK3;
config->hardwareCompareMode         = kLPADC_HardwareCompareDisabled;
config->hardwareCompareValueHigh    = 0U;
config->hardwareCompareValueLow     = 0U;
config->conversionResolutionMode    = kLPADC_ConversionResolutionStandard;
config->enableWaitTrigger           = false;
config->enableChannelB              = false;
```

Parameters

- config – Pointer to configuration structure.

void LPADC_EnableCalibration(ADC_Type *base, bool enable)

Enable the calibration function.

When CALOFS is set, the ADC is configured to perform a calibration function anytime the ADC executes a conversion. Any channel selected is ignored and the value returned in the RESFIFO is a signed value between -31 and 31. -32 is not a valid and is never a returned value. Software should copy the lower 6- bits of the conversion result stored in the RESFIFO after a completed calibration conversion to the OFSTRIM field. The OFSTRIM field is used in normal operation for offset correction.

Parameters

- base – LPADC peripheral base address.
- enable – switcher to the calibration function.

static inline void LPADC_SetOffsetValue(ADC_Type *base, uint32_t value)

Set proper offset value to trim ADC.

To minimize the offset during normal operation, software should read the conversion result from the RESFIFO calibration operation and write the lower 6 bits to the OFSTRIM register.

Parameters

- base – LPADC peripheral base address.
- value – Setting offset value.

status_t LPADC_DoAutoCalibration(ADC_Type *base)

Do auto calibration.

Calibration function should be executed before using converter in application. It used the software trigger and a dummy conversion, get the offset and write them into the OFSTRIM register. It called some of functional API including: -LPADC_EnableCalibration(...) -LPADC_LPADC_SetOffsetValue(...) -LPADC_SetConvCommandConfig(...) -LPADC_SetConvTriggerConfig(...)

Parameters

- base – LPADC peripheral base address.
- base – LPADC peripheral base address.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Successfully configured.
- kStatus_Timeout – Timeout occurs while waiting completion.

static inline void LPADC_EnableOffsetCalibration(ADC_Type *base, bool enable)

Enable the offset calibration function.

Parameters

- base – LPADC peripheral base address.
- enable – switcher to the calibration function.

static inline void LPADC_SetOffsetCalibrationMode(ADC_Type *base,
lpadc_offset_calibration_mode_t mode)

Set offset calibration mode.

Parameters

- base – LPADC peripheral base address.
- mode – set offset calibration mode.see to lpadc_offset_calibration_mode_t .

status_t LPADC_DoOffsetCalibration(ADC_Type *base)

Do offset calibration.

Parameters

- base – LPADC peripheral base address.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Successfully configured.
- kStatus_Timeout – Timeout occurs while waiting completion.

void LPADC_PrepareAutoCalibration(ADC_Type *base)

Prepare auto calibration, LPADC_FinishAutoCalibration has to be called before using the LPADC. LPADC_DoAutoCalibration has been split in two API to avoid to be stuck too long in the function.

Parameters

- base – LPADC peripheral base address.

status_t LPADC_FinishAutoCalibration(ADC_Type *base)

Finish auto calibration start with LPADC_PrepareAutoCalibration.

Note: This feature is used for LPADC with CTRL[CALOFSMODE].

Parameters

- base – LPADC peripheral base address.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Successfully configured.
- kStatus_Timeout – Timeout occurs while waiting completion.

void LPADC_GetCalibrationValue(ADC_Type *base, *lpadc_calibration_value_t* *ptrCalibrationValue)

Get calibration value into the memory which is defined by invoker.

Note: Please note the ADC will be disabled temporary.

Note: This function should be used after finish calibration.

Parameters

- base – LPADC peripheral base address.
- ptrCalibrationValue – Pointer to lpadc_calibration_value_t structure, this memory block should be always powered on even in low power modes.

status_t LPADC_SetCalibrationValue(ADC_Type *base, const *lpadc_calibration_value_t* *ptrCalibrationValue)

Set calibration value into ADC calibration registers.

Note: Please note the ADC will be disabled temporary.

Parameters

- base – LPADC peripheral base address.
- ptrCalibrationValue – Pointer to lpadc_calibration_value_t structure which contains ADC's calibration value.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Successfully configured.
- kStatus_Timeout – Timeout occurs while waiting completion.

FSL_LPADC_DRIVER_VERSION

LPADC driver version 2.9.3.

struct lpadc_config_t

#include <fsl_lpadc.h> LPADC global configuration.

This structure would used to keep the settings for initialization.

Public Members

bool enableInternalClock

Enables the internally generated clock source. The clock source is used in clock selection logic at the chip level and is optionally used for the ADC clock source.

bool enableVref1LowVoltage

If voltage reference option1 input is below 1.8V, it should be "true". If voltage reference option1 input is above 1.8V, it should be "false".

bool enableInDozeMode

Control system transition to Stop and Wait power modes while ADC is converting. When enabled in Doze mode, immediate entries to Wait or Stop are allowed. When disabled, the ADC will wait for the current averaging iteration/FIFO storage to complete before acknowledging stop or wait mode entry.

lpadc_conversion_average_mode_t conversionAverageMode

Auto-Calibration Averages.

bool enableAnalogPreliminary

ADC analog circuits are pre-enabled and ready to execute conversions without startup delays(at the cost of higher DC current consumption).

uint32_t powerUpDelay

When the analog circuits are not pre-enabled, the ADC analog circuits are only powered while the ADC is active and there is a counted delay defined by this field after an initial trigger transitions the ADC from its Idle state to allow time for the analog circuits to stabilize. The startup delay count of (powerUpDelay * 4) ADCK cycles must result in a longer delay than the analog startup time.

lpadc_reference_voltage_source_t referenceVoltageSource

Selects the voltage reference high used for conversions.

lpadc_power_level_mode_t powerLevelMode

Power Configuration Selection.

lpadc_trigger_priority_policy_t triggerPriorityPolicy

Control how higher priority triggers are handled, see to lpadc_trigger_priority_policy_t.

bool enableConvPause

Enables the ADC pausing function. When enabled, a programmable delay is inserted during command execution sequencing between LOOP iterations, between commands in a sequence, and between conversions when command is executing in “Compare Until True” configuration.

uint32_t convPauseDelay

Controls the duration of pausing during command execution sequencing. The pause delay is a count of (convPauseDelay*4) ADCK cycles. Only available when ADC pausing function is enabled. The available value range is in 9-bit.

uint32_t FIFOWatermark

FIFOWatermark is a programmable threshold setting. When the number of datawords stored in the ADC Result FIFO is greater than the value in this field, the ready flag would be asserted to indicate stored data has reached the programmable threshold.

struct lpadc_conv_command_config_t

#include <fsl_lpadc.h> Define structure to keep the configuration for conversion command.

Public Members

lpadc_sample_scale_mode_t sampleScaleMode

Sample scale mode.

lpadc_sample_scale_mode_t channelBScaleMode

Alternate channe B Scale mode.

lpadc_sample_channel_mode_t sampleChannelMode

Channel sample mode.

uint32_t channelNumber

Channel number, select the channel or channel pair.

uint32_t channelBNumber

Alternate Channel B number, select the channel.

uint32_t chainedNextCommandNumber

Selects the next command to be executed after this command completes. 1-15 is available, 0 is to terminate the chain after this command.

bool enableAutoChannelIncrement

Loop with increment: when disabled, the “loopCount” field selects the number of times the selected channel is converted consecutively; when enabled, the “loopCount” field defines how many consecutive channels are converted as part of the command execution.

uint32_t loopCount

Selects how many times this command executes before finish and transition to the next command or Idle state. Command executes LOOP+1 times. 0-15 is available.

lpadc_hardware_average_mode_t hardwareAverageMode

Hardware average selection.

lpadc_sample_time_mode_t sampleTimeMode

Sample time selection.

lpadc_hardware_compare_mode_t hardwareCompareMode

Hardware compare selection.

uint32_t hardwareCompareValueHigh

Compare Value High. The available value range is in 16-bit.

uint32_t hardwareCompareValueLow

Compare Value Low. The available value range is in 16-bit.

lpadc_conversion_resolution_mode_t conversionResolutionMode

Conversion resolution mode.

bool enableWaitTrigger

Wait for trigger assertion before execution: when disabled, this command will be automatically executed; when enabled, the active trigger must be asserted again before executing this command.

struct lpadc_conv_trigger_config_t

#include <fsl_lpadc.h> Define structure to keep the configuration for conversion trigger.

Public Members

uint32_t targetCommandId

Select the command from command buffer to execute upon detect of the associated trigger event.

uint32_t delayPower

Select the trigger delay duration to wait at the start of servicing a trigger event. When this field is clear, then no delay is incurred. When this field is set to a non-zero value, the duration for the delay is 2^delayPower ADCK cycles. The available value range is 4-bit.

uint32_t priority

Sets the priority of the associated trigger source. If two or more triggers have the same priority level setting, the lower order trigger event has the higher priority. The lower value for this field is for the higher priority, the available value range is 1-bit.

bool enableHardwareTrigger

Enable hardware trigger source to initiate conversion on the rising edge of the input trigger source or not. THe software trigger is always available.

struct lpadc_conv_result_t

#include <fsl_lpadc.h> Define the structure to keep the conversion result.

Public Members

uint32_t commandIdSource

Indicate the command buffer being executed that generated this result.

uint32_t loopCountIndex

Indicate the loop count value during command execution that generated this result.

uint32_t triggerIdSource

Indicate the trigger source that initiated a conversion and generated this result.

uint16_t convValue

Data result.

struct __lpadc_calibration_value

#include <fsl_lpadc.h> A structure of calibration value.

2.54 GPIO: General Purpose I/O

void GPIO_PortInit(GPIO_Type *base, uint32_t port)

Initializes the GPIO peripheral.

This function ungates the GPIO clock.

Parameters

- base – GPIO peripheral base pointer.
- port – GPIO port number.

void GPIO_PinInit(GPIO_Type *base, uint32_t port, uint32_t pin, const *gpio_pin_config_t* *config)

Initializes a GPIO pin used by the board.

To initialize the GPIO, define a pin configuration, either input or output, in the user file. Then, call the GPIO_PinInit() function.

This is an example to define an input pin or output pin configuration:

```
Define a digital input pin configuration,
gpio_pin_config_t config =
{
  kGPIO_DigitalInput,
  0,
}
Define a digital output pin configuration,
gpio_pin_config_t config =
{
  kGPIO_DigitalOutput,
  0,
}
```

Parameters

- base – GPIO peripheral base pointer(Typically GPIO)
- port – GPIO port number
- pin – GPIO pin number
- config – GPIO pin configuration pointer

static inline void GPIO_PinWrite(GPIO_Type *base, uint32_t port, uint32_t pin, uint8_t output)

Sets the output level of the one GPIO pin to the logic 1 or 0.

Parameters

- base – GPIO peripheral base pointer(Typically GPIO)
- port – GPIO port number
- pin – GPIO pin number
- output – GPIO pin output logic level.
  - 0: corresponding pin output low-logic level.
  - 1: corresponding pin output high-logic level.

static inline uint32_t GPIO_PinRead(GPIO_Type *base, uint32_t port, uint32_t pin)

Reads the current input value of the GPIO PIN.

Parameters

- base – GPIO peripheral base pointer(Typically GPIO)

- port – GPIO port number
- pin – GPIO pin number

Return values

GPIO – port input value

- 0: corresponding pin input low-logic level.
- 1: corresponding pin input high-logic level.

FSL_GPIO_DRIVER_VERSION

LPC GPIO driver version.

enum _gpio_pin_direction

LPC GPIO direction definition.

Values:

enumerator kGPIO_DigitalInput

Set current pin as digital input

enumerator kGPIO_DigitalOutput

Set current pin as digital output

enum _gpio_pin_enable_mode

GPIO Pin Interrupt enable mode.

Values:

enumerator kGPIO_PinIntEnableLevel

Generate Pin Interrupt on level mode

enumerator kGPIO_PinIntEnableEdge

Generate Pin Interrupt on edge mode

enum _gpio_pin_enable_polarity

GPIO Pin Interrupt enable polarity.

Values:

enumerator kGPIO_PinIntEnableHighOrRise

Generate Pin Interrupt on high level or rising edge

enumerator kGPIO_PinIntEnableLowOrFall

Generate Pin Interrupt on low level or falling edge

enum _gpio_interrupt_index

LPC GPIO interrupt index definition.

Values:

enumerator kGPIO_InterruptA

Set current pin as interrupt A

enumerator kGPIO_InterruptB

Set current pin as interrupt B

typedef enum *_gpio_pin_direction* gpio_pin_direction_t

LPC GPIO direction definition.

typedef struct *_gpio_pin_config* gpio_pin_config_t

The GPIO pin configuration structure.

Every pin can only be configured as either output pin or input pin at a time. If configured as a input pin, then leave the outputConfig unused.

typedef enum *_gpio_pin_enable_mode* gpio_pin_enable_mode_t
GPIO Pin Interrupt enable mode.

typedef enum *_gpio_pin_enable_polarity* gpio_pin_enable_polarity_t
GPIO Pin Interrupt enable polarity.

typedef enum *_gpio_interrupt_index* gpio_interrupt_index_t
LPC GPIO interrupt index definition.

typedef struct *_gpio_interrupt_config* gpio_interrupt_config_t
Configures the interrupt generation condition.

static inline void GPIO_PortSet(GPIO_Type *base, uint32_t port, uint32_t mask)
Sets the output level of the multiple GPIO pins to the logic 1.

Parameters

- base – GPIO peripheral base pointer(Typically GPIO)
- port – GPIO port number
- mask – GPIO pin number macro

static inline void GPIO_PortClear(GPIO_Type *base, uint32_t port, uint32_t mask)
Sets the output level of the multiple GPIO pins to the logic 0.

Parameters

- base – GPIO peripheral base pointer(Typically GPIO)
- port – GPIO port number
- mask – GPIO pin number macro

static inline void GPIO_PortToggle(GPIO_Type *base, uint32_t port, uint32_t mask)
Reverses current output logic of the multiple GPIO pins.

Parameters

- base – GPIO peripheral base pointer(Typically GPIO)
- port – GPIO port number
- mask – GPIO pin number macro

GPIO_PIN_INT_LEVEL

GPIO_PIN_INT_EDGE

PINT_PIN_INT_HIGH_OR_RISE_TRIGGER

PINT_PIN_INT_LOW_OR_FALL_TRIGGER

struct __gpio_pin_config
#include <fsl_gpio.h> The GPIO pin configuration structure.

Every pin can only be configured as either output pin or input pin at a time. If configured as a input pin, then leave the outputConfig unused.

Public Members

gpio_pin_direction_t pinDirection
GPIO direction, input or output

uint8_t outputLogic
Set default output logic, no use in input

struct _gpio_interrupt_config

#include <fsl_gpio.h> Configures the interrupt generation condition.

2.55 MIPI DSI Driver

void DSI_Init(MIPI_DSI_HOST_Type *base, const *dsi_config_t* *config)

Initializes an MIPI DSI host with the user configuration.

This function initializes the MIPI DSI host with the configuration, it should be called first before other MIPI DSI driver functions.

Parameters

- base – MIPI DSI host peripheral base address.
- config – Pointer to a user-defined configuration structure.

void DSI_Deinit(MIPI_DSI_HOST_Type *base)

Deinitializes an MIPI DSI host.

This function should be called after all bother MIPI DSI driver functions.

Parameters

- base – MIPI DSI host peripheral base address.

void DSI_GetDefaultConfig(*dsi_config_t* *config)

Get the default configuration to initialize the MIPI DSI host.

The default value is:

```
config->numLanes = 4;
config->enableNonContinuousHsClk = false;
config->enableTxUlps = false;
config->autoInsertEoTp = true;
config->numExtraEoTp = 0;
config->htxTo_ByteClk = 0;
config->lrxHostTo_ByteClk = 0;
config->btaTo_ByteClk = 0;
```

Parameters

- config – Pointer to a user-defined configuration structure.

void DSI_SetDpiConfig(MIPI_DSI_HOST_Type *base, const *dsi_dpi_config_t* *config, uint8_t numLanes, uint32_t dpiPixelClkFreq_Hz, uint32_t dsiHsBitClkFreq_Hz)

Configure the DPI interface core.

This function sets the DPI interface configuration, it should be used in video mode.

Parameters

- base – MIPI DSI host peripheral base address.
- config – Pointer to the DPI interface configuration.
- numLanes – Lane number, should be same with the setting in dsi_dpi_config_t.
- dpiPixelClkFreq_Hz – The DPI pixel clock frequency in Hz.
- dsiHsBitClkFreq_Hz – The DSI high speed bit clock frequency in Hz. It is the same with DPHY PLL output.

uint32_t DSI_InitDphy(MIPI_DSI_HOST_Type *base, const *dsi_dphy_config_t* *config, uint32_t refClkFreq_Hz)

Initializes the D-PHY.

This function configures the D-PHY timing and setups the D-PHY PLL based on user configuration. The configuration structure could be got by the function DSI_GetDphyDefaultConfig.

For some platforms there is not dedicated D-PHY PLL, indicated by the macro FSL_FEATURE_MIPI_DSI_NO_DPHY_PLL. For these platforms, the refClkFreq_Hz is useless.

Parameters

- base – MIPI DSI host peripheral base address.
- config – Pointer to the D-PHY configuration.
- refClkFreq_Hz – The REFCLK frequency in Hz.

Returns

The actual D-PHY PLL output frequency. If could not configure the PLL to the target frequency, the return value is 0.

void DSI_DeinitDphy(MIPI_DSI_HOST_Type *base)

Deinitializes the D-PHY.

Power down the D-PHY PLL and shut down D-PHY.

Parameters

- base – MIPI DSI host peripheral base address.

void DSI_GetDphyDefaultConfig(*dsi_dphy_config_t* *config, uint32_t txHsBitClk_Hz, uint32_t txEscClk_Hz)

Get the default D-PHY configuration.

Gets the default D-PHY configuration, the timing parameters are set according to D-PHY specification. User could use the configuration directly, or change some parameters according to the special device.

Parameters

- config – Pointer to the D-PHY configuration.
- txHsBitClk_Hz – High speed bit clock in Hz.
- txEscClk_Hz – Esc clock in Hz.

static inline void DSI_EnableInterrupts(MIPI_DSI_HOST_Type *base, uint32_t intGroup1, uint32_t intGroup2)

Enable the interrupts.

The interrupts to enable are passed in as OR'ed mask value of _dsi_interrupt.

Parameters

- base – MIPI DSI host peripheral base address.
- intGroup1 – Interrupts to enable in group 1.
- intGroup2 – Interrupts to enable in group 2.

static inline void DSI_DisableInterrupts(MIPI_DSI_HOST_Type *base, uint32_t intGroup1, uint32_t intGroup2)

Disable the interrupts.

The interrupts to disable are passed in as OR'ed mask value of _dsi_interrupt.

Parameters

- base – MIPI DSI host peripheral base address.

- intGroup1 – Interrupts to disable in group 1.
- intGroup2 – Interrupts to disable in group 2.

static inline void DSI_GetAndClearInterruptStatus(MIPI_DSI_HOST_Type *base, uint32_t *intGroup1, uint32_t *intGroup2)

Get and clear the interrupt status.

Parameters

- base – MIPI DSI host peripheral base address.
- intGroup1 – Group 1 interrupt status.
- intGroup2 – Group 2 interrupt status.

static inline void DSI_SetDbiPixelFifoSendLevel(MIPI_DSI_HOST_Type *base, uint16_t sendLevel)

Configure the DBI pixel FIFO send level.

This controls the level at which the DBI Host bridge begins sending pixels

Parameters

- base – MIPI DSI host peripheral base address.
- sendLevel – Send level value set to register.

static inline void DSI_SetDbiPixelPayloadSize(MIPI_DSI_HOST_Type *base, uint16_t payloadSize)

Configure the DBI pixel payload size.

Configures maximum number of pixels that should be sent as one DSI packet. Recommended to be evenly divisible by the line size (in pixels).

Parameters

- base – MIPI DSI host peripheral base address.
- payloadSize – Payload size value set to register.

void DSI_SetApbPacketControl(MIPI_DSI_HOST_Type *base, uint16_t wordCount, uint8_t virtualChannel, *dsi_tx_data_type_t* dataType, uint8_t flags)

Configure the APB packet to send.

This function configures the next APB packet transfer. After configuration, the packet transfer could be started with function DSI_SendApbPacket. If the packet is long packet, Use DSI_WriteApbTxPayload to fill the payload before start transfer.

Parameters

- base – MIPI DSI host peripheral base address.
- wordCount – For long packet, this is the byte count of the payload. For short packet, this is (data1 « 8) | data0.
- virtualChannel – Virtual channel.
- dataType – The packet data type, (DI).
- flags – The transfer control flags, see _dsi_transfer_flags.

void DSI_WriteApbTxPayload(MIPI_DSI_HOST_Type *base, const uint8_t *payload, uint16_t payloadSize)

Fill the long APB packet payload.

Write the long packet payload to TX FIFO.

Parameters

- base – MIPI DSI host peripheral base address.

- payload – Pointer to the payload.
- payloadSize – Payload size in byte.

void DSI_WriteApbTxPayloadExt(MIPI_DSI_HOST_Type *base, const uint8_t *payload, uint16_t payloadSize, bool sendDcsCmd, uint8_t dcsCmd)

Extended function to fill the payload to TX FIFO.

Write the long packet payload to TX FIFO. This function could be used in two ways

a. Include the DCS command in parameter payload. In this case, the DCS command is the first byte of payload. The parameter sendDcsCmd is set to false, the dcsCmd is not used. This function is the same as DSI_WriteApbTxPayload when used in this way.
b. The DCS command in not in parameter payload, but specified by parameter dcsCmd. In this case, the parameter sendDcsCmd is set to true, the dcsCmd is the DCS command to send. The payload is sent after dcsCmd.

Parameters

- base – MIPI DSI host peripheral base address.
- payload – Pointer to the payload.
- payloadSize – Payload size in byte.
- sendDcsCmd – If set to true, the DCS command is specified by dcsCmd, otherwise the DCS command is included in the payload.
- dcsCmd – The DCS command to send, only used when sendDCSCmd is true.

void DSI_ReadApbRxPayload(MIPI_DSI_HOST_Type *base, uint8_t *payload, uint16_t payloadSize)

Read the long APB packet payload.

Read the long packet payload from RX FIFO. This function reads directly but does not check the RX FIFO status. Upper layer should make sure there are available data.

Parameters

- base – MIPI DSI host peripheral base address.
- payload – Pointer to the payload.
- payloadSize – Payload size in byte.

static inline void DSI_SendApbPacket(MIPI_DSI_HOST_Type *base)

Trigger the controller to send out APB packet.

Send the packet set by DSI_SetApbPacketControl.

Parameters

- base – MIPI DSI host peripheral base address.

static inline uint32_t DSI_GetApbStatus(MIPI_DSI_HOST_Type *base)

Get the APB status.

The return value is OR'ed value of _dsi_apb_status.

Parameters

- base – MIPI DSI host peripheral base address.

Returns

The APB status.

static inline uint32_t DSI_GetRxErrorStatus(MIPI_DSI_HOST_Type *base)

Get the error status during data transfer.

The return value is OR'ed value of _dsi_rx_error_status.

Parameters

- base – MIPI DSI host peripheral base address.

Returns

The error status.

static inline uint8_t DSI_GetEccRxErrorPosition(uint32_t rxErrorStatus)

Get the one-bit RX ECC error position.

When one-bit ECC RX error detected using DSI_GetRxErrorStatus, this function could be used to get the error bit position.

```
uint8_t eccErrorPos;
uint32_t rxErrorStatus = DSI_GetRxErrorStatus(MIPI_DSI);
if (kDSI_RxErrorEccOneBit & rxErrorStatus)
{
    eccErrorPos = DSI_GetEccRxErrorPosition(rxErrorStatus);
}
```

Parameters

- rxErrorStatus – The error status returned by DSI_GetRxErrorStatus.

Returns

The 1-bit ECC error position.

static inline uint32_t DSI_GetAndClearHostStatus(MIPI_DSI_HOST_Type *base)

Get and clear the DSI host status.

The host status are returned as mask value of _dsi_host_status.

Parameters

- base – MIPI DSI host peripheral base address.

Returns

The DSI host status.

static inline uint32_t DSI_GetRxPacketHeader(MIPI_DSI_HOST_Type *base)

Get the RX packet header.

Parameters

- base – MIPI DSI host peripheral base address.

Returns

The RX packet header.

static inline *dsi_rx_data_type_t* DSI_GetRxPacketType(uint32_t rxPktHeader)

Extract the RX packet type from the packet header.

Extract the RX packet type from the packet header get by DSI_GetRxPacketHeader.

Parameters

- rxPktHeader – The RX packet header get by DSI_GetRxPacketHeader.

Returns

The RX packet type.

static inline uint16_t DSI_GetRxPacketWordCount(uint32_t rxPktHeader)

Extract the RX packet word count from the packet header.

Extract the RX packet word count from the packet header get by DSI_GetRxPacketHeader.

Parameters

- rxPktHeader – The RX packet header get by DSI_GetRxPacketHeader.

Returns

For long packet, return the payload word count (byte). For short packet, return the (data0 « 8) | data1.

static inline uint8_t DSI_GetRxPacketVirtualChannel(uint32_t rxPktHeader)

Extract the RX packet virtual channel from the packet header.

Extract the RX packet virtual channel from the packet header get by DSI_GetRxPacketHeader.

Parameters

- rxPktHeader – The RX packet header get by DSI_GetRxPacketHeader.

Returns

The virtual channel.

status_t DSI_TransferBlocking(MIPI_DSI_HOST_Type *base, *dsi_transfer_t* *xfer)

APB data transfer using blocking method.

Perform APB data transfer using blocking method. This function waits until all data send or received, or timeout happens.

When using this API to read data, the actually read data count could be got from xfer->rxDataSize.

Parameters

- base – MIPI DSI host peripheral base address.
- xfer – Pointer to the transfer structure.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Data transfer finished with no error.
- kStatus_Timeout – Transfer failed because of timeout.
- kStatus_DSI_RxDataError – RX data error, user could use DSI_GetRxErrorStatus to check the error details.
- kStatus_DSI_ErrorReportReceived – Error Report packet received, user could use DSI_GetAndClearHostStatus to check the error report status.
- kStatus_DSI_NotSupported – Transfer format not supported.
- kStatus_DSI_Fail – Transfer failed for other reasons.

status_t DSI_TransferCreateHandle(MIPI_DSI_HOST_Type *base, *dsi_handle_t* *handle, *dsi_callback_t* callback, void *userData)

Create the MIPI DSI handle.

This function initializes the MIPI DSI handle which can be used for other transactional APIs.

Parameters

- base – MIPI DSI host peripheral base address.
- handle – Handle pointer.
- callback – Callback function.
- userData – User data.

status_t DSI_TransferNonBlocking(MIPI_DSI_HOST_Type *base, *dsi_handle_t* *handle, *dsi_transfer_t* *xfer)

APB data transfer using interrupt method.

Perform APB data transfer using interrupt method, when transfer finished, upper layer could be informed through callback function.

When using this API to read data, the actually read data count could be got from handle->xfer->rxDataSize after read finished.

Parameters

- base – MIPI DSI host peripheral base address.
- handle – pointer to dsi_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state.
- xfer – Pointer to the transfer structure.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Data transfer started successfully.
- kStatus_DSI_Busy – Failed to start transfer because DSI is busy with pervious transfer.
- kStatus_DSI_NotSupported – Transfer format not supported.

void DSI_TransferAbort(MIPI_DSI_HOST_Type *base, *dsi_handle_t* *handle)

Abort current APB data transfer.

Parameters

- base – MIPI DSI host peripheral base address.
- handle – pointer to dsi_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state.

void DSI_TransferHandleIRQ(MIPI_DSI_HOST_Type *base, *dsi_handle_t* *handle)

Interrupt handler for the DSI.

Parameters

- base – MIPI DSI host peripheral base address.
- handle – pointer to dsi_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state.

FSL_MIPI_DSI_DRIVER_VERSION

Error codes for the MIPI DSI driver.

Values:

enumerator kStatus_DSI_Busy

DSI is busy.

enumerator kStatus_DSI_RxDataError

Read data error.

enumerator kStatus_DSI_ErrorReportReceived

Error report package received.

enumerator kStatus_DSI_NotSupported

The transfer type not supported.

enum _dsi_dpi_color_coding

MIPI DPI interface color coding.

Values:

enumerator kDSI_Dpi16BitConfig1
16-bit configuration 1. RGB565: XXXXXXXX_RRRRRGGG_GGGBBBBB.

enumerator kDSI_Dpi16BitConfig2
16-bit configuration 2. RGB565: XXXRRRRR_XXGGGGGG_XXXBBBBB.

enumerator kDSI_Dpi16BitConfig3
16-bit configuration 3. RGB565: XXRRRRRX_XXGGGGGG_XXBBBBBX.

enumerator kDSI_Dpi18BitConfig1
18-bit configuration 1. RGB666: XXXXXXRR_RRRRGGGG_GGBBBBBB.

enumerator kDSI_Dpi18BitConfig2
18-bit configuration 2. RGB666: XXRRRRRR_XXGGGGGG_XXBBBBBB.

enumerator kDSI_Dpi24Bit
24-bit.

enum _dsi_dpi_pixel_packet
MIPI DSI pixel packet type send through DPI interface.

Values:

enumerator kDSI_PixelPacket16Bit
16 bit RGB565.

enumerator kDSI_PixelPacket18Bit
18 bit RGB666 packed.

enumerator kDSI_PixelPacket18BitLoosely
18 bit RGB666 loosely packed into three bytes.

enumerator kDSI_PixelPacket24Bit
24 bit RGB888, each pixel uses three bytes.

_dsi_dpi_polarity_flag DPI signal polarity.

Values:

enumerator kDSI_DpiVsyncActiveLow
VSYNC active low.

enumerator kDSI_DpiHsyncActiveLow
HSYNC active low.

enumerator kDSI_DpiVsyncActiveHigh
VSYNC active high.

enumerator kDSI_DpiHsyncActiveHigh
HSYNC active high.

enum _dsi_dpi_video_mode
DPI video mode.

Values:

enumerator kDSI_DpiNonBurstWithSyncPulse
Non-Burst mode with Sync Pulses.

enumerator kDSI_DpiNonBurstWithSyncEvent
Non-Burst mode with Sync Events.

enumerator kDSI_DpiBurst
Burst mode.

enum _dsi_dpi_bllp_mode
Behavior in BLLP (Blanking or Low-Power Interval).

Values:

enumerator kDSI_DpiBllpLowPower
LP mode used in BLLP periods.

enumerator kDSI_DpiBllpBlanking
Blanking packets used in BLLP periods.

enumerator kDSI_DpiBllpNull
Null packets used in BLLP periods.

_dsi_apb_status Status of APB to packet interface.

Values:

enumerator kDSI_ApbNotIdle
State machine not idle

enumerator kDSI_ApbTxDone
Tx packet done

enumerator kDSI_ApbRxControl
DPHY direction 0 - tx had control, 1 - rx has control

enumerator kDSI_ApbTxOverflow
TX fifo overflow

enumerator kDSI_ApbTxUnderflow
TX fifo underflow

enumerator kDSI_ApbRxOverflow
RX fifo overflow

enumerator kDSI_ApbRxUnderflow
RX fifo underflow

enumerator kDSI_ApbRxHeaderReceived
RX packet header has been received

enumerator kDSI_ApbRxPacketReceived
All RX packet payload data has been received

_dsi_rx_error_status Host receive error status.

Values:

enumerator kDSI_RxErrorEccOneBit
ECC single bit error detected.

enumerator kDSI_RxErrorEccMultiBit
ECC multi bit error detected.

enumerator kDSI_RxErrorCrc
CRC error detected.

enumerator kDSI_RxErrorHtxTo
High Speed forward TX timeout detected.

enumerator kDSI_RxErrorLrxTo
Reverse Low power data receive timeout detected.

enumerator kDSI_RxErrorBtaTo
BTA timeout detected.

enum _dsi_host_status
DSI host controller status (status_out)

Values:

enumerator kDSI_HostSoTError
SoT error from peripheral error report.

enumerator kDSI_HostSoTSyncError
SoT Sync error from peripheral error report.

enumerator kDSI_HostEoTSyncError
EoT Sync error from peripheral error report.

enumerator kDSI_HostEscEntryCmdError
Escape Mode Entry Command Error from peripheral error report.

enumerator kDSI_HostLpTxSyncError
Low-power transmit Sync Error from peripheral error report.

enumerator kDSI_HostPeriphToError
Peripheral timeout error from peripheral error report.

enumerator kDSI_HostFalseControlError
False control error from peripheral error report.

enumerator kDSI_HostContentionDetected
Contention detected from peripheral error report.

enumerator kDSI_HostEccErrorOneBit
Single bit ECC error (corrected) from peripheral error report.

enumerator kDSI_HostEccErrorMultiBit
Multi bit ECC error (not corrected) from peripheral error report.

enumerator kDSI_HostChecksumError
Checksum error from peripheral error report.

enumerator kDSI_HostInvalidDataType
DSI data type not recognized.

enumerator kDSI_HostInvalidVcId
DSI VC ID invalid.

enumerator kDSI_HostInvalidTxLength
Invalid transmission length.

enumerator kDSI_HostProtocalViolation
DSI protocal violation.

enumerator kDSI_HostResetTriggerReceived
Reset trigger received.

enumerator kDSI_HostTearTriggerReceived
Tear effect trigger receive.

enumerator kDSI_HostAckTriggerReceived
Acknowledge trigger message received.

_dsi_interrupt DSI interrupt.

Values:

enumerator kDSI_InterruptGroup1ApbNotIdle
State machine not idle

enumerator kDSI_InterruptGroup1ApbTxDone
Tx packet done

enumerator kDSI_InterruptGroup1ApbRxControl
DPHY direction 0 - tx control, 1 - rx control

enumerator kDSI_InterruptGroup1ApbTxOverflow
TX fifo overflow

enumerator kDSI_InterruptGroup1ApbTxUnderflow
TX fifo underflow

enumerator kDSI_InterruptGroup1ApbRxOverflow
RX fifo overflow

enumerator kDSI_InterruptGroup1ApbRxUnderflow
RX fifo underflow

enumerator kDSI_InterruptGroup1ApbRxHeaderReceived
RX packet header has been received

enumerator kDSI_InterruptGroup1ApbRxPacketReceived
All RX packet payload data has been received

enumerator kDSI_InterruptGroup1SoTError
SoT error from peripheral error report.

enumerator kDSI_InterruptGroup1SoTSyncError
SoT Sync error from peripheral error report.

enumerator kDSI_InterruptGroup1EoTSyncError
EoT Sync error from peripheral error report.

enumerator kDSI_InterruptGroup1EscEntryCmdError
Escape Mode Entry Command Error from peripheral error report.

enumerator kDSI_InterruptGroup1LpTxSyncError
Low-power transmit Sync Error from peripheral error report.

enumerator kDSI_InterruptGroup1PeriphToError
Peripheral timeout error from peripheral error report.

enumerator kDSI_InterruptGroup1FalseControlError
False control error from peripheral error report.

enumerator kDSI_InterruptGroup1ContentionDetected
Contention detected from peripheral error report.

enumerator kDSI_InterruptGroup1EccErrorOneBit
Single bit ECC error (corrected) from peripheral error report.

enumerator kDSI_InterruptGroup1EccErrorMultiBit
Multi bit ECC error (not corrected) from peripheral error report.

enumerator kDSI_InterruptGroup1ChecksumError
Checksum error from peripheral error report.

enumerator kDSI_InterruptGroup1InvalidDataType
DSI data type not recognized.

enumerator kDSI_InterruptGroup1InvalidVcId
DSI VC ID invalid.

enumerator kDSI_InterruptGroup1InvalidTxLength
Invalid transmission length.

enumerator kDSI_InterruptGroup1ProtocalViolation
DSI protocal violation.

enumerator kDSI_InterruptGroup1ResetTriggerReceived
Reset trigger received.

enumerator kDSI_InterruptGroup1TearTriggerReceived
Tear effect trigger receive.

enumerator kDSI_InterruptGroup1AckTriggerReceived
Acknowledge trigger message received.

enumerator kDSI_InterruptGroup1HtxTo
High speed TX timeout.

enumerator kDSI_InterruptGroup1LrxTo
Low power RX timeout.

enumerator kDSI_InterruptGroup1BtaTo
Host BTA timeout.

enumerator kDSI_InterruptGroup2EccOneBit
Sinle bit ECC error.

enumerator kDSI_InterruptGroup2EccMultiBit
Multi bit ECC error.

enumerator kDSI_InterruptGroup2CrcError
CRC error.

enum _dsi_tx_data_type
DSI TX data type.

Values:

enumerator kDSI_TxDataVsyncStart
V Sync start.

enumerator kDSI_TxDataVsyncEnd
V Sync end.

enumerator kDSI_TxDataHsyncStart
H Sync start.

enumerator kDSI_TxDataHsyncEnd
H Sync end.

enumerator kDSI_TxDataEoTp
End of transmission packet.

enumerator kDSI_TxDataCmOff
Color mode off.

enumerator kDSI_TxDataCmOn
Color mode on.

enumerator kDSI_TxDataShutDownPeriph
Shut down peripheral.

enumerator kDSI_TxDataTurnOnPeriph
Turn on peripheral.

enumerator kDSI_TxDataGenShortWrNoParam
Generic Short WRITE, no parameters.

enumerator kDSI_TxDataGenShortWrOneParam
Generic Short WRITE, one parameter.

enumerator kDSI_TxDataGenShortWrTwoParam
Generic Short WRITE, two parameter.

enumerator kDSI_TxDataGenShortRdNoParam
Generic Short READ, no parameters.

enumerator kDSI_TxDataGenShortRdOneParam
Generic Short READ, one parameter.

enumerator kDSI_TxDataGenShortRdTwoParam
Generic Short READ, two parameter.

enumerator kDSI_TxDataDcsShortWrNoParam
DCS Short WRITE, no parameters.

enumerator kDSI_TxDataDcsShortWrOneParam
DCS Short WRITE, one parameter.

enumerator kDSI_TxDataDcsShortRdNoParam
DCS Short READ, no parameters.

enumerator kDSI_TxDataSetMaxReturnPktSize
Set the Maximum Return Packet Size.

enumerator kDSI_TxDataNull
Null Packet, no data.

enumerator kDSI_TxDataBlanking
Blanking Packet, no data.

enumerator kDSI_TxDataGenLongWr
Generic long write.

enumerator kDSI_TxDataDcsLongWr
DCS Long Write/write_LUT Command Packet.

enumerator kDSI_TxDataLooselyPackedPixel20BitYCbCr
Loosely Packed Pixel Stream, 20-bit YCbCr, 4:2:2 Format.

enumerator kDSI_TxDataPackedPixel24BitYCbCr
Packed Pixel Stream, 24-bit YCbCr, 4:2:2 Format.

enumerator kDSI_TxDataPackedPixel16BitYCbCr
Packed Pixel Stream, 16-bit YCbCr, 4:2:2 Format.

enumerator kDSI_TxDataPackedPixel30BitRGB
Packed Pixel Stream, 30-bit RGB, 10-10-10 Format.

enumerator kDSI_TxDataPackedPixel36BitRGB
Packed Pixel Stream, 36-bit RGB, 12-12-12 Format.

enumerator kDSI_TxDataPackedPixel12BitYCrCb
Packed Pixel Stream, 12-bit YCbCr, 4:2:0 Format.

enumerator kDSI_TxDataPackedPixel16BitRGB
Packed Pixel Stream, 16-bit RGB, 5-6-5 Format.

enumerator kDSI_TxDataPackedPixel18BitRGB
Packed Pixel Stream, 18-bit RGB, 6-6-6 Format.

enumerator kDSI_TxDataLooselyPackedPixel18BitRGB
Loosely Packed Pixel Stream, 18-bit RGB, 6-6-6 Format.

enumerator kDSI_TxDataPackedPixel24BitRGB
Packed Pixel Stream, 24-bit RGB, 8-8-8 Format.

enum _dsi_rx_data_type
DSI RX data type.

Values:

enumerator kDSI_RxDataAckAndErrorReport
Acknowledge and Error Report

enumerator kDSI_RxDataEoTp
End of Transmission packet.

enumerator kDSI_RxDataGenShortRdResponseOneByte
Generic Short READ Response, 1 byte returned.

enumerator kDSI_RxDataGenShortRdResponseTwoByte
Generic Short READ Response, 2 byte returned.

enumerator kDSI_RxDataGenLongRdResponse
Generic Long READ Response.

enumerator kDSI_RxDataDcsLongRdResponse
DCS Long READ Response.

enumerator kDSI_RxDataDcsShortRdResponseOneByte
DCS Short READ Response, 1 byte returned.

enumerator kDSI_RxDataDcsShortRdResponseTwoByte
DCS Short READ Response, 2 byte returned.

_dsi_transfer_flags DSI transfer control flags.

Values:

enumerator kDSI_TransferUseHighSpeed
Use high speed mode or not.

enumerator kDSI_TransferPerformBTA
Perform BTA or not.

typedef struct *_dsi_config* dsi_config_t
MIPI DSI controller configuration.

typedef enum *_dsi_dpi_color_coding* dsi_dpi_color_coding_t
MIPI DPI interface color coding.

typedef enum *_dsi_dpi_pixel_packet* dsi_dpi_pixel_packet_t
MIPI DSI pixel packet type send through DPI interface.

typedef enum *_dsi_dpi_video_mode* dsi_dpi_video_mode_t
DPI video mode.

typedef enum *_dsi_dpi_bllp_mode* dsi_dpi_bllp_mode_t
Behavior in BLLP (Blanking or Low-Power Interval).

typedef struct *_dsi_dpi_config* dsi_dpi_config_t
MIPI DSI controller DPI interface configuration.

typedef struct *_dsi_dphy_config* dsi_dphy_config_t
MIPI DSI D-PHY configuration.

typedef enum *_dsi_tx_data_type* dsi_tx_data_type_t
DSI TX data type.

typedef enum *_dsi_rx_data_type* dsi_rx_data_type_t
DSI RX data type.

typedef struct *_dsi_transfer* dsi_transfer_t
Structure for the data transfer.

typedef struct *_dsi_handle* dsi_handle_t
MIPI DSI transfer handle.

typedef void (*dsi_callback_t)(MIPI_DSI_HOST_Type *base, *dsi_handle_t* *handle, *status_t* status, void *userData)
MIPI DSI callback for finished transfer.

When transfer finished, one of these status values will be passed to the user:

- kStatus_Success Data transfer finished with no error.
- kStatus_Timeout Transfer failed because of timeout.
- kStatus_DSI_RxDataError RX data error, user could use DSI_GetRxErrorStatus to check the error details.
- kStatus_DSI_ErrorReportReceived Error Report packet received, user could use DSI_GetAndClearHostStatus to check the error report status.
- kStatus_Fail Transfer failed for other reasons.

FSL_DSI_TX_MAX_PAYLOAD_BYTE

FSL_DSI_RX_MAX_PAYLOAD_BYTE

struct _dsi_config
#include <fsl_mipi_dsi.h> MIPI DSI controller configuration.

Public Members

uint8_t numLanes
: Number of lanes.

bool enableNonContinuousHsClk
: In enabled, the high speed clock will enter low power mode between transmissions.

bool enableTxUlps
: Enable the TX ULPS.

bool autoInsertEoTp
: Insert an EoTp short package when switching from HS to LP.

uint8_t numExtraEoTp
: How many extra EoTp to send after the end of a packet.

uint32_t htxTo_ByteClk
: HS TX timeout count (HTX_TO) in byte clock.

uint32_t lrxHostTo_ByteClk
: LP RX host timeout count (LRX-H_TO) in byte clock.

uint32_t btaTo_ByteClk
: Bus turn around timeout count (TA_TO) in byte clock.

struct _dsi_dpi_config
: *#include <fsl_mipi_dsi.h>* MIPI DSI controller DPI interface configuration.

Public Members

uint16_t pixelPayloadSize
: Maximum number of pixels that should be sent as one DSI packet. Recommended that the line size (in pixels) is evenly divisible by this parameter.

dsi_dpi_color_coding_t dpiColorCoding
: DPI color coding.

dsi_dpi_pixel_packet_t pixelPacket
: Pixel packet format.

dsi_dpi_video_mode_t videoMode
: Video mode.

dsi_dpi_bllp_mode_t bllpMode
: Behavior in BLLP.

uint8_t polarityFlags
: OR'ed value of _dsi_dpi_polarity_flag controls signal polarity.

uint16_t hfp
: Horizontal front porch, in dpi pixel clock.

uint16_t hbp
: Horizontal back porch, in dpi pixel clock.

uint16_t hsw
: Horizontal sync width, in dpi pixel clock.

uint8_t vfp
: Number of lines in vertical front porch.

uint8_t vbp

Number of lines in vertical back porch.

uint16_t panelHeight

Line number in vertical active area.

uint8_t virtualChannel

Virtual channel.

struct _dsi_dphy_config

#include <fsl_mipi_dsi.h> MIPI DSI D-PHY configuration.

Public Members

uint32_t txHsBitClk_Hz

The generated HS TX bit clock in Hz.

uint8_t tClkPre_ByteClk

TLPX + TCLK-PREPARE + TCLK-ZERO + TCLK-PRE in byte clock. Set how long the controller will wait after enabling clock lane for HS before enabling data lanes for HS.

uint8_t tClkPost_ByteClk

TCLK-POST + T_CLK-TRAIL in byte clock. Set how long the controller will wait before putting clock lane into LP mode after data lanes detected in stop state.

uint8_t tHsExit_ByteClk

THS-EXIT in byte clock. Set how long the controller will wait after the clock lane has been put into LP mode before enabling clock lane for HS again.

uint32_t tWakeup_EscClk

Number of clk_esc clock periods to keep a clock or data lane in Mark-1 state after exiting ULPS.

uint8_t tHsPrepare_HalfEscClk

THS-PREPARE in clk_esc/2. Set how long to drive the LP-00 state before HS transmissions, available values are 2, 3, 4, 5.

uint8_t tClkPrepare_HalfEscClk

TCLK-PREPARE in clk_esc/2. Set how long to drive the LP-00 state before HS transmissions, available values are 2, 3.

uint8_t tHsZero_ByteClk

THS-ZERO in clk_byte. Set how long that controller drives data lane HS-0 state before transmit the Sync sequence. Available values are 6, 7, ..., 37.

uint8_t tClkZero_ByteClk

TCLK-ZERO in clk_byte. Set how long that controller drives clock lane HS-0 state before transmit the Sync sequence. Available values are 3, 4, ..., 66.

uint8_t tHsTrail_ByteClk

THS-TRAIL + 4*UI in clk_byte. Set the time of the flipped differential state after last payload data bit of HS transmission burst. Available values are 0, 1, ..., 15.

uint8_t tClkTrail_ByteClk

TCLK-TRAIL + 4*UI in clk_byte. Set the time of the flipped differential state after last payload data bit of HS transmission burst. Available values are 0, 1, ..., 15.

struct _dsi_transfer

#include <fsl_mipi_dsi.h> Structure for the data transfer.

Public Members

uint8_t virtualChannel
: Virtual channel.

dsi_tx_data_type_t txDataType
: TX data type.

uint8_t flags
: Flags to control the transfer, see _dsi_transfer_flags.

const uint8_t *txData
: The TX data buffer.

uint8_t *rxData
: The RX data buffer.

uint16_t txDataSize
: Size of the TX data.

uint16_t rxDataSize
: Size of the RX data.

bool sendDcsCmd
: If set to true, the DCS command is specified by dcsCmd, otherwise the DCS command is included in the txData.

uint8_t dcsCmd
: The DCS command to send, only valid when sendDcsCmd is true.

struct __dsi__handle
: *#include <fsl_mipi_dsi.h>* MIPI DSI transfer handle structure.

Public Members

volatile bool isBusy
: MIPI DSI is busy with APB data transfer.

dsi_transfer_t xfer
: Transfer information.

dsi_callback_t callback
: DSI callback

void *userData
: Callback parameter

2.56 MIPI_DSI: MIPI DSI Host Controller

2.57 MIPI DSI SMARTDMA driver

status_t DSI_TransferCreateHandleSMARTDMA(MIPI_DSI_HOST_Type *base,
dsi_smartdma_handle_t *handle,
dsi_smartdma_callback_t callback, void *userData)

Create the MIPI DSI SMARTDMA handle.

Parameters

- base – MIPI DSI host peripheral base address.
- handle – Handle pointer.
- callback – Callback function.
- userData – User data.

status_t DSI_TransferWriteMemorySMARTDMA(MIPI_DSI_HOST_Type *base, *dsi_smartdma_handle_t* *handle, *dsi_smartdma_write_mem_transfer_t* *xfer)

Write display controller video memory using SMARTDMA.

Perform data transfer using SMARTDMA, when transfer finished, upper layer could be informed through callback function.

Parameters

- base – MIPI DSI host peripheral base address.
- handle – pointer to dsi_smartdma_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state.
- xfer – Pointer to the transfer structure.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Data transfer started successfully.
- kStatus_DSI_Busy – Failed to start transfer because DSI is busy with pervious transfer.
- kStatus_DSI_NotSupported – Transfer format not supported.

void DSI_TransferAbortSMARTDMA(MIPI_DSI_HOST_Type *base, *dsi_smartdma_handle_t* *handle)

Abort current APB data transfer.

Parameters

- base – MIPI DSI host peripheral base address.
- handle – pointer to dsi_smartdma_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state.

FSL_MIPI_DSI_SMARTDMA_DRIVER_VERSION

enum _dsi_smartdma_input_pixel_format

The pixel format feed SMARTDMA.

Values:

enumerator kDSI_SMARTDMA_InputPixelFormatRGB565

RGB565.

enumerator kDSI_SMARTDMA_InputPixelFormatRGB888

RGB888.

enumerator kDSI_SMARTDMA_InputPixelFormatXRGB8888

XRGB8888.

enum _dsi_smartdma_output_pixel_format

The pixel format sent on MIPI DSI data lanes.

Values:

enumerator kDSI_SMARTDMA_OutputPixelFormatRGB565

RGB565.

enumerator kDSI_SMARTDMA_OutputPixelFormatRGB888
RGB888.

typedef struct *_dsi_smartdma_handle* dsi_smartdma_handle_t

typedef void (*dsi_smartdma_callback_t)(MIPI_DSI_HOST_Type *base, *dsi_smartdma_handle_t* *handle, *status_t* status, void *userData)
MIPI DSI callback for finished transfer.

When transfer finished, one of these status values will be passed to the user:

- kStatus_Success Data transfer finished with no error.

typedef enum *_dsi_smartdma_input_pixel_format* dsi_smartdma_input_pixel_format_t
The pixel format feed SMARTDMA.

typedef enum *_dsi_smartdma_output_pixel_format* dsi_smartdma_output_pixel_format_t
The pixel format sent on MIPI DSI data lanes.

typedef struct *_dsi_smartdma_write_mem_transfer* dsi_smartdma_write_mem_transfer_t
The pixel format sent on MIPI DSI data lanes.

struct __dsi_smartdma_write_mem_transfer
#include <fsl_mipi_dsi_smartdma.h> The pixel format sent on MIPI DSI data lanes.

Public Members

dsi_smartdma_input_pixel_format_t inputFormat
Input format.

dsi_smartdma_output_pixel_format_t outputFormat
Output format.

const uint8_t *data
Pointer to the data to send.

bool twoDimension
Whether to use 2-dimensional transfer.

size_t dataSize
The byte count to be write. In 2-dimensional transfer, this parameter is ignored.

size_t minorLoop
SRC data transfer byte count in a minor loop, only used in 2-dimensional transfer.

size_t minorLoopOffset
SRC data byte offset added after a minor loop, only used in 2-dimensional transfer.

size_t majorLoop
SRC data transfer in a major loop of maw many minor loop is transfered, only used in 2-dimensional transfer.

uint8_t virtualChannel
Virtual channel used in the transfer, current driver always use channel 0, added for future enhancement.

bool disablePixelByteSwap
If set to true, the pixels are filled to MIPI DSI FIFO directly. If set to false, the pixel bytes are swapped then filled to MIPI DSI FIFO. For example, when set to false and frame buffer pixel format is RGB565: LSB MSB B0 B1 B2 B3 B4 G0 G1 G2 | G3 G4 G5 R0 R1 R2 R3 R4 Then the pixel filled to DSI FIFO is: LSB MSB G3 G4 G5 R0 R1 R2 R3 R4 | B0 B1 B2 B3 B4 G0 G1 G2

struct _dsi_smartdma_handle

#include <fsl_mipi_dsi_smartdma.h> MIPI DSI transfer handle structure.

Public Members

MIPI_DSI_HOST_Type *dsi

MIPI DSI peripheral.

volatile bool isBusy

MIPI DSI is busy with data transfer.

dsi_smartdma_callback_t callback

DSI callback

void *userData

Callback parameter

uint32_t smartdmaStack[16]

Stack for smartdma function.

union ___unnamed34___

Public Members

smartdma_dsi_param_t param

Parameter for smartdma function.

smartdma_dsi_2d_param_t param2d

Parameter for 2-dimensional smartdma function.

2.58 MRT: Multi-Rate Timer

void MRT_Init(MRT_Type *base, const *mrt_config_t* *config)

Ungates the MRT clock and configures the peripheral for basic operation.

Note: This API should be called at the beginning of the application using the MRT driver.

Parameters

- base – Multi-Rate timer peripheral base address
- config – Pointer to user's MRT config structure. If MRT has MULTITASK bit field in MODCFG reigster, param config is useless.

void MRT_Deinit(MRT_Type *base)

Gate the MRT clock.

Parameters

- base – Multi-Rate timer peripheral base address

static inline void MRT_GetDefaultConfig(*mrt_config_t* *config)

Fill in the MRT config struct with the default settings.

The default values are:

```
config->enableMultiTask = false;
```

Parameters

- config – Pointer to user's MRT config structure.

static inline void MRT_SetupChannelMode(MRT_Type *base, *mrt_chnl_t* channel, const *mrt_timer_mode_t* mode)

Sets up an MRT channel mode.

Parameters

- base – Multi-Rate timer peripheral base address
- channel – Channel that is being configured.
- mode – Timer mode to use for the channel.

static inline void MRT_EnableInterrupts(MRT_Type *base, *mrt_chnl_t* channel, uint32_t mask)

Enables the MRT interrupt.

Parameters

- base – Multi-Rate timer peripheral base address
- channel – Timer channel number
- mask – The interrupts to enable. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration mrt_interrupt_enable_t

static inline void MRT_DisableInterrupts(MRT_Type *base, *mrt_chnl_t* channel, uint32_t mask)

Disables the selected MRT interrupt.

Parameters

- base – Multi-Rate timer peripheral base address
- channel – Timer channel number
- mask – The interrupts to disable. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration mrt_interrupt_enable_t

static inline uint32_t MRT_GetEnabledInterrupts(MRT_Type *base, *mrt_chnl_t* channel)

Gets the enabled MRT interrupts.

Parameters

- base – Multi-Rate timer peripheral base address
- channel – Timer channel number

Returns

The enabled interrupts. This is the logical OR of members of the enumeration mrt_interrupt_enable_t

static inline uint32_t MRT_GetStatusFlags(MRT_Type *base, *mrt_chnl_t* channel)

Gets the MRT status flags.

Parameters

- base – Multi-Rate timer peripheral base address
- channel – Timer channel number

Returns

The status flags. This is the logical OR of members of the enumeration mrt_status_flags_t

static inline void MRT_ClearStatusFlags(MRT_Type *base, *mrt_chnl_t* channel, uint32_t mask)

Clears the MRT status flags.

Parameters

- base – Multi-Rate timer peripheral base address
- channel – Timer channel number
- mask – The status flags to clear. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration mrt_status_flags_t

void MRT_UpdateTimerPeriod(MRT_Type *base, *mrt_chnl_t* channel, uint32_t count, bool immediateLoad)

Used to update the timer period in units of count.

The new value will be immediately loaded or will be loaded at the end of the current time interval. For one-shot interrupt mode the new value will be immediately loaded.

Note: User can call the utility macros provided in fsl_common.h to convert to ticks

Parameters

- base – Multi-Rate timer peripheral base address
- channel – Timer channel number
- count – Timer period in units of ticks
- immediateLoad – true: Load the new value immediately into the TIMER register; false: Load the new value at the end of current timer interval

static inline uint32_t MRT_GetCurrentTimerCount(MRT_Type *base, *mrt_chnl_t* channel)

Reads the current timer counting value.

This function returns the real-time timer counting value, in a range from 0 to a timer period.

Note: User can call the utility macros provided in fsl_common.h to convert ticks to usec or msec

Parameters

- base – Multi-Rate timer peripheral base address
- channel – Timer channel number

Returns

Current timer counting value in ticks

static inline void MRT_StartTimer(MRT_Type *base, *mrt_chnl_t* channel, uint32_t count)

Starts the timer counting.

After calling this function, timers load period value, counts down to 0 and depending on the timer mode it will either load the respective start value again or stop.

Note: User can call the utility macros provided in fsl_common.h to convert to ticks

Parameters

- base – Multi-Rate timer peripheral base address
- channel – Timer channel number.

- count – Timer period in units of ticks. Count can contain the LOAD bit, which control the force load feature.

static inline void MRT_StopTimer(MRT_Type *base, *mrt_chnl_t* channel)

Stops the timer counting.

This function stops the timer from counting.

Parameters

- base – Multi-Rate timer peripheral base address
- channel – Timer channel number.

static inline uint32_t MRT_GetIdleChannel(MRT_Type *base)

Find the available channel.

This function returns the lowest available channel number.

Parameters

- base – Multi-Rate timer peripheral base address

static inline void MRT_ReleaseChannel(MRT_Type *base, *mrt_chnl_t* channel)

Release the channel when the timer is using the multi-task mode.

In multi-task mode, the INUSE flags allow more control over when MRT channels are released for further use. The user can hold on to a channel acquired by calling MRT_GetIdleChannel() for as long as it is needed and release it by calling this function. This removes the need to ask for an available channel for every use.

Parameters

- base – Multi-Rate timer peripheral base address
- channel – Timer channel number.

FSL_MRT_DRIVER_VERSION

enum _mrt_chnl

List of MRT channels.

Values:

enumerator kMRT_Channel_0

MRT channel number 0

enumerator kMRT_Channel_1

MRT channel number 1

enumerator kMRT_Channel_2

MRT channel number 2

enumerator kMRT_Channel_3

MRT channel number 3

enum _mrt_timer_mode

List of MRT timer modes.

Values:

enumerator kMRT_RepeatMode

Repeat Interrupt mode

enumerator kMRT_OneShotMode

One-shot Interrupt mode

enumerator kMRT_OneShotStallMode
One-shot stall mode

enum _mrt_interrupt_enable
List of MRT interrupts.

Values:

enumerator kMRT_TimerInterruptEnable
Timer interrupt enable

enum _mrt_status_flags
List of MRT status flags.

Values:

enumerator kMRT_TimerInterruptFlag
Timer interrupt flag

enumerator kMRT_TimerRunFlag
Indicates state of the timer

typedef enum *_mrt_chnl* mrt_chnl_t
List of MRT channels.

typedef enum *_mrt_timer_mode* mrt_timer_mode_t
List of MRT timer modes.

typedef enum *_mrt_interrupt_enable* mrt_interrupt_enable_t
List of MRT interrupts.

typedef enum *_mrt_status_flags* mrt_status_flags_t
List of MRT status flags.

typedef struct *_mrt_config* mrt_config_t
MRT configuration structure.

This structure holds the configuration settings for the MRT peripheral. To initialize this structure to reasonable defaults, call the MRT_GetDefaultConfig() function and pass a pointer to your config structure instance.

The config struct can be made const so it resides in flash

struct _mrt_config
#include <fsl_mrt.h> MRT configuration structure.

This structure holds the configuration settings for the MRT peripheral. To initialize this structure to reasonable defaults, call the MRT_GetDefaultConfig() function and pass a pointer to your config structure instance.

The config struct can be made const so it resides in flash

Public Members

bool enableMultiTask
true: Timers run in multi-task mode; false: Timers run in hardware status mode

2.59 MU: Messaging Unit

void MU_Init(MU_Type *base)

Initializes the MU module.

This function enables the MU clock only.

Parameters

- base – MU peripheral base address.

void MU_Deinit(MU_Type *base)

De-initializes the MU module.

This function disables the MU clock only.

Parameters

- base – MU peripheral base address.

static inline void MU_SendMsgNonBlocking(MU_Type *base, uint32_t regIndex, uint32_t msg)

Writes a message to the TX register.

This function writes a message to the specific TX register. It does not check whether the TX register is empty or not. The upper layer should make sure the TX register is empty before calling this function. This function can be used in ISR for better performance.

```
while (!(kMU_Tx0EmptyFlag & MU_GetStatusFlags(base))) { }  Wait for TX0 register empty.
MU_SendMsgNonBlocking(base, kMU_MsgReg0, MSG_VAL);  Write message to the TX0 register.
```

Parameters

- base – MU peripheral base address.
- regIndex – TX register index, see mu_msg_reg_index_t.
- msg – Message to send.

status_t MU_SendMsg(MU_Type *base, uint32_t regIndex, uint32_t msg)

Blocks to send a message.

This function waits until the TX register is empty and sends the message. If MU_BUSY_POLL_COUNT is defined and non-zero, the function will timeout after the specified number of polling iterations and returns kStatus_Timeout.

Parameters

- base – MU peripheral base address.
- regIndex – MU message register, see mu_msg_reg_index_t.
- msg – Message to send.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Message sent successfully.
- kStatus_Timeout – Timeout occurred while waiting for TX register to be empty.

Returns

status_t

static inline uint32_t MU_ReceiveMsgNonBlocking(MU_Type *base, uint32_t regIndex)

Reads a message from the RX register.

This function reads a message from the specific RX register. It does not check whether the RX register is full or not. The upper layer should make sure the RX register is full before calling this function. This function can be used in ISR for better performance.

```
uint32_t msg;
while (!(kMU_Rx0FullFlag & MU_GetStatusFlags(base)))
{
}  Wait for the RX0 register full.

msg = MU_ReceiveMsgNonBlocking(base, kMU_MsgReg0);  Read message from RX0 register.
```

Parameters

- base – MU peripheral base address.
- regIndex – RX register index, see mu_msg_reg_index_t.

Returns

The received message.

status_t MU_ReceiveMsgTimeout(MU_Type *base, uint32_t regIndex, uint32_t *readValue)

Blocks to receive a message with timeout protection.

This function waits until the RX register is full and receives the message. If MU_BUSY_POLL_COUNT is defined and non-zero, the function will timeout after the specified number of polling iterations and return kStatus_Timeout.

This function provides the same blocking behavior as MU_ReceiveMsg() but with additional timeout protection to prevent system hangs if the other core becomes unresponsive or if hardware issues occur.

Note: Both MU_ReceiveMsg() and MU_ReceiveMsgTimeout() are blocking functions. The difference is that this function includes timeout protection while MU_ReceiveMsg() waits indefinitely.

Parameters

- base – MU peripheral base address.
- regIndex – RX register index, see mu_msg_reg_index_t.
- readValue – Pointer to store the received message.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Message received successfully.
- kStatus_InvalidArgument – Invalid readValue pointer.
- kStatus_Timeout – Timeout occurred while waiting for RX register to be full.

Returns

status_t

uint32_t MU_ReceiveMsg(MU_Type *base, uint32_t regIndex)

Blocks to receive a message (infinite wait, no timeout protection).

This function waits until the RX register is full and receives the message. This function will wait indefinitely until a message is received.

Note: Both MU_ReceiveMsg() and MU_ReceiveMsgTimeout() are blocking functions. The difference is that MU_ReceiveMsgTimeout() includes timeout protection while this function waits indefinitely.

Warning: This function does not include timeout protection and may cause system hangs if the other core becomes unresponsive. For applications requiring timeout protection, use MU_ReceiveMsgTimeout() instead.

Parameters

- base – MU peripheral base address.
- regIndex – RX register index, see mu_msg_reg_index_t.

Returns

The received message.

static inline void MU_SetFlagsNonBlocking(MU_Type *base, uint32_t flags)

Sets the 3-bit MU flags reflect on the other MU side.

This function sets the 3-bit MU flags directly. Every time the 3-bit MU flags are changed, the status flag kMU_FlagsUpdatingFlag asserts indicating the 3-bit MU flags are updating to the other side. After the 3-bit MU flags are updated, the status flag kMU_FlagsUpdatingFlag is cleared by hardware. During the flags updating period, the flags cannot be changed. The upper layer should make sure the status flag kMU_FlagsUpdatingFlag is cleared before calling this function.

```
while (kMU_FlagsUpdatingFlag & MU_GetStatusFlags(base))
{
} Wait for previous MU flags updating.

MU_SetFlagsNonBlocking(base, 0U); Set the mU flags.
```

Parameters

- base – MU peripheral base address.
- flags – The 3-bit MU flags to set.

status_t MU_SetFlags(MU_Type *base, uint32_t flags)

Blocks setting the 3-bit MU flags reflect on the other MU side.

This function blocks setting the 3-bit MU flags. Every time the 3-bit MU flags are changed, the status flag kMU_FlagsUpdatingFlag asserts indicating the 3-bit MU flags are updating to the other side. After the 3-bit MU flags are updated, the status flag kMU_FlagsUpdatingFlag is cleared by hardware. During the flags updating period, the flags cannot be changed. This function waits for the MU status flag kMU_FlagsUpdatingFlag cleared and sets the 3-bit MU flags.

If MU_BUSY_POLL_COUNT is defined and non-zero, the function will timeout after the specified number of polling iterations and return kStatus_Timeout.

Parameters

- base – MU peripheral base address.
- flags – The 3-bit MU flags to set.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Flags were set successfully.
- kStatus_Timeout – Timeout occurred while waiting for flags to update.

Returns

status_t

static inline uint32_t MU_GetFlags(MU_Type *base)

Gets the current value of the 3-bit MU flags set by the other side.

This function gets the current 3-bit MU flags on the current side.

Parameters

- base – MU peripheral base address.

Returns

flags Current value of the 3-bit flags.

static inline uint32_t MU_GetStatusFlags(MU_Type *base)

Gets the MU status flags.

This function returns the bit mask of the MU status flags. See _mu_status_flags.

```
uint32_t flags;
flags = MU_GetStatusFlags(base);  Get all status flags.
if (kMU_Tx0EmptyFlag & flags)
{
    The TX0 register is empty. Message can be sent.
    MU_SendMsgNonBlocking(base, kMU_MsgReg0, MSG0_VAL);
}
if (kMU_Tx1EmptyFlag & flags)
{
    The TX1 register is empty. Message can be sent.
    MU_SendMsgNonBlocking(base, kMU_MsgReg1, MSG1_VAL);
}
```

Parameters

- base – MU peripheral base address.

Returns

Bit mask of the MU status flags, see _mu_status_flags.

static inline uint32_t MU_GetRxStatusFlags(MU_Type *base)

Return the RX status flags.

This function return the RX status flags. Note: RFn bits of SR[27-24](mu status register) are mapped in reverse numerical order: RF0 -> SR[27] RF1 -> SR[26] RF2 -> SR[25] RF3 -> SR[24]

```
status_reg = MU_GetRxStatusFlags(base);
```

Parameters

- base – MU peripheral base address.

Returns

MU RX status

static inline uint32_t MU_GetInterruptsPending(MU_Type *base)

Gets the MU IRQ pending status of enabled interrupts.

This function returns the bit mask of the pending MU IRQs of enabled interrupts. Only these flags are checked. kMU_Tx0EmptyFlag kMU_Tx1EmptyFlag kMU_Tx2EmptyFlag kMU_Tx3EmptyFlag kMU_Rx0FullFlag kMU_Rx1FullFlag kMU_Rx2FullFlag kMU_Rx3FullFlag kMU_GenInt0Flag kMU_GenInt1Flag kMU_GenInt2Flag kMU_GenInt3Flag

Parameters

- base – MU peripheral base address.

Returns

Bit mask of the MU IRQs pending.

static inline void MU_ClearStatusFlags(MU_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Clears the specific MU status flags.

This function clears the specific MU status flags. The flags to clear should be passed in as bit mask. See _mu_status_flags.

```
Clear general interrupt 0 and general interrupt 1 pending flags.
MU_ClearStatusFlags(base, kMU_GenInt0Flag | kMU_GenInt1Flag);
```

Parameters

- base – MU peripheral base address.
- mask – Bit mask of the MU status flags. See _mu_status_flags. The following flags are cleared by hardware, this function could not clear them.
  - kMU_Tx0EmptyFlag
  - kMU_Tx1EmptyFlag
  - kMU_Tx2EmptyFlag
  - kMU_Tx3EmptyFlag
  - kMU_Rx0FullFlag
  - kMU_Rx1FullFlag
  - kMU_Rx2FullFlag
  - kMU_Rx3FullFlag
  - kMU_EventPendingFlag
  - kMU_FlagsUpdatingFlag
  - kMU_OtherSideInResetFlag

static inline void MU_EnableInterrupts(MU_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Enables the specific MU interrupts.

This function enables the specific MU interrupts. The interrupts to enable should be passed in as bit mask. See _mu_interrupt_enable.

```
  Enable general interrupt 0 and TX0 empty interrupt.
MU_EnableInterrupts(base, kMU_GenInt0InterruptEnable | kMU_Tx0EmptyInterruptEnable);
```

Parameters

- base – MU peripheral base address.
- mask – Bit mask of the MU interrupts. See _mu_interrupt_enable.

static inline void MU_DisableInterrupts(MU_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Disables the specific MU interrupts.

This function disables the specific MU interrupts. The interrupts to disable should be passed in as bit mask. See _mu_interrupt_enable.

```
  Disable general interrupt 0 and TX0 empty interrupt.
MU_DisableInterrupts(base, kMU_GenInt0InterruptEnable | kMU_Tx0EmptyInterruptEnable);
```

Parameters

- base – MU peripheral base address.

- mask – Bit mask of the MU interrupts. See _mu_interrupt_enable.

status_t MU_TriggerInterrupts(MU_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Triggers interrupts to the other core.

This function triggers the specific interrupts to the other core. The interrupts to trigger are passed in as bit mask. See _mu_interrupt_trigger. The MU should not trigger an interrupt to the other core when the previous interrupt has not been processed by the other core. This function checks whether the previous interrupts have been processed. If not, it returns an error.

```
if (kStatus_Success != MU_TriggerInterrupts(base, kMU_GenInt0InterruptTrigger | kMU_
↪GenInt2InterruptTrigger))
{
    Previous general purpose interrupt 0 or general purpose interrupt 2
    has not been processed by the other core.
}
```

Parameters

- base – MU peripheral base address.
- mask – Bit mask of the interrupts to trigger. See _mu_interrupt_trigger.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Interrupts have been triggered successfully.
- kStatus_Fail – Previous interrupts have not been accepted.

static inline void MU_MaskHardwareReset(MU_Type *base, bool mask)

Mask hardware reset by the other core.

The other core could call MU_HardwareResetOtherCore() to reset current core. To mask the reset, call this function and pass in true.

Parameters

- base – MU peripheral base address.
- mask – Pass true to mask the hardware reset, pass false to unmask it.

static inline mu_power_mode_t MU_GetOtherCorePowerMode(MU_Type *base)

Gets the power mode of the other core.

This function gets the power mode of the other core.

Parameters

- base – MU peripheral base address.

Returns

Power mode of the other core.

FSL_MU_DRIVER_VERSION

MU driver version.

enum _mu_status_flags

MU status flags.

Values:

enumerator kMU_Tx0EmptyFlag

TX0 empty.

enumerator kMU_Tx1EmptyFlag

TX1 empty.

enumerator kMU_Tx2EmptyFlag
TX2 empty.

enumerator kMU_Tx3EmptyFlag
TX3 empty.

enumerator kMU_Rx0FullFlag
RX0 full.

enumerator kMU_Rx1FullFlag
RX1 full.

enumerator kMU_Rx2FullFlag
RX2 full.

enumerator kMU_Rx3FullFlag
RX3 full.

enumerator kMU_GenInt0Flag
General purpose interrupt 0 pending.

enumerator kMU_GenInt1Flag
General purpose interrupt 1 pending.

enumerator kMU_GenInt2Flag
General purpose interrupt 2 pending.

enumerator kMU_GenInt3Flag
General purpose interrupt 3 pending.

enumerator kMU_EventPendingFlag
MU event pending.

enumerator kMU_FlagsUpdatingFlag
MU flags update is on-going.

enumerator kMU_ResetAssertInterruptFlag
The other core reset assert interrupt pending.

enumerator kMU_ResetDeassertInterruptFlag
The other core reset de-assert interrupt pending.

enumerator kMU_OtherSideInResetFlag
The other side is in reset.

enumerator kMU_MuResetInterruptFlag
The other side initializes MU reset.

enumerator kMU_HardwareResetInterruptFlag
Current side has been hardware reset by the other side.

enum _mu_interrupt_enable
MU interrupt source to enable.

Values:

enumerator kMU_Tx0EmptyInterruptEnable
TX0 empty.

enumerator kMU_Tx1EmptyInterruptEnable
TX1 empty.

enumerator kMU_Tx2EmptyInterruptEnable
TX2 empty.

enumerator kMU_Tx3EmptyInterruptEnable
TX3 empty.

enumerator kMU_Rx0FullInterruptEnable
RX0 full.

enumerator kMU_Rx1FullInterruptEnable
RX1 full.

enumerator kMU_Rx2FullInterruptEnable
RX2 full.

enumerator kMU_Rx3FullInterruptEnable
RX3 full.

enumerator kMU_GenInt0InterruptEnable
General purpose interrupt 0.

enumerator kMU_GenInt1InterruptEnable
General purpose interrupt 1.

enumerator kMU_GenInt2InterruptEnable
General purpose interrupt 2.

enumerator kMU_GenInt3InterruptEnable
General purpose interrupt 3.

enumerator kMU_ResetAssertInterruptEnable
The other core reset assert interrupt.

enumerator kMU_ResetDeassertInterruptEnable
The other core reset de-assert interrupt.

enumerator kMU_MuResetInterruptEnable
The other side initializes MU reset. The interrupt is ORed with the general purpose interrupt 3. The general purpose interrupt 3 is issued when the other side set the MU reset and this interrupt is enabled.

enumerator kMU_HardwareResetInterruptEnable
Current side has been hardware reset by the other side.

enum __mu_interrupt_trigger
MU interrupt that could be triggered to the other core.

Values:

enumerator kMU_GenInt0InterruptTrigger
General purpose interrupt 0.

enumerator kMU_GenInt1InterruptTrigger
General purpose interrupt 1.

enumerator kMU_GenInt2InterruptTrigger
General purpose interrupt 2.

enumerator kMU_GenInt3InterruptTrigger
General purpose interrupt 3.

enum _mu_msg_reg_index

MU message register.

Values:

enumerator kMU_MsgReg0

enumerator kMU_MsgReg1

enumerator kMU_MsgReg2

enumerator kMU_MsgReg3

typedef enum *_mu_msg_reg_index* mu_msg_reg_index_t

MU message register.

MU_CR_NMI_MASK

FSL_FEATURE_MU_HAS_RESET_ASSERT_INT

FSL_FEATURE_MU_HAS_RESET_DEASSERT_INT

MU_BUSY_POLL_COUNT

Maximum polling iterations for MU waiting loops.

This parameter defines the maximum number of iterations for any polling loop in the MU code before timing out and returning an error.

It applies to all waiting loops in MU driver, such as waiting for TX register to be empty or waiting for RX register to be full.

This is a count of loop iterations, not a time-based value.

If defined as 0, polling loops will continue indefinitely until their exit condition is met, which could potentially cause the system to hang if a core becomes unresponsive.

MU_GET_CORE_FLAG(flags)

MU_GET_STAT_FLAG(flags)

MU_GET_TX_FLAG(flags)

MU_GET_RX_FLAG(flags)

MU_GET_GI_FLAG(flags)

2.60 OSTIMER: OS Event Timer Driver

void OSTIMER_Init(OSTIMER_Type *base)

Initializes an OSTIMER by turning its bus clock on.

void OSTIMER_Deinit(OSTIMER_Type *base)

Deinitializes a OSTIMER instance.

This function shuts down OSTIMER bus clock

Parameters

- base – OSTIMER peripheral base address.

uint64_t OSTIMER_GrayToDecimal(uint64_t gray)

Translate the value from gray-code to decimal.

Parameters

- gray – The gray value input.

Returns

The decimal value.

static inline uint64_t OSTIMER_DecimalToGray(uint64_t dec)

Translate the value from decimal to gray-code.

Parameters

- dec – The decimal value.

Returns

The gray code of the input value.

uint32_t OSTIMER_GetStatusFlags(OSTIMER_Type *base)

Get OSTIMER status Flags.

This returns the status flag. Currently, only match interrupt flag can be got.

Parameters

- base – OSTIMER peripheral base address.

Returns

status register value

void OSTIMER_ClearStatusFlags(OSTIMER_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Clear Status Interrupt Flags.

This clears intrrupt status flag. Currently, only match interrupt flag can be cleared.

Parameters

- base – OSTIMER peripheral base address.
- mask – Clear bit mask.

Returns

none

status_t OSTIMER_SetMatchRawValue(OSTIMER_Type *base, uint64_t count, *ostimer_callback_t* cb)

Set the match raw value for OSTIMER.

This function will set a match value for OSTIMER with an optional callback. And this callback will be called while the data in dedicated pair match register is equals to the value of central EVTIMER. Please note that, the data format may be gray-code, if so, please using OSTIMER_SetMatchValue().

Parameters

- base – OSTIMER peripheral base address.
- count – OSTIMER timer match value.(Value may be gray-code format)
- cb – OSTIMER callback (can be left as NULL if none, otherwise should be a void func(void)).

Return values

kStatus_Success – - Set match raw value and enable interrupt Successfully.

status_t OSTIMER_SetMatchValue(OSTIMER_Type *base, uint64_t count, *ostimer_callback_t* cb)

Set the match value for OSTIMER.

This function will set a match value for OSTIMER with an optional callback. And this callback will be called while the data in dedicated pair match register is equals to the value of central OS TIMER.

Parameters

- base – OSTIMER peripheral base address.
- count – OSTIMER timer match value.(Value is decimal format, and this value will be translate to Gray code in API if the IP counter is gray encoded.)
- cb – OSTIMER callback (can be left as NULL if none, otherwise should be a void func(void)).

Return values

kStatus_Success – - Set match raw value and enable interrupt Successfully.

static inline void OSTIMER_SetMatchRegister(OSTIMER_Type *base, uint64_t value)

Set value to OSTIMER MATCH register directly.

This function writes the input value to OSTIMER MATCH register directly, it does not touch any other registers. Note that, the data format is gray-code. The function OSTIMER_DecimalToGray could convert decimal value to gray code.

Parameters

- base – OSTIMER peripheral base address.
- value – OSTIMER timer match value (Value is gray-code format).

static inline uint64_t OSTIMER_GetMatchRegister(OSTIMER_Type *base)

Get the match value from OSTIMER.

This function will get the match value from OSTIMER. The value of timer match is gray code format.

Parameters

- base – OSTIMER peripheral base address.

Returns

Value of match register, data format is gray code.

static inline uint64_t OSTIMER_GetMatchValue(OSTIMER_Type *base)

Get the match value from OSTIMER.

This function will get a match value from OSTIMER.

Parameters

- base – OSTIMER peripheral base address.

Returns

Value of match register.

static inline void OSTIMER_EnableMatchInterrupt(OSTIMER_Type *base)

Enable the OSTIMER counter match interrupt.

Enable the timer counter match interrupt. The interrupt happens when OSTIMER counter matches the value in MATCH registers.

Parameters

- base – OSTIMER peripheral base address.

static inline void OSTIMER_DisableMatchInterrupt(OSTIMER_Type *base)

Disable the OSTIMER counter match interrupt.

Disable the timer counter match interrupt. The interrupt happens when OSTIMER counter matches the value in MATCH registers.

Parameters

- base – OSTIMER peripheral base address.

static inline uint64_t OSTIMER_GetCurrentTimerRawValue(OSTIMER_Type *base)

Get current timer raw count value from OSTIMER.

This function will get the timer count value from OS timer register. The raw value of timer count may be gray code format.

Parameters

- base – OSTIMER peripheral base address.

Returns

Raw value of OSTIMER, may be gray code format.

uint64_t OSTIMER_GetCurrentTimerValue(OSTIMER_Type *base)

Get current timer count value from OSTIMER.

This function will get a decimal timer count value. If the RAW value of timer count is gray code format, it will be translated to decimal data internally.

Parameters

- base – OSTIMER peripheral base address.

Returns

Value of OSTIMER which will be formated to decimal value.

static inline uint64_t OSTIMER_GetCaptureRawValue(OSTIMER_Type *base)

Get the capture value from OSTIMER.

This function will get a captured value from OSTIMER. The Raw value of timer capture may be gray code format.

Parameters

- base – OSTIMER peripheral base address.

Returns

Raw value of capture register, data format may be gray code.

uint64_t OSTIMER_GetCaptureValue(OSTIMER_Type *base)

Get the capture value from OSTIMER.

This function will get a capture decimal-value from OSTIMER. If the RAW value of timer count is gray code format, it will be translated to decimal data internally.

Parameters

- base – OSTIMER peripheral base address.

Returns

Value of capture register, data format is decimal.

void OSTIMER_HandleIRQ(OSTIMER_Type *base, *ostimer_callback_t* cb)

OS timer interrupt Service Handler.

This function handles the interrupt and refers to the callback array in the driver to callback user (as per request in OSTIMER_SetMatchValue()). if no user callback is scheduled, the interrupt will simply be cleared.

Parameters

- base – OS timer peripheral base address.
- cb – callback scheduled for this instance of OS timer

Returns
none

FSL_OSTIMER_DRIVER_VERSION
OSTIMER driver version.

enum _ostimer_flags
OSTIMER status flags.

Values:

enumerator kOSTIMER_MatchInterruptFlag
Match interrupt flag bit, sets if the match value was reached.

typedef void (*ostimer_callback_t)(void)
ostimer callback function.

2.61 OTFAD: On The Fly AES-128 Decryption Driver

void OTFAD_GetDefaultConfig(*otfad_config_t* *config)
OTFAD module initialization function.

Parameters

- config – OTFAD configuration.

AT_QUICKACCESS_SECTION_CODE (void OTFAD_Init(OTFAD_Type *base, const otfad_config_t *config))
OTFAD module initialization function.

Parameters

- base – OTFAD base address.
- config – OTFAD configuration.

AT_QUICKACCESS_SECTION_CODE (void OTFAD_Deinit(OTFAD_Type *base))
Deinitializes the OTFAD.

static inline uint32_t OTFAD_GetOperateMode(OTFAD_Type *base)
OTFAD module get operate mode.

Parameters

- base – OTFAD base address.

static inline uint32_t OTFAD_GetStatus(OTFAD_Type *base)
OTFAD module get status.

Parameters

- base – OTFAD base address.

status_t OTFAD_SetEncryptionConfig(OTFAD_Type *base, const *otfad_encryption_config_t* *config)
OTFAD module set encryption configuration.

Note: if enable keyblob process, the first 256 bytes external memory is use for keyblob data, so this region shouldn't be in OTFAD region.

Parameters

- base – OTFAD base address.
- config – encryption configuration.

status_t OTFAD_GetEncryptionConfig(OTFAD_Type *base, *otfad_encryption_config_t* *config)

OTFAD module get encryption configuration.

Note: if enable keyblob process, the first 256 bytes external memory is use for keyblob data, so this region shouldn't be in OTFAD region.

Parameters

- base – OTFAD base address.
- config – encryption configuration.

status_t OTFAD_HitDetermination(OTFAD_Type *base, uint32_t address, uint8_t *contextIndex)

OTFAD module do hit determination.

Parameters

- base – OTFAD base address.
- address – the physical address space assigned to the QuadSPI(FlexSPI) module.
- contextIndex – hitted context region index.

Returns

status, such as kStatus_Success or kStatus_OTFAD_ResRegAccessMode.

FSL_OTFAD_DRIVER_VERSION

Driver version.

Status codes for the OTFAD driver.

Values:

enumerator kStatus_OTFAD_ResRegAccessMode

Restricted register mode

enumerator kStatus_OTFAD_AddressError

End address less than start address

enumerator kStatus_OTFAD_RegionOverlap

the OTFAD does not support any form of memory region overlap, for system accesses that hit in multiple contexts or no contexts, the fetched data is simply bypassed

enumerator kStatus_OTFAD_RegionMiss

For accesses that hit in a single context, but not the selected one

OTFAD context type.

Values:

enumerator kOTFAD_Context_0

context 0

enumerator kOTFAD_Context_1

context 1

enumerator kOTFAD_Context_2
context 2

enumerator kOTFAD_Context_3
context 3

OTFAD operate mode.

Values:

enumerator kOTFAD_NRM
Normal Mode

enumerator kOTFAD_SVM
Security Violation Mode

enumerator kOTFAD_LDM
Logically Disabled Mode

typedef struct *_otfad_encryption_config* otfad_encryption_config_t
OTFAD encryption configuration structure.

typedef struct *_otfad_config* otfad_config_t
OTFAD configuration structure.

struct _otfad_encryption_config
#include <fsl_otfad.h> OTFAD encryption configuration structure.

Public Members

bool valid
The context is valid or not

bool AESdecryption
AES decryption enable

uint8_t readOnly
read write attribute for the entire set of context registers

uint8_t contextIndex
OTFAD context index

uint32_t startAddr
Start address

uint32_t endAddr
End address

uint32_t key[4]
Encryption key

uint32_t counter[2]
Encryption counter

struct _otfad_config
#include <fsl_otfad.h> OTFAD configuration structure.

Public Members

bool enableIntRequest
Interrupt request enable

bool forceError
Forces the OTFAD's key blob error flag (SR[KBERR]) to be asserted

bool forceSVM
Force entry into SVM after a write

bool forceLDM
Force entry into LDM after a write

bool keyBlobScramble
Key blob KEK scrambling

bool keyBlobProcess
Key blob processing

bool startKeyBlobProcessing
key blob processing is initiated

bool restrictedRegAccess
Restricted register access enable

bool enableOTFAD
OTFAD has decryption enabled

2.62 PINT: Pin Interrupt and Pattern Match Driver

FSL_PINT_DRIVER_VERSION

enum _pint_pin_enable
PINT Pin Interrupt enable type.

Values:

enumerator kPINT_PinIntEnableNone
Do not generate Pin Interrupt

enumerator kPINT_PinIntEnableRiseEdge
Generate Pin Interrupt on rising edge

enumerator kPINT_PinIntEnableFallEdge
Generate Pin Interrupt on falling edge

enumerator kPINT_PinIntEnableBothEdges
Generate Pin Interrupt on both edges

enumerator kPINT_PinIntEnableLowLevel
Generate Pin Interrupt on low level

enumerator kPINT_PinIntEnableHighLevel
Generate Pin Interrupt on high level

enum _pint_int
PINT Pin Interrupt type.

Values:

enumerator kPINT_PinInt0
Pin Interrupt 0

enum _pint_pmatch_input_src
PINT Pattern Match bit slice input source type.

Values:

enumerator kPINT_PatternMatchInp0Src
Input source 0

enumerator kPINT_PatternMatchInp1Src
Input source 1

enumerator kPINT_PatternMatchInp2Src
Input source 2

enumerator kPINT_PatternMatchInp3Src
Input source 3

enumerator kPINT_PatternMatchInp4Src
Input source 4

enumerator kPINT_PatternMatchInp5Src
Input source 5

enumerator kPINT_PatternMatchInp6Src
Input source 6

enumerator kPINT_PatternMatchInp7Src
Input source 7

enumerator kPINT_SecPatternMatchInp0Src
Input source 0

enumerator kPINT_SecPatternMatchInp1Src
Input source 1

enum _pint_pmatch_bslice
PINT Pattern Match bit slice type.

Values:

enumerator kPINT_PatternMatchBSlice0
Bit slice 0

enum _pint_pmatch_bslice_cfg
PINT Pattern Match configuration type.

Values:

enumerator kPINT_PatternMatchAlways
Always Contributes to product term match

enumerator kPINT_PatternMatchStickyRise
Sticky Rising edge

enumerator kPINT_PatternMatchStickyFall
Sticky Falling edge

enumerator kPINT_PatternMatchStickyBothEdges
Sticky Rising or Falling edge

enumerator kPINT_PatternMatchHigh
High level

enumerator kPINT_PatternMatchLow
Low level

enumerator kPINT_PatternMatchNever
Never contributes to product term match

enumerator kPINT_PatternMatchBothEdges
Either rising or falling edge

typedef enum *_pint_pin_enable* pint_pin_enable_t
PINT Pin Interrupt enable type.

typedef enum *_pint_int* pint_pin_int_t
PINT Pin Interrupt type.

typedef enum *_pint_pmatch_input_src* pint_pmatch_input_src_t
PINT Pattern Match bit slice input source type.

typedef enum *_pint_pmatch_bslice* pint_pmatch_bslice_t
PINT Pattern Match bit slice type.

typedef enum *_pint_pmatch_bslice_cfg* pint_pmatch_bslice_cfg_t
PINT Pattern Match configuration type.

typedef struct *_pint_status* pint_status_t
PINT event status.

typedef void (*pint_cb_t)(*pint_pin_int_t* pintr, *pint_status_t* *status)
PINT Callback function.

typedef struct *_pint_pmatch_cfg* pint_pmatch_cfg_t

void PINT_Init(PINT_Type *base)
Initialize PINT peripheral.

This function initializes the PINT peripheral and enables the clock.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the PINT peripheral.

Return values
None. –

void PINT_SetCallback(PINT_Type *base, *pint_cb_t* callback)
Set PINT callback.

This function set the callback for PINT interupt handler.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the PINT peripheral.
- callback – Callback.

Return values
None. –

void PINT_PinInterruptConfig(PINT_Type *base, *pint_pin_int_t* intr, *pint_pin_enable_t* enable)
Configure PINT peripheral pin interrupt.

This function configures a given pin interrupt.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the PINT peripheral.
- intr – Pin interrupt.
- enable – Selects detection logic.

Return values

None. –

void PINT_PinInterruptGetConfig(PINT_Type *base, *pint_pin_int_t* pintr, *pint_pin_enable_t* *enable)

Get PINT peripheral pin interrupt configuration.

This function returns the configuration of a given pin interrupt.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the PINT peripheral.
- pintr – Pin interrupt.
- enable – Pointer to store the detection logic.

Return values

None. –

void PINT_PinInterruptClrStatus(PINT_Type *base, *pint_pin_int_t* pintr)

Clear Selected pin interrupt status only when the pin was triggered by edge-sensitive.

This function clears the selected pin interrupt status.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the PINT peripheral.
- pintr – Pin interrupt.

Return values

None. –

static inline uint32_t PINT_PinInterruptGetStatus(PINT_Type *base, *pint_pin_int_t* pintr)

Get Selected pin interrupt status.

This function returns the selected pin interrupt status.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the PINT peripheral.
- pintr – Pin interrupt.

Return values

status – = 0 No pin interrupt request. = 1 Selected Pin interrupt request active.

void PINT_PinInterruptClrStatusAll(PINT_Type *base)

Clear all pin interrupts status only when pins were triggered by edge-sensitive.

This function clears the status of all pin interrupts.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the PINT peripheral.

Return values

None. –

static inline uint32_t PINT_PinInterruptGetStatusAll(PINT_Type *base)

Get all pin interrupts status.

This function returns the status of all pin interrupts.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the PINT peripheral.

Return values

status – Each bit position indicates the status of corresponding pin interrupt. = 0 No pin interrupt request. = 1 Pin interrupt request active.

static inline void PINT_PinInterruptClrFallFlag(PINT_Type *base, *pint_pin_int_t* pintr)

Clear Selected pin interrupt fall flag.

This function clears the selected pin interrupt fall flag.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the PINT peripheral.
- pintr – Pin interrupt.

Return values

None. –

static inline uint32_t PINT_PinInterruptGetFallFlag(PINT_Type *base, *pint_pin_int_t* pintr)

Get selected pin interrupt fall flag.

This function returns the selected pin interrupt fall flag.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the PINT peripheral.
- pintr – Pin interrupt.

Return values

flag – = 0 Falling edge has not been detected. = 1 Falling edge has been detected.

static inline void PINT_PinInterruptClrFallFlagAll(PINT_Type *base)

Clear all pin interrupt fall flags.

This function clears the fall flag for all pin interrupts.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the PINT peripheral.

Return values

None. –

static inline uint32_t PINT_PinInterruptGetFallFlagAll(PINT_Type *base)

Get all pin interrupt fall flags.

This function returns the fall flag of all pin interrupts.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the PINT peripheral.

Return values

flags – Each bit position indicates the falling edge detection of the corresponding pin interrupt. 0 Falling edge has not been detected. = 1 Falling edge has been detected.

static inline void PINT_PinInterruptClrRiseFlag(PINT_Type *base, *pint_pin_int_t* pintr)

Clear Selected pin interrupt rise flag.

This function clears the selected pin interrupt rise flag.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the PINT peripheral.
- pintr – Pin interrupt.

Return values
None. –

static inline uint32_t PINT_PinInterruptGetRiseFlag(PINT_Type *base, *pint_pin_int_t* pintr)

Get selected pin interrupt rise flag.

This function returns the selected pin interrupt rise flag.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the PINT peripheral.
- pintr – Pin interrupt.

Return values
flag – = 0 Rising edge has not been detected. = 1 Rising edge has been detected.

static inline void PINT_PinInterruptClrRiseFlagAll(PINT_Type *base)

Clear all pin interrupt rise flags.

This function clears the rise flag for all pin interrupts.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the PINT peripheral.

Return values
None. –

static inline uint32_t PINT_PinInterruptGetRiseFlagAll(PINT_Type *base)

Get all pin interrupt rise flags.

This function returns the rise flag of all pin interrupts.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the PINT peripheral.

Return values
flags – Each bit position indicates the rising edge detection of the corresponding pin interrupt. 0 Rising edge has not been detected. = 1 Rising edge has been detected.

void PINT_PatternMatchConfig(PINT_Type *base, *pint_pmatch_bslice_t* bslice, *pint_pmatch_cfg_t* *cfg)

Configure PINT pattern match.

This function configures a given pattern match bit slice.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the PINT peripheral.
- bslice – Pattern match bit slice number.
- cfg – Pointer to bit slice configuration.

Return values
None. –

void PINT_PatternMatchGetConfig(PINT_Type *base, *pint_pmatch_bslice_t* bslice, *pint_pmatch_cfg_t* *cfg)

Get PINT pattern match configuration.

This function returns the configuration of a given pattern match bit slice.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the PINT peripheral.
- bslice – Pattern match bit slice number.

- cfg – Pointer to bit slice configuration.

Return values
None. –

static inline uint32_t PINT_PatternMatchGetStatus(PINT_Type *base, *pint_pmatch_bslice_t* bslice)

Get pattern match bit slice status.

This function returns the status of selected bit slice.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the PINT peripheral.
- bslice – Pattern match bit slice number.

Return values
status – = 0 Match has not been detected. = 1 Match has been detected.

static inline uint32_t PINT_PatternMatchGetStatusAll(PINT_Type *base)

Get status of all pattern match bit slices.

This function returns the status of all bit slices.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the PINT peripheral.

Return values
status – Each bit position indicates the match status of corresponding bit slice. = 0 Match has not been detected. = 1 Match has been detected.

uint32_t PINT_PatternMatchResetDetectLogic(PINT_Type *base)

Reset pattern match detection logic.

This function resets the pattern match detection logic if any of the product term is matching.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the PINT peripheral.

Return values
pmstatus – Each bit position indicates the match status of corresponding bit slice. = 0 Match was detected. = 1 Match was not detected.

static inline void PINT_PatternMatchEnable(PINT_Type *base)

Enable pattern match function.

This function enables the pattern match function.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the PINT peripheral.

Return values
None. –

static inline void PINT_PatternMatchDisable(PINT_Type *base)

Disable pattern match function.

This function disables the pattern match function.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the PINT peripheral.

Return values
None. –

static inline void PINT_PatternMatchEnableRXEV(PINT_Type *base)

Enable RXEV output.

This function enables the pattern match RXEV output.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the PINT peripheral.

Return values

None. –

static inline void PINT_PatternMatchDisableRXEV(PINT_Type *base)

Disable RXEV output.

This function disables the pattern match RXEV output.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the PINT peripheral.

Return values

None. –

void PINT_EnableCallback(PINT_Type *base)

Enable callback.

This function enables the interrupt for the selected PINT peripheral. Although the pin(s) are monitored as soon as they are enabled, the callback function is not enabled until this function is called.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the PINT peripheral.

Return values

None. –

void PINT_DisableCallback(PINT_Type *base)

Disable callback.

This function disables the interrupt for the selected PINT peripheral. Although the pins are still being monitored but the callback function is not called.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the peripheral.

Return values

None. –

void PINT_Deinit(PINT_Type *base)

Deinitialize PINT peripheral.

This function disables the PINT clock.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the PINT peripheral.

Return values

None. –

void PINT_EnableCallbackByIndex(PINT_Type *base, *pint_pin_int_t* pintIdx)

enable callback by pin index.

This function enables callback by pin index instead of enabling all pins.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the peripheral.

- pintIdx – pin index.

Return values
None. –

void PINT_DisableCallbackByIndex(PINT_Type *base, *pint_pin_int_t* pintIdx)
disable callback by pin index.

This function disables callback by pin index instead of disabling all pins.

Parameters

- base – Base address of the peripheral.
- pintIdx – pin index.

Return values
None. –

PINT_USE_LEGACY_CALLBACK

PININT_BITSLICE_SRC_START

PININT_BITSLICE_SRC_MASK

PININT_BITSLICE_CFG_START

PININT_BITSLICE_CFG_MASK

PININT_BITSLICE_ENDP_MASK

PINT_PIN_INT_LEVEL

PINT_PIN_INT_EDGE

PINT_PIN_INT_FALL_OR_HIGH_LEVEL

PINT_PIN_INT_RISE

PINT_PIN_RISE_EDGE

PINT_PIN_FALL_EDGE

PINT_PIN_BOTH_EDGE

PINT_PIN_LOW_LEVEL

PINT_PIN_HIGH_LEVEL

struct _pint_status
#include <fsl_pint.h> PINT event status.

struct _pint_pmatch_cfg
#include <fsl_pint.h>

2.63 Power Driver

enum _pmc_interrupt
PMC event flags.

Note: These enums are meant to be OR'd together to form a bit mask.

Values:

enumerator kPMC_INT_LVDCORE
Vddcore Low-Voltage Detector Interrupt Enable.

enumerator kPMC_INT_HVDCORE
Vddcore High-Voltage Detector Interrupt Enable.

enumerator kPMC_INT_HVD1V8
Vdd1v8 High-Voltage Detector Interrupt Enable.

enumerator kPMC_INT_AUTOWK
PMC automatic wakeup enable and interrupt enable.

enumerator kPMC_INT_INTRPAD
Interrupt pad deep powerdown and deep sleep wake up & interrupt enable.

enum _pmc_event_flags
PMC event flags.

Note: These enums are meant to be OR'd together to form a bit mask.

Values:

enumerator kPMC_FLAGS_PORCORE
POR triggered by the vddcore POR monitor (0 = no, 1 = yes).

enumerator kPMC_FLAGS_POR1V8
vdd1v8 power on event detected since last cleared(0 = no, 1 = yes).

enumerator kPMC_FLAGS_PORAO18
vdd_ao18 power on event detected since last cleared (0 = no, 1 = yes).

enumerator kPMC_FLAGS_LVDCORE
LVD tripped since last time this bit was cleared (0 = no, 1 = yes).

enumerator kPMC_FLAGS_HVDCORE
HVD tripped since last time this bit was cleared (0 = no, 1 = yes).

enumerator kPMC_FLAGS_HVD1V8
vdd1v8 HVD tripped since last time this bit was cleared (0 = no, 1 = yes).

enumerator kPMC_FLAGS_RTC
RTC wakeup detected since last time flag was cleared (0 = no, 1 = yes).

enumerator kPMC_FLAGS_AUTOWK
PMC Auto wakeup caused a deep sleep wakeup and interrupt (0 = no, 1 = yes).

enumerator kPMC_FLAGS_INTNPADF
Pad interrupt caused a wakeup or interrupt event since the last time this flag was cleared (0 = no, 1 = yes).

enumerator kPMC_FLAGS_RESETNPAD
Reset pad wakeup caused a wakeup or reset event since the last time this bit was cleared. (0 = no, 1 = yes).

enumerator kPMC_FLAGS_DEEPPD
Deep powerdown was entered since the last time this flag was cleared (0 = no, 1 = yes).

enum pd_bits
Values:

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PMC_MODE0

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PMC_MODE1

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_LP_VDD_COREREG

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_LP_PMCREF

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PD_HVD1V8

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_LP_LVDCORE

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PD_HVDCORE

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PD_RBB

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PD_FBB

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PD_SYSXTAL

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PD_LPOSC

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PD_RBBSRAM

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PD_FFRO

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PD_SYSPLL_LDO

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PD_SYSPLL_ANA

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PD_AUDPLL_LDO

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PD_AUDPLL_ANA

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PD_ADC

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_LP_ADC

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PD_ADC_TEMPSNS

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PD_PMC_TEMPSNS

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PD_ACMP

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_PQ_SRAM

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_FLEXSPI0_SRAM

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_FLEXSPI0_SRAM

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_FLEXSPI1_SRAM

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_FLEXSPI1_SRAM

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_USBHS_SRAM

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_USBHS_SRAM

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_USDHC0_SRAM

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_USDHC0_SRAM

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_USDHC1_SRAM

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_USDHC1_SRAM

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_CASPER_SRAM

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_GPU_SRAM

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_GPU_SRAM

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_SMARTDMA_SRAM

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_SMARTDMA_SRAM

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_MIPIDSI_SRAM

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_MIPIDSI_SRAM

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_DCNANO_SRAM

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_DCNANO_SRAM

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PD_DSP

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PD_MIPIDSI

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PD_OTP

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PD_ROM

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_SRAM_SLEEP

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_SRAM_IF0

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_SRAM_IF1

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_SRAM_IF2

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_SRAM_IF3

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_SRAM_IF4

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_SRAM_IF5

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_SRAM_IF6

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_SRAM_IF7

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_SRAM_IF8

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_SRAM_IF9

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_SRAM_IF10

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_SRAM_IF11

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_SRAM_IF12

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_SRAM_IF13

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_SRAM_IF14

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_SRAM_IF15

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_SRAM_IF16

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_SRAM_IF17

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_SRAM_IF18

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_SRAM_IF19

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_SRAM_IF20

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_SRAM_IF21

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_SRAM_IF22

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_SRAM_IF23

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_SRAM_IF24

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_SRAM_IF25

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_SRAM_IF26

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_SRAM_IF27

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_SRAM_IF28

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_SRAM_IF29

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_SRAM_IF30

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_APD_SRAM_IF31

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_SRAM_IF0

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_SRAM_IF1

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_SRAM_IF2

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_SRAM_IF3

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_SRAM_IF4

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_SRAM_IF5

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_SRAM_IF6

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_SRAM_IF7

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_SRAM_IF8

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_SRAM_IF9

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_SRAM_IF10

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_SRAM_IF11

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_SRAM_IF12

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_SRAM_IF13

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_SRAM_IF14

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_SRAM_IF15

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_SRAM_IF16

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_SRAM_IF17

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_SRAM_IF18

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_SRAM_IF19

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_SRAM_IF20

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_SRAM_IF21

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_SRAM_IF22

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_SRAM_IF23

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_SRAM_IF24

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_SRAM_IF25

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_SRAM_IF26

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_SRAM_IF27

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_SRAM_IF28

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_SRAM_IF29

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_SRAM_IF30

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_PPD_SRAM_IF31

enumerator kPDRUNCFG_ForceUnsigned

enum _power_mode_config

Power mode configuration API parameter.

Values:

enumerator kPmu_Sleep

enumerator kPmu_Deep_Sleep

enumerator kPmu_Deep_PowerDown

enumerator kPmu_Full_Deep_PowerDown

enum _body_bias_mode

Body Bias mode definition.

Values:

enumerator kPmu_Fbb

enumerator kPmu_Rbb

enumerator kPmu_Nbb

enum _pmic_mode_reg

Values:

enumerator kCfg_Run

enumerator kCfg_Sleep

enum _power_deep_sleep_clk

Clock source of main clock before entering deep sleep.

Values:

enumerator kDeepSleepClk_LpOsc

enumerator kDeepSleepClk_Fro

enum _power_vddcore_src

VDDCORE supply source.

Values:

enumerator kVddCoreSrc_LDO

VDDCORE is supplied by onchip regulator.

enumerator kVddCoreSrc_PMIC

VDDCORE is supplied by external PMIC.

enum _power_pad_vrange_val

pad voltage range value. Note, refer to Reference Manual PMC GPIO VDDIO Range Selection Control (PADVRANGE) register's description for the supported voltage by different VDDDIO.

Values:

enumerator kPadVol_171_360

Deprecated! Voltage from 1.71V to 3.60V.

enumerator kPadVol_Continuous

Continuous mode, VDDE detector on.

enumerator kPadVol_171_198

Voltage from 1.71V to 1.98V. VDDE detector off.

enumerator kPadVol_300_360

Voltage from 3.00V to 3.60V. VDDE detector off.

enum _power_lvd_falling_trip_vol_val

LVD falling trip voltage value.

Values:

enumerator kLvdFallingTripVol_720

Voltage 720mV.

enumerator kLvdFallingTripVol_735

Voltage 735mV.

enumerator kLvdFallingTripVol_750

Voltage 750mV.

enumerator kLvdFallingTripVol_765

Voltage 765mV.

enumerator kLvdFallingTripVol_780

Voltage 780mV.

enumerator kLvdFallingTripVol_795

Voltage 795mV.

enumerator kLvdFallingTripVol_810

Voltage 810mV.

enumerator kLvdFallingTripVol_825

Voltage 825mV.

enumerator kLvdFallingTripVol_840

Voltage 840mV.

enumerator kLvdFallingTripVol_855

Voltage 855mV.

enumerator kLvdFallingTripVol_870
Voltage 870mV.

enumerator kLvdFallingTripVol_885
Voltage 885mV.

enumerator kLvdFallingTripVol_900
Voltage 900mV.

enumerator kLvdFallingTripVol_915
Voltage 915mV.

enumerator kLvdFallingTripVol_930
Voltage 930mV.

enumerator kLvdFallingTripVol_945
Voltage 945mV.

enum _power_control_for_pmic_mode
vddcore or vdd1v8 power on selection for different PMIC mode. vddcore and vdd1v8 are always on in mode0. Refer to PMC->PMICCFG.

Values:

enumerator kVddCoreOnMode1
VDDCORE is powered in PMIC mode1.

enumerator kVddCoreOnMode2
VDDCORE is powered in PMIC mode2.

enumerator kVddCoreOnMode3
VDDCORE is powered in PMIC mode3.

enumerator kVdd1v8OnMode1
VDD1V8 is powered in PMIC mode1.

enumerator kVdd1v8OnMode2
VDD1V8 is powered in PMIC mode2.

enumerator kVdd1v8OnMode3
VDD1V8 is powered in PMIC mode3.

typedef enum *pd_bits* pd_bit_t

typedef enum *_power_mode_config* power_mode_cfg_t
Power mode configuration API parameter.

typedef enum *_body_bias_mode* body_bias_mode_t
Body Bias mode definition.

typedef enum *_pmic_mode_reg* pmic_mode_reg_t

typedef enum *_power_deep_sleep_clk* power_deep_sleep_clk_t
Clock source of main clock before entering deep sleep.

typedef enum *_power_vddcore_src* power_vddcore_src_t
VDDCORE supply source.

typedef enum *_power_pad_vrange_val* power_pad_vrange_val_t
pad voltage range value. Note, refer to Reference Manual PMC GPIO VDDIO Range Selection Control (PADVRANGE) register's description for the supported voltage by different VDDDIO.

typedef struct *_power_pad_vrange* power_pad_vrange_t

pad voltage range configuration.

typedef enum *_power_lvd_falling_trip_vol_val* power_lvd_falling_trip_vol_val_t

LVD falling trip voltage value.

typedef enum *_power_control_for_pmic_mode* power_control_for_pmic_mode

vddcore or vdd1v8 power on selection for different PMIC mode. vddcore and vdd1v8 are always on in mode0. Refer to PMC->PMICCFG.

typedef void (*power_vddcore_set_func_t)(uint32_t millivolt)

Callback function used to change VDDCORE when the VDDCORE is supplied by external PMIC. Refer to POWER_SetVddCoreSupplySrc()

void POWER_PmicPowerModeSelectControl(uint32_t vddSelect)

API to set vddcore or vdd1v8 power on for PMIC modes which is responded to PDRUNCFG0[PMIC_MODE] or PDSLEEPCFG0[PMIC_MODE] select pin values. If not set, the driver will use default configurations for different PMIC mode. The default configuration is as below. PMIC_MODE: power mode select 0b00 run mode, all supplies on. 0b01 deep sleep mode, all supplies on. 0b10 deep powerdown mode, vddcore off. 0b11 full deep powerdown mode vdd1v8 and vddcore off.

Note, be cautious to modify the VDD state in different PMIC mode. When the default configuration is changed, use exclude_from_pd[0] to configure the PMIC mode for deep sleep and power down mode.

Parameters

- vddSelect – the ORd value of power_control_for_pmic_mode. Defines run (all supplies on), deep power-down (VDDCORE off), and true deep power-down (VDD1V8 and VDDCORE off).

void POWER_EnablePD(*pd_bit_t* en)

API to enable PDRUNCFG bit in the Sysctl0. Note that enabling the bit powers down the peripheral.

Parameters

- en – peripheral for which to enable the PDRUNCFG bit

void POWER_DisablePD(*pd_bit_t* en)

API to disable PDRUNCFG bit in the Sysctl0. Note that disabling the bit powers up the peripheral.

Parameters

- en – peripheral for which to disable the PDRUNCFG bit

static inline void POWER_EnableDeepSleep(void)

API to enable deep sleep bit in the ARM Core.

static inline void POWER_DisableDeepSleep(void)

API to disable deep sleep bit in the ARM Core.

void POWER_UpdateOscSettlingTime(uint32_t osc_delay)

API to update XTAL oscillator settling time .

Parameters

- osc_delay – : OSC stabilization time in unit of microsecond

void POWER_UpdatePmicRecoveryTime(uint32_t pmic_delay)

API to update on-board PMIC vddcore recovery time.

NOTE: If LDO is used instead of PMIC, don't call it. Otherwise it must be called to allow power library to well handle the deep sleep process.

Parameters

- pmic_delay – : PMIC stabilization time in unit of microsecond, or PMIC_VDDCORE_RECOVERY_TIME_IGNORE if not care.

void POWER_ApplyPD(void)

API to apply updated PMC PDRUNCFG bits in the Sysctl0.

void POWER_ClearEventFlags(uint32_t statusMask)

Clears the PMC event flags state.

Parameters

- statusMask – : A bitmask of event flags that are to be cleared.

uint32_t POWER_GetEventFlags(void)

Get the PMC event flags state.

Returns

PMC FLAGS register value

void POWER_EnableInterrupts(uint32_t interruptMask)

Enable the PMC interrupt requests.

Parameters

- interruptMask – : A bitmask of of interrupts to enable.

void POWER_DisableInterrupts(uint32_t interruptMask)

Disable the PMC interrupt requests.

Parameters

- interruptMask – : A bitmask of of interrupts to disable.

void POWER_SetAnalogBuffer(bool enable)

Set the PMC analog buffer for references or ATX2.

Parameters

- enable – : Set to true to enable analog buffer for references or ATX2, false to disable.

static inline uint32_t POWER_GetPmicMode(*pmic_mode_reg_t* reg)

Get PMIC_MODE pins configure value.

Parameters

- reg – : PDSLEEPCFG0 or PDRUNCFG0 register offset

Returns

PMIC_MODE pins value in PDSLEEPCFG0

static inline *body_bias_mode_t* POWER_GetBodyBiasMode(*pmic_mode_reg_t* reg)

Get RBB/FBB bit value.

Parameters

- reg – : PDSLEEPCFG0 or PDRUNCFG0 register offset

Returns

Current body bias mode

void POWER_SetPadVolRange(const *power_pad_vrange_t* *config)

Configure pad voltage level. Wide voltage range cost more power due to enabled voltage detector.

NOTE: BE CAUTIOUS TO CALL THIS API. IF THE PAD SUPPLY IS BEYOND THE SET RANGE, SILICON MIGHT BE DAMAGED.

Parameters

- config – pad voltage range configuration.

void POWER_EnterRbb(void)

PMC Enter Rbb mode function call.

void POWER_EnterFbb(void)

PMC Enter Fbb mode function call.

void POWER_EnterNbb(void)

PMC exit Rbb & Fbb mode function call.

bool POWER_SetLdoVoltageForFreq(uint32_t cm33_clk_freq, uint32_t dsp_clk_freq)

Deprecated and replaced by POWER_SetVoltageForFreq()! PMC Set Ldo volatage for particular frequency. NOTE: If LVD falling trip voltage is higher than the required core voltage for particular frequency, LVD voltage will be decreased to safe level to avoid unexpected LVD reset or interrupt event.

Parameters

- cm33_clk_freq – : CM33 core frequency value
- dsp_clk_freq – : dsp core frequency value

Returns

true for success and false for CPU frequency out of available frequency range.

void POWER_SetVddCoreSupplySrc(*power_vddcore_src_t* src)

Set VDDCORE supply source, PMIC or on-chip regulator.

Parameters

- src – : power_vddcore_src_t, VDDCore supply source

void POWER_SetPmicCoreSupplyFunc(*power_vddcore_set_func_t* func)

Set the core supply setting function if PMIC is used. The function is not needed and ignored when using the onchip regulator to supply VDDCORE.

Parameters

- func – : power_vddcore_set_func_t, the PMIC core supply voltage set function.

bool POWER_SetVoltageForFreq(uint32_t cm33_clk_freq, uint32_t dsp_clk_freq, uint32_t mini_volt)

PMC Set volatage for particular frequency with given minimum value. POWER_SetVddCoreSupplySrc should be called in advance to tell power driver the supply source. If PMIC is used, the VDDCORE setting function should be set by POWER_SetPmicCoreSupplyFunc before this API is called. NOTE: If LVD falling trip voltage is higher than the required core voltage for particular frequency, LVD voltage will be decreased to safe level to avoid unexpected LVD reset or interrupt event.

Parameters

- cm33_clk_freq – : CM33 core frequency value
- dsp_clk_freq – : dsp core frequency value
- mini_volt – : minimum voltage in millivolt(mV) for VDDCORE. Should <= 1100mV, 0 means use the core frequency to calculate voltage.

Returns

true for success and false for CPU frequency out of available frequency range or failed to set voltage.

void POWER_SetLvdFallingTripVoltage(*power_lvd_falling_trip_vol_val_t* volt)

Set vddcore low voltage detection falling trip voltage.

Parameters

- volt – target LVD voltage to set.

power_lvd_falling_trip_vol_val_t POWER_GetLvdFallingTripVoltage(void)

Get current vddcore low voltage detection falling trip voltage.

Returns

Current LVD voltage.

void POWER_DisableLVD(void)

Disable low voltage detection, no reset or interrupt is triggered when vddcore voltage drops below threshold. NOTE: This API is for internal use only. Application should not touch it.

void POWER_RestoreLVD(void)

Restore low voltage detection setting. NOTE: This API is for internal use only. Application should not touch it.

void POWER_SetPmicMode(uint32_t mode, *pmic_mode_reg_t* reg)

Set PMIC_MODE pins configure value.

Parameters

- mode – : PMIC MODE pin value
- reg – : PDSLEEPCFG0 or PDRUNCFG0 register offset

Returns

PMIC_MODE pins value in PDSLEEPCFG0

void POWER_SetDeepSleepClock(*power_deep_sleep_clk_t* clk)

Set deep sleep clock source of main clock.

Parameters

- clk – : clock source of main clock.

void POWER_EnterSleep(void)

Configures and enters in SLEEP low power mode.

void POWER_EnterDeepSleep(const uint32_t exclude_from_pd[4])

PMC Deep Sleep function call.

Parameters

- exclude_from_pd – Bit mask of the PDRUNCFG0 ~ PDRUNCFG3 that needs to be powered on during Deep Sleep mode selected.

void POWER_EnterDeepPowerDown(const uint32_t exclude_from_pd[4])

PMC Deep Power Down function call.

Parameters

- exclude_from_pd – Bit mask of the PDRUNCFG0 ~ PDRUNCFG3 that needs to be powered on during Deep Power Down mode selected.

void POWER_EnterFullDeepPowerDown(const uint32_t exclude_from_pd[4])

PMC Full Deep Power Down function call.

Parameters

- exclude_from_pd – Bit mask of the PDRUNCFG0 ~ PDRUNCFG3 that needs to be powered on during Full Deep Power Down mode selected.

void POWER_EnterPowerMode(*power_mode_cfg_t* mode, const uint32_t exclude_from_pd[4])

Power Library API to enter different power mode.

Parameters

- mode – Power mode to enter.
- exclude_from_pd – Bit mask of the PDRUNCFG0 ~ PDRUNCFG3 that needs to be powered on during power mode selected.

void EnableDeepSleepIRQ(IRQn_Type interrupt)

Enable specific interrupt for wake-up from deep-sleep mode. Enable the interrupt for wake-up from deep sleep mode. Some interrupts are typically used in sleep mode only and will not occur during deep-sleep mode because relevant clocks are stopped. However, it is possible to enable those clocks (significantly increasing power consumption in the reduced power mode), making these wake-ups possible.

Note: This function also enables the interrupt in the NVIC (EnableIRQ() is called internally).

Parameters

- interrupt – The IRQ number.

void DisableDeepSleepIRQ(IRQn_Type interrupt)

Disable specific interrupt for wake-up from deep-sleep mode. Disable the interrupt for wake-up from deep sleep mode. Some interrupts are typically used in sleep mode only and will not occur during deep-sleep mode because relevant clocks are stopped. However, it is possible to enable those clocks (significantly increasing power consumption in the reduced power mode), making these wake-ups possible.

Note: This function also disables the interrupt in the NVIC (DisableIRQ() is called internally).

Parameters

- interrupt – The IRQ number.

uint32_t POWER_GetLibVersion(void)

Power Library API to return the library version.

Returns

version number of the power library

FSL_POWER_DRIVER_VERSION

power driver version 2.6.1.

MAKE_PD_BITS(reg, slot)

SYSCTL0_PDRCFGSET_REG(x)

SYSCTL0_PDRCFGCLR_REG(x)

PDRCFG0

PDRCFG1

PDRCFG2

PDRCFG3

PMC_FLAGS_PORCOREF_MASK

PMC_FLAGS_POR1V8F_MASK

PMC_FLAGS_PORAO18F_MASK

PMC_FLAGS_LVDCOREF_MASK

PMC_FLAGS_HVDCOREF_MASK

PMC_FLAGS_HVD1V8F_MASK

PMC_FLAGS_RTCF_MASK

PMC_FLAGS_AUTOWKF_MASK

PMC_FLAGS_INTNPADF_MASK

PMC_FLAGS_RESETNPADF_MASK

PMC_FLAGS_DEEPPDF_MASK

PMC_CTRL_LVDCOREIE_MASK

PMC_CTRL_HVDCOREIE_MASK

PMC_CTRL_HVD1V8IE_MASK

PMC_CTRL_AUTOWKEN_MASK

PMC_CTRL_INTRPADEN_MASK

PMIC_VDDCORE_RECOVERY_TIME_IGNORE
: PMIC is used but vddcore supply is always above LVD threshold.

SYSCTL0_TUPLE_REG(reg)
: PMIC mode pin configuration API parameter.

uint32_t Vdde0Range
: VDDE0 voltage range for VDDIO_0. power_pad_vrange_val_t

uint32_t Vdde1Range
: VDDE1 voltage range for VDDIO_1. power_pad_vrange_val_t

uint32_t Vdde2Range
: VDDE2 voltage range for VDDIO_2. power_pad_vrange_val_t

uint32_t Vdde3Range
: VDDE3 voltage range for VDDIO_3. power_pad_vrange_val_t

uint32_t Vdde4Range
: VDDE4 voltage range for VDDIO_4. power_pad_vrange_val_t

uint32_t ___pad0___
: Reserved.

struct _power_pad_vrange
: *#include <fsl_power.h>* pad voltage range configuration.

2.64 POWERQUAD: PowerQuad hardware accelerator

void PQ_GetDefaultConfig(*pq_config_t* *config)

Get default configuration.

This function initializes the POWERQUAD configuration structure to a default value. FORMAT register field definitions Bits[15:8] scaler (for scaled 'q31' formats) Bits[5:4] external format. 00b=q15, 01b=q31, 10b=float Bits[1:0] internal format. 00b=q15, 01b=q31, 10b=float POWERQUAD->INAFORMAT = (config->inputAPrescale « 8U) | (config->inputAFormat « 4U) | config->machineFormat

For all Powerquad operations internal format must be float (with the only exception being the FFT related functions, ie FFT/IFFT/DCT/IDCT which must be set to q31). The default values are: config->inputAFormat = kPQ_Float; config->inputAPrescale = 0; config->inputBFormat = kPQ_Float; config->inputBPrescale = 0; config->outputFormat = kPQ_Float; config->outputPrescale = 0; config->tmpFormat = kPQ_Float; config->tmpPrescale = 0; config->machineFormat = kPQ_Float; config->tmpBase = 0xE0000000;

Parameters

- config – Pointer to "pq_config_t" structure.

void PQ_SetConfig(POWERQUAD_Type *base, const *pq_config_t* *config)

Set configuration with format/prescale.

Parameters

- base – POWERQUAD peripheral base address
- config – Pointer to "pq_config_t" structure.

static inline void PQ_SetCoprocessorScaler(POWERQUAD_Type *base, const *pq_prescale_t* *prescale)

set coprocessor scaler for coprocessor instructions, this function is used to set output saturation and scaleing for input/output.

Parameters

- base – POWERQUAD peripheral base address
- prescale – Pointer to "pq_prescale_t" structure.

void PQ_Init(POWERQUAD_Type *base)

Initializes the POWERQUAD module.

Parameters

- base – POWERQUAD peripheral base address.

void PQ_Deinit(POWERQUAD_Type *base)

De-initializes the POWERQUAD module.

Parameters

- base – POWERQUAD peripheral base address.

void PQ_SetFormat(POWERQUAD_Type *base, *pq_computationengine_t* engine, *pq_format_t* format)

Set format for non-coprecessor instructions.

Parameters

- base – POWERQUAD peripheral base address
- engine – Computation engine
- format – Data format

static inline void PQ_WaitDone(POWERQUAD_Type *base)

Wait for the completion.

Parameters

- base – POWERQUAD peripheral base address

static inline void PQ_LnF32(float *pSrc, float *pDst)

Processing function for the floating-point natural log.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data. The range of the input value is (0 +INFINITY).
- *pDst – points to the block of output data

static inline void PQ_InvF32(float *pSrc, float *pDst)

Processing function for the floating-point reciprocal.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data. The range of the input value is non-zero.
- *pDst – points to the block of output data

static inline void PQ_SqrtF32(float *pSrc, float *pDst)

Processing function for the floating-point square-root.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data. The range of the input value is [0 +INFINITY).
- *pDst – points to the block of output data

static inline void PQ_InvSqrtF32(float *pSrc, float *pDst)

Processing function for the floating-point inverse square-root.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data. The range of the input value is (0 +INFINITY).
- *pDst – points to the block of output data

static inline void PQ_EtoxF32(float *pSrc, float *pDst)

Processing function for the floating-point natural exponent.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data. The range of the input value is (-INFINITY +INFINITY).
- *pDst – points to the block of output data

static inline void PQ_EtonxF32(float *pSrc, float *pDst)

Processing function for the floating-point natural exponent with negative parameter.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data. The range of the input value is (-INFINITY +INFINITY).
- *pDst – points to the block of output data

static inline void PQ_SinF32(float *pSrc, float *pDst)

Processing function for the floating-point sine.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data. The input value is in radians, the range is (-INFINITY +INFINITY).
- *pDst – points to the block of output data

static inline void PQ_CosF32(float *pSrc, float *pDst)

Processing function for the floating-point cosine.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data. The input value is in radians, the range is (-INFINITY +INFINITY).
- *pDst – points to the block of output data

static inline void PQ_BiquadF32(float *pSrc, float *pDst)

Processing function for the floating-point biquad.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data
- *pDst – points to the block of output data

static inline void PQ_DivF32(float *x1, float *x2, float *pDst)

Processing function for the floating-point division.

Get x1 / x2.

Parameters

- x1 – x1
- x2 – x2
- *pDst – points to the block of output data

static inline void PQ_Biquad1F32(float *pSrc, float *pDst)

Processing function for the floating-point biquad.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data
- *pDst – points to the block of output data

static inline int32_t PQ_LnFixed(int32_t val)

Processing function for the fixed natural log.

Parameters

- val – value to be calculated. The range of the input value is (0 +INFINITY).

Returns

returns ln(val).

static inline int32_t PQ_InvFixed(int32_t val)

Processing function for the fixed reciprocal.

Parameters

- val – value to be calculated. The range of the input value is non-zero.

Returns

returns inv(val).

static inline uint32_t PQ_SqrtFixed(uint32_t val)

Processing function for the fixed square-root.

Parameters

- val – value to be calculated. The range of the input value is [0 +INFINITY).

Returns

returns sqrt(val).

static inline int32_t PQ_InvSqrtFixed(int32_t val)

Processing function for the fixed inverse square-root.

Parameters

- val – value to be calculated. The range of the input value is (0 +INFINITY).

Returns

returns 1/sqrt(val).

static inline int32_t PQ_EtoxFixed(int32_t val)

Processing function for the Fixed natural exponent.

Parameters

- val – value to be calculated. The range of the input value is (-INFINITY +INFINITY).

Returns

returns etox^(val).

static inline int32_t PQ_EtonxFixed(int32_t val)

Processing function for the fixed natural exponent with negative parameter.

Parameters

- val – value to be calculated. The range of the input value is (-INFINITY +INFINITY).

Returns

returns etonx^(val).

static inline int32_t PQ_SinQ31(int32_t val)

Processing function for the fixed sine.

Parameters

- val – value to be calculated. The input value is [-1, 1] in Q31 format, which means [-pi, pi].

Returns

returns sin(val).

static inline int16_t PQ_SinQ15(int16_t val)

Processing function for the fixed sine.

Parameters

- val – value to be calculated. The input value is [-1, 1] in Q15 format, which means [-pi, pi].

Returns

returns sin(val).

static inline int32_t PQ_CosQ31(int32_t val)

Processing function for the fixed cosine.

Parameters

- val – value to be calculated. The input value is [-1, 1] in Q31 format, which means [-pi, pi].

Returns
returns cos(val).

static inline int16_t PQ_CosQ15(int16_t val)

Processing function for the fixed sine.

Parameters

- val – value to be calculated. The input value is [-1, 1] in Q15 format, which means [-pi, pi].

Returns
returns sin(val).

static inline int32_t PQ_BiquadFixed(int32_t val)

Processing function for the fixed biquad.

Parameters

- val – value to be calculated

Returns
returns biquad(val).

void PQ_VectorLnF32(float *pSrc, float *pDst, int32_t length)

Processing function for the floating-point vectorised natural log.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data
- *pDst – points to the block of output data
- length – the block of input data.

void PQ_VectorInvF32(float *pSrc, float *pDst, int32_t length)

Processing function for the floating-point vectorised reciprocal.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data
- *pDst – points to the block of output data
- length – the block of input data.

void PQ_VectorSqrtF32(float *pSrc, float *pDst, int32_t length)

Processing function for the floating-point vectorised square-root.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data
- *pDst – points to the block of output data
- length – the block of input data.

void PQ_VectorInvSqrtF32(float *pSrc, float *pDst, int32_t length)

Processing function for the floating-point vectorised inverse square-root.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data
- *pDst – points to the block of output data
- length – the block of input data.

void PQ_VectorEtoxF32(float *pSrc, float *pDst, int32_t length)

Processing function for the floating-point vectorised natural exponent.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data
- *pDst – points to the block of output data
- length – the block of input data.

void PQ_VectorEtonxF32(float *pSrc, float *pDst, int32_t length)

Processing function for the floating-point vectorised natural exponent with negative parameter.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data
- *pDst – points to the block of output data
- length – the block of input data.

void PQ_VectorSinF32(float *pSrc, float *pDst, int32_t length)

Processing function for the floating-point vectorised sine.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data
- *pDst – points to the block of output data
- length – the block of input data.

void PQ_VectorCosF32(float *pSrc, float *pDst, int32_t length)

Processing function for the floating-point vectorised cosine.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data
- *pDst – points to the block of output data
- length – the block of input data.

void PQ_VectorLnFixed32(int32_t *pSrc, int32_t *pDst, int32_t length)

Processing function for the Q31 vectorised natural log.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data
- *pDst – points to the block of output data
- length – the block of input data.

void PQ_VectorInvFixed32(int32_t *pSrc, int32_t *pDst, int32_t length)

Processing function for the Q31 vectorised reciprocal.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data
- *pDst – points to the block of output data
- length – the block of input data.

void PQ_VectorSqrtFixed32(int32_t *pSrc, int32_t *pDst, int32_t length)

Processing function for the 32-bit integer vectorised square-root.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data
- *pDst – points to the block of output data
- length – the block of input data.

void PQ_VectorInvSqrtFixed32(int32_t *pSrc, int32_t *pDst, int32_t length)

Processing function for the 32-bit integer vectorised inverse square-root.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data
- *pDst – points to the block of output data
- length – the block of input data.

void PQ_VectorEtoxFixed32(int32_t *pSrc, int32_t *pDst, int32_t length)

Processing function for the 32-bit integer vectorised natural exponent.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data
- *pDst – points to the block of output data
- length – the block of input data.

void PQ_VectorEtonxFixed32(int32_t *pSrc, int32_t *pDst, int32_t length)

Processing function for the 32-bit integer vectorised natural exponent with negative parameter.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data
- *pDst – points to the block of output data
- length – the block of input data.

void PQ_VectorSinQ15(int16_t *pSrc, int16_t *pDst, int32_t length)

Processing function for the Q15 vectorised sine.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data
- *pDst – points to the block of output data
- length – the block of input data.

void PQ_VectorCosQ15(int16_t *pSrc, int16_t *pDst, int32_t length)

Processing function for the Q15 vectorised cosine.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data
- *pDst – points to the block of output data
- length – the block of input data.

void PQ_VectorSinQ31(int32_t *pSrc, int32_t *pDst, int32_t length)

Processing function for the Q31 vectorised sine.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data
- *pDst – points to the block of output data
- length – the block of input data.

void PQ_VectorCosQ31(int32_t *pSrc, int32_t *pDst, int32_t length)

Processing function for the Q31 vectorised cosine.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data
- *pDst – points to the block of output data
- length – the block of input data.

void PQ_VectorLnFixed16(int16_t *pSrc, int16_t *pDst, int32_t length)

Processing function for the 16-bit integer vectorised natural log.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data
- *pDst – points to the block of output data
- length – the block of input data.

void PQ_VectorInvFixed16(int16_t *pSrc, int16_t *pDst, int32_t length)

Processing function for the 16-bit integer vectorised reciprocal.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data
- *pDst – points to the block of output data
- length – the block of input data.

void PQ_VectorSqrtFixed16(int16_t *pSrc, int16_t *pDst, int32_t length)

Processing function for the 16-bit integer vectorised square-root.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data
- *pDst – points to the block of output data
- length – the block of input data.

void PQ_VectorInvSqrtFixed16(int16_t *pSrc, int16_t *pDst, int32_t length)

Processing function for the 16-bit integer vectorised inverse square-root.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data
- *pDst – points to the block of output data
- length – the block of input data.

void PQ_VectorEtoxFixed16(int16_t *pSrc, int16_t *pDst, int32_t length)

Processing function for the 16-bit integer vectorised natural exponent.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data
- *pDst – points to the block of output data
- length – the block of input data.

void PQ_VectorEtonxFixed16(int16_t *pSrc, int16_t *pDst, int32_t length)

Processing function for the 16-bit integer vectorised natural exponent with negative parameter.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data
- *pDst – points to the block of output data
- length – the block of input data.

void PQ_VectorBiquadDf2F32(float *pSrc, float *pDst, int32_t length)

Processing function for the floating-point vectorised biquad direct form II.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data
- *pDst – points to the block of output data
- length – the block size of input data.

void PQ_VectorBiquadDf2Fixed32(int32_t *pSrc, int32_t *pDst, int32_t length)

Processing function for the 32-bit integer vectorised biquad direct form II.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data
- *pDst – points to the block of output data
- length – the block size of input data

void PQ_VectorBiquadDf2Fixed16(int16_t *pSrc, int16_t *pDst, int32_t length)

Processing function for the 16-bit integer vectorised biquad direct form II.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data
- *pDst – points to the block of output data
- length – the block size of input data

void PQ_VectorBiquadCascadeDf2F32(float *pSrc, float *pDst, int32_t length)

Processing function for the floating-point vectorised biquad direct form II.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data
- *pDst – points to the block of output data
- length – the block size of input data

void PQ_VectorBiquadCascadeDf2Fixed32(int32_t *pSrc, int32_t *pDst, int32_t length)

Processing function for the 32-bit integer vectorised biquad direct form II.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data
- *pDst – points to the block of output data
- length – the block size of input data

void PQ_VectorBiquadCascadeDf2Fixed16(int16_t *pSrc, int16_t *pDst, int32_t length)

Processing function for the 16-bit integer vectorised biquad direct form II.

Parameters

- *pSrc – points to the block of input data
- *pDst – points to the block of output data
- length – the block size of input data

int32_t PQ_ArctanFixed(POWERQUAD_Type *base, int32_t x, int32_t y, *pq_cordic_iter_t* iteration)

Processing function for the fixed inverse trigonometric.

Get the inverse tangent, the behavior is like c function atan.

Note: The sum of x and y should not exceed the range of int32_t.

Note: Larger input number gets higher output accuracy, for example the arctan(0.5), the result of PQ_ArctanFixed(POWERQUAD, 100000, 200000, kPQ_Iteration_24) is more accurate than PQ_ArctanFixed(POWERQUAD, 1, 2, kPQ_Iteration_24).

Parameters

- base – POWERQUAD peripheral base address
- x – value of opposite
- y – value of adjacent
- iteration – iteration times

Returns

The return value is in the range of -2^26 to 2^26, which means -pi/2 to pi/2.

int32_t PQ_ArctanhFixed(POWERQUAD_Type *base, int32_t x, int32_t y, *pq_cordic_iter_t* iteration)

Processing function for the fixed inverse trigonometric.

Note: The sum of x and y should not exceed the range of int32_t.

Note: Larger input number gets higher output accuracy, for example the arctanh(0.5), the result of PQ_ArctanhFixed(POWERQUAD, 100000, 200000, kPQ_Iteration_24) is more accurate than PQ_ArctanhFixed(POWERQUAD, 1, 2, kPQ_Iteration_24).

Parameters

- base – POWERQUAD peripheral base address
- x – value of opposite
- y – value of adjacent
- iteration – iteration times

Returns

The return value is radians, 2^27 means pi. The range is -1.118 to 1.118 radians.

int32_t PQ_Arctan2Fixed(POWERQUAD_Type *base, int32_t x, int32_t y, *pq_cordic_iter_t* iteration)

Processing function for the fixed inverse trigonometric.

Get the inverse tangent, it calculates the angle in radians for the quadrant. The behavior is like c function atan2.

Note: The sum of x and y should not exceed the range of int32_t.

Note: Larger input number gets higher output accuracy, for example the arctan(0.5), the result of PQ_Arctan2Fixed(POWERQUAD, 100000, 200000, kPQ_Iteration_24) is more accurate than PQ_Arctan2Fixed(POWERQUAD, 1, 2, kPQ_Iteration_24).

Parameters

- base – POWERQUAD peripheral base address
- x – value of opposite
- y – value of adjacent
- iteration – iteration times

Returns

The return value is in the range of -2^27 to 2^27, which means -pi to pi.

static inline int32_t PQ_Biquad1Fixed(int32_t val)

Processing function for the fixed biquad.

Parameters

- val – value to be calculated

Returns

returns biquad(val).

void PQ_TransformCFFT(POWERQUAD_Type *base, uint32_t length, void *pData, void *pResult)

Processing function for the complex FFT.

Parameters

- base – POWERQUAD peripheral base address
- length – number of input samples
- pData – input data
- pResult – output data.

void PQ_TransformRFFT(POWERQUAD_Type *base, uint32_t length, void *pData, void *pResult)

Processing function for the real FFT.

Parameters

- base – POWERQUAD peripheral base address
- length – number of input samples
- pData – input data
- pResult – output data.

void PQ_TransformIFFT(POWERQUAD_Type *base, uint32_t length, void *pData, void *pResult)

Processing function for the inverse complex FFT.

Parameters

- base – POWERQUAD peripheral base address
- length – number of input samples
- pData – input data
- pResult – output data.

void PQ_TransformCDCT(POWERQUAD_Type *base, uint32_t length, void *pData, void *pResult)

Processing function for the complex DCT.

Parameters

- base – POWERQUAD peripheral base address
- length – number of input samples
- pData – input data
- pResult – output data.

void PQ_TransformRDCT(POWERQUAD_Type *base, uint32_t length, void *pData, void *pResult)

Processing function for the real DCT.

Parameters

- base – POWERQUAD peripheral base address
- length – number of input samples
- pData – input data
- pResult – output data.

void PQ_TransformIDCT(POWERQUAD_Type *base, uint32_t length, void *pData, void *pResult)

Processing function for the inverse complex DCT.

Parameters

- base – POWERQUAD peripheral base address
- length – number of input samples
- pData – input data
- pResult – output data.

void PQ_BiquadBackUpInternalState(POWERQUAD_Type *base, int32_t biquad_num, *pq_biquad_state_t* *state)

Processing function for backup biquad context.

Parameters

- base – POWERQUAD peripheral base address
- biquad_num – biquad side
- state – point to states.

void PQ_BiquadRestoreInternalState(POWERQUAD_Type *base, int32_t biquad_num, *pq_biquad_state_t* *state)

Processing function for restore biquad context.

Parameters

- base – POWERQUAD peripheral base address
- biquad_num – biquad side
- state – point to states.

void PQ_BiquadCascadeDf2Init(*pq_biquad_cascade_df2_instance* *S, uint8_t numStages, *pq_biquad_state_t* *pState)

Initialization function for the direct form II Biquad cascade filter.

Parameters

- *S – **[inout]** points to an instance of the filter data structure.
- numStages – **[in]** number of 2nd order stages in the filter.
- *pState – **[in]** points to the state buffer.

void PQ_BiquadCascadeDf2F32(const *pq_biquad_cascade_df2_instance* *S, float *pSrc, float *pDst, uint32_t blockSize)

Processing function for the floating-point direct form II Biquad cascade filter.

Parameters

- *S – **[in]** points to an instance of the filter data structure.
- *pSrc – **[in]** points to the block of input data.
- *pDst – **[out]** points to the block of output data
- blockSize – **[in]** number of samples to process.

void PQ_BiquadCascadeDf2Fixed32(const *pq_biquad_cascade_df2_instance* *S, int32_t *pSrc, int32_t *pDst, uint32_t blockSize)

Processing function for the Q31 direct form II Biquad cascade filter.

Parameters

- *S – **[in]** points to an instance of the filter data structure.
- *pSrc – **[in]** points to the block of input data.
- *pDst – **[out]** points to the block of output data
- blockSize – **[in]** number of samples to process.

void PQ_BiquadCascadeDf2Fixed16(const *pq_biquad_cascade_df2_instance* *S, int16_t *pSrc, int16_t *pDst, uint32_t blockSize)

Processing function for the Q15 direct form II Biquad cascade filter.

Parameters

- *S – **[in]** points to an instance of the filter data structure.
- *pSrc – **[in]** points to the block of input data.
- *pDst – **[out]** points to the block of output data
- blockSize – **[in]** number of samples to process.

void PQ_FIR(POWERQUAD_Type *base, const void *pAData, int32_t ALength, const void *pBData, int32_t BLength, void *pResult, uint32_t opType)

Processing function for the FIR.

Parameters

- base – POWERQUAD peripheral base address
- pAData – the first input sequence
- ALength – number of the first input sequence
- pBData – the second input sequence
- BLength – number of the second input sequence
- pResult – array for the output data
- opType – operation type, could be PQ_FIR_FIR, PQ_FIR_CONVOLUTION, PQ_FIR_CORRELATION.

void PQ_FIRIncrement(POWERQUAD_Type *base, int32_t ALength, int32_t BLength, int32_t xOffset)

Processing function for the incremental FIR. This function can be used after pq_fir() for incremental FIR operation when new x data are available.

Parameters

- base – POWERQUAD peripheral base address
- ALength – number of input samples
- BLength – number of taps
- xOffset – offset for number of input samples

void PQ_MatrixAddition(POWERQUAD_Type *base, uint32_t length, void *pAData, void *pBData, void *pResult)

Processing function for the matrix addition.

Parameters

- base – POWERQUAD peripheral base address
- length – rows and cols for matrix. LENGTH register configuration: LENGTH[23:16] = M2 cols LENGTH[15:8] = M1 cols LENGTH[7:0] = M1 rows This could be constructed using macro POWERQUAD_MAKE_MATRIX_LEN.
- pAData – input matrix A
- pBData – input matrix B
- pResult – array for the output data.

void PQ_MatrixSubtraction(POWERQUAD_Type *base, uint32_t length, void *pAData, void *pBData, void *pResult)

Processing function for the matrix subtraction.

Parameters

- base – POWERQUAD peripheral base address
- length – rows and cols for matrix. LENGTH register configuration: LENGTH[23:16] = M2 cols LENGTH[15:8] = M1 cols LENGTH[7:0] = M1 rows This could be constructed using macro POWERQUAD_MAKE_MATRIX_LEN.
- pAData – input matrix A
- pBData – input matrix B
- pResult – array for the output data.

void PQ_MatrixMultiplication(POWERQUAD_Type *base, uint32_t length, void *pAData, void *pBData, void *pResult)

Processing function for the matrix multiplication.

Parameters

- base – POWERQUAD peripheral base address
- length – rows and cols for matrix. LENGTH register configuration: LENGTH[23:16] = M2 cols LENGTH[15:8] = M1 cols LENGTH[7:0] = M1 rows This could be constructed using macro POWERQUAD_MAKE_MATRIX_LEN.
- pAData – input matrix A
- pBData – input matrix B

- pResult – array for the output data.

void PQ_MatrixProduct(POWERQUAD_Type *base, uint32_t length, void *pAData, void *pBData, void *pResult)

Processing function for the matrix product.

Parameters

- base – POWERQUAD peripheral base address
- length – rows and cols for matrix. LENGTH register configuration: LENGTH[23:16] = M2 cols LENGTH[15:8] = M1 cols LENGTH[7:0] = M1 rows This could be constructed using macro POWERQUAD_MAKE_MATRIX_LEN.
- pAData – input matrix A
- pBData – input matrix B
- pResult – array for the output data.

void PQ_VectorDotProduct(POWERQUAD_Type *base, uint32_t length, void *pAData, void *pBData, void *pResult)

Processing function for the vector dot product.

Parameters

- base – POWERQUAD peripheral base address
- length – length of vector
- pAData – input vector A
- pBData – input vector B
- pResult – array for the output data.

void PQ_MatrixInversion(POWERQUAD_Type *base, uint32_t length, void *pData, void *pTmpData, void *pResult)

Processing function for the matrix inverse.

Parameters

- base – POWERQUAD peripheral base address
- length – rows and cols for matrix. LENGTH register configuration: LENGTH[23:16] = M2 cols LENGTH[15:8] = M1 cols LENGTH[7:0] = M1 rows This could be constructed using macro POWERQUAD_MAKE_MATRIX_LEN.
- pData – input matrix
- pTmpData – input temporary matrix, pTmpData length not less than pData lenght and 1024 words is sufficient for the largest supported matrix.
- pResult – array for the output data, round down for fixed point.

void PQ_MatrixTranspose(POWERQUAD_Type *base, uint32_t length, void *pData, void *pResult)

Processing function for the matrix transpose.

Parameters

- base – POWERQUAD peripheral base address
- length – rows and cols for matrix. LENGTH register configuration: LENGTH[23:16] = M2 cols LENGTH[15:8] = M1 cols LENGTH[7:0] = M1 rows This could be constructed using macro POWERQUAD_MAKE_MATRIX_LEN.

- pData – input matrix
- pResult – array for the output data.

void PQ_MatrixScale(POWERQUAD_Type *base, uint32_t length, float misc, const void *pData, void *pResult)

Processing function for the matrix scale.

Parameters

- base – POWERQUAD peripheral base address
- length – rows and cols for matrix. LENGTH register configuration: LENGTH[23:16] = M2 cols LENGTH[15:8] = M1 cols LENGTH[7:0] = M1 rows This could be constructed using macro POWERQUAD_MAKE_MATRIX_LEN.
- misc – scaling parameters
- pData – input matrix
- pResult – array for the output data.

FSL_POWERQUAD_DRIVER_VERSION

Version.

enum pq_computationengine_t

powerquad computation engine

Values:

enumerator kPQ_CP_PQ

Math engine.

enumerator kPQ_CP_MTX

Matrix engine.

enumerator kPQ_CP_FFT

FFT engine.

enumerator kPQ_CP_FIR

FIR engine.

enumerator kPQ_CP_CORDIC

CORDIC engine.

enum pq_format_t

powerquad data structure format type

Values:

enumerator kPQ_16Bit

Int16 Fixed point.

enumerator kPQ_32Bit

Int32 Fixed point.

enumerator kPQ_Float

Float point.

enum pq_cordic_iter_t

CORDIC iteration.

Values:

enumerator kPQ_Iteration_8
Iterate 8 times.

enumerator kPQ_Iteration_16
Iterate 16 times.

enumerator kPQ_Iteration_24
Iterate 24 times.

typedef struct *_pq_biquad_param* pq_biquad_param_t
Struct to save biquad parameters.

typedef struct *_pq_biquad_state* pq_biquad_state_t
Struct to save biquad state.

typedef union *_pq_float* pq_float_t
Conversion between integer and float type.

PQ_VectorBiqaudDf2F32

PQ_VectorBiqaudDf2Fixed32

PQ_VectorBiqaudDf2Fixed16

PQ_VectorBiqaudCascadeDf2F32

PQ_VectorBiqaudCascadeDf2Fixed32

PQ_VectorBiqaudCascadeDf2Fixed16

PQ_Vector8BiqaudDf2CascadeF32

PQ_Vector8BiqaudDf2CascadeFixed32

PQ_Vector8BiqaudDf2CascadeFixed16

PQ_FLOAT32

PQ_FIXEDPT

CP_PQ

CP_MTX

CP_FFT

CP_FIR

CP_CORDIC

PQ_TRANS

PQ_TRIG

PQ_BIQUAD

PQ_TRANS_FIXED

PQ_TRIG_FIXED

PQ_BIQUAD_FIXED

PQ_INV

PQ_LN

PQ_SQRT

PQ_INVSQRT

PQ_ETOX

PQ_ETONX

PQ_DIV

PQ_SIN

PQ_COS

PQ_BIQ0_CALC

PQ_BIQ1_CALC

PQ_COMP0_ONLY

PQ_COMP1_ONLY

CORDIC_ITER(**x**)

CORDIC_MIU(**x**)

CORDIC_T(**x**)

CORDIC_ARCTAN

CORDIC_ARCTANH

INST_BUSY

PQ_ERRSTAT_OVERFLOW

PQ_ERRSTAT_NAN

PQ_ERRSTAT_FIXEDOVERFLOW

PQ_ERRSTAT_UNDERFLOW

PQ_TRANS_CFFT

PQ_TRANS_IFFT

PQ_TRANS_CDCT

PQ_TRANS_IDCT

PQ_TRANS_RFFT

PQ_TRANS_RDCT

PQ_MTX_SCALE

PQ_MTX_MULT

PQ_MTX_ADD

PQ_MTX_INV

PQ_MTX_PROD

PQ_MTX_SUB

PQ_VEC_DOTP

PQ_MTX_TRAN

PQ_FIR_FIR

PQ_FIR_CONVOLUTION

PQ_FIR_CORRELATION

PQ_FIR_INCREMENTAL

_pq_ln0(**x**)

_pq_inv0(**x**)

_pq_sqrt0(**x**)

_pq_invsqrt0(**x**)

_pq_etox0(**x**)

_pq_etonx0(**x**)

_pq_sin0(**x**)

_pq_cos0(**x**)

_pq_biquad0(**x**)

_pq_ln_fx0(**x**)

_pq_inv_fx0(**x**)

_pq_sqrt_fx0(**x**)

_pq_invsqrt_fx0(**x**)

_pq_etox_fx0(**x**)

_pq_etonx_fx0(**x**)

_pq_sin_fx0(**x**)

_pq_cos_fx0(**x**)

_pq_biquad0_fx(**x**)

_pq_div0(**x**)

_pq_div1(**x**)

_pq_ln1(**x**)

_pq_inv1(**x**)

_pq_sqrt1(**x**)

_pq_invsqrt1(**x**)

_pq_etox1(**x**)

_pq_etonx1(**x**)

_pq_sin1(**x**)

__pq__cos1(**x**)

__pq__biquad1(**x**)

__pq__ln__fx1(**x**)

__pq__inv__fx1(**x**)

__pq__sqrt__fx1(**x**)

__pq__invsqrt__fx1(**x**)

__pq__etox__fx1(**x**)

__pq__etonx__fx1(**x**)

__pq__sin__fx1(**x**)

__pq__cos__fx1(**x**)

__pq__biquad1__fx(**x**)

__pq__readMult0()

__pq__readAdd0()

__pq__readMult1()

__pq__readAdd1()

__pq__readMult0__fx()

__pq__readAdd0__fx()

__pq__readMult1__fx()

__pq__readAdd1__fx()

PQ__LN__INF
: Parameter used for vector ln(x)

PQ__INV__INF
: Parameter used for vector 1/x

PQ__SQRT__INF
: Parameter used for vector sqrt(x)

PQ__ISQRT__INF
: Parameter used for vector 1/sqrt(x)

PQ__ETOX__INF
: Parameter used for vector e^x

PQ__ETONX__INF
: Parameter used for vector e^(-x)

PQ__SIN__INF
: Parameter used for vector sin(x)

PQ__COS__INF
: Parameter used for vector cos(x)

PQ__RUN__OPCODE__R3__R2(BATCH_OPCODE, BATCH_MACHINE)

PQ__RUN__OPCODE__R5__R4(BATCH_OPCODE, BATCH_MACHINE)

PQ_RUN_OPCODE_R7_R6(BATCH_OPCODE, BATCH_MACHINE)

PQ_Vector8_FP(middle, last, BATCH_OPCODE, DOUBLE_READ_ADDERS, BATCH_MACHINE)

PQ_RUN_OPCODE_R2_R3(BATCH_OPCODE, BATCH_MACHINE)

PQ_RUN_OPCODE_R4_R5(BATCH_OPCODE, BATCH_MACHINE)

PQ_RUN_OPCODE_R6_R7(BATCH_OPCODE, BATCH_MACHINE)

PQ_Vector8_FX(middle, last, BATCH_OPCODE, DOUBLE_READ_ADDERS, BATCH_MACHINE)

PQ_Initiate_Vector_Func(pSrc, pDst)

Start 32-bit data vector calculation.

Start the vector calculation, the input data could be float, int32_t or Q31.

Parameters

- pSrc – Pointer to the source data.
- pDst – Pointer to the destination data.

PQ_End_Vector_Func()

End vector calculation.

This function should be called after vector calculation.

PQ_StartVector(PSRC, PDST, LENGTH)

Start 32-bit data vector calculation.

Start the vector calculation, the input data could be float, int32_t or Q31.

Parameters

- PSRC – Pointer to the source data.
- PDST – Pointer to the destination data.
- LENGTH – Number of the data, must be multiple of 8.

PQ_StartVectorFixed16(PSRC, PDST, LENGTH)

Start 16-bit data vector calculation.

Start the vector calculation, the input data could be int16_t. This function should be use with PQ_Vector8Fixed16.

Parameters

- PSRC – Pointer to the source data.
- PDST – Pointer to the destination data.
- LENGTH – Number of the data, must be multiple of 8.

PQ_StartVectorQ15(PSRC, PDST, LENGTH)

Start Q15-bit data vector calculation.

Start the vector calculation, the input data could be Q15. This function should be use with PQ_Vector8Q15. This function is dedicate for SinQ15/CosQ15 vector calculation. Because PowerQuad only supports Q31 Sin/Cos fixed function, so the input Q15 data is left shift 16 bits first, after Q31 calculation, the output data is right shift 16 bits.

Parameters

- PSRC – Pointer to the source data.
- PDST – Pointer to the destination data.
- LENGTH – Number of the data, must be multiple of 8.

PQ_EndVector()

End vector calculation.

This function should be called after vector calculation.

PQ_Vector8F32(BATCH_OPCODE, DOUBLE_READ_ADDERS, BATCH_MACHINE)

Float data vector calculation.

Float data vector calculation, the input data should be float. The parameter could be PQ_LN_INF, PQ_INV_INF, PQ_SQRT_INF, PQ_ISQRT_INF, PQ_ETOX_INF, PQ_ETONX_INF. For example, to calculate sqrt of a vector, use like this:

```
#define VECTOR_LEN 8
float input[VECTOR_LEN] = {1.0, 2.0, 3.0, 4.0, 5.0, 6.0, 7.0, 8.0};
float output[VECTOR_LEN];

PQ_StartVector(input, output, VECTOR_LEN);
PQ_Vector8F32(PQ_SQRT_INF);
PQ_EndVector();
```

PQ_Vector8Fixed32(BATCH_OPCODE, DOUBLE_READ_ADDERS, BATCH_MACHINE)

Fixed 32bits data vector calculation.

Float data vector calculation, the input data should be 32-bit integer. The parameter could be PQ_LN_INF, PQ_INV_INF, PQ_SQRT_INF, PQ_ISQRT_INF, PQ_ETOX_INF, PQ_ETONX_INF. PQ_SIN_INF, PQ_COS_INF. When this function is used for sin/cos calculation, the input data should be in the format Q1.31. For example, to calculate sqrt of a vector, use like this:

```
#define VECTOR_LEN 8
int32_t input[VECTOR_LEN] = {1, 4, 9, 16, 25, 36, 49, 64};
int32_t output[VECTOR_LEN];

PQ_StartVector(input, output, VECTOR_LEN);
PQ_Vector8F32(PQ_SQRT_INF);
PQ_EndVector();
```

PQ_Vector8Fixed16(BATCH_OPCODE, DOUBLE_READ_ADDERS, BATCH_MACHINE)

Fixed 32bits data vector calculation.

Float data vector calculation, the input data should be 16-bit integer. The parameter could be PQ_LN_INF, PQ_INV_INF, PQ_SQRT_INF, PQ_ISQRT_INF, PQ_ETOX_INF, PQ_ETONX_INF. For example, to calculate sqrt of a vector, use like this:

```
#define VECTOR_LEN 8
int16_t input[VECTOR_LEN] = {1, 4, 9, 16, 25, 36, 49, 64};
int16_t output[VECTOR_LEN];

PQ_StartVector(input, output, VECTOR_LEN);
PQ_Vector8F32(PQ_SQRT_INF);
PQ_EndVector();
```

PQ_Vector8Q15(BATCH_OPCODE, DOUBLE_READ_ADDERS, BATCH_MACHINE)

Q15 data vector calculation.

Q15 data vector calculation, this function should only be used for sin/cos Q15 calculation, and the coprocessor output prescaler must be set to 31 before this function. This function loads Q15 data and left shift 16 bits, calculate and right shift 16 bits, then stores to the output array. The input range -1 to 1 means -pi to pi. For example, to calculate sin of a vector, use like this:

```
#define VECTOR_LEN 8
int16_t input[VECTOR_LEN] = {...}
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
int16_t output[VECTOR_LEN];
const pq_prescale_t prescale =
{
    .inputPrescale = 0,
    .outputPrescale = 31,
    .outputSaturate = 0
};

PQ_SetCoprocessorScaler(POWERQUAD, const pq_prescale_t *prescale);

PQ_StartVectorQ15(pSrc, pDst, length);
PQ_Vector8Q15(PQ_SQRT_INF);
PQ_EndVector();
```

PQ_DF2_Vector8_FP(middle, last)

Float data vector biquad direct form II calculation.

Biquad filter, the input and output data are float data. Biquad side 0 is used. Example:

```
#define VECTOR_LEN 16
float input[VECTOR_LEN] = {1024.0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0};
float output[VECTOR_LEN];
pq_biquad_state_t state =
{
    .param =
    {
        .a_1 = xxx,
        .a_2 = xxx,
        .b_0 = xxx,
        .b_1 = xxx,
        .b_2 = xxx,
    },
};

PQ_BiquadRestoreInternalState(POWERQUAD, 0, &state);

PQ_Initiate_Vector_Func(pSrc,pDst);
PQ_DF2_Vector8_FP(false,false);
PQ_DF2_Vector8_FP(true,true);
PQ_End_Vector_Func();
```

PQ_DF2_Vector8_FX(middle, last)

Fixed data vector biquad direct form II calculation.

Biquad filter, the input and output data are fixed data. Biquad side 0 is used. Example:

```
#define VECTOR_LEN 16
int32_t input[VECTOR_LEN] = {1024, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0};
int32_t output[VECTOR_LEN];
pq_biquad_state_t state =
{
    .param =
    {
        .a_1 = xxx,
        .a_2 = xxx,
        .b_0 = xxx,
        .b_1 = xxx,
        .b_2 = xxx,
    },
};
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
PQ_BiquadRestoreInternalState(POWERQUAD, 0, &state);

PQ_Initiate_Vector_Func(pSrc,pDst);
PQ_DF2_Vector8_FX(false,false);
PQ_DF2_Vector8_FX(true,true);
PQ_End_Vector_Func();
```

PQ_Vector8BiquadDf2F32()

Float data vector biquad direct form II calculation.

Biquad filter, the input and output data are float data. Biquad side 0 is used. Example:

```
#define VECTOR_LEN 8
float input[VECTOR_LEN] = {1.0, 2.0, 3.0, 4.0, 5.0, 6.0, 7.0, 8.0};
float output[VECTOR_LEN];
pq_biquad_state_t state =
{
    .param =
    {
        .a_1 = xxx,
        .a_2 = xxx,
        .b_0 = xxx,
        .b_1 = xxx,
        .b_2 = xxx,
    },
};

PQ_BiquadRestoreInternalState(POWERQUAD, 0, &state);

PQ_StartVector(input, output, VECTOR_LEN);
PQ_Vector8BiquadDf2F32();
PQ_EndVector();
```

PQ_Vector8BiquadDf2Fixed32()

Fixed 32-bit data vector biquad direct form II calculation.

Biquad filter, the input and output data are Q31 or 32-bit integer. Biquad side 0 is used. Example:

```
#define VECTOR_LEN 8
int32_t input[VECTOR_LEN] = {1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8};
int32_t output[VECTOR_LEN];
pq_biquad_state_t state =
{
    .param =
    {
        .a_1 = xxx,
        .a_2 = xxx,
        .b_0 = xxx,
        .b_1 = xxx,
        .b_2 = xxx,
    },
};

PQ_BiquadRestoreInternalState(POWERQUAD, 0, &state);

PQ_StartVector(input, output, VECTOR_LEN);
PQ_Vector8BiquadDf2Fixed32();
PQ_EndVector();
```

PQ_Vector8BiquadDf2Fixed16()

Fixed 16-bit data vector biquad direct form II calculation.

Biquad filter, the input and output data are Q15 or 16-bit integer. Biquad side 0 is used. Example:

```
#define VECTOR_LEN 8
int16_t input[VECTOR_LEN] = {1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8};
int16_t output[VECTOR_LEN];
pq_biquad_state_t state =
{
    .param =
    {
        .a_1 = xxx,
        .a_2 = xxx,
        .b_0 = xxx,
        .b_1 = xxx,
        .b_2 = xxx,
    },
};

PQ_BiquadRestoreInternalState(POWERQUAD, 0, &state);

PQ_StartVector(input, output, VECTOR_LEN);
PQ_Vector8BiquadDf2Fixed16();
PQ_EndVector();
```

PQ_DF2_Cascade_Vector8_FP(middle, last)

Float data vector direct form II biquad cascade filter.

The input and output data are float data. The data flow is input -> biquad side 1 -> biquad side 0 -> output.

```
#define VECTOR_LEN 16
float input[VECTOR_LEN] = {1024.0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0};
float output[VECTOR_LEN];
pq_biquad_state_t state0 =
{
    .param =
    {
        .a_1 = xxx,
        .a_2 = xxx,
        .b_0 = xxx,
        .b_1 = xxx,
        .b_2 = xxx,
    },
};

pq_biquad_state_t state1 =
{
    .param =
    {
        .a_1 = xxx,
        .a_2 = xxx,
        .b_0 = xxx,
        .b_1 = xxx,
        .b_2 = xxx,
    },
};

PQ_BiquadRestoreInternalState(POWERQUAD, 0, &state0);
PQ_BiquadRestoreInternalState(POWERQUAD, 1, &state1);

PQ_Initiate_Vector_Func(pSrc, pDst);
PQ_DF2_Cascade_Vector8_FP(false, false);
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
PQ_DF2_Cascade_Vector8_FP(true, true);
PQ_End_Vector_Func();
```

PQ_DF2_Cascade_Vector8_FX(middle, last)

Fixed data vector direct form II biquad cascade filter.

The input and output data are fixed data. The data flow is input -> biquad side 1 -> biquad side 0 -> output.

```
#define VECTOR_LEN 16
int32_t input[VECTOR_LEN] = {1024.0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0};
int32_t output[VECTOR_LEN];
pq_biquad_state_t state0 =
{
    .param =
    {
        .a_1 = xxx,
        .a_2 = xxx,
        .b_0 = xxx,
        .b_1 = xxx,
        .b_2 = xxx,
    },
};

pq_biquad_state_t state1 =
{
    .param =
    {
        .a_1 = xxx,
        .a_2 = xxx,
        .b_0 = xxx,
        .b_1 = xxx,
        .b_2 = xxx,
    },
};

PQ_BiquadRestoreInternalState(POWERQUAD, 0, &state0);
PQ_BiquadRestoreInternalState(POWERQUAD, 1, &state1);

PQ_Initiate_Vector_Func(pSrc, pDst);
PQ_DF2_Cascade_Vector8_FX(false, false);
PQ_DF2_Cascade_Vector8_FX(true, true);
PQ_End_Vector_Func();
```

PQ_Vector8BiquadDf2CascadeF32()

Float data vector direct form II biquad cascade filter.

The input and output data are float data. The data flow is input -> biquad side 1 -> biquad side 0 -> output.

```
#define VECTOR_LEN 8
float input[VECTOR_LEN] = {1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8};
float output[VECTOR_LEN];
pq_biquad_state_t state0 =
{
    .param =
    {
        .a_1 = xxx,
        .a_2 = xxx,
        .b_0 = xxx,
        .b_1 = xxx,
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
        .b_2 = xxx,
    },
};

pq_biquad_state_t state1 =
{
    .param =
    {
        .a_1 = xxx,
        .a_2 = xxx,
        .b_0 = xxx,
        .b_1 = xxx,
        .b_2 = xxx,
    },
};

PQ_BiquadRestoreInternalState(POWERQUAD, 0, &state0);
PQ_BiquadRestoreInternalState(POWERQUAD, 1, &state1);

PQ_StartVector(input, output, VECTOR_LEN);
PQ_Vector8BiquadDf2CascadeF32();
PQ_EndVector();
```

PQ_Vector8BiquadDf2CascadeFixed32()

Fixed 32-bit data vector direct form II biquad cascade filter.

The input and output data are fixed 32-bit data. The data flow is input -> biquad side 1 -> biquad side 0 -> output.

```
#define VECTOR_LEN 8
int32_t input[VECTOR_LEN] = {1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8};
int32_t output[VECTOR_LEN];
pq_biquad_state_t state0 =
{
    .param =
    {
        .a_1 = xxx,
        .a_2 = xxx,
        .b_0 = xxx,
        .b_1 = xxx,
        .b_2 = xxx,
    },
};

pq_biquad_state_t state1 =
{
    .param =
    {
        .a_1 = xxx,
        .a_2 = xxx,
        .b_0 = xxx,
        .b_1 = xxx,
        .b_2 = xxx,
    },
};

PQ_BiquadRestoreInternalState(POWERQUAD, 0, &state0);
PQ_BiquadRestoreInternalState(POWERQUAD, 1, &state1);

PQ_StartVector(input, output, VECTOR_LEN);
PQ_Vector8BiquadDf2CascadeFixed32();
PQ_EndVector();
```

PQ_Vector8BiquadDf2CascadeFixed16()

Fixed 16-bit data vector direct form II biquad cascade filter.

The input and output data are fixed 16-bit data. The data flow is input -> biquad side 1 -> biquad side 0 -> output.

```
#define VECTOR_LEN 8
int32_t input[VECTOR_LEN] = {1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8};
int32_t output[VECTOR_LEN];
pq_biquad_state_t state0 =
{
    .param =
    {
        .a_1 = xxx,
        .a_2 = xxx,
        .b_0 = xxx,
        .b_1 = xxx,
        .b_2 = xxx,
    },
};

pq_biquad_state_t state1 =
{
    .param =
    {
        .a_1 = xxx,
        .a_2 = xxx,
        .b_0 = xxx,
        .b_1 = xxx,
        .b_2 = xxx,
    },
};

PQ_BiquadRestoreInternalState(POWERQUAD, 0, &state0);
PQ_BiquadRestoreInternalState(POWERQUAD, 1, &state1);

PQ_StartVector(input, output, VECTOR_LEN);
PQ_Vector8BiquadDf2CascadeFixed16();
PQ_EndVector();
```

POWERQUAD_MAKE_MATRIX_LEN(mat1Row, mat1Col, mat2Col)

Make the length used for matrix functions.

PQ_Q31_2_FLOAT(x)

Convert Q31 to float.

PQ_Q15_2_FLOAT(x)

Convert Q15 to float.

struct pq_prescale_t

#include <fsl_powerquad.h> Coprocessor prescale.

Public Members

int8_t inputPrescale

Input prescale.

int8_t outputPrescale

Output prescale.

int8_t outputSaturate

Output saturate at n bits, for example 0x11 is 8 bit space, the value will be truncated at +127 or -128.

struct pq_config_t

#include <fsl_powerquad.h> powerquad data structure format

Public Members

pq_format_t inputAFormat

Input A format.

int8_t inputAPrescale

Input A prescale, for example 1.5 can be 1.5*2^n if you scale by 'shifting' ('scaling' by a factor of n).

pq_format_t inputBFormat

Input B format.

int8_t inputBPrescale

Input B prescale.

pq_format_t outputFormat

Out format.

int8_t outputPrescale

Out prescale.

pq_format_t tmpFormat

Temp format.

int8_t tmpPrescale

Temp prescale.

pq_format_t machineFormat

Machine format.

uint32_t *tmpBase

Tmp base address.

struct __pq_biquad_param

#include <fsl_powerquad.h> Struct to save biquad parameters.

Public Members

float v_n_1

v[n-1], set to 0 when initialization.

float v_n

v[n], set to 0 when initialization.

float a_1

a[1]

float a_2

a[2]

float b_0

b[0]

float b_1
b[1]

float b_2
b[2]

struct __pq__biquad__state
#include <fsl_powerquad.h> Struct to save biquad state.

Public Members

pq_biquad_param_t param
Filter parameter.

uint32_t compreg
Internal register, set to 0 when initialization.

struct pq__biquad__cascade__df2__instance
#include <fsl_powerquad.h> Instance structure for the direct form II Biquad cascade filter.

Public Members

uint8_t numStages
Number of 2nd order stages in the filter.

pq_biquad_state_t *pState
Points to the array of state coefficients.

union __pq__float
#include <fsl_powerquad.h> Conversion between integer and float type.

Public Members

float floatX
Float type.

uint32_t integerX
Unsigned interger type.

2.65 PUF: Physical Unclonable Function

FSL__PUF__DRIVER__VERSION
PUF driver version. Version 2.2.0.

Current version: 2.2.0

Change log:

- 2.0.0
  - Initial version.
- 2.0.1
  - Fixed puf_wait_usec function optimization issue.
- 2.0.2

  - Add PUF configuration structure and support for PUF SRAM controller. Remove magic constants.
- 2.0.3
  - Fix MISRA C-2012 issue.
- 2.1.0
  - Align driver with PUF SRAM controller registers on LPCXpresso55s16.
  - Update initizalition logic .
- 2.1.1
  - Fix ARMGCC build warning .
- 2.1.2
  - Update: Add automatic big to little endian swap for user (pre-shared) keys destinated to secret hardware bus (PUF key index 0).
- 2.1.3
  - Fix MISRA C-2012 issue.
- 2.1.4
  - Replace register uint32_t ticksCount with volatile uint32_t ticksCount in puf_wait_usec() to prevent optimization out delay loop.
- 2.1.5
  - Use common SDK delay in puf_wait_usec()
- 2.1.6
  - Changed wait time in PUF_Init(), when initialization fails it will try PUF_Powercycle() with shorter time. If this shorter time will also fail, initialization will be tried with worst case time as before.
- 2.2.0
- Add support for kPUF_KeySlot4.
- Add new PUF_ClearKey() function, that clears a desired PUF internal HW key register.

enum _puf_key_index_register

Values:

enumerator kPUF_KeyIndex_00

enumerator kPUF_KeyIndex_01

enumerator kPUF_KeyIndex_02

enumerator kPUF_KeyIndex_03

enumerator kPUF_KeyIndex_04

enumerator kPUF_KeyIndex_05

enumerator kPUF_KeyIndex_06

enumerator kPUF_KeyIndex_07

enumerator kPUF_KeyIndex_08

enumerator kPUF_KeyIndex_09

enumerator kPUF_KeyIndex_10

enumerator kPUF_KeyIndex_11

enumerator kPUF_KeyIndex_12

enumerator kPUF_KeyIndex_13

enumerator kPUF_KeyIndex_14

enumerator kPUF_KeyIndex_15

enum _puf_min_max

Values:

enumerator kPUF_KeySizeMin

enumerator kPUF_KeySizeMax

enumerator kPUF_KeyIndexMax

enum _puf_key_slot

PUF key slot.

Values:

enumerator kPUF_KeySlot0

PUF key slot 0

enumerator kPUF_KeySlot1

PUF key slot 1

PUF status return codes.

Values:

enumerator kStatus_EnrollNotAllowed

enumerator kStatus_StartNotAllowed

typedef enum *_puf_key_index_register* puf_key_index_register_t

typedef enum *_puf_min_max* puf_min_max_t

typedef enum *_puf_key_slot* puf_key_slot_t

PUF key slot.

PUF_GET_KEY_CODE_SIZE_FOR_KEY_SIZE(x)

Get Key Code size in bytes from key size in bytes at compile time.

PUF_MIN_KEY_CODE_SIZE

PUF_ACTIVATION_CODE_SIZE

KEYSTORE_PUF_DISCHARGE_TIME_FIRST_TRY_MS

KEYSTORE_PUF_DISCHARGE_TIME_MAX_MS

struct puf_config_t

#include <fsl_puf.h>

2.66 Reset Driver

enum _RSTCTL_RSTn

Enumeration for peripheral reset control bits.

Defines the enumeration for peripheral reset control bits in RSTCLTx registers

Values:

enumerator kDSP_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
DSP reset control

enumerator kAXI_SWITCH_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
AXI Switch reset control

enumerator kPOWERQUAD_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
POWERQUAD reset control

enumerator kCASPER_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
CASPER reset control

enumerator kHASHCRYPT_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
HASHCRYPT reset control

enumerator kPUF_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
Physical unclonable function reset control

enumerator kRNG_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
Random number generator (RNG) reset control

enumerator kFLEXSPI0_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
FLEXSPI0/OTFAD reset control

enumerator kFLEXSPI1_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
FLEXSPI1 reset control

enumerator kUSBHS_PHY_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
High speed USB PHY reset control

enumerator kUSBHS_DEVICE_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
High speed USB Device reset control

enumerator kUSBHS_HOST_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
High speed USB Host reset control

enumerator kUSBHS_SRAM_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
High speed USB SRAM reset control

enumerator kSCT_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
Standard ctimers reset control

enumerator kGPU_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
GPU reset control

enumerator kDISP_CTRL_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
Display controller reset control

enumerator kMIPI_DSI_CTRL_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
MIPI DSI controller reset control

enumerator kMIPI_DSI_PHY_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
MIPI DSI PHY reset control

enumerator kSMART_DMA_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
Smart DMA reset control

enumerator kSDIO0_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
SDIO0 reset control

enumerator kSDIO1_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
SDIO1 reset control

enumerator kACMP0_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
Grouped interrupt (PINT) reset control.

enumerator kADC0_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
ADC0 reset control

enumerator kSHSGPIO0_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
Security HSGPIO 0 reset control

enumerator kUTICK0_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
Micro-tick timer reset control

enumerator kWWDT0_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
Windowed Watchdog timer 0 reset control

enumerator kFC0_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
Flexcomm Interface 0 reset control

enumerator kFC1_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
Flexcomm Interface 1 reset control

enumerator kFC2_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
Flexcomm Interface 2 reset control

enumerator kFC3_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
Flexcomm Interface 3 reset control

enumerator kFC4_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
Flexcomm Interface 4 reset control

enumerator kFC5_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
Flexcomm Interface 5 reset control

enumerator kFC6_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
Flexcomm Interface 6 reset control

enumerator kFC7_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
Flexcomm Interface 7 reset control

enumerator kFC8_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
Flexcomm Interface 8 reset control

enumerator kFC9_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
Flexcomm Interface 9 reset control

enumerator kFC10_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
Flexcomm Interface 10 reset control

enumerator kFC11_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
Flexcomm Interface 11 reset control

enumerator kFC12_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
Flexcomm Interface 12 reset control

enumerator kFC13_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
Flexcomm Interface 13 reset control

enumerator kFC14_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
Flexcomm Interface 14 reset control

enumerator kFC15_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
Flexcomm Interface 15 reset control

enumerator kDMIC_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
Digital microphone interface reset control

enumerator kFC16_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
Flexcomm Interface 16 reset control

enumerator kOSEVENT_TIMER_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
Osevent Timer reset control

enumerator kFLEXIO_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
FlexIO reset control

enumerator kHSGPIO0_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
HSGPIO 0 reset control

enumerator kHSGPIO1_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
HSGPIO 1 reset control

enumerator kHSGPIO2_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
HSGPIO 2 reset control

enumerator kHSGPIO3_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
HSGPIO 3 reset control

enumerator kHSGPIO4_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
HSGPIO 4 reset control

enumerator kHSGPIO5_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
HSGPIO 5 reset control

enumerator kHSGPIO6_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
HSGPIO 6 reset control

enumerator kHSGPIO7_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
HSGPIO 7 reset control

enumerator kCRC_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
CRC reset control

enumerator kDMAC0_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
DMA Controller 0 reset control

enumerator kDMAC1_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
DMA Controller 1 reset control

enumerator kMU_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
Message Unit reset control

enumerator kSEMA_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
Semaphore reset control

enumerator kFREQME_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
Frequency Measure reset control

enumerator kCT32B0_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
CT32B0 reset control

enumerator kCT32B1_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
CT32B1 reset control

enumerator kCT32B2_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
CT32B3 reset control

enumerator kCT32B3_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
CT32B4 reset control

enumerator kCT32B4_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
CT32B4 reset control

enumerator kMRT0_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
Multi-rate timer (MRT) reset control

enumerator kWWDT1_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
Windowed Watchdog timer 1 reset control

enumerator kI3C0_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
I3C0 reset control

enumerator kI3C1_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
I3C1 reset control

enumerator kPINT_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
GPIO Pin interrupt reset control

enumerator kINPUTMUX_RST_SHIFT_RSTn
Peripheral input muxes reset control

typedef enum *_RSTCTL_RSTn* RSTCTL_RSTn_t
Enumeration for peripheral reset control bits.

Defines the enumeration for peripheral reset control bits in RSTCLTx registers

typedef *RSTCTL_RSTn_t* reset_ip_name_t
IP reset handle.

void RESET_SetPeripheralReset(*reset_ip_name_t* peripheral)
Assert reset to peripheral.

Asserts reset signal to specified peripheral module.

Parameters

- peripheral – Assert reset to this peripheral. The enum argument contains encoding of reset register and reset bit position in the reset register.

void RESET_ClearPeripheralReset(*reset_ip_name_t* peripheral)
Clear reset to peripheral.

Clears reset signal to specified peripheral module, allows it to operate.

Parameters

- peripheral – Clear reset to this peripheral. The enum argument contains encoding of reset register and reset bit position in the reset register.

void RESET_PeripheralReset(*reset_ip_name_t* peripheral)
Reset peripheral module.

Reset peripheral module.

Parameters

- peripheral – Peripheral to reset. The enum argument contains encoding of reset register and reset bit position in the reset register.

static inline void RESET_ReleasePeripheralReset(*reset_ip_name_t* peripheral)

Release peripheral module.

Release peripheral module.

Parameters

- peripheral – Peripheral to release. The enum argument contains encoding of reset register and reset bit position in the reset register.

FSL_RESET_DRIVER_VERSION

reset driver version 2.1.0.

RST_CTL0_PSCCTL0

Reset control registers index.

RST_CTL0_PSCCTL1

RST_CTL0_PSCCTL2

RST_CTL1_PSCCTL0

RST_CTL1_PSCCTL1

RST_CTL1_PSCCTL2

ADC_RSTS

Array initializers with peripheral reset bits

CASPER_RSTS

CRC_RSTS

CTIMER_RSTS

DCNANO_RSTS

MIPI_DSI_RSTS

DMA_RSTS_N

DMIC_RSTS

FLEXCOMM_RSTS

FLEXIO_RSTS

FLEXSPI_RSTS

GPIO_RSTS_N

HASHCRYPT_RSTS

I3C_RSTS

INPUTMUX_RSTS

MRT_RSTS

MU_RSTS

OSTIMER_RSTS

PINT_RSTS

POWERQUAD_RSTS

PUF_RSTS

SCT_RSTS

SEMA42_RSTS

TRNG_RSTS

USDHC_RSTS

UTICK_RSTS

WWDT_RSTS

2.67 RTC: Real Time Clock

void RTC_Init(RTC_Type *base)

Un-gate the RTC clock and enable the RTC oscillator.

Note: This API should be called at the beginning of the application using the RTC driver.

Parameters

- base – RTC peripheral base address

static inline void RTC_Deinit(RTC_Type *base)

Stop the timer and gate the RTC clock.

Parameters

- base – RTC peripheral base address

status_t RTC_SetDatetime(RTC_Type *base, const *rtc_datetime_t* *datetime)

Set the RTC date and time according to the given time structure.

The RTC counter must be stopped prior to calling this function as writes to the RTC seconds register will fail if the RTC counter is running.

Parameters

- base – RTC peripheral base address
- datetime – Pointer to structure where the date and time details to set are stored

Returns

kStatus_Success: Success in setting the time and starting the RTC kStatus_InvalidArgument: Error because the datetime format is incorrect

void RTC_GetDatetime(RTC_Type *base, *rtc_datetime_t* *datetime)

Get the RTC time and stores it in the given time structure.

Parameters

- base – RTC peripheral base address
- datetime – Pointer to structure where the date and time details are stored.

status_t RTC_SetAlarm(RTC_Type *base, const *rtc_datetime_t* *alarmTime)

Set the RTC alarm time.

The function checks whether the specified alarm time is greater than the present time. If not, the function does not set the alarm and returns an error.

Parameters

- base – RTC peripheral base address
- alarmTime – Pointer to structure where the alarm time is stored.

Returns

kStatus_Success: success in setting the RTC alarm kStatus_InvalidArgument: Error because the alarm datetime format is incorrect kStatus_Fail: Error because the alarm time has already passed

void RTC_GetAlarm(RTC_Type *base, *rtc_datetime_t* *datetime)

Return the RTC alarm time.

Parameters

- base – RTC peripheral base address
- datetime – Pointer to structure where the alarm date and time details are stored.

static inline void RTC_EnableWakeupTimer(RTC_Type *base, bool enable)

Enable the RTC wake-up timer (1KHZ).

After calling this function, the RTC driver will use/un-use the RTC wake-up (1KHZ) at the same time.

Parameters

- base – RTC peripheral base address
- enable – Use/Un-use the RTC wake-up timer.
  - true: Use RTC wake-up timer at the same time.
  - false: Un-use RTC wake-up timer, RTC only use the normal seconds timer by default.

static inline uint32_t RTC_GetEnabledWakeupTimer(RTC_Type *base)

Get the enabled status of the RTC wake-up timer (1KHZ).

Parameters

- base – RTC peripheral base address

Returns

The enabled status of RTC wake-up timer (1KHZ).

static inline void RTC_EnableSubsecCounter(RTC_Type *base, bool enable)

Enable the RTC Sub-second counter (32KHZ).

Note: Only enable sub-second counter after RTC_ENA bit has been set to 1.

Parameters

- base – RTC peripheral base address
- enable – Enable/Disable RTC sub-second counter.
  - true: Enable RTC sub-second counter.
  - false: Disable RTC sub-second counter.

static inline uint32_t RTC_GetSubsecValue(const RTC_Type *base)

A read of 32KHZ sub-seconds counter.

Parameters

- base – RTC peripheral base address

Returns

Current value of the SUBSEC register

static inline void RTC_EnableWakeUpTimerInterruptFromDPD(RTC_Type *base, bool enable)

Enable the wake-up timer interrupt from deep power down mode.

Parameters

- base – RTC peripheral base address
- enable – Enable/Disable wake-up timer interrupt from deep power down mode.
  - true: Enable wake-up timer interrupt from deep power down mode.
  - false: Disable wake-up timer interrupt from deep power down mode.

static inline void RTC_EnableAlarmTimerInterruptFromDPD(RTC_Type *base, bool enable)

Enable the alarm timer interrupt from deep power down mode.

Parameters

- base – RTC peripheral base address
- enable – Enable/Disable alarm timer interrupt from deep power down mode.
  - true: Enable alarm timer interrupt from deep power down mode.
  - false: Disable alarm timer interrupt from deep power down mode.

static inline void RTC_EnableInterrupts(RTC_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Enables the selected RTC interrupts.

Deprecated:

Do not use this function. It has been superceded by RTC_EnableAlarmTimerInterruptFromDPD and RTC_EnableWakeUpTimerInterruptFromDPD

Parameters

- base – RTC peripheral base address
- mask – The interrupts to enable. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration rtc_interrupt_enable_t

static inline void RTC_DisableInterrupts(RTC_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Disables the selected RTC interrupts.

Deprecated:

Do not use this function. It has been superceded by RTC_EnableAlarmTimerInterruptFromDPD and RTC_EnableWakeUpTimerInterruptFromDPD

Parameters

- base – RTC peripheral base address
- mask – The interrupts to enable. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration rtc_interrupt_enable_t

static inline uint32_t RTC_GetEnabledInterrupts(RTC_Type *base)

Get the enabled RTC interrupts.

Deprecated:

Do not use this function. It will be deleted in next release version.

Parameters

- base – RTC peripheral base address

Returns

The enabled interrupts. This is the logical OR of members of the enumeration rtc_interrupt_enable_t

static inline uint32_t RTC_GetStatusFlags(RTC_Type *base)

Get the RTC status flags.

Parameters

- base – RTC peripheral base address

Returns

The status flags. This is the logical OR of members of the enumeration rtc_status_flags_t

static inline void RTC_ClearStatusFlags(RTC_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Clear the RTC status flags.

Parameters

- base – RTC peripheral base address
- mask – The status flags to clear. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration rtc_status_flags_t

static inline void RTC_EnableTimer(RTC_Type *base, bool enable)

Enable the RTC timer counter.

After calling this function, the RTC inner counter increments once a second when only using the RTC seconds timer (1hz), while the RTC inner wake-up timer countdown once a millisecond when using RTC wake-up timer (1KHZ) at the same time. RTC timer contain two timers, one is the RTC normal seconds timer, the other one is the RTC wake-up timer, the RTC enable bit is the master switch for the whole RTC timer, so user can use the RTC seconds (1HZ) timer independly, but they can't use the RTC wake-up timer (1KHZ) independently.

Parameters

- base – RTC peripheral base address
- enable – Enable/Disable RTC Timer counter.
  - true: Enable RTC Timer counter.
  - false: Disable RTC Timer counter.

static inline void RTC_StartTimer(RTC_Type *base)

Starts the RTC time counter.

Deprecated:

Do not use this function. It has been superceded by RTC_EnableTimer

After calling this function, the timer counter increments once a second provided SR[TOF] or SR[TIF] are not set.

Parameters

- base – RTC peripheral base address

static inline void RTC_StopTimer(RTC_Type *base)

Stops the RTC time counter.

Deprecated:

Do not use this function. It has been superceded by RTC_EnableTimer

RTC's seconds register can be written to only when the timer is stopped.

Parameters

- base – RTC peripheral base address

FSL_RTC_DRIVER_VERSION

Version 2.2.0

enum _rtc_interrupt_enable

List of RTC interrupts.

Values:

enumerator kRTC_AlarmInterruptEnable

Alarm interrupt.

enumerator kRTC_WakeupInterruptEnable

Wake-up interrupt.

enum _rtc_status_flags

List of RTC flags.

Values:

enumerator kRTC_AlarmFlag

Alarm flag

enumerator kRTC_WakeupFlag

1kHz wake-up timer flag

typedef enum *_rtc_interrupt_enable* rtc_interrupt_enable_t

List of RTC interrupts.

typedef enum *_rtc_status_flags* rtc_status_flags_t

List of RTC flags.

typedef struct *_rtc_datetime* rtc_datetime_t

Structure is used to hold the date and time.

static inline void RTC_SetSecondsTimerMatch(RTC_Type *base, uint32_t matchValue)

Set the RTC seconds timer (1HZ) MATCH value.

Parameters

- base – RTC peripheral base address
- matchValue – The value to be set into the RTC MATCH register

static inline uint32_t RTC_GetSecondsTimerMatch(RTC_Type *base)

Read actual RTC seconds timer (1HZ) MATCH value.

Parameters

- base – RTC peripheral base address

Returns
The actual RTC seconds timer (1HZ) MATCH value.

static inline void RTC_SetSecondsTimerCount(RTC_Type *base, uint32_t countValue)

Set the RTC seconds timer (1HZ) COUNT value.

Parameters

- base – RTC peripheral base address
- countValue – The value to be loaded into the RTC COUNT register

static inline uint32_t RTC_GetSecondsTimerCount(RTC_Type *base)

Read the actual RTC seconds timer (1HZ) COUNT value.

Parameters

- base – RTC peripheral base address

Returns
The actual RTC seconds timer (1HZ) COUNT value.

static inline void RTC_SetWakeupCount(RTC_Type *base, uint16_t wakeupValue)

Enable the RTC wake-up timer (1KHZ) and set countdown value to the RTC WAKE register.

Parameters

- base – RTC peripheral base address
- wakeupValue – The value to be loaded into the WAKE register in RTC wake-up timer (1KHZ).

static inline uint16_t RTC_GetWakeupCount(RTC_Type *base)

Read the actual value from the WAKE register value in RTC wake-up timer (1KHZ)

Read the WAKE register twice and compare the result, if the value match,the time can be used.

Parameters

- base – RTC peripheral base address

Returns
The actual value of the WAKE register value in RTC wake-up timer (1KHZ).

static inline void RTC_Reset(RTC_Type *base)

Perform a software reset on the RTC module.

This resets all RTC registers to their reset value. The bit is cleared by software explicitly clearing it.

Parameters

- base – RTC peripheral base address

struct __rtc_datetime

#include <fsl_rtc.h> Structure is used to hold the date and time.

Public Members

uint16_t year

Range from 1970 to 2099.

uint8_t month

Range from 1 to 12.

uint8_t day
: Range from 1 to 31 (depending on month).

uint8_t hour
: Range from 0 to 23.

uint8_t minute
: Range from 0 to 59.

uint8_t second
: Range from 0 to 59.

2.68 SCTimer: SCTimer/PWM (SCT)

status_t SCTIMER_Init(SCT_Type *base, const *sctimer_config_t* *config)

Ungates the SCTimer clock and configures the peripheral for basic operation.

Note: This API should be called at the beginning of the application using the SCTimer driver.

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address
- config – Pointer to the user configuration structure.

Returns

kStatus_Success indicates success; Else indicates failure.

void SCTIMER_Deinit(SCT_Type *base)

Gates the SCTimer clock.

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address

void SCTIMER_GetDefaultConfig(*sctimer_config_t* *config)

Fills in the SCTimer configuration structure with the default settings.

The default values are:

```
config->enableCounterUnify = true;
config->clockMode = kSCTIMER_System_ClockMode;
config->clockSelect = kSCTIMER_Clock_On_Rise_Input_0;
config->enableBidirection_l = false;
config->enableBidirection_h = false;
config->prescale_l = 0U;
config->prescale_h = 0U;
config->outInitState = 0U;
config->inputsync  = 0xFU;
```

Parameters

- config – Pointer to the user configuration structure.

status_t SCTIMER_SetupPwm(SCT_Type *base, const *sctimer_pwm_signal_param_t* *pwmParams, *sctimer_pwm_mode_t* mode, uint32_t pwmFreq_Hz, uint32_t srcClock_Hz, uint32_t *event)

Configures the PWM signal parameters.

Call this function to configure the PWM signal period, mode, duty cycle, and edge. This function will create 2 events; one of the events will trigger on match with the pulse value and the other will trigger when the counter matches the PWM period. The PWM period event is also used as a limit event to reset the counter or change direction. Both events are enabled for the same state. The state number can be retrieved by calling the function SCTIMER_GetCurrentStateNumber(). The counter is set to operate as one 32-bit counter (unify bit is set to 1). The counter operates in bi-directional mode when generating a center-aligned PWM.

Note: When setting PWM output from multiple output pins, they all should use the same PWM mode i.e all PWM's should be either edge-aligned or center-aligned. When using this API, the PWM signal frequency of all the initialized channels must be the same. Otherwise all the initialized channels' PWM signal frequency is equal to the last call to the API's pwmFreq_Hz.

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address
- pwmParams – PWM parameters to configure the output
- mode – PWM operation mode, options available in enumeration sctimer_pwm_mode_t
- pwmFreq_Hz – PWM signal frequency in Hz
- srcClock_Hz – SCTimer counter clock in Hz
- event – Pointer to a variable where the PWM period event number is stored

Returns

kStatus_Success on success kStatus_Fail If we have hit the limit in terms of number of events created or if an incorrect PWM dutycylce is passed in.

void SCTIMER_UpdatePwmDutycycle(SCT_Type *base, *sctimer_out_t* output, uint8_t dutyCyclePercent, uint32_t event)

Updates the duty cycle of an active PWM signal.

Before calling this function, the counter is set to operate as one 32-bit counter (unify bit is set to 1).

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address
- output – The output to configure
- dutyCyclePercent – New PWM pulse width; the value should be between 1 to 100
- event – Event number associated with this PWM signal. This was returned to the user by the function SCTIMER_SetupPwm().

static inline void SCTIMER_EnableInterrupts(SCT_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Enables the selected SCTimer interrupts.

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address
- mask – The interrupts to enable. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration sctimer_interrupt_enable_t

static inline void SCTIMER_DisableInterrupts(SCT_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Disables the selected SCTimer interrupts.

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address
- mask – The interrupts to enable. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration sctimer_interrupt_enable_t

static inline uint32_t SCTIMER_GetEnabledInterrupts(SCT_Type *base)

Gets the enabled SCTimer interrupts.

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address

Returns

The enabled interrupts. This is the logical OR of members of the enumeration sctimer_interrupt_enable_t

static inline uint32_t SCTIMER_GetStatusFlags(SCT_Type *base)

Gets the SCTimer status flags.

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address

Returns

The status flags. This is the logical OR of members of the enumeration sctimer_status_flags_t

static inline void SCTIMER_ClearStatusFlags(SCT_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Clears the SCTimer status flags.

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address
- mask – The status flags to clear. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration sctimer_status_flags_t

static inline void SCTIMER_StartTimer(SCT_Type *base, uint32_t countertoStart)

Starts the SCTimer counter.

Note: In 16-bit mode, we can enable both Counter_L and Counter_H, In 32-bit mode, we only can select Counter_U.

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address
- countertoStart – The SCTimer counters to enable. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration sctimer_counter_t.

static inline void SCTIMER_StopTimer(SCT_Type *base, uint32_t countertoStop)

Halts the SCTimer counter.

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address
- countertoStop – The SCTimer counters to stop. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration sctimer_counter_t.

status_t SCTIMER_CreateAndScheduleEvent(SCT_Type *base, *sctimer_event_t* howToMonitor, uint32_t matchValue, uint32_t whichIO, *sctimer_counter_t* whichCounter, uint32_t *event)

Create an event that is triggered on a match or IO and schedule in current state.

This function will configure an event using the options provided by the user. If the event type uses the counter match, then the function will set the user provided match value into a match register and put this match register number into the event control register. The event is enabled for the current state and the event number is increased by one at the end. The function returns the event number; this event number can be used to configure actions to be done when this event is triggered.

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address
- howToMonitor – Event type; options are available in the enumeration sctimer_interrupt_enable_t
- matchValue – The match value that will be programmed to a match register
- whichIO – The input or output that will be involved in event triggering. This field is ignored if the event type is "match only"
- whichCounter – SCTimer counter to use. In 16-bit mode, we can select Counter_L and Counter_H, In 32-bit mode, we can select Counter_U.
- event – Pointer to a variable where the new event number is stored

Returns

kStatus_Success on success kStatus_Error if we have hit the limit in terms of number of events created or if we have reached the limit in terms of number of match registers

void SCTIMER_ScheduleEvent(SCT_Type *base, uint32_t event)

Enable an event in the current state.

This function will allow the event passed in to trigger in the current state. The event must be created earlier by either calling the function SCTIMER_SetupPwm() or function SCTIMER_CreateAndScheduleEvent() .

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address
- event – Event number to enable in the current state

status_t SCTIMER_IncreaseState(SCT_Type *base)

Increase the state by 1.

All future events created by calling the function SCTIMER_ScheduleEvent() will be enabled in this new state.

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address

Returns

kStatus_Success on success kStatus_Error if we have hit the limit in terms of states used

uint32_t SCTIMER_GetCurrentState(SCT_Type *base)

Provides the current state.

User can use this to set the next state by calling the function SCTIMER_SetupNextStateAction().

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address

Returns
The current state

static inline void SCTIMER_SetCounterState(SCT_Type *base, *sctimer_counter_t* whichCounter, uint32_t state)

Set the counter current state.

The function is to set the state variable bit field of STATE register. Writing to the STATE_L, STATE_H, or unified register is only allowed when the corresponding counter is halted (HALT bits are set to 1 in the CTRL register).

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address
- whichCounter – SCTimer counter to use. In 16-bit mode, we can select Counter_L and Counter_H, In 32-bit mode, we can select Counter_U.
- state – The counter current state number (only support range from 0~31).

static inline uint16_t SCTIMER_GetCounterState(SCT_Type *base, *sctimer_counter_t* whichCounter)

Get the counter current state value.

The function is to get the state variable bit field of STATE register.

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address
- whichCounter – SCTimer counter to use. In 16-bit mode, we can select Counter_L and Counter_H, In 32-bit mode, we can select Counter_U.

Returns
The the counter current state value.

status_t SCTIMER_SetupCaptureAction(SCT_Type *base, *sctimer_counter_t* whichCounter, uint32_t *captureRegister, uint32_t event)

Setup capture of the counter value on trigger of a selected event.

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address
- whichCounter – SCTimer counter to use. In 16-bit mode, we can select Counter_L and Counter_H, In 32-bit mode, we can select Counter_U.
- captureRegister – Pointer to a variable where the capture register number will be returned. User can read the captured value from this register when the specified event is triggered.
- event – Event number that will trigger the capture

Returns
kStatus_Success on success kStatus_Error if we have hit the limit in terms of number of match/capture registers available

void SCTIMER_SetCallback(SCT_Type *base, *sctimer_event_callback_t* callback, uint32_t event)

Receive noticification when the event trigger an interrupt.

If the interrupt for the event is enabled by the user, then a callback can be registered which will be invoked when the event is triggered

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address

- event – Event number that will trigger the interrupt
- callback – Function to invoke when the event is triggered

static inline void SCTIMER_SetupStateLdMethodAction(SCT_Type *base, uint32_t event, bool fgLoad)

Change the load method of transition to the specified state.

Change the load method of transition, it will be triggered by the event number that is passed in by the user.

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address
- event – Event number that will change the method to trigger the state transition
- fgLoad – The method to load highest-numbered event occurring for that state to the STATE register.
  - true: Load the STATEV value to STATE when the event occurs to be the next state.
  - false: Add the STATEV value to STATE when the event occurs to be the next state.

static inline void SCTIMER_SetupNextStateActionwithLdMethod(SCT_Type *base, uint32_t nextState, uint32_t event, bool fgLoad)

Transition to the specified state with Load method.

This transition will be triggered by the event number that is passed in by the user, the method decide how to load the highest-numbered event occurring for that state to the STATE register.

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address
- nextState – The next state SCTimer will transition to
- event – Event number that will trigger the state transition
- fgLoad – The method to load the highest-numbered event occurring for that state to the STATE register.
  - true: Load the STATEV value to STATE when the event occurs to be the next state.
  - false: Add the STATEV value to STATE when the event occurs to be the next state.

static inline void SCTIMER_SetupNextStateAction(SCT_Type *base, uint32_t nextState, uint32_t event)

Transition to the specified state.

Deprecated:

Do not use this function. It has been superceded by SCTIMER_SetupNextStateActionwithLdMethod

This transition will be triggered by the event number that is passed in by the user.

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address

- nextState – The next state SCTimer will transition to
- event – Event number that will trigger the state transition

static inline void SCTIMER_SetupEventActiveDirection(SCT_Type *base, *sctimer_event_active_direction_t* activeDirection, uint32_t event)

Setup event active direction when the counters are operating in BIDIR mode.

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address
- activeDirection – Event generation active direction, see sctimer_event_active_direction_t.
- event – Event number that need setup the active direction.

static inline void SCTIMER_SetupOutputSetAction(SCT_Type *base, uint32_t whichIO, uint32_t event)

Set the Output.

This output will be set when the event number that is passed in by the user is triggered.

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address
- whichIO – The output to set
- event – Event number that will trigger the output change

static inline void SCTIMER_SetupOutputClearAction(SCT_Type *base, uint32_t whichIO, uint32_t event)

Clear the Output.

This output will be cleared when the event number that is passed in by the user is triggered.

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address
- whichIO – The output to clear
- event – Event number that will trigger the output change

void SCTIMER_SetupOutputToggleAction(SCT_Type *base, uint32_t whichIO, uint32_t event)

Toggle the output level.

This change in the output level is triggered by the event number that is passed in by the user.

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address
- whichIO – The output to toggle
- event – Event number that will trigger the output change

static inline void SCTIMER_SetupCounterLimitAction(SCT_Type *base, *sctimer_counter_t* whichCounter, uint32_t event)

Limit the running counter.

The counter is limited when the event number that is passed in by the user is triggered.

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address

- whichCounter – SCTimer counter to use. In 16-bit mode, we can select Counter_L and Counter_H, In 32-bit mode, we can select Counter_U.
- event – Event number that will trigger the counter to be limited

static inline void SCTIMER_SetupCounterStopAction(SCT_Type *base, *sctimer_counter_t* whichCounter, uint32_t event)

Stop the running counter.

The counter is stopped when the event number that is passed in by the user is triggered.

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address
- whichCounter – SCTimer counter to use. In 16-bit mode, we can select Counter_L and Counter_H, In 32-bit mode, we can select Counter_U.
- event – Event number that will trigger the counter to be stopped

static inline void SCTIMER_SetupCounterStartAction(SCT_Type *base, *sctimer_counter_t* whichCounter, uint32_t event)

Re-start the stopped counter.

The counter will re-start when the event number that is passed in by the user is triggered.

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address
- whichCounter – SCTimer counter to use. In 16-bit mode, we can select Counter_L and Counter_H, In 32-bit mode, we can select Counter_U.
- event – Event number that will trigger the counter to re-start

static inline void SCTIMER_SetupCounterHaltAction(SCT_Type *base, *sctimer_counter_t* whichCounter, uint32_t event)

Halt the running counter.

The counter is disabled (halted) when the event number that is passed in by the user is triggered. When the counter is halted, all further events are disabled. The HALT condition can only be removed by calling the SCTIMER_StartTimer() function.

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address
- whichCounter – SCTimer counter to use. In 16-bit mode, we can select Counter_L and Counter_H, In 32-bit mode, we can select Counter_U.
- event – Event number that will trigger the counter to be halted

static inline void SCTIMER_SetupDmaTriggerAction(SCT_Type *base, uint32_t dmaNumber, uint32_t event)

Generate a DMA request.

DMA request will be triggered by the event number that is passed in by the user.

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address
- dmaNumber – The DMA request to generate
- event – Event number that will trigger the DMA request

static inline void SCTIMER_SetCOUNTValue(SCT_Type *base, *sctimer_counter_t* whichCounter, uint32_t value)

Set the value of counter.

The function is to set the value of Count register, Writing to the COUNT_L, COUNT_H, or unified register is only allowed when the corresponding counter is halted (HALT bits are set to 1 in the CTRL register).

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address
- whichCounter – SCTimer counter to use. In 16-bit mode, we can select Counter_L and Counter_H, In 32-bit mode, we can select Counter_U.
- value – the counter value update to the COUNT register.

static inline uint32_t SCTIMER_GetCOUNTValue(SCT_Type *base, *sctimer_counter_t* whichCounter)

Get the value of counter.

The function is to read the value of Count register, software can read the counter registers at any time..

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address
- whichCounter – SCTimer counter to use. In 16-bit mode, we can select Counter_L and Counter_H, In 32-bit mode, we can select Counter_U.

Returns

The value of counter selected.

static inline void SCTIMER_SetEventInState(SCT_Type *base, uint32_t event, uint32_t state)

Set the state mask bit field of EV_STATE register.

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address
- event – The EV_STATE register be set.
- state – The state value in which the event is enabled to occur.

static inline void SCTIMER_ClearEventInState(SCT_Type *base, uint32_t event, uint32_t state)

Clear the state mask bit field of EV_STATE register.

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address
- event – The EV_STATE register be clear.
- state – The state value in which the event is disabled to occur.

static inline bool SCTIMER_GetEventInState(SCT_Type *base, uint32_t event, uint32_t state)

Get the state mask bit field of EV_STATE register.

Note: This function is to check whether the event is enabled in a specific state.

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address
- event – The EV_STATE register be read.
- state – The state value.

Returns
The the state mask bit field of EV_STATE register.

- true: The event is enable in state.
- false: The event is disable in state.

static inline uint32_t SCTIMER_GetCaptureValue(SCT_Type *base, *sctimer_counter_t* whichCounter, uint8_t capChannel)

Get the value of capture register.

This function returns the captured value upon occurrence of the events selected by the corresponding Capture Control registers occurred.

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address
- whichCounter – SCTimer counter to use. In 16-bit mode, we can select Counter_L and Counter_H, In 32-bit mode, we can select Counter_U.
- capChannel – SCTimer capture register of capture channel.

Returns
The SCTimer counter value at which this register was last captured.

void SCTIMER_EventHandleIRQ(SCT_Type *base)

SCTimer interrupt handler.

Parameters

- base – SCTimer peripheral base address.

FSL_SCTIMER_DRIVER_VERSION

Version

enum _sctimer_pwm_mode

SCTimer PWM operation modes.

Values:

enumerator kSCTIMER_EdgeAlignedPwm

Edge-aligned PWM

enumerator kSCTIMER_CenterAlignedPwm

Center-aligned PWM

enum _sctimer_counter

SCTimer counters type.

Values:

enumerator kSCTIMER_Counter_L

16-bit Low counter.

enumerator kSCTIMER_Counter_H

16-bit High counter.

enumerator kSCTIMER_Counter_U

32-bit Unified counter.

enum _sctimer_input

List of SCTimer input pins.

Values:

enumerator kSCTIMER_Input_0
SCTIMER input 0

enumerator kSCTIMER_Input_1
SCTIMER input 1

enumerator kSCTIMER_Input_2
SCTIMER input 2

enumerator kSCTIMER_Input_3
SCTIMER input 3

enumerator kSCTIMER_Input_4
SCTIMER input 4

enumerator kSCTIMER_Input_5
SCTIMER input 5

enumerator kSCTIMER_Input_6
SCTIMER input 6

enumerator kSCTIMER_Input_7
SCTIMER input 7

enum _sctimer_out
List of SCTimer output pins.

Values:

enumerator kSCTIMER_Out_0
SCTIMER output 0

enumerator kSCTIMER_Out_1
SCTIMER output 1

enumerator kSCTIMER_Out_2
SCTIMER output 2

enumerator kSCTIMER_Out_3
SCTIMER output 3

enumerator kSCTIMER_Out_4
SCTIMER output 4

enumerator kSCTIMER_Out_5
SCTIMER output 5

enumerator kSCTIMER_Out_6
SCTIMER output 6

enumerator kSCTIMER_Out_7
SCTIMER output 7

enumerator kSCTIMER_Out_8
SCTIMER output 8

enumerator kSCTIMER_Out_9
SCTIMER output 9

enum _sctimer_pwm_level_select
SCTimer PWM output pulse mode: high-true, low-true or no output.

Values:

enumerator kSCTIMER_LowTrue
Low true pulses

enumerator kSCTIMER_HighTrue
High true pulses

enum _sctimer_clock_mode
SCTimer clock mode options.

Values:

enumerator kSCTIMER_System_ClockMode
System Clock Mode

enumerator kSCTIMER_Sampled_ClockMode
Sampled System Clock Mode

enumerator kSCTIMER_Input_ClockMode
SCT Input Clock Mode

enumerator kSCTIMER_Asynchronous_ClockMode
Asynchronous Mode

enum _sctimer_clock_select
SCTimer clock select options.

Values:

enumerator kSCTIMER_Clock_On_Rise_Input_0
Rising edges on input 0

enumerator kSCTIMER_Clock_On_Fall_Input_0
Falling edges on input 0

enumerator kSCTIMER_Clock_On_Rise_Input_1
Rising edges on input 1

enumerator kSCTIMER_Clock_On_Fall_Input_1
Falling edges on input 1

enumerator kSCTIMER_Clock_On_Rise_Input_2
Rising edges on input 2

enumerator kSCTIMER_Clock_On_Fall_Input_2
Falling edges on input 2

enumerator kSCTIMER_Clock_On_Rise_Input_3
Rising edges on input 3

enumerator kSCTIMER_Clock_On_Fall_Input_3
Falling edges on input 3

enumerator kSCTIMER_Clock_On_Rise_Input_4
Rising edges on input 4

enumerator kSCTIMER_Clock_On_Fall_Input_4
Falling edges on input 4

enumerator kSCTIMER_Clock_On_Rise_Input_5
Rising edges on input 5

enumerator kSCTIMER_Clock_On_Fall_Input_5
Falling edges on input 5

enumerator kSCTIMER_Clock_On_Rise_Input_6
Rising edges on input 6

enumerator kSCTIMER_Clock_On_Fall_Input_6
Falling edges on input 6

enumerator kSCTIMER_Clock_On_Rise_Input_7
Rising edges on input 7

enumerator kSCTIMER_Clock_On_Fall_Input_7
Falling edges on input 7

enum _sctimer_conflict_resolution
SCTimer output conflict resolution options.

Specifies what action should be taken if multiple events dictate that a given output should be both set and cleared at the same time

Values:

enumerator kSCTIMER_ResolveNone
No change

enumerator kSCTIMER_ResolveSet
Set output

enumerator kSCTIMER_ResolveClear
Clear output

enumerator kSCTIMER_ResolveToggle
Toggle output

enum _sctimer_event_active_direction
List of SCTimer event generation active direction when the counters are operating in BIDIR mode.

Values:

enumerator kSCTIMER_ActiveIndependent
This event is triggered regardless of the count direction.

enumerator kSCTIMER_ActiveInCountUp
This event is triggered only during up-counting when BIDIR = 1.

enumerator kSCTIMER_ActiveInCountDown
This event is triggered only during down-counting when BIDIR = 1.

enum _sctimer_event
List of SCTimer event types.

Values:

enumerator kSCTIMER_InputLowOrMatchEvent

enumerator kSCTIMER_InputRiseOrMatchEvent

enumerator kSCTIMER_InputFallOrMatchEvent

enumerator kSCTIMER_InputHighOrMatchEvent

enumerator kSCTIMER_MatchEventOnly

enumerator kSCTIMER_InputLowEvent

enumerator kSCTIMER_InputRiseEvent

enumerator kSCTIMER_InputFallEvent

enumerator kSCTIMER_InputHighEvent

enumerator kSCTIMER_InputLowAndMatchEvent

enumerator kSCTIMER_InputRiseAndMatchEvent

enumerator kSCTIMER_InputFallAndMatchEvent

enumerator kSCTIMER_InputHighAndMatchEvent

enumerator kSCTIMER_OutputLowOrMatchEvent

enumerator kSCTIMER_OutputRiseOrMatchEvent

enumerator kSCTIMER_OutputFallOrMatchEvent

enumerator kSCTIMER_OutputHighOrMatchEvent

enumerator kSCTIMER_OutputLowEvent

enumerator kSCTIMER_OutputRiseEvent

enumerator kSCTIMER_OutputFallEvent

enumerator kSCTIMER_OutputHighEvent

enumerator kSCTIMER_OutputLowAndMatchEvent

enumerator kSCTIMER_OutputRiseAndMatchEvent

enumerator kSCTIMER_OutputFallAndMatchEvent

enumerator kSCTIMER_OutputHighAndMatchEvent

enum _sctimer_interrupt_enable

List of SCTimer interrupts.

Values:

enumerator kSCTIMER_Event0InterruptEnable

Event 0 interrupt

enumerator kSCTIMER_Event1InterruptEnable

Event 1 interrupt

enumerator kSCTIMER_Event2InterruptEnable

Event 2 interrupt

enumerator kSCTIMER_Event3InterruptEnable

Event 3 interrupt

enumerator kSCTIMER_Event4InterruptEnable

Event 4 interrupt

enumerator kSCTIMER_Event5InterruptEnable

Event 5 interrupt

enumerator kSCTIMER_Event6InterruptEnable

Event 6 interrupt

enumerator kSCTIMER_Event7InterruptEnable
Event 7 interrupt

enumerator kSCTIMER_Event8InterruptEnable
Event 8 interrupt

enumerator kSCTIMER_Event9InterruptEnable
Event 9 interrupt

enumerator kSCTIMER_Event10InterruptEnable
Event 10 interrupt

enumerator kSCTIMER_Event11InterruptEnable
Event 11 interrupt

enumerator kSCTIMER_Event12InterruptEnable
Event 12 interrupt

enum _sctimer_status_flags
List of SCTimer flags.

Values:

enumerator kSCTIMER_Event0Flag
Event 0 Flag

enumerator kSCTIMER_Event1Flag
Event 1 Flag

enumerator kSCTIMER_Event2Flag
Event 2 Flag

enumerator kSCTIMER_Event3Flag
Event 3 Flag

enumerator kSCTIMER_Event4Flag
Event 4 Flag

enumerator kSCTIMER_Event5Flag
Event 5 Flag

enumerator kSCTIMER_Event6Flag
Event 6 Flag

enumerator kSCTIMER_Event7Flag
Event 7 Flag

enumerator kSCTIMER_Event8Flag
Event 8 Flag

enumerator kSCTIMER_Event9Flag
Event 9 Flag

enumerator kSCTIMER_Event10Flag
Event 10 Flag

enumerator kSCTIMER_Event11Flag
Event 11 Flag

enumerator kSCTIMER_Event12Flag
Event 12 Flag

enumerator kSCTIMER_BusErrorLFlag
Bus error due to write when L counter was not halted

enumerator kSCTIMER_BusErrorHFlag
Bus error due to write when H counter was not halted

typedef enum *_sctimer_pwm_mode* sctimer_pwm_mode_t
SCTimer PWM operation modes.

typedef enum *_sctimer_counter* sctimer_counter_t
SCTimer counters type.

typedef enum *_sctimer_input* sctimer_input_t
List of SCTimer input pins.

typedef enum *_sctimer_out* sctimer_out_t
List of SCTimer output pins.

typedef enum *_sctimer_pwm_level_select* sctimer_pwm_level_select_t
SCTimer PWM output pulse mode: high-true, low-true or no output.

typedef struct *_sctimer_pwm_signal_param* sctimer_pwm_signal_param_t
Options to configure a SCTimer PWM signal.

typedef enum *_sctimer_clock_mode* sctimer_clock_mode_t
SCTimer clock mode options.

typedef enum *_sctimer_clock_select* sctimer_clock_select_t
SCTimer clock select options.

typedef enum *_sctimer_conflict_resolution* sctimer_conflict_resolution_t
SCTimer output conflict resolution options.

Specifies what action should be taken if multiple events dictate that a given output should be both set and cleared at the same time

typedef enum *_sctimer_event_active_direction* sctimer_event_active_direction_t
List of SCTimer event generation active direction when the counters are operating in BIDIR mode.

typedef enum *_sctimer_event* sctimer_event_t
List of SCTimer event types.

typedef void (*sctimer_event_callback_t)(void)
SCTimer callback typedef.

typedef enum *_sctimer_interrupt_enable* sctimer_interrupt_enable_t
List of SCTimer interrupts.

typedef enum *_sctimer_status_flags* sctimer_status_flags_t
List of SCTimer flags.

typedef struct *_sctimer_config* sctimer_config_t
SCTimer configuration structure.

This structure holds the configuration settings for the SCTimer peripheral. To initialize this structure to reasonable defaults, call the SCTMR_GetDefaultConfig() function and pass a pointer to the configuration structure instance.

The configuration structure can be made constant so as to reside in flash.

SCT_EV_STATE_STATEMSKn(x)

struct sctimer_pwm_signal_param
#include <fsl_sctimer.h> Options to configure a SCTimer PWM signal.

Public Members

sctimer_out_t output

The output pin to use to generate the PWM signal

sctimer_pwm_level_select_t level

PWM output active level select.

uint8_t dutyCyclePercent

PWM pulse width, value should be between 0 to 100 0 = always inactive signal (0% duty cycle) 100 = always active signal (100% duty cycle).

struct _sctimer_config

#include <fsl_sctimer.h> SCTimer configuration structure.

This structure holds the configuration settings for the SCTimer peripheral. To initialize this structure to reasonable defaults, call the SCTMR_GetDefaultConfig() function and pass a pointer to the configuration structure instance.

The configuration structure can be made constant so as to reside in flash.

Public Members

bool enableCounterUnify

true: SCT operates as a unified 32-bit counter; false: SCT operates as two 16-bit counters. User can use the 16-bit low counter and the 16-bit high counters at the same time; for Hardware limit, user can not use unified 32-bit counter and any 16-bit low/high counter at the same time.

sctimer_clock_mode_t clockMode

SCT clock mode value

sctimer_clock_select_t clockSelect

SCT clock select value

bool enableBidirection_l

true: Up-down count mode for the L or unified counter false: Up count mode only for the L or unified counter

bool enableBidirection_h

true: Up-down count mode for the H or unified counter false: Up count mode only for the H or unified counter. This field is used only if the enableCounterUnify is set to false

uint8_t prescale_l

Prescale value to produce the L or unified counter clock

uint8_t prescale_h

Prescale value to produce the H counter clock. This field is used only if the enableCounterUnify is set to false

uint8_t outInitState

Defines the initial output value

uint8_t inputsync

SCT INSYNC value, INSYNC field in the CONFIG register, from bit9 to bit 16. it is used to define synchronization for input N: bit 9 = input 0 bit 10 = input 1 bit 11 = input 2 bit 12 = input 3 All other bits are reserved (bit13 ~bit 16). How User to set the the value for the member inputsync. IE: delay for input0, and input 1, bypasses for input 2 and input 3 MACRO definition in user level. #define INPUTSYNC0 (0U) #define INPUTSYNC1 (1U) #define INPUTSYNC2 (2U) #define INPUTSYNC3 (3U) User Code. sctimerInfo.inputsync = (1 « INPUTSYNC2) | (1 « INPUTSYNC3);

2.69 SEMA42: Hardware Semaphores Driver

FSL_SEMA42_DRIVER_VERSION
SEMA42 driver version.

SEMA42 status return codes.

Values:

enumerator kStatus_SEMA42_Busy
SEMA42 gate has been locked by other processor.

enumerator kStatus_SEMA42_Reseting
SEMA42 gate reseting is ongoing.

enum _sema42_gate_status
SEMA42 gate lock status.

Values:

enumerator kSEMA42_Unlocked
The gate is unlocked.

enumerator kSEMA42_LockedByProc0
The gate is locked by processor 0.

enumerator kSEMA42_LockedByProc1
The gate is locked by processor 1.

enumerator kSEMA42_LockedByProc2
The gate is locked by processor 2.

enumerator kSEMA42_LockedByProc3
The gate is locked by processor 3.

enumerator kSEMA42_LockedByProc4
The gate is locked by processor 4.

enumerator kSEMA42_LockedByProc5
The gate is locked by processor 5.

enumerator kSEMA42_LockedByProc6
The gate is locked by processor 6.

enumerator kSEMA42_LockedByProc7
The gate is locked by processor 7.

enumerator kSEMA42_LockedByProc8
The gate is locked by processor 8.

enumerator kSEMA42_LockedByProc9
The gate is locked by processor 9.

enumerator kSEMA42_LockedByProc10
The gate is locked by processor 10.

enumerator kSEMA42_LockedByProc11
The gate is locked by processor 11.

enumerator kSEMA42_LockedByProc12
The gate is locked by processor 12.

enumerator kSEMA42_LockedByProc13

The gate is locked by processor 13.

enumerator kSEMA42_LockedByProc14

The gate is locked by processor 14.

typedef enum *_sema42_gate_status* sema42_gate_status_t

SEMA42 gate lock status.

void SEMA42_Init(SEMA42_Type *base)

Initializes the SEMA42 module.

This function initializes the SEMA42 module. It only enables the clock but does not reset the gates because the module might be used by other processors at the same time. To reset the gates, call either SEMA42_ResetGate or SEMA42_ResetAllGates function.

Parameters

- base – SEMA42 peripheral base address.

void SEMA42_Deinit(SEMA42_Type *base)

De-initializes the SEMA42 module.

This function de-initializes the SEMA42 module. It only disables the clock.

Parameters

- base – SEMA42 peripheral base address.

status_t SEMA42_TryLock(SEMA42_Type *base, uint8_t gateNum, uint8_t procNum)

Tries to lock the SEMA42 gate.

This function tries to lock the specific SEMA42 gate. If the gate has been locked by another processor, this function returns an error code.

Parameters

- base – SEMA42 peripheral base address.
- gateNum – Gate number to lock.
- procNum – Current processor number.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Lock the sema42 gate successfully.
- kStatus_SEMA42_Busy – Sema42 gate has been locked by another processor.

status_t SEMA42_Lock(SEMA42_Type *base, uint8_t gateNum, uint8_t procNum)

Locks the SEMA42 gate.

This function locks the specific SEMA42 gate. If the gate has been locked by other processors, this function waits until it is unlocked and then lock it.

If SEMA42_BUSY_POLL_COUNT is defined and non-zero, the function will timeout after the specified number of polling iterations and return kStatus_Timeout.

Parameters

- base – SEMA42 peripheral base address.
- gateNum – Gate number to lock.
- procNum – Current processor number.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – The gate was successfully locked.

- kStatus_Timeout – Timeout occurred while waiting for the gate to be unlocked.

Returns
status_t

static inline void SEMA42_Unlock(SEMA42_Type *base, uint8_t gateNum)

Unlocks the SEMA42 gate.

This function unlocks the specific SEMA42 gate. It only writes unlock value to the SEMA42 gate register. However, it does not check whether the SEMA42 gate is locked by the current processor or not. As a result, if the SEMA42 gate is not locked by the current processor, this function has no effect.

Parameters

- base – SEMA42 peripheral base address.
- gateNum – Gate number to unlock.

static inline *sema42_gate_status_t* SEMA42_GetGateStatus(SEMA42_Type *base, uint8_t gateNum)

Gets the status of the SEMA42 gate.

This function checks the lock status of a specific SEMA42 gate.

Parameters

- base – SEMA42 peripheral base address.
- gateNum – Gate number.

Returns
status Current status.

status_t SEMA42_ResetGate(SEMA42_Type *base, uint8_t gateNum)

Resets the SEMA42 gate to an unlocked status.

This function resets a SEMA42 gate to an unlocked status.

Parameters

- base – SEMA42 peripheral base address.
- gateNum – Gate number.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – SEMA42 gate is reset successfully.
- kStatus_SEMA42_Reseting – Some other reset process is ongoing.

static inline *status_t* SEMA42_ResetAllGates(SEMA42_Type *base)

Resets all SEMA42 gates to an unlocked status.

This function resets all SEMA42 gate to an unlocked status.

Parameters

- base – SEMA42 peripheral base address.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – SEMA42 is reset successfully.
- kStatus_SEMA42_Reseting – Some other reset process is ongoing.

SEMA42_GATE_NUM_RESET_ALL

The number to reset all SEMA42 gates.

SEMA42_GATEn(base, n)

SEMA42 gate n register address.

The SEMA42 gates are sorted in the order 3, 2, 1, 0, 7, 6, 5, 4, ... not in the order 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, ... The macro SEMA42_GATEn gets the SEMA42 gate based on the gate index.

The input gate index is XOR'ed with 3U: 0 ^ 3 = 3 1 ^ 3 = 2 2 ^ 3 = 1 3 ^ 3 = 0 4 ^ 3 = 7 5 ^ 3 = 6 6 ^ 3 = 5 7 ^ 3 = 4 ...

SEMA42_BUSY_POLL_COUNT

Maximum polling iterations for SEMA42 waiting loops.

This parameter defines the maximum number of iterations for any polling loop in the SEMA42 driver code before timing out and returning an error.

It applies to all waiting loops in SEMA42 driver, such as waiting for a gate to be unlocked, waiting for a reset to complete, or waiting for a resource to become available.

This is a count of loop iterations, not a time-based value.

If defined as 0, polling loops will continue indefinitely until their exit condition is met, which could potentially cause the system to hang if hardware doesn't respond or if a resource is never released.

2.70 SMARTDMA: SMART DMA Driver

typedef void (*smartdma_callback_t)(void *param)

Callback function prototype for the smartdma driver.

void SMARTDMA_Init(uint32_t apiMemAddr, const void *firmware, uint32_t firmwareSizeByte)

Initialize the SMARTDMA.

Deprecated:

Do not use this function. It has been superceded by SMARTDMA_InitWithoutFirmware and SMARTDMA_InstallFirmware.

Parameters

- apiMemAddr – The address firmware will be copied to.
- firmware – The firmware to use.
- firmwareSizeByte – Size of firmware.

void SMARTDMA_InitWithoutFirmware(void)

Initialize the SMARTDMA.

This function is similar with SMARTDMA_Init, the difference is this function does not install the firmware, the firmware could be installed using SMARTDMA_InstallFirmware.

void SMARTDMA_InstallFirmware(uint32_t apiMemAddr, const void *firmware, uint32_t firmwareSizeByte)

Install the firmware.

Note: Only call this function when SMARTDMA is not busy.

Parameters

- apiMemAddr – The address firmware will be copied to.
- firmware – The firmware to use.
- firmwareSizeByte – Size of firmware.

void SMARTDMA_InstallCallback(*smartdma_callback_t* callback, void *param)

Install the complete callback function.

Note: Only call this function when SMARTDMA is not busy.

Parameters

- callback – The callback called when smartdma program finished.
- param – Parameter for the callback.

void SMARTDMA_Boot(uint32_t apiIndex, void *pParam, uint8_t mask)

Boot the SMARTDMA to run program.

Note: Only call this function when SMARTDMA is not busy.

Note: The memory *pParam shall not be freed before the SMARTDMA function finished.

Parameters

- apiIndex – Index of the API to call.
- pParam – Pointer to the parameter allocated by caller.
- mask – Value set to register SMARTDMA->ARM2EZH[0:1].

void SMARTDMA_Boot1(uint32_t apiIndex, const *smartdma_param_t* *pParam, uint8_t mask)

Copy SMARTDMA params and Boot to run program.

This function is similar with SMARTDMA_Boot, the only difference is, this function copies the *pParam to a local variable, upper layer can free the pParam's memory before the SMARTDMA execution finished, for example, upper layer can define the param as a local variable.

Note: Only call this function when SMARTDMA is not busy.

Parameters

- apiIndex – Index of the API to call.
- pParam – Pointer to the parameter.
- mask – Value set to SMARTDMA_ARM2SMARTDMA[0:1].

void SMARTDMA_Deinit(void)

Deinitialize the SMARTDMA.

void SMARTDMA_Reset(void)

Reset the SMARTDMA.

void SMARTDMA_HandleIRQ(void)

SMARTDMA IRQ.

void SMARTDMA_SetExternalFlag(uint8_t flag)

SMARTDMA set EX flag.

void SMARTDMA_AccessShareRAM(uint8_t flag)

SMARTDMA access RAM.

FSL_SMARTDMA_DRIVER_VERSION

SMARTDMA driver version.

2.71 MCXN SMARTDMA Firmware

enum _smartdma_display_api

The API index when using s_smartdmaDisplayFirmware.

Values:

enumerator kSMARTDMA_FlexIO_DMA_Endian_Swap

enumerator kSMARTDMA_FlexIO_DMA_Reverse32

enumerator kSMARTDMA_FlexIO_DMA

enumerator kSMARTDMA_FlexIO_DMA_Reverse

Send data to FlexIO with reverse order.

enumerator kSMARTDMA_RGB565To888

Convert RGB565 to RGB888 and save to output memory, use parameter smartdma_rgb565_rgb888_param_t.

enumerator kSMARTDMA_FlexIO_DMA_RGB565To888

Convert RGB565 to RGB888 and send to FlexIO, use parameter smartdma_flexio_mculcd_param_t.

enumerator kSMARTDMA_FlexIO_DMA_ARGB2RGB

Convert ARGB to RGB and send to FlexIO, use parameter smartdma_flexio_mculcd_param_t.

enumerator kSMARTDMA_FlexIO_DMA_ARGB2RGB_Endian_Swap

Convert ARGB to RGB, then swap endian, and send to FlexIO, use parameter smartdma_flexio_mculcd_param_t.

enumerator kSMARTDMA_FlexIO_DMA_ARGB2RGB_Endian_Swap_Reverse

Convert ARGB to RGB, then swap endian and reverse, and send to FlexIO, use parameter smartdma_flexio_mculcd_param_t.

enumerator _smartdma_camera_api

The API index when using s_smartdmaCameraFirmware.

Values:

enumerator kSMARTDMA_FlexIO_CameraWholeFrame

enumerator kSMARTDMA_FlexIO_CameraDiv16Frame

Deprecated. Use kSMARTDMA_CameraWholeFrameQVGA instead.

enumerator kSMARTDMA_CameraWholeFrameQVGA

Deprecated. Use kSMARTDMA_CameraDiv16FrameQVGA instead.

Save whole frame of QVGA(320x240) to buffer in each interrupt in RGB565 format.

enumerator kSMARTDMA_CameraDiv16FrameQVGA
Save 1/16 frame of QVGA(320x240) to buffer in each interrupt in RGB565 format, takes 16 interrupts to get the whole frame.

enumerator kSMARTDMA_CameraWholeFrame480_320
Save whole frame of 480x320 to buffer in each interrupt in RGB565 format.

enumerator kSMARTDMA_CameraDiv4FrameQVGAGrayScale
Save 1/4 frame of QVGA(320x240) to buffer in each interrupt in grayscale format, takes 4 interrupts to get the whole frame.

enumerator kSMARTDMA_CameraDiv16FrameQVGAGrayScale
Save 1/16 frame of QVGA(320x240) to buffer in each interrupt in grayscale format, takes 16 interrupts to get the whole frame.

enumerator kSMARTDMA_CameraDiv16Frame384_384
Save 1/16 frame of 384x384 to buffer in each interrupt in grayscale format, takes 16 interrupts to get the whole frame.

enumerator kSMARTDMA_CameraWholeFrame320_480
Save whole frame of 320x480 to buffer in each interrupt in RGB565 format.

typedef struct *_smartdma_flexio_mculcd_param* smartdma_flexio_mculcd_param_t
Parameter for FlexIO MCULCD.

typedef struct *_smartdma_rgb565_rgb888_param* smartdma_rgb565_rgb888_param_t
Parameter for RGB565To888.

typedef struct *_smartdma_camera_param* smartdma_camera_param_t
Parameter for camera.

const uint8_t s_smartdmaDisplayFirmware[]
The firmware used for display.

const uint32_t s_smartdmaDisplayFirmwareSize
Size of s_smartdmaDisplayFirmware.

const uint8_t s_smartdmaCameraFirmware[]
The firmware used for camera.

const uint32_t s_smartdmaCameraFirmwareSize
Size of s_smartdmacameraFirmware.

SMARTDMA_DISPLAY_MEM_ADDR
The s_smartdmaDisplayFirmware firmware memory address.

SMARTDMA_DISPLAY_FIRMWARE_SIZE
Size of s_smartdmaDisplayFirmware.

SMARTDMA_CAMERA_MEM_ADDR
The s_smartdmaCameraFirmware firmware memory address.

SMARTDMA_CAMERA_FIRMWARE_SIZE
Size of s_smartdmacameraFirmware.

struct _smartdma_flexio_mculcd_param
#include <fsl_smartdma_rt500.h> Parameter for FlexIO MCULCD except kSMARTDMA_FlexIO_DMA_ONELANE.

Parameter for FlexIO MCULCD.

struct _smartdma_rgb565_rgb888_param
#include <fsl_smartdma_rt500.h> Parameter for RGB565To888.

struct _smartdma_camera_param

#include <fsl_smartdma_mcxn.h> Parameter for camera.

Public Members

uint32_t *smartdma_stack

Stack used by SMARTDMA, shall be at least 64 bytes.

uint32_t *p_buffer

Buffer to store the received camera data.

uint32_t *p_stripe_index

Pointer to stripe index. Used when only partial frame is received per interrupt.

uint32_t *p_buffer_ping_pong

Buffer to store the 2nd stripe of camera data. Used when only partial frame is received per interrupt.

union smartdma_param_t

#include <fsl_smartdma_rt500.h> Parameter for all supported APIs.

Public Members

smartdma_flexio_mculcd_param_t flexioMcuLcdParam

Parameter for flexio MCULCD.

smartdma_flexio_onelane_mculcd_param_t flexioOneLineMcuLcdParam

Parameter for flexio MCULCD with one shift buffer.

smartdma_dsi_param_t dsiParam

Parameter for MIPI DSI functions.

smartdma_dsi_2d_param_t dsi2DParam

Parameter for MIPI DSI 2D functions.

smartdma_dsi_checkerboard_param_t dsiCheckerBoardParam

Parameter for MIPI DSI checker board functions.

smartdma_rgb565_rgb888_param_t rgb565_rgb888Param

Parameter for RGB565_RGB888 convertion.

smartdma_camera_param_t cameraParam

Parameter for camera.

2.72 RT500 SMARTDMA Firmware

enum _smartdma_display_api

The API index when using s_smartdmaDisplayFirmware.

Values:

enumerator kSMARTDMA_FlexIO_DMA_Endian_Swap

enumerator kSMARTDMA_FlexIO_DMA_Reverse32

enumerator kSMARTDMA_FlexIO_DMA

enumerator kSMARTDMA_FlexIO_DMA_Reverse

Send data to FlexIO with reverse order.

enumerator kSMARTDMA_RGB565To888

Convert RGB565 to RGB888 and save to output memory, use parameter smartdma_rgb565_rgb888_param_t.

enumerator kSMARTDMA_FlexIO_DMA_RGB565To888

Convert RGB565 to RGB888 and send to FlexIO, use parameter smartdma_flexio_mculcd_param_t.

enumerator kSMARTDMA_FlexIO_DMA_ARGB2RGB

Convert ARGB to RGB and send to FlexIO, use parameter smartdma_flexio_mculcd_param_t.

enumerator kSMARTDMA_FlexIO_DMA_ARGB2RGB_Endian_Swap

Convert ARGB to RGB, then swap endian, and send to FlexIO, use parameter smartdma_flexio_mculcd_param_t.

enumerator kSMARTDMA_FlexIO_DMA_ARGB2RGB_Endian_Swap_Reverse

Convert ARGB to RGB, then swap endian and reverse, and send to FlexIO, use parameter smartdma_flexio_mculcd_param_t.

enumerator kSMARTDMA_MIPI_RGB565_DMA

Send RGB565 data to MIPI DSI, use parameter smartdma_dsi_param_t.

enumerator kSMARTDMA_MIPI_RGB565_DMA2D

Send RGB565 data to MIPI DSI, use parameter smartdma_dsi_2d_param_t.

enumerator kSMARTDMA_MIPI_RGB888_DMA

Send RGB888 data to MIPI DSI, use parameter smartdma_dsi_param_t.

enumerator kSMARTDMA_MIPI_RGB888_DMA2D

Send RGB565 data to MIPI DSI, use parameter smartdma_dsi_2d_param_t.

enumerator kSMARTDMA_MIPI_XRGB2RGB_DMA

Send XRGB8888 data to MIPI DSI, use parameter smartdma_dsi_param_t

enumerator kSMARTDMA_MIPI_XRGB2RGB_DMA2D

Send XRGB8888 data to MIPI DSI, use parameter smartdma_dsi_2d_param_t.

enumerator kSMARTDMA_MIPI_RGB565_R180_DMA

Send RGB565 data to MIPI DSI, Rotate 180, use parameter smartdma_dsi_param_t.

enumerator kSMARTDMA_MIPI_RGB888_R180_DMA

Send RGB888 data to MIPI DSI, Rotate 180, use parameter smartdma_dsi_param_t.

enumerator kSMARTDMA_MIPI_XRGB2RGB_R180_DMA

Send XRGB8888 data to MIPI DSI, Rotate 180, use parameter smartdma_dsi_param_t

enumerator kSMARTDMA_MIPI_RGB5652RGB888_DMA

Send RGB565 data to MIPI DSI, use parameter smartdma_dsi_param_t.

enumerator kSMARTDMA_MIPI_RGB888_CHECKER_BOARD_DMA

Send RGB888 data to MIPI DSI with checker board pattern, use parameter smartdma_dsi_checkerboard_param_t.

enumerator kSMARTDMA_MIPI_Enter_ULPS

Set MIPI-DSI to enter ultra low power state.

enumerator kSMARTDMA_MIPI_Exit_ULPS

Set MIPI-DSI to exit ultra low power state.

enumerator kSMARTDMA_FlexIO_DMA_ONELANE
FlexIO DMA for one SHIFTBUF, Write Data to SHIFTBUF[OFFSET]

enumerator kSMARTDMA_FlexIO_FIFO2RAM
Read data from FlexIO FIFO to ram space.

enum _smartdma_flexio_qspi_api
The API index when using s_smartdmaDisplayFirmware.

Values:

enumerator kSMARTDMA_FLEXIO_QSPI_DMA_NIBBLE_BYTE_SWAP

typedef enum *_smartdma_flexio_qspi_api* smartdma_flexio_qspi_api_t
The API index when using s_smartdmaDisplayFirmware.

typedef struct _flexio_qspi_buf flexio_qspi_buf_t
Parameter for FlexIO QSPI.

The structure _flexio_qspi_buf is defined in fsl_flexio_qspi.h

typedef struct *_smartdma_flexio_qspi_param* smartdma_flexio_qspi_param_t

typedef struct *_smartdma_flexio_mculcd_param* smartdma_flexio_mculcd_param_t
Parameter for FlexIO MCULCD except kSMARTDMA_FlexIO_DMA_ONELANE.

typedef struct *_smartdma_flexio_onelane_mculcd_param*
smartdma_flexio_onelane_mculcd_param_t
Parameter for kSMARTDMA_FlexIO_DMA_ONELANE.

typedef struct *_smartdma_dsi_param* smartdma_dsi_param_t
Parameter for MIPI DSI.

typedef struct *_smartdma_dsi_2d_param* smartdma_dsi_2d_param_t
Parameter for kSMARTDMA_MIPI_RGB565_DMA2D, kSMARTDMA_MIPI_RGB888_DMA2D and kSMARTDMA_MIPI_XRGB2RGB_DMA2D.

typedef struct *_smartdma_dsi_checkerboard_param* smartdma_dsi_checkerboard_param_t
Parameter for kSMARTDMA_MIPI_RGB888_CHECKER_BOARD_DMA.

typedef struct *_smartdma_rgb565_rgb888_param* smartdma_rgb565_rgb888_param_t
Parameter for RGB565To888.

const uint8_t s_smartdmaDisplayFirmware[]
The firmware used for display.

const uint32_t s_smartdmaDisplayFirmwareSize
Size of s_smartdmaDisplayFirmware.

const uint8_t s_smartdmaQspiFirmware[]
The firmware used for QSPI.

const uint32_t s_smartdmaQspiFirmwareSize
Size of s_smartdmaQspiFirmware.

SMARTDMA_DISPLAY_MIPI_AND_FLEXIO

SMARTDMA_DISPLAY_MIPI_ONLY

SMARTDMA_DISPLAY_FLEXIO_ONLY

SMARTDMA_DISPLAY_FIRMWARE_SELECT

SMARTDMA_DISPLAY_MEM_ADDR
: The s_smartdmaDisplayFirmware firmware memory address.

SMARTDMA_DISPLAY_FIRMWARE_SIZE
: Size of s_smartdmaDisplayFirmware.

SMARTDMA_QSPI_MEM_ADDR
: The s_smartdmaQspiFirmware firmware memory address.

SMARTDMA_QSPI_FIRMWARE_SIZE
: Size of s_smartdmaQspiFirmware.

FLEXIO_QSPI_BUF_T

SMARTDMA_BASE

SMARTDMA

struct _smartdma_flexio_qspi_param
: *#include <fsl_smartdma_rt500.h>*

Public Members

uint32_t *txRemainingBytes
: Send data remaining in bytes.

struct _smartdma_flexio_mculcd_param
: *#include <fsl_smartdma_rt500.h>* Parameter for FlexIO MCULCD except kSMARTDMA_FlexIO_DMA_ONELANE.

Parameter for FlexIO MCULCD.

struct _smartdma_flexio_onelane_mculcd_param
: *#include <fsl_smartdma_rt500.h>* Parameter for kSMARTDMA_FlexIO_DMA_ONELANE.

struct _smartdma_dsi_param
: *#include <fsl_smartdma_rt500.h>* Parameter for MIPI DSI.

Public Members

const uint8_t *p_buffer
: Pointer to the buffer to send.

uint32_t buffersize
: Buffer size in byte.

uint32_t *smartdma_stack
: Stack used by SMARTDMA.

uint32_t disablePixelByteSwap
: If set to 1, the pixels are filled to MIPI DSI FIFO directly. If set to 0, the pixel bytes are swapped then filled to MIPI DSI FIFO. For example, when set to 0 and frame buffer pixel format is RGB565: LSB MSB B0 B1 B2 B3 B4 G0 G1 G2 | G3 G4 G5 R0 R1 R2 R3 R4 Then the pixel filled to DSI FIFO is: LSB MSB G3 G4 G5 R0 R1 R2 R3 R4 | B0 B1 B2 B3 B4 G0 G1 G2

struct _smartdma_dsi_2d_param
: *#include <fsl_smartdma_rt500.h>* Parameter for kSMARTDMA_MIPI_RGB565_DMA2D, kSMARTDMA_MIPI_RGB888_DMA2D and kSMARTDMA_MIPI_XRGB2RGB_DMA2D.

Public Members

const uint8_t *p_buffer
: Pointer to the buffer to send.

uint32_t minorLoop
: SRC data transfer in a minor loop

uint32_t minorLoopOffset
: SRC data offset added after a minor loop

uint32_t majorLoop
: SRC data transfer in a major loop

uint32_t *smartdma_stack
: Stack used by SMARTDMA.

uint32_t disablePixelByteSwap
: If set to 1, the pixels are filled to MIPI DSI FIFO directly. If set to 0, the pixel bytes are swapped then filled to MIPI DSI FIFO. For example, when set to 0 and frame buffer pixel format is RGB565: LSB MSB B0 B1 B2 B3 B4 G0 G1 G2 | G3 G4 G5 R0 R1 R2 R3 R4 Then the pixel filled to DSI FIFO is: LSB MSB G3 G4 G5 R0 R1 R2 R3 R4 | B0 B1 B2 B3 B4 G0 G1 G2

struct _smartdma_dsi_checkerboard_param
: *#include <fsl_smartdma_rt500.h>* Parameter for kSMARTDMA_MIPI_RGB888_CHECKER_BOARD_DMA.

Public Members

const uint8_t *p_buffer
: Pointer to the buffer to send, pixel format is ARGB8888.

uint32_t width
: Height resolution in pixel.

uint32_t cbType
: Width resolution in pixel.

  Cube block type. cbType=1 : 1/2 pixel mask cases cbType=2 : 1/4 pixel mask cases

uint32_t indexOff
: which pixel is turned off in each type cbType=2: indexOff= 1,2,3,4 cbType=1: indexOff= 0,1

uint32_t *smartdma_stack
: Stack used by SMARTDMA.

uint32_t disablePixelByteSwap
: If set to 1, the pixels are filled to MIPI DSI FIFO directly. If set to 0, the pixel bytes are swapped then filled to MIPI DSI FIFO. For example, when set to 0 and frame buffer pixel for example format is RGB888: LSB MSB B0 B1 B2 B3 B4 B5 B6 B7 | G0 G1 G2 G3 G4 G5 G6 G7 | R0 R1 R2 R3 R4 R5 R6 R7 Then the pixel filled to DSI FIFO is: LSB MSB R0 R1 R2 R3 R4 R5 R6 R7 | G0 G1 G2 G3 G4 G5 G6 G7 | B0 B1 B2 B3 B4 B5 B6 B7

struct _smartdma_rgb565_rgb888_param
: *#include <fsl_smartdma_rt500.h>* Parameter for RGB565To888.

union smartdma_param_t
: *#include <fsl_smartdma_rt500.h>* Parameter for all supported APIs.

Public Members

smartdma_flexio_mculcd_param_t flexioMcuLcdParam
Parameter for flexio MCULCD.

smartdma_flexio_onelane_mculcd_param_t flexioOneLineMcuLcdParam
Parameter for flexio MCULCD with one shift buffer.

smartdma_dsi_param_t dsiParam
Parameter for MIPI DSI functions.

smartdma_dsi_2d_param_t dsi2DParam
Parameter for MIPI DSI 2D functions.

smartdma_dsi_checkerboard_param_t dsiCheckerBoardParam
Parameter for MIPI DSI checker board functions.

smartdma_rgb565_rgb888_param_t rgb565_rgb888Param
Parameter for RGB565_RGB888 convertion.

smartdma_camera_param_t cameraParam
Parameter for camera.

struct SMARTDMA_Type
#include <fsl_smartdma_rt500.h>

2.73 Soc_mipi_dsi

FSL_SOC_MIPI_DSI_DRIVER_VERSION
Driver version.

DSI_DPHY_PLL_VCO_MAX

DSI_DPHY_PLL_VCO_MIN

FSL_COMPONENT_ID

2.74 SPI: Serial Peripheral Interface Driver

2.75 SPI DMA Driver

status_t SPI_MasterTransferCreateHandleDMA(SPI_Type *base, *spi_dma_handle_t* *handle, *spi_dma_callback_t* callback, void *userData, *dma_handle_t* *txHandle, *dma_handle_t* *rxHandle)

Initialize the SPI master DMA handle.

This function initializes the SPI master DMA handle which can be used for other SPI master transactional APIs. Usually, for a specified SPI instance, user need only call this API once to get the initialized handle.

Parameters

- base – SPI peripheral base address.
- handle – SPI handle pointer.
- callback – User callback function called at the end of a transfer.

- userData – User data for callback.
- txHandle – DMA handle pointer for SPI Tx, the handle shall be static allocated by users.
- rxHandle – DMA handle pointer for SPI Rx, the handle shall be static allocated by users.

status_t SPI_MasterTransferDMA(SPI_Type *base, *spi_dma_handle_t* *handle, *spi_transfer_t* *xfer)

Perform a non-blocking SPI transfer using DMA.

Note: This interface returned immediately after transfer initiates, users should call SPI_GetTransferStatus to poll the transfer status to check whether SPI transfer finished.

Parameters

- base – SPI peripheral base address.
- handle – SPI DMA handle pointer.
- xfer – Pointer to dma transfer structure.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Successfully start a transfer.
- kStatus_InvalidArgument – Input argument is invalid.
- kStatus_SPI_Busy – SPI is not idle, is running another transfer.

status_t SPI_MasterHalfDuplexTransferDMA(SPI_Type *base, *spi_dma_handle_t* *handle, *spi_half_duplex_transfer_t* *xfer)

Transfers a block of data using a DMA method.

This function using polling way to do the first half transimission and using DMA way to do the srcond half transimission, the transfer mechanism is half-duplex. When do the second half transimission, code will return right away. When all data is transferred, the callback function is called.

Parameters

- base – SPI base pointer
- handle – A pointer to the spi_master_dma_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state.
- xfer – A pointer to the spi_half_duplex_transfer_t structure.

Returns

status of status_t.

static inline *status_t* SPI_SlaveTransferCreateHandleDMA(SPI_Type *base, *spi_dma_handle_t* *handle, *spi_dma_callback_t* callback, void *userData, *dma_handle_t* *txHandle, *dma_handle_t* *rxHandle)

Initialize the SPI slave DMA handle.

This function initializes the SPI slave DMA handle which can be used for other SPI master transactional APIs. Usually, for a specified SPI instance, user need only call this API once to get the initialized handle.

Parameters

- base – SPI peripheral base address.
- handle – SPI handle pointer.

- callback – User callback function called at the end of a transfer.
- userData – User data for callback.
- txHandle – DMA handle pointer for SPI Tx, the handle shall be static allocated by users.
- rxHandle – DMA handle pointer for SPI Rx, the handle shall be static allocated by users.

static inline *status_t* SPI_SlaveTransferDMA(SPI_Type *base, *spi_dma_handle_t* *handle, *spi_transfer_t* *xfer)

Perform a non-blocking SPI transfer using DMA.

Note: This interface returned immediately after transfer initiates, users should call SPI_GetTransferStatus to poll the transfer status to check whether SPI transfer finished.

Parameters

- base – SPI peripheral base address.
- handle – SPI DMA handle pointer.
- xfer – Pointer to dma transfer structure.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Successfully start a transfer.
- kStatus_InvalidArgument – Input argument is invalid.
- kStatus_SPI_Busy – SPI is not idle, is running another transfer.

void SPI_MasterTransferAbortDMA(SPI_Type *base, *spi_dma_handle_t* *handle)

Abort a SPI transfer using DMA.

Parameters

- base – SPI peripheral base address.
- handle – SPI DMA handle pointer.

status_t SPI_MasterTransferGetCountDMA(SPI_Type *base, *spi_dma_handle_t* *handle, size_t *count)

Gets the master DMA transfered bytes.

This function gets the master DMA transfered bytes.

Parameters

- base – SPI peripheral base address.
- handle – A pointer to the spi_dma_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state.
- count – A number of bytes transferred by the non-blocking transaction.

Returns

status of status_t.

static inline void SPI_SlaveTransferAbortDMA(SPI_Type *base, *spi_dma_handle_t* *handle)

Abort a SPI transfer using DMA.

Parameters

- base – SPI peripheral base address.
- handle – SPI DMA handle pointer.

static inline *status_t* SPI_SlaveTransferGetCountDMA(SPI_Type *base, *spi_dma_handle_t* *handle, size_t *count)

Gets the slave DMA transfered bytes.

This function gets the slave DMA transfered bytes.

Parameters

- base – SPI peripheral base address.
- handle – A pointer to the spi_dma_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state.
- count – A number of bytes transferred by the non-blocking transaction.

Returns

status of status_t.

FSL_SPI_DMA_DRIVER_VERSION

SPI DMA driver version.

typedef struct *_spi_dma_handle* spi_dma_handle_t

typedef void (*spi_dma_callback_t)(SPI_Type *base, *spi_dma_handle_t* *handle, *status_t* status, void *userData)

SPI DMA callback called at the end of transfer.

struct _spi_dma_handle

#include <fsl_spi_dma.h> SPI DMA transfer handle, users should not touch the content of the handle.

Public Members

SPI_Type *base

SPI base address

volatile bool txInProgress

Send transfer finished

volatile bool rxInProgress

Receive transfer finished

uint8_t bytesPerFrame

Bytes in a frame for SPI transfer

uint8_t lastwordBytes

The Bytes of lastword for master

uint16_t txDummy

The dummy data for TX.

uint32_t lastword

The last word for master TX.

dma_handle_t *txHandle

DMA handler for SPI send

dma_handle_t *rxHandle

DMA handler for SPI receive

spi_dma_callback_t callback

Callback for SPI DMA transfer

void *userData
User Data for SPI DMA callback

uint32_t state
Internal state of SPI DMA transfer

size_t transferSize
Bytes need to be transfer

uint32_t instance
Index of SPI instance

const uint8_t *txNextData
The pointer of next time tx data

size_t txRemainingBytes
lastwordBytes + txRemainingBytes is number of data to be send [in bytes]

uint8_t *rxNextData
The pointer of next time rx data

size_t rxRemainingBytes
Number of data to be received [in bytes]

bool isSlave
SPI work in slave mode.

2.76 SPI Driver

FSL_SPI_DRIVER_VERSION
SPI driver version.

enum _spi_xfer_option
SPI transfer option.

Values:

enumerator kSPI_FrameDelay
A delay may be inserted, defined in the DLY register.

enumerator kSPI_FrameAssert
SSEL will be deasserted at the end of a transfer

enum _spi_shift_direction
SPI data shifter direction options.

Values:

enumerator kSPI_MsbFirst
Data transfers start with most significant bit.

enumerator kSPI_LsbFirst
Data transfers start with least significant bit.

enum _spi_clock_polarity
SPI clock polarity configuration.

Values:

enumerator kSPI_ClockPolarityActiveHigh
Active-high SPI clock (idles low).

enumerator kSPI_ClockPolarityActiveLow
Active-low SPI clock (idles high).

enum _spi_clock_phase
SPI clock phase configuration.

Values:

enumerator kSPI_ClockPhaseFirstEdge
First edge on SCK occurs at the middle of the first cycle of a data transfer.

enumerator kSPI_ClockPhaseSecondEdge
First edge on SCK occurs at the start of the first cycle of a data transfer.

enum _spi_txfifo_watermark
txFIFO watermark values

Values:

enumerator kSPI_TxFifo0
SPI tx watermark is empty

enumerator kSPI_TxFifo1
SPI tx watermark at 1 item

enumerator kSPI_TxFifo2
SPI tx watermark at 2 items

enumerator kSPI_TxFifo3
SPI tx watermark at 3 items

enumerator kSPI_TxFifo4
SPI tx watermark at 4 items

enumerator kSPI_TxFifo5
SPI tx watermark at 5 items

enumerator kSPI_TxFifo6
SPI tx watermark at 6 items

enumerator kSPI_TxFifo7
SPI tx watermark at 7 items

enum _spi_rxfifo_watermark
rxFIFO watermark values

Values:

enumerator kSPI_RxFifo1
SPI rx watermark at 1 item

enumerator kSPI_RxFifo2
SPI rx watermark at 2 items

enumerator kSPI_RxFifo3
SPI rx watermark at 3 items

enumerator kSPI_RxFifo4
SPI rx watermark at 4 items

enumerator kSPI_RxFifo5
SPI rx watermark at 5 items

enumerator kSPI_RxFifo6
SPI rx watermark at 6 items

enumerator kSPI_RxFifo7
SPI rx watermark at 7 items

enumerator kSPI_RxFifo8
SPI rx watermark at 8 items

enum _spi_data_width
Transfer data width.

Values:

enumerator kSPI_Data4Bits
4 bits data width

enumerator kSPI_Data5Bits
5 bits data width

enumerator kSPI_Data6Bits
6 bits data width

enumerator kSPI_Data7Bits
7 bits data width

enumerator kSPI_Data8Bits
8 bits data width

enumerator kSPI_Data9Bits
9 bits data width

enumerator kSPI_Data10Bits
10 bits data width

enumerator kSPI_Data11Bits
11 bits data width

enumerator kSPI_Data12Bits
12 bits data width

enumerator kSPI_Data13Bits
13 bits data width

enumerator kSPI_Data14Bits
14 bits data width

enumerator kSPI_Data15Bits
15 bits data width

enumerator kSPI_Data16Bits
16 bits data width

enum _spi_ssel
Slave select.

Values:

enumerator kSPI_Ssel0
Slave select 0

enumerator kSPI_Ssel1
Slave select 1

enumerator kSPI_Ssel2
Slave select 2

enumerator kSPI_Ssel3
Slave select 3

enum _spi_spol
ssel polarity

Values:

enumerator kSPI_Spol0ActiveHigh

enumerator kSPI_Spol1ActiveHigh

enumerator kSPI_Spol3ActiveHigh

enumerator kSPI_SpolActiveAllHigh

enumerator kSPI_SpolActiveAllLow

SPI transfer status.

Values:

enumerator kStatus_SPI_Busy
SPI bus is busy

enumerator kStatus_SPI_Idle
SPI is idle

enumerator kStatus_SPI_Error
SPI error

enumerator kStatus_SPI_BaudrateNotSupport
Baudrate is not support in current clock source

enumerator kStatus_SPI_Timeout
SPI timeout polling status flags.

enum _spi_interrupt_enable
SPI interrupt sources.

Values:

enumerator kSPI_RxLvlIrq
Rx level interrupt

enumerator kSPI_TxLvlIrq
Tx level interrupt

enum _spi_statusflags
SPI status flags.

Values:

enumerator kSPI_TxEmptyFlag
txFifo is empty

enumerator kSPI_TxNotFullFlag
txFifo is not full

enumerator kSPI_RxNotEmptyFlag
rxFIFO is not empty

enumerator kSPI_RxFullFlag
rxFIFO is full

typedef enum *_spi_xfer_option* spi_xfer_option_t
SPI transfer option.

typedef enum *_spi_shift_direction* spi_shift_direction_t
SPI data shifter direction options.

typedef enum *_spi_clock_polarity* spi_clock_polarity_t
SPI clock polarity configuration.

typedef enum *_spi_clock_phase* spi_clock_phase_t
SPI clock phase configuration.

typedef enum *_spi_txfifo_watermark* spi_txfifo_watermark_t
txFIFO watermark values

typedef enum *_spi_rxfifo_watermark* spi_rxfifo_watermark_t
rxFIFO watermark values

typedef enum *_spi_data_width* spi_data_width_t
Transfer data width.

typedef enum *_spi_ssel* spi_ssel_t
Slave select.

typedef enum *_spi_spol* spi_spol_t
ssel polarity

typedef struct *_spi_delay_config* spi_delay_config_t
SPI delay time configure structure. Note: The DLY register controls several programmable delays related to SPI signalling, it stands for how many SPI clock time will be inserted. The maxinun value of these delay time is 15.

typedef struct *_spi_master_config* spi_master_config_t
SPI master user configure structure.

typedef struct *_spi_slave_config* spi_slave_config_t
SPI slave user configure structure.

typedef struct *_spi_transfer* spi_transfer_t
SPI transfer structure.

typedef struct *_spi_half_duplex_transfer* spi_half_duplex_transfer_t
SPI half-duplex(master only) transfer structure.

typedef struct *_spi_config* spi_config_t
Internal configuration structure used in 'spi' and 'spi_dma' driver.

typedef struct *_spi_master_handle* spi_master_handle_t
Master handle type.

typedef *spi_master_handle_t* spi_slave_handle_t
Slave handle type.

typedef void (*spi_master_callback_t)(SPI_Type *base, *spi_master_handle_t* *handle, *status_t* status, void *userData)
SPI master callback for finished transmit.

typedef void (*spi_slave_callback_t)(SPI_Type *base, *spi_slave_handle_t* *handle, *status_t* status, void *userData)
SPI slave callback for finished transmit.

typedef void (*flexcomm_spi_master_irq_handler_t)(SPI_Type *base, *spi_master_handle_t* *handle)

Typedef for master interrupt handler.

typedef void (*flexcomm_spi_slave_irq_handler_t)(SPI_Type *base, *spi_slave_handle_t* *handle)

Typedef for slave interrupt handler.

volatile uint8_t s_dummyData[]

SPI default SSEL COUNT.

Global variable for dummy data value setting.

SPI_DUMMYDATA

SPI dummy transfer data, the data is sent while txBuff is NULL.

SPI_RETRY_TIMES

Retry times for waiting flag.

SPI_DATA(n)

SPI_CTRLMASK

SPI_ASSERTNUM_SSEL(n)

SPI_DEASSERTNUM_SSEL(n)

SPI_DEASSERT_ALL

SPI_FIFOWR_FLAGS_MASK

SPI_FIFOTRIG_TXLVL_GET(base)

SPI_FIFOTRIG_RXLVL_GET(base)

struct _spi_delay_config

#include <fsl_spi.h> SPI delay time configure structure. Note: The DLY register controls several programmable delays related to SPI signalling, it stands for how many SPI clock time will be inserted. The maxinun value of these delay time is 15.

Public Members

uint8_t preDelay

Delay between SSEL assertion and the beginning of transfer.

uint8_t postDelay

Delay between the end of transfer and SSEL deassertion.

uint8_t frameDelay

Delay between frame to frame.

uint8_t transferDelay

Delay between transfer to transfer.

struct _spi_master_config

#include <fsl_spi.h> SPI master user configure structure.

Public Members

bool enableLoopback

Enable loopback for test purpose

bool enableMaster
: Enable SPI at initialization time

spi_clock_polarity_t polarity
: Clock polarity

spi_clock_phase_t phase
: Clock phase

spi_shift_direction_t direction
: MSB or LSB

uint32_t baudRate_Bps
: Baud Rate for SPI in Hz

spi_data_width_t dataWidth
: Width of the data

spi_ssel_t sselNum
: Slave select number

spi_spol_t sselPol
: Configure active CS polarity

uint8_t txWatermark
: txFIFO watermark

uint8_t rxWatermark
: rxFIFO watermark

spi_delay_config_t delayConfig
: Delay configuration.

struct _spi_slave_config
: *#include <fsl_spi.h>* SPI slave user configure structure.

Public Members

bool enableSlave
: Enable SPI at initialization time

spi_clock_polarity_t polarity
: Clock polarity

spi_clock_phase_t phase
: Clock phase

spi_shift_direction_t direction
: MSB or LSB

spi_data_width_t dataWidth
: Width of the data

spi_spol_t sselPol
: Configure active CS polarity

uint8_t txWatermark
: txFIFO watermark

uint8_t rxWatermark
: rxFIFO watermark

struct _spi_transfer
: *#include <fsl_spi.h>* SPI transfer structure.

Public Members

const uint8_t *txData
: Send buffer

uint8_t *rxData
: Receive buffer

uint32_t configFlags
: Additional option to control transfer, spi_xfer_option_t.

size_t dataSize
: Transfer bytes

struct __spi__half__duplex__transfer
: *#include <fsl_spi.h>* SPI half-duplex(master only) transfer structure.

Public Members

const uint8_t *txData
: Send buffer

uint8_t *rxData
: Receive buffer

size_t txDataSize
: Transfer bytes for transmit

size_t rxDataSize
: Transfer bytes

uint32_t configFlags
: Transfer configuration flags, spi_xfer_option_t.

bool isPcsAssertInTransfer
: If PCS pin keep assert between transmit and receive. true for assert and false for de-assert.

bool isTransmitFirst
: True for transmit first and false for receive first.

struct __spi__config
: *#include <fsl_spi.h>* Internal configuration structure used in 'spi' and 'spi_dma' driver.

struct __spi__master__handle
: *#include <fsl_spi.h>* SPI transfer handle structure.

Public Members

const uint8_t *volatile txData
: Transfer buffer

uint8_t *volatile rxData
: Receive buffer

volatile size_t txRemainingBytes
: Number of data to be transmitted [in bytes]

volatile size_t rxRemainingBytes
: Number of data to be received [in bytes]

volatile int8_t toReceiveCount
: The number of data expected to receive in data width. Since the received count and sent count should be the same to complete the transfer, if the sent count is x and the received count is y, toReceiveCount is x-y.

size_t totalByteCount
: A number of transfer bytes

volatile uint32_t state
: SPI internal state

spi_master_callback_t callback
: SPI callback

void *userData
: Callback parameter

uint8_t dataWidth
: Width of the data [Valid values: 1 to 16]

uint8_t sselNum
: Slave select number to be asserted when transferring data [Valid values: 0 to 3]

uint32_t configFlags
: Additional option to control transfer

uint8_t txWatermark
: txFIFO watermark

uint8_t rxWatermark
: rxFIFO watermark

2.77 TRNG: True Random Number Generator

FSL_TRNG_DRIVER_VERSION
: TRNG driver version 2.0.19.

Current version: 2.0.19

Change log:

- version 2.0.19
  - Added support for MCXA and MCXL.
- version 2.0.18
  - TRNG health checks now done in software on RT5xx and RT6xx.
- version 2.0.17
  - Added support for RT700.
- version 2.0.16
  - Added support for Dual oscillator mode.
- version 2.0.15
  - Changed TRNG_USER_CONFIG_DEFAULT_XXX values according to latest recomended by design team.
- version 2.0.14
  - add support for RW610 and RW612

- version 2.0.13
  - After deepsleep it might return error, added clearing bits in TRNG_GetRandomData() and generating new entropy.
  - Modified reloading entropy in TRNG_GetRandomData(), for some data length it doesn't reloading entropy correctly.
- version 2.0.12
  - For KW34A4_SERIES, KW35A4_SERIES, KW36A4_SERIES set TRNG_USER_CONFIG_DEFAULT_OSC_DIV to kTRNG_RingOscDiv8.
- version 2.0.11
  - Add clearing pending errors in TRNG_Init().
- version 2.0.10
  - Fixed doxygen issues.
- version 2.0.9
  - Fix HIS_CCM metrics issues.
- version 2.0.8
  - For K32L2A41A_SERIES set TRNG_USER_CONFIG_DEFAULT_OSC_DIV to kTRNG_RingOscDiv4.
- version 2.0.7
  - Fix MISRA 2004 issue rule 12.5.
- version 2.0.6
  - For KW35Z4_SERIES set TRNG_USER_CONFIG_DEFAULT_OSC_DIV to kTRNG_RingOscDiv8.
- version 2.0.5
  - Add possibility to define default TRNG configuration by device specific preprocessor macros for FRQMIN, FRQMAX and OSCDIV.
- version 2.0.4
  - Fix MISRA-2012 issues.
- Version 2.0.3
  - update TRNG_Init to restart entropy generation
- Version 2.0.2
  - fix MISRA issues
- Version 2.0.1
  - add support for KL8x and KL28Z
  - update default OSCDIV for K81 to divide by 2

enum _trng_sample_mode

TRNG sample mode. Used by trng_config_t.

Values:

enumerator kTRNG_SampleModeVonNeumann

Use von Neumann data in both Entropy shifter and Statistical Checker.

enumerator kTRNG_SampleModeRaw

Use raw data into both Entropy shifter and Statistical Checker.

enumerator kTRNG_SampleModeVonNeumannRaw
Use von Neumann data in Entropy shifter. Use raw data into Statistical Checker.

enum _trng_clock_mode
TRNG clock mode. Used by trng_config_t.

Values:

enumerator kTRNG_ClockModeRingOscillator
Ring oscillator is used to operate the TRNG (default).

enumerator kTRNG_ClockModeSystem
System clock is used to operate the TRNG. This is for test use only, and indeterminate results may occur.

enum _trng_ring_osc_div
TRNG ring oscillator divide. Used by trng_config_t.

Values:

enumerator kTRNG_RingOscDiv0
Ring oscillator with no divide

enumerator kTRNG_RingOscDiv2
Ring oscillator divided-by-2.

enumerator kTRNG_RingOscDiv4
Ring oscillator divided-by-4.

enumerator kTRNG_RingOscDiv8
Ring oscillator divided-by-8.

typedef enum *_trng_sample_mode* trng_sample_mode_t
TRNG sample mode. Used by trng_config_t.

typedef enum *_trng_clock_mode* trng_clock_mode_t
TRNG clock mode. Used by trng_config_t.

typedef enum *_trng_ring_osc_div* trng_ring_osc_div_t
TRNG ring oscillator divide. Used by trng_config_t.

typedef struct *_trng_statistical_check_limit* trng_statistical_check_limit_t
Data structure for definition of statistical check limits. Used by trng_config_t.

typedef struct *_trng_user_config* trng_config_t
Data structure for the TRNG initialization.

This structure initializes the TRNG by calling the TRNG_Init() function. It contains all TRNG configurations.

status_t TRNG_GetDefaultConfig(*trng_config_t* *userConfig)
Initializes the user configuration structure to default values.

This function initializes the configuration structure to default values. The default values are platform dependent.

Parameters

- userConfig – User configuration structure.

Returns
If successful, returns the kStatus_TRNG_Success. Otherwise, it returns an error.

status_t TRNG_Init(TRNG_Type *base, const *trng_config_t* *userConfig)

Initializes the TRNG.

This function initializes the TRNG. When called, the TRNG entropy generation starts immediately.

Parameters

- base – TRNG base address
- userConfig – Pointer to the initialization configuration structure.

Returns

If successful, returns the kStatus_TRNG_Success. Otherwise, it returns an error.

void TRNG_Deinit(TRNG_Type *base)

Shuts down the TRNG.

This function shuts down the TRNG.

Parameters

- base – TRNG base address.

status_t TRNG_GetRandomData(TRNG_Type *base, void *data, size_t dataSize)

Gets random data.

This function gets random data from the TRNG.

Parameters

- base – TRNG base address.
- data – Pointer address used to store random data.
- dataSize – Size of the buffer pointed by the data parameter.

Returns

random data

struct __trng_statistical_check_limit

#include <fsl_trng.h> Data structure for definition of statistical check limits. Used by trng_config_t.

Public Members

uint32_t maximum

Maximum limit.

int32_t minimum

Minimum limit.

struct __trng_user_config

#include <fsl_trng.h> Data structure for the TRNG initialization.

This structure initializes the TRNG by calling the TRNG_Init() function. It contains all TRNG configurations.

Public Members

bool lock

Disable programmability of TRNG registers.

trng_clock_mode_t clockMode

Clock mode used to operate TRNG.

trng_ring_osc_div_t ringOscDiv

Ring oscillator divide used by TRNG.

trng_sample_mode_t sampleMode

Sample mode of the TRNG ring oscillator.

uint16_t entropyDelay

Entropy Delay. Defines the length (in system clocks) of each Entropy sample taken.

uint16_t sampleSize

Sample Size. Defines the total number of Entropy samples that will be taken during Entropy generation.

uint16_t sparseBitLimit

Sparse Bit Limit which defines the maximum number of consecutive samples that may be discarded before an error is generated. This limit is used only for during von Neumann sampling (enabled by TRNG_HAL_SetSampleMode()). Samples are discarded if two consecutive raw samples are both 0 or both 1. If this discarding occurs for a long period of time, it indicates that there is insufficient Entropy.

uint8_t retryCount

Retry count. It defines the number of times a statistical check may fails during the TRNG Entropy Generation before generating an error.

uint8_t longRunMaxLimit

Largest allowable number of consecutive samples of all 1, or all 0, that is allowed during the Entropy generation.

trng_statistical_check_limit_t monobitLimit

Maximum and minimum limits for statistical check of number of ones/zero detected during entropy generation.

trng_statistical_check_limit_t runBit1Limit

Maximum and minimum limits for statistical check of number of runs of length 1 detected during entropy generation.

trng_statistical_check_limit_t runBit2Limit

Maximum and minimum limits for statistical check of number of runs of length 2 detected during entropy generation.

trng_statistical_check_limit_t runBit3Limit

Maximum and minimum limits for statistical check of number of runs of length 3 detected during entropy generation.

trng_statistical_check_limit_t runBit4Limit

Maximum and minimum limits for statistical check of number of runs of length 4 detected during entropy generation.

trng_statistical_check_limit_t runBit5Limit

Maximum and minimum limits for statistical check of number of runs of length 5 detected during entropy generation.

trng_statistical_check_limit_t runBit6PlusLimit

Maximum and minimum limits for statistical check of number of runs of length 6 or more detected during entropy generation.

trng_statistical_check_limit_t pokerLimit

Maximum and minimum limits for statistical check of “Poker Test”.

trng_statistical_check_limit_t frequencyCountLimit

Maximum and minimum limits for statistical check of entropy sample frequency count.

2.78 USART: Universal Synchronous/Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter Driver

2.79 USART DMA Driver

status_t USART_TransferCreateHandleDMA(USART_Type *base, *usart_dma_handle_t* *handle, *usart_dma_transfer_callback_t* callback, void *userData, *dma_handle_t* *txDmaHandle, *dma_handle_t* *rxDmaHandle)

Initializes the USART handle which is used in transactional functions.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.
- handle – Pointer to usart_dma_handle_t structure.
- callback – Callback function.
- userData – User data.
- txDmaHandle – User-requested DMA handle for TX DMA transfer.
- rxDmaHandle – User-requested DMA handle for RX DMA transfer.

status_t USART_TransferSendDMA(USART_Type *base, *usart_dma_handle_t* *handle, *usart_transfer_t* *xfer)

Sends data using DMA.

This function sends data using DMA. This is a non-blocking function, which returns right away. When all data is sent, the send callback function is called.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.
- handle – USART handle pointer.
- xfer – USART DMA transfer structure. See usart_transfer_t.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – if succeed, others failed.
- kStatus_USART_TxBusy – Previous transfer on going.
- kStatus_InvalidArgument – Invalid argument.

status_t USART_TransferReceiveDMA(USART_Type *base, *usart_dma_handle_t* *handle, *usart_transfer_t* *xfer)

Receives data using DMA.

This function receives data using DMA. This is a non-blocking function, which returns right away. When all data is received, the receive callback function is called.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.
- handle – Pointer to usart_dma_handle_t structure.

- xfer – USART DMA transfer structure. See usart_transfer_t.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – if succeed, others failed.
- kStatus_USART_RxBusy – Previous transfer on going.
- kStatus_InvalidArgument – Invalid argument.

void USART_TransferAbortSendDMA(USART_Type *base, *usart_dma_handle_t* *handle)

Aborts the sent data using DMA.

This function aborts send data using DMA.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address
- handle – Pointer to usart_dma_handle_t structure

void USART_TransferAbortReceiveDMA(USART_Type *base, *usart_dma_handle_t* *handle)

Aborts the received data using DMA.

This function aborts the received data using DMA.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address
- handle – Pointer to usart_dma_handle_t structure

status_t USART_TransferGetReceiveCountDMA(USART_Type *base, *usart_dma_handle_t* *handle, uint32_t *count)

Get the number of bytes that have been received.

This function gets the number of bytes that have been received.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.
- handle – USART handle pointer.
- count – Receive bytes count.

Return values

- kStatus_NoTransferInProgress – No receive in progress.
- kStatus_InvalidArgument – Parameter is invalid.
- kStatus_Success – Get successfully through the parameter count;

status_t USART_TransferGetSendCountDMA(USART_Type *base, *usart_dma_handle_t* *handle, uint32_t *count)

Get the number of bytes that have been sent.

This function gets the number of bytes that have been sent.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.
- handle – USART handle pointer.
- count – Sent bytes count.

Return values

- kStatus_NoTransferInProgress – No receive in progress.
- kStatus_InvalidArgument – Parameter is invalid.

- kStatus_Success – Get successfully through the parameter count;

FSL_USART_DMA_DRIVER_VERSION
USART dma driver version.

typedef struct *_usart_dma_handle* usart_dma_handle_t

typedef void (*usart_dma_transfer_callback_t)(USART_Type *base, *usart_dma_handle_t* *handle, *status_t* status, void *userData)
UART transfer callback function.

struct _usart_dma_handle
#include <fsl_usart_dma.h> UART DMA handle.

Public Members

USART_Type *base
UART peripheral base address.

usart_dma_transfer_callback_t callback
Callback function.

void *userData
UART callback function parameter.

size_t rxDataSizeAll
Size of the data to receive.

size_t txDataSizeAll
Size of the data to send out.

dma_handle_t *txDmaHandle
The DMA TX channel used.

dma_handle_t *rxDmaHandle
The DMA RX channel used.

volatile uint8_t txState
TX transfer state.

volatile uint8_t rxState
RX transfer state

2.80 USART Driver

status_t USART_Init(USART_Type *base, const *usart_config_t* *config, uint32_t srcClock_Hz)
Initializes a USART instance with user configuration structure and peripheral clock.

This function configures the USART module with the user-defined settings. The user can configure the configuration structure and also get the default configuration by using the USART_GetDefaultConfig() function. Example below shows how to use this API to configure USART.

```
usart_config_t usartConfig;
usartConfig.baudRate_Bps = 115200U;
usartConfig.parityMode = kUSART_ParityDisabled;
usartConfig.stopBitCount = kUSART_OneStopBit;
USART_Init(USART1, &usartConfig, 20000000U);
```

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.
- config – Pointer to user-defined configuration structure.
- srcClock_Hz – USART clock source frequency in HZ.

Return values

- kStatus_USART_BaudrateNotSupport – Baudrate is not support in current clock source.
- kStatus_InvalidArgument – USART base address is not valid
- kStatus_Success – Status USART initialize succeed

void USART_Deinit(USART_Type *base)

Deinitializes a USART instance.

This function waits for TX complete, disables TX and RX, and disables the USART clock.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.

void USART_GetDefaultConfig(*usart_config_t* *config)

Gets the default configuration structure.

This function initializes the USART configuration structure to a default value. The default values are: usartConfig->baudRate_Bps = 115200U; usartConfig->parityMode = kUSART_ParityDisabled; usartConfig->stopBitCount = kUSART_OneStopBit; usartConfig->bitCountPerChar = kUSART_8BitsPerChar; usartConfig->loopback = false; usartConfig->enableTx = false; usartConfig->enableRx = false;

Parameters

- config – Pointer to configuration structure.

status_t USART_SetBaudRate(USART_Type *base, uint32_t baudrate_Bps, uint32_t srcClock_Hz)

Sets the USART instance baud rate.

This function configures the USART module baud rate. This function is used to update the USART module baud rate after the USART module is initialized by the USART_Init.

```
USART_SetBaudRate(USART1, 115200U, 20000000U);
```

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.
- baudrate_Bps – USART baudrate to be set.
- srcClock_Hz – USART clock source frequency in HZ.

Return values

- kStatus_USART_BaudrateNotSupport – Baudrate is not support in current clock source.
- kStatus_Success – Set baudrate succeed.
- kStatus_InvalidArgument – One or more arguments are invalid.

status_t USART_Enable32kMode(USART_Type *base, uint32_t baudRate_Bps, bool enableMode32k, uint32_t srcClock_Hz)

Enable 32 kHz mode which USART uses clock from the RTC oscillator as the clock source.

Please note that in order to use a 32 kHz clock to operate USART properly, the RTC oscillator and its 32 kHz output must be manully enabled by user, by calling RTC_Init and setting

SYSCON_RTCOSCCTRL_EN bit to 1. And in 32kHz clocking mode the USART can only work at 9600 baudrate or at the baudrate that 9600 can evenly divide, eg: 4800, 3200.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.
- baudRate_Bps – USART baudrate to be set..
- enableMode32k – true is 32k mode, false is normal mode.
- srcClock_Hz – USART clock source frequency in HZ.

Return values

- kStatus_USART_BaudrateNotSupport – Baudrate is not support in current clock source.
- kStatus_Success – Set baudrate succeed.
- kStatus_InvalidArgument – One or more arguments are invalid.

void USART_Enable9bitMode(USART_Type *base, bool enable)

Enable 9-bit data mode for USART.

This function set the 9-bit mode for USART module. The 9th bit is not used for parity thus can be modified by user.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.
- enable – true to enable, false to disable.

static inline void USART_SetMatchAddress(USART_Type *base, uint8_t address)

Set the USART slave address.

This function configures the address for USART module that works as slave in 9-bit data mode. When the address detection is enabled, the frame it receices with MSB being 1 is considered as an address frame, otherwise it is considered as data frame. Once the address frame matches slave's own addresses, this slave is addressed. This address frame and its following data frames are stored in the receive buffer, otherwise the frames will be discarded. To un-address a slave, just send an address frame with unmatched address.

Note: Any USART instance joined in the multi-slave system can work as slave. The position of the address mark is the same as the parity bit when parity is enabled for 8 bit and 9 bit data formats.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.
- address – USART slave address.

static inline void USART_EnableMatchAddress(USART_Type *base, bool match)

Enable the USART match address feature.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.
- match – true to enable match address, false to disable.

static inline uint32_t USART_GetStatusFlags(USART_Type *base)

Get USART status flags.

This function get all USART status flags, the flags are returned as the logical OR value of the enumerators _usart_flags. To check a specific status, compare the return value with enumerators in _usart_flags. For example, to check whether the TX is empty:

```
if (kUSART_TxFifoNotFullFlag & USART_GetStatusFlags(USART1))
{
    ...
}
```

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.

Returns

USART status flags which are ORed by the enumerators in the _usart_flags.

static inline void USART_ClearStatusFlags(USART_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Clear USART status flags.

This function clear supported USART status flags. The mask is a logical OR of enumeration members. See kUSART_AllClearFlags. For example:

```
USART_ClearStatusFlags(USART1, kUSART_TxError | kUSART_RxError)
```

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.
- mask – status flags to be cleared.

static inline void USART_EnableInterrupts(USART_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Enables USART interrupts according to the provided mask.

This function enables the USART interrupts according to the provided mask. The mask is a logical OR of enumeration members. See _usart_interrupt_enable. For example, to enable TX empty interrupt and RX full interrupt:

```
USART_EnableInterrupts(USART1, kUSART_TxLevelInterruptEnable | kUSART_
↪RxLevelInterruptEnable);
```

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.
- mask – The interrupts to enable. Logical OR of _usart_interrupt_enable.

static inline void USART_DisableInterrupts(USART_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Disables USART interrupts according to a provided mask.

This function disables the USART interrupts according to a provided mask. The mask is a logical OR of enumeration members. See _usart_interrupt_enable. This example shows how to disable the TX empty interrupt and RX full interrupt:

```
USART_DisableInterrupts(USART1, kUSART_TxLevelInterruptEnable | kUSART_
↪RxLevelInterruptEnable);
```

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.
- mask – The interrupts to disable. Logical OR of _usart_interrupt_enable.

static inline uint32_t USART_GetEnabledInterrupts(USART_Type *base)

Returns enabled USART interrupts.

This function returns the enabled USART interrupts.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.

static inline void USART_EnableTxDMA(USART_Type *base, bool enable)

Enable DMA for Tx.

static inline void USART_EnableRxDMA(USART_Type *base, bool enable)

Enable DMA for Rx.

static inline void USART_EnableCTS(USART_Type *base, bool enable)

Enable CTS. This function will determine whether CTS is used for flow control.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.
- enable – Enable CTS or not, true for enable and false for disable.

static inline void USART_EnableContinuousSCLK(USART_Type *base, bool enable)

Continuous Clock generation. By default, SCLK is only output while data is being transmitted in synchronous mode. Enable this funciton, SCLK will run continuously in synchronous mode, allowing characters to be received on Un_RxD independently from transmission on Un_TXD).

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.
- enable – Enable Continuous Clock generation mode or not, true for enable and false for disable.

static inline void USART_EnableAutoClearSCLK(USART_Type *base, bool enable)

Enable Continuous Clock generation bit auto clear. While enable this cuntion, the Continuous Clock bit is automatically cleared when a complete character has been received. This bit is cleared at the same time.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.
- enable – Enable auto clear or not, true for enable and false for disable.

static inline void USART_SetRxFifoWatermark(USART_Type *base, uint8_t water)

Sets the rx FIFO watermark.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.
- water – Rx FIFO watermark.

static inline void USART_SetTxFifoWatermark(USART_Type *base, uint8_t water)

Sets the tx FIFO watermark.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.
- water – Tx FIFO watermark.

static inline void USART_WriteByte(USART_Type *base, uint8_t data)

Writes to the FIFOWR register.

This function writes data to the txFIFO directly. The upper layer must ensure that txFIFO has space for data to write before calling this function.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.
- data – The byte to write.

static inline uint8_t USART_ReadByte(USART_Type *base)

Reads the FIFORD register directly.

This function reads data from the rxFIFO directly. The upper layer must ensure that the rxFIFO is not empty before calling this function.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.

Returns

The byte read from USART data register.

static inline uint8_t USART_GetRxFifoCount(USART_Type *base)

Gets the rx FIFO data count.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.

Returns

rx FIFO data count.

static inline uint8_t USART_GetTxFifoCount(USART_Type *base)

Gets the tx FIFO data count.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.

Returns

tx FIFO data count.

void USART_SendAddress(USART_Type *base, uint8_t address)

Transmit an address frame in 9-bit data mode.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.
- address – USART slave address.

status_t USART_WriteBlocking(USART_Type *base, const uint8_t *data, size_t length)

Writes to the TX register using a blocking method.

This function polls the TX register, waits for the TX register to be empty or for the TX FIFO to have room and writes data to the TX buffer.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.
- data – Start address of the data to write.
- length – Size of the data to write.

Return values

- kStatus_USART_Timeout – Transmission timed out and was aborted.

- kStatus_InvalidArgument – Invalid argument.
- kStatus_Success – Successfully wrote all data.

status_t USART_ReadBlocking(USART_Type *base, uint8_t *data, size_t length)

Read RX data register using a blocking method.

This function polls the RX register, waits for the RX register to be full or for RX FIFO to have data and read data from the TX register.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.
- data – Start address of the buffer to store the received data.
- length – Size of the buffer.

Return values

- kStatus_USART_FramingError – Receiver overrun happened while receiving data.
- kStatus_USART_ParityError – Noise error happened while receiving data.
- kStatus_USART_NoiseError – Framing error happened while receiving data.
- kStatus_USART_RxError – Overflow or underflow rxFIFO happened.
- kStatus_USART_Timeout – Transmission timed out and was aborted.
- kStatus_Success – Successfully received all data.

status_t USART_TransferCreateHandle(USART_Type *base, *usart_handle_t* *handle, *usart_transfer_callback_t* callback, void *userData)

Initializes the USART handle.

This function initializes the USART handle which can be used for other USART transactional APIs. Usually, for a specified USART instance, call this API once to get the initialized handle.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.
- handle – USART handle pointer.
- callback – The callback function.
- userData – The parameter of the callback function.

status_t USART_TransferSendNonBlocking(USART_Type *base, *usart_handle_t* *handle, *usart_transfer_t* *xfer)

Transmits a buffer of data using the interrupt method.

This function sends data using an interrupt method. This is a non-blocking function, which returns directly without waiting for all data to be written to the TX register. When all data is written to the TX register in the IRQ handler, the USART driver calls the callback function and passes the kStatus_USART_TxIdle as status parameter.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.
- handle – USART handle pointer.
- xfer – USART transfer structure. See usart_transfer_t.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Successfully start the data transmission.

- kStatus_USART_TxBusy – Previous transmission still not finished, data not all written to TX register yet.
- kStatus_InvalidArgument – Invalid argument.

void USART_TransferStartRingBuffer(USART_Type *base, *usart_handle_t* *handle, uint8_t *ringBuffer, size_t ringBufferSize)

Sets up the RX ring buffer.

This function sets up the RX ring buffer to a specific USART handle.

When the RX ring buffer is used, data received are stored into the ring buffer even when the user doesn't call the USART_TransferReceiveNonBlocking() API. If there is already data received in the ring buffer, the user can get the received data from the ring buffer directly.

Note: When using the RX ring buffer, one byte is reserved for internal use. In other words, if ringBufferSize is 32, then only 31 bytes are used for saving data.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.
- handle – USART handle pointer.
- ringBuffer – Start address of the ring buffer for background receiving. Pass NULL to disable the ring buffer.
- ringBufferSize – size of the ring buffer.

void USART_TransferStopRingBuffer(USART_Type *base, *usart_handle_t* *handle)

Aborts the background transfer and uninstalls the ring buffer.

This function aborts the background transfer and uninstalls the ring buffer.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.
- handle – USART handle pointer.

size_t USART_TransferGetRxRingBufferLength(*usart_handle_t* *handle)

Get the length of received data in RX ring buffer.

Parameters

- handle – USART handle pointer.

Returns

Length of received data in RX ring buffer.

void USART_TransferAbortSend(USART_Type *base, *usart_handle_t* *handle)

Aborts the interrupt-driven data transmit.

This function aborts the interrupt driven data sending. The user can get the remainBtyes to find out how many bytes are still not sent out.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.
- handle – USART handle pointer.

status_t USART_TransferGetSendCount(USART_Type *base, *usart_handle_t* *handle, uint32_t *count)

Get the number of bytes that have been sent out to bus.

This function gets the number of bytes that have been sent out to bus by interrupt method.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.
- handle – USART handle pointer.
- count – Send bytes count.

Return values

- kStatus_NoTransferInProgress – No send in progress.
- kStatus_InvalidArgument – Parameter is invalid.
- kStatus_Success – Get successfully through the parameter count;

status_t USART_TransferReceiveNonBlocking(USART_Type *base, *usart_handle_t* *handle, *usart_transfer_t* *xfer, size_t *receivedBytes)

Receives a buffer of data using an interrupt method.

This function receives data using an interrupt method. This is a non-blocking function, which returns without waiting for all data to be received. If the RX ring buffer is used and not empty, the data in the ring buffer is copied and the parameter receivedBytes shows how many bytes are copied from the ring buffer. After copying, if the data in the ring buffer is not enough to read, the receive request is saved by the USART driver. When the new data arrives, the receive request is serviced first. When all data is received, the USART driver notifies the upper layer through a callback function and passes the status parameter kStatus_USART_RxIdle. For example, the upper layer needs 10 bytes but there are only 5 bytes in the ring buffer. The 5 bytes are copied to the xfer->data and this function returns with the parameter receivedBytes set to 5. For the left 5 bytes, newly arrived data is saved from the xfer->data[5]. When 5 bytes are received, the USART driver notifies the upper layer. If the RX ring buffer is not enabled, this function enables the RX and RX interrupt to receive data to the xfer->data. When all data is received, the upper layer is notified.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.
- handle – USART handle pointer.
- xfer – USART transfer structure, see usart_transfer_t.
- receivedBytes – Bytes received from the ring buffer directly.

Return values

- kStatus_Success – Successfully queue the transfer into transmit queue.
- kStatus_USART_RxBusy – Previous receive request is not finished.
- kStatus_InvalidArgument – Invalid argument.

void USART_TransferAbortReceive(USART_Type *base, *usart_handle_t* *handle)

Aborts the interrupt-driven data receiving.

This function aborts the interrupt-driven data receiving. The user can get the remainBytes to find out how many bytes not received yet.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.
- handle – USART handle pointer.

status_t USART_TransferGetReceiveCount(USART_Type *base, *usart_handle_t* *handle, uint32_t *count)

Get the number of bytes that have been received.

This function gets the number of bytes that have been received.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.
- handle – USART handle pointer.
- count – Receive bytes count.

Return values

- kStatus_NoTransferInProgress – No receive in progress.
- kStatus_InvalidArgument – Parameter is invalid.
- kStatus_Success – Get successfully through the parameter count;

void USART_TransferHandleIRQ(USART_Type *base, *usart_handle_t* *handle)

USART IRQ handle function.

This function handles the USART transmit and receive IRQ request.

Parameters

- base – USART peripheral base address.
- handle – USART handle pointer.

FSL_USART_DRIVER_VERSION

USART driver version.

Error codes for the USART driver.

Values:

enumerator kStatus_USART_TxBusy

Transmitter is busy.

enumerator kStatus_USART_RxBusy

Receiver is busy.

enumerator kStatus_USART_TxIdle

USART transmitter is idle.

enumerator kStatus_USART_RxIdle

USART receiver is idle.

enumerator kStatus_USART_TxError

Error happens on txFIFO.

enumerator kStatus_USART_RxError

Error happens on rxFIFO.

enumerator kStatus_USART_RxRingBufferOverrun

Error happens on rx ring buffer

enumerator kStatus_USART_NoiseError

USART noise error.

enumerator kStatus_USART_FramingError

USART framing error.

enumerator kStatus_USART_ParityError

USART parity error.

enumerator kStatus_USART_BaudrateNotSupport

Baudrate is not support in current clock source

enum _usart_sync_mode

USART synchronous mode.

Values:

enumerator kUSART_SyncModeDisabled

Asynchronous mode.

enumerator kUSART_SyncModeSlave

Synchronous slave mode.

enumerator kUSART_SyncModeMaster

Synchronous master mode.

enum _usart_parity_mode

USART parity mode.

Values:

enumerator kUSART_ParityDisabled

Parity disabled

enumerator kUSART_ParityEven

Parity enabled, type even, bit setting: PE|PT = 10

enumerator kUSART_ParityOdd

Parity enabled, type odd, bit setting: PE|PT = 11

enum _usart_stop_bit_count

USART stop bit count.

Values:

enumerator kUSART_OneStopBit

One stop bit

enumerator kUSART_TwoStopBit

Two stop bits

enum _usart_data_len

USART data size.

Values:

enumerator kUSART_7BitsPerChar

Seven bit mode

enumerator kUSART_8BitsPerChar

Eight bit mode

enum _usart_clock_polarity

USART clock polarity configuration, used in sync mode.

Values:

enumerator kUSART_RxSampleOnFallingEdge

Un_RXD is sampled on the falling edge of SCLK.

enumerator kUSART_RxSampleOnRisingEdge

Un_RXD is sampled on the rising edge of SCLK.

enum _usart_txfifo_watermark

txFIFO watermark values

Values:

enumerator kUSART_TxFifo0
USART tx watermark is empty

enumerator kUSART_TxFifo1
USART tx watermark at 1 item

enumerator kUSART_TxFifo2
USART tx watermark at 2 items

enumerator kUSART_TxFifo3
USART tx watermark at 3 items

enumerator kUSART_TxFifo4
USART tx watermark at 4 items

enumerator kUSART_TxFifo5
USART tx watermark at 5 items

enumerator kUSART_TxFifo6
USART tx watermark at 6 items

enumerator kUSART_TxFifo7
USART tx watermark at 7 items

enum _usart_rxfifo_watermark
rxFIFO watermark values

Values:

enumerator kUSART_RxFifo1
USART rx watermark at 1 item

enumerator kUSART_RxFifo2
USART rx watermark at 2 items

enumerator kUSART_RxFifo3
USART rx watermark at 3 items

enumerator kUSART_RxFifo4
USART rx watermark at 4 items

enumerator kUSART_RxFifo5
USART rx watermark at 5 items

enumerator kUSART_RxFifo6
USART rx watermark at 6 items

enumerator kUSART_RxFifo7
USART rx watermark at 7 items

enumerator kUSART_RxFifo8
USART rx watermark at 8 items

enum _usart_interrupt_enable
USART interrupt configuration structure, default settings all disabled.

Values:

enumerator kUSART_TxErrorInterruptEnable

enumerator kUSART_RxErrorInterruptEnable

enumerator kUSART_TxLevelInterruptEnable

enumerator kUSART_RxLevelInterruptEnable

enumerator kUSART_TxIdleInterruptEnable
Transmitter idle.

enumerator kUSART_CtsChangeInterruptEnable
Change in the state of the CTS input.

enumerator kUSART_RxBreakChangeInterruptEnable
Break condition asserted or deasserted.

enumerator kUSART_RxStartInterruptEnable
Rx start bit detected.

enumerator kUSART_FramingErrorInterruptEnable
Framing error detected.

enumerator kUSART_ParityErrorInterruptEnable
Parity error detected.

enumerator kUSART_NoiseErrorInterruptEnable
Noise error detected.

enumerator kUSART_AutoBaudErrorInterruptEnable
Auto baudrate error detected.

enumerator kUSART_AllInterruptEnables

enum _usart_flags
USART status flags.

This provides constants for the USART status flags for use in the USART functions.

Values:

enumerator kUSART_TxError
TXERR bit, sets if TX buffer is error

enumerator kUSART_RxError
RXERR bit, sets if RX buffer is error

enumerator kUSART_TxFifoEmptyFlag
TXEMPTY bit, sets if TX buffer is empty

enumerator kUSART_TxFifoNotFullFlag
TXNOTFULL bit, sets if TX buffer is not full

enumerator kUSART_RxFifoNotEmptyFlag
RXNOEMPTY bit, sets if RX buffer is not empty

enumerator kUSART_RxFifoFullFlag
RXFULL bit, sets if RX buffer is full

enumerator kUSART_RxIdleFlag
Receiver idle.

enumerator kUSART_TxIdleFlag
Transmitter idle.

enumerator kUSART_CtsAssertFlag
CTS signal high.

enumerator kUSART_CtsChangeFlag
CTS signal changed interrupt status.

enumerator kUSART_BreakDetectFlag
Break detected. Self cleared when rx pin goes high again.

enumerator kUSART_BreakDetectChangeFlag
Break detect change interrupt flag. A change in the state of receiver break detection.

enumerator kUSART_RxStartFlag
Rx start bit detected interrupt flag.

enumerator kUSART_FramingErrorFlag
Framing error interrupt flag.

enumerator kUSART_ParityErrorFlag
parity error interrupt flag.

enumerator kUSART_NoiseErrorFlag
Noise error interrupt flag.

enumerator kUSART_AutobaudErrorFlag
Auto baudrate error interrupt flag, caused by the baudrate counter timeout before the end of start bit.

enumerator kUSART_AllClearFlags

typedef enum *_usart_sync_mode* usart_sync_mode_t
USART synchronous mode.

typedef enum *_usart_parity_mode* usart_parity_mode_t
USART parity mode.

typedef enum *_usart_stop_bit_count* usart_stop_bit_count_t
USART stop bit count.

typedef enum *_usart_data_len* usart_data_len_t
USART data size.

typedef enum *_usart_clock_polarity* usart_clock_polarity_t
USART clock polarity configuration, used in sync mode.

typedef enum *_usart_txfifo_watermark* usart_txfifo_watermark_t
txFIFO watermark values

typedef enum *_usart_rxfifo_watermark* usart_rxfifo_watermark_t
rxFIFO watermark values

typedef struct *_usart_config* usart_config_t
USART configuration structure.

typedef struct *_usart_transfer* usart_transfer_t
USART transfer structure.

typedef struct *_usart_handle* usart_handle_t

typedef void (*usart_transfer_callback_t)(USART_Type *base, *usart_handle_t* *handle, *status_t* status, void *userData)
USART transfer callback function.

typedef void (*flexcomm_usart_irq_handler_t)(USART_Type *base, *usart_handle_t* *handle)
Typedef for usart interrupt handler.

uint32_t USART_GetInstance(USART_Type *base)
Returns instance number for USART peripheral base address.

USART_FIFOTRIG_TXLVL_GET(base)

USART_FIFOTRIG_RXLVL_GET(base)

UART_RETRY_TIMES

Retry times for waiting flag.

Defining to zero means to keep waiting for the flag until it is assert/deassert in blocking transfer, otherwise the program will wait until the UART_RETRY_TIMES counts down to 0, if the flag still remains unchanged then program will return kStatus_USART_Timeout. It is not advised to use this macro in formal application to prevent any hardware error because the actual wait period is affected by the compiler and optimization.

struct _usart_config

#include <fsl_usart.h> USART configuration structure.

Public Members

uint32_t baudRate_Bps

USART baud rate

usart_parity_mode_t parityMode

Parity mode, disabled (default), even, odd

usart_stop_bit_count_t stopBitCount

Number of stop bits, 1 stop bit (default) or 2 stop bits

usart_data_len_t bitCountPerChar

Data length - 7 bit, 8 bit

bool loopback

Enable peripheral loopback

bool enableRx

Enable RX

bool enableTx

Enable TX

bool enableContinuousSCLK

USART continuous Clock generation enable in synchronous master mode.

bool enableMode32k

USART uses 32 kHz clock from the RTC oscillator as the clock source.

bool enableHardwareFlowControl

Enable hardware control RTS/CTS

usart_txfifo_watermark_t txWatermark

txFIFO watermark

usart_rxfifo_watermark_t rxWatermark

rxFIFO watermark

usart_sync_mode_t syncMode

Transfer mode select - asynchronous, synchronous master, synchronous slave.

usart_clock_polarity_t clockPolarity

Selects the clock polarity and sampling edge in synchronous mode.

struct _usart_transfer

#include <fsl_usart.h> USART transfer structure.

Public Members

size_t dataSize
The byte count to be transfer.

struct __usart_handle
#include <fsl_usart.h> USART handle structure.

Public Members

const uint8_t *volatile txData
Address of remaining data to send.

volatile size_t txDataSize
Size of the remaining data to send.

size_t txDataSizeAll
Size of the data to send out.

uint8_t *volatile rxData
Address of remaining data to receive.

volatile size_t rxDataSize
Size of the remaining data to receive.

size_t rxDataSizeAll
Size of the data to receive.

uint8_t *rxRingBuffer
Start address of the receiver ring buffer.

size_t rxRingBufferSize
Size of the ring buffer.

volatile uint16_t rxRingBufferHead
Index for the driver to store received data into ring buffer.

volatile uint16_t rxRingBufferTail
Index for the user to get data from the ring buffer.

usart_transfer_callback_t callback
Callback function.

void *userData
USART callback function parameter.

volatile uint8_t txState
TX transfer state.

volatile uint8_t rxState
RX transfer state

uint8_t txWatermark
txFIFO watermark

uint8_t rxWatermark
rxFIFO watermark

union ___unnamed69___

Public Members

uint8_t *data
The buffer of data to be transfer.

uint8_t *rxData
The buffer to receive data.

const uint8_t *txData
The buffer of data to be sent.

2.81 USDHC: Ultra Secured Digital Host Controller Driver

void USDHC_Init(USDHC_Type *base, const *usdhc_config_t* *config)
USDHC module initialization function.

Configures the USDHC according to the user configuration.

Example:

```
usdhc_config_t config;
config.cardDetectDat3 = false;
config.endianMode = kUSDHC_EndianModeLittle;
config.dmaMode = kUSDHC_DmaModeAdma2;
config.readWatermarkLevel = 128U;
config.writeWatermarkLevel = 128U;
USDHC_Init(USDHC, &config);
```

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- config – USDHC configuration information.

Return values
kStatus_Success – Operate successfully.

void USDHC_Deinit(USDHC_Type *base)
Deinitializes the USDHC.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.

bool USDHC_Reset(USDHC_Type *base, uint32_t mask, uint32_t timeout)
Resets the USDHC.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- mask – The reset type mask(_usdhc_reset).
- timeout – Timeout for reset.

Return values

- true – Reset successfully.
- false – Reset failed.

status_t USDHC_SetAdmaTableConfig(USDHC_Type *base, *usdhc_adma_config_t* *dmaConfig, *usdhc_data_t* *dataConfig, uint32_t flags)
Sets the DMA descriptor table configuration. A high level DMA descriptor configuration function.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- dmaConfig – ADMA configuration
- dataConfig – Data descriptor
- flags – ADAM descriptor flag, used to indicate to create multiple or single descriptor, please refer to enum _usdhc_adma_flag.

Return values

- kStatus_OutOfRange – ADMA descriptor table length isn't enough to describe data.
- kStatus_Success – Operate successfully.

status_t USDHC_SetInternalDmaConfig(USDHC_Type *base, *usdhc_adma_config_t* *dmaConfig, const uint32_t *dataAddr, bool enAutoCmd23)

Internal DMA configuration. This function is used to config the USDHC DMA related registers.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- dmaConfig – ADMA configuration.
- dataAddr – Transfer data address, a simple DMA parameter, if ADMA is used, leave it to NULL.
- enAutoCmd23 – Flag to indicate Auto CMD23 is enable or not, a simple DMA parameter, if ADMA is used, leave it to false.

Return values

- kStatus_OutOfRange – ADMA descriptor table length isn't enough to describe data.
- kStatus_Success – Operate successfully.

status_t USDHC_SetADMA2Descriptor(uint32_t *admaTable, uint32_t admaTableWords, const uint32_t *dataBufferAddr, uint32_t dataBytes, uint32_t flags)

Sets the ADMA2 descriptor table configuration.

Parameters

- admaTable – ADMA table address.
- admaTableWords – ADMA table length.
- dataBufferAddr – Data buffer address.
- dataBytes – Data Data length.
- flags – ADAM descriptor flag, used to indicate to create multiple or single descriptor, please refer to enum _usdhc_adma_flag.

Return values

- kStatus_OutOfRange – ADMA descriptor table length isn't enough to describe data.
- kStatus_Success – Operate successfully.

status_t USDHC_SetADMA1Descriptor(uint32_t *admaTable, uint32_t admaTableWords, const uint32_t *dataBufferAddr, uint32_t dataBytes, uint32_t flags)

Sets the ADMA1 descriptor table configuration.

Parameters

- admaTable – ADMA table address.
- admaTableWords – ADMA table length.
- dataBufferAddr – Data buffer address.
- dataBytes – Data length.
- flags – ADAM descriptor flag, used to indicate to create multiple or single descriptor, please refer to enum _usdhc_adma_flag.

Return values

- kStatus_OutOfRange – ADMA descriptor table length isn't enough to describe data.
- kStatus_Success – Operate successfully.

static inline void USDHC_EnableInternalDMA(USDHC_Type *base, bool enable)

Enables internal DMA.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- enable – enable or disable flag

static inline void USDHC_EnableInterruptStatus(USDHC_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Enables the interrupt status.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- mask – Interrupt status flags mask(_usdhc_interrupt_status_flag).

static inline void USDHC_DisableInterruptStatus(USDHC_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Disables the interrupt status.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- mask – The interrupt status flags mask(_usdhc_interrupt_status_flag).

static inline void USDHC_EnableInterruptSignal(USDHC_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Enables the interrupt signal corresponding to the interrupt status flag.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- mask – The interrupt status flags mask(_usdhc_interrupt_status_flag).

static inline void USDHC_DisableInterruptSignal(USDHC_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Disables the interrupt signal corresponding to the interrupt status flag.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- mask – The interrupt status flags mask(_usdhc_interrupt_status_flag).

static inline uint32_t USDHC_GetEnabledInterruptStatusFlags(USDHC_Type *base)

Gets the enabled interrupt status.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.

Returns
Current interrupt status flags mask(_usdhc_interrupt_status_flag).

static inline uint32_t USDHC_GetInterruptStatusFlags(USDHC_Type *base)

Gets the current interrupt status.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.

Returns
Current interrupt status flags mask(_usdhc_interrupt_status_flag).

static inline void USDHC_ClearInterruptStatusFlags(USDHC_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Clears a specified interrupt status. write 1 clears.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- mask – The interrupt status flags mask(_usdhc_interrupt_status_flag).

static inline uint32_t USDHC_GetAutoCommand12ErrorStatusFlags(USDHC_Type *base)

Gets the status of auto command 12 error.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.

Returns
Auto command 12 error status flags mask(_usdhc_auto_command12_error_status_flag).

static inline uint32_t USDHC_GetAdmaErrorStatusFlags(USDHC_Type *base)

Gets the status of the ADMA error.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.

Returns
ADMA error status flags mask(_usdhc_adma_error_status_flag).

static inline uint32_t USDHC_GetPresentStatusFlags(USDHC_Type *base)

Gets a present status.

This function gets the present USDHC's status except for an interrupt status and an error status.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.

Returns
Present USDHC's status flags mask(_usdhc_present_status_flag).

void USDHC_GetCapability(USDHC_Type *base, *usdhc_capability_t* *capability)

Gets the capability information.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- capability – Structure to save capability information.

static inline void USDHC_ForceClockOn(USDHC_Type *base, bool enable)

Forces the card clock on.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.

- enable – enable/disable flag

uint32_t USDHC_SetSdClock(USDHC_Type *base, uint32_t srcClock_Hz, uint32_t busClock_Hz)

Sets the SD bus clock frequency.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- srcClock_Hz – USDHC source clock frequency united in Hz.
- busClock_Hz – SD bus clock frequency united in Hz.

Returns

The nearest frequency of busClock_Hz configured for SD bus.

bool USDHC_SetCardActive(USDHC_Type *base, uint32_t timeout)

Sends 80 clocks to the card to set it to the active state.

This function must be called each time the card is inserted to ensure that the card can receive the command correctly.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- timeout – Timeout to initialize card.

Return values

- true – Set card active successfully.
- false – Set card active failed.

static inline void USDHC_AssertHardwareReset(USDHC_Type *base, bool high)

Triggers a hardware reset.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- high – 1 or 0 level

static inline void USDHC_SetDataBusWidth(USDHC_Type *base, *usdhc_data_bus_width_t* width)

Sets the data transfer width.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- width – Data transfer width.

static inline void USDHC_WriteData(USDHC_Type *base, uint32_t data)

Fills the data port.

This function is used to implement the data transfer by Data Port instead of DMA.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- data – The data about to be sent.

static inline uint32_t USDHC_ReadData(USDHC_Type *base)

Retrieves the data from the data port.

This function is used to implement the data transfer by Data Port instead of DMA.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.

Returns
The data has been read.

void USDHC_SendCommand(USDHC_Type *base, *usdhc_command_t* *command)
Sends command function.

Parameters
- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- command – configuration

static inline void USDHC_EnableWakeupEvent(USDHC_Type *base, uint32_t mask, bool enable)
Enables or disables a wakeup event in low-power mode.

Parameters
- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- mask – Wakeup events mask(_usdhc_wakeup_event).
- enable – True to enable, false to disable.

static inline void USDHC_CardDetectByData3(USDHC_Type *base, bool enable)
Detects card insert status.

Parameters
- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- enable – enable/disable flag

static inline bool USDHC_DetectCardInsert(USDHC_Type *base)
Detects card insert status.

Parameters
- base – USDHC peripheral base address.

static inline void USDHC_EnableSdioControl(USDHC_Type *base, uint32_t mask, bool enable)
Enables or disables the SDIO card control.

Parameters
- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- mask – SDIO card control flags mask(_usdhc_sdio_control_flag).
- enable – True to enable, false to disable.

static inline void USDHC_SetContinueRequest(USDHC_Type *base)
Restarts a transaction which has stopped at the block GAP for the SDIO card.

Parameters
- base – USDHC peripheral base address.

static inline void USDHC_RequestStopAtBlockGap(USDHC_Type *base, bool enable)
Request stop at block gap function.

Parameters
- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- enable – True to stop at block gap, false to normal transfer.

void USDHC_SetMmcBootConfig(USDHC_Type *base, const *usdhc_boot_config_t* *config)
Configures the MMC boot feature.

Example:

```
usdhc_boot_config_t config;
config.ackTimeoutCount = 4;
config.bootMode = kUSDHC_BootModeNormal;
config.blockCount = 5;
config.enableBootAck = true;
config.enableBoot = true;
config.enableAutoStopAtBlockGap = true;
USDHC_SetMmcBootConfig(USDHC, &config);
```

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- config – The MMC boot configuration information.

static inline void USDHC_EnableMmcBoot(USDHC_Type *base, bool enable)

Enables or disables the mmc boot mode.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- enable – True to enable, false to disable.

static inline void USDHC_SetForceEvent(USDHC_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Forces generating events according to the given mask.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- mask – The force events bit posistion (_usdhc_force_event).

static inline bool USDHC_RequestTuningForSDR50(USDHC_Type *base)

Checks the SDR50 mode request tuning bit. When this bit set, application shall perform tuning for SDR50 mode.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.

static inline bool USDHC_RequestReTuning(USDHC_Type *base)

Checks the request re-tuning bit. When this bit is set, user should do manual tuning or standard tuning function.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.

static inline void USDHC_EnableAutoTuning(USDHC_Type *base, bool enable)

The SDR104 mode auto tuning enable and disable. This function should be called after tuning function execute pass, auto tuning will handle by hardware.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- enable – enable/disable flag

void USDHC_EnableAutoTuningForCmdAndData(USDHC_Type *base)

The auto tuning enbale for CMD/DATA line.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.

void USDHC_EnableManualTuning(USDHC_Type *base, bool enable)

Manual tuning trigger or abort. User should handle the tuning cmd and find the boundary of the delay then calucate a average value which will be configured to the **CLK_TUNE_CTRL_STATUS** This function should be called before function USDHC_AdjustDelayForManualTuning.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- enable – tuning enable flag

static inline uint32_t USDHC_GetTuningDelayStatus(USDHC_Type *base)

Get the tuning delay cell setting.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.

Return values

CLK – Tuning Control and Status register value.

status_t USDHC_SetTuningDelay(USDHC_Type *base, uint32_t preDelay, uint32_t outDelay, uint32_t postDelay)

The tuning delay cell setting.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- preDelay – Set the number of delay cells on the feedback clock between the feedback clock and CLK_PRE.
- outDelay – Set the number of delay cells on the feedback clock between CLK_PRE and CLK_OUT.
- postDelay – Set the number of delay cells on the feedback clock between CLK_OUT and CLK_POST.

Return values

- kStatus_Fail – config the delay setting fail
- kStatus_Success – config the delay setting success

status_t USDHC_AdjustDelayForManualTuning(USDHC_Type *base, uint32_t delay)

Adjusts delay for mannual tuning.

Deprecated:

Do not use this function. It has been superceded by USDHC_SetTuingDelay

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- delay – setting configuration

Return values

- kStatus_Fail – config the delay setting fail
- kStatus_Success – config the delay setting success

static inline void USDHC_SetStandardTuningCounter(USDHC_Type *base, uint8_t counter)

set tuning counter tuning.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- counter – tuning counter

Return values

- kStatus_Fail – config the delay setting fail
- kStatus_Success – config the delay setting success

void USDHC_EnableStandardTuning(USDHC_Type *base, uint32_t tuningStartTap, uint32_t step, bool enable)

The enable standard tuning function. The standard tuning window and tuning counter using the default config tuning cmd is sent by the software, user need to check whether the tuning result can be used for SDR50, SDR104, and HS200 mode tuning.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- tuningStartTap – start tap
- step – tuning step
- enable – enable/disable flag

static inline uint32_t USDHC_GetExecuteStdTuningStatus(USDHC_Type *base)

Gets execute STD tuning status.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.

static inline uint32_t USDHC_CheckStdTuningResult(USDHC_Type *base)

Checks STD tuning result.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.

static inline uint32_t USDHC_CheckTuningError(USDHC_Type *base)

Checks tuning error.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.

void USDHC_EnableDDRMode(USDHC_Type *base, bool enable, uint32_t nibblePos)

The enable/disable DDR mode.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- enable – enable/disable flag
- nibblePos – nibble position

static inline void USDHC_EnableHS400Mode(USDHC_Type *base, bool enable)

The enable/disable HS400 mode.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- enable – enable/disable flag

static inline void USDHC_ResetStrobeDLL(USDHC_Type *base)

Resets the strobe DLL.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.

static inline void USDHC_EnableStrobeDLL(USDHC_Type *base, bool enable)

Enables/disables the strobe DLL.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- enable – enable/disable flag

void USDHC_ConfigStrobeDLL(USDHC_Type *base, uint32_t delayTarget, uint32_t updateInterval)

Configs the strobe DLL delay target and update interval.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- delayTarget – delay target
- updateInterval – update interval

static inline void USDHC_SetStrobeDllOverride(USDHC_Type *base, uint32_t delayTaps)

Enables manual override for slave delay chain using **STROBE_SLV_OVERRIDE_VAL**.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- delayTaps – Valid delay taps range from 1 - 128 taps. A value of 0 selects tap 1, and a value of 0x7F selects tap 128.

static inline uint32_t USDHC_GetStrobeDLLStatus(USDHC_Type *base)

Gets the strobe DLL status.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.

void USDHC_SetDataConfig(USDHC_Type *base, *usdhc_transfer_direction_t* dataDirection, uint32_t blockCount, uint32_t blockSize)

USDHC data configuration.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- dataDirection – Data direction, tx or rx.
- blockCount – Data block count.
- blockSize – Data block size.

void USDHC_TransferCreateHandle(USDHC_Type *base, *usdhc_handle_t* *handle, const *usdhc_transfer_callback_t* *callback, void *userData)

Creates the USDHC handle.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- handle – USDHC handle pointer.
- callback – Structure pointer to contain all callback functions.
- userData – Callback function parameter.

status_t USDHC_TransferNonBlocking(USDHC_Type *base, *usdhc_handle_t* *handle, *usdhc_adma_config_t* *dmaConfig, *usdhc_transfer_t* *transfer)

Transfers the command/data using an interrupt and an asynchronous method.

This function sends a command and data and returns immediately. It doesn't wait for the transfer to complete or to encounter an error. The application must not call this API in multiple threads at the same time. Because of that this API doesn't support the re-entry mechanism.

Note: Call API USDHC_TransferCreateHandle when calling this API.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- handle – USDHC handle.
- dmaConfig – ADMA configuration.
- transfer – Transfer content.

Return values

- kStatus_InvalidArgument – Argument is invalid.
- kStatus_USDHC_BusyTransferring – Busy transferring.
- kStatus_USDHC_PrepareAdmaDescriptorFailed – Prepare ADMA descriptor failed.
- kStatus_Success – Operate successfully.

status_t USDHC_TransferBlocking(USDHC_Type *base, *usdhc_adma_config_t* *dmaConfig, *usdhc_transfer_t* *transfer)

Transfers the command/data using a blocking method.

This function waits until the command response/data is received or the USDHC encounters an error by polling the status flag.

The application must not call this API in multiple threads at the same time. Because this API doesn't support the re-entry mechanism.

Note: There is no need to call API USDHC_TransferCreateHandle when calling this API.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- dmaConfig – adma configuration
- transfer – Transfer content.

Return values

- kStatus_InvalidArgument – Argument is invalid.
- kStatus_USDHC_PrepareAdmaDescriptorFailed – Prepare ADMA descriptor failed.
- kStatus_USDHC_SendCommandFailed – Send command failed.
- kStatus_USDHC_TransferDataFailed – Transfer data failed.

- kStatus_Success – Operate successfully.

void USDHC_TransferHandleIRQ(USDHC_Type *base, *usdhc_handle_t* *handle)

IRQ handler for the USDHC.

This function deals with the IRQs on the given host controller.

Parameters

- base – USDHC peripheral base address.
- handle – USDHC handle.

FSL_USDHC_DRIVER_VERSION

Driver version 2.8.5.

Enum _usdhc_status. USDHC status.

Values:

enumerator kStatus_USDHC_BusyTransferring
Transfer is on-going.

enumerator kStatus_USDHC_PrepareAdmaDescriptorFailed
Set DMA descriptor failed.

enumerator kStatus_USDHC_SendCommandFailed
Send command failed.

enumerator kStatus_USDHC_TransferDataFailed
Transfer data failed.

enumerator kStatus_USDHC_DMADataAddrNotAlign
Data address not aligned.

enumerator kStatus_USDHC_ReTuningRequest
Re-tuning request.

enumerator kStatus_USDHC_TuningError
Tuning error.

enumerator kStatus_USDHC_NotSupport
Not support.

enumerator kStatus_USDHC_TransferDataComplete
Transfer data complete.

enumerator kStatus_USDHC_SendCommandSuccess
Transfer command complete.

enumerator kStatus_USDHC_TransferDMAComplete
Transfer DMA complete.

Enum _usdhc_capability_flag. Host controller capabilities flag mask. .

Values:

enumerator kUSDHC_SupportAdmaFlag
Support ADMA.

enumerator kUSDHC_SupportHighSpeedFlag
Support high-speed.

enumerator kUSDHC_SupportDmaFlag
Support DMA.

enumerator kUSDHC_SupportSuspendResumeFlag
Support suspend/resume.

enumerator kUSDHC_SupportV330Flag
Support voltage 3.3V.

enumerator kUSDHC_SupportV300Flag
Support voltage 3.0V.

enumerator kUSDHC_Support4BitFlag
Flag in HTCAPBLT_MBL's position, supporting 4-bit mode.

enumerator kUSDHC_Support8BitFlag
Flag in HTCAPBLT_MBL's position, supporting 8-bit mode.

enumerator kUSDHC_SupportDDR50Flag
SD version 3.0 new feature, supporting DDR50 mode.

enumerator kUSDHC_SupportSDR104Flag
Support SDR104 mode.

enumerator kUSDHC_SupportSDR50Flag
Support SDR50 mode.

Enum _usdhc_wakeup_event. Wakeup event mask. .

Values:

enumerator kUSDHC_WakeupEventOnCardInt
Wakeup on card interrupt.

enumerator kUSDHC_WakeupEventOnCardInsert
Wakeup on card insertion.

enumerator kUSDHC_WakeupEventOnCardRemove
Wakeup on card removal.

enumerator kUSDHC_WakeupEventsAll
All wakeup events

Enum _usdhc_reset. Reset type mask. .

Values:

enumerator kUSDHC_ResetAll
Reset all except card detection.

enumerator kUSDHC_ResetCommand
Reset command line.

enumerator kUSDHC_ResetData
Reset data line.

enumerator kUSDHC_ResetTuning
Reset tuning circuit.

enumerator kUSDHC_ResetsAll
All reset types

Enum _usdhc_transfer_flag. Transfer flag mask.

Values:

enumerator kUSDHC_EnableDmaFlag
Enable DMA.

enumerator kUSDHC_CommandTypeSuspendFlag
Suspend command.

enumerator kUSDHC_CommandTypeResumeFlag
Resume command.

enumerator kUSDHC_CommandTypeAbortFlag
Abort command.

enumerator kUSDHC_EnableBlockCountFlag
Enable block count.

enumerator kUSDHC_EnableAutoCommand12Flag
Enable auto CMD12.

enumerator kUSDHC_DataReadFlag
Enable data read.

enumerator kUSDHC_MultipleBlockFlag
Multiple block data read/write.

enumerator kUSDHC_EnableAutoCommand23Flag
Enable auto CMD23.

enumerator kUSDHC_ResponseLength136Flag
136-bit response length.

enumerator kUSDHC_ResponseLength48Flag
48-bit response length.

enumerator kUSDHC_ResponseLength48BusyFlag
48-bit response length with busy status.

enumerator kUSDHC_EnableCrcCheckFlag
Enable CRC check.

enumerator kUSDHC_EnableIndexCheckFlag
Enable index check.

enumerator kUSDHC_DataPresentFlag
Data present flag.

Enum _usdhc_present_status_flag. Present status flag mask. .

Values:

enumerator kUSDHC_CommandInhibitFlag
Command inhibit.

enumerator kUSDHC_DataInhibitFlag
Data inhibit.

enumerator kUSDHC_DataLineActiveFlag
Data line active.

enumerator kUSDHC_SdClockStableFlag
SD bus clock stable.

enumerator kUSDHC_WriteTransferActiveFlag
Write transfer active.

enumerator kUSDHC_ReadTransferActiveFlag
Read transfer active.

enumerator kUSDHC_BufferWriteEnableFlag
Buffer write enable.

enumerator kUSDHC_BufferReadEnableFlag
Buffer read enable.

enumerator kUSDHC_ReTuningRequestFlag
Re-tuning request flag, only used for SDR104 mode.

enumerator kUSDHC_DelaySettingFinishedFlag
Delay setting finished flag.

enumerator kUSDHC_CardInsertedFlag
Card inserted.

enumerator kUSDHC_CommandLineLevelFlag
Command line signal level.

enumerator kUSDHC_Data0LineLevelFlag
Data0 line signal level.

enumerator kUSDHC_Data1LineLevelFlag
Data1 line signal level.

enumerator kUSDHC_Data2LineLevelFlag
Data2 line signal level.

enumerator kUSDHC_Data3LineLevelFlag
Data3 line signal level.

enumerator kUSDHC_Data4LineLevelFlag
Data4 line signal level.

enumerator kUSDHC_Data5LineLevelFlag
Data5 line signal level.

enumerator kUSDHC_Data6LineLevelFlag
Data6 line signal level.

enumerator kUSDHC_Data7LineLevelFlag
Data7 line signal level.

Enum _usdhc_interrupt_status_flag. Interrupt status flag mask. .

Values:

enumerator kUSDHC_CommandCompleteFlag
Command complete.

enumerator kUSDHC_DataCompleteFlag
Data complete.

enumerator kUSDHC_BlockGapEventFlag
Block gap event.

enumerator kUSDHC_DmaCompleteFlag
DMA interrupt.

enumerator kUSDHC_BufferWriteReadyFlag
Buffer write ready.

enumerator kUSDHC_BufferReadReadyFlag
Buffer read ready.

enumerator kUSDHC_CardInsertionFlag
Card inserted.

enumerator kUSDHC_CardRemovalFlag
Card removed.

enumerator kUSDHC_CardInterruptFlag
Card interrupt.

enumerator kUSDHC_ReTuningEventFlag
Re-Tuning event, only for SD3.0 SDR104 mode.

enumerator kUSDHC_TuningPassFlag
SDR104 mode tuning pass flag.

enumerator kUSDHC_TuningErrorFlag
SDR104 tuning error flag.

enumerator kUSDHC_CommandTimeoutFlag
Command timeout error.

enumerator kUSDHC_CommandCrcErrorFlag
Command CRC error.

enumerator kUSDHC_CommandEndBitErrorFlag
Command end bit error.

enumerator kUSDHC_CommandIndexErrorFlag
Command index error.

enumerator kUSDHC_DataTimeoutFlag
Data timeout error.

enumerator kUSDHC_DataCrcErrorFlag
Data CRC error.

enumerator kUSDHC_DataEndBitErrorFlag
Data end bit error.

enumerator kUSDHC_AutoCommand12ErrorFlag
Auto CMD12 error.

enumerator kUSDHC_DmaErrorFlag
DMA error.

enumerator kUSDHC_CommandErrorFlag
Command error

enumerator kUSDHC_DataErrorFlag
Data error

enumerator kUSDHC_ErrorFlag
All error

enumerator kUSDHC_DataFlag
Data interrupts

enumerator kUSDHC_DataDMAFlag
Data interrupts

enumerator kUSDHC_CommandFlag
Command interrupts

enumerator kUSDHC_CardDetectFlag
Card detection interrupts

enumerator kUSDHC_SDR104TuningFlag
SDR104 tuning flag.

enumerator kUSDHC_AllInterruptFlags
All flags mask

Enum _usdhc_auto_command12_error_status_flag. Auto CMD12 error status flag mask. .

Values:

enumerator kUSDHC_AutoCommand12NotExecutedFlag
Not executed error.

enumerator kUSDHC_AutoCommand12TimeoutFlag
Timeout error.

enumerator kUSDHC_AutoCommand12EndBitErrorFlag
End bit error.

enumerator kUSDHC_AutoCommand12CrcErrorFlag
CRC error.

enumerator kUSDHC_AutoCommand12IndexErrorFlag
Index error.

enumerator kUSDHC_AutoCommand12NotIssuedFlag
Not issued error.

Enum _usdhc_standard_tuning. Standard tuning flag.

Values:

enumerator kUSDHC_ExecuteTuning
Used to start tuning procedure.

enumerator kUSDHC_TuningSampleClockSel
When **std_tuning_en** bit is set, this bit is used to select sampleing clock.

Enum _usdhc_adma_error_status_flag. ADMA error status flag mask. .

Values:

enumerator kUSDHC_AdmaLenghMismatchFlag
Length mismatch error.

enumerator kUSDHC_AdmaDescriptorErrorFlag
Descriptor error.

Enum _usdhc_adma_error_state. ADMA error state.

This state is the detail state when ADMA error has occurred.

Values:

enumerator kUSDHC_AdmaErrorStateStopDma
Stop DMA, previous location set in the ADMA system address is errored address.

enumerator kUSDHC_AdmaErrorStateFetchDescriptor
Fetch descriptor, current location set in the ADMA system address is errored address.

enumerator kUSDHC_AdmaErrorStateChangeAddress
Change address, no DMA error has occurred.

enumerator kUSDHC_AdmaErrorStateTransferData
Transfer data, previous location set in the ADMA system address is errored address.

enumerator kUSDHC_AdmaErrorStateInvalidLength
Invalid length in ADMA descriptor.

enumerator kUSDHC_AdmaErrorStateInvalidDescriptor
Invalid descriptor fetched by ADMA.

enumerator kUSDHC_AdmaErrorState
ADMA error state

Enum _usdhc_force_event. Force event bit position. .

Values:

enumerator kUSDHC_ForceEventAutoCommand12NotExecuted
Auto CMD12 not executed error.

enumerator kUSDHC_ForceEventAutoCommand12Timeout
Auto CMD12 timeout error.

enumerator kUSDHC_ForceEventAutoCommand12CrcError
Auto CMD12 CRC error.

enumerator kUSDHC_ForceEventEndBitError
Auto CMD12 end bit error.

enumerator kUSDHC_ForceEventAutoCommand12IndexError
Auto CMD12 index error.

enumerator kUSDHC_ForceEventAutoCommand12NotIssued
Auto CMD12 not issued error.

enumerator kUSDHC_ForceEventCommandTimeout
Command timeout error.

enumerator kUSDHC_ForceEventCommandCrcError
Command CRC error.

enumerator kUSDHC_ForceEventCommandEndBitError
Command end bit error.

enumerator kUSDHC_ForceEventCommandIndexError
Command index error.

enumerator kUSDHC_ForceEventDataTimeout
Data timeout error.

enumerator kUSDHC_ForceEventDataCrcError
Data CRC error.

enumerator kUSDHC_ForceEventDataEndBitError
Data end bit error.

enumerator kUSDHC_ForceEventAutoCommand12Error
Auto CMD12 error.

enumerator kUSDHC_ForceEventCardInt
Card interrupt.

enumerator kUSDHC_ForceEventDmaError
Dma error.

enumerator kUSDHC_ForceEventTuningError
Tuning error.

enumerator kUSDHC_ForceEventsAll
All force event flags mask.

enum _usdhc_transfer_direction
Data transfer direction.

Values:

enumerator kUSDHC_TransferDirectionReceive
USDHC transfer direction receive.

enumerator kUSDHC_TransferDirectionSend
USDHC transfer direction send.

enum _usdhc_data_bus_width
Data transfer width.

Values:

enumerator kUSDHC_DataBusWidth1Bit
1-bit mode

enumerator kUSDHC_DataBusWidth4Bit
4-bit mode

enumerator kUSDHC_DataBusWidth8Bit
8-bit mode

enum _usdhc_endian_mode
Endian mode.

Values:

enumerator kUSDHC_EndianModeBig
Big endian mode.

enumerator kUSDHC_EndianModeHalfWordBig
Half word big endian mode.

enumerator kUSDHC_EndianModeLittle
Little endian mode.

enum _usdhc_dma_mode
DMA mode.

Values:

enumerator kUSDHC_DmaModeSimple
External DMA.

enumerator kUSDHC_DmaModeAdma1
ADMA1 is selected.

enumerator kUSDHC_DmaModeAdma2
ADMA2 is selected.

enumerator kUSDHC_ExternalDMA
External DMA mode selected.

Enum _usdhc_sdio_control_flag. SDIO control flag mask. .

Values:

enumerator kUSDHC_StopAtBlockGapFlag
Stop at block gap.

enumerator kUSDHC_ReadWaitControlFlag
Read wait control.

enumerator kUSDHC_InterruptAtBlockGapFlag
Interrupt at block gap.

enumerator kUSDHC_ReadDoneNo8CLK
Read done without 8 clk for block gap.

enumerator kUSDHC_ExactBlockNumberReadFlag
Exact block number read.

enum _usdhc_boot_mode
MMC card boot mode.

Values:

enumerator kUSDHC_BootModeNormal
Normal boot

enumerator kUSDHC_BootModeAlternative
Alternative boot

enum _usdhc_card_command_type
The command type.

Values:

enumerator kCARD_CommandTypeNormal
Normal command

enumerator kCARD_CommandTypeSuspend
Suspend command

enumerator kCARD_CommandTypeResume
Resume command

enumerator kCARD_CommandTypeAbort
Abort command

enumerator kCARD_CommandTypeEmpty
Empty command

enum _usdhc_card_response_type
The command response type.

Defines the command response type from card to host controller.

Values:

enumerator kCARD_ResponseTypeNone
Response type: none

enumerator kCARD_ResponseTypeR1
Response type: R1

enumerator kCARD_ResponseTypeR1b
Response type: R1b

enumerator kCARD_ResponseTypeR2
Response type: R2

enumerator kCARD_ResponseTypeR3
Response type: R3

enumerator kCARD_ResponseTypeR4
Response type: R4

enumerator kCARD_ResponseTypeR5
Response type: R5

enumerator kCARD_ResponseTypeR5b
Response type: R5b

enumerator kCARD_ResponseTypeR6
Response type: R6

enumerator kCARD_ResponseTypeR7
Response type: R7

Enum _usdhc_adma1_descriptor_flag. The mask for the control/status field in ADMA1 descriptor.

Values:

enumerator kUSDHC_Adma1DescriptorValidFlag
Valid flag.

enumerator kUSDHC_Adma1DescriptorEndFlag
End flag.

enumerator kUSDHC_Adma1DescriptorInterrupFlag
Interrupt flag.

enumerator kUSDHC_Adma1DescriptorActivity1Flag
Activity 1 flag.

enumerator kUSDHC_Adma1DescriptorActivity2Flag
Activity 2 flag.

enumerator kUSDHC_Adma1DescriptorTypeNop
No operation.

enumerator kUSDHC_Adma1DescriptorTypeTransfer
Transfer data.

enumerator kUSDHC_Adma1DescriptorTypeLink
Link descriptor.

enumerator kUSDHC_Adma1DescriptorTypeSetLength
Set data length.

Enum _usdhc_adma2_descriptor_flag. ADMA1 descriptor control and status mask.

Values:

enumerator kUSDHC_Adma2DescriptorValidFlag
Valid flag.

enumerator kUSDHC_Adma2DescriptorEndFlag
End flag.

enumerator kUSDHC_Adma2DescriptorInterruptFlag
Interrupt flag.

enumerator kUSDHC_Adma2DescriptorActivity1Flag
Activity 1 mask.

enumerator kUSDHC_Adma2DescriptorActivity2Flag
Activity 2 mask.

enumerator kUSDHC_Adma2DescriptorTypeNop
No operation.

enumerator kUSDHC_Adma2DescriptorTypeReserved
Reserved.

enumerator kUSDHC_Adma2DescriptorTypeTransfer
Transfer type.

enumerator kUSDHC_Adma2DescriptorTypeLink
Link type.

Enum _usdhc_adma_flag. ADMA descriptor configuration flag. .

Values:

enumerator kUSDHC_AdmaDescriptorSingleFlag
Try to finish the transfer in a single ADMA descriptor. If transfer size is bigger than one ADMA descriptor's ability, new another descriptor for data transfer.

enumerator kUSDHC_AdmaDescriptorMultipleFlag
Create multiple ADMA descriptors within the ADMA table, this is used for mmc boot mode specifically, which need to modify the ADMA descriptor on the fly, so the flag should be used combining with stop at block gap feature.

enum _usdhc_burst_len
DMA transfer burst len config.

Values:

enumerator kUSDHC_EnBurstLenForINCR
Enable burst len for INCR.

enumerator kUSDHC_EnBurstLenForINCR4816
Enable burst len for INCR4/INCR8/INCR16.

enumerator kUSDHC_EnBurstLenForINCR4816WRAP
Enable burst len for INCR4/8/16 WRAP.

Enum _usdhc_transfer_data_type. Tansfer data type definition.

Values:

enumerator kUSDHC_TransferDataNormal
Transfer normal read/write data.

enumerator kUSDHC_TransferDataTuning
Transfer tuning data.

enumerator kUSDHC_TransferDataBoot
Transfer boot data.

enumerator kUSDHC_TransferDataBootcontinous
Transfer boot data continuously.

typedef enum *_usdhc_transfer_direction* usdhc_transfer_direction_t
Data transfer direction.

typedef enum *_usdhc_data_bus_width* usdhc_data_bus_width_t
Data transfer width.

typedef enum *_usdhc_endian_mode* usdhc_endian_mode_t
Endian mode.

typedef enum *_usdhc_dma_mode* usdhc_dma_mode_t
DMA mode.

typedef enum *_usdhc_boot_mode* usdhc_boot_mode_t
MMC card boot mode.

typedef enum *_usdhc_card_command_type* usdhc_card_command_type_t
The command type.

typedef enum *_usdhc_card_response_type* usdhc_card_response_type_t
The command response type.

Defines the command response type from card to host controller.

typedef enum *_usdhc_burst_len* usdhc_burst_len_t
DMA transfer burst len config.

typedef uint32_t usdhc_adma1_descriptor_t
Defines the ADMA1 descriptor structure.

typedef struct *_usdhc_adma2_descriptor* usdhc_adma2_descriptor_t
Defines the ADMA2 descriptor structure.

typedef struct *_usdhc_capability* usdhc_capability_t
USDHC capability information.

Defines a structure to save the capability information of USDHC.

typedef struct *_usdhc_boot_config* usdhc_boot_config_t
Data structure to configure the MMC boot feature.

typedef struct *_usdhc_config* usdhc_config_t
Data structure to initialize the USDHC.

typedef struct *_usdhc_command* usdhc_command_t
Card command descriptor.

Defines card command-related attribute.

typedef struct *_usdhc_adma_config* usdhc_adma_config_t
ADMA configuration.

typedef struct *_usdhc_scatter_gather_data_list* usdhc_scatter_gather_data_list_t
Card scatter gather data list.

Allow application register uncontinuous data buffer for data transfer.

typedef struct *_usdhc_scatter_gather_data* usdhc_scatter_gather_data_t
Card scatter gather data descriptor.

Defines a structure to contain data-related attribute. The 'enableIgnoreError' is used when upper card driver wants to ignore the error event to read/write all the data and not to stop read/write immediately when an error event happens. For example, bus testing procedure for MMC card.

typedef struct *_usdhc_scatter_gather_transfer* usdhc_scatter_gather_transfer_t
usdhc scatter gather transfer.

typedef struct *_usdhc_data* usdhc_data_t
Card data descriptor.

Defines a structure to contain data-related attribute. The 'enableIgnoreError' is used when upper card driver wants to ignore the error event to read/write all the data and not to stop read/write immediately when an error event happens. For example, bus testing procedure for MMC card.

typedef struct *_usdhc_transfer* usdhc_transfer_t
Transfer state.

typedef struct *_usdhc_handle* usdhc_handle_t
USDHC handle typedef.

typedef struct *_usdhc_transfer_callback* usdhc_transfer_callback_t
USDHC callback functions.

typedef *status_t* (*usdhc_transfer_function_t)(USDHC_Type *base, *usdhc_transfer_t* *content)
USDHC transfer function.

typedef struct *_usdhc_host* usdhc_host_t
USDHC host descriptor.

USDHC_MAX_BLOCK_COUNT
Maximum block count can be set one time.

FSL_USDHC_ENABLE_SCATTER_GATHER_TRANSFER
USDHC scatter gather feature control macro.

USDHC_ADMA1_ADDRESS_ALIGN
The alignment size for ADDRESS filed in ADMA1's descriptor.

USDHC_ADMA1_LENGTH_ALIGN
The alignment size for LENGTH field in ADMA1's descriptor.

USDHC_ADMA2_ADDRESS_ALIGN
The alignment size for ADDRESS field in ADMA2's descriptor.

USDHC_ADMA2_LENGTH_ALIGN
The alignment size for LENGTH filed in ADMA2's descriptor.

USDHC_ADMA1_DESCRIPTOR_ADDRESS_SHIFT
The bit shift for ADDRESS filed in ADMA1's descriptor.

Address/page field	Reserved	Attribute					
31 12	11 6	05	04	03	02	01	00
address or data length	000000	Act2	Act1	0	Int	End	Valid

Act2	Act1	Comment	31-28	27-12
0	0	No op	Don't care	
0	1	Set data length	0000	Data Length
1	0	Transfer data	Data address	
1	1	Link descriptor	Descriptor address	

USDHC_ADMA1_DESCRIPTOR_ADDRESS_MASK
The bit mask for ADDRESS field in ADMA1's descriptor.

USDHC_ADMA1_DESCRIPTOR_LENGTH_SHIFT
The bit shift for LENGTH filed in ADMA1's descriptor.

USDHC_ADMA1_DESCRIPTOR_LENGTH_MASK
The mask for LENGTH field in ADMA1's descriptor.

USDHC_ADMA1_DESCRIPTOR_MAX_LENGTH_PER_ENTRY
The maximum value of LENGTH filed in ADMA1's descriptor. Since the max transfer size ADMA1 support is 65535 which is indivisible by 4096, so to make sure a large data load transfer (>64KB) continuously (require the data address be always align with 4096), software will set the maximum data length for ADMA1 to (64 - 4)KB.

USDHC_ADMA2_DESCRIPTOR_LENGTH_SHIFT
The bit shift for LENGTH field in ADMA2's descriptor.

Address field	Length	Reserved	Attribute					
63 32	31 16	15 06	05	04	03	02	01	00
32-bit address	16-bit length	0000000000	Act2	Act1	0	Int	End	Valid

Act2	Act1	Comment	Operation
0	0	No op	Don't care
0	1	Reserved	Read this line and go to next one
1	0	Transfer data	Transfer data with address and length set in this descriptor line
1	1	Link descriptor	Link to another descriptor

USDHC_ADMA2_DESCRIPTOR_LENGTH_MASK
The bit mask for LENGTH field in ADMA2's descriptor.

USDHC_ADMA2_DESCRIPTOR_MAX_LENGTH_PER_ENTRY
The maximum value of LENGTH field in ADMA2's descriptor.

struct _usdhc_adma2_descriptor
#include <fsl_usdhc.h> Defines the ADMA2 descriptor structure.

Public Members

uint32_t attribute
The control and status field.

uint32_t address
The address field.

struct _usdhc_capability
#include <fsl_usdhc.h> USDHC capability information.

Defines a structure to save the capability information of USDHC.

Public Members

uint32_t sdVersion
Support SD card/sdio version.

uint32_t mmcVersion
Support EMMC card version.

uint32_t maxBlockLength
Maximum block length united as byte.

uint32_t maxBlockCount
Maximum block count can be set one time.

uint32_t flags
Capability flags to indicate the support information(_usdhc_capability_flag).

struct _usdhc_boot_config
#include <fsl_usdhc.h> Data structure to configure the MMC boot feature.

Public Members

uint32_t ackTimeoutCount
Timeout value for the boot ACK. The available range is 0 ~ 15.

usdhc_boot_mode_t bootMode
Boot mode selection.

uint32_t blockCount
Stop at block gap value of automatic mode. Available range is 0 ~ 65535.

size_t blockSize
Block size.

bool enableBootAck
Enable or disable boot ACK.

bool enableAutoStopAtBlockGap
Enable or disable auto stop at block gap function in boot period.

struct _usdhc_config
#include <fsl_usdhc.h> Data structure to initialize the USDHC.

Public Members

uint32_t dataTimeout
Data timeout value.

usdhc_endian_mode_t endianMode
Endian mode.

uint8_t readWatermarkLevel
Watermark level for DMA read operation. Available range is 1 ~ 128.

uint8_t writeWatermarkLevel
Watermark level for DMA write operation. Available range is 1 ~ 128.

struct _usdhc_command
#include <fsl_usdhc.h> Card command descriptor.

Defines card command-related attribute.

Public Members

uint32_t index
Command index.

uint32_t argument
Command argument.

usdhc_card_command_type_t type
Command type.

usdhc_card_response_type_t responseType
Command response type.

uint32_t response[4U]
Response for this command.

uint32_t responseErrorFlags
Response error flag, which need to check the command reponse.

uint32_t flags
Cmd flags.

struct _usdhc_adma_config
#include <fsl_usdhc.h> ADMA configuration.

Public Members

usdhc_dma_mode_t dmaMode
DMA mode.

uint32_t *admaTable
ADMA table address, can't be null if transfer way is ADMA1/ADMA2.

uint32_t admaTableWords

ADMA table length united as words, can't be 0 if transfer way is ADMA1/ADMA2.

struct _usdhc_scatter_gather_data_list

#include <fsl_usdhc.h> Card scatter gather data list.

Allow application register uncontinuous data buffer for data transfer.

struct _usdhc_scatter_gather_data

#include <fsl_usdhc.h> Card scatter gather data descriptor.

Defines a structure to contain data-related attribute. The 'enableIgnoreError' is used when upper card driver wants to ignore the error event to read/write all the data and not to stop read/write immediately when an error event happens. For example, bus testing procedure for MMC card.

Public Members

bool enableAutoCommand12

Enable auto CMD12.

bool enableAutoCommand23

Enable auto CMD23.

bool enableIgnoreError

Enable to ignore error event to read/write all the data.

usdhc_transfer_direction_t dataDirection

data direction

uint8_t dataType

this is used to distinguish the normal/tuning/boot data.

size_t blockSize

Block size.

usdhc_scatter_gather_data_list_t sgData

scatter gather data

struct _usdhc_scatter_gather_transfer

#include <fsl_usdhc.h> usdhc scatter gather transfer.

Public Members

usdhc_scatter_gather_data_t *data

Data to transfer.

usdhc_command_t *command

Command to send.

struct _usdhc_data

#include <fsl_usdhc.h> Card data descriptor.

Defines a structure to contain data-related attribute. The 'enableIgnoreError' is used when upper card driver wants to ignore the error event to read/write all the data and not to stop read/write immediately when an error event happens. For example, bus testing procedure for MMC card.

Public Members

bool enableAutoCommand12
: Enable auto CMD12.

bool enableAutoCommand23
: Enable auto CMD23.

bool enableIgnoreError
: Enable to ignore error event to read/write all the data.

uint8_t dataType
: this is used to distinguish the normal/tuning/boot data.

size_t blockSize
: Block size.

uint32_t blockCount
: Block count.

uint32_t *rxData
: Buffer to save data read.

const uint32_t *txData
: Data buffer to write.

struct __usdhc_transfer
: *#include <fsl_usdhc.h>* Transfer state.

Public Members

usdhc_data_t *data
: Data to transfer.

usdhc_command_t *command
: Command to send.

struct __usdhc_transfer_callback
: *#include <fsl_usdhc.h>* USDHC callback functions.

Public Members

void (*CardInserted)(USDHC_Type *base, void *userData)
: Card inserted occurs when DAT3/CD pin is for card detect

void (*CardRemoved)(USDHC_Type *base, void *userData)
: Card removed occurs

void (*SdioInterrupt)(USDHC_Type *base, void *userData)
: SDIO card interrupt occurs

void (*BlockGap)(USDHC_Type *base, void *userData)
: stopped at block gap event

void (*TransferComplete)(USDHC_Type *base, *usdhc_handle_t* *handle, *status_t* status, void *userData)
: Transfer complete callback.

void (*ReTuning)(USDHC_Type *base, void *userData)
: Handle the re-tuning.

struct _usdhc_handle

#include <fsl_usdhc.h> USDHC handle.

Defines the structure to save the USDHC state information and callback function.

Note: All the fields except interruptFlags and transferredWords must be allocated by the user.

Public Members

usdhc_data_t *volatile data

Transfer parameter. Data to transfer.

usdhc_command_t *volatile command

Transfer parameter. Command to send.

volatile uint32_t transferredWords

Transfer status. Words transferred by DATAPORT way.

usdhc_transfer_callback_t callback

Callback function.

void *userData

Parameter for transfer complete callback.

struct _usdhc_host

#include <fsl_usdhc.h> USDHC host descriptor.

Public Members

USDHC_Type *base

USDHC peripheral base address.

uint32_t sourceClock_Hz

USDHC source clock frequency united in Hz.

usdhc_config_t config

USDHC configuration.

usdhc_capability_t capability

USDHC capability information.

usdhc_transfer_function_t transfer

USDHC transfer function.

2.82 UTICK: MictoTick Timer Driver

void UTICK_Init(UTICK_Type *base)

Initializes an UTICK by turning its bus clock on.

void UTICK_Deinit(UTICK_Type *base)

Deinitializes a UTICK instance.

This function shuts down Utick bus clock

Parameters

- base – UTICK peripheral base address.

uint32_t UTICK_GetStatusFlags(UTICK_Type *base)

Get Status Flags.

This returns the status flag

Parameters

- base – UTICK peripheral base address.

Returns

status register value

void UTICK_ClearStatusFlags(UTICK_Type *base)

Clear Status Interrupt Flags.

This clears intr status flag

Parameters

- base – UTICK peripheral base address.

Returns

none

void UTICK_SetTick(UTICK_Type *base, *utick_mode_t* mode, uint32_t count, *utick_callback_t* cb)

Starts UTICK.

This function starts a repeat/onetime countdown with an optional callback

Parameters

- base – UTICK peripheral base address.
- mode – UTICK timer mode (ie kUTICK_onetime or kUTICK_repeat)
- count – UTICK timer mode (ie kUTICK_onetime or kUTICK_repeat)
- cb – UTICK callback (can be left as NULL if none, otherwise should be a void func(void))

Returns

none

void UTICK_HandleIRQ(UTICK_Type *base, *utick_callback_t* cb)

UTICK Interrupt Service Handler.

This function handles the interrupt and refers to the callback array in the driver to callback user (as per request in UTICK_SetTick()). if no user callback is scheduled, the interrupt will simply be cleared.

Parameters

- base – UTICK peripheral base address.
- cb – callback scheduled for this instance of UTICK

Returns

none

FSL_UTICK_DRIVER_VERSION

UTICK driver version 2.0.5.

enum _utick_mode

UTICK timer operational mode.

Values:

enumerator kUTICK_Onetime
Trigger once

enumerator kUTICK_Repeat
Trigger repeatedly

typedef enum *_utick_mode* utick_mode_t
UTICK timer operational mode.

typedef void (*utick_callback_t)(void)
UTICK callback function.

2.83 WWDT: Windowed Watchdog Timer Driver

void WWDT_GetDefaultConfig(*wwdt_config_t* *config)
Initializes WWDT configure structure.

This function initializes the WWDT configure structure to default value. The default value are:

```
config->enableWwdt = true;
config->enableWatchdogReset = false;
config->enableWatchdogProtect = false;
config->enableLockOscillator = false;
config->windowValue = 0xFFFFFFU;
config->timeoutValue = 0xFFFFFFU;
config->warningValue = 0;
```

See also:

wwdt_config_t

Parameters

- config – Pointer to WWDT config structure.

void WWDT_Init(WWDT_Type *base, const *wwdt_config_t* *config)
Initializes the WWDT.

This function initializes the WWDT. When called, the WWDT runs according to the configuration.

Example:

```
wwdt_config_t config;
WWDT_GetDefaultConfig(&config);
config.timeoutValue = 0x7ffU;
WWDT_Init(wwdt_base,&config);
```

Parameters

- base – WWDT peripheral base address
- config – The configuration of WWDT

void WWDT_Deinit(WWDT_Type *base)
Shuts down the WWDT.

This function shuts down the WWDT.

Parameters

- base – WWDT peripheral base address

static inline void WWDT_Enable(WWDT_Type *base)

Enables the WWDT module.

This function write value into WWDT_MOD register to enable the WWDT, it is a write-once bit; once this bit is set to one and a watchdog feed is performed, the watchdog timer will run permanently.

Parameters

- base – WWDT peripheral base address

static inline void WWDT_Disable(WWDT_Type *base)

Disables the WWDT module.

Deprecated:

Do not use this function. It will be deleted in next release version, for once the bit field of WDEN written with a 1, it can not be re-written with a 0.

This function write value into WWDT_MOD register to disable the WWDT.

Parameters

- base – WWDT peripheral base address

static inline uint32_t WWDT_GetStatusFlags(WWDT_Type *base)

Gets all WWDT status flags.

This function gets all status flags.

Example for getting Timeout Flag:

```
uint32_t status;
status = WWDT_GetStatusFlags(wwdt_base) & kWWDT_TimeoutFlag;
```

Parameters

- base – WWDT peripheral base address

Returns

The status flags. This is the logical OR of members of the enumeration _wwdt_status_flags_t

void WWDT_ClearStatusFlags(WWDT_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Clear WWDT flag.

This function clears WWDT status flag.

Example for clearing warning flag:

```
WWDT_ClearStatusFlags(wwdt_base, kWWDT_WarningFlag);
```

Parameters

- base – WWDT peripheral base address
- mask – The status flags to clear. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration _wwdt_status_flags_t

static inline void WWDT_SetWarningValue(WWDT_Type *base, uint32_t warningValue)

Set the WWDT warning value.

The WDWARNINT register determines the watchdog timer counter value that will generate a watchdog interrupt. When the watchdog timer counter is no longer greater than the value defined by WARNINT, an interrupt will be generated after the subsequent WDCLK.

Parameters

- base – WWDT peripheral base address
- warningValue – WWDT warning value.

static inline void WWDT_SetTimeoutValue(WWDT_Type *base, uint32_t timeoutCount)

Set the WWDT timeout value.

This function sets the timeout value. Every time a feed sequence occurs the value in the TC register is loaded into the Watchdog timer. Writing a value below 0xFF will cause 0xFF to be loaded into the TC register. Thus the minimum time-out interval is TWDCLK*256*4. If enableWatchdogProtect flag is true in wwdt_config_t config structure, any attempt to change the timeout value before the watchdog counter is below the warning and window values will cause a watchdog reset and set the WDTOF flag.

Parameters

- base – WWDT peripheral base address
- timeoutCount – WWDT timeout value, count of WWDT clock tick.

static inline void WWDT_SetWindowValue(WWDT_Type *base, uint32_t windowValue)

Sets the WWDT window value.

The WINDOW register determines the highest TV value allowed when a watchdog feed is performed. If a feed sequence occurs when timer value is greater than the value in WINDOW, a watchdog event will occur. To disable windowing, set windowValue to 0xFFFFFF (maximum possible timer value) so windowing is not in effect.

Parameters

- base – WWDT peripheral base address
- windowValue – WWDT window value.

void WWDT_Refresh(WWDT_Type *base)

Refreshes the WWDT timer.

This function feeds the WWDT. This function should be called before WWDT timer is in timeout. Otherwise, a reset is asserted.

Parameters

- base – WWDT peripheral base address

FSL_WWDT_DRIVER_VERSION

Defines WWDT driver version.

WWDT_FIRST_WORD_OF_REFRESH

First word of refresh sequence

WWDT_SECOND_WORD_OF_REFRESH

Second word of refresh sequence

enum _wwdt_status_flags_t

WWDT status flags.

This structure contains the WWDT status flags for use in the WWDT functions.

Values:

enumerator kWWDT_TimeoutFlag

Time-out flag, set when the timer times out

enumerator kWWDT_WarningFlag

Warning interrupt flag, set when timer is below the value WDWARNINT

typedef struct *_wwdt_config* wwdt_config_t

Describes WWDT configuration structure.

struct _wwdt_config

#include <fsl_wwdt.h> Describes WWDT configuration structure.

Public Members

bool enableWwdt

Enables or disables WWDT

bool enableWatchdogReset

true: Watchdog timeout will cause a chip reset false: Watchdog timeout will not cause a chip reset

bool enableWatchdogProtect

true: Enable watchdog protect i.e timeout value can only be changed after counter is below warning & window values false: Disable watchdog protect; timeout value can be changed at any time

uint32_t windowValue

Window value, set this to 0xFFFFFF if windowing is not in effect

uint32_t timeoutValue

Timeout value

uint32_t warningValue

Watchdog time counter value that will generate a warning interrupt. Set this to 0 for no warning

uint32_t clockFreq_Hz

Watchdog clock source frequency.

Chapter 3

Middleware

3.1 Boot

3.1.1 MCUXpresso SDK : mcuxsdk-middleware-mcuboot_opensource

Overview

This repository is a fork of MCUboot (https://github.com/mcu-tools/mcuboot) for MCUXpresso SDK delivery and it contains the components officially provided in NXP MCUXpresso SDK. This repository is part of the MCUXpresso SDK overall delivery which is composed of several sub-repositories/projects. Navigate to the top/parent repository (mcuxsdk-manifests) for the complete delivery of MCUXpresso SDK.

Documentation

Overall details can be reviewed here: MCUXpresso SDK Online Documentation

Visit MCUboot - Documentation to review details on the contents in this sub-repo.

Setup

Instructions on how to install the MCUXpresso SDK provided from GitHub via west manifest Getting Started with SDK - Detailed Installation Instructions

Contribution

Contributions are not currently accepted. If the intended contribution is not related to NXP specific code, consider contributing directly to the upstream MCUboot project. Once this MCUboot fork is synchronized with the upstream project, such contributions will end up here as well. If the intended contribution is a bugfix or improvement for NXP porting layer or for code added or modified by NXP, please open an issue or contact NXP support.

NXP Fork

This fork of MCUboot contains specific modifications and enhancements for NXP MCUXpresso SDK integration.

See *changelog* for details.

3.1.2 MCUboot



This is MCUboot version 2.2.0

MCUboot is a secure bootloader for 32-bits microcontrollers. It defines a common infrastructure for the bootloader and the system flash layout on microcontroller systems, and provides a secure bootloader that enables easy software upgrade.

MCUboot is not dependent on any specific operating system and hardware and relies on hardware porting layers from the operating system it works with. Currently, MCUboot works with the following operating systems and SoCs:

- Zephyr
- Apache Mynewt
- Apache NuttX
- RIOT
- Mbed OS
- Espressif
- Cypress/Infineon

RIOT is supported only as a boot target. We will accept any new port contributed by the community once it is good enough.

MCUboot How-tos

See the following pages for instructions on using MCUboot with different operating systems and SoCs:

- Zephyr
- Apache Mynewt
- Apache NuttX
- RIOT
- Mbed OS
- Espressif
- *Cypress/Infineon*

There are also instructions for the *Simulator*.

Roadmap

The issues being planned and worked on are tracked using GitHub issues. To give your input, visit MCUboot GitHub Issues.

Source files

You can find additional documentation on the bootloader in the source files. For more information, use the following links:

- boot/bootutil - The core of the bootloader itself.
- boot/boot_serial - Support for serial upgrade within the bootloader itself.
- boot/zephyr - Port of the bootloader to Zephyr.
- boot/mynewt - Bootloader application for Apache Mynewt.
- boot/nuttx - Bootloader application and port of MCUboot interfaces for Apache NuttX.
- boot/mbed - Port of the bootloader to Mbed OS.
- boot/espressif - Bootloader application and MCUboot port for Espressif SoCs.
- boot/cypress - Bootloader application and MCUboot port for Cypress/Infineon SoCs.
- imgtool - A tool to securely sign firmware images for booting by MCUboot.
- sim - A bootloader simulator for testing and regression.

Joining the project

Developers are welcome!

Use the following links to join or see more about the project:

- Our developer mailing list
- Our Discord channel Get your invite

3.2 Connectivity

3.2.1 lwIP

This is the NXP fork of the lwIP networking stack.

- For details about changes and additions made by NXP, see CHANGELOG.
- For details about the NXP porting layer, see *The NXP lwIP Port*.
- For usage and API of lwIP, use official documentation at http://www.nongnu.org/lwip/.

The NXP lwIP Port

Below is description of possible settings of the port layer and an overview of a few helper functions.

The best place for redefinition of any mentioned macro is lwipopts.h.

The declaration of every mentioned function is in ethernetif.h. Please check the doxygen comments of those functions before.

Link state Physical link state (up/down) and its speed and duplex must be read out from PHY over MDIO bus. Especially link information is useful for lwIP stack so it can for example send DHCP discovery immediately when a link becomes up.

To simplify this port layer offers a function ethernetif_probe_link() which reads those data from PHY and forwards them into lwIP stack.

In almost all examples this function is called every ETH_LINK_POLLING_INTERVAL_MS (1500ms) by a function probe_link_cyclic().

By setting ETH_LINK_POLLING_INTERVAL_MS to 0 polling will be disabled. On FreeRTOS, probe_link_cyclic() will be then called on an interrupt generated by PHY. GPIO port and pin for the interrupt line must be set in the ethernetifConfig struct passed to ethernetif_init(). On bare metal interrupts are not supported right now.

Rx task To improve the reaction time of the app, reception of packets is done in a dedicated task. The rx task stack size can be set by ETH_RX_TASK_STACK_SIZE macro, its priority by ETH_RX_TASK_PRIO.

If you want to save memory you can set reception to be done in an interrupt by setting ETH_DO_RX_IN_SEPARATE_TASK macro to 0.

Disabling Rx interrupt when out of buffers If ETH_DISABLE_RX_INT_WHEN_OUT_OF_BUFFERS is set to 1, then when the port gets out of Rx buffers, Rx enet interrupt will be disabled for a particular controller. Everytime Rx buffer is freed, Rx interrupt will be enabled.

This prevents your app from never getting out of Rx interrupt when the network is flooded with traffic.

ETH_DISABLE_RX_INT_WHEN_OUT_OF_BUFFERS is by default turned on, on FreeRTOS and off on bare metal.

Limit the number of packets read out from the driver at once on bare metal. You may define macro ETH_MAX_RX_PKTS_AT_ONCE to limit the number of received packets read out from the driver at once.

In case of heavy Rx traffic, lowering this number improves the realtime behaviour of an app. Increasing improves Rx throughput.

Setting it to value < 1 or not defining means “no limit”.

Helper functions If your application needs to wait for the link to become up you can use one of the following functions:

- ethernetif_wait_linkup()- Blocks until the link on the passed netif is not up.
- ethernetif_wait_linkup_array() - Blocks until the link on at least one netif from the passed list of netifs becomes up.

If your app needs to wait for the IPv4 address on a particular netif to become different than “ANY” address (255.255.255.255) function ethernetif_wait_ipv4_valid() does this.

3.3 eIQ

3.3.1 eIQ

eIQ TensorFlow Lite for Micro Library User Guide

- *Overview*
- *TensorFlow Lite for Microcontrollers*
- *Build Status*
  - *Official Builds*
  - *Community Supported TFLM Examples*
  - *Community Supported Kernels and Unit Tests*
- *Contributing*
- *Getting Help*
- *Additional Documentation*
- *RFCs*

Overview TensorFlow Lite is an open source software library for running machine learning models on mobile and embedded devices. For more information, see www.tensorflow.org/lite.

For memory constrained devices, the library contains TensorFlow Lite for Microcontrollers. For more information, see *www.tensorflow.org/lite/microcontrollers*.

The MCUXpresso Software Development Kit (MCUXpresso SDK) provides a comprehensive software package with a pre-integrated TensorFlow Lite for Microcontrollers based on version 25-04-08 (from the 8th of April 2025 with commit). This document describes the steps required to download and start using the library. Additionally, the document describes the steps required to create an application for running pre-trained models.

Note: The document also assumes knowledge of machine learning frameworks for model training.

TensorFlow Lite for Microcontrollers TensorFlow Lite for Microcontrollers is a port of TensorFlow Lite designed to run machine learning models on DSPs, microcontrollers and other devices with limited memory.

Additional Links:

- Tensorflow github repository
- TFLM at tensorflow.org

Build Status

- GitHub Status

Official Builds

Build Type	Status
CI (Linux)	Run-CI passing
Code Sync	Sync from Upstream TF passing

Community Supported TFLM Examples This table captures platforms that TFLM has been ported to. Please see *New Platform Support* for additional documentation.

Platform	Status
Arduino	CI no status Arduino examples tests no status
Coral Dev Board Micro	TFLM + EdgeTPU Examples for Coral Dev Board Micro
Espressif Systems Dev Boards	CI passing
Renesas Boards	TFLM Examples for Renesas Boards
Silicon Labs Dev Kits	TFLM Examples for Silicon Labs Dev Kits
Sparkfun Edge	CI no status
Texas Instruments Dev Boards	

Community Supported Kernels and Unit Tests This is a list of targets that have optimized kernel implementations and/or run the TFLM unit tests using software emulation or instruction set simulators.

Build Type	Status
Cortex-M	Cortex-M passing
Hexagon	Run-Hexagon passing
RISC-V	RISC-V passing
Xtensa	Run-Xtensa passing
Generate Integration Test	Generate Integration Tests passing

Contributing See our *contribution documentation*.

Getting Help A Github issue should be the primary method of getting in touch with the TensorFlow Lite Micro (TFLM) team.

The following resources may also be useful:

1. SIG Micro email group and monthly meetings.
2. SIG Micro gitter chat room.
3. For questions that are not specific to TFLM, please consult the broader TensorFlow project, e.g.:
   - Create a topic on the TensorFlow Discourse forum
   - Send an email to the TensorFlow Lite mailing list
   - Create a TensorFlow issue
   - Create a Model Optimization Toolkit issue

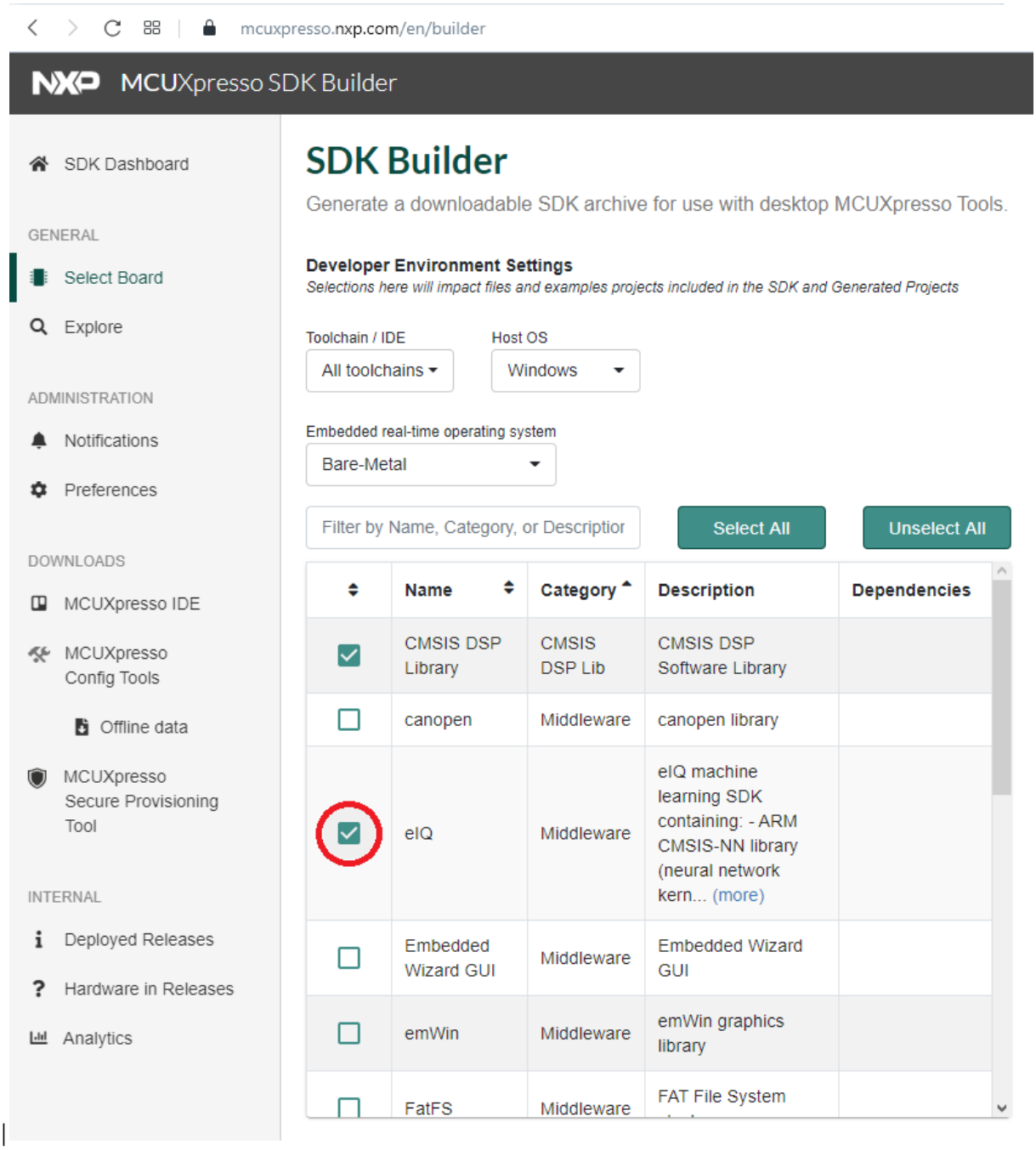
Additional Documentation

- *Continuous Integration*
- *Benchmarks*
- *Profiling*
- *Memory Management*
- *Logging*
- *Porting Reference Kernels from TfLite to TFLM*
- *Optimized Kernel Implementations*
- *New Platform Support*
- Platform/IP support
  - *Arm IP support*
- *Software Emulation with Renode*
- *Software Emulation with QEMU*
- *Python Dev Guide*
- *Automatically Generated Files*
- *Python Interpreter Guide*

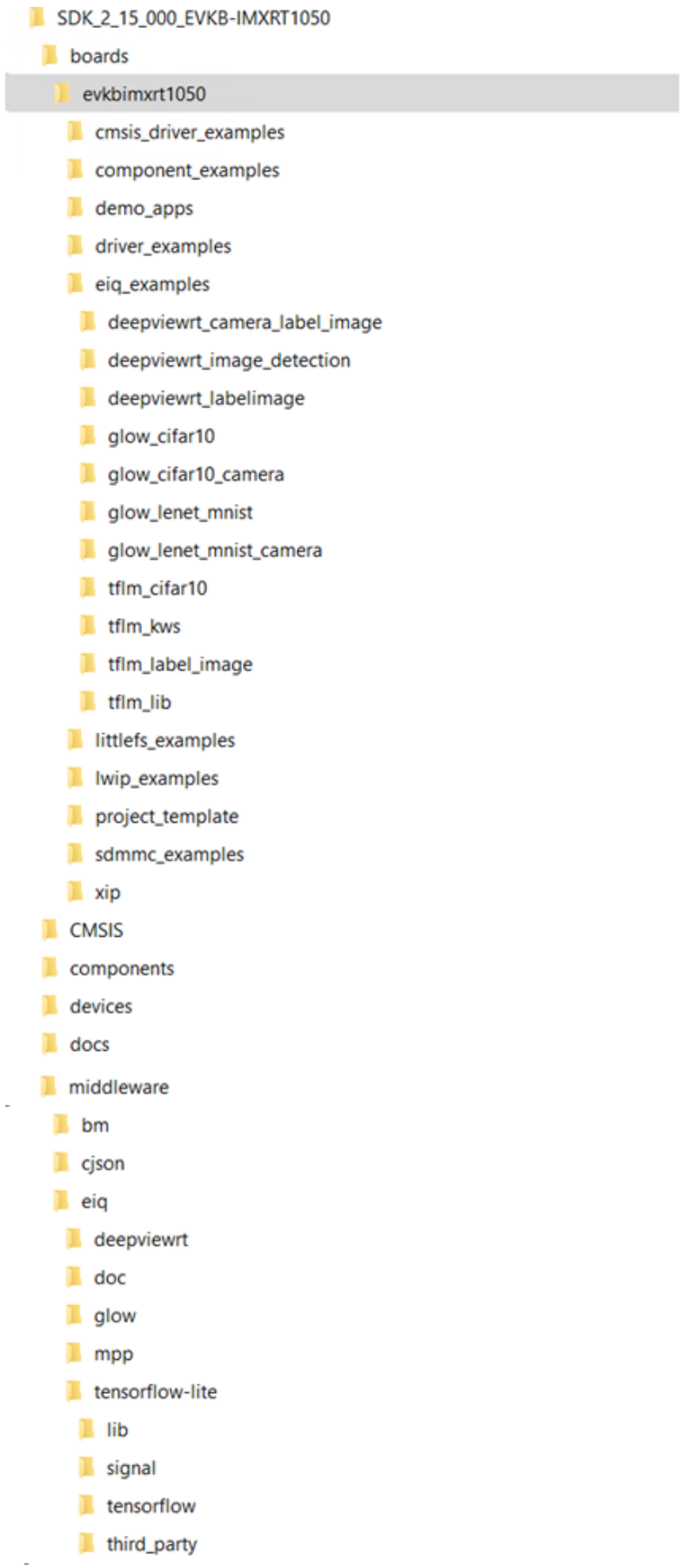
RFCs

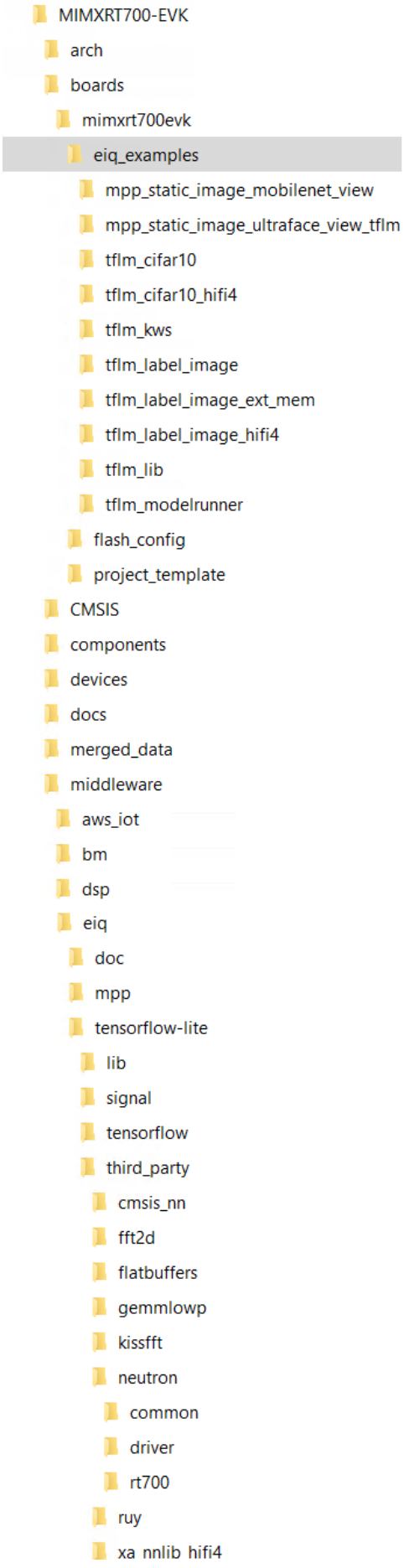
1. *Pre-allocated tensors*
2. *TensorFlow Lite for Microcontrollers Port of 16x8 Quantized Operators*

Deployment The eIQ TensorFlow Lite for Microcontrollers library is part of the eIQ machine learning software package, which is an optional middleware component of MCUXpresso SDK. The eIQ component is integrated into the MCUXpresso SDK Builder delivery system available on mcuxpresso.nxp.com. To include eIQ machine learning into the MCUXpresso SDK package, the eIQ middleware component is selected in the software component selector on the SDK Builder page when building a new package. See *Figure 1*.



Once the MCUXpresso SDK package is downloaded, it can be extracted on a local machine or imported into the MCUXpresso IDE. For more information on the MCUXpresso SDK folder structure, see the Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK User's Guide (document: MCUXSDKGSUG). The package directory structure is similar to *Figure 2*. The eIQ TensorFlow Lite library directories are highlighted in red.


SDK_2_15_000_EVKB-IMXRT1050
boards
evkbimxrt1050
cmsis_driver_examples
component_examples
demo_apps
driver_examples
eiq_examples
deepviewrt_camera_label_image
deepviewrt_image_detection
deepviewrt_labelimage
glow_cifar10
glow_cifar10_camera
glow_lenet_mnist
glow_lenet_mnist_camera
tflm_cifar10
tflm_kws
tflm_label_image
tflm_lib
littlefs_examples
lwip_examples
project_template
sdmmc_examples
xip
CMSIS
components
devices
docs
middleware
bm
cjson
eiq
deepviewrt
doc
glow
mpp
tensorflow-lite
lib
signal
tensorflow
third_party


MIMXRT700-EVK
arch
boards
mimxrt700evk
eiq_examples
mpp_static_image_mobilenet_view
mpp_static_image_ultraface_view_tflm
tflm_cifar10
tflm_cifar10_hifi4
tflm_kws
tflm_label_image
tflm_label_image_ext_mem
tflm_label_image_hifi4
tflm_lib
tflm_modelrunner
flash_config
project_template
CMSIS
components
devices
docs
merged_data
middleware
aws_iot
bm
dsp
eiq
doc
mpp
tensorflow-lite
lib
signal
tensorflow
third_party
cmsis_nn
fft2d
flatbuffers
gemmlowp
kissfft
neutron
common
driver
rt700
ruy
xa_nnlib_hifi4

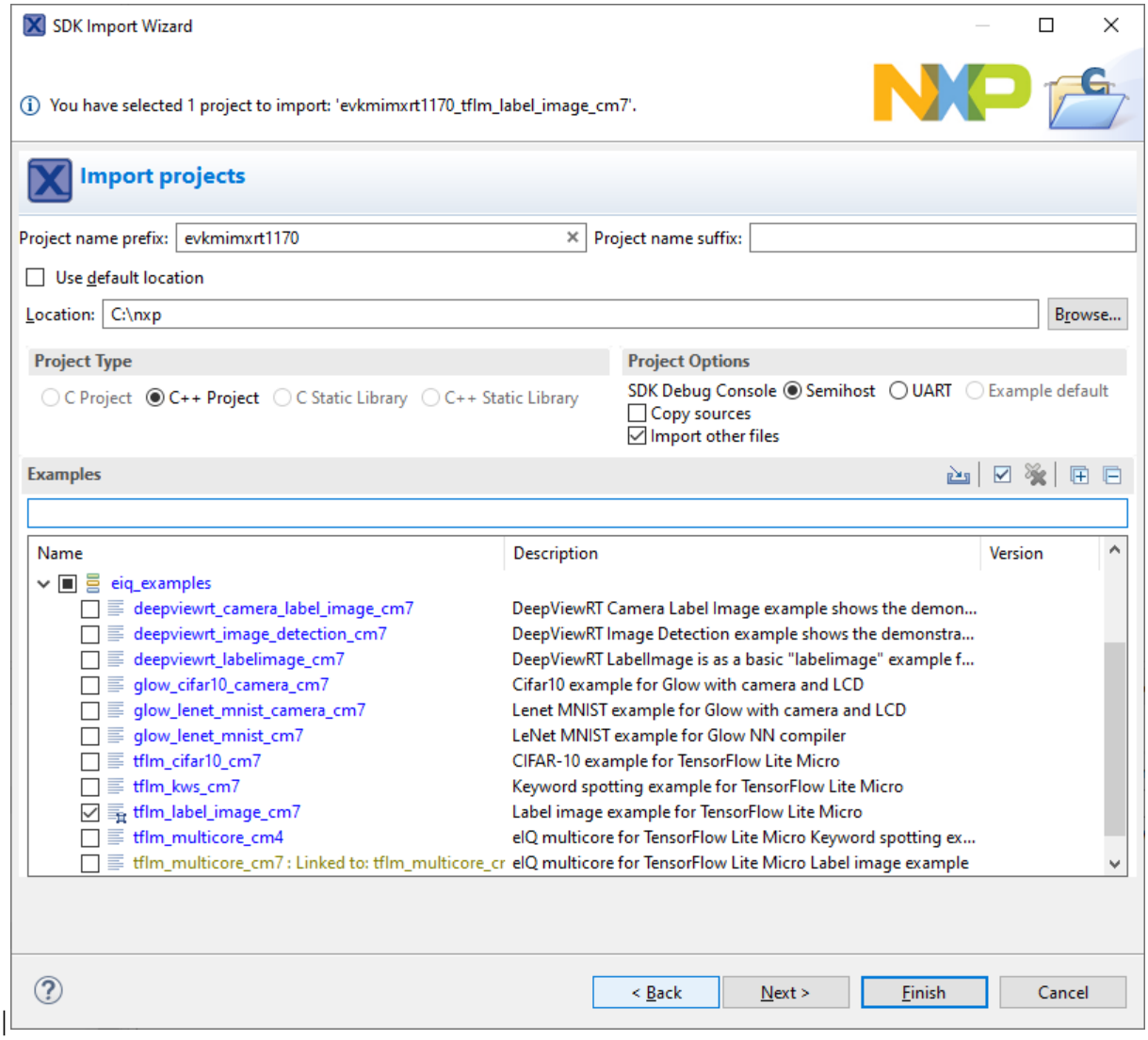
|

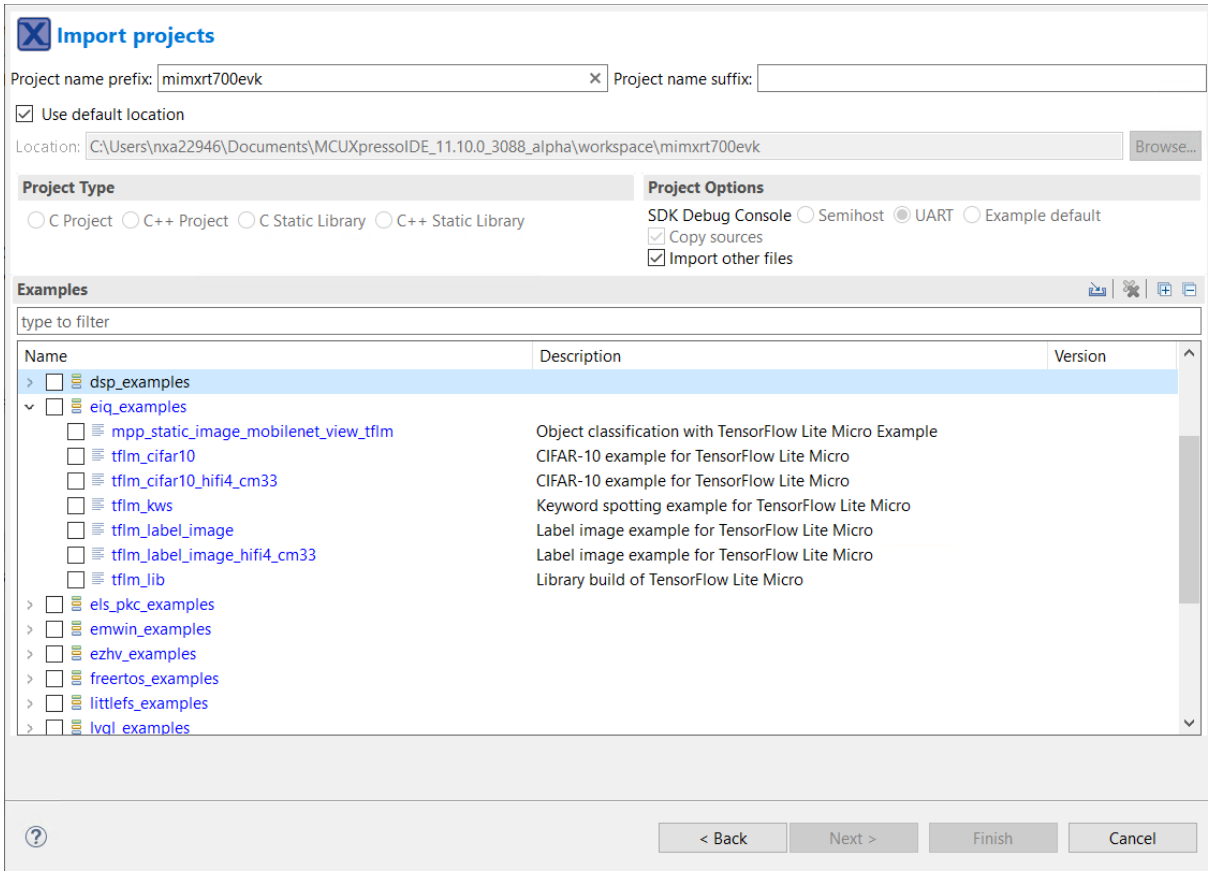
The *boards* directory contains example application projects for supported toolchains. For the list of supported toolchains, see the *MCUXpresso SDK Release Notes*. The *middleware* directory contains the eIQ library source code and example application source code and data.

Example applications The eIQ TensorFlow Lite library is provided with a set of example applications. For details, see *Table 1*. The applications demonstrate the usage of the library in several use cases.

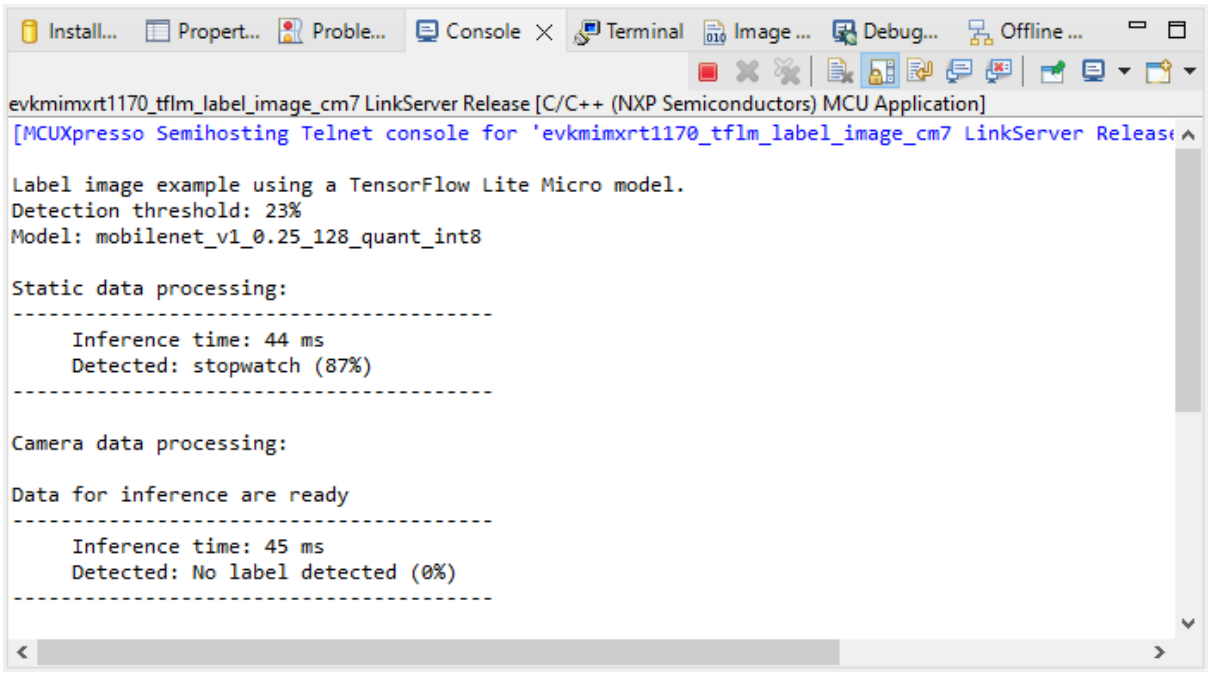
Name	Description	Availability
tflm_c	CIFAR-10 classification of 32 × 32 RGB pixel images into 10 categories using a small Convolutional Neural Network (CNN).	MCX-N947-EVK (no camera and display support) MCX-N947-FRDM (no camera and display support) MCX-N547-EVK (no camera and display support) MIMXRT700-EVK (no camera and display support)
tflm_l	Keyword spotting application using a neural network for word detection in pre-processed audio input.	MCX-N947-EVK (no audio support) MCX-N947-FRDM (no audio support) MCX-N547-EVK (no audio support) MIMXRT700-EVK (no audio support)
tflm_l	Image recognition application using a MobileNet model architecture to classify 128 × 128 RGB pixel images into 1000 categorieswith eIQ Neutron NPU.	MCX-N947-EVK (no camera and display support) MCX-N947-FRDM (no camera and display support) MCX-N547-EVK (no camera and display support) MIMXRT700-EVK (no camera and display support)
tflm_l	Image recognition application using a MobileNet model architecture to classify 224 × 224 RGB pixel images into 1000 categorieswith eIQ Neutron NPU. In this example, it demonstrates how to fetch model's weight from external memory(xSPI flash) to internal SRAM for Neutron NPU execution.	MIMXRT700-EVK (no camera and display support)
tflm_c	CIFAR-10 classification of 32 × 32 RGBpixel images into 10 categories using a small Convolutional Neural Network. In this example, M33 core0 starts HiFi4 DSP core with HiFi4 DSP image. HiFi4 DSP does the inference for CIFAR-10 classification.	MIMXRT700-EVK (no camera and display support)
tflm_l	Image recognition application using a MobileNet model architecture to classify 128 × 128 RGB pixel images into 1000 categories. In this example, M33 core0 starts HiFi4 DSP core with HiFi4 DSP image. HiFi4 DSP does the inference for image recognition application.	MIMXRT700-EVK (no camera and display support)

For details on how to build and run the example applications with supported toolchains, see *Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK User's Guide* (document: MCUXSDKGSUG). When using MCUXpresso IDE, the example applications can be imported through the SDK Import Wizard as shown in *Figure 1*.


SDK Import Wizard
You have selected 1 project to import: 'evkmimxrt1170_tflm_label_image_cm7'.
Import projects
Project name prefix: evkmimxrt1170
Project name suffix:
Use default location
Location: C:\nxp
Browse...
Project Type
C Project
C++ Project
C Static Library
C++ Static Library
Project Options
SDK Debug Console
Semihost
UART
Example default
Copy sources
Import other files
Examples
Name
Description
Version
eiq_examples
deepviewrt_camera_label_image_cm7
DeepViewRT Camera Label Image example shows the demon...
deepviewrt_image_detection_cm7
DeepViewRT Image Detection example shows the demonstra...
deepviewrt_labelimage_cm7
DeepViewRT LabelImage is as a basic "labelimage" example f...
glow_cifar10_camera_cm7
Cifar10 example for Glow with camera and LCD
glow_lenet_mnist_camera_cm7
Lenet MNIST example for Glow with camera and LCD
glow_lenet_mnist_cm7
LeNet MNIST example for Glow NN compiler
tflm_cifar10_cm7
CIFAR-10 example for TensorFlow Lite Micro
tflm_kws_cm7
Keyword spotting example for TensorFlow Lite Micro
tflm_label_image_cm7
Label image example for TensorFlow Lite Micro
tflm_multicore_cm4
eIQ multicore for TensorFlow Lite Micro Keyword spotting ex...
tflm_multicore_cm7 : Linked to: tflm_multicore_cr
eIQ multicore for TensorFlow Lite Micro Label image example
< Back
Next >
Finish
Cancel



After building the example application and downloading it to the target, the execution stops in the *main* function. When the execution resumes, an output message displays on the connected terminal. For example, *Figure 2* shows the output of the tflm_label_image_cm7``tflm_label_image example application printed to the MCUXpresso IDE Console window when semihosting debug console is selected in the SDK Import Wizard.



```
Label image example using a TensorFlow Lite Micro model.
Detection threshold: 23%
Model: mobilenet_v1_0.25_128_quant_int8_npu

Static data processing:
---------------------------------------
     Inference time: 3987 us
     Detected: stopwatch (87%)
---------------------------------------
```

|

Model Conversion to TensorFlow Lite Format The eIQ® Toolkit provides a comprehensive end-to-end environment for machine learning (ML) model development and deployment. Designed for NXP EdgeVerse processors, the toolkit includes both an intuitive GUI-based tool (eIQ Portal) and command-line utilities for advanced workflows.

One key component, the eIQ ModelTool, enables seamless conversion of ML models from popular formats such as TensorFlow, PyTorch, and ONNX into the TensorFlow Lite (TFLite) format. These converted models can be further optimized and deployed on NXP platforms for inference acceleration.

Model Conversion for NXP eIQ Neutron NPU To leverage the NXP eIQ Neutron NPU for hardware acceleration, models must undergo additional processing using the Neutron Converter Tool. This tool transforms standard quantized TensorFlow Lite models into a format optimized for execution on the Neutron NPU.

The key steps involved in this process are as follows:

1. Convert to Quantized TensorFlow Lite Model: Ensure the model is in a quantized TFLite format before running the Neutron Converter.
2. Run the Neutron Converter Tool: The Neutron Converter analyzes the TFLite model, identifies supported operators, and replaces them with specialized NPU-compatible nodes. Unsupported operations are executed using fallback mechanisms, such as:

- CMSIS-NN for optimized CPU execution
- Reference Operators for unsupported cases

3. Execute on Target Platform: The converted model runs efficiently on the Neutron NPU using a custom TFLite Micro-operator implementation.

Example: Converting a Quantized TensorFlow Lite Model for Neutron NPU The following is a sample command-line invocation for the Neutron Converter tool:

```
neutron-converter --input mobilenet_v1_0.25_128_quant.tflite \
                  --output mobilenet_v1_0.25_128_quant_npu.tflite \
                  --target imxrt700 \
                  --dump-header-file-output
```

Note: This will convert the source tflite model to neutron compatable model, meanwhile, it will dump the model as one headfile name as “mobilenet_v1_0.25_128_quant_npu.h”.

Run and debug eIQ HiFi4 and HiFi1 DSP examples using Xplorer IDE This section lists the steps to Prepare CM33 Core for the examples and Prepare DSP core for the examples.

Prepare CM33 Core for the examples

1. The tflm_cifar10_hifi4 and tflm_label_image_hifi4 examples consist of two separate applications that run on the CM33 core0 and DSP core. The CM33 core0 application initializes the DSP core and starts it.

   To debug the application:

   1. Set up and execute the CM33 application using an environment of your choice.
   2. Build and execute the examples located in:

      <SDK_ROOT>/boards/mimxrt700evk/eiq_examples/tflm_cifar10_hifi4/cm33/

      <SDK_ROOT>/ boards/mimxrt700evk/eiq_examples/tflm_label_image_hifi4/cm33/

2. The tflm_cifar10_hifi1 example consists of three separate applications that run on the CM33 core0, CM33 core1, and DSP core. The CM33 core0 application initializes the CM33 core1 core and starts it. The CM33 core1 application initializes the DSP core and starts it.

   To debug the application:

   1. Set up and build the CM33 core1 application using an environment of your choice.
   2. Set up and execute the CM33 core0 application using an environment of your choice.
   3. Build and execute the example located in:

      <SDK_ROOT>/boards/mimxrt700evk/eiq_examples/tflm_cifar10_hifi1/cm33_core1/

      <SDK_ROOT>/boards/mimxrt700evk/eiq_examples/tflm_cifar10_hifi1/cm33_core0/

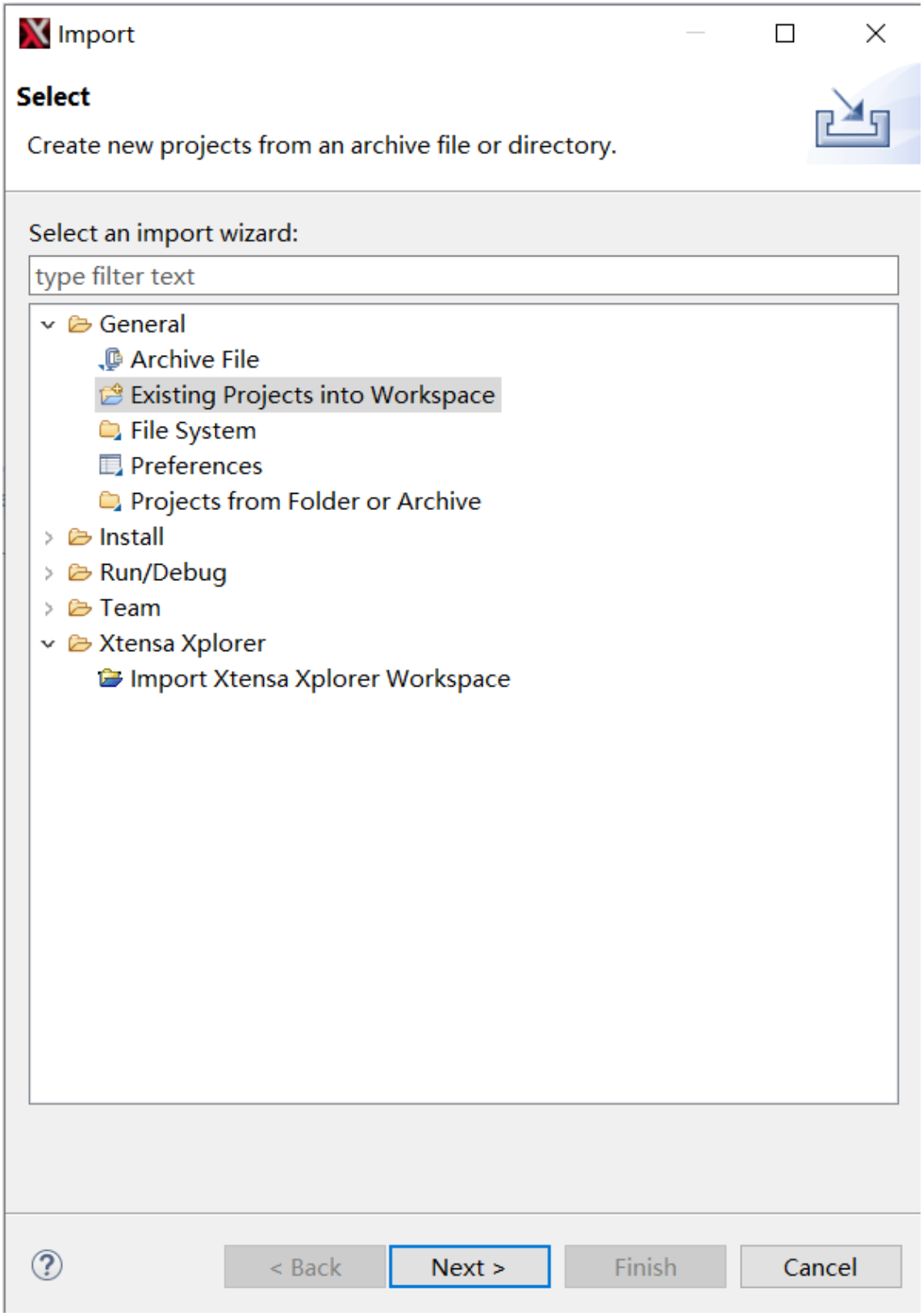
      Note: ARMGCC toolchain and IAR Embedded Workbench are both supported. To enable compatibility with RT700, IAR Embedded Workbench may require a patch. There are default DSP core images in the SDK. For details on how to build the examples, refer to Prepare DSP core for the examples.

Parent topic:*Run and debug eIQ HiFi4 and HiFi1 DSP examples using Xplorer IDE*

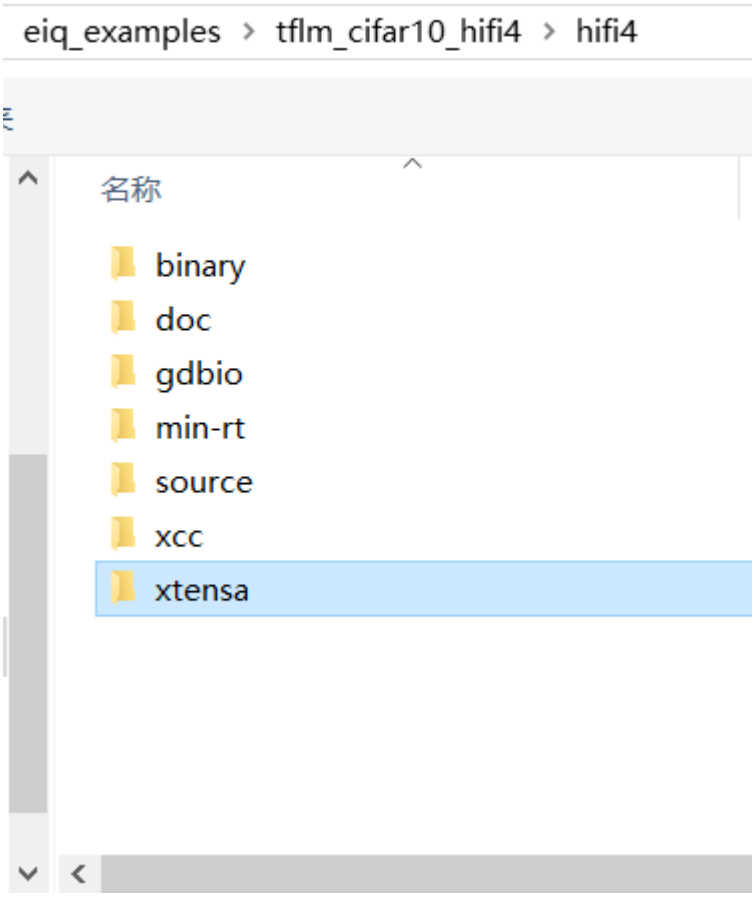
Prepare DSP core for the examples The projects for different supported toolchains are built. The “xcc” project builds on the command line and the “xtensa” directory is an Xplorer IDE project.

To run the tflm_cifar10_hifi4 example, import the SDK sources into the Xplorer IDE.

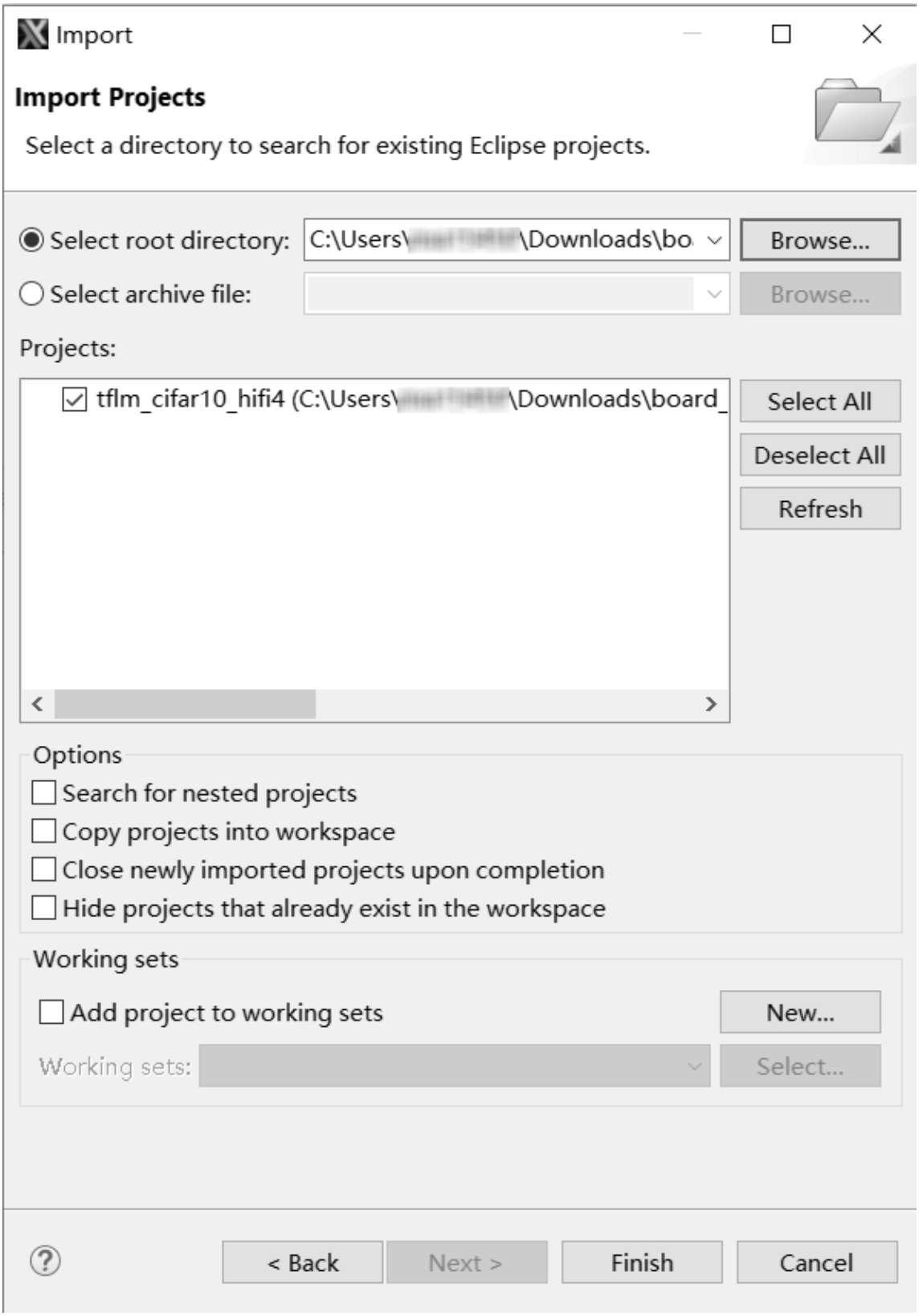
1. Select **File** > **Import** > **General** > **Existing Projects into Workspace**.



2. Click **Next**.
3. Select the SDK directory/boards/mimxrt700evk/eiq_examples/tflm_cifar10_hifi4/hifi4/xtensa as the root directory.

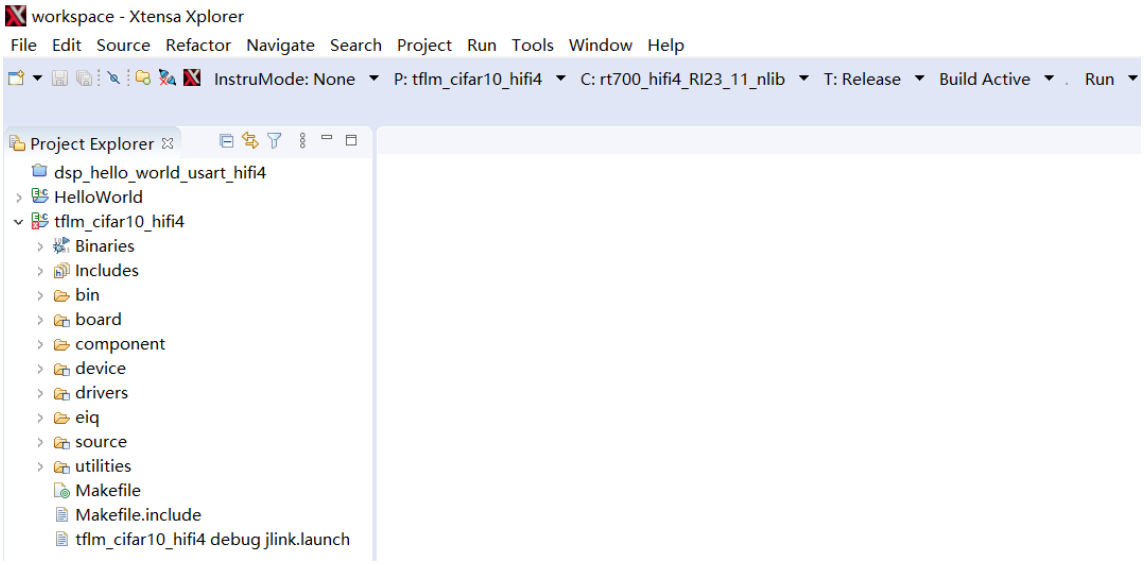


4. Click **Select Folder**.
5. Leave all the other options check boxes blank.

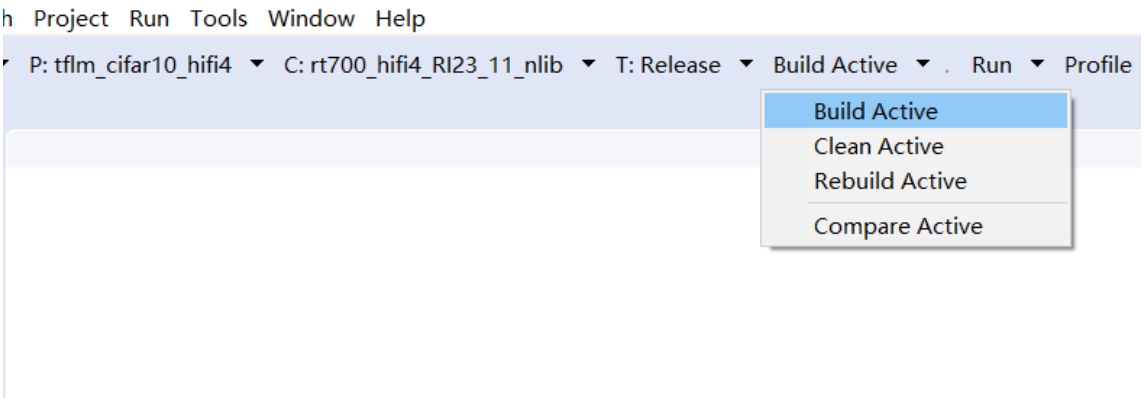


Once imported, the tflm_cifar10_hifi4 example appears in the **Project Explorer**.

6. To make a build selection for the project and hardware target configuration, use the drop-down buttons on the menu bar.



7. To build the DSP application image for the CM33 application, select the **Release target** option in the Xplorer IDE as below.



8. Three DSP binaries are generated and are loaded into different TCM or SRAM address segments:
   - <SDK_ROOT/>/boards/mimxrt700evk/eiq_examples/tflm_cifar10_hifi4/hifi4/binary/dsp_data_release.bin
   - <SDK_ROOT/>/boards/mimxrt700evk/eiq_examples/tflm_cifar10_hifi4/hifi4/binary/dsp_literal_release.bin
   - <SDK_ROOT/>/boards/mimxrt700evk/eiq_examples/tflm_cifar10_hifi4/hifi4/binary/dsp_text_release.bin

Parent topic:*Run and debug eIQ HiFi4 and HiFi1 DSP examples using Xplorer IDE*

Running an inference After converting the model to the TensorFlow Lite format, it is converted into a C language array to include it in the application source code. The *xxd* utility can be used for this purpose (distributed with the *Vim* editor for many platforms on https://www.vim.org/) as shown in *Converting a model to a C language header file*. The utility converts a TensorFlow Lite model into a C header file with an array definition containing the binary image of the model and a variable containing the data size.

Converting a model to a C language header file {#EXAMPLE_4 .section}

```
xxd -i mobilenet_v1_0.25_128_quant.tflite > mobilenet_v1_0.25_128_quant_model.h
```

After the header file is generated, the type of the array is changed from unsigned char to const char to match the library API input parameters and the default array name can be changed to a more convenient one. The user must align the buffer to at least 64-bit boundary (the size of a double-precision floating-point number) to avoid misaligned memory access. The alignment can be achieved by using the __ALIGNED(16) macro from the cmsis_compiler.h header file (available in the MCUXpresso SDK) in the array declaration before the data assignment.

The easiest way to create an application with the proper configuration is to copy and modify an existing example application. To learn where to find the example applications and how to build them, see the *Example applications*.

Running an inference using TensorFlow Lite for Microcontrollers involves several steps (shown for quantized model with signed 8-bit values as input and 32-floating point values as output):

1. Include the necessary eIQ TensorFlow Lite Micro library header files and the converted model.

   Including header files

   ```
   #include "tensorflow/lite/micro/micro_error_reporter.h"
   #include "tensorflow/lite/micro/micro_interpreter.h"
   #include "tensorflow/lite/micro/all_ops_resolver.h"
   #include "mobilenet_v1_0.25_128_quant_model.h"
   ```

2. Allocate a static memory buffer for input and output tensors and intermediate arrays. Load the FlatBuffer model image (assuming the mobilenet_v1_0.25_128_quant_model.h file generated in *Converting a model to a C language header file* defines an array named mobilenet_model and a size variable named mobilenet_model_len), build the interpreter object and allocate memory for tensors.

   Loading the FlatBuffer model

   ```
   constexpr int kTensorArenaSize = 1024 * 1024;
   static uint8_t tensorArena[kTensorArenaSize];
   const tflite::Model* model = tflite::GetModel(mobilenet_model);
   // TODO: Report an error if model->version() != TFLITE_SCHEMA_VERSION
   static tflite::AllOpsResolver microOpResolver;
   static tflite::MicroErrorReporter microErrorReporter;
   static tflite::MicroInterpreter interpreter(model,
     microOpResolver, tensorArena, kTensorArenaSize,
     microErrorReporter);
   interpreter->AllocateTensors();
   // TODO: Check return value for kTfLiteOk
   ```

3. Fillhe input data into the input tensor. For example, if a speech recognition model, image data from a camera or audio data from a microphone. The dimensions of the input data must be the same as the dimensions of the input tensor. These dimensions were specified when the model was created.

   Fill-in input data

   ```
   // Get access to the input tensor data
   TfLiteTensor* inputTensor = interpreter->input(0);
   // Copy the input tensor data from an application buffer
   for (int i = 0; i < inputTensor->bytes; i++)
     inputTensor->data.int8[i] = input_data[i];
   ```

4. Run the inference and read the output data from the output tensor. The dimensions of the output data must be the same as the dimensions of the output tensor. These dimensions were specified when the model was created.

   Running inference and reading output data

```
// Run the inference
interpreter->Invoke();
// TODO: Check the return value for TfLiteOk
// Get access to the output tensor data
TfLiteTensor* outputTensor = interpreter->output(0);
// Copy the output tensor data to an application buffer
for (int i = 0; i < outputTensor->bytes / sizeof(float32); i++)
  output_data[i] = outputTensor->data.f[i];
```

NPU inference {#npu_infer .section} Running an inference using a model converted for the NPU requires registration of a custom operator implementation. First the header file with the custom operator implementation interface must be included.

```
#include "tensorflow/lite/micro/kernels/micro_ops.h"
#include "tensorflow/lite/micro/all_ops_resolver.h"
#include "tensorflow/lite/micro/kernels/neutron/neutron.h"
```

Next, the specialized implemetation has to be registered in the operator resolver object.

```
static tflite::AllOpsResolver microOpResolver;
microOpResolver.AddCustom(tflite::GetString_NEUTRON_GRAPH(),
      tflite::Register_NEUTRON_GRAPH());
```

The specialized NPU nodes from the converted model are the executed using this newly registered implementation.

Adjusting the tensor arena size {#adjust_arena .section} The tensor arena is a static memory buffer used for intermediate tensor and scratch buffer allocation. The size of the tensor arena buffer is set by the kTensorArenaSize constant in the example above. The value depends on the tensor sizes used in the model and on the hardware-specific implementations of kernels, which may require various sizes of scratch buffers for intermediate computations. The value can be determined experimentally by running an inference with a small value, so the library fails with an insufficient tensor memory error and prints the missing amount. Continue adjusting the size until the error stops being reported. If the target hardware changes, readjust the value.

Code size optimization Typically, models do not use all the operators that are available in TensorFlow Lite. However, because of the default operator registration mechanism used in the library, the toolchain linker is not able to remove the code of unused operators. In order to reduce code size, it is possible to only register the specific operators used by a model. To determine which operators are used by a particular model, a model visualizer tool like Netron can be used. Then a mutable operator resolver object can be created that only registers the operators that are used by the model being inferenced.

Use the tflite::MicroMutableOpResolver object template, which is later passed to the tflite::MicroInterpreter object. Depending on the list of used operators, the result should be similar to the following code snippet. Make sure to update the MicroMutableOpResolver template parameter to reflect the number of operators that need to be registered.

Register only used operators in TensorFlow Lite Micro {#SECTION_SS1_DJQ_QPB .section}

```
#include "tensorflow/lite/micro/kernels/micro_ops.h"
      #include "tensorflow/lite/micro/micro_mutable_op_resolver.h"
      tflite::MicroMutableOpResolver<6> microOpResolver;
      microOpResolver.AddAveragePool2D();
      microOpResolver.AddConv2D();
      microOpResolver.AddDepthwiseConv2D();
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    microOpResolver.AddDequantize();
    microOpResolver.AddReshape();
    microOpResolver.AddSoftmax();
    static tflite::MicroInterpreter interpreter(
    model, microOpResolver, tensorArena, kTensorArenaSize, microErrorReporter);
```

Note about the source code in the document Example code shown in this document has the following copyright and BSD-3-Clause license:

Copyright 2024 NXP Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of the copyright holder nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS “AS IS” AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

eIQ ExecuTorch Library User Guide

Overview ExecuTorch is an end-to-end solution for enabling on-device inference capabilities across mobile and edge devices including wearables, embedded devices and microcontrollers. It is part of the PyTorch Edge ecosystem and enables efficient deployment of PyTorch models to edge devices. For more information, see https://pytorch.org/executorch-overview.

The MCUXpresso Software Development Kit (MCUXpresso SDK) provides a comprehensive software package with a pre-integrated ExecuTorch based on version v0.5.0 with initial support for Neutron Backend. Neutron Backend enables acceleration of ML models on the eIQ® Neutron Neural Processing Unit (NPU).

This document describes the steps required to download and start using the ExecuTorch. Additionally, the document describes the steps required to create an application for running pretrained models.

Note: The document also assumes knowledge of machine learning frameworks for model training.

Supported platforms:

- i.MX RT700

Installation The ExecuTorch, with the Neutron Backend consists of:

- ExecuTorch with Neutron Backend for Ahead of Time ML Model Compilation
- Neutron Converter
- MCUXpresso SDK

Here we briefly describe each components purpose and steps to install them.

The **ExecuTorch AoT** and **Neutron Converter** are needed to convert a PyTorch model to ExecuTorch and Delegate it to eIQ Neutron NPU using the Neutron Backend. The **MCUXpresso SDK** provides project to build the ExecuTorch Runtime Library, the example application with simple CNN, toolchains and other middleware libraries to build and deploy the application on the target platform.

If you want run to prepared example application on the i.MX RT700 platform, and skip the model preparation phase continue with the *MCUXpresso SDK Part*.

ExecuTorch for Ahead of Time model preparation The ExecuTorch enables to deploy PyTorch models on edge devices. For this purpose the PyTorch model must be processed and converter by the ExecuTorch Ahead of Time (AoT) part. You can obtain the full ExecuTorch including the AoT part aligned with this version of MCUX SDK from the mcuxsdk-middleware-executorch release/mcux-full branch.

Installation Prerequisities:

- x86 Linux Machine with GLIBC-2.29 or higher (e.g. Ubuntu 20.04 or higher)
- Python 3.10, 3.11 or 3.12

To build and install the ExecuTorch follow these steps:

1. (Optional) Setup python virtual environment on desired location and activate it.

```
$ python3 -m venv venv
$ source venv/bin/activate
```

2. Clone the ExecuTorch from mcuxsdk-middleware-executorch

```
$ git clone --branch release/mcux-full https://github.com/nxp-mcuxpresso/mcuxsdk-middleware-executorch.git
$ cd mcuxsdk-middleware-executorch
$ git submodule update --init --recursive
```

3. Build and install the ExecuTorch and its dependencies:

```
$ ./install_requirements.sh
```

[!WARNING] The install_requirements.sh installs the CPU version of torch from https://download.pytorch.org/whl/cpu. If you are behind corporate proxy, it might have issues accessing it and you will see warnings like:

```
WARNING: Retrying (Retry(total=4, connect=None, read=None, redirect=None,␣
↪status=None)) after connection broken by 'SSLError(SSLCertVerificationError(1, '[SSL:␣
↪CERTIFICATE_VERIFY_FAILED] certificate verify failed: unable to get local issuer␣
↪certificate (_ssl.c:1006)'))': /whl/test/cpu/torch/
```

In this case the CUDA version of torch is installed and the install_requirements.sh script fails with:

```
PyTorch: CUDA cannot be found.  Depending on whether you are building
```

Make sure the pip can access the https://download.pytorch.org/whl/cpu PyPI.

Next continue with installation of the *Neutron Converter*

Neutron Converter The eIQ Neutron Backend uses the Neutron Converter to convert the ExecuTorch program to the eIQ Neutron NPU microcode.

Installation The Neutron Converter is available as a Python package and can be installed by the pip command from eiq.nxp.com/repository:

```
pip install --index-url https://eiq.nxp.com/repository neutron_converter_SDK_25_09==1.0.0
```

The Neutron Converter is used internally by the ExecuTorch, and it is tied to the particular BSP you are using - the suffix of the python package name. In the code snippet above the flavor is the SDK_25_09. In the *aot_neutron_convert.py* example script by the --neutron_converter_flavor parameter.

MCUXpresso SDK The MCUXpresso SDK is used to build, debug and deploy the application using the ExecuTorch on the target platform.

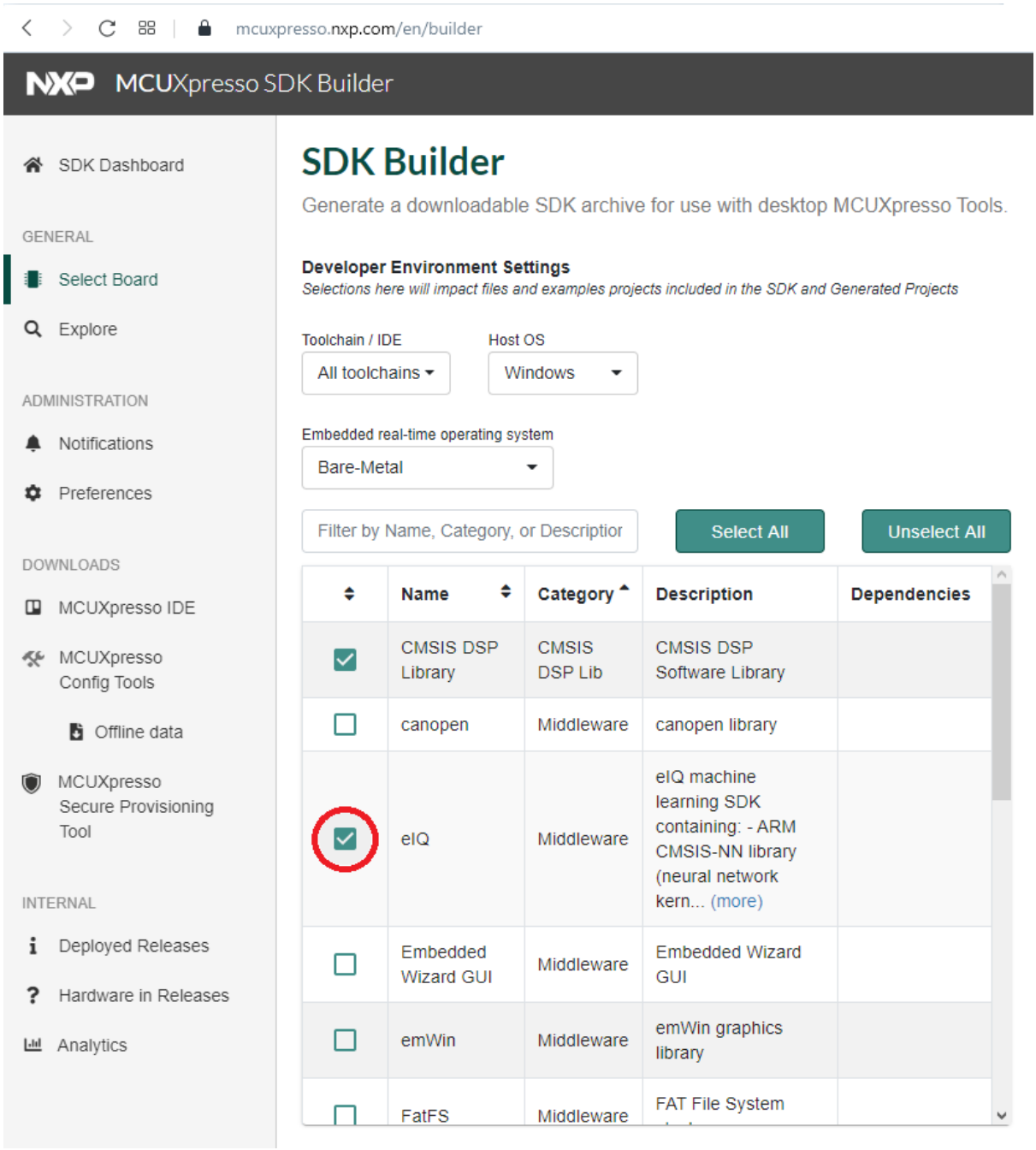
You can obtain the MCUXpresso SDK from MCUXpresso SDK Builder including the IDE. See the *getting_mcuxpress* for details.

In the MCUXpresso SDK, there are 2 projects available related to ExecuTorch:

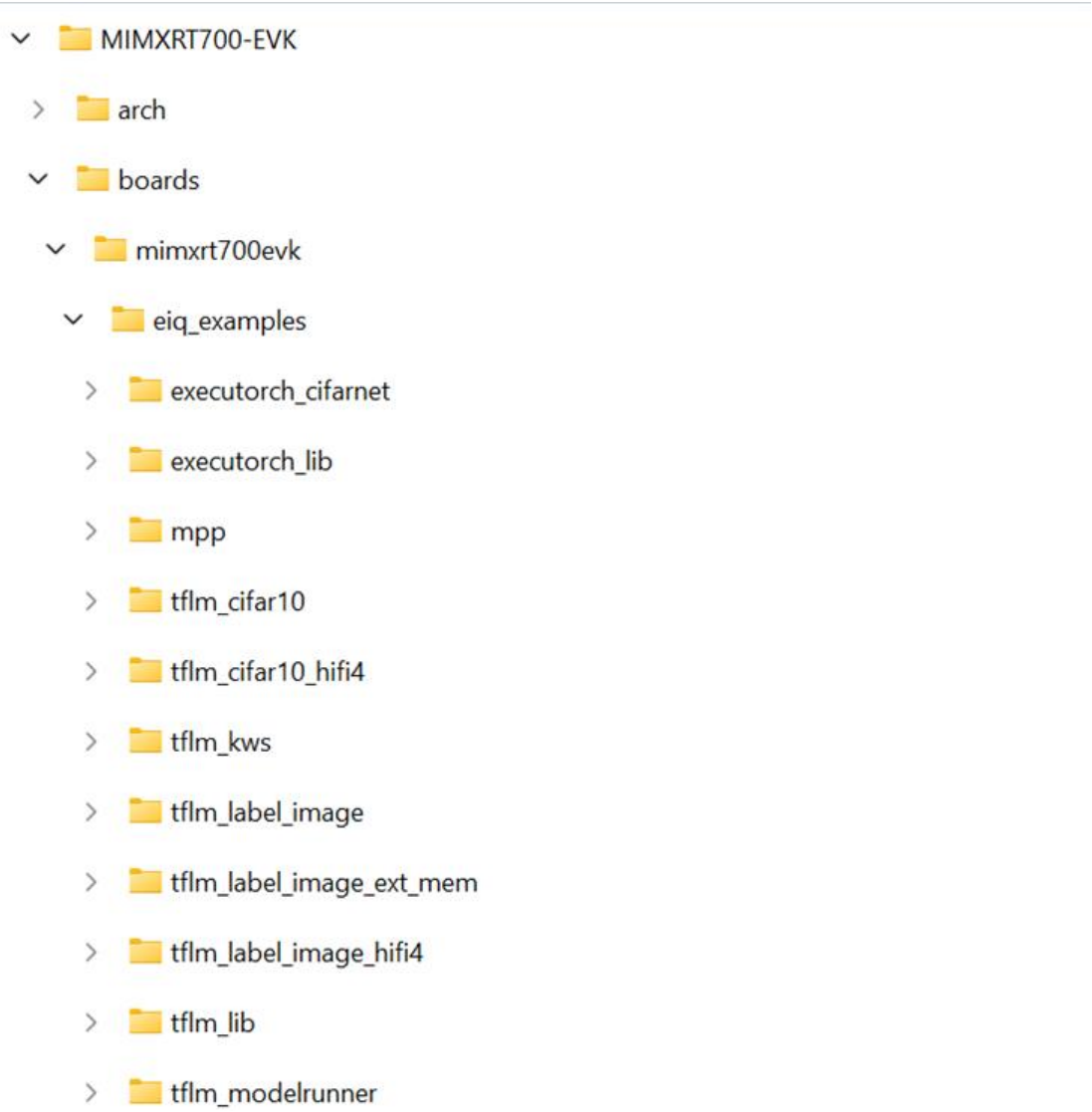
- executorch_lib
- executorch_cifarnet

For more details see *example_applications*. Here you will find the details to run build and run the demo applications.

Getting the MCUXpresso SDK with eIQ ExecuTorch The eIQ ExecuTorch library is part of the eIQ machine learning software package, which is an optional middleware component of MCUXpresso SDK. The eIQ component is integrated into the MCUXpresso SDK Builder delivery system available on mcuxpresso.nxp.com. To include eIQ machine learning into the MCUXpresso SDK package, the eIQ middleware component is selected in the software component selector on the SDK Builder page when building a new package. See *Figure 1*.



Once the MCUXpresso SDK package is downloaded, it can be extracted on a local machine or imported into the MCUXpresso IDE. For more information on the MCUXpresso SDK folder structure, see the Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK User's Guide (document: MCUXSDKGSUG). The package directory structure is similar to *Figure 2*.



The *boards* directory contains example application projects for supported toolchains. For the list of supported toolchains, see the *MCUXpresso SDK Release Notes*. The *middleware* directory contains the eIQ library source code and example application source code and data.

PyTorch Model Conversion to ExecuTorch Format In this guideline we will show how to use the ExecuTorch AoT part to convert a PyTorch model to ExecuTorch format and delegate the model computation to eIQ Neutron NPU using the eIQ Neutron Backend.

First we will start with an example script converting the model. This example show the CifarNet model preparation. It is the same model which is part of the example_cifarnet

The steps are expected to be executed from the executorch root folder, in our case the mcuxsdk-middleware-executorch

1. After building the ExecuTorch you shall have the libquantized_ops_aot_lib.so located in the pip-out folder. We will need this library when generating the quantized cifarnet ExecuTorch model. So as first step we will find it:

```
$ find ./pip-out -name 'libquantized_ops_aot_lib.so'
./pip-out/temp.linux-x86_64-cpython-310/cmake-out/kernels/quantized/libquantized_ops_aot_lib.so
./pip-out/lib.linux-x86_64-cpython-310/executorch/kernels/quantized/libquantized_ops_aot_lib.so
```

2. Now run the aot_neutron_compile.py example with the cifar10 model

```
$ python examples/nxp/aot_neutron_compile.py \
  --quantize --so_library ./pip-out/lib.linux-x86_64-cpython-310/executorch/kernels/quantized/libquantized_
↪ops_aot_lib.so \
  --delegate --neutron_converter_flavor SDK_25_09 -m cifar10
```

3. It will generate you cifar10_nxp_delegate.pte file which can be used with the MXUXpresso SDK cifarnet_example project.

The generated PTE file is used in the executorch_cifarnet example application, see *example_application*.

MCUXpresso SDK Example applications The MCUXpresso SDK provides a set of projects and example application with the eIQ ExecuTorch. For details, see *Table 1*.

The eIQ ExecuTorch library is provided with a set of example applications. For details, see *Table 1*. The applications demonstrate the usage of the library in several use cases.

Name	Description	Availability
executorch_	This project contains the ExecuTorch Runtime Library source code and is used to build the ExecuTorch Runtime Library. The library is further used to build a full application using the leveraging ExecuTorch.	MIMXRT700-EVK (no camera and display support)
executorch_	Example application demonstrating the use of the ExecuTorch running a CifarNet classification model accelerated on the eIQ Neutron NPU. The Cifarnet is a small Convolutional Neural Network (CNN), trained on CIFAR-10 [1] dataset. The model clasifies the input images into 10 caterories.	MIMXRT700-EVK (no camera and display support)

For details on how to build and run the example applications with supported toolchains, see *Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK User's Guide* (document: MCUXSDKGSUG).

How to build and run executorch_cifarnet example The example needs ExecuTorch Runtime Library and Neutron Libraries.

ExecuTorch Runtime Library:

- middleware/eiq/executorch/lib/cm33/armgcc/libexecutorch.a

Neutron Libraries:

- middleware/eiq/executorch/third-party/neutron/rt700/libNeutronDriver.a and
- middleware/eiq/executorch/third-party/neutron/rt700/libNeutronFirmware.a

In the example the model and the input image is already embedded into the program and ready to build and deploy to i.MX RT700, so you can continue right to the *building and deployment* section.

Convert the model and example input to C array In this section we describe where the model and example input is located in the example application sources, and how it was generated.

The **cifar10 model** ExecuTorch model is stored in boards/mimxrt700evk/eiq_examples/executorch_cifarnet/cm33_core0/model_pte.h. and was generated from the cifar10_nxp_delegate.pte (see *convert_model*).

We use the xxd command to get the C array containing the model data and array size:

```
$ xxd -i cifar10_nxp_delegate.pte > model_pte_data.h
```

then use the array data and size in the model_pte.h.

As **input image** we use the image from CIFAR-10 dataset [1]. After preprocessing and normalization it is converted to bytes and located here boards/mimxrt700evk/eiq_examples/executorch_cifarnet/cm33_core0/image_data.h. The preprocessing is performed as follows:

```
import torch
import torchvision
import numpy as np

batch_size = 1

transform = torchvision.transforms.Compose([
  torchvision.transforms.ToTensor(),
  torchvision.transforms.Normalize((0.5, 0.5, 0.5), (0.5, 0.5, 0.5))
])

test_set = torchvision.datasets.CIFAR10(root='./data', train=False, download=True, transform=transform)
test_loader = torch.utils.data.DataLoader(test_set, batch_size=batch_size, shuffle=False, num_workers=0)

index = 0
num_images = 10
for data in test_loader:
  images, labels = data
  for image, label in zip(images,labels):
    arr = image.numpy().astype(np.float32)
    arr.tofile("img" + str(index) + "_" + str(int(label)) + ".bin")
    index = index + 1
    if index >= num_images:
      break
  if index >= num_images:
    break
```

This generates the num_images count of images from Cifar10 dataset, as input tensors for the cifar10 model and store them in corresponding .bin files. Then we use the xxd command to get the C array data and size:

```
$ xxd -i img0_3.bin > image_data_base.h
```

and again copy the array data and size in the image_data.h

Note, the img0 is the image picturing a cat, what is a class number 3.

Build, Deploy and Run

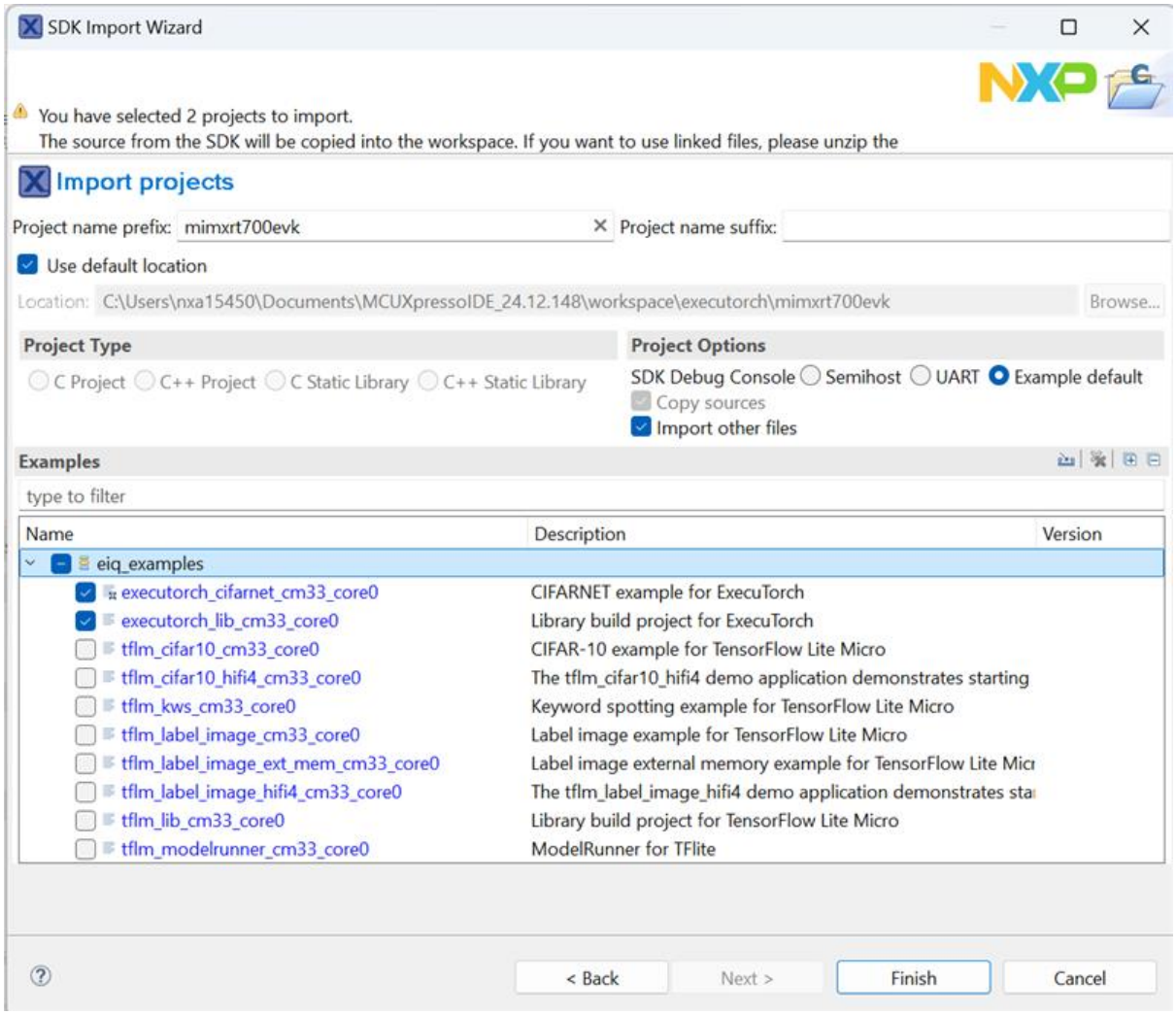
1. When using ARMGCC toolchain, the example application can be built as below. After building the example application, download it to the target with JLink as shown in *Figure 3*, an output message displays on the connected terminal as *Figure 4*.

```
$ boards/mimxrt700evk/eiq_examples/executorch_cifarnet/cm33_core0/armgcc$ ./build_flash_release.sh
```

```
J-Link>loadfile C:\rt700\executorch_cifarnet_cm33_core0.elf
'loadfile': Performing implicit reset & halt of MCU.
ResetTarget() start
-- JLINK ResetTarget --
Set CM33_SYSRESETREQ_EN
CPU0 CSW: 0x03000002
ResetTarget() end - Took 88.9ms
Downloading file [C:\rt700\executorch_cifarnet_cm33_core0.elf]...
J-Link: Flash download: Bank 0 @ 0x28000000: 1 range affected (315392 bytes)
J-Link: Flash download: Total: 20.220s (Prepare: 0.145s, Compare: 2.874s, Erase: 2.558s, Program: 13.212s, Verify: 1.392s, Restore: 0
.036s)
J-Link: Flash download: Program speed: 22 KB/s
O.K.
J-Link>reset
Reset delay: 0 ms
Reset type NORMAL: Resets core & peripherals via SYSRESETREQ & VECTRESET bit.
ResetTarget() start
-- JLINK ResetTarget --
Set CM33_SYSRESETREQ_EN
CPU0 CSW: 0x03000002
ResetTarget() end - Took 71.5ms
J-Link>go
Memory map 'after startup completion point' is active
```

```
Model PTE file loaded. Size: 99376 bytes.
Model buffer loaded, has 1 methods
Running method forward
Setting up planned buffer 0, size 53760.
Method loaded.
Preparing inputs...
Input prepared.
Starting the model execution...
Model executed successfully.
---------------------------------------
     Inference time: 11950 us
---------------------------------------
1 outputs:
Output[0][0]: 0
Output[0][1]: 0
Output[0][2]: 0
Output[0][3]: 0.996094
Output[0][4]: 0
Output[0][5]: 0
Output[0][6]: 0
Output[0][7]: 0
Output[0][8]: 0
Output[0][9]: 0
Program complete, exiting.
```

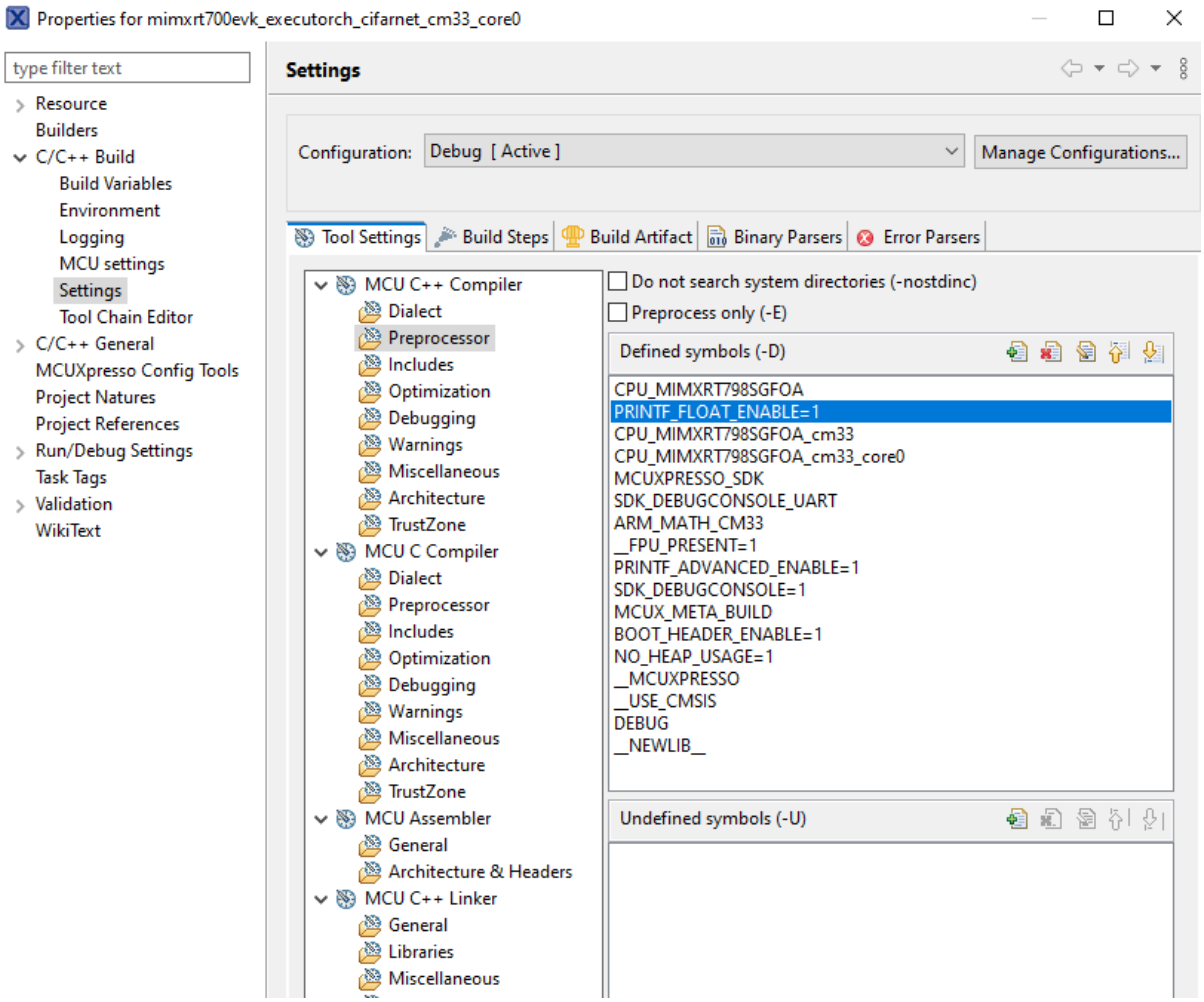
2. When using MCUXpresso IDE, the example applications can be imported through the SDK Import Wizard as shown in *Figure 5*.



After building the example application and downloading it to the target, the execution stops in the *main* function. When the execution resumes, an output message displays on the connected terminal. For example, *Figure 6* shows the output of the executorch_cifarnet example application.

```
Model PTE file loaded. Size: 99376 bytes.
Model buffer loaded, has 1 methods
Running method forward
Setting up planned buffer 0, size 53760.
Method loaded.
Preparing inputs...
Input prepared.
Starting the model execution...
Model executed successfully.
---------------------------------------
     Inference time: 14855 us
---------------------------------------
1 outputs:
Output[0][0]: 0
Output[0][1]: 0
Output[0][2]: 0
Output[0][3]: 0.996094
Output[0][4]: 0
Output[0][5]: 0
Output[0][6]: 0
Output[0][7]: 0
Output[0][8]: 0
Output[0][9]: 0
Program complete, exiting.
```

In case of missing probabilities in the printed output, add PRINTF_FLOAT_ENABLE=1 to the Preprocessor settings for C++ and C compiler:



How to build executorch_lib **example** If you want to build a new ExecuTorch Runtime Library, follow the commands as below and use the new library to replace the default Runtime library middleware/eiq/executorch/lib/cm33/armgcc/libexecutorch.a.

1. When using ARMGCC toolchain, the example application can be built as below.

```
$ boards/mimxrt700evk/eiq_examples/executorch_lib/cm33_core0/armgcc$ ./build_release.sh
$ boards/mimxrt700evk/eiq_examples/executorch_lib/cm33_core0/armgcc$ cp release/libexecutorch_lib_
↪cm33_core0.a.a ../../../../../../middleware/eiq/executorch/lib/cm33/armgcc/libexecutorch.a
```

2. When using MCUXpresso IDE, the example applications can be imported through the SDK Import Wizard as shown in the above *Figure 5*.

After building the example application, copy the new library mimxrt700evk_executorch_lib_cm33_core0\Debug\libmimxrt700evk_executorch_lib_cm33_core0.a to replace the default Runtime library mimxrt700evk_executorch_cifarnet_cm33_core0\eiq\executorch\lib\cm33\armgcc\libexecutorch.a.

[1] Learning Multiple Layers of Features from Tiny Images, Alex Krizhevsky, 2009

3.4 File System

3.4.1 FatFs

MCUXpresso SDK : mcuxsdk-middleware-fatfs

Overview This repository is for FatFs middleware delivery and it contains the components officially provided in NXP MCUXpresso SDK. This repository is part of the MCUXpresso SDK overall delivery which is composed of several sub-repositories/projects. Navigate to the top/parent repository (mcuxsdk-manifests) for the complete delivery of MCUXpresso SDK.

Documentation Overall details can be reviewed here: MCUXpresso SDK Online Documentation

Visit FatFs - Documentation to review details on the contents in this sub-repo.

Setup Instructions on how to install the MCUXpresso SDK provided from GitHub via west manifest Getting Started with SDK - Detailed Installation Instructions

Contribution Contributions are not currently accepted. Guidelines to contribute will be posted in the future.

Repo Specific Content This is MCUXpresso SDK fork of FatFs (FAT file system created by ChaN). Official documentation is available at http://elm-chan.org/fsw/ff/

MCUXpresso version is extending original content by following hardware specific porting layers:

- mmc_disk
- nand_disk
- ram_disk
- sd_disk
- sdspi_disk
- usb_disk

Changelog FatFs

All notable changes to this project will be documented in this file.

The format is based on Keep a Changelog

[R0.15_rev0]

- Upgraded to version 0.15
- Applied patches from http://elm-chan.org/fsw/ff/patches.html

[R0.14b_rev1]

- Applied patches from http://elm-chan.org/fsw/ff/patches.html

[R0.14b_rev0]

- Upgraded to version 0.14b

[R0.14a_rev0]

- Upgraded to version 0.14a
- Applied patch ff14a_p1.diff and ff14a_p2.diff

[R0.14_rev0]

- Upgraded to version 0.14
- Applied patch ff14_p1.diff and ff14_p2.diff

[R0.13c_rev0]

- Upgraded to version 0.13c
- Applied patches ff_13c_p1.diff,ff_13c_p2.diff, ff_13c_p3.diff and ff_13c_p4.diff.

[R0.13b_rev0]

- Upgraded to version 0.13b

[R0.13a_rev0]

- Upgraded to version 0.13a. Added patch ff_13a_p1.diff.

[R0.12c_rev1]

- Add NAND disk support.

[R0.12c_rev0]

- Upgraded to version 0.12c and applied patches ff_12c_p1.diff and ff_12c_p2.diff.

[R0.12b_rev0]

- Upgraded to version 0.12b.

[R0.11a]

- Added glue functions for low-level drivers (SDHC, SDSPI, RAM, MMC). Modified diskio.c.
- Added RTOS wrappers to make FatFs thread safe. Modified syscall.c.
- Renamed ffconf.h to ffconf_template.h. Each application should contain its own ffconf.h.
- Included ffconf.h into diskio.c to enable the selection of physical disk from ffconf.h by macro definition.
- Conditional compilation of physical disk interfaces in diskio.c.

3.5 Motor Control

3.5.1 FreeMASTER

Communication Driver User Guide

Introduction

What is FreeMASTER? FreeMASTER is a PC-based application developed by NXP for NXP customers. It is a versatile tool usable as a real-time monitor, visualization tool, and a graphical control panel of embedded applications based on the NXP processing units.

This document describes the embedded-side software driver which implements an interface between the application and the host PC. The interface covers the following communication:

- **Serial** UART communication either over plain RS232 interface or more typically over a USB-to-Serial either external or built in a debugger probe.
- **USB** direct connection to target microcontroller
- **CAN bus**
- **TCP/IP network** wired or WiFi
- **Segger J-Link RTT**
- **JTAG** debug port communication
- ...and all of the above also using a **Zephyr** generic drivers.

The driver also supports so-called "packet-driven BDM" interface which enables a protocol-based communication over a debugging port. The BDM stands for Background Debugging Module and its physical implementation is different on each platform. Some platforms leverage a semi-standard JTAG interface, other platforms provide a custom implementation called BDM. Regardless of the name, this debugging interface enables non-intrusive access to the memory space while the target CPU is running. For basic memory read and write operations, there is no communication driver required on the target when communicating with the host PC. Use this driver to get more advanced FreeMASTER protocol features over the BDM interface. The driver must be configured for the packet-driven BDM mode, in which the host PC uses the debugging interface to write serial command frames directly to the target memory buffer. The same method is then used to read response frames from that memory buffer.

Similar to "packet-driven BDM", the FreeMASTER also supports a communication over [J-Link RTT]((https://www.segger.com/products/debug-probes/j-link/technology/about-real-time-transfer/) interface defined by SEGGER Microcontroller GmbH for ARM CortexM-based microcontrollers. This method also uses JTAG physical interface and enables high-speed real time communication to run over the same channel as used for application debugging.

Driver version 3 This document describes version 3 of the FreeMASTER Communication Driver. This version features the implementation of the new Serial Protocol, which significantly extends the features and security of its predecessor. The new protocol internal number is v4 and its specification is available in the documentation accompanying the driver code.

Driver V3 is deployed to modern 32-bit MCU platforms first, so the portfolio of supported platforms is smaller than for the previous V2 versions. It is recommended to keep using the V2 driver for legacy platforms, such as S08, S12, ColdFire, or Power Architecture. Reach out to FreeMASTER community or to the local NXP representative with requests for more information or to port the V3 driver to legacy MCU devices.

Thanks to a layered approach, the new driver simplifies the porting of the driver to new UART, CAN or networking communication interfaces significantly. Users are encouraged to port the driver to more NXP MCU platforms and contribute the code back to NXP for integration into future releases. Existing code and low-level driver layers may be used as an example when porting to new targets.

Note: Using the FreeMASTER tool and FreeMASTER Communication Driver is only allowed in systems based on NXP microcontroller or microprocessor unit. Use with non-NXP MCU platforms is **not permitted** by the license terms.

Target platforms The driver implementation uses the following abstraction mechanisms which simplify driver porting and supporting new communication modules:

- **General CPU Platform** (see source code in the src/platforms directory). The code in this layer is only specific to native data type sizes and CPU architectures (for example; alignment-aware memory copy routines). This driver version brings two generic implementations of 32-bit platforms supporting both little-endian and big-endian architectures. There are also implementations customized for the 56F800E family of digital signal controllers and S12Z MCUs. **Zephyr** is treated as a specific CPU platform as it brings unified user configuration (Kconfig) and generic hardware device drivers. With Zephyr, the transport layer and low-level communication layers described below are configured automatically using Kconfig and Device Tree technologies.
- **Transport Communication Layer** - The Serial, CAN, Networking, PD-BDM, and other methods of transport logic are implemented as a driver layer called FMSTR_TRANSPORT with a uniform API. A support of the Network transport also extends single-client modes of operation which are native for Serial, USB and CAN by a concept of multiple client sessions.
- **Low-level Communication Driver** - Each type of transport further defines a low-level API used to access the physical communication module. For example, the Serial transport defines a character-oriented API implemented by different serial communication modules like UART, LPUART, USART, and also USB-CDC. Similarly, the CAN transport defines a message-oriented API implemented by the FlexCAN or MCAN modules. Moreover, there are multiple different implementations for the same kind of communication peripherals. The difference between the implementation is in the way the low-level hardware registers are accessed. The *mcuxsdk* folder contains implementations which use MCUXpresso SDK drivers. These drivers should be used in applications based on the NXP MCUXpresso SDK. The “ampsdk” drivers target automotive-specific MCUs and their respective SDKs. The “dreg” implementations use a plain C-language access to hardware register addresses which makes it a universal and the most portable solution. In this case, users are encouraged to add more drivers for other communication modules or other respective SDKs and contribute the code back to NXP for integration.

  The low-level drivers defined for the Networking transport enable datagram-oriented UDP and stream TCP communication. This implementation is demonstrated using the lwIP software stack but shall be portable to other TCP/IP stacks. It may sound surprisingly, but also the Segger J-Link RTT communication driver is linked to the Networking transport (RTT is stream oriented communication handled similarly to TCP).

Replacing existing drivers For all supported platforms, the driver described in this document replaces the V2 implementation and also older driver implementations that were available separately for individual platforms (PC Master SCI drivers).

Clocks, pins, and peripheral initialization The FreeMASTER communication driver is only responsible for runtime processing of the communication and must be integrated with an user application code to function properly. The user application code is responsible for general initialization of clock sources, pin multiplexers, and peripheral registers related to the communication speed. Such initialization should be done before calling the FMSTR_Init function.

It is recommended to develop the user application using one of the Software Development Kits (SDKs) available from third parties or directly from NXP, such as MCUXpresso SDK, MCUXpresso IDE, and related tools. This approach simplifies the general configuration process significantly.

MCUXpresso SDK The MCUXpresso SDK is a software package provided by NXP which contains the device initialization code, linker files, and software drivers with example applications for the NXP family of MCUs. The MCUXpresso Config Tools may be used to generate the clock-setup and pin-multiplexer setup code suitable for the selected processor.

The MCUXpresso SDK also contains this FreeMASTER communication driver as a "middleware" component which may be downloaded along with the example applications from https://mcuxpresso.nxp.com/en/welcome.

MCUXpresso SDK on GitHub The FreeMASTER communication driver is also released as one of the middleware components of the MCUXpresso SDK on the GitHub. This release enables direct integration of the FreeMASTER source code Git repository into a target applications including Zephyr applications.

Related links:

- The official FreeMASTER middleware repository.
- Online version of this document

FreeMASTER in Zephyr The FreeMASTER middleware repository can be used with MCUXpresso SDK as well as a Zephyr module. Zephyr-specific samples which include examples of Kconfig and Device Tree configurations for Serial, USB and Network communications are available in separate repository. West manifest in this sample repository fetches the full Zephyr package including the FreeMASTER middleware repository used as a Zephyr module.

Example applications

MCUX SDK Example applications There are several example applications available for each supported MCU platform.

- **fmstr_uart** demonstrates a plain serial transmission, typically connecting to a computer's physical or virtual COM port. The typical transmission speed is 115200 bps.
- **fmstr_can** demonstrates CAN bus communication. This requires a suitable CAN interface connected to the computer and interconnected with the target MCU using a properly terminated CAN bus. The typical transmission speed is 500 kbps. A FreeMASTER-over-CAN communication plug-in must be used.
- **fmstr_usb_cdc** uses an on-chip USB controller to implement a CDC communication class. It is connected directly to a computer's USB port and creates a virtual COM port device. The typical transmission speed is above 1 Mbps.
- **fmstr_net** demonstrates the Network communication over UDP or TCP protocol. Existing examples use lwIP stack to implement the communication, but in general, it shall be possible to use any other TCP/IP stack to achieve the same functionality.
- **fmstr_wifi** is the fmstr_net application modified to use a WiFi network interface instead of a wired Ethernet connection.
- **fmstr_rtt** demonstrates the communication over SEGGER J-Link RTT interface. Both fmstr_net and fmstr_rtt examples require the FreeMASTER TCP/UDP communication plug-in to be used on the PC host side.
- **fmstr_eonce** uses the real-time data unit on the JTAG EOnCE module of the 56F800E family to implement pseudo-serial communication over the JTAG port. The typical transmission speed is around 10 kbps. This communication requires FreeMASTER JTAG/EOnCE communication plug-in.
- **fmstr_pdbdm** uses JTAG or BDM debugging interface to access the target RAM directly while the CPU is running. Note that such approach can be used with any MCU application, even without any special driver code. The computer reads from and writes into the RAM directly without CPU intervention. The Packet-Driven BDM (PD-BDM) communication uses the same memory access to exchange command and response frames. With PD-BDM,

the FreeMASTER tool is able to go beyond basic memory read/write operations and accesses also advanced features like Recorder, TSA, or Pipes. The typical transmission speed is around 10 kbps. A PD-BDM communication plug-in must be used in FreeMASTER and configured properly for the selected debugging interface. Note that this communication cannot be used while a debugging interface is used by a debugger session.

- **fmstr_any** is a special example application which demonstrates how the NXP MCUXpresso Config Tools can be used to configure pins, clocks, peripherals, interrupts, and even the FreeMASTER "middleware" driver features in a graphical and user friendly way. The user can switch between the Serial, CAN, and other ways of communication and generate the required initialization code automatically.

Zephyr sample spplications Zephyr sample applications demonstrate Kconfig and Device Tree configuration which configure the FreeMASTER middleware module for a selected communication option (Serial, CAN, Network or RTT).

Refer to *readme.md* files in each sample directory for description of configuration options required to implement FreeMASTER connectivity.

Description

This section shows how to add the FreeMASTER Communication Driver into application and how to configure the connection to the FreeMASTER visualization tool.

Features The FreeMASTER driver implements the FreeMASTER protocol V4 and provides the following features which may be accessed using the FreeMASTER visualization tool:

- Read/write access to any memory location on the target.
- Optional password protection of the read, read/write, and read/write/flash access levels.
- Atomic bit manipulation on the target memory (bit-wise write access).
- Optimal size-aligned access to memory which is also suitable to access the peripheral register space.
- Oscilloscope access—real-time access to target variables. The sample rate may be limited by the communication speed.
- Recorder— access to the fast transient recorder running on the board as a part of the FreeMASTER driver. The sample rate is only limited by the MCU CPU speed. The length of the data recorded depends on the amount of available memory.
- Multiple instances of Oscilloscopes and Recorders without the limitation of maximum number of variables.
- Application commands—high-level message delivery from the PC to the application.
- TSA tables—describing the data types, variables, files, or hyperlinks exported by the target application. The TSA newly supports also non-memory mapped resources like external EEPROM or SD Card files.
- Pipes—enabling the buffered stream-oriented data exchange for a general-purpose terminal-like communication, diagnostic data streaming, or other data exchange.

The FreeMASTER driver features:

- Full FreeMASTER protocol V4 implementation with a new V4 style of CRC used.
- Layered approach supporting Serial, CAN, Network, PD-BDM, and other transports.
- Layered low-level Serial transport driver architecture enabling to select UART, LPUART, USART, and other physical implementations of serial interfaces, including USB-CDC.

- Layered low-level CAN transport driver architecture enabling to select FlexCAN, msCAN, MCAN, and other physical implementations of the CAN interface.
- Layered low-level Networking transport enabling to select TCP, UDP or J-Link RTT communication.
- TSA support to write-protect memory regions or individual variables and to deny the access to the unsafe memory.
- The pipe callback handlers are invoked whenever new data is available for reading from the pipe.
- Two Serial Single-Wire modes of operation are enabled. The “external” mode has the RX and TX shorted on-board. The “true” single-wire mode interconnects internally when the MCU or UART modules support it.

The following sections briefly describe all FreeMASTER features implemented by the driver. See the PC-based FreeMASTER User Manual for more details on how to use the features to monitor, tune, or control an embedded application.

Board Detection The FreeMASTER protocol V4 defines the standard set of configuration values which the host PC tool reads to identify the target and to access other target resources properly. The configuration includes the following parameters:

- Version of the driver and the version of the protocol implemented.
- MTU as the Maximum size of the Transmission Unit (for example; communication buffer size).
- Application name, description, and version strings.
- Application build date and time as a string.
- Target processor byte ordering (little/big endian).
- Protection level that requires password authentication.
- Number of the Recorder and Oscilloscope instances.
- RAM Base Address for optimized memory access commands.

Memory Read This basic feature enables the host PC to read any data memory location by specifying the address and size of the required memory area. The device response frame must be shorter than the MTU to fit into the outgoing communication buffer. To read a device memory of any size, the host uses the information retrieved during the Board Detection and splits the large-block request to multiple partial requests.

The driver uses size-aligned operations to read the target memory (for example; uses proper read-word instruction when an address is aligned to 4 bytes).

Memory Write Similarly to the Memory Read operation, the Memory Write feature enables to write to any RAM memory location on the target device. A single write command frame must be shorter than the MTU to fit into the target communication buffer. Larger requests must be split into smaller ones.

The driver uses size-aligned operations to write to the target memory (for example; uses proper write-word instruction when an address is aligned to 4 bytes).

Masked Memory Write To implement the write access to a single bit or a group of bits of target variables, the Masked Memory Write feature is available in the FreeMASTER protocol and it is supported by the driver using the Read-Modify-Write approach.

Be careful when writing to bit fields of volatile variables that are also modified in an application interrupt. The interrupt may be serviced in the middle of a read-modify-write operation and it may cause data corruption.

Oscilloscope The protocol and driver enables any number of variables to be read at once with a single request from the host. This feature is called Oscilloscope and the FreeMASTER tool uses it to display a real-time graph of variable values.

The driver can be configured to support any number of Oscilloscope instances and enable simultaneously running graphs to be displayed on the host computer screen.

Recorder The protocol enables the host to select target variables whose values are then periodically recorded into a dedicated on-board memory buffer. After such data sampling stops (either on a host request or by evaluating a threshold-crossing condition), the data buffer is downloaded to the host and displayed as a graph. The data sampling rate is not limited by the speed of the communication line, so it enables displaying the variable transitions in a very high resolution.

The driver can be configured to support multiple Recorder instances and enable multiple recorder graphs to be displayed on the host screen. Having multiple recorders also enables setting the recording point differently for each instance. For example; one instance may be recording data in a general timer interrupt while another instance may record at a specific control algorithm time in the PWM interrupt.

TSA With the TSA feature, data types and variables can be described directly in the application source code. Such information is later provided to the FreeMASTER tool which may use it instead of reading symbol data from the application ELF executable file.

The information is encoded as so-called TSA tables which become direct part of the application code. The TSA tables contain descriptors of variables that shall be visible to the host tool. The descriptors can describe the memory areas by specifying the address and size of the memory block or more conveniently using the C variable names directly. Different set of TSA descriptors can be used to encode information about the structure types, unions, enumerations, or arrays.

The driver also supports special types of TSA table entries to describe user resources like external EEPROM and SD Card files, memory-mapped files, virtual directories, web URL hyperlinks, and constant enumerations.

TSA Safety When the TSA is enabled in the application, the TSA Safety can be enabled and validate the memory accesses directly by the embedded-side driver. When the TSA Safety is turned on, any memory request received from the host is validated and accepted only if it belongs to a TSA-described object. The TSA entries can be declared as Read-Write or Read-Only so that the driver can actively deny the write access to the Read-Only objects.

Application commands The Application Commands are high-level messages that can be delivered from the PC Host to the embedded application for further processing. The embedded application can either poll the status, or be called back when a new Application Command arrives to be processed. After the embedded application acknowledges that the command is handled, the host receives the Result Code and reads the other return data from memory. Both the Application Commands and the Result Codes are specific to a given application and it is user's responsibility to define them. The FreeMASTER protocol and the FreeMASTER driver only implement the delivery channel and a set of API calls to enable the Application Command processing in general.

Pipes The Pipes enable buffered and stream-oriented data exchange between the PC Host and the target application. Any pipe can be written to and read from at both ends (either on the PC or the MCU). The data transmission is acknowledged using the special FreeMASTER protocol commands. It is guaranteed that the data bytes are delivered from the writer to the reader in a proper order and without losses.

Serial single-wire operation The MCU Serial Communication Driver natively supports normal dual-wire operation. Because the protocol is half-duplex only, the driver can also operate in two single-wire modes:

- "External" single-wire operation where the Receiver and Transmitter pins are shorted on the board. This mode is supported by default in the MCU driver because the Receiver and Transmitter units are enabled or disabled whenever needed. It is also easy to extend this operation for the RS485 communication.
- "True" single-wire mode which uses only a single pin and the direction switching is made by the UART module. This mode of operation must be enabled by defining the FMSTR_SERIAL_SINGLEWIRE configuration option.

Multi-session support With networking interface it is possible for multiple clients to access the target MCU simultaneously. Reading and writing of target memory is processed atomically so there is no risk of data corruption. The state-full resources such as Recorders or Oscilloscopes are locked to a client session upon first use and access is denied to other clients until lock is released..

Zephyr-specific

Dedicated communication task FreeMASTER communication may run isolated in a dedicated task. The task automates the FMSTR_Init and FMSTR_Poll calls together with periodic activities enabling the FreeMASTER UI to fetch information about tasks and CPU utilization. The task can be started automatically or manually, and it must be assigned a priority to be able to react on interrupts and other communication events. Refer to Zephyr FreeMASTER sample applications which all use this communication task.

Zephyr shell and logging over FreeMASTER pipe FreeMASTER implements a shell backend which may use FreeMASTER pipe as a I/O terminal and logging output. Refer to Zephyr FreeMASTER sample applications which all use this feature.

Automatic TSA tables TSA tables can be declared as "automatic" in Zephyr which make them automatically registered in the table list. This may be very useful when there are many TSA tables or when the tables are defined in different (often unrelated) libraries linked together. In this case user does not need to build a list of all tables manually.

Driver files The driver source files can be found in a top-level src folder, further divided into the sub-folders:

- ***src/platforms*** platform-specific folder—one folder exists for each supported processor platform (for example; 32-bit Little Endian platform). Each such folder contains a platform header file with data types and a code which implements the potentially platform-specific operations, such as aligned memory access.
- ***src/common*** folder—contains the common driver source files shared by the driver for all supported platforms. All the *.c* files must be added to the project, compiled, and linked together with the application.

- *freemaster.h* - master driver header file, which declares the common data types, macros, and prototypes of the FreeMASTER driver API functions.
- *freemaster_cfg.h.example* - this file can serve as an example of the FreeMASTER driver configuration file. Save this file into a project source code folder and rename it to *freemaster_cfg.h*. The FreeMASTER driver code includes this file to get the project-specific configuration options and to optimize the compilation of the driver.
- *freemaster_defcfg.h* - defines the default values for each FreeMASTER configuration option if the option is not set in the *freemaster_cfg.h* file.
- *freemaster_protocol.h* - defines the FreeMASTER protocol constants used internally by the driver.
- *freemaster_protocol.c* - implements the FreeMASTER protocol decoder and handles the basic Get Configuration Value, Memory Read, and Memory Write commands.
- *freemaster_rec.c* - handles the Recorder-specific commands and implements the Recorder sampling and triggering routines. When the Recorder is disabled by the FreeMASTER driver configuration file, this file only compiles to empty API functions.
- *freemaster_scope.c* - handles the Oscilloscope-specific commands. If the Oscilloscope is disabled by the FreeMASTER driver configuration file, this file compiles as void.
- *freemaster_pipes.c* - implements the Pipes functionality when the Pipes feature is enabled.
- *freemaster_appcmd.c* - handles the communication commands used to deliver and execute the Application Commands within the context of the embedded application. When the Application Commands are disabled by the FreeMASTER driver configuration file, this file only compiles to empty API functions.
- *freemaster_tsa.c* - handles the commands specific to the TSA feature. This feature enables the FreeMASTER host tool to obtain the TSA memory descriptors declared in the embedded application. If the TSA is disabled by the FreeMASTER driver configuration file, this file compiles as void.
- *freemaster_tsa.h* - contains the declaration of the macros used to define the TSA memory descriptors. This file is indirectly included into the user application code (via *freemaster.h*).
- *freemaster_sha.c* - implements the SHA-1 hash code used in the password authentication algorithm.
- *freemaster_private.h* - contains the declarations of functions and data types used internally in the driver. It also contains the C pre-processor statements to perform the compile-time verification of the user configuration provided in the *freemaster_cfg.h* file.
- *freemaster_serial.c* - implements the serial protocol logic including the CRC, FIFO queuing, and other communication-related operations. This code calls the functions of the low-level communication driver indirectly via a character-oriented API exported by the specific low-level driver.
- *freemaster_serial.h* - defines the low-level character-oriented Serial API.
- *freemaster_can.c* - implements the CAN protocol logic including the CAN message preparation, signalling using the first data byte in the CAN frame, and other communication-related operations. This code calls the functions of the low-level communication driver indirectly via a message-oriented API exported by the specific low-level driver.
- *freemaster_can.h* - defines the low-level message-oriented CAN API.
- *freemaster_net.c* - implements the Network protocol transport logic including multiple session management code.

  - *freemaster_net.h* - definitions related to the Network transport.
  - *freemaster_pdbdm.c* - implements the packet-driven BDM communication buffer and other communication-related operations.
  - *freemaster_utils.c* - aligned memory copy routines, circular buffer management and other utility functions
  - *freemaster_utils.h* - definitions related to utility code.
- ***src/drivers/[sdk]/serial*** - contains the code related to the serial communication implemented using one of the supported SDK frameworks.
  - *freemaster_serial_XXX.c* and *.h* - implement low-level access to the communication peripheral registers. Different files exist for the UART, LPUART, USART, and other kinds of Serial communication modules.
- ***src/drivers/[sdk]/can*** - contains the code related to the serial communication implemented using one of the supported SDK frameworks.
  - *freemaster_XXX.c* and *.h* - implement low-level access to the communication peripheral registers. Different files exist for the FlexCAN, msCAN, MCAN, and other kinds of CAN communication modules.
- ***src/drivers/[sdk]/network*** - contains low-level code adapting the FreeMASTER Network transport to an underlying TCP/IP or RTT stack.
  - *freemaster_net_lwip_tcp.c* and *_udp.c* - default networking implementation of TCP and UDP transports using lwIP stack.
  - *freemaster_net_segger_rtt.c* - implementation of network transport using Segger J-Link RTT interface

Driver configuration The driver is configured using a single header file (*freemaster_cfg.h*). Create this file and save it together with other project source files before compiling the driver code. All FreeMASTER driver source files include the *freemaster_cfg.h* file and use the macros defined here for the conditional and parameterized compilation. The C compiler must locate the configuration file when compiling the driver files. Typically, it can be achieved by putting this file into a folder where the other project-specific included files are stored.

As a starting point to create the configuration file, get the *freemaster_cfg.h.example* file, rename it to *freemaster_cfg.h*, and save it into the project area.

Note: It is NOT recommended to leave the *freemaster_cfg.h* file in the FreeMASTER driver source code folder. The configuration file must be placed at a project-specific location, so that it does not affect the other applications that use the same driver.

Configurable items This section describes the configuration options which can be defined in *freemaster_cfg.h*.

Interrupt modes

```
#define FMSTR_LONG_INTR   [0|1]
#define FMSTR_SHORT_INTR  [0|1]
#define FMSTR_POLL_DRIVEN [0|1]
```

Value Type boolean (0 or 1)

Description Exactly one of the three macros must be defined to non-zero. The others must be defined to zero or left undefined. The non-zero-defined constant selects the interrupt mode of the driver. See *Driver interrupt modes*.

- FMSTR_LONG_INTR — long interrupt mode
- FMSTR_SHORT_INTR — short interrupt mode
- FMSTR_POLL_DRIVEN — poll-driven mode

Note: Some options may not be supported by all communication interfaces. For example, the FMSTR_SHORT_INTR option is not supported by the USB_CDC interface.

Protocol transport

```
#define FMSTR_TRANSPORT [identifier]
```

Value Type Driver identifiers are structure instance names defined in FreeMASTER source code. Specify one of existing instances to make use of the protocol transport.

Description Use one of the pre-defined constants, as implemented by the FreeMASTER code. The current driver supports the following transports:

- **FMSTR_SERIAL** - serial communication protocol
- **FMSTR_CAN** - using CAN communication
- **FMSTR_PDBDM** - using packet-driven BDM communication
- **FMSTR_NET** - network communication using TCP or UDP protocol

Serial transport This section describes configuration parameters used when serial transport is used:

```
#define FMSTR_TRANSPORT FMSTR_SERIAL
```

FMSTR_SERIAL_DRV Select what low-level driver interface will be used when implementing the Serial communication.

```
#define FMSTR_SERIAL_DRV [identifier]
```

Value Type Driver identifiers are structure instance names defined in FreeMASTER drivers code. Specify one of existing serial driver instances.

Description When using MCUXpresso SDK, use one of the following constants (see */drivers/mcuxsdk/serial* implementation):

- **FMSTR_SERIAL_MCUX_UART** - UART driver
- **FMSTR_SERIAL_MCUX_LPUART** - LPUART driver
- **FMSTR_SERIAL_MCUX_USART** - USART driver
- **FMSTR_SERIAL_MCUX_MINIUSART** - miniUSART driver
- **FMSTR_SERIAL_MCUX_QSCI** - DSC QSCI driver
- **FMSTR_SERIAL_MCUX_USB** - USB/CDC class driver (also see code in the */support/mcuxsdk_usb* folder)

- **FMSTR_SERIAL_56F800E_EONCE** - DSC JTAG EOnCE driver

Other SDKs or BSPs may define custom low-level driver interface structure which may be used as FMSTR_SERIAL_DRV. For example:

- **FMSTR_SERIAL_DREG_UART** - demonstrates the low-level interface implemented without the MCUXpresso SDK and using direct access to peripheral registers.

FMSTR_SERIAL_BASE

```
#define FMSTR_SERIAL_BASE [address|symbol]
```

Value Type Optional address value (numeric or symbolic)

Description Specify the base address of the UART, LPUART, USART, or other serial peripheral module to be used for the communication. This value is not defined by default. User application should call FMSTR_SetSerialBaseAddress() to select the peripheral module.

FMSTR_COMM_BUFFER_SIZE

```
#define FMSTR_COMM_BUFFER_SIZE [number]
```

Value Type 0 or a value in range 32...255

Description Specify the size of the communication buffer to be allocated by the driver. Default value, which suits all driver features, is used when this option is defined as 0.

FMSTR_COMM_RQUEUE_SIZE

```
#define FMSTR_COMM_RQUEUE_SIZE [number]
```

Value Type Value in range 0...255

Description Specify the size of the FIFO receiver queue used to quickly receive and store characters in the FMSTR_SHORT_INTR interrupt mode.
The default value is 32 B.

FMSTR_SERIAL_SINGLEWIRE

```
#define FMSTR_SERIAL_SINGLEWIRE [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description Set to non-zero to enable the “True” single-wire mode which uses a single MCU pin to communicate. The low-level driver enables the pin direction switching when the MCU peripheral supports it.

CAN Bus transport This section describes configuration parameters used when CAN transport is used:

```
#define FMSTR_TRANSPORT FMSTR_CAN
```

FMSTR_CAN_DRV Select what low-level driver interface will be used when implementing the CAN communication.

```
#define FMSTR_CAN_DRV [identifier]
```

Value Type Driver identifiers are structure instance names defined in FreeMASTER drivers code. Specify one of existing CAN driver instances.

Description When using MCUXpresso SDK, use one of the following constants (see */drivers/mcuxsdk/can implementation*):

- **FMSTR_CAN_MCUX_FLEXCAN** - FlexCAN driver
- **FMSTR_CAN_MCUX_MCAN** - MCAN driver
- **FMSTR_CAN_MCUX_MSCAN** - msCAN driver
- **FMSTR_CAN_MCUX_DSCFLEXCAN** - DSC FlexCAN driver
- **FMSTR_CAN_MCUX_DSCMSCAN** - DSC msCAN driver

Other SDKs or BSPs may define the custom low-level driver interface structure which may be used as FMSTR_CAN_DRV.

FMSTR_CAN_BASE

```
#define FMSTR_CAN_BASE [address|symbol]
```

Value Type Optional address value (numeric or symbolic)

Description Specify the base address of the FlexCAN, msCAN, or other CAN peripheral module to be used for the communication. This value is not defined by default. User application should call FMSTR_SetCanBaseAddress() to select the peripheral module.

FMSTR_CAN_CMDID

```
#define FMSTR_CAN_CMDID [number]
```

Value Type CAN identifier (11-bit or 29-bit number)

Description CAN message identifier used for FreeMASTER commands (direction from PC Host tool to target application). When declaring 29-bit identifier, combine the numeric value with FMSTR_CAN_EXTID bit. Default value is 0x7AA.

FMSTR_CAN_RSPID

```
#define FMSTR_CAN_RSPID [number]
```

Value Type CAN identifier (11-bit or 29-bit number)

Description CAN message identifier used for responding messages (direction from target application to PC Host tool). When declaring 29-bit identifier, combine the numeric value with FMSTR_CAN_EXTID bit. Note that both *CMDID* and *RSPID* values may be the same. Default value is 0x7AA.

FMSTR_FLEXCAN_TXMB

```
#define FMSTR_FLEXCAN_TXMB [number]
```

Value Type Number in range of 0..N where N is number of CAN message-buffers supported by HW module.

Description Only used when the FlexCAN low-level driver is used. Define the FlexCAN message buffer for CAN frame transmission. Default value is 0.

FMSTR_FLEXCAN_RXMB

```
#define FMSTR_FLEXCAN_RXMB [number]
```

Value Type Number in range of 0..N where N is number of CAN message-buffers supported by HW module.

Description Only used when the FlexCAN low-level driver is used. Define the FlexCAN message buffer for CAN frame reception. Note that the FreeMASTER driver may also operate with a common message buffer used by both TX and RX directions. Default value is 1.

Network transport This section describes configuration parameters used when Network transport is used:

```
#define FMSTR_TRANSPORT FMSTR_NET
```

FMSTR_NET_DRV Select network interface implementation.

```
#define FMSTR_NET_DRV [identifier]
```

Value Type Identifiers are structure instance names defined in FreeMASTER drivers code. Specify one of existing NET driver instances.

Description When using MCUXpresso SDK, use one of the following constants (see */drivers/mcuxsdk/network implementation*):

- **FMSTR_NET_LWIP_TCP** - TCP communication using lwIP stack
- **FMSTR_NET_LWIP_UDP** - UDP communication using lwIP stack
- **FMSTR_NET_SEGGER_RTT** - Communication using SEGGER J-Link RTT interface

Other SDKs or BSPs may define the custom networking interface which may be used as FMSTR_CAN_DRV.

Add another row below:

FMSTR_NET_PORT

```
#define FMSTR_NET_PORT [number]
```

Value Type TCP or UDP port number (short integer)

Description Specifies the server port number used by TCP or UDP protocols.

FMSTR_NET_BLOCKING_TIMEOUT

```
#define FMSTR_NET_BLOCKING_TIMEOUT [number]
```

Value Type Timeout as number of milliseconds

Description This value specifies a timeout in milliseconds for which the network socket operations may block the execution inside *FMSTR_Poll*. This may be set high (e.g. 250) when a dedicated RTOS task is used to handle FreeMASTER protocol polling. Set to a lower value when the polling task is also responsible for other operations. Set to 0 to attempt to use non-blocking socket operations.

FMSTR_NET_AUTODISCOVERY

```
#define FMSTR_NET_AUTODISCOVERY [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description This option enables the FreeMASTER driver to use a separate UDP socket to broadcast auto-discovery messages to network. This helps the FreeMASTER tool to discover the target device address, port and protocol options.

Debugging options

FMSTR_DISABLE

```
#define FMSTR_DISABLE [0|1]
```

Value Type boolean (0 or 1)

Description Define as non-zero to disable all FreeMASTER features, exclude the driver code from build, and compile all its API functions empty. This may be useful to remove FreeMASTER without modifying any application source code. Default value is 0 (false).

FMSTR_DEBUG_TX

```
#define FMSTR_DEBUG_TX [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description Define as non-zero to enable the driver to periodically transmit test frames out on the selected communication interface (SCI or CAN). With the debug transmission enabled, it is simpler to detect problems in the baudrate or other communication configuration settings.

The test frames are transmitted until the first valid command frame is received from the PC Host tool. The test frame is a valid error status frame, as defined by the protocol format. On the serial line, the test frame consists of three printable characters (+©W) which are easy to capture using the serial terminal tools.

This feature requires the FMSTR_Poll() function to be called periodically. Default value is 0 (false).

FMSTR_APPLICATION_STR

```
#define FMSTR_APPLICATION_STR
```

Value Type String.

Description Name of the application visible in FreeMASTER host application.

Memory access

FMSTR_USE_READMEM

```
#define FMSTR_USE_READMEM [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description Define as non-zero to implement the Memory Read command and enable FreeMASTER to have read access to memory and variables. The access can be further restricted by using a TSA feature.
Default value is 1 (true).

FMSTR_USE_WRITEMEM

```
#define FMSTR_USE_WRITEMEM [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description Define as non-zero to implement the Memory Write command.
The default value is 1 (true).

Oscilloscope options

FMSTR_USE_SCOPE

```
#define FMSTR_USE_SCOPE [number]
```

Value Type Integer number.

Description Number of Oscilloscope instances to be supported. Set to 0 to disable the Oscilloscope feature.
Default value is 0.

FMSTR_MAX_SCOPE_VARS

```
#define FMSTR_MAX_SCOPE_VARS [number]
```

Value Type Integer number larger than 2.

Description Number of variables to be supported by each Oscilloscope instance.
Default value is 8.

Recorder options

FMSTR_USE_RECORDER

```
#define FMSTR_USE_RECORDER [number]
```

Value Type Integer number.

Description Number of Recorder instances to be supported. Set to 0 to disable the Recorder feature.
Default value is 0.

FMSTR_REC_BUFF_SIZE

```
#define FMSTR_REC_BUFF_SIZE [number]
```

Value Type Integer number larger than 2.

Description Defines the size of the memory buffer used by the Recorder instance #0.
Default: not defined, user shall call ‘FMSTR_RecorderCreate()“ API function to specify this parameter in run time.

FMSTR_REC_TIMEBASE

```
#define FMSTR_REC_TIMEBASE [time specification]
```

Value Type Number (nanoseconds time).

Description Defines the base sampling rate in nanoseconds (sampling speed) Recorder instance #0.

Use one of the following macros:

- FMSTR_REC_BASE_SECONDS(x)
- FMSTR_REC_BASE_MILLISEC(x)
- FMSTR_REC_BASE_MICROSEC(x)
- FMSTR_REC_BASE_NANOSEC(x)

Default: not defined, user shall call 'FMSTR_RecorderCreate()" API function to specify this parameter in run time.

FMSTR_REC_FLOAT_TRIG

```
#define FMSTR_REC_FLOAT_TRIG [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description Define as non-zero to implement the floating-point triggering. Be aware that floating-point triggering may grow the code size by linking the floating-point standard library.

Default value is 0 (false).

Application Commands options

FMSTR_USE_APPCMD

```
#define FMSTR_USE_APPCMD [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description Define as non-zero to implement the Application Commands feature.
Default value is 0 (false).

FMSTR_APPCMD_BUFF_SIZE

```
#define FMSTR_APPCMD_BUFF_SIZE [size]
```

Value Type Numeric buffer size in range 1..255

Description The size of the Application Command data buffer allocated by the driver. The buffer stores the (optional) parameters of the Application Command which waits to be processed.

FMSTR_MAX_APPCMD_CALLS

```
#define FMSTR_MAX_APPCMD_CALLS [number]
```

Value Type Number in range 0..255

Description The number of different Application Commands that can be assigned a callback handler function using FMSTR_RegisterAppCmdCall(). Default value is 0.

TSA options

FMSTR_USE_TSA

```
#define FMSTR_USE_TSA [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description Enable the FreeMASTER TSA feature to be used. With this option enabled, the TSA tables defined in the applications are made available to the FreeMASTER host tool.
Default value is 0 (false).

FMSTR_USE_TSA_SAFETY

```
#define FMSTR_USE_TSA_SAFETY [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description Enable the memory access validation in the FreeMASTER driver. With this option, the host tool is not able to access the memory which is not described by at least one TSA descriptor. Also a write access is denied for objects defined as read-only in TSA tables.
Default value is 0 (false).

FMSTR_USE_TSA_INROM

```
#define FMSTR_USE_TSA_INROM [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description Declare all TSA descriptors as *const*, which enables the linker to put the data into the flash memory. The actual result depends on linker settings or the linker commands used in the project.
Default value is 0 (false).

FMSTR_USE_TSA_DYNAMIC

```
#define FMSTR_USE_TSA_DYNAMIC [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description Enable runtime-defined TSA entries to be added to the TSA table by the FMSTR_SetUpTsaBuff() and FMSTR_TsaAddVar() functions.
Default value is 0 (false).

Pipes options

FMSTR_USE_PIPES

```
#define FMSTR_USE_PIPES [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description Enable the FreeMASTER Pipes feature to be used.
Default value is 0 (false).

FMSTR_MAX_PIPES_COUNT

```
#define FMSTR_MAX_PIPES_COUNT [number]
```

Value Type Number in range 1..63.

Description The number of simultaneous pipe connections to support.
The default value is 1.

Driver interrupt modes To implement the communication, the FreeMASTER driver handles the Serial or CAN module's receive and transmit requests. Use the *freemaster_cfg.h* configuration file to select whether the driver processes the communication automatically in the interrupt service routine handler or if it only polls the status of the module (typically during the application idle time).

This section describes each of the interrupt mode in more details.

Completely Interrupt-Driven operation Activated using:

```
#define FMSTR_LONG_INTR 1
```

In this mode, both the communication and the FreeMASTER protocol decoding is done in the *FMSTR_SerialIsr*, *FMSTR_CanIsr*, or other interrupt service routine. Because the protocol execution may be a lengthy task (especially with the TSA-Safety enabled) it is recommended to use this mode only if the interrupt prioritization scheme is possible in the application and the FreeMASTER interrupt is assigned to a lower (the lowest) priority.

In this mode, the application code must register its own interrupt handler for all interrupt vectors related to the selected communication interface and call the FMSTR_SerialIsr or FMSTR_CanIsr functions from that handler.

Mixed Interrupt and Polling Modes Activated using:

```
#define FMSTR_SHORT_INTR 1
```

In this mode, the communication processing time is split between the interrupt routine and the main application loop or task. The raw communication is handled by the *FMSTR_SerialIsr, FMSTR_CanIsr*, or other interrupt service routine, while the protocol decoding and execution is handled by the *FMSTR_Poll* routine. Call *FMSTR_Poll* during the idle time in the application main loop.

The interrupt processing in this mode is relatively fast and deterministic. Upon a serial-receive event, the received character is only placed into a FIFO-like queue and it is not further processed. Upon a CAN receive event, the received frame is stored into a receive buffer. When transmitting, the characters are fetched from the prepared transmit buffer.

In this mode, the application code must register its own interrupt handler for all interrupt vectors related to the selected communication interface and call the *FMSTR_SerialIsr* or *FMSTR_CanIsr* functions from that handler.

When the serial interface is used as the serial communication interface, ensure that the *FMSTR_Poll* function is called at least once per *N* character time periods. *N* is the length of the FreeMASTER FIFO queue (*FMSTR_COMM_RQUEUE_SIZE*) and the character time is the time needed to transmit or receive a single byte over the SCI line.

Completely Poll-driven

```
#define FMSTR_POLL_DRIVEN 1
```

In this mode, both the communication and the FreeMASTER protocol decoding are done in the *FMSTR_Poll* routine. No interrupts are needed and the *FMSTR_SerialIsr*, *FMSTR_CanIsr*, and similar handlers compile to an empty code.

When using this mode, ensure that the *FMSTR_Poll* function is called by the application at least once per the serial "character time" which is the time needed to transmit or receive a single character.

In the latter two modes (*FMSTR_SHORT_INTR* and *FMSTR_POLL_DRIVEN*), the protocol handling takes place in the FMSTR_Poll routine. An application interrupt can occur in the middle of the Read Memory or Write Memory commands' execution and corrupt the variable being accessed by the FreeMASTER driver. In these two modes, some issues or glitches may occur when using FreeMASTER to visualize or monitor volatile variables modified in interrupt servicing code.

The same issue may appear even in the full interrupt mode (FMSTR_LONG_INTR), if volatile variables are modified in the interrupt code with a priority higher than the priority of the communication interrupt.

Data types Simple portability was one of the main requirements when writing the FreeMASTER driver. This is why the driver code uses the privately-declared data types and the vast majority of the platform-dependent code is separated in the platform-dependent source files. The data types used in the driver API are all defined in the platform-specific header file.

To prevent name conflicts with the symbols used in the application, all data types, macros, and functions have the FMSTR_ prefix. The only global variables used in the driver are the transport and low-level API structures exported from the driver-implementation layer to upper layers. Other than that, all private variables are declared as static and named using the fmstr_ prefix.

Communication interface initialization The FreeMASTER driver does not perform neither the initialization nor the configuration of the peripheral module that it uses to communicate. It is the application startup code responsibility to configure the communication module before the FreeMASTER driver is initialized by the FMSTR_Init call.

When the Serial communication module is used as the FreeMASTER communication interface, configure the UART receive and transmit pins, the serial communication baud rate, parity (no-parity), the character length (eight bits), and the number of stop bits (one) before initializing the FreeMASTER driver. For either the long or the short interrupt modes of the driver (see *Driver interrupt modes*), configure the interrupt controller and register an application-specific interrupt handler for all interrupt sources related to the selected serial peripheral module. Call the FMSTR_SerialIsr function from the application handler.

When a CAN module is used as the FreeMASTER communication interface, configure the CAN receive and transmit pins and the CAN module bit rate before initializing the FreeMASTER driver. For either the long or the short interrupt modes of the driver (see *Driver interrupt modes*), configure the interrupt controller and register an application-specific interrupt handler for all interrupt sources related to the selected CAN peripheral module. Call the FMSTR_CanIsr function from the application handler.

Note: It is not necessary to enable or unmask the serial nor the CAN interrupts before initializing the FreeMASTER driver. The driver enables or disables the interrupts and communication lines, as required during runtime.

FreeMASTER Recorder calls When using the FreeMASTER Recorder in the application (FMSTR_USE_RECORDER > 0), call the FMSTR_RecorderCreate function early after FMSTR_Init to set up each recorder instance to be used in the application. Then call the FMSTR_Recorder function periodically in the code where the data recording should occur. A typical place to call the Recorder routine is at the timer or PWM interrupts, but it can be anywhere else. The example applications provided together with the driver code call the FMSTR_Recorder in the main application loop.

In applications where FMSTR_Recorder is called periodically with a constant period, specify the period in the Recorder configuration structure before calling FMSTR_RecorderCreate. This setting enables the PC Host FreeMASTER tool to display the X-axis of the Recorder graph properly scaled for the time domain.

Driver usage Start using or evaluating FreeMASTER by opening some of the example applications available in the driver setup package.

Follow these steps to enable the basic FreeMASTER connectivity in the application:

- Make sure that all **.c* files of the FreeMASTER driver from the *src/common/platforms/[your_platform]* folder are a part of the project. See *Driver files* for more details.
- Configure the FreeMASTER driver by creating or editing the *freemaster_cfg.h* file and by saving it into the application project directory. See *Driver configuration* for more details.
- Include the *freemaster.h* file into any application source file that makes the FreeMASTER API calls.
- Initialize the Serial or CAN modules. Set the baud rate, parity, and other parameters of the communication. Do not enable the communication interrupts in the interrupt mask registers.
- For the FMSTR_LONG_INTR and FMSTR_SHORT_INTR modes, install the application-specific interrupt routine and call the FMSTR_SerialIsr or FMSTR_CanIsr functions from this handler.
- Call the FMSTR_Init function early on in the application initialization code.
- Call the FMSTR_RecorderCreate functions for each Recorder instance to enable the Recorder feature.
- In the main application loop, call the FMSTR_Poll API function periodically when the application is idle.
- For the FMSTR_SHORT_INTR and FMSTR_LONG_INTR modes, enable the interrupts globally so that the interrupts can be handled by the CPU.

Communication troubleshooting The most common problem that causes communication issues is a wrong baud rate setting or a wrong pin multiplexer setting of the target MCU. When

a communication between the PC Host running FreeMASTER and the target MCU cannot be established, try enabling the FMSTR_DEBUG_TX option in the *freemaster_cfg.h* file and call the FMSTR_Poll function periodically in the main application task loop.

With this feature enabled, the FreeMASTER driver periodically transmits a test frame through the Serial or CAN lines. Use a logic analyzer or an oscilloscope to monitor the signals at the communication pins of the CPU device to examine whether the bit rate and signal polarity are configured properly.

Driver API

This section describes the driver Application Programmers' Interface (API) needed to initialize and use the FreeMASTER serial communication driver.

Control API There are three key functions to initialize and use the driver.

FMSTR_Init

Prototype

```
FMSTR_BOOL FMSTR_Init(void);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_protocol.c*

Description This function initializes the internal variables of the FreeMASTER driver and enables the communication interface. This function does not change the configuration of the selected communication module. The hardware module must be initialized before the *FMSTR_Init* function is called.

A call to this function must occur before calling any other FreeMASTER driver API functions.

FMSTR_Poll

Prototype

```
void FMSTR_Poll(void);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_protocol.c*

Description In the poll-driven or short interrupt modes, this function handles the protocol decoding and execution (see *Driver interrupt modes*). In the poll-driven mode, this function also handles the communication interface with the PC. Typically, the *FMSTR_Poll* function is called during the "idle" time in the main application task loop.

To prevent the receive data overflow (loss) on a serial interface, make sure that the FMSTR_Poll function is called at least once per the time calculated as:

*N * Tchar*

where:

- *N* is equal to the length of the receive FIFO queue (configured by the FMSTR_COMM_RQUEUE_SIZE macro). *N* is 1 for the poll-driven mode.
- *Tchar* is the character time, which is the time needed to transmit or receive a single byte over the SCI line.

Note: In the long interrupt mode, this function typically compiles as an empty function and can still be called. It is worthwhile to call this function regardless of the interrupt mode used in the application. This approach enables a convenient switching between the different interrupt modes only by changing the configuration macros in the *freemaster_cfg.h* file.

FMSTR_SerialIsr / FMSTR_CanIsr

Prototype

```
void FMSTR_SerialIsr(void);
void FMSTR_CanIsr(void);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *hw-specific low-level driver C file*

Description This function contains the interrupt-processing code of the FreeMASTER driver. In long or short interrupt modes (see *Driver interrupt modes*), this function must be called from the application interrupt service routine registered for the communication interrupt vector. On platforms where the communication module uses multiple interrupt vectors, the application should register a handler for all vectors and call this function at each interrupt.

Note: In a poll-driven mode, this function is compiled as an empty function and does not have to be used.

Recorder API

FMSTR_RecorderCreate

Prototype

```
FMSTR_BOOL FMSTR_RecorderCreate(FMSTR_INDEX recIndex, FMSTR_REC_BUFF* buffCfg);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_rec.c*

Description This function registers a recorder instance and enables it to be used by the PC Host tool. Call this function for all recorder instances from 0 to the maximum number defined by the FMSTR_USE_RECORDER configuration option (minus one). An exception to this requirement is the recorder of instance *0* which may be automatically configured by FMSTR_Init when the *freemaster_cfg.h* configuration file defines the *FMSTR_REC_BUFF_SIZE* and *FMSTR_REC_TIMEBASE* options.

For more information, see *Configurable items*.

FMSTR_Recorder

Prototype

```
void FMSTR_Recorder(FMSTR_INDEX recIndex);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_rec.c*

Description This function takes a sample of the variables being recorded using the FreeMASTER Recorder instance *recIndex*. If the selected Recorder is not active when the *FMSTR_Recorder* function is being called, the function returns immediately. When the Recorder is active, the values of the variables being recorded are copied into the recorder buffer and the trigger conditions are evaluated.

If a trigger condition is satisfied, the Recorder enters the post-trigger mode, where it counts down the follow-up samples (number of *FMSTR_Recorder* function calls) and de-activates the Recorder when the required post-trigger samples are finished.

The *FMSTR_Recorder* function is typically called in the timer or PWM interrupt service routines. This function can also be called in the application main loop (for testing purposes).

FMSTR_RecorderTrigger

Prototype

```
void FMSTR_RecorderTrigger(FMSTR_INDEX recIndex);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_rec.c*

Description This function forces the Recorder trigger condition to happen, which causes the Recorder to be automatically deactivated after the post-trigger samples are sampled. Use this function in the application code for programmatic control over the Recorder triggering. This can be useful when a more complex triggering conditions need to be used.

Fast Recorder API The Fast Recorder feature is not available in the FreeMASTER driver version 3. This feature was heavily dependent on the target platform and it was only available for the 56F8xxxx DSCs.

TSA Tables When the TSA is enabled in the FreeMASTER driver configuration file (by setting the FMSTR_USE_TSA macro to a non-zero value), it defines the so-called TSA tables in the application. This section describes the macros that must to be used to define the TSA tables.

There can be any number of TSA tables spread across the application source files. There must be always exactly one TSA Table List defined, which informs the FreeMASTER driver about the active TSA tables.

When there is at least one TSA table and one TSA Table List defined in the application, the TSA information automatically appears in the FreeMASTER symbols list. The symbols can then be used to create FreeMASTER variables for visualization or control.

TSA table definition The TSA table describes the static or global variables together with their address, size, type, and access-protection information. If the TSA-described variables are of a structure type, the TSA table may also describe this type and provide an access to the individual structure members of the variable.

The TSA table definition begins with the FMSTR_TSA_TABLE_BEGIN macro with a *table_id* identifying the table. The *table_id* shall be a valid C-langiage symbol.

```
FMSTR_TSA_TABLE_BEGIN(table_id)
```

After this opening macro, the TSA descriptors are placed using these macros:

```
/* Adding variable descriptors */
FMSTR_TSA_RW_VAR(name, type)  /* read/write variable entry */
FMSTR_TSA_RO_VAR(name, type)  /* read-only variable entry */

/* Description of complex data types */
FMSTR_TSA_STRUCT(struct_name) /* structure or union type entry */
FMSTR_TSA_MEMBER(struct_name, member_name, type)  /* structure member entry */

/* Memory blocks */
FMSTR_TSA_RW_MEM(name, type, address, size) /* read/write memory block */
FMSTR_TSA_RO_MEM(name, type, address, size) /* read-only memory block */
```

The table is closed using the FMSTR_TSA_TABLE_END macro:

```
FMSTR_TSA_TABLE_END()
```

TSA descriptor parameters The TSA descriptor macros accept these parameters:

- *name* — variable name. The variable must be defined before the TSA descriptor references it.
- *type* — variable or member type. Only one of the pre-defined type constants may be used (see below).
- *struct_name* — structure type name. The type must be defined (typedef) before the TSA descriptor references it.
- *member_name* — structure member name.

Note: The structure member descriptors (FMSTR_TSA_MEMBER) must immediately follow the parent structure descriptor (FMSTR_TSA_STRUCT) in the table.

Note: To write-protect the variables in the FreeMASTER driver (FMSTR_TSA_RO_VAR), enable the TSA-Safety feature in the configuration file.

TSA variable types The table lists *type* identifiers which can be used in TSA descriptors:

Constant	Description
FMSTR_TSA_UINT*n*	Unsigned integer type of size *n* bits (n=8,16,32,64)
FMSTR_TSA_SINT*n*	Signed integer type of size *n* bits (n=8,16,32,64)
FMSTR_TSA_FRAC*n*	Fractional number of size *n* bits (n=16,32,64).
FMSTR_TSA_FRAC_Q(*m,n*)	Signed fractional number in general Q form (m+n+1 total bits)
FMSTR_TSA_FRAC_UQ(*m,n*)	Unsigned fractional number in general UQ form (m+n total bits)
FMSTR_TSA_FLOAT	4-byte standard IEEE floating-point type
FMSTR_TSA_DOUBLE	8-byte standard IEEE floating-point type
FMSTR_TSA_POINTER	Generic pointer type defined (platform-specific 16 or 32 bit)
FMSTR_TSA_USERTYPE(*name*)	Structure or union type declared with FMSTR_TSA_STRUCT record

TSA table list There shall be exactly one TSA Table List in the application. The list contains one entry for each TSA table defined anywhere in the application.

The TSA Table List begins with the FMSTR_TSA_TABLE_LIST_BEGIN macro and continues with the TSA table entries for each table.

```
FMSTR_TSA_TABLE_LIST_BEGIN()

FMSTR_TSA_TABLE(table_id)
FMSTR_TSA_TABLE(table_id2)
FMSTR_TSA_TABLE(table_id3)
...
```

The list is closed with the FMSTR_TSA_TABLE_LIST_END macro:

```
FMSTR_TSA_TABLE_LIST_END()
```

TSA Active Content entries FreeMASTER v2.0 and higher supports TSA Active Content, enabling the TSA tables to describe the memory-mapped files, virtual directories, and URL hyperlinks. FreeMASTER can access such objects similarly to accessing the files and folders on the local hard drive.

With this set of TSA entries, the FreeMASTER pages can be embedded directly into the target MCU flash and accessed by FreeMASTER directly over the communication line. The HTML-coded pages rendered inside the FreeMASTER window can access the TSA Active Content resources using a special URL referencing the *fmstr:* protocol.

This example provides an overview of the supported TSA Active Content entries:

```
FMSTR_TSA_TABLE_BEGIN(files_and_links)

/* Directory entry applies to all subsequent MEMFILE entries */
FMSTR_TSA_DIRECTORY("/text_files")     /* entering a new virtual directory */

/* The readme.txt file will be accessible at the fmstr://text_files/readme.txt URL */
FMSTR_TSA_MEMFILE("readme.txt", readme_txt, sizeof(readme_txt)) /* memory-mapped file */

/* Files can also be specified with a full path so the DIRECTORY entry does not apply */
FMSTR_TSA_MEMFILE("/index.htm", index, sizeof(index))          /* memory-mapped file */
FMSTR_TSA_MEMFILE("/prj/demo.pmp", demo_pmp, sizeof(demo_pmp)) /* memory-mapped file */

/* Hyperlinks can point to a local MEMFILE object or to the Internet */
FMSTR_TSA_HREF("Board's Built-in Welcome Page", "/index.htm")
FMSTR_TSA_HREF("FreeMASTER Home Page", "http://www.nxp.com/freemaster")
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
/* Project file links simplify opening the projects from any URLs */
FMSTR_TSA_PROJECT("Demonstration Project (embedded)", "/prj/demo.pmp")
FMSTR_TSA_PROJECT("Full Project (online)", "http://mycompany.com/prj/demo.pmp")

FMSTR_TSA_TABLE_END()
```

TSA API

FMSTR_SetUpTsaBuff

Prototype

```
FMSTR_BOOL FMSTR_SetUpTsaBuff(FMSTR_ADDR buffAddr, FMSTR_SIZE buffSize);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_tsa.c*

Arguments

- *buffAddr* [in] - address of the memory buffer for the dynamic TSA table
- *buffSize* [in] - size of the memory buffer which determines the maximum number of TSA entries to be added in the runtime

Description This function must be used to assign the RAM memory buffer to the TSA subsystem when FMSTR_USE_TSA_DYNAMIC is enabled. The memory buffer is then used to store the TSA entries added dynamically to the runtime TSA table using the FMSTR_TsaAddVar function call. The runtime TSA table is processed by the FreeMASTER PC Host tool along with all static tables as soon as the communication port is open.

The size of the memory buffer determines the number of TSA entries that can be added dynamically. Depending on the MCU platform, one TSA entry takes either 8 or 16 bytes.

FMSTR_TsaAddVar

Prototype

```
FMSTR_BOOL FMSTR_TsaAddVar(FMSTR_TSATBL_STRPTR tsaName, FMSTR_TSATBL_STRPTR␣
↪tsaType,
    FMSTR_TSATBL_VOIDPTR varAddr, FMSTR_SIZE32 varSize,
    FMSTR_SIZE flags);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_tsa.c*

Arguments

- *tsaName* [in] - name of the object
- *tsaType* [in] - name of the object type
- *varAddr* [in] - address of the object

- *varSize* [in] - size of the object
- *flags* [in] - access flags; a combination of these values:
  - *FMSTR_TSA_INFO_RO_VAR* — read-only memory-mapped object (typically a variable)
  - *FMSTR_TSA_INFO_RW_VAR* — read/write memory-mapped object
  - *FMSTR_TSA_INFO_NON_VAR* — other entry, describing structure types, structure members, enumerations, and other types

Description This function can be called only when the dynamic TSA table is enabled by the FMSTR_USE_TSA_DYNAMIC configuration option and when the FMSTR_SetUpTsaBuff function call is made to assign the dynamic TSA table memory. This function adds an entry into the dynamic TSA table. It can be used to register a read-only or read/write memory object or describe an item of the user-defined type.

See *TSA table definition* for more details about the TSA table entries.

Application Commands API

FMSTR_GetAppCmd

Prototype

```
FMSTR_APPCMD_CODE FMSTR_GetAppCmd(void);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_appcmd.c*

Description This function can be used to detect if there is an Application Command waiting to be processed by the application. If no command is pending, this function returns the FMSTR_APPCMDRESULT_NOCMD constant. Otherwise, this function returns the code of the Application Command that must be processed. Use the FMSTR_AppCmdAck call to acknowledge the Application Command after it is processed and to return the appropriate result code to the host.

The FMSTR_GetAppCmd function does not report the commands for which a callback handler function exists. If the FMSTR_GetAppCmd function is called when a callback-registered command is pending (and before it is actually processed by the callback function), this function returns FMSTR_APPCMDRESULT_NOCMD.

FMSTR_GetAppCmdData

Prototype

```
FMSTR_APPCMD_PDATA FMSTR_GetAppCmdData(FMSTR_SIZE* dataLen);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_appcmd.c*

Arguments

- *dataLen* [out] - pointer to the variable that receives the length of the data available in the buffer. It can be NULL when this information is not needed.

Description This function can be used to retrieve the Application Command data when the application determines that an Application Command is pending (see *FMSTR_GetAppCmd*).

There is just a single buffer to hold the Application Command data (the buffer length is FMSTR_APPCMD_BUFF_SIZE bytes). If the data are to be used in the application after the command is processed by the FMSTR_AppCmdAck call, copy the data out to a private buffer.

FMSTR_AppCmdAck

Prototype

```
void FMSTR_AppCmdAck(FMSTR_APPCMD_RESULT resultCode);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_appcmd.c*

Arguments

- *resultCode* [in] - the result code which is to be returned to FreeMASTER

Description This function is used when the Application Command processing finishes in the application. The resultCode passed to this function is returned back to the host and the driver is re-initialized to expect the next Application Command.

After this function is called and before the next Application Command arrives, the return value of the FMSTR_GetAppCmd function is FMSTR_APPCMDRESULT_NOCMD.

FMSTR_AppCmdSetResponseData

Prototype

```
void FMSTR_AppCmdSetResponseData(FMSTR_ADDR resultDataAddr, FMSTR_SIZE resultDataLen);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_appcmd.c*

Arguments

- *resultDataAddr* [in] - pointer to the data buffer that is to be copied to the Application Command data buffer
- *resultDataLen* [in] - length of the data to be copied. It must not exceed the FMSTR_APPCMD_BUFF_SIZE value.

Description This function can be used before the Application Command processing finishes, when there are data to be returned back to the PC.

The response data buffer is copied into the Application Command data buffer, from where it is accessed when the host requires it. Do not use FMSTR_GetAppCmdData and the data buffer after FMSTR_AppCmdSetResponseData is called.

Note: The current version of FreeMASTER does not support the Application Command response data.

FMSTR_RegisterAppCmdCall

Prototype

```
FMSTR_BOOL FMSTR_RegisterAppCmdCall(FMSTR_APPCMD_CODE appCmdCode, FMSTR_
↪PAPPCMDFUNC callbackFunc);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_appcmd.c*

Arguments

- *appCmdCode* [in] - the Application Command code for which the callback is to be registered
- *callbackFunc* [in] - pointer to the callback function that is to be registered. Use NULL to unregister a callback registered previously with this Application Command.

Return value This function returns a non-zero value when the callback function was successfully registered or unregistered. It can return zero when trying to register a callback function for more than FMSTR_MAX_APPCMD_CALLS different Application Commands.

Description This function can be used to register the given function as a callback handler for the Application Command. The Application Command is identified using single-byte code. The callback function is invoked automatically by the FreeMASTER driver when the protocol decoder obtains a request to get the application command result code.

The prototype of the callback function is

```
FMSTR_APPCMD_RESULT HandlerFunction(FMSTR_APPCMD_CODE nAppcmd,
    FMSTR_APPCMD_PDATA pData, FMSTR_SIZE nDataLen);
```

Where:

- *nAppcmd* -Application Command code
- *pData* —points to the Application Command data received (if any)
- *nDataLen* —information about the Application Command data length

The return value of the callback function is used as the Application Command Result Code and returned to FreeMASTER.

Note: The FMSTR_MAX_APPCMD_CALLS configuration macro defines how many different Application Commands may be handled by a callback function. When FMSTR_MAX_APPCMD_CALLS is undefined or defined as zero, the FMSTR_RegisterAppCmdCall function always fails.

Pipes API

FMSTR_PipeOpen

Prototype

```
FMSTR_HPIPE FMSTR_PipeOpen(FMSTR_PIPE_PORT pipePort, FMSTR_PPIPEFUNC pipeCallback,
↪
    FMSTR_ADDR pipeRxBuff, FMSTR_PIPE_SIZE pipeRxSize,
    FMSTR_ADDR pipeTxBuff, FMSTR_PIPE_SIZE pipeTxSize,
    FMSTR_U8 type, const FMSTR_CHAR *name);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_pipes.c*

Arguments

- *pipePort* [in] - port number that identifies the pipe for the client
- *pipeCallback* [in] - pointer to the callback function that is called whenever a pipe data status changes
- *pipeRxBuff* [in] - address of the receive memory buffer
- *pipeRxSize* [in] - size of the receive memory buffer
- *pipeTxBuff* [in] - address of the transmit memory buffer
- *pipeTxSize* [in] - size of the transmit memory buffer
- *type* [in] - a combination of FMSTR_PIPE_MODE_xxx and FMSTR_PIPE_SIZE_xxx constants describing primary pipe data format and usage. This type helps FreeMASTER decide how to access the pipe by default. Optional, use 0 when undetermined.
- *name* [in] - user name of the pipe port. This name is visible to the FreeMASTER user when creating the graphical pipe interface.

Description This function initializes a new pipe and makes it ready to accept or send the data to the PC Host client. The receive memory buffer is used to store the received data before they are read out by the FMSTR_PipeRead call. When this buffer gets full, the PC Host client denies the data transmission into this pipe until there is enough free space again. The transmit memory buffer is used to store the data transmitted by the application to the PC Host client using the FMSTR_PipeWrite call. The transmit buffer can get full when the PC Host is disconnected or when it is slow in receiving and reading out the pipe data.

The function returns the pipe handle which must be stored and used in the subsequent calls to manage the pipe object.

The callback function (if specified) is called whenever new data are received through the pipe and available for reading. This callback is also called when the data waiting in the transmit buffer are successfully pushed to the PC Host and the transmit buffer free space increases. The prototype of the callback function provided by the user application must be as follows. The *PipeHandler* name is only a placeholder and must be defined by the application.

```
void PipeHandler(FMSTR_HPIPE pipeHandle);
```

FMSTR_PipeClose

Prototype

```
void FMSTR_PipeClose(FMSTR_HPIPE pipeHandle);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_pipes.c*

Arguments

- *pipeHandle* [in] - pipe handle returned from the FMSTR_PipeOpen function call

Description This function de-initializes the pipe object. No data can be received or sent on the pipe after this call.

FMSTR_PipeWrite

Prototype

```
FMSTR_PIPE_SIZE FMSTR_PipeWrite(FMSTR_HPIPE pipeHandle, FMSTR_ADDR pipeData,
    FMSTR_PIPE_SIZE pipeDataLen, FMSTR_PIPE_SIZE writeGranularity);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_pipes.c*

Arguments

- *pipeHandle* [in] - pipe handle returned from the FMSTR_PipeOpen function call
- *pipeData* [in] - address of the data to be written
- *pipeDataLen* [in] - length of the data to be written
- *writeGranularity* [in] - size of the minimum unit of data which is to be written

Description This function puts the user-specified data into the pipe's transmit memory buffer and schedules it for transmission. This function returns the number of bytes that were successfully written into the buffer. This number may be smaller than the number of the requested bytes if there is not enough free space in the transmit buffer.

The *writeGranularity* argument can be used to split the data into smaller chunks, each of the size given by the *writeGranularity* value. The FMSTR_PipeWrite function writes as many data chunks as possible into the transmit buffer and does not attempt to write an incomplete chunk. This feature can prove to be useful to avoid the intermediate caching when writing an array of integer values or other multi-byte data items. When making the nGranularity value equal to the nLength value, all data are considered as one chunk which is either written successfully as a whole or not at all. The nGranularity value of 0 or 1 disables the data-chunk approach.

FMSTR_PipeRead

Prototype

```
FMSTR_PIPE_SIZE FMSTR_PipeRead(FMSTR_HPIPE pipeHandle, FMSTR_ADDR pipeData,
    FMSTR_PIPE_SIZE pipeDataLen, FMSTR_PIPE_SIZE readGranularity);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_pipes.c*

Arguments

- *pipeHandle* [in] - pipe handle returned from the FMSTR_PipeOpen function call
- *pipeData* [in] - address of the data buffer to be filled with the received data
- *pipeDataLen* [in] - length of the data to be read
- *readGranularity* [in] - size of the minimum unit of data which is to be read

Description This function copies the data received from the pipe from its receive buffer to the user buffer for further processing. The function returns the number of bytes that were successfully copied to the buffer. This number may be smaller than the number of the requested bytes if there is not enough data bytes available in the receive buffer.

The readGranularity argument can be used to copy the data in larger chunks in the same way as described in the FMSTR_PipeWrite function.

API data types This section describes the data types used in the FreeMASTER driver. The information provided here can be useful when modifying or porting the FreeMASTER Communication Driver to new NXP platforms.

Note: The licensing conditions prohibit use of FreeMASTER and the FreeMASTER Communication Driver with non-NXP MPU or MCU products.

Public common types The table below describes the public data types used in the FreeMASTER driver API calls. The data types are declared in the *freemaster.h* header file.

Type name	Description
FMSTR_ADDR	Data type used to hold the memory address. On most platforms, this is normally a C-pointer, but it may also be a pure integer type.
For example, this type is defined as long integer on the 56F8xxx platform where the 24-bit addresses must be supported, but the C-pointer may be only 16 bits wide in some compiler configurations.	
FMSTR_SIZE	Data type used to hold the memory block size.
It is required that this type is unsigned and at least 16 bits wide integer.	
FMSTR_BOOL	Data type used as a general boolean type.
This type is used only in zero/non-zero conditions in the driver code.	
FMSTR_APPCM	Data type used to hold the Application Command code.
Generally, this is an unsigned 8-bit value.	
FMSTR_APPCM	Data type used to create the Application Command data buffer.
Generally, this is an unsigned 8-bit value.	
FMSTR_APPCM	Data type used to hold the Application Command result code.
Generally, this is an unsigned 8-bit value.	

Public TSA types The table describes the TSA-specific public data types. These types are declared in the *freemaster_tsa.h* header file, which is included in the user application indirectly by the *freemaster.h* file.

FMSTR_TSA_TII	Data type used to hold a descriptor index in the TSA table or a table index in the list of TSA tables.
By default, this is defined as FMSTR_SIZE.	
FMSTR_TSA_TS	Data type used to hold a memory block size, as used in the TSA descriptors.
By default, this is defined as FMSTR_SIZE.	

Public Pipes types The table describes the data types used by the FreeMASTER Pipes API:

FMSTR_HPIPE	Pipe handle that identifies the open-pipe object.
Generally, this is a pointer to a void type.	
FMSTR_PIPE_P(	Integer type required to hold at least 7 bits of data.
Generally, this is an unsigned 8-bit or 16-bit type.	
FMSTR_PIPE_SI	Integer type required to hold at least 16 bits of data.
This is used to store the data buffer sizes.	
FMSTR_PPIPEF	Pointer to the pipe handler function.
See *FMSTR_PipeOpen* for more details.	

Internal types The table describes the data types used internally by the FreeMASTER driver. The data types are declared in the platform-specific header file and they are not available in the application code.

FMSTR_U8	The smallest memory entity. On the vast majority of platforms, this is an unsigned 8-bit integer. On the 56F8xx DSP platform, this is defined as an unsigned 16-bit integer.
FMSTR_U16	Unsigned 16-bit integer.
FMSTR_U32	Unsigned 32-bit integer.
FMSTR_S8	Signed 8-bit integer.
FMSTR_S16	Signed 16-bit integer.
FMSTR_S32	Signed 32-bit integer.
FMSTR_FLOAT	4-byte standard IEEE floating-point type.
FMSTR_FLAGS	Data type forming a union with a structure of flag bit-fields.
FMSTR_SIZE8	Data type holding a general size value, at least 8 bits wide.
FMSTR_INDEX	General for-loop index. Must be signed, at least 16 bits wide.
FMSTR_BCHR	A single character in the communication buffer. Typically, this is an 8-bit unsigned integer, except for the DSP platforms where it is a 16-bit integer.
FMSTR_BPTR	A pointer to the communication buffer (an array of FMSTR_BCHR).

Document references

Links

- This document online: https://mcuxpresso.nxp.com/mcuxsdk/latest/html/middleware/freemaster/doc/index.html

- FreeMASTER tool home: www.nxp.com/freemaster
- FreeMASTER community area: community.nxp.com/community/freemaster
- FreeMASTER GitHub code repo: https://github.com/nxp-mcuxpresso/mcux-freemaster
- MCUXpresso SDK home: www.nxp.com/mcuxpresso
- MCUXpresso SDK builder: mcuxpresso.nxp.com/en

Documents

- *FreeMASTER Usage Serial Driver Implementation* (document AN4752)
- *Integrating FreeMASTER Time Debugging Tool With CodeWarrior For Microcontrollers v10.X Project* (document AN4771)
- *Flash Driver Library For MC56F847xx And MC56F827xx DSC Family* (document AN4860)

Revision history This Table summarizes the changes done to this document since the initial release.

Revision	Date	Description
1.0	03/2006	Limited initial release
2.0	09/2007	Updated for FreeMASTER version. New Freescale document template used.
2.1	12/2007	Added description of the new Fast Recorder feature and its API.
2.2	04/2010	Added support for MPC56xx platform, Added new API for use CAN interface.
2.3	04/2011	Added support for Kxx Kinetis platform and MQX operating system.
2.4	06/2011	Serial driver update, adds support for USB CDC interface.
2.5	08/2011	Added Packet Driven BDM interface.
2.7	12/2013	Added FLEXCAN32 interface, byte access and isr callback configuration option.
2.8	06/2014	Removed obsolete license text, see the software package content for up-to-date license.
2.9	03/2015	Update for driver version 1.8.2 and 1.9: FreeMASTER Pipes, TSA Active Content, LIN Transport Layer support, DEBUG-TX communication troubleshooting, Kinetis SDK support.
3.0	08/2016	Update for driver version 2.0: Added support for MPC56xx, MPC57xx, KEAxx and S32Kxx platforms. New NXP document template as well as new license agreement used. added MCAN interface. Folders structure at the installation destination was rearranged.
4.0	04/2019	Update for driver released as part of FreeMASTER v3.0 and MCUXpresso SDK 2.6. Updated to match new V4 serial communication protocol and new configuration options. This version of the document removes substantial portion of outdated information related to S08, S12, ColdFire, Power and other legacy platforms.
4.1	04/2020	Minor update for FreeMASTER driver included in MCUXpresso SDK 2.8.
4.2	09/2020	Added example applications description and information about the MCUXpresso Config Tools. Fixed the pipe-related API description.
4.3	10/2024	Added description of Network and Segger J-Link RTT interface configuration. Accompanying the MCUXpresso SDK version 24.12.00.
4.4	04/2025	Added Zephyr-specific information. Accompanying the MCUXpresso SDK version 25.06.00.

3.6 MultiCore

3.6.1 Multicore SDK

Multicore Software Development Kit (MCSDK) is a Software Development Kit that provides comprehensive software support for NXP dual/multicore devices. The MCSDK is combined with the MCUXpresso SDK to make the software framework for easy development of multicore applications.

Multicore SDK (MCSDK) Release Notes

Overview These are the release notes for the NXP Multicore Software Development Kit (MCSDK) version 25.09.00.
This software package contains components for efficient work with multicore devices as well as for the
multiprocessor communication.

What is new

- eRPC CHANGELOG
- RPMsg-Lite CHANGELOG
- MCMgr CHANGELOG
- Supported evaluation boards (multicore examples):
  - LPCXpresso55S69
  - FRDM-K32L3A6
  - MIMXRT1170-EVKB
  - MIMXRT1160-EVK
  - MIMXRT1180-EVK
  - MCX-N5XX-EVK
  - MCX-N9XX-EVK
  - FRDM-MCXN947
  - MIMXRT700-EVK
  - KW47-EVK
  - KW47-LOC
  - FRDM-MCXW72
  - MCX-W72-EVK
  - FRDM-IMXRT1186
- Supported evaluation boards (multiprocessor examples):
  - LPCXpresso55S36
  - FRDM-K22F
  - FRDM-K32L2B
  - MIMXRT685-EVK
  - MIMXRT1170-EVKB
  - MIMXRT1180
  - FRDM-MCXN236
  - FRDM-MCXC242
  - FRDM-MCXC444
  - MCX-N9XX-EVK
  - FRDM-MCXN947
  - MIMXRT700-EVK
  - FRDM-IMXRT1186

Development tools The Multicore SDK (MCSDK) was compiled and tested with development tools referred in: Development tools

Release contents This table describes the release contents. Not all MCUXpresso SDK packages contain the whole set of these components.

Deliverable	Location
Multicore SDK location <MCSDK_dir>	<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/
Documentation	<MCSDK_dir>/mcuxsdk-doc/
Embedded Remote Procedure Call component	<MCSDK_dir>/erpc/
Multicore Manager component	<MCSDK_dir>/mcmgr/
RPMsg-Lite	<MCSDK_dir>/rpmsg_lite/
Multicore demo applications	<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/examples/multicore_examples/
Multiprocessor demo applications	<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/examples/multiprocessor_examples/

Multicore SDK release overview Together, the Multicore SDK (MCSDK) and the MCUXpresso SDK (SDK) form a framework for the development of software for NXP multicore devices. The MCSDK release consists of the following elementary software components for multicore:

- Embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC)
- Multicore Manager (MCMGR) - included just in SDK for multicore devices
- Remote Processor Messaging - Lite (RPMsg-Lite) - included just in SDK for multicore devices

The MCSDK is also accompanied with documentation and several multicore and multiprocessor demo applications.

Demo applications The multicore demo applications demonstrate the usage of the MCSDK software components on supported multicore development boards.
The following multicore demo applications are located together with other MCUXpresso SDK examples in
the <MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/examples/multicore_examples subdirectories.

- erpc_matrix_multiply_mu
- erpc_matrix_multiply_mu_rtos
- erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg
- erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_rtos
- erpc_two_way_rpc_rpmsg_rtos
- freertos_message_buffers
- hello_world
- multicore_manager
- rpmsg_lite_pingpong
- rpmsg_lite_pingpong_rtos
- rpmsg_lite_pingpong_dsp
- rpmsg_lite_pingpong_tzm

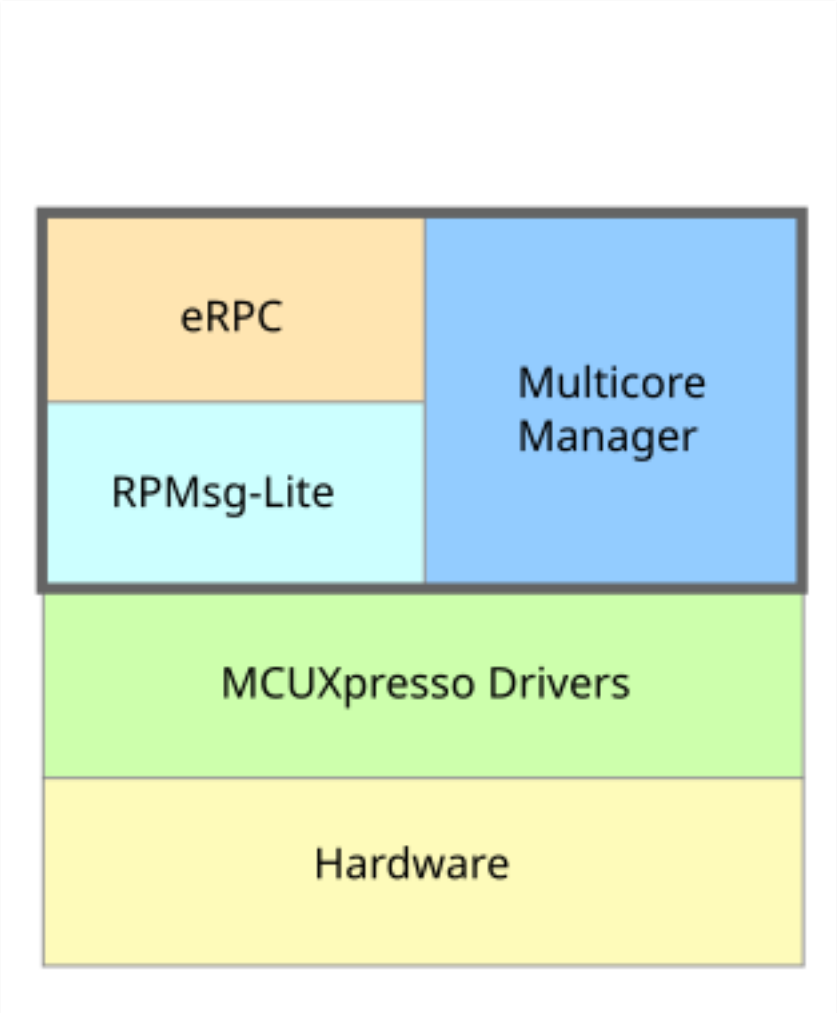
The eRPC multicore component can be leveraged for inter-processor communication and remote procedure calls between SoCs / development boards.
The following multiprocessor demo applications are located together with other MCUXpresso SDK examples in
the <MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/examples/multiprocessor_examples subdirectories.

- erpc_client_matrix_multiply_spi
- erpc_server_matrix_multiply_spi
- erpc_client_matrix_multiply_uart
- erpc_server_matrix_multiply_uart
- erpc_server_dac_adc
- erpc_remote_control

Getting Started with Multicore SDK (MCSDK)

Overview Multicore Software Development Kit (MCSDK) is a Software Development Kit that provides comprehensive software support for NXP dual/multicore devices. The MCSDK is combined with the MCUXpresso SDK to make the software framework for easy development of multicore applications.

The following figure highlights the layers and main software components of the MCSDK.

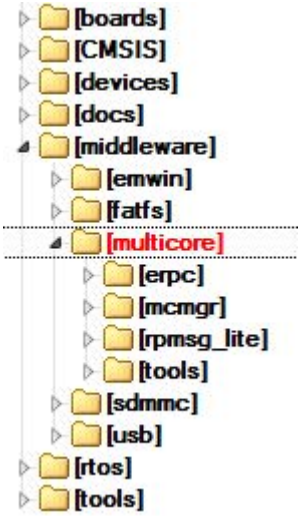


All the MCSDK-related files are located in <MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore folder.

For supported toolchain versions, see the *Multicore SDK v25.09.00 Release Notes* (document MCSDKRN). For the latest version of this and other MCSDK documents, visit www.nxp.com.

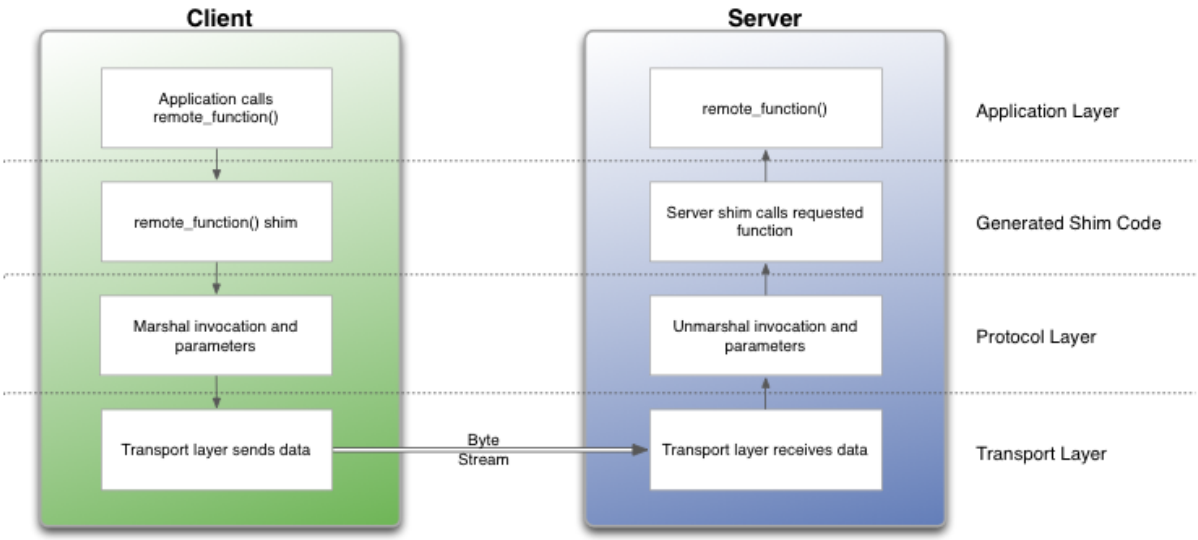
Multicore SDK (MCSDK) components The MCSDK consists of the following software components:

- **Embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC):** This component is a combination of a library and code generator tool that implements a transparent function call interface to remote services (running on a different core).
- **Multicore Manager (MCMGR):** This library maintains information about all cores and starts up secondary/auxiliary cores.
- **Remote Processor Messaging - Lite (RPMsg-Lite):** Inter-Processor Communication library.



Embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) The Embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) is the RPC system created by NXP. The RPC is a mechanism used to invoke a software routine on a remote system via a simple local function call.

When a remote function is called by the client, the function's parameters and an identifier for the called routine are marshaled (or serialized) into a stream of bytes. This byte stream is transported to the server through a communications channel (IPC, TPC/IP, UART, and so on). The server unmarshaled the parameters, determines which function was invoked, and calls it. If the function returns a value, it is marshaled and sent back to the client.



RPC implementations typically use a combination of a tool (erpcgen) and IDL (interface definition language) file to generate source code to handle the details of marshaling a function's parameters and building the data stream.

Main eRPC features:

- Scalable from BareMetal to Linux OS - configurable memory and threading policies.
- Focus on embedded systems - intrinsic support for C, modular, and lightweight implementation.
- Abstracted transport interface - RPMsg is the primary transport for multicore, UART, or SPI-based solutions can be used for multichip.

The eRPC library is located in the <MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/erpc folder. For detailed information about the eRPC, see the documentation available in the <MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/erpc/doc folder.

Multicore Manager (MCMGR) The Multicore Manager (MCMGR) software library provides a number of services for multicore systems.

The main MCMGR features:

- Maintains information about all cores in system.
- Secondary/auxiliary cores startup and shutdown.
- Remote core monitoring and event handling.

The MCMGR library is located in the <MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/mcmgr folder. For detailed information about the MCMGR library, see the documentation available in the <MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/mcmgr/doc folder.

Remote Processor Messaging Lite (RPMsg-Lite) RPMsg-Lite is a lightweight implementation of the RPMsg protocol. The RPMsg protocol defines a standardized binary interface used to communicate between multiple cores in a heterogeneous multicore system. Compared to the legacy OpenAMP implementation, RPMsg-Lite offers a code size reduction, API simplification, and improved modularity.

The main RPMsg protocol features:

- Shared memory interprocessor communication.
- Virtio-based messaging bus.
- Application-defined messages sent between endpoints.

- Portable to different environments/platforms.
- Available in upstream Linux OS.

The RPMsg-Lite library is located in the <MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/rpmsg-lite folder. For detailed information about the RPMsg-Lite, see the RPMsg-Lite User's Guide located in the <MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/rpmsg_lite/doc folder.

MCSDK demo applications Multicore and multiprocessor example applications are stored together with other MCUXpresso SDK examples, in the dedicated multicore subfolder.

Location	Folder
Multicore example projects	<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/examples/multicore_examples/<application_name>/
Multiprocessor example projects	<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/examples/multiprocessor_examples/<application_name>/

See the *Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK* (document MCUXSDKGSUG) and *Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK for XXX Derivatives* documents for more information about the MCUXpresso SDK example folder structure and the location of individual files that form the example application projects. These documents also contain information about building, running, and debugging multicore demo applications in individual supported IDEs. Each example application also contains a readme file that describes the operation of the example and required setup steps.

Inter-Processor Communication (IPC) levels The MCSDK provides several mechanisms for Inter-Processor Communication (IPC). Particular ways and levels of IPC are described in this chapter.

IPC using low-level drivers

The NXP multicore SoCs are equipped with peripheral modules dedicated for data exchange between individual cores. They deal with the Mailbox peripheral for LPC parts and the Messaging Unit (MU) peripheral for Kinetis and i.MX parts. The common attribute of both modules is the ability to provide a means of IPC, allowing multiple CPUs to share resources and communicate with each other in a simple manner.

The most lightweight method of IPC uses the MCUXpresso SDK low-level drivers for these peripherals. Using the Mailbox/MU driver API functions, it is possible to pass a value from core to core via the dedicated registers (could be a scalar or a pointer to shared memory) and also to trigger inter-core interrupts for notifications.

For details about individual driver API functions, see the MCUXpresso SDK API Reference Manual of the specific multicore device. The MCUXpresso SDK is accompanied with the RPMsg-Lite documentation that shows how to use this API in multicore applications.

Messaging mechanism

On top of Mailbox/MU drivers, a messaging system can be implemented, allowing messages to send between multiple endpoints created on each of the CPUs. The RPMsg-Lite library of the MCSDK provides this ability and serves as the preferred MCUXpresso SDK messaging library. It implements ring buffers in shared memory for messages exchange without the need of a locking mechanism.

The RPMsg-Lite provides the abstraction layer and can be easily ported to different multicore platforms and environments (Operating Systems). The advantages of such a messaging system are ease of use (there is no need to study behavior of the used underlying hardware) and smooth application code portability between platforms due to unified messaging API.

However, this costs several kB of code and data memory. The MCUXpresso SDK is accompanied by the RPMsg-Lite documentation and several multicore examples. You can also obtain the latest RPMsg-Lite code from the GitHub account github.com/nxp-mcuxpresso/rpmsg-lite.

Remote procedure calls

To facilitate the IPC even more and to allow the remote functions invocation, the remote procedure call mechanism can be implemented. The eRPC of the MCSDK serves for these purposes and allows the ability to invoke a software routine on a remote system via a simple local function call. Utilizing different transport layers, it is possible to communicate between individual cores of multicore SoCs (via RPMsg-Lite) or between separate processors (via SPI, UART, or TCP/IP). The eRPC is mostly applicable to the MPU parts with enough of memory resources like i.MX parts.

The eRPC library allows you to export existing C functions without having to change their prototypes (in most cases). It is accompanied by the code generator tool that generates the shim code for serialization and invocation based on the IDL file with definitions of data types and remote interfaces (API).

If the communicating peer is running as a Linux OS user-space application, the generated code can be either in C/C++ or Python.

Using the eRPC simplifies the access to services implemented on individual cores. This way, the following types of applications running on dedicated cores can be easily interfaced:

- Communication stacks (USB, Thread, Bluetooth Low Energy, Zigbee)
- Sensor aggregation/fusion applications
- Encryption algorithms
- Virtual peripherals

The eRPC is publicly available from the following GitHub account: github.com/EmbeddedRPC/erpc. Also, the MCUXpresso SDK is accompanied by the eRPC code and several multicore and multiprocessor eRPC examples.

The mentioned IPC levels demonstrate the scalability of the Multicore SDK library. Based on application needs, different IPC techniques can be used. It depends on the complexity, required speed, memory resources, system design, and so on. The MCSDK brings users the possibility for quick and easy development of multicore and multiprocessor applications.

Changelog Multicore SDK

All notable changes to this project will be documented in this file.

The format is based on Keep a Changelog, and this project adheres to Semantic Versioning.

[25.09.00]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.14.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.14.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v5.0.1
  - RPMsg-Lite v5.2.1

[25.06.00]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.14.0

  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.14.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v5.0.0
  - RPMsg-Lite v5.2.0

[25.03.00]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.13.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.13.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.7
  - RPMsg-Lite v5.1.4

[24.12.00]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.13.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.13.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.6
  - RPMsg-Lite v5.1.3

[2.16.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.13.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.13.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.5
  - RPMsg-Lite v5.1.2

[2.15.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.12.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.12.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.5
  - RPMsg-Lite v5.1.1

[2.14.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.11.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.11.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.4
  - RPMsg-Lite v5.1.0

[2.13.0_imxrt1180a0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.10.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.10.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.3
  - RPMsg-Lite v5.0.0

[2.13.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.10.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.10.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.3
  - RPMsg-Lite v5.0.0

[2.12.0_imx93]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.9.1
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.9.1
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.2
  - RPMsg-Lite v4.0.1

[2.12.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.9.1
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.9.1
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.2
  - RPMsg-Lite v4.0.0

[2.11.1]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.9.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.9.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.1
  - RPMsg-Lite v3.2.1

[2.11.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.9.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.9.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.1
  - RPMsg-Lite v3.2.0

[2.10.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.8.1
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.8.1
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.1
  - RPMsg-Lite v3.1.2

[2.9.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.8.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.8.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.1
  - RPMsg-Lite v3.1.1

[2.8.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.7.4
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.7.4
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.0
  - RPMsg-Lite v3.1.0

[2.7.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.7.3
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.7.3
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.0
  - RPMsg-Lite v3.0.0

[2.6.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.7.2
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.7.2
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.0.3
  - RPMsg-Lite v2.2.0

[2.5.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.7.1
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.7.1
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.0.2
  - RPMsg-Lite v2.0.2

[2.4.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.7.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.7.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.0.1
  - RPMsg-Lite v2.0.1

[2.3.1]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.6.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.6.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.0.0
  - RPMsg-Lite v1.2.0

[2.3.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.5.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.5.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v3.0.0
  - RPMsg-Lite v1.2.0

[2.2.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.4.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.4.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v2.0.1
  - RPMsg-Lite v1.1.0

[2.1.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.3.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.3.0

[2.0.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.2.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.2.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v2.0.0
  - RPMsg-Lite v1.0.0

[1.1.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.1.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v1.1.0
  - Open-AMP / RPMsg based on SHA1 ID 44b5f3c0a6458f3cf80 rev01

[1.0.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.0.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v1.0.0
  - Open-AMP / RPMsg based on SHA1 ID 44b5f3c0a6458f3cf80 rev00

Multicore SDK Components

RPMSG-Lite

MCUXpresso SDK : mcuxsdk-middleware-rpmsg-lite

Overview This repository is for MCUXpresso SDK RPMSG-Lite middleware delivery and it contains RPMSG-Lite component officially provided in NXP MCUXpresso SDK. This repository is part of the MCUXpresso SDK overall delivery which is composed of several sub-repositories/projects. Navigate to the top/parent repository mcuxsdk for the complete delivery of MCUXpresso SDK to be able to build and run RPMSG-Lite examples that are based on mcux-sdk-middleware-rpmsg-lite component.

Documentation Overall details can be reviewed here: MCUXpresso SDK Online Documentation

Visit RPMSG-Lite - Documentation to review details on the contents in this sub-repo.

For Further API documentation, please look at doxygen documentation

Setup Instructions on how to install the MCUXpresso SDK provided from GitHub via west manifest Getting Started with SDK - Detailed Installation Instructions

Contribution We welcome and encourage the community to submit patches directly to the rpmsg-lite project placed on github. Contributing can be managed via pull-requests. Before a pull-request is created the code should be tested and properly formatted.

RPMSG-Lite This documentation describes the RPMsg-Lite component, which is a lightweight implementation of the Remote Processor Messaging (RPMsg) protocol. The RPMsg protocol defines a standardized binary interface used to communicate between multiple cores in a heterogeneous multicore system.

Compared to the RPMsg implementation of the Open Asymmetric Multi Processing (OpenAMP) framework (https://github.com/OpenAMP/open-amp), the RPMsg-Lite offers a code size reduction, API simplification, and improved modularity. On smaller Cortex-M0+ based systems, it is recommended to use RPMsg-Lite.

The RPMsg-Lite is an open-source component developed by NXP Semiconductors and released under the BSD-compatible license.

For overview please read RPMSG-Lite VirtIO Overview.

For RPMSG-Lite Design Considerations please read RPMSG-Lite Design Considerations.

Motivation to create RPMsg-Lite There are multiple reasons why RPMsg-Lite was developed. One reason is the need for the small footprint of the RPMsg protocol-compatible communication component, another reason is the simplification of extensive API of OpenAMP RPMsg implementation.

RPMsg protocol was not documented, and its only definition was given by the Linux Kernel and legacy OpenAMP implementations. This has changed with [1] which is a standardization protocol allowing multiple different implementations to coexist and still be mutually compatible.

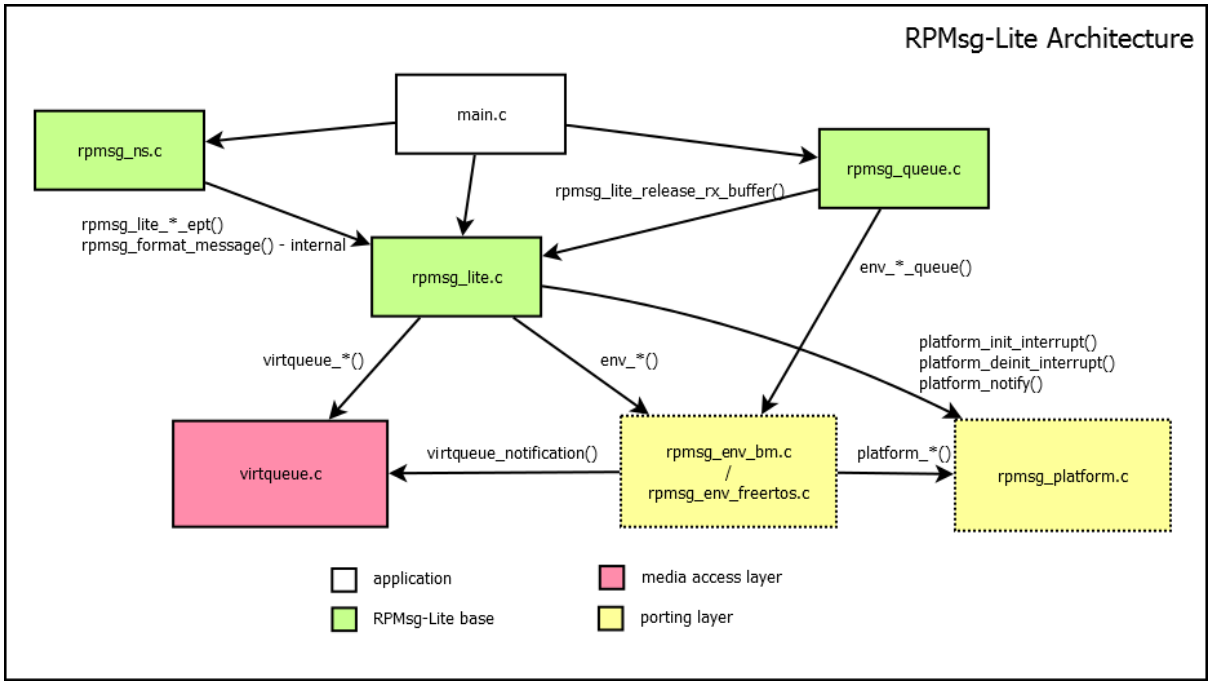
Small MCU-based systems often do not implement dynamic memory allocation. The creation of static API in RPMsg-Lite enables another reduction of resource usage. Not only does the dynamic allocation adds another 5 KB of code size, but also communication is slower and less deterministic, which is a property introduced by dynamic memory. The following table shows some rough comparison data between the OpenAMP RPMsg implementation and new RPMsg-Lite implementation:

Component / Configuration	Flash [B]	RAM [B]
OpenAMP RPMsg / Release (reference)	5547	456 + dynamic
RPMsg-Lite / Dynamic API, Release	3462	56 + dynamic
Relative Difference [%]	~62.4%	~12.3%
RPMsg-Lite / Static API (no malloc), Release	2926	352
Relative Difference [%]	~52.7%	~77.2%

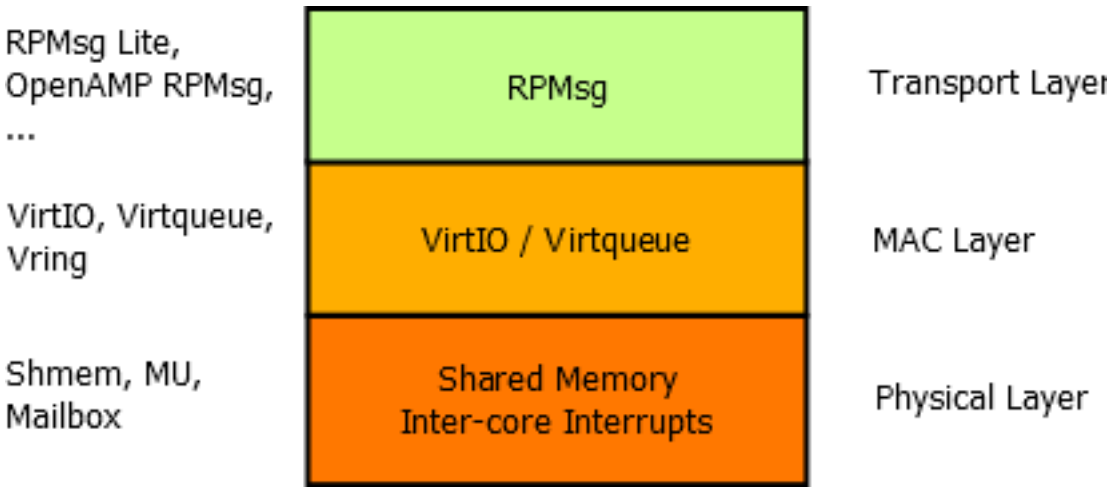
Implementation The implementation of RPMsg-Lite can be divided into three subcomponents, from which two are optional. The core component is situated in rpmsg_lite.c. Two optional components are used to implement a blocking receive API (in rpmsg_queue.c) and dynamic "named" endpoint creation and deletion announcement service (in rpmsg_ns.c).

The actual "media access" layer is implemented in virtqueue.c, which is one of the few files shared with the OpenAMP implementation. This layer mainly defines the shared memory model, and internally defines used components such as vring or virtqueue.

The porting layer is split into two sub-layers: the environment layer and the platform layer. The first sublayer is to be implemented separately for each environment. (The bare metal environment already exists and is implemented in rpmsg_env_bm.c, and the FreeRTOS environment is implemented in rpmsg_env_freertos.c etc.) Only the source file, which matches the used environment, is included in the target application project. The second sublayer is implemented in rpmsg_platform.c and defines low-level functions for interrupt enabling, disabling, and triggering mainly. The situation is described in the following figure:



RPMsg-Lite core sub-component This subcomponent implements a blocking send API and callback-based receive API. The RPMsg protocol is part of the transport layer. This is realized by using so-called endpoints. Each endpoint can be assigned a different receive callback function. However, it is important to notice that the callback is executed in an interrupt environment in current design. Therefore, certain actions like memory allocation are discouraged to execute in the callback. The following figure shows the role of RPMsg in an ISO/OSI-like layered model:



Queue sub-component (optional) This subcomponent is optional and requires implementation of the env_*_queue() functions in the environment porting layer. It uses a blocking receive API, which is common in RTOS-environments. It supports both copy and nocopy blocking receive functions.

Name Service sub-component (optional) This subcomponent is a minimum implementation of the name service which is present in the Linux Kernel implementation of RPMsg. It allows the communicating node both to send announcements about "named" endpoint (in other words, channel) creation or deletion and to receive these announcement taking any user-defined action in an application callback. The endpoint address used to receive name service announcements is arbitrarily fixed to be 53 (0x35).

Usage The application should put the /rpmsg_lite/lib/include directory to the include path and in the application, include either the rpmsg_lite.h header file, or optionally also include the rpmsg_queue.h and/or rpmsg_ns.h files. Both porting sublayers should be provided for you by NXP, but if you plan to use your own RTOS, all you need to do is to implement your own environment layer (in other words, rpmsg_env_myrtos.c) and to include it in the project build.

The initialization of the stack is done by calling the rpmsg_lite_master_init() on the master side and the rpmsg_lite_remote_init() on the remote side. This initialization function must be called prior to any RPMsg-Lite API call. After the init, it is wise to create a communication endpoint, otherwise communication is not possible. This can be done by calling the rpmsg_lite_create_ept() function. It optionally accepts a last argument, where an internal context of the endpoint is created, just in case the RL_USE_STATIC_API option is set to 1. If not, the stack internally calls env_alloc() to allocate dynamic memory for it. In case a callback-based receiving is to be used, an ISR-callback is registered to each new endpoint with user-defined callback data pointer. If a blocking receive is desired (in case of RTOS environment), the rpmsg_queue_create() function must be called before calling rpmsg_lite_create_ept(). The queue handle is passed to the endpoint creation function as a callback data argument and the callback function is set to rpmsg_queue_rx_cb(). Then, it is possible to use rpmsg_queue_receive() function to listen on a queue object for incoming messages. The rpmsg_lite_send() function is used to send messages to the other side.

The RPMsg-Lite also implements no-copy mechanisms for both sending and receiving operations. These methods require specifics that have to be considered when used in an application.

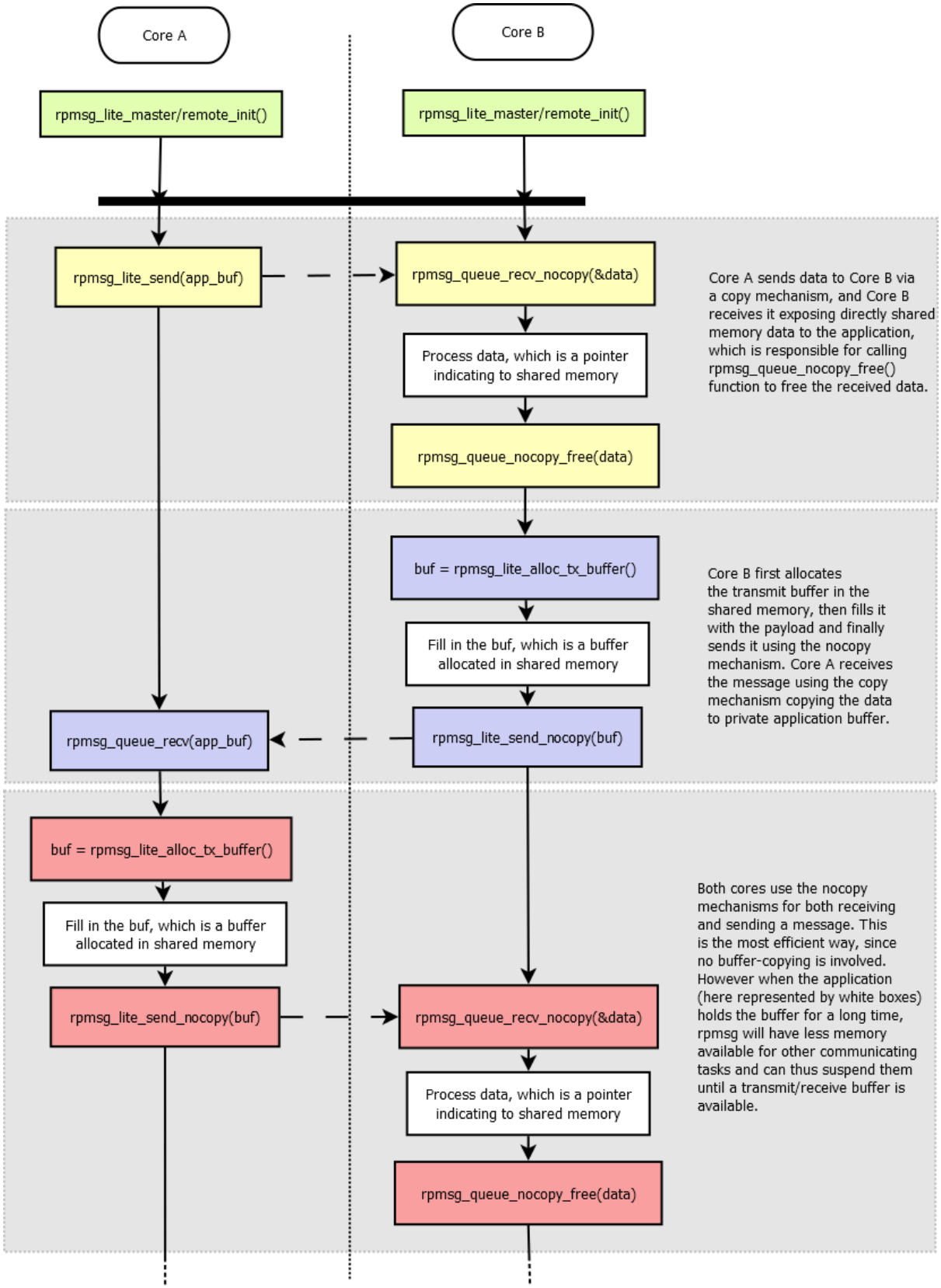
no-copy-send mechanism: This mechanism allows sending messages without the cost for copying data from the application buffer to the RPMsg/virtio buffer in the shared memory. The sequence of no-copy sending steps to be performed is as follows:

- Call the rpmsg_lite_alloc_tx_buffer() function to get the virtio buffer and provide the buffer pointer to the application.
- Fill the data to be sent into the pre-allocated virtio buffer. Ensure that the filled data does not exceed the buffer size (provided as the rpmsg_lite_alloc_tx_buffer() size output parameter).
- Call the rpmsg_lite_send_nocopy() function to send the message to the destination endpoint. Consider the cache functionality and the virtio buffer alignment. See the rpmsg_lite_send_nocopy() function description below.

no-copy-receive mechanism: This mechanism allows reading messages without the cost for copying data from the virtio buffer in the shared memory to the application buffer. The sequence of no-copy receiving steps to be performed is as follows:

- Call the rpmsg_queue_recv_nocopy() function to get the virtio buffer pointer to the received data.
- Read received data directly from the shared memory.
- Call the rpmsg_queue_nocopy_free() function to release the virtio buffer and to make it available for the next data transfer.

The user is responsible for destroying any RPMsg-Lite objects he has created in case of deinitialization. In order to do this, the function rpmsg_queue_destroy() is used to destroy a queue, rpmsg_lite_destroy_ept() is used to destroy an endpoint and finally, rpmsg_lite_deinit() is used to deinitialize the RPMsg-Lite intercore communication stack. Deinitialize all endpoints using a queue before deinitializing the queue. Otherwise, you are actively invalidating the used queue handle, which is not allowed. RPMsg-Lite does not check this internally, since its main aim is to be lightweight.



Examples RPMsg_Lite multicore examples are part of NXP MCUXpressoSDK packages. Visit https://mcuxpresso.nxp.com to configure, build and download these packages. To get the board list with multicore support (RPMsg_Lite included) use filtering based on Middleware and search for 'multicore' string. Once the selected package with the multicore middleware is downloaded,

see

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multicore_examples for RPMsg_Lite multicore examples with 'rpmsg_lite_' name prefix.

Another way of getting NXP MCUXpressoSDK RPMsg_Lite multicore examples is using the mcuxsdk-manifests Github repo. Follow the description how to use the West tool to clone and update the mcuxsdk-manifests repo in readme section. Once done the armgcc rpmsg_lite examples can be found in

mcuxsdk/examples/_<board_name>/multicore_examples

You can use the evkmimxrt1170 as the board_name for instance. Similar to MCUXpressoSDK packages the RPMsg_Lite examples use the 'rpmsg_lite_' name prefix.

Notes

Environment layers implementation Several environment layers are provided in lib/rpmsg_lite/porting/environment folder. Not all of them are fully tested however. Here is the list of environment layers that passed testing:

- rpmsg_env_bm.c
- rpmsg_env_freertos.c
- rpmsg_env_xos.c
- rpmsg_env_threadx.c

The rest of environment layers has been created and used in some experimental projects, it has been running well at the time of creation but due to the lack of unit testing there is no guarantee it is still fully functional.

Shared memory configuration It is important to correctly initialize/configure the shared memory for data exchange in the application. The shared memory must be accessible from both the master and the remote core and it needs to be configured as Non-Cacheable memory. Dedicated shared memory section in liker file is also a good practise, it is recommended to use linker files from MCUXpressSDK packages for NXP devices based applications. It needs to be ensured no other application part/component is unintentionally accessing this part of memory.

Configuration options The RPMsg-Lite can be configured at the compile time. The default configuration is defined in the rpmsg_default_config.h header file. This configuration can be customized by the user by including rpmsg_config.h file with custom settings. The following table summarizes all possible RPMsg-Lite configuration options.

Configuration option	Default value	Usage
RL_MS_PE	(1)	Delay in milliseconds used in non-blocking API functions for polling.
RL_BUFFE	(496)	Size of the buffer payload, it must be equal to (240, 496, 1008, ...) [2^n - 16]
RL_BUFFE	(2)	Number of the buffers, it must be power of two (2, 4, ...)
RL_API_H	(1)	Zero-copy API functions enabled/disabled.
RL_USE_S	(0)	Static API functions (no dynamic allocation) enabled/disabled.
RL_USE_D	(0)	Memory cache management of shared memory. Use in case of data cache is enabled for shared memory.
RL_CLEAF	(0)	Clearing used buffers before returning back to the pool of free buffers enabled/disabled.
RL_USE_M	(0)	When enabled IPC interrupts are managed by the Multicore Manager (IPC interrupts router), when disabled RPMsg-Lite manages IPC interrupts by itself.
RL_USE_E	(0)	When enabled the environment layer uses its own context. Required for some environments (QNX). The default value is 0 (no context, saves some RAM).
RL_DEBU(	(0)	When enabled buffer pointers passed to rpmsg_lite_send_nocopy() and rpmsg_lite_release_rx_buffer() functions (enabled by RL_API_HAS_ZEROCOPY config) are checked to avoid passing invalid buffer pointer. The default value is 0 (disabled). Do not use in RPMsg-Lite to Linux configuration.
RL_ALLO\	(0)	When enabled the opposite side is notified each time received buffers are consumed and put into the queue of available buffers. Enable this option in RPMsg-Lite to Linux configuration to allow unblocking of the Linux blocking send. The default value is 0 (RPMsg-Lite to RPMsg-Lite communication).
RL_ALLO\	(0)	It allows to define custom shared memory configuration and replacing the shared memory related global settings from rpmsg_config.h This is useful when multiple instances are running in parallel but different shared memory arrangement (vring size & alignment, buffers size & count) is required. The default value is 0 (all RPMsg_Lite instances use the same shared memory arrangement as defined by common config macros).
RL_ASSER	see rpmsg	Assert implementation.

How to format rpmsg-lite code To format code, use the application developed by Google, named *clang-format*. This tool is part of the llvm project. Currently, the clang-format 10.0.0 version is used for rpmsg-lite. The set of style settings used for clang-format is defined in the .clang-format file, placed in a root of the rpmsg-lite directory where Python script run_clang_format.py can be executed. This script executes the application named *clang-format.exe*. You need to have the path of this application in the OS's environment path, or you need to change the script.

References

[1] M. Novak, M. Cingel, Lockless Shared Memory Based Multicore Communication Protocol
Copyright © 2016 Freescale Semiconductor, Inc. Copyright © 2016-2025 NXP

Changelog RPMSG-Lite All notable changes to this project will be documented in this file.

The format is based on Keep a Changelog, and this project adheres to Semantic Versioning.

Unreleased

Added

- RT700 porting layer added support to send rpmsg messages between CM33_0 <-> Hifi1 and CM33_1 <-> Hifi4 cores.
- Add new platform macro RL_PLATFORM_MAX_ISR_COUNT this will set number of IRQ count per platform. This macro is then used in environment layers to set isr_table size where irq handles are registered. It size should match the bit length of VQ_ID so all combinations can fit into table.

v5.2.1

Added

- Doc added RPMSG-Lite VirtIO Overview
- Doc added RPSMG-Lite Design Considerations
- Added frdmimxrt1186 unit testing

Fixed

- Fixed CERT-C INT31-C violation in platform_notify function in rpmsg_platform.c for imxrt700_m33, imxrt700_hifi4, imxrt700_hifi1 platforms

v5.2.0

Added

- Add MCXL20 porting layer and unit testing
- New utility macro RL_CALCULATE_BUFFER_COUNT_DOWN_SAFE to safely determine maximum buffer count within shared memory while preventing integer underflow.
- RT700 platform add support for MCMGR in DSPs

Changed

- Change rpmsg_platform.c to support new MCMGR API
- Improved input validation in initialization functions to properly handle insufficient memory size conditions.
- Refactored repeated buffer count calculation pattern for better code maintainability.
- To make sure that remote has already registered IRQ there is required App level IPC mechanism to notify master about it

Fixed

- Fixed env_wait_for_link_up function to handle timeout in link state checks for baremetal and qnx environment, RL_BLOCK mode can be used to wait indefinitely.
- Fixed CERT-C INT31-C violation by adding compile-time check to ensure RL_PLATFORM_HIGHEST_LINK_ID remains within safe range for 16-bit casting in virtqueue ID creation.

- Fixed CERT-C INT30-C violations by adding protection against unsigned integer underflow in shared memory calculations, specifically in shmem_length - (uint32_t)RL_VRING_OVERHEAD and shmem_length - 2U * shmem_config.vring_size expressions.
- Fixed CERT INT31-C violation in platform_interrupt_disable() and similar functions by replacing unsafe cast from uint32_t to int32_t with a return of 0 constant.
- Fixed unsigned integer underflow in rpmsg_lite_alloc_tx_buffer() where subtracting header size from buffer size could wrap around if buffer was too small, potentially leading to incorrect buffer sizing.
- Fixed CERT-C INT31-C violation in rpmsg_lite.c where size parameter was cast from uint32_t to uint16_t without proper validation.
  - Applied consistent masking approach to both size and flags parameters: (uint16_t)(value & 0xFFFFU).
  - This fix prevents potential data loss when size values exceed 65535.
- Fixed CERT INT31-C violation in env_memset functions by explicitly converting int32_t values to unsigned char using bit masking. This prevents potential data loss or misinterpretation when passing values outside the unsigned char range (0-255) to the standard memset() function.
- Fixed CERT-C INT31-C violations in RPMsg-Lite environment porting: Added validation checks for signed-to-unsigned integer conversions to prevent data loss and misinterpretation.
  - rpmsg_env_freertos.c: Added validation before converting int32_t to UBaseType_t.
  - rpmsg_env_qnx.c: Fixed format string and added validation before assigning to mqstat fields.
  - rpmsg_env_threadx.c: Added validation to prevent integer overflow and negative values.
  - rpmsg_env_xos.c: Added range checking before casting to uint16_t.
  - rpmsg_env_zephyr.c: Added validation before passing values to k_msgq_init.
- Fixed a CERT INT31-C compliance issue in env_get_current_queue_size() function where an unsigned queue count was cast to a signed int32_t without proper validation, which could lead to lost or misinterpreted data if queue size exceeded INT32_MAX.
- Fixed CERT INT31-C violation in rpmsg_platform.c where memcmp() return value (signed int) was compared with unsigned constant without proper type handling.
- Fixed CERT INT31-C violation in rpmsg_platform.c where casting from uint32_t to uint16_t could potentially result in data loss. Changed length variable type from uint16_t to uint32_t to properly handle memory address differences without truncation.
- Fixed potential integer overflow in env_sleep_msec() function in ThreadX environment implementation by rearranging calculation order in the sleep duration formula.
- Fixed CERT-C INT31-C violation in RPMsg-Lite where bitwise NOT operations on integer constants were performed in signed integer context before being cast to unsigned. This could potentially lead to misinterpreted data on imx943 platform.
- Added RL_MAX_BUFFER_COUNT (32768U) and RL_MAX_VRING_ALIGN (65536U) limit to ensure alignment values cannot contribute to integer overflow
- Fixed CERT INT31-C violation in vring_need_event(), added cast to uint16_t for each operand.

v5.1.4 - 27-Mar-2025

Added

- Add KW43B43 porting layer

Changed

- Doxygen bump to version 1.9.6

v5.1.3 - 13-Jan-2025

Added

- Memory cache management of shared memory. Enable with #define RL_USE_DCACHE (1) in rpmsg_config.h in case of data cache is used.
- Cmake/Kconfig support added.
- Porting layers for imx95, imxrt700, mcmxw71x, mcmxw72x, kw47b42 added.

v5.1.2 - 08-Jul-2024

Changed

- Zephyr-related changes.
- Minor Misra corrections.

v5.1.1 - 19-Jan-2024

Added

- Test suite provided.
- Zephyr support added.

Changed

- Minor changes in platform and env. layers, minor test code updates.

v5.1.0 - 02-Aug-2023

Added

- RPMsg-Lite: Added aarch64 support.

Changed

- RPMsg-Lite: Increased the queue size to (2 * RL_BUFFER_COUNT) to cover zero copy cases.
- Code formatting using LLVM16.

Fixed

- Resolved issues in ThreadX env. layer implementation.

v5.0.0 - 19-Jan-2023

Added

- Timeout parameter added to rpmsg_lite_wait_for_link_up API function.

Changed

- Improved debug check buffers implementation - instead of checking the pointer fits into shared memory check the presence in the VirtIO ring descriptors list.
- VRING_SIZE is set based on number of used buffers now (as calculated in vring_init) - updated for all platforms that are not communicating to Linux rpmsg counterpart.

Fixed

- Fixed wrong RL_VRING_OVERHEAD macro comment in platform.h files
- Misra corrections.

v4.0.0 - 20-Jun-2022

Added

- Added support for custom shared memory arrangement per the RPMsg_Lite instance.
- Introduced new rpmsg_lite_wait_for_link_up() API function - this allows to avoid using busy loops in rtos environments, GitHub PR #21.

Changed

- Adjusted rpmsg_lite_is_link_up() to return RL_TRUE/RL_FALSE.

v3.2.0 - 17-Jan-2022

Added

- Added support for i.MX8 MP multicore platform.

Changed

- Improved static allocations - allow OS-specific objects being allocated statically, GitHub PR #14.
- Aligned rpmsg_env_xos.c and some platform layers to latest static allocation support.

Fixed

- Minor Misra and typo corrections, GitHub PR #19, #20.

v3.1.2 - 16-Jul-2021

Added

- Addressed MISRA 21.6 rule violation in rpmsg_env.h (use SDK's PRINTF in MCUXpressoSDK examples, otherwise stdio printf is used).
- Added environment layers for XOS.
- Added support for i.MX RT500, i.MX RT1160 and i.MX RT1170 multicore platforms.

Fixed

- Fixed incorrect description of the rpmsg_lite_get_endpoint_from_addr function.

Changed

- Updated RL_BUFFER_COUNT documentation (issue #10).
- Updated imxrt600_hifi4 platform layer.

v3.1.1 - 15-Jan-2021

Added

- Introduced RL_ALLOW_CONSUMED_BUFFERS_NOTIFICATION config option to allow opposite side notification sending each time received buffers are consumed and put into the queue of available buffers.
- Added environment layers for Threadx.
- Added support for i.MX8QM multicore platform.

Changed

- Several MISRA C-2012 violations addressed.

v3.1.0 - 22-Jul-2020

Added

- Added support for several new multicore platforms.

Fixed

- MISRA C-2012 violations fixed (7.4).
- Fixed missing lock in rpmsg_lite_rx_callback() for QNX env.
- Correction of rpmsg_lite_instance structure members description.
- Address -Waddress-of-packed-member warnings in GCC9.

Changed

- Clang update to v10.0.0, code re-formatted.

v3.0.0 - 20-Dec-2019

Added

- Added support for several new multicore platforms.

Fixed

- MISRA C-2012 violations fixed, incl. data types consolidation.
- Code formatted.

v2.2.0 - 20-Mar-2019

Added

- Added configuration macro RL_DEBUG_CHECK_BUFFERS.
- Several MISRA violations fixed.
- Added environment layers for QNX and Zephyr.
- Allow environment context required for some environment (controlled by the RL_USE_ENVIRONMENT_CONTEXT configuration macro).
- Data types consolidation.

v1.1.0 - 28-Apr-2017

Added

- Supporting i.MX6SX and i.MX7D MPU platforms.
- Supporting LPC5411x MCU platform.
- Baremental and FreeRTOS support.
- Support of copy and zero-copy transfer.
- Support of static API (without dynamic allocations).

Multicore Manager

MCUXpresso SDK : mcuxsdk-middleware-mcmgr (Multicore Manager)

Overview This repository is for MCUXpresso SDK Multicore Manager middleware delivery and it contains Multicore Manager component officially provided in NXP MCUXpresso SDK. This repository is part of the MCUXpresso SDK overall delivery which is composed of several sub-repositories/projects. Navigate to the top/parent repository mcuxsdk for the complete delivery of MCUXpresso SDK to be able to build and run Multicore Manager examples that are based on mcux-sdk-middleware-mcmgr component.

Documentation Overall details can be reviewed here: MCUXpresso SDK Online Documentation

Visit Multicore Manager - Documentation to review details on the contents in this sub-repo.

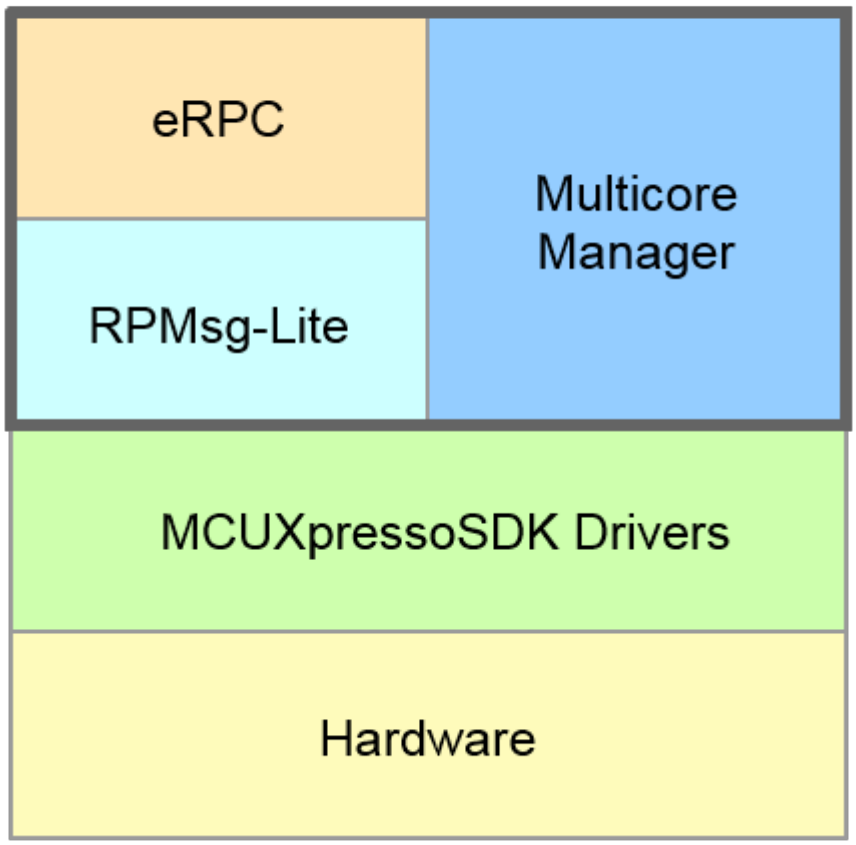
For Further API documentation, please look at doxygen documentation

Setup Instructions on how to install the MCUXpresso SDK provided from GitHub via west manifest Getting Started with SDK - Detailed Installation Instructions

Contribution We welcome and encourage the community to submit patches directly to the mcmgr project placed on github. Contributing can be managed via pull-requests. Before a pull-request is created the code should be tested and properly formatted.

Multicore Manager (MCMGR) The Multicore Manager (MCMGR) software library provides a number of services for multicore systems. This library is distributed as a part of the Multicore SDK (MCSDK). Together, the MCSDK and the MCUXpresso SDK (SDK) form a framework for development of software for NXP multicore devices.

The MCMGR component is located in the <MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/mcmgr directory.



The Multicore Manager provides the following major functions:

- Maintains information about all cores in system.
- Secondary/auxiliary core(s) startup and shutdown.
- Remote core monitoring and event handling.

Usage of the MCMGR software component The main use case of MCMGR is the secondary/auxiliary core start. This functionality is performed by the public API function.

Example of MCMGR usage to start secondary core:

```
#include "mcmgr.h"

void main()
{
    /* Initialize MCMGR - low level multicore management library.
       Call this function as close to the reset entry as possible,
       (into the startup sequence) to allow CoreUp event triggering. */
    MCMGR_EarlyInit();

    /* Initialize MCMGR, install generic event handlers */
    MCMGR_Init();

    /* Boot secondary core application from the CORE1_BOOT_ADDRESS, pass "1" as startup data,␣
↪starting synchronously. */
    MCMGR_StartCore(kMCMGR_Core1, CORE1_BOOT_ADDRESS, 1, kMCMGR_Start_Synchronous);
.
.
.
    /* Stop secondary core execution. */
    MCMGR_StopCore(kMCMGR_Core1);
}
```

Some platforms allow stopping and re-starting the secondary core application again, using the MCMGR_StopCore / MCMGR_StartCore API calls. It is necessary to ensure the initially loaded image is not corrupted before re-starting, especially if it deals with the RAM target. Cache coherence has to be considered/ensured as well.

Another important MCMGR feature is the ability for remote core monitoring and handling of events such as reset, exception, and application events. Application-specific callback functions for events are registered by the MCMGR_RegisterEvent() API. Triggering these events is done using the MCMGR_TriggerEvent() API. mcmgr_event_type_t enums all possible event types.

An example of MCMGR usage for remote core monitoring and event handling. Code for the primary side:

```
#include "mcmgr.h"

#define APP_RPMSG_READY_EVENT_DATA  (1)
#define APP_NUMBER_OF_CORES (2)
#define APP_SECONDARY_CORE kMCMGR_Core1

/* Callback function registered via the MCMGR_RegisterEvent() and triggered by MCMGR_TriggerEvent()␣
↪called on the secondary core side */
void RPMsgRemoteReadyEventHandler(mcmgr_core_t coreNum, uint16_t eventData, void *context)
{
    uint16_t *data = &((uint16_t *)context)[coreNum];

    *data = eventData;
}

void main()
{
    uint16_t RPMsgRemoteReadyEventData[NUMBER_OF_CORES] = {0};

    /* Initialize MCMGR - low level multicore management library.
       Call this function as close to the reset entry as possible,
       (into the startup sequence) to allow CoreUp event triggering. */
    MCMGR_EarlyInit();
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    /* Initialize MCMGR, install generic event handlers */
    MCMGR_Init();

    /* Register the application event before starting the secondary core */
    MCMGR_RegisterEvent(kMCMGR_RemoteApplicationEvent, RPMsgRemoteReadyEventHandler, (void␣
↪*)RPMsgRemoteReadyEventData);

    /* Boot secondary core application from the CORE1_BOOT_ADDRESS, pass rpmsg_lite_base address␣
↪as startup data, starting synchronously. */
    MCMGR_StartCore(APP_SECONDARY_CORE, CORE1_BOOT_ADDRESS, (uint32_t)rpmsg_lite_
↪base, kMCMGR_Start_Synchronous);

    /* Wait until the secondary core application signals the rpmsg remote has been initialized and is ready to␣
↪communicate. */
    while(APP_RPMSG_READY_EVENT_DATA != RPMsgRemoteReadyEventData[APP_SECONDARY_
↪CORE]) {};
.
.
.
}
```

Code for the secondary side:

```
#include "mcmgr.h"

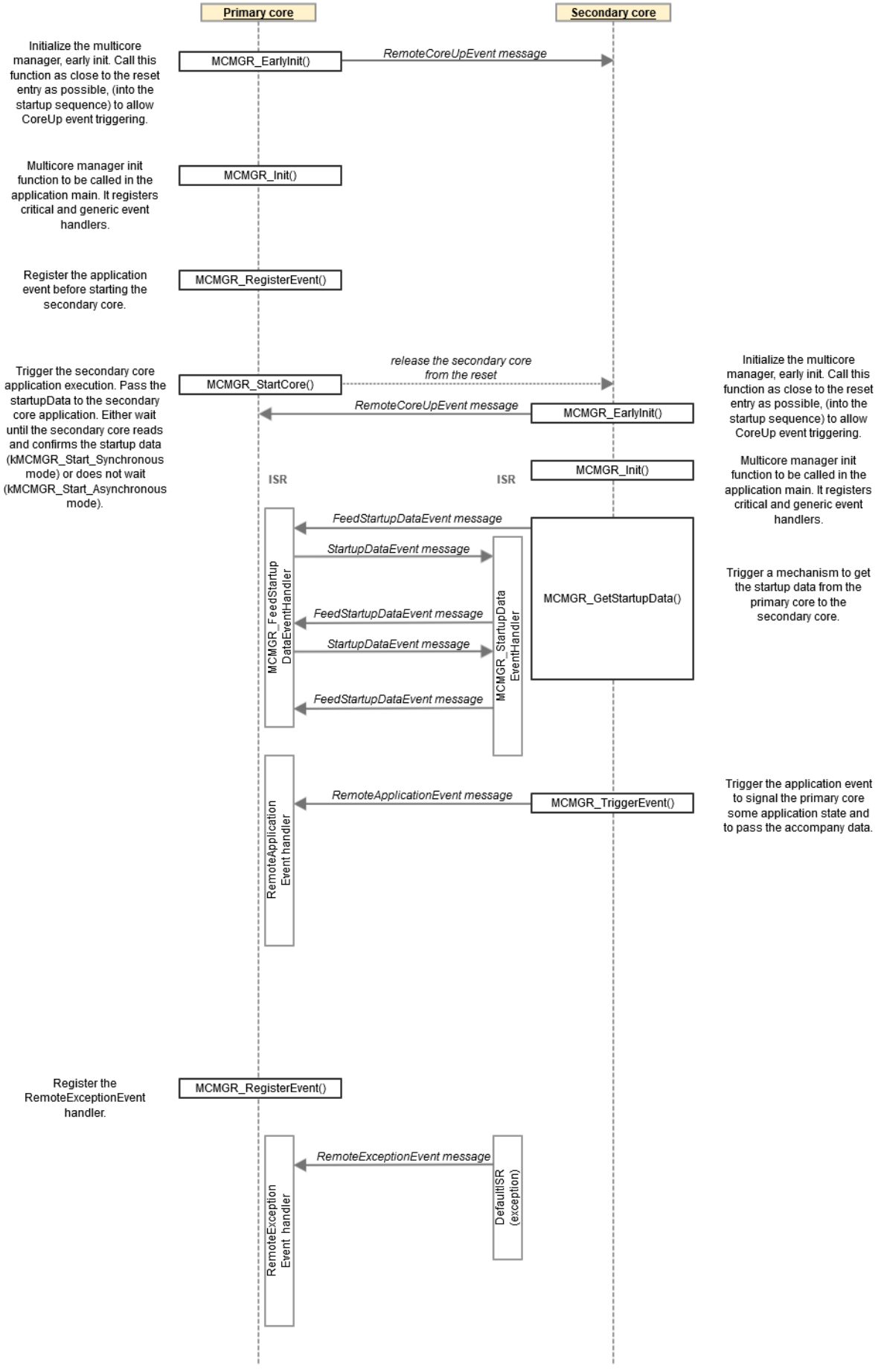
#define APP_RPMSG_READY_EVENT_DATA  (1)

void main()
{
    /* Initialize MCMGR - low level multicore management library.
       Call this function as close to the reset entry as possible,
       (into the startup sequence) to allow CoreUp event triggering. */
    MCMGR_EarlyInit();

    /* Initialize MCMGR, install generic event handlers */
    MCMGR_Init();
.
.
.

    /* Signal the to other core that we are ready by triggering the event and passing the APP_RPMSG_
↪READY_EVENT_DATA */
    MCMGR_TriggerEvent(kMCMGR_Core0, kMCMGR_RemoteApplicationEvent, APP_RPMSG_
↪READY_EVENT_DATA);
.
.
.
}
```

MCMGR Data Exchange Diagram The following picture shows how the handshakes are supposed to work between the two cores in the MCMGR software.


Primary core
Secondary core
Initialize the multicore manager, early init. Call this function as close to the reset entry as possible, (into the startup sequence) to allow CoreUp event triggering.
MCMGR_EarlyInit()
RemoteCoreUpEvent message
Multicore manager init function to be called in the application main. It registers critical and generic event handlers.
MCMGR_Init()
Register the application event before starting the secondary core.
MCMGR_RegisterEvent()
Trigger the secondary core application execution. Pass the startupData to the secondary core application. Either wait until the secondary core reads and confirms the startup data (kMCMGR_Start_Synchronous mode) or does not wait (kMCMGR_Start_Asynchronous mode).
MCMGR_StartCore()
release the secondary core from the reset
RemoteCoreUpEvent message
MCMGR_EarlyInit()
Initialize the multicore manager, early init. Call this function as close to the reset entry as possible, (into the startup sequence) to allow CoreUp event triggering.
MCMGR_Init()
Multicore manager init function to be called in the application main. It registers critical and generic event handlers.
ISR
ISR
FeedStartupDataEvent message
StartupDataEvent message
FeedStartupDataEvent message
StartupDataEvent message
FeedStartupDataEvent message
MCMGR_FeedStartup DataEventHandler
MCMGR_StartupData EventHandler
MCMGR_GetStartupData()
Trigger a mechanism to get the startup data from the primary core to the secondary core.
RemoteApplicationEvent message
MCMGR_TriggerEvent()
RemoteApplication Event handler
Trigger the application event to signal the primary core some application state and to pass the accompany data.
Register the RemoteExceptionEvent handler.
MCMGR_RegisterEvent()
RemoteExceptionEvent message
RemoteException Event handler
DefaultISR (exception)

Changelog Multicore Manager All notable changes to this project will be documented in this file.

The format is based on Keep a Changelog, and this project adheres to Semantic Versioning.

v5.0.1

Added

- Added frdmimxrt1186 unit testing

Changed

- [KW43] Rename core#1 reset control register

Fixed

- Added CX flag into CMakeLists.txt to allow c++ build compatibility.
- Fix path to mcmgr headers directory in doxyfile

v5.0.0

Added

- Added MCMGR_BUSY_POLL_COUNT macro to prevent infinite polling loops in MCMGR operations.
- Implemented timeout mechanism for all polling loops in MCMGR code.
- Added support to handle more then two cores. Breaking API change by adding parameter coreNum specifying core number in functions bellow.
  - MCMGR_GetStartupData(uint32_t *startupData, mcmgr_core_t coreNum)
  - MCMGR_TriggerEvent(mcmgr_event_type_t type, uint16_t eventData, mcmgr_core_t coreNum)
  - MCMGR_TriggerEventForce(mcmgr_event_type_t type, uint16_t eventData, mcmgr_core_t coreNum)
  - typedef void (*mcmgr_event_callback_t)(uint16_t data, void *context, mcmgr_core_t coreNum);

  When registering the event with function MCMGR_RegisterEvent() user now needs to provide callbackData pointer to array of elements per every core in system (see README.md for example).In case of systems with only two cores the coreNum in callback can be ignored as events can arrive only from one core. Please see Porting guide for more details: PortingGuideTo_v5.md
- Updated all porting files to support new MCMGR API.
- Added new platform specific include file mcmgr_platform.h. It will contain common platform specific macros that can be then used in mcmgr and application. e.g. platform core count MCMGR_CORECOUNT 4.
- Move all header files to new inc directory.
- Added new platform-specific include files inc/platform/<platform_name>/mcmgr_platform.h.

Added

- Add MCXL20 porting layer and unit testing

v4.1.7

Fixed

- mcmgr__stop__core__internal() function now returns kStatus__MCMGR__NotImplemented status code instead of kStatus__MCMGR__Success when device does not support stop of secondary core. Ports affected: kw32w1, kw45b41, kw45b42, mcxw716, mcxw727.

[v4.1.6]

Added

- Multicore Manager moved to standalone repository.
- Add porting layers for imxrt700, mcmxw727, kw47b42.
- New MCMGR_ProcessDeferredRxIsr() API added.

[v4.1.5]

Added

- Add notification into MCMGR_EarlyInit and mcmgr_early_init_internal functions to avoid using uninitialized data in their implementations.

[v4.1.4]

Fixed

- Avoid calling tx isr callbacks when respective Messaging Unit Transmit Interrupt Enable flag is not set in the CR/TCR register.
- Messaging Unit RX and status registers are cleared after the initialization.

[v4.1.3]

Added

- Add porting layers for imxrt1180.

Fixed

- mu_isr() updated to avoid calling tx isr callbacks when respective Transmit Interrupt Enable flag is not set in the CR/TCR register.
- mcmgr_mu_internal.c code adaptation to new supported SoCs.

[v4.1.2]

Fixed

- Update mcmgr_stop_core_internal() implementations to set core state to kMCMGR_ResetCoreState.

[v4.1.0]

Fixed

- Code adjustments to address MISRA C-2012 Rules

[v4.0.3]

Fixed

- Documentation updated to describe handshaking in a graphic form.
- Minor code adjustments based on static analysis tool findings

[v4.0.2]

Fixed

- Align porting layers to the updated MCUXpressoSDK feature files.

[v4.0.1]

Fixed

- Code formatting, removed unused code

[v4.0.0]

Added

- Add new MCMGR_TriggerEventForce() API.

[v3.0.0]

Removed

- Removed MCMGR_LoadApp(), MCMGR_MapAddress() and MCMGR_SignalReady()

Modified

- Modified MCMGR_GetStartupData()

Added

- Added MCMGR_EarlyInit(), MCMGR_RegisterEvent() and MCMGR_TriggerEvent()
- Added the ability for remote core monitoring and event handling

[v2.0.1]

Fixed

- Updated to be Misra compliant.

[v2.0.0]

Added

- Support for lpcxpresso54114 board.

[v1.1.0]

Fixed

- Ported to KSDK 2.0.0.

[v1.0.0]

Added

- Initial release.

eRPC

MCUXpresso SDK : mcuxsdk-middleware-erpc

Overview This repository is for MCUXpresso SDK eRPC middleware delivery and it contains eRPC component officially provided in NXP MCUXpresso SDK. This repository is part of the MCUXpresso SDK overall delivery which is composed of several sub-repositories/projects. Navigate to the top/parent repository mcuxsdk for the complete delivery of MCUXpresso SDK to be able to build and run eRPC examples that are based on mcux-sdk-middleware-erpc component.

Documentation Overall details can be reviewed here: MCUXpresso SDK Online Documentation

Visit eRPC - Documentation to review details on the contents in this sub-repo.

Setup Instructions on how to install the MCUXpresso SDK provided from GitHub via west manifest Getting Started with SDK - Detailed Installation Instructions

Contribution We welcome and encourage the community to submit patches directly to the eRPC project placed on github. Contributing can be managed via pull-requests. Before a pull-request is created the code should be tested and properly formatted.

---

eRPC

- *MCUXpresso SDK : mcuxsdk-middleware-erpc*
  - *Overview*
  - *Documentation*
  - *Setup*
  - *Contribution*
- *eRPC*
  - *About*
  - *Releases*
    - *Edge releases*
  - *Documentation*
  - *Examples*
  - *References*
  - *Directories*
  - *Building and installing*
    - *Requirements*
      - *Windows*
      - *Mac OS X*
    - *Building*
      - *CMake and KConfig*
      - *Make*
    - *Installing for Python*
  - *Known issues and limitations*
  - *Code providing*

About

eRPC (Embedded RPC) is an open source Remote Procedure Call (RPC) system for multichip embedded systems and heterogeneous multicore SoCs.

Unlike other modern RPC systems, such as the excellent Apache Thrift, eRPC distinguishes itself by being designed for tightly coupled systems, using plain C for remote functions, and having a small code size (<5kB). It is not intended for high performance distributed systems over a network.

eRPC does not force upon you any particular API style. It allows you to export existing C functions, without having to change their prototypes. (There are limits, of course.) And although the internal infrastructure is written in C++, most users will be able to use only the simple C setup APIs shown in the examples below.

A code generator tool called erpcgen is included. It accepts input IDL files, having an .erpc extension, that have definitions of your data types and remote interfaces, and generates the shim code that handles serialization and invocation. erpcgen can generate either C/C++ or Python code.

Example .erpc file:

```
// Define a data type.
enum LEDName { kRed, kGreen, kBlue }

// An interface is a logical grouping of functions.
interface IO {
    // Simple function declaration with an empty reply.
    set_led(LEDName whichLed, bool onOrOff) -> void
}
```

Client side usage:

```
void example_client(void) {
    erpc_transport_t transport;
    erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
    erpc_client_t client_manager;

    /* Init eRPC client infrastructure */
    transport = erpc_transport_cmsis_uart_init(Driver_USART0);
    message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_dynamic_init();
    client_manager = erpc_client_init(transport, message_buffer_factory);

    /* init eRPC client IO service */
    initIO_client(client_manager);

    // Now we can call the remote function to turn on the green LED.
    set_led(kGreen, true);

    /* deinit objects */
    deinitIO_client();
    erpc_client_deinit(client_manager);
    erpc_mbf_dynamic_deinit(message_buffer_factory);
    erpc_transport_tcp_deinit(transport);
}
```

```
void example_client(void) {
    erpc_transport_t transport;
    erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
    erpc_client_t client_manager;

    /* Init eRPC client infrastructure */
    transport = erpc_transport_cmsis_uart_init(Driver_USART0);
    message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_dynamic_init();
    client_manager = erpc_client_init(transport, message_buffer_factory);

    /* scope for client service */
    {
        /* init eRPC client IO service */
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
        IO_client client(client_manager);

        // Now we can call the remote function to turn on the green LED.
        client.set_led(kGreen, true);
    }

    /* deinit objects */
    erpc_client_deinit(client_manager);
    erpc_mbf_dynamic_deinit(message_buffer_factory);
    erpc_transport_tcp_deinit(transport);
}
```

Server side usage:

```
// Implement the remote function.
void set_led(LEDName whichLed, bool onOrOff) {
    // implementation goes here
}

void example_server(void) {
    erpc_transport_t transport;
    erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
    erpc_server_t server;
    erpc_service_t service = create_IO_service();

    /* Init eRPC server infrastructure */
    transport = erpc_transport_cmsis_uart_init(Driver_USART0);
    message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_dynamic_init();
    server = erpc_server_init(transport, message_buffer_factory);

    /* add custom service implementation to the server */
    erpc_add_service_to_server(server, service);

    // Run the server.
    erpc_server_run();

    /* deinit objects */
    destroy_IO_service(service);
    erpc_server_deinit(server);
    erpc_mbf_dynamic_deinit(message_buffer_factory);
    erpc_transport_tcp_deinit(transport);
}
```

```
// Implement the remote function.
class IO : public IO_interface
{
    /* eRPC call definition */
    void set_led(LEDName whichLed, bool onOrOff) override {
        // implementation goes here
    }
}

void example_server(void) {
    erpc_transport_t transport;
    erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
    erpc_server_t server;
    IO IOImpl;
    IO_service io(&IOImpl);

    /* Init eRPC server infrastructure */
    transport = erpc_transport_cmsis_uart_init(Driver_USART0);
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_dynamic_init();
    server = erpc_server_init(transport, message_buffer_factory);

    /* add custom service implementation to the server */
    erpc_add_service_to_server(server, &io);

    /* poll for requests */
    erpc_status_t err = server.run();

    /* deinit objects */
    erpc_server_deinit(server);
    erpc_mbf_dynamic_deinit(message_buffer_factory);
    erpc_transport_tcp_deinit(transport);
}
```

A number of transports are supported, and new transport classes are easy to write.

Supported transports can be found in *erpc/erpc_c/transport* folder. E.g:

- CMSIS UART
- NXP Kinetis SPI and DSPI
- POSIX and Windows serial port
- TCP/IP (mostly for testing)
- NXP RPMsg-Lite / RPMsg TTY
- SPIdev Linux
- USB CDC
- NXP Messaging Unit

eRPC is available with an unrestrictive BSD 3-clause license. See the LICENSE file for the full license text.

Releases eRPC releases

Edge releases Edge releases can by found on eRPC CircleCI webpage. Choose build of interest, then platform target and choose ARTIFACTS tab. Here you can find binary application from chosen build.

Documentation Documentation is in the wiki section.

eRPC Infrastructure documentation

Examples *Example IDL* is available in the *examples/* folder.

Plenty of eRPC multicore and multiprocessor examples can be also found in NXP MCUXpressoSDK packages. Visit https://mcuxpresso.nxp.com to configure, build and download these packages.

To get the board list with multicore support (eRPC included) use filtering based on Middleware and search for 'multicore' string. Once the selected package with the multicore middleware is downloaded, see

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multicore_examples for eRPC multicore examples (RPMsg_Lite or Messaging Unit transports used) or

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multiprocessor_examples for eRPC multiprocessor examples (UART or SPI transports used).

eRPC examples use the 'erpc_' name prefix.

Another way of getting NXP MCUXpressoSDK eRPC multicore and multiprocessor examples is using the mcux-sdk Github repo. Follow the description how to use the West tool to clone and update the mcuxsdk repo in readme Overview section. Once done the armgcc eRPC examples can be found in

mcuxsdk/examples/<board_name>/multicore_examples or in

mcuxsdk/examples/<board_name>/multiprocessor_examples folders.

You can use the evkmimxrt1170 as the board_name for instance. Similar to MCUXpressoSDK packages the eRPC examples use the 'erpc_' name prefix.

References This section provides links to interesting erpc-based projects, articles, blogs or guides:

- erpc (EmbeddedRPC) getting started notes
- ERPC Linux Local Environment Construction and Use
- The New Wio Terminal eRPC Firmware

Directories *doc* - Documentation.

doxygen - Configuration and support files for running Doxygen over the eRPC C++ infrastructure and erpcgen code.

erpc_c - Holds C/C++ infrastructure for eRPC. This is the code you will include in your application.

erpc_python - Holds Python version of the eRPC infrastructure.

erpcgen - Holds source code for erpcgen and makefiles or project files to build erpcgen on Windows, Linux, and OS X.

erpcsniffer - Holds source code for erpcsniffer application.

examples - Several example IDL files.

mk - Contains common makefiles for building eRPC components.

test - Client/server tests. These tests verify the entire communications path from client to server and back.

utilities - Holds utilities which bring additional benefit to eRPC apps developers.

Building and installing These build instructions apply to host PCs and embedded Linux. For bare metal or RTOS embedded environments, you should copy the *erpc_c* directory into your application sources.

CMake and KConfig build:

It builds a static library of the eRPC C/C++ infrastructure, the erpcgen executable, and optionally the unit tests and examples.

CMake is compatible with gcc and clang. On Windows local MingGW downloaded by *script* can be used.

Make build:

It builds a static library of the eRPC C/C++ infrastructure, the erpcgen executable, and optionally the unit tests.

The makefiles are compatible with gcc or clang on Linux, OS X, and Cygwin. A Windows build of erpcgen using Visual Studio is also available in the *erpcgen/VisualStudio_v14* directory. There is also an Xcode project file in the *erpcgen* directory, which can be used to build erpcgen for OS X.

Requirements eRPC now support building **erpcgen**, **erpc_lib**, **tests** and **C examples** using CMake.

Requirements when using CMake:

- **CMake** (minimal version 3.20.0)
- Generator - **Make**, **Ninja**, ...
- **C/C++ compiler** - **GCC**, **CLANG**, ...
- **Binson** - https://www.gnu.org/software/bison/
- **Flex** - https://github.com/westes/flex/

Requirements when using Make:

- **Make**
- **C/C++ compiler** - **GCC**, **CLANG**, ...
- **Binson** - https://www.gnu.org/software/bison/
- **Flex** - https://github.com/westes/flex/

Windows Related steps to build **erpcgen** using **Visual Studio** are described in erpcgen/VisualStudio_v14/readme_erpcgen.txt.

To install MinGW, Bison, Flex locally on Windows:

```
./install_dependencies.ps1
* ```

#### Linux

```bash
./install_dependencies.sh
```

Mandatory for case, when build for different architecture is needed

- gcc-multilib, g++-multilib

Mac OS X

```
./install_dependencies.sh
```

Building

CMake and KConfig eRPC use CMake and KConfig to configurate and build eRPC related targets. KConfig can be edited by *prj.conf* or *menuconfig* when building.

Generate project, config and build. In *erpc/* execute:

```
cmake -B ./build # in erpc/build generate cmake project
cmake --build ./build --target menuconfig # Build menuconfig and configurate erpcgen, erpc_lib, tests and␣
↪examples
cmake --build ./build # Build all selected target from prj.conf/menuconfig
```
```

**CMake will use the system's default compilers and generator

If you want to use Windows and locally installed MinGW, use *CMake preset* :

```
cmake --preset mingw64 # Generate project in ./build using mingw64's make and compilers
cmake --build ./build --target menuconfig # Build menuconfig and configurate erpcgen, erpc_lib, tests and␣
↪examples
cmake --build ./build # Build all selected target from prj.conf/menuconfig
```

Make To build the library and erpcgen, run from the repo root directory:

```
make
```

To install the library, erpcgen, and include files, run:

```
make install
```

You may need to sudo the make install.

By default this will install into /usr/local. If you want to install elsewhere, set the PREFIX environment variable. Example for installing into /opt:

```
make install PREFIX=/opt
```

List of top level Makefile targets:

- erpc: build the liberpc.a static library
- erpcgen: build the erpcgen tool
- erpcsniffer: build the sniffer tool
- test: build the unit tests under the *test* directory
- all: build all of the above
- install: install liberpc.a, erpcgen, and include files

eRPC code is validated with respect to the C++ 11 standard.

Installing for Python To install the Python infrastructure for eRPC see instructions in the *erpc python readme*.

Known issues and limitations

- Static allocations controlled by the ERPC_ALLOCATION_POLICY config macro are not fully supported yet, i.e. not all erpc objects can be allocated statically now. It deals with the ongoing process and the full static allocations support will be added in the future.

Code providing Repository on Github contains two main branches: **main** and **develop**. Code is developed on **develop** branch. Release version is created via merging **develop** branch into **main** branch.

Copyright 2014-2016 Freescale Semiconductor, Inc.

Copyright 2016-2025 NXP

eRPC Getting Started

Overview This *Getting Started User Guide* shows software developers how to use Remote Procedure Calls (RPC) in embedded multicore microcontrollers (eRPC).

The eRPC documentation is located in the *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/ middleware/multicore/erpc/doc* folder.

Create an eRPC application This section describes a generic way to create a client/server eRPC application:

1. **Design the eRPC application:** Decide which data types are sent between applications, and define functions that send/receive this data.
2. **Create the IDL file:** The IDL file contains information about data types and functions used in an eRPC application, and is written in the IDL language.
3. **Use the eRPC generator tool:** This tool takes an IDL file and generates the shim code for the client and the server-side applications.
4. **Create an eRPC application:**
    1. Create two projects, where one project is for the client side (primary core) and the other project is for the server side (secondary core).
    2. Add generated files for the client application to the client project, and add generated files for the server application to the server project.
    3. Add infrastructure files.
    4. Add user code for client and server applications.
    5. Set the client and server project options.
5. **Run the eRPC application:** Run both the server and the client applications. Make sure that the server has been run before the client request was sent.

A specific example follows in the next section.

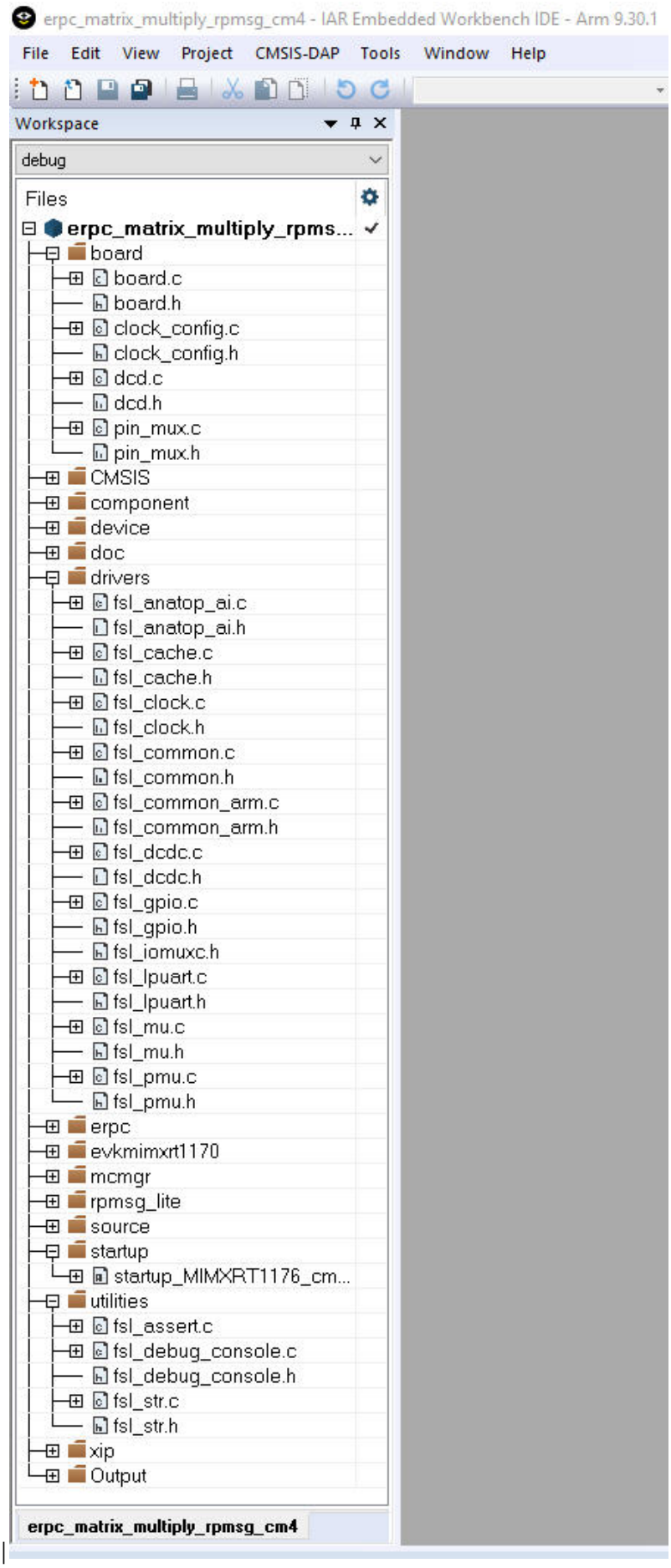
Multicore server application The “Matrix multiply” eRPC server project is located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg/cm4/iar

The project files for the eRPC server have the `_cm4` suffix.

Server project basic source files The startup files, board-related settings, peripheral drivers, and utilities belong to the basic project source files and form the skeleton of all MCUXpresso SDK applications. These source files are located in:

- *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/devices/<device>*
- *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multicore_examples/<example_name>/*


erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4 - IAR Embedded Workbench IDE - Arm 9.30.1
File Edit View Project CMSIS-DAP Tools Window Help
Workspace
debug
Files
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpms...
board
board.c
board.h
clock_config.c
clock_config.h
dcd.c
dcd.h
pin_mux.c
pin_mux.h
CMSIS
component
device
doc
drivers
fsl_anatop_ai.c
fsl_anatop_ai.h
fsl_cache.c
fsl_cache.h
fsl_clock.c
fsl_clock.h
fsl_common.c
fsl_common.h
fsl_common_arm.c
fsl_common_arm.h
fsl_dcdc.c
fsl_dcdc.h
fsl_gpio.c
fsl_gpio.h
fsl_iomuxc.h
fsl_lpuart.c
fsl_lpuart.h
fsl_mu.c
fsl_mu.h
fsl_pmu.c
fsl_pmu.h
erpc
evkmimxrt1170
mcmgr
rpmsg_lite
source
startup
startup_MIMXRT1176_cm...
utilities
fsl_assert.c
fsl_debug_console.c
fsl_debug_console.h
fsl_str.c
fsl_str.h
xip
Output
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4

|

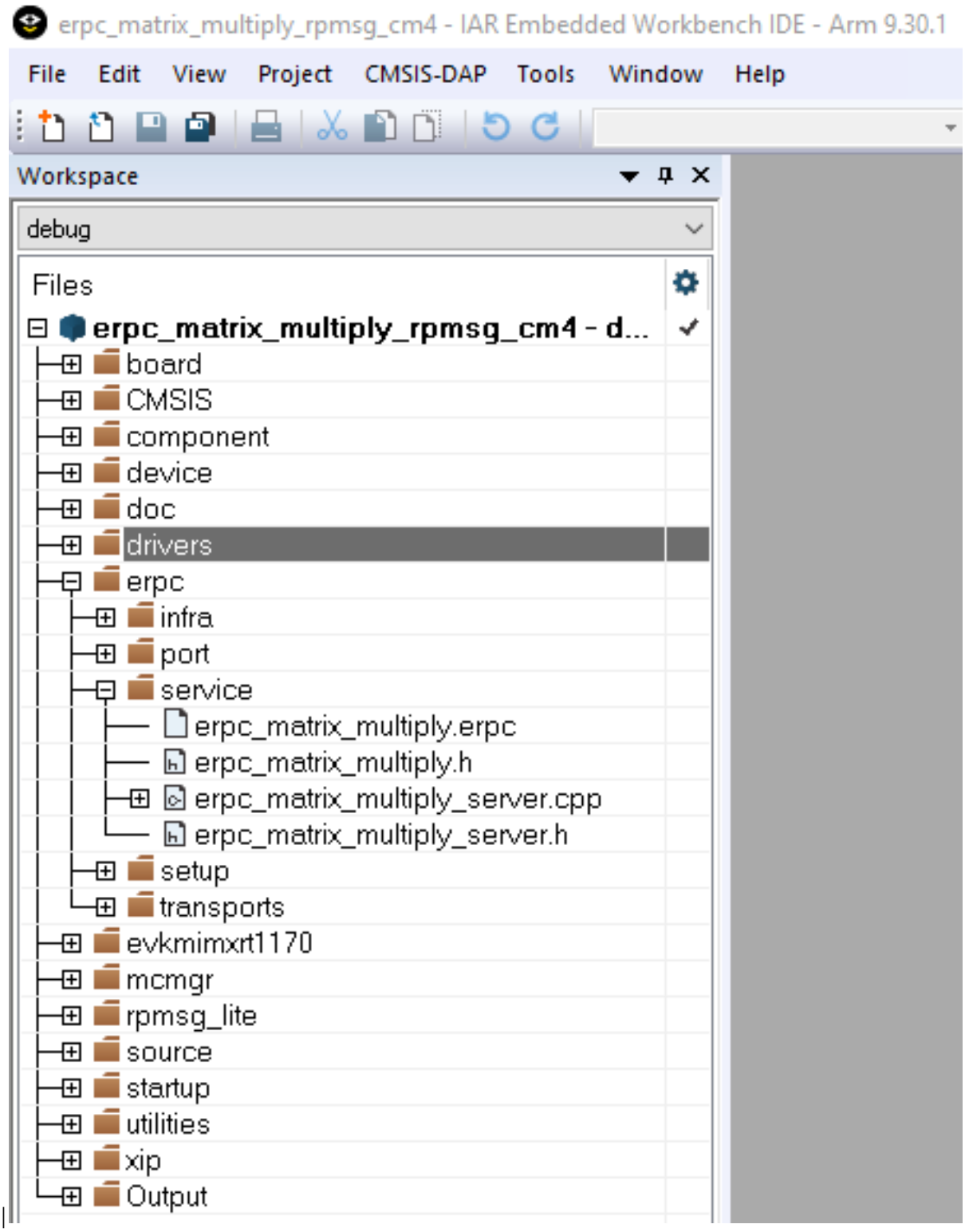
Parent topic: Multicore server application

Server related generated files The server-related generated files are:

- erpc_matric_multiply.h
- erpc_matrix_multiply_server.h
- erpc_matrix_multiply_server.cpp

The server-related generated files contain the shim code for functions and data types declared in the IDL file. These files also contain functions for the identification of client requested functions, data deserialization, calling requested function's implementations, and data serialization and return, if requested by the client. These shim code files can be found in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_common/erpc_matrix_multiply/s



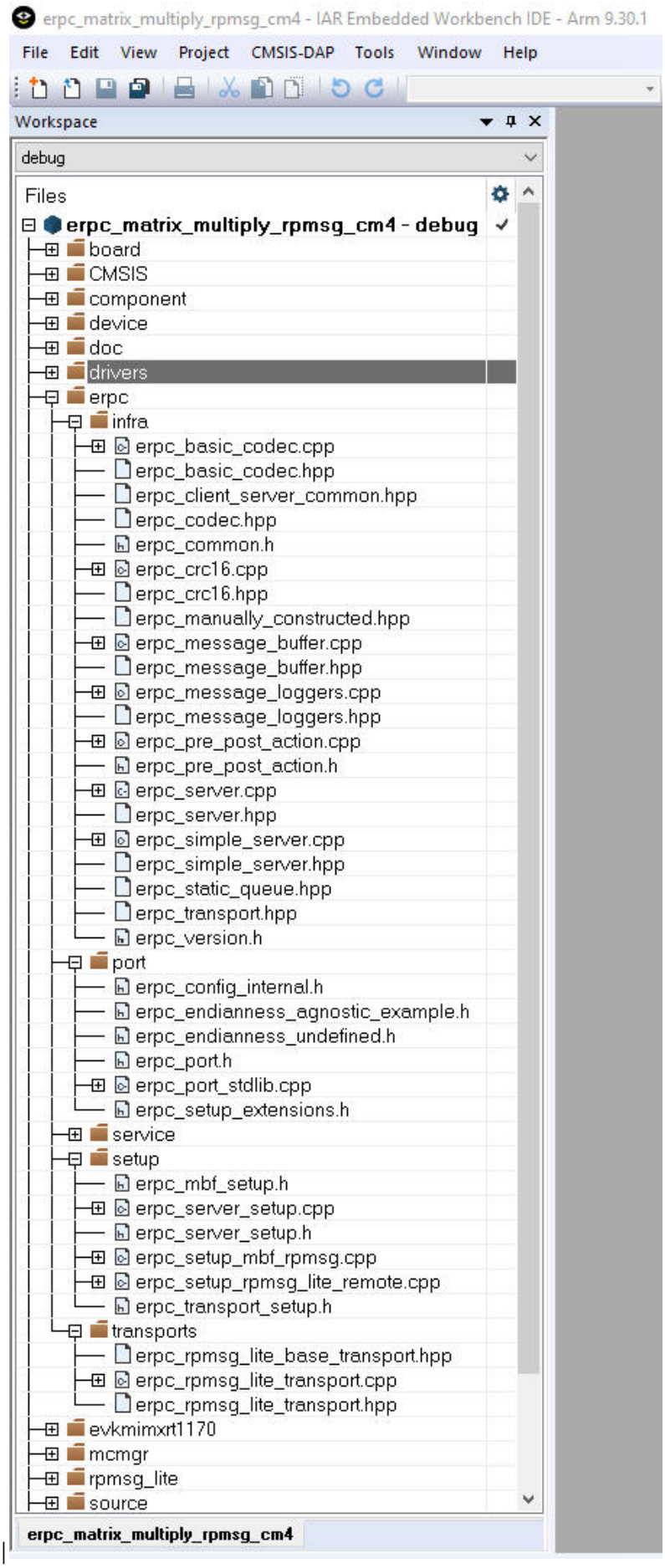
Parent topic: Multicore server application

Server infrastructure files The eRPC infrastructure files are located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/erpc/erpc_c

The **erpc_c** folder contains files for creating eRPC client and server applications in the *C/C++* language. These files are distributed into subfolders.

- The **infra** subfolder contains C++ infrastructure code used to build server and client applications.
  - Four files, erpc_server.hpp, erpc_server.cpp, erpc_simple_server.hpp, and erpc_simple_server.cpp, are used for running the eRPC server on the server-side applications. The simple server is currently the only implementation of the server, and its role is to catch client requests, identify and call requested functions, and send data back when requested.
  - Three files (erpc_codec.hpp, erpc_basic_codec.hpp, and erpc_basic_codec.cpp) are used for codecs. Currently, the basic codec is the initial and only implementation of the codecs.
  - The erpc_common.hpp file is used for common eRPC definitions, typedefs, and enums.
  - The erpc_manually_constructed.hpp file is used for allocating static storage for the used objects.
  - Message buffer files are used for storing serialized data: erpc_message_buffer.h and erpc_message_buffer.cpp.
  - The erpc_transport.h file defines the abstract interface for transport layer.
- The **port** subfolder contains the eRPC porting layer to adapt to different environments.
  - erpc_port.h file contains definition of erpc_malloc() and erpc_free() functions.
  - erpc_port_stdlib.cpp file ensures adaptation to stdlib.
  - erpc_config_internal.h internal erpc configuration file.
- The **setup** subfolder contains a set of plain C APIs that wrap the C++ infrastructure, providing client and server init and deinit routines that greatly simplify eRPC usage in C-based projects. No knowledge of C++ is required to use these APIs.
  - The erpc_server_setup.h and erpc_server_setup.cpp files needs to be added into the "Matrix multiply" example project to demonstrate the use of C-wrapped functions in this example.
  - The erpc_transport_setup.h and erpc_setup_rpmsg_lite_remote.cpp files needs to be added into the project in order to allow the C-wrapped function for transport layer setup.
  - The erpc_mbf_setup.h and erpc_setup_mbf_rpmsg.cpp files needs to be added into the project in order to allow message buffer factory usage.
- The **transports** subfolder contains transport classes for the different methods of communication supported by eRPC. Some transports are applicable only to host PCs, while others are applicable only to embedded or multicore systems. Most transports have corresponding client and server setup functions in the setup folder.
  - RPMsg-Lite is used as the transport layer for the communication between cores, erpc_rpmsg_lite_base_transport.hpp, erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.hpp, and erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.cpp files need to be added into the server project.


erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4 - IAR Embedded Workbench IDE - Arm 9.30.1
File Edit View Project CMSIS-DAP Tools Window Help
Workspace
debug
Files
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4 - debug
board
CMSIS
component
device
doc
drivers
erpc
infra
erpc_basic_codec.cpp
erpc_basic_codec.hpp
erpc_client_server_common.hpp
erpc_codec.hpp
erpc_common.h
erpc_crc16.cpp
erpc_crc16.hpp
erpc_manually_constructed.hpp
erpc_message_buffer.cpp
erpc_message_buffer.hpp
erpc_message_loggers.cpp
erpc_message_loggers.hpp
erpc_pre_post_action.cpp
erpc_pre_post_action.h
erpc_server.cpp
erpc_server.hpp
erpc_simple_server.cpp
erpc_simple_server.hpp
erpc_static_queue.hpp
erpc_transport.hpp
erpc_version.h
port
erpc_config_internal.h
erpc_endianness_agnostic_example.h
erpc_endianness_undefined.h
erpc_port.h
erpc_port_stdlib.cpp
erpc_setup_extensions.h
service
setup
erpc_mbf_setup.h
erpc_server_setup.cpp
erpc_server_setup.h
erpc_setup_mbf_rpmsg.cpp
erpc_setup_rpmsg_lite_remote.cpp
erpc_transport_setup.h
transports
erpc_rpmsg_lite_base_transport.hpp
erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.cpp
erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.hpp
evkmimxrt1170
mcmgr
rpmsg_lite
source
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4

|

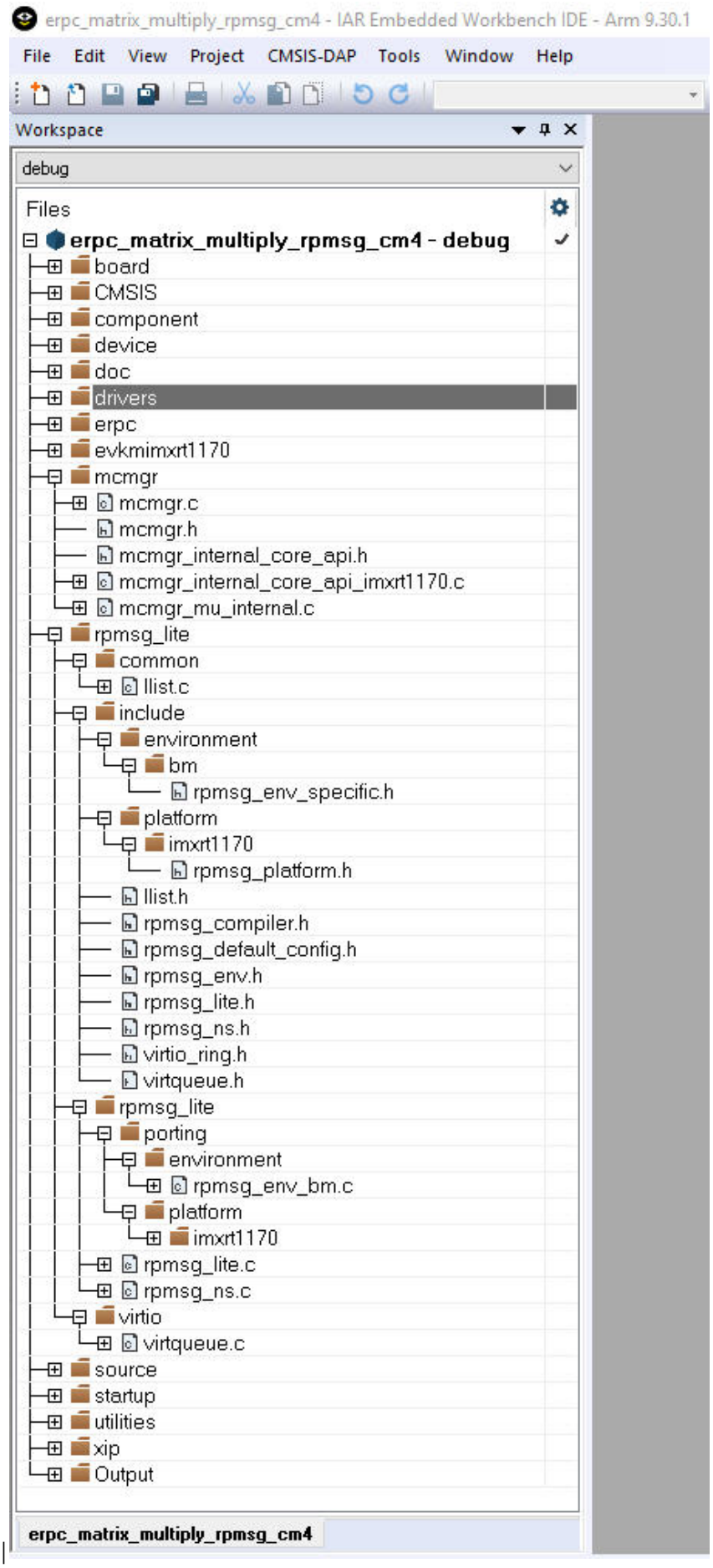
Parent topic: Multicore server application

Server multicore infrastructure files Because of the RPMsg-Lite (transport layer), it is also necessary to include RPMsg-Lite related files, which are in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/rpmsg_lite/

The multicore example applications also use the Multicore Manager software library to control the secondary core startup and shutdown. These source files are located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/mcmgr/


erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4 - IAR Embedded Workbench IDE - Arm 9.30.1
File Edit View Project CMSIS-DAP Tools Window Help
Workspace
debug
Files
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4 - debug
board
CMSIS
component
device
doc
drivers
erpc
evkmimxrt1170
mcmgr
mcmgr.c
mcmgr.h
mcmgr_internal_core_api.h
mcmgr_internal_core_api_imxrt1170.c
mcmgr_mu_internal.c
rpmsg_lite
common
llist.c
include
environment
bm
rpmsg_env_specific.h
platform
imxrt1170
rpmsg_platform.h
llist.h
rpmsg_compiler.h
rpmsg_default_config.h
rpmsg_env.h
rpmsg_lite.h
rpmsg_ns.h
virtio_ring.h
virtqueue.h
rpmsg_lite
porting
environment
rpmsg_env_bm.c
platform
imxrt1170
rpmsg_lite.c
rpmsg_ns.c
virtio
virtqueue.c
source
startup
utilities
xip
Output
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4

|

Parent topic: Multicore server application

Server user code The server's user code is stored in the main_core1.c file, located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg/cm4

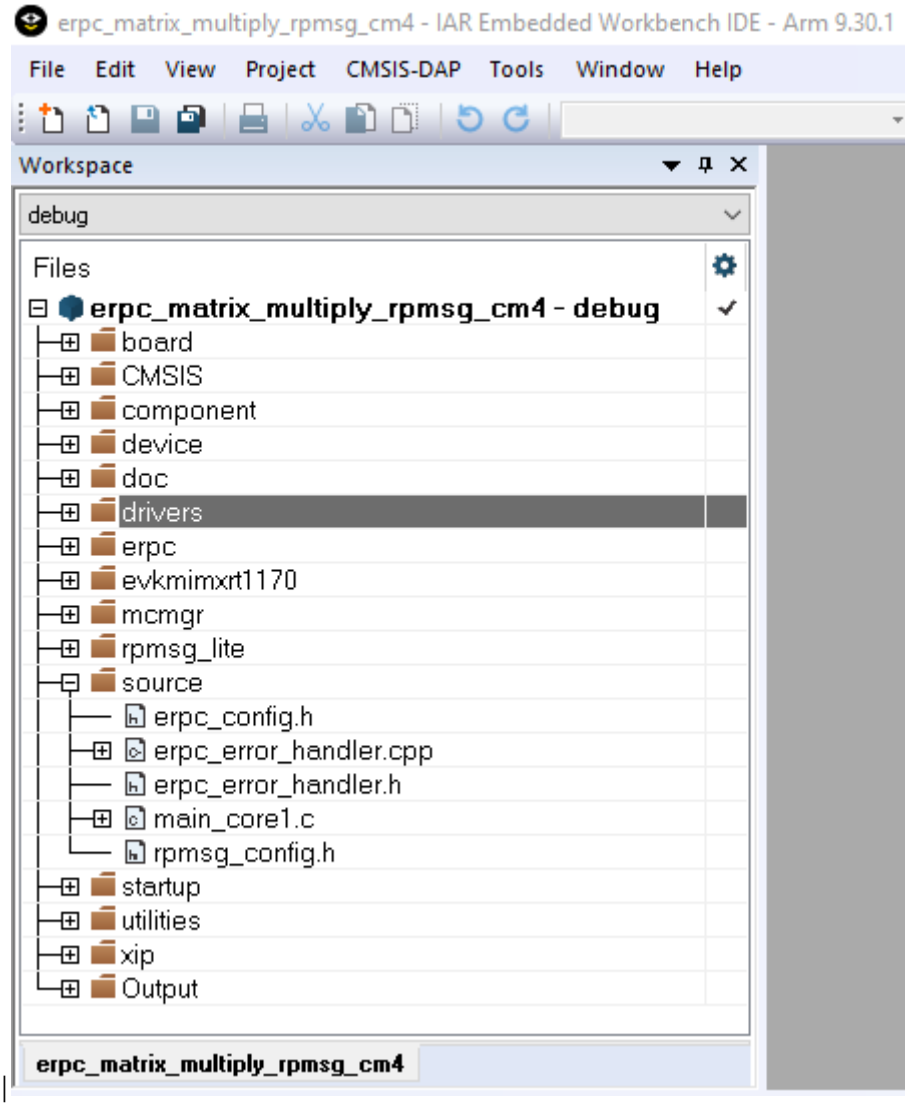
The main_core1.c file contains two functions:

- The **main()** function contains the code for the target board and eRPC server initialization. After the initialization, the matrix multiply service is added and the eRPC server waits for client's requests in the while loop.
- The **erpcMatrixMultiply()** function is the user implementation of the eRPC function defined in the IDL file.
- There is the possibility to write the application-specific eRPC error handler. The eRPC error handler of the matrix multiply application is implemented in the erpc_error_handler.h and erpc_error_handler.cpp files.

The eRPC-relevant code is captured in the following code snippet:

```
/* erpcMatrixMultiply function user implementation */
void erpcMatrixMultiply(const Matrix *matrix1, const Matrix *matrix2, Matrix *result_matrix)
{
  ...
}
int main()
{
  ...
  /* RPMsg-Lite transport layer initialization */
  erpc_transport_t transport;
  transport = erpc_transport_rpmsg_lite_remote_init(src, dst, (void*)startupData,
  ERPC_TRANSPORT_RPMSG_LITE_LINK_ID, SignalReady, NULL);
  ...
  /* MessageBufferFactory initialization */
  erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
  message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_rpmsg_init(transport);
  ...
  /* eRPC server side initialization */
  erpc_server_t server;
  server = erpc_server_init(transport, message_buffer_factory);
  ...
  /* Adding the service to the server */
  erpc_service_t service = create_MatrixMultiplyService_service();
  erpc_add_service_to_server(server, service);
  ...
  while (1)
  {
    /* Process eRPC requests */
    erpc_status_t status = erpc_server_poll(server);
    /* handle error status */
    if (status != kErpcStatus_Success)
    {
      /* print error description */
      erpc_error_handler(status, 0);
      ...
    }
    ...
  }
}
```

Except for the application main file, there are configuration files for the RPMsg-Lite (rpmsg_config.h) and eRPC (erpc_config.h), located in the *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg* folder.



Parent topic: Multicore server application

Parent topic:*Create an eRPC application*

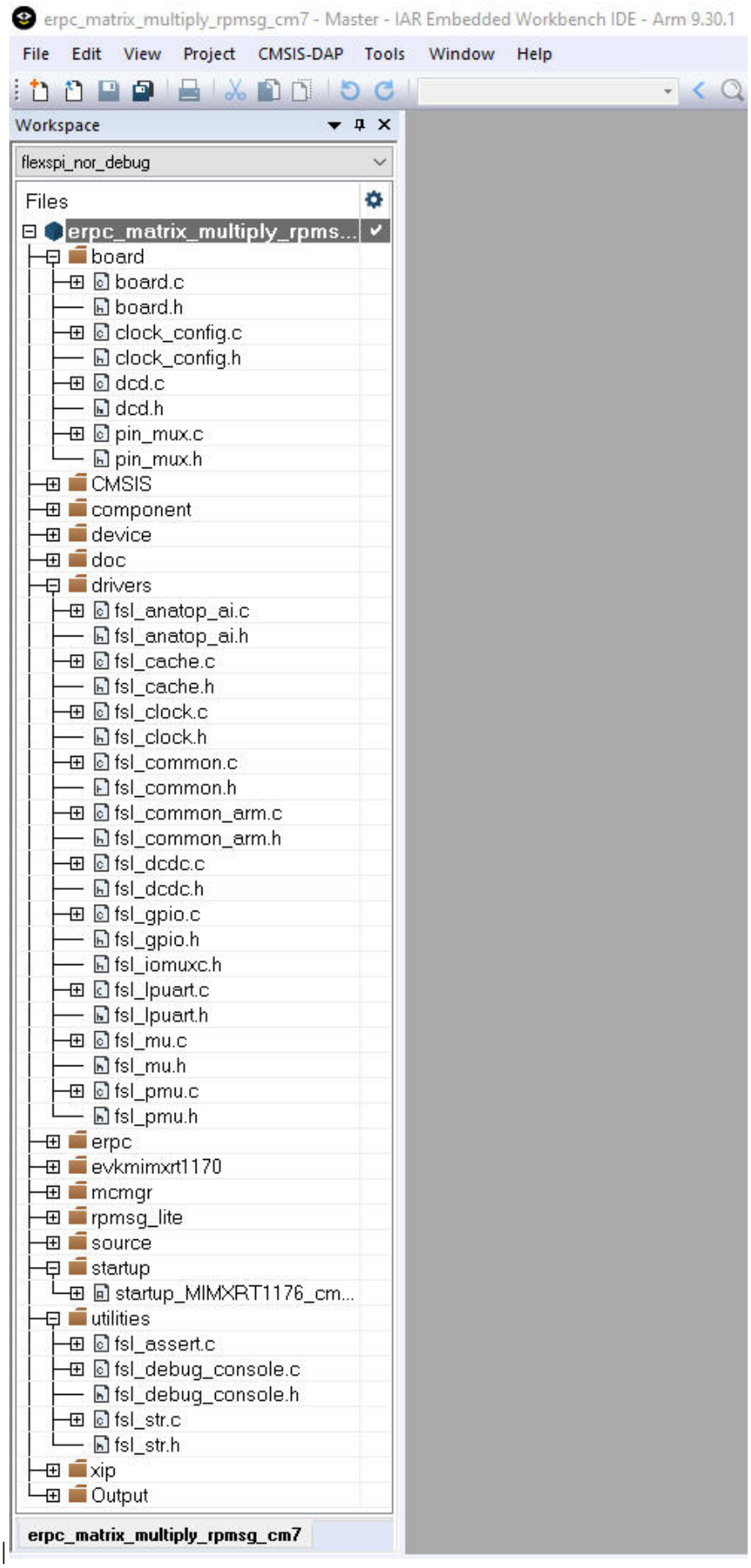
Multicore client application The "Matrix multiply" eRPC client project is located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg/cm7/iar

Project files for the eRPC client have the _cm7 suffix.

Client project basic source files The startup files, board-related settings, peripheral drivers, and utilities belong to the basic project source files and form the skeleton of all MCUXpresso SDK applications. These source files are located in the following folders:

- *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/devices/<device>*
- *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multicore_examples/<example_name>/*


erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7 - Master - IAR Embedded Workbench IDE - Arm 9.30.1
File Edit View Project CMSIS-DAP Tools Window Help
Workspace
flexspi_nor_debug
Files
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpms...
board
board.c
board.h
clock_config.c
clock_config.h
dcd.c
dcd.h
pin_mux.c
pin_mux.h
CMSIS
component
device
doc
drivers
fsl_anatop_ai.c
fsl_anatop_ai.h
fsl_cache.c
fsl_cache.h
fsl_clock.c
fsl_clock.h
fsl_common.c
fsl_common.h
fsl_common_arm.c
fsl_common_arm.h
fsl_dcdc.c
fsl_dcdc.h
fsl_gpio.c
fsl_gpio.h
fsl_iomuxc.h
fsl_lpuart.c
fsl_lpuart.h
fsl_mu.c
fsl_mu.h
fsl_pmu.c
fsl_pmu.h
erpc
evkmimxrt1170
mcmgr
rpmsg_lite
source
startup
startup_MIMXRT1176_cm...
utilities
fsl_assert.c
fsl_debug_console.c
fsl_debug_console.h
fsl_str.c
fsl_str.h
xip
Output
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7

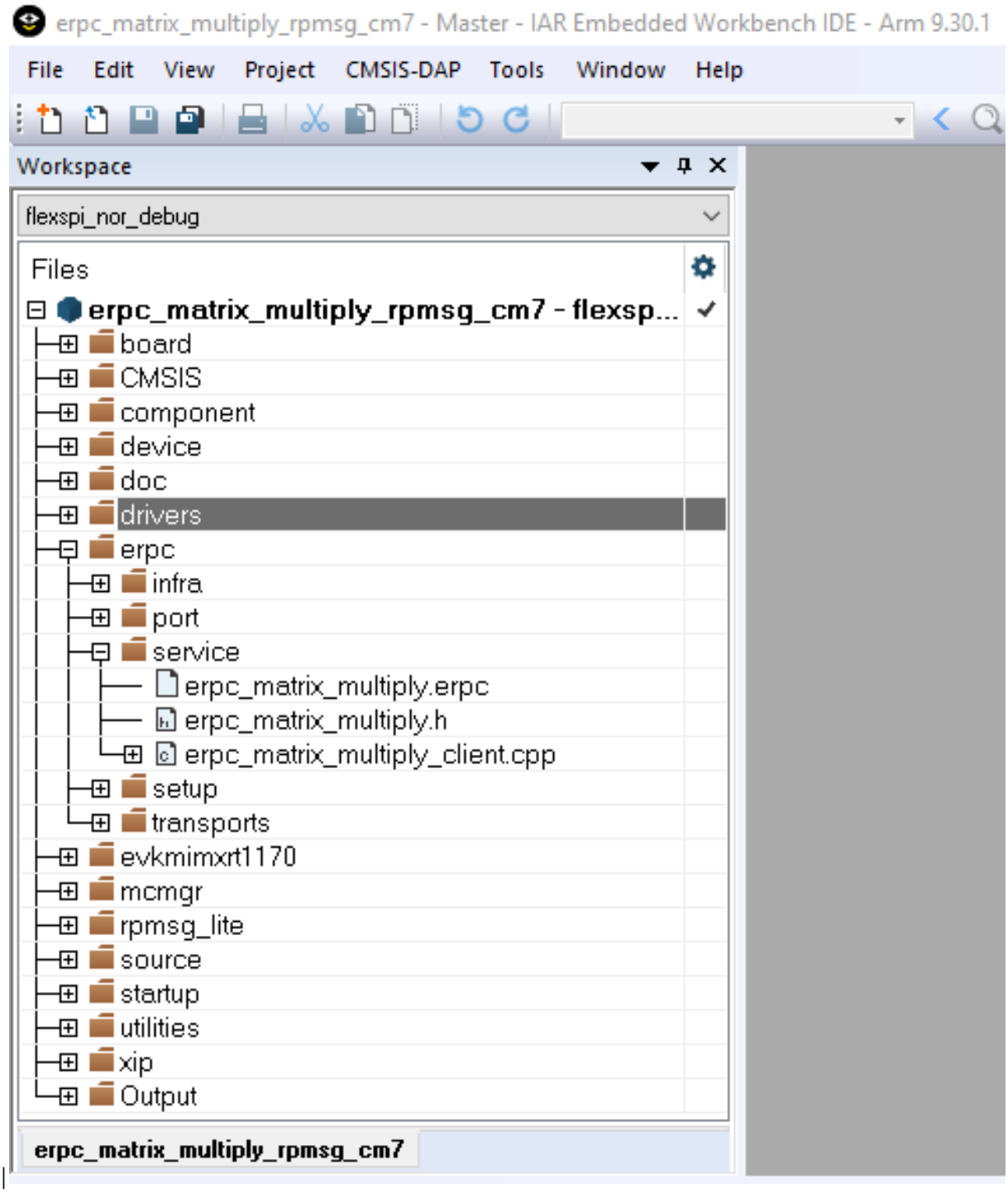
|

Parent topic: Multicore client application

Client-related generated files The client-related generated files are:

- erpc_matric_multiply.h
- erpc_matrix_multiply_client.cpp

These files contain the shim code for the functions and data types declared in the IDL file. These functions also call methods for codec initialization, data serialization, performing eRPC requests, and de-serializing outputs into expected data structures (if return values are expected). These shim code files can be found in the *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_common/erpc_matrix_multiply/service/* folder.



Parent topic: Multicore client application

Client infrastructure files The eRPC infrastructure files are located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/erpc/erpc_c

The **erpc_c** folder contains files for creating eRPC client and server applications in the C/C++ language. These files are distributed into subfolders.

- The **infra** subfolder contains C++ infrastructure code used to build server and client applications.

- Two files, erpc_client_manager.h and erpc_client_manager.cpp, are used for managing the client-side application. The main purpose of the client files is to create, perform, and release eRPC requests.
- Three files (erpc_codec.hpp, erpc_basic_codec.hpp, and erpc_basic_codec.cpp) are used for codecs. Currently, the basic codec is the initial and only implementation of the codecs.
- erpc_common.h file is used for common eRPC definitions, typedefs, and enums.
- erpc_manually_constructed.hpp file is used for allocating static storage for the used objects.
- Message buffer files are used for storing serialized data: erpc_message_buffer.hpp and erpc_message_buffer.cpp.
- erpc_transport.hpp file defines the abstract interface for transport layer.

The **port** subfolder contains the eRPC porting layer to adapt to different environments.

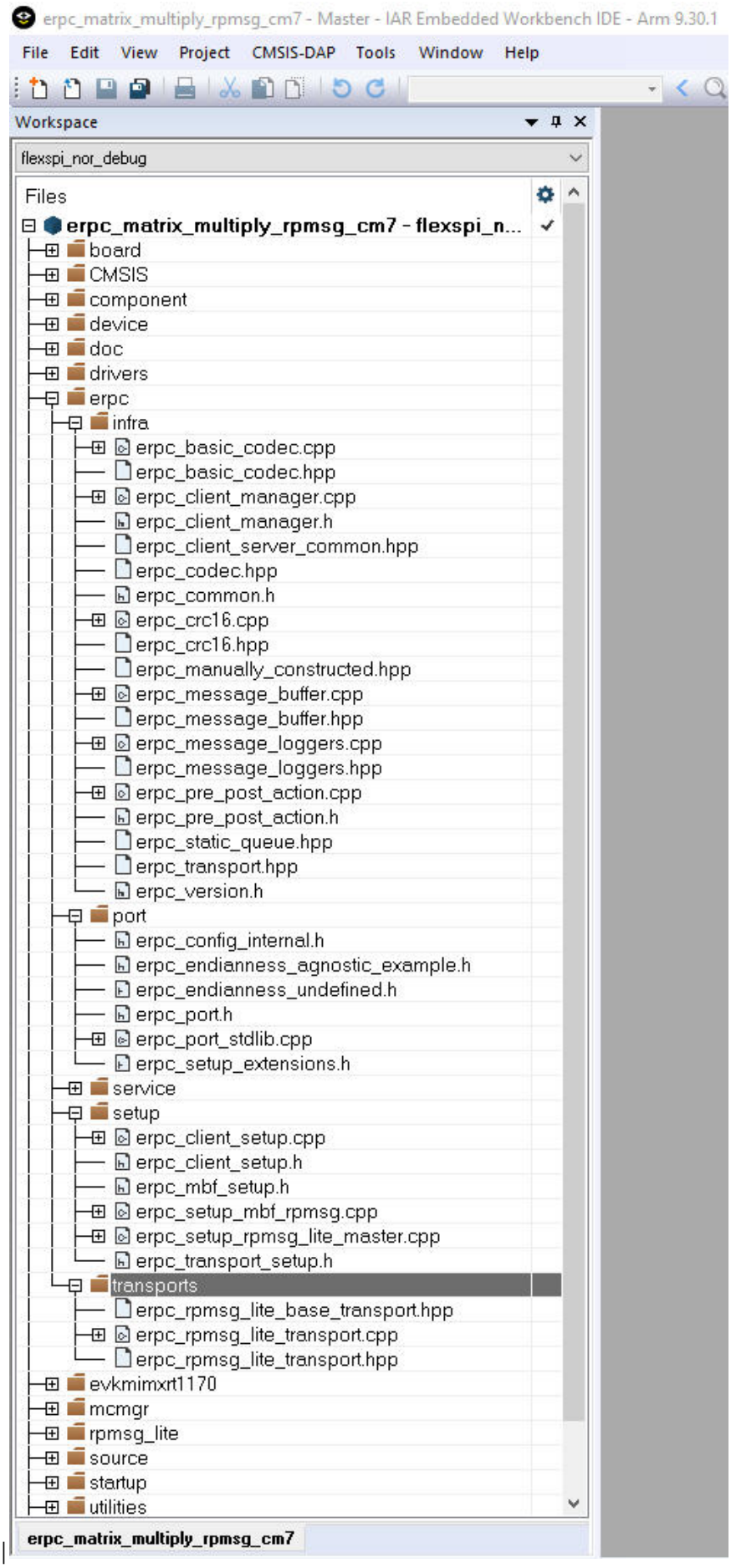
- erpc_port.h file contains definition of erpc_malloc() and erpc_free() functions.
- erpc_port_stdlib.cpp file ensures adaptation to stdlib.
- erpc_config_internal.h internal eRPC configuration file.

The **setup** subfolder contains a set of plain C APIs that wrap the C++ infrastructure, providing client and server init and deinit routines that greatly simplify eRPC usage in C-based projects. No knowledge of C++ is required to use these APIs.

- erpc_client_setup.h and erpc_client_setup.cpp files needs to be added into the "Matrix multiply" example project to demonstrate the use of C-wrapped functions in this example.
- erpc_transport_setup.h and erpc_setup_rpmsg_lite_master.cpp files needs to be added into the project in order to allow C-wrapped function for transport layer setup.
- erpc_mbf_setup.h and erpc_setup_mbf_rpmsg.cpp files needs to be added into the project in order to allow message buffer factory usage.

The **transports** subfolder contains transport classes for the different methods of communication supported by eRPC. Some transports are applicable only to host PCs, while others are applicable only to embedded or multicore systems. Most transports have corresponding client and server setup functions, in the setup folder.

- RPMsg-Lite is used as the transport layer for the communication between cores, erpc_rpmsg_lite_base_transport.hpp, erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.hpp, and erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.cpp files needs to be added into the client project.


erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7 - Master - IAR Embedded Workbench IDE - Arm 9.30.1
File Edit View Project CMSIS-DAP Tools Window Help
Workspace
flexspi_nor_debug
Files
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7 - flexspi_n...
board
CMSIS
component
device
doc
drivers
erpc
infra
erpc_basic_codec.cpp
erpc_basic_codec.hpp
erpc_client_manager.cpp
erpc_client_manager.h
erpc_client_server_common.hpp
erpc_codec.hpp
erpc_common.h
erpc_crc16.cpp
erpc_crc16.hpp
erpc_manually_constructed.hpp
erpc_message_buffer.cpp
erpc_message_buffer.hpp
erpc_message_loggers.cpp
erpc_message_loggers.hpp
erpc_pre_post_action.cpp
erpc_pre_post_action.h
erpc_static_queue.hpp
erpc_transport.hpp
erpc_version.h
port
erpc_config_internal.h
erpc_endianness_agnostic_example.h
erpc_endianness_undefined.h
erpc_port.h
erpc_port_stdlib.cpp
erpc_setup_extensions.h
service
setup
erpc_client_setup.cpp
erpc_client_setup.h
erpc_mbf_setup.h
erpc_setup_mbf_rpmsg.cpp
erpc_setup_rpmsg_lite_master.cpp
erpc_transport_setup.h
transports
erpc_rpmsg_lite_base_transport.hpp
erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.cpp
erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.hpp
evkmimxrt1170
mcmgr
rpmsg_lite
source
startup
utilities
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7

|

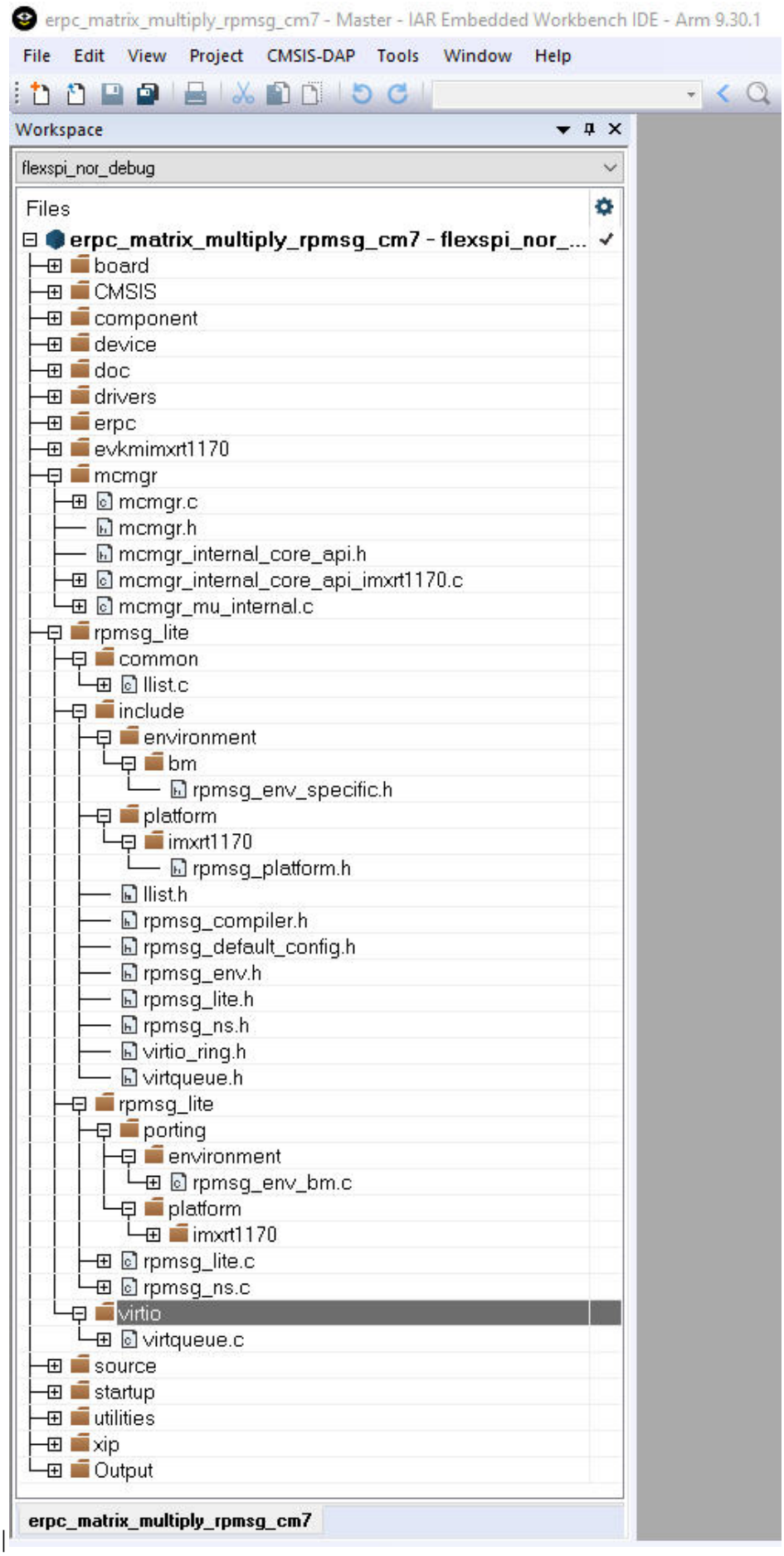
Parent topic: Multicore client application

Client multicore infrastructure files Because of the RPMsg-Lite (transport layer), it is also necessary to include RPMsg-Lite related files, which are in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/rpmsg_lite/

The multicore example applications also use the Multicore Manager software library to control the secondary core startup and shutdown. These source files are located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/mcmgr/


erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7 - Master - IAR Embedded Workbench IDE - Arm 9.30.1
File Edit View Project CMSIS-DAP Tools Window Help
Workspace
flexspi_nor_debug
Files
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7 - flexspi_nor_...
board
CMSIS
component
device
doc
drivers
erpc
evkmimxrt1170
mcmgr
mcmgr.c
mcmgr.h
mcmgr_internal_core_api.h
mcmgr_internal_core_api_imxrt1170.c
mcmgr_mu_internal.c
rpmsg_lite
common
llist.c
include
environment
bm
rpmsg_env_specific.h
platform
imxrt1170
rpmsg_platform.h
llist.h
rpmsg_compiler.h
rpmsg_default_config.h
rpmsg_env.h
rpmsg_lite.h
rpmsg_ns.h
virtio_ring.h
virtqueue.h
rpmsg_lite
porting
environment
rpmsg_env_bm.c
platform
imxrt1170
rpmsg_lite.c
rpmsg_ns.c
virtio
virtqueue.c
source
startup
utilities
xip
Output
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7

|

Parent topic: Multicore client application

Client user code The client's user code is stored in the main_core0.c file, located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_example/erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg/cm7

The main_core0.c file contains the code for target board and eRPC initialization.

- After initialization, the secondary core is released from reset.
- When the secondary core is ready, the primary core initializes two matrix variables.
- The erpcMatrixMultiply eRPC function is called to issue the eRPC request and get the result.

It is possible to write the application-specific eRPC error handler. The eRPC error handler of the matrix multiply application is implemented in erpc_error_handler.h and erpc_error_handler.cpp files.

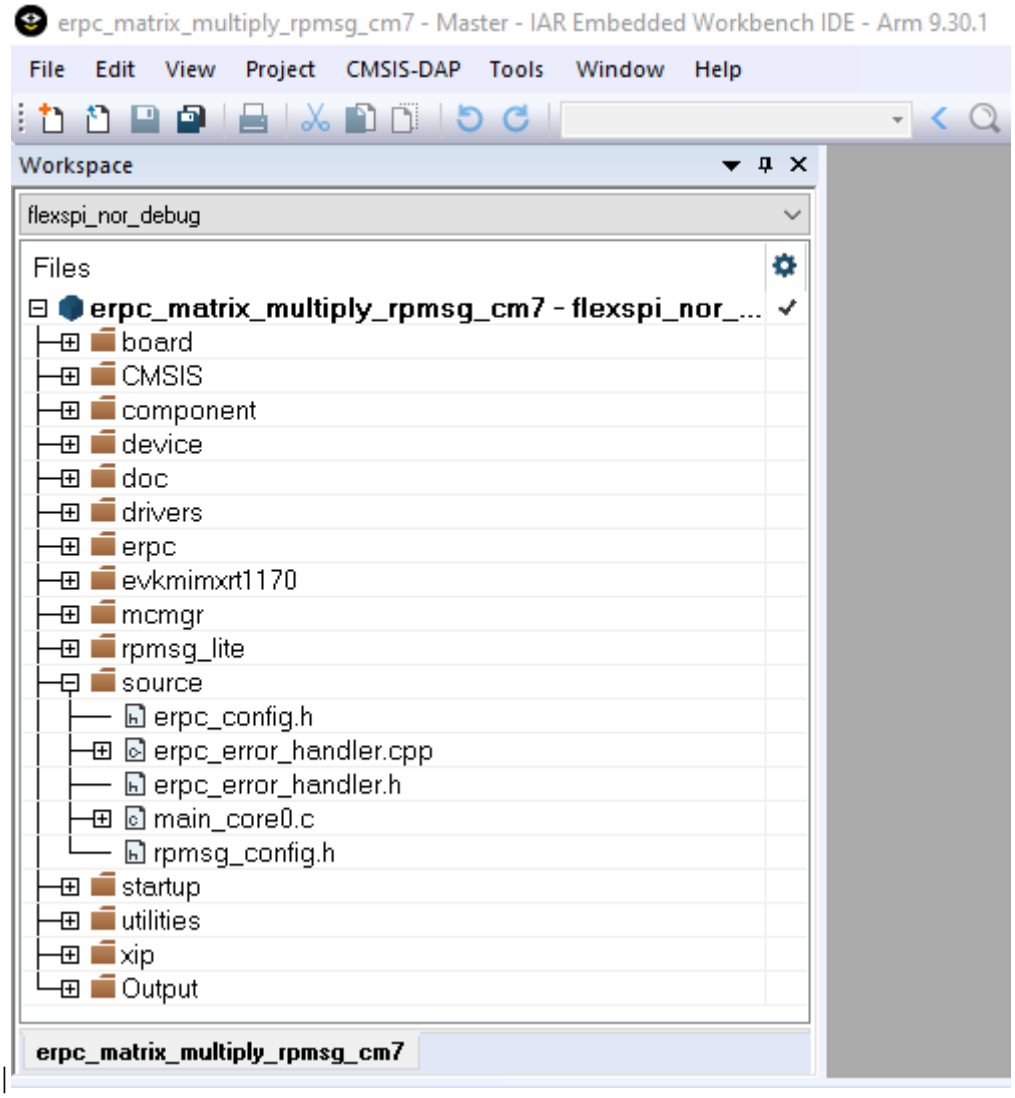
The matrix multiplication can be issued repeatedly, when pressing a software board button.

The eRPC-relevant code is captured in the following code snippet:

```
...
extern bool g_erpc_error_occurred;
...
/* Declare matrix arrays */
Matrix matrix1 = {0}, matrix2 = {0}, result_matrix = {0};
...
/* RPMsg-Lite transport layer initialization */
erpc_transport_t transport;
transport = erpc_transport_rpmsg_lite_master_init(src, dst,
ERPC_TRANSPORT_RPMSG_LITE_LINK_ID);
...
/* MessageBufferFactory initialization */
erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_rpmsg_init(transport);
...
/* eRPC client side initialization */
erpc_client_t client;
client = erpc_client_init(transport, message_buffer_factory);
...
/* Set default error handler */
erpc_client_set_error_handler(client, erpc_error_handler);
...
while (1)
{
  /* Invoke the erpcMatrixMultiply function */
  erpcMatrixMultiply(matrix1, matrix2, result_matrix);
  ...
  /* Check if some error occured in eRPC */
  if (g_erpc_error_occurred)
  {
    /* Exit program loop */
    break;
  }
  ...
}
```

Except for the application main file, there are configuration files for the RPMsg-Lite (rpmsg_config.h) and eRPC (erpc_config.h), located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg



Parent topic: Multicore client application

Parent topic:*Create an eRPC application*

Multiprocessor server application The "Matrix multiply" eRPC server project for multiprocessor applications is located in the *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir»/boards/<board_name>/multiprocessor_examples/erpc_server_matrix_multiply_<transport_layer>* folder.

Most of the multiprocessor application setup is the same as for the multicore application. The multiprocessor server application requires server-related generated files (server shim code), server infrastructure files, and the server user code. There is no need for server multicore infrastructure files (MCMGR and RPMsg-Lite). The RPMsg-Lite transport layer is replaced either by SPI or UART transports. The following table shows the required transport-related files per each transport type.

|SPI|<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/setup/erpc_setup_(d)spi_slave.cpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/erpc_(d)spi_slave_transport.hpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/erpc_(d)spi_slave_transport.cpp

| |UART|<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/setup/erpc_setup_uart_cmsis.cpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/erpc_uart_cmsis_transport.hpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/erpc_uart_cmsis_transport.cpp

|

Server user code The server's user code is stored in the main_server.c file, located in the *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multiprocessor_examples/erpc_server_matrix_multiply_<transport_layer>/* folder.

The eRPC-relevant code with UART as a transport is captured in the following code snippet:

```
/* erpcMatrixMultiply function user implementation */
void erpcMatrixMultiply(Matrix matrix1, Matrix matrix2, Matrix result_matrix)
{
  ...
}
int main()
{
  ...
  /* UART transport layer initialization, ERPC_DEMO_UART is the structure of CMSIS UART driver␣
↪operations */
  erpc_transport_t transport;
  transport = erpc_transport_cmsis_uart_init((void *)&ERPC_DEMO_UART);
  ...
  /* MessageBufferFactory initialization */
  erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
  message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_dynamic_init();
  ...
  /* eRPC server side initialization */
  erpc_server_t server;
  server = erpc_server_init(transport, message_buffer_factory);
  ...
  /* Adding the service to the server */
  erpc_service_t service = create_MatrixMultiplyService_service();
  erpc_add_service_to_server(server, service);
  ...
  while (1)
  {
    /* Process eRPC requests */
    erpc_status_t status = erpc_server_poll(server)
    /* handle error status */
    if (status != kErpcStatus_Success)
    {
      /* print error description */
      erpc_error_handler(status, 0);
      ...
    }
    ...
  }
}
```

Parent topic: Multiprocessor server application

Multiprocessor client application The "Matrix multiply" eRPC client project for multiprocessor applications is located in the *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multiprocessor_examples/erpc_client_matrix_multiply_<transport_layer>/iar/* folder.

Most of the multiprocessor application setup is the same as for the multicore application. The multiprocessor server application requires client-related generated files (server shim code),

client infrastructure files, and the client user code. There is no need for client multicore infrastructure files (MCMGR and RPMsg-Lite). The RPMsg-Lite transport layer is replaced either by SPI or UART transports. The following table shows the required transport-related files per each transport type.

|SPI|<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/setup/erpc_setup_(d)spi_master.cpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/ erpc_(d)spi_master_transport.hpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/ erpc_(d)spi_master_transport.cpp

| |UART|<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/setup/erpc_setup_uart_cmsis.cpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/erpc_uart_cmsis_transport.hpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/erpc_uart_cmsis_transport.cpp

|

Client user code The client's user code is stored in the main_client.c file, located in the *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multiprocessor_examples/erpc_client_matrix_multiply_<transport_layer>/* folder.

The eRPC-relevant code with UART as a transport is captured in the following code snippet:

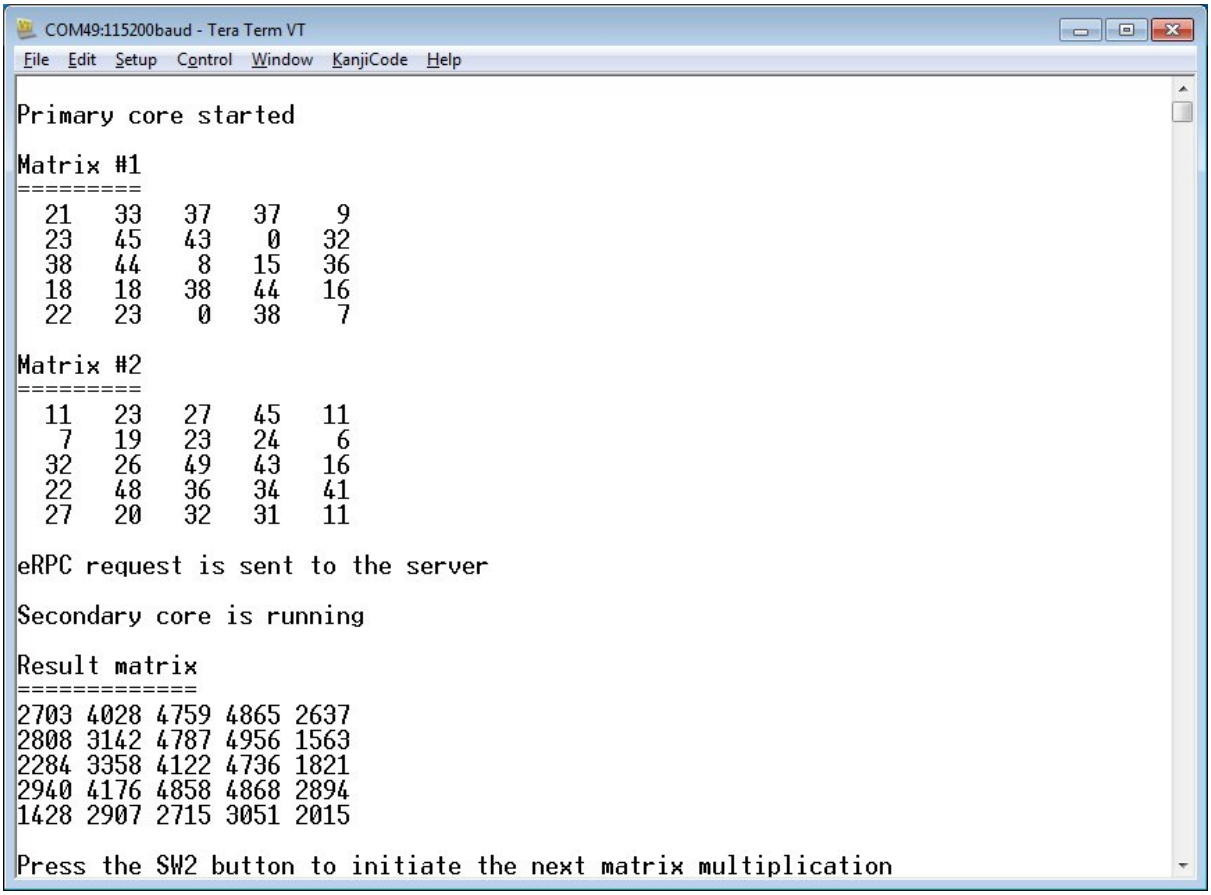
```
...
extern bool g_erpc_error_occurred;
...
/* Declare matrix arrays */
Matrix matrix1 = {0}, matrix2 = {0}, result_matrix = {0};
...
/* UART transport layer initialization, ERPC_DEMO_UART is the structure of CMSIS UART driver␣
↪operations */
erpc_transport_t transport;
transport = erpc_transport_cmsis_uart_init((void *)&ERPC_DEMO_UART);
...
/* MessageBufferFactory initialization */
erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_dynamic_init();
...
/* eRPC client side initialization */
erpc_client_t client;
client = erpc_client_init(transport,message_buffer_factory);
...
/* Set default error handler */
erpc_client_set_error_handler(client, erpc_error_handler);
...
while (1)
{
  /* Invoke the erpcMatrixMultiply function */
  erpcMatrixMultiply(matrix1, matrix2, result_matrix);
  ...
  /* Check if some error occured in eRPC */
  if (g_erpc_error_occurred)
  {
    /* Exit program loop */
    break;
  }
  ...
}
```

Parent topic: Multiprocessor client application

Parent topic: Multiprocessor server application

Parent topic:*Create an eRPC application*

Running the eRPC application Follow the instructions in *Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK* (document MCUXSDKGSUG) (located in the *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/docs* folder), to load both the primary and the secondary core images into the on-chip memory, and then effectively debug the dual-core application. After the application is running, the serial console should look like:



For multiprocessor applications that are running between PC and the target evaluation board or between two boards, follow the instructions in the accompanied example readme files that provide details about the proper board setup and the PC side setup (Python).

Parent topic:*Create an eRPC application*

Parent topic:*eRPC example*

eRPC example This section shows how to create an example eRPC application called “Matrix multiply”, which implements one eRPC function (matrix multiply) with two function parameters (two matrices). The client-side application calls this eRPC function, and the server side performs the multiplication of received matrices. The server side then returns the result.

For example, use the NXP MIMXRT1170-EVK board as the target dual-core platform, and the IAR Embedded Workbench for ARM (EWARM) as the target IDE for developing the eRPC example.

- The primary core (CM7) runs the eRPC client.
- The secondary core (CM4) runs the eRPC server.
- RPMsg-Lite (Remote Processor Messaging Lite) is used as the eRPC transport layer.

The “Matrix multiply” application can be also run in the multi-processor setup. In other words, the eRPC client running on one SoC comunicates with the eRPC server that runs on anothe SoC, utilizing different transport channels. It is possible to run the board-to-PC example (PC as the eRPC server and a board as the eRPC client, and vice versa) and also the board-to-board example. These multiprocessor examples are prepared for selected boards only.

|Multicore application source and project files|*<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore*
|Multiprocessor application source and project files|*<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multi*

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multiprocessor_examples/erpc_server_matrix_multiply_<tr

| |eRPC source files|*<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/erpc/*| |RPMsg-Lite source files|*<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/rpmsg_lite/*|

Designing the eRPC application The matrix multiply application is based on calling single eRPC function that takes 2 two-dimensional arrays as input and returns matrix multiplication results as another 2 two-dimensional array. The IDL file syntax supports arrays with the dimension length set by the number only (in the current eRPC implementation). Because of this, a variable is declared in the IDL dedicated to store information about matrix dimension length, and to allow easy maintenance of the user and server code.

For a simple use of the two-dimensional array, the alias name (new type definition) for this data type has is declared in the IDL. Declaring this alias name ensures that the same data type can be used across the client and server applications.

Parent topic:*eRPC example*

Creating the IDL file The created IDL file is located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_common/erpc_matrix_multiply/s

The created IDL file contains the following code:

```
program erpc_matrix_multiply
/*! This const defines the matrix size. The value has to be the same as the
Matrix array dimension. Do not forget to re-generate the erpc code once the
matrix size is changed in the erpc file */
const int32 matrix_size = 5;
/*! This is the matrix array type. The dimension has to be the same as the
matrix size const. Do not forget to re-generate the erpc code once the
matrix size is changed in the erpc file */
type Matrix = int32[matrix_size][matrix_size];
interface MatrixMultiplyService {
erpcMatrixMultiply(in Matrix matrix1, in Matrix matrix2, out Matrix result_matrix) ->
void
}
```

Details:

- The IDL file starts with the program name (*erpc_matrix_multiply*), and this program name is used in the naming of all generated outputs.
- The declaration and definition of the constant variable named *matrix_size* follows next. The *matrix_size* variable is used for passing information about the length of matrix dimensions to the client/server user code.
- The alias name for the two-dimensional array type (*Matrix*) is declared.
- The interface group *MatrixMultiplyService* is located at the end of the IDL file. This interface group contains only one function declaration *erpcMatrixMultiply*.
- As shown above, the function’s declaration contains three parameters of Matrix type: *matrix1* and *matrix2* are input parameters, while *result_matrix* is the output parameter. Additionally, the returned data type is declared as void.

When writing the IDL file, the following order of items is recommended:

1. Program name at the top of the IDL file.
2. New data types and constants declarations.
3. Declarations of interfaces and functions at the end of the IDL file.

Parent topic:*eRPC example*

Using the eRPC generator tool |Windows OS|<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/tools/erp
|Linux OS|<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/tools/erpcgen/Linux_x64

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/tools/erpcgen/Linux_x86

| |Mac OS|<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/tools/erpcgen/Mac|

The files for the "Matrix multiply" example are pre-generated and already a part of the application projects. The following section describes how they have been created.

- The easiest way to create the shim code is to copy the erpcgen application to the same folder where the IDL file (*.erpc) is located; then run the following command:

  erpcgen <IDL_file>.erpc

- In the "Matrix multiply" example, the command should look like:

  erpcgen erpc_matrix_multiply.erpc

Additionally, another method to create the shim code is to execute the eRPC application using input commands:

- "-?"/"—help" – Shows supported commands.
- "-o <filePath>"/"—output<filePath>" – Sets the output directory.

For example,

```
<path_to_erpcgen>/erpcgen –o <path_to_output>
<path_to_IDL>/<IDL_file_name>.erpc
```

For the "Matrix multiply" example, when the command is executed from the default erpcgen location, it looks like:

erpcgen –o

../../../../../boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_common/erpc_matrix_multiply/service
../../../../../boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_common/erpc_matrix_multiply/service/erpc_matrix_mu

In both cases, the following four files are generated into the *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_common/erpc_matrix_multiply/service folder.*

- erpc_matrix_multiply.h
- erpc_matrix_multiply_client.cpp
- erpc_matrix_multiply_server.h
- erpc_matrix_multiply_server.cpp

For multiprocessor examples, the eRPC file and pre-generated files can be found in the *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multiprocessor_examples/erpc_common/erpc_matrix_multiply/serv* folder.

For Linux OS users:

- Do not forget to set the permissions for the eRPC generator application.
- Run the application as ./erpcgen... instead of as erpcgen ....

Parent topic:*eRPC example*

Create an eRPC application This section describes a generic way to create a client/server eRPC application:

1. **Design the eRPC application:** Decide which data types are sent between applications, and define functions that send/receive this data.
2. **Create the IDL file:** The IDL file contains information about data types and functions used in an eRPC application, and is written in the IDL language.
3. **Use the eRPC generator tool:** This tool takes an IDL file and generates the shim code for the client and the server-side applications.
4. **Create an eRPC application:**
    1. Create two projects, where one project is for the client side (primary core) and the other project is for the server side (secondary core).
    2. Add generated files for the client application to the client project, and add generated files for the server application to the server project.
    3. Add infrastructure files.
    4. Add user code for client and server applications.
    5. Set the client and server project options.
5. **Run the eRPC application:** Run both the server and the client applications. Make sure that the server has been run before the client request was sent.

A specific example follows in the next section.

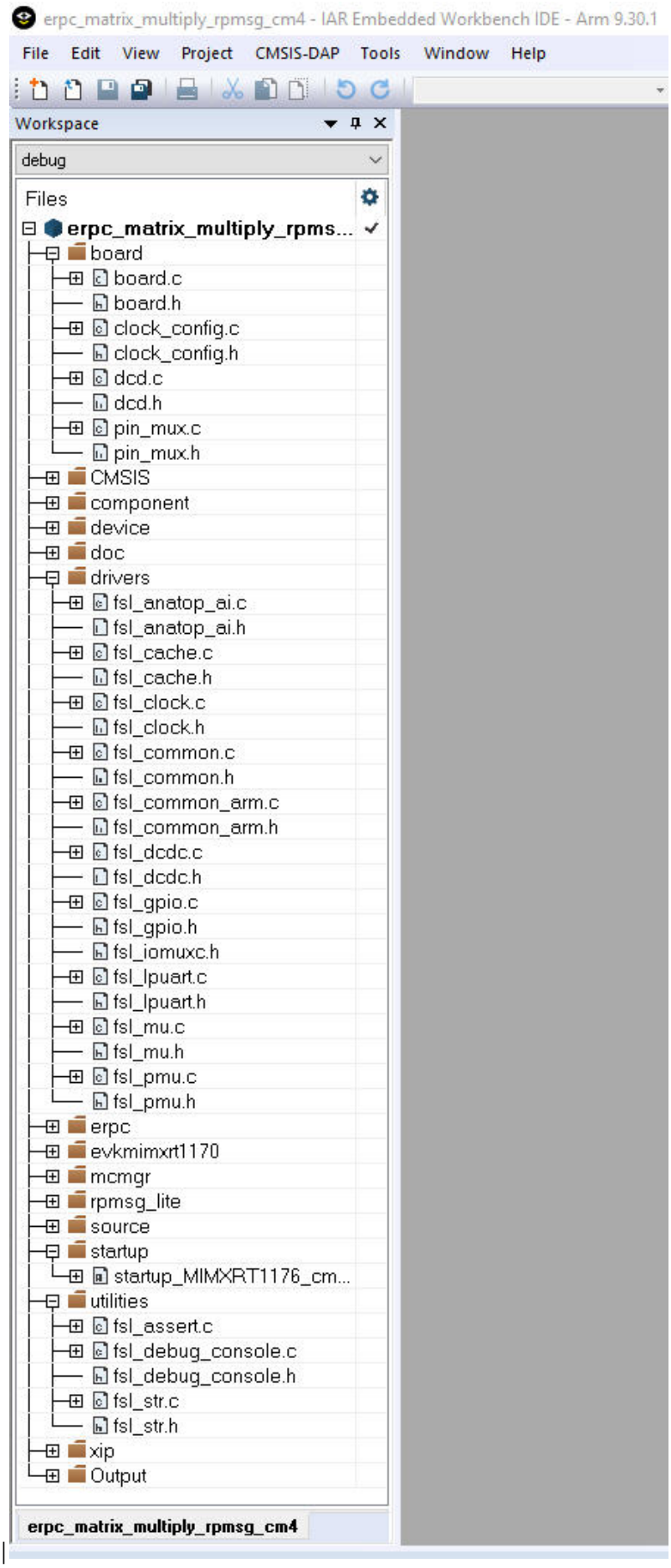
Multicore server application The “Matrix multiply” eRPC server project is located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg/cm4/iar

The project files for the eRPC server have the `_cm4` suffix.

Server project basic source files The startup files, board-related settings, peripheral drivers, and utilities belong to the basic project source files and form the skeleton of all MCUXpresso SDK applications. These source files are located in:

- *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/devices/<device>*
- *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multicore_examples/<example_name>/*


erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4 - IAR Embedded Workbench IDE - Arm 9.30.1
File Edit View Project CMSIS-DAP Tools Window Help
Workspace
debug
Files
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpms...
board
board.c
board.h
clock_config.c
clock_config.h
dcd.c
dcd.h
pin_mux.c
pin_mux.h
CMSIS
component
device
doc
drivers
fsl_anatop_ai.c
fsl_anatop_ai.h
fsl_cache.c
fsl_cache.h
fsl_clock.c
fsl_clock.h
fsl_common.c
fsl_common.h
fsl_common_arm.c
fsl_common_arm.h
fsl_dcdc.c
fsl_dcdc.h
fsl_gpio.c
fsl_gpio.h
fsl_iomuxc.h
fsl_lpuart.c
fsl_lpuart.h
fsl_mu.c
fsl_mu.h
fsl_pmu.c
fsl_pmu.h
erpc
evkmimxrt1170
mcmgr
rpmsg_lite
source
startup
startup_MIMXRT1176_cm...
utilities
fsl_assert.c
fsl_debug_console.c
fsl_debug_console.h
fsl_str.c
fsl_str.h
xip
Output
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4

|

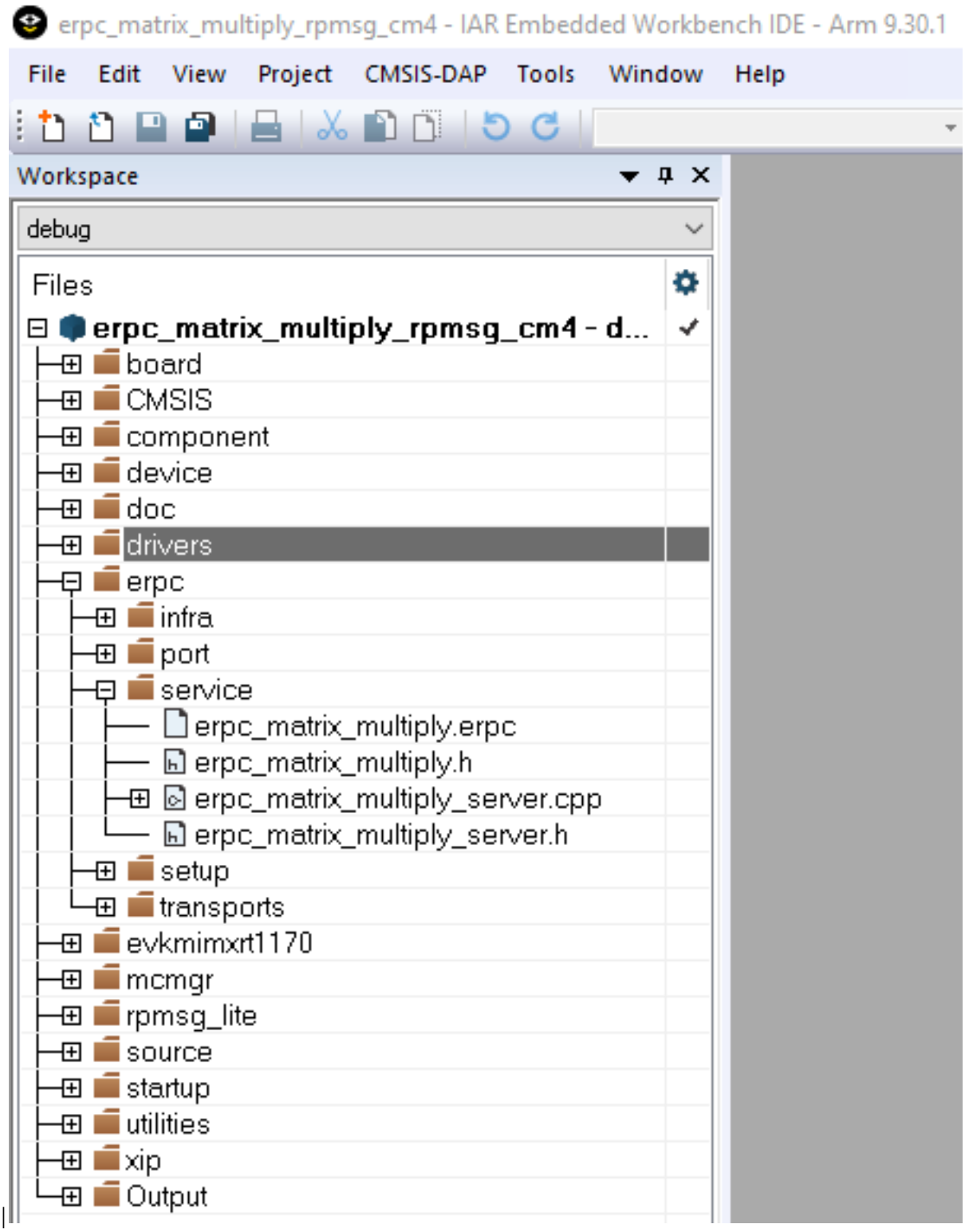
Parent topic: Multicore server application

Server related generated files The server-related generated files are:

- erpc_matric_multiply.h
- erpc_matrix_multiply_server.h
- erpc_matrix_multiply_server.cpp

The server-related generated files contain the shim code for functions and data types declared in the IDL file. These files also contain functions for the identification of client requested functions, data deserialization, calling requested function's implementations, and data serialization and return, if requested by the client. These shim code files can be found in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_common/erpc_matrix_multiply/s



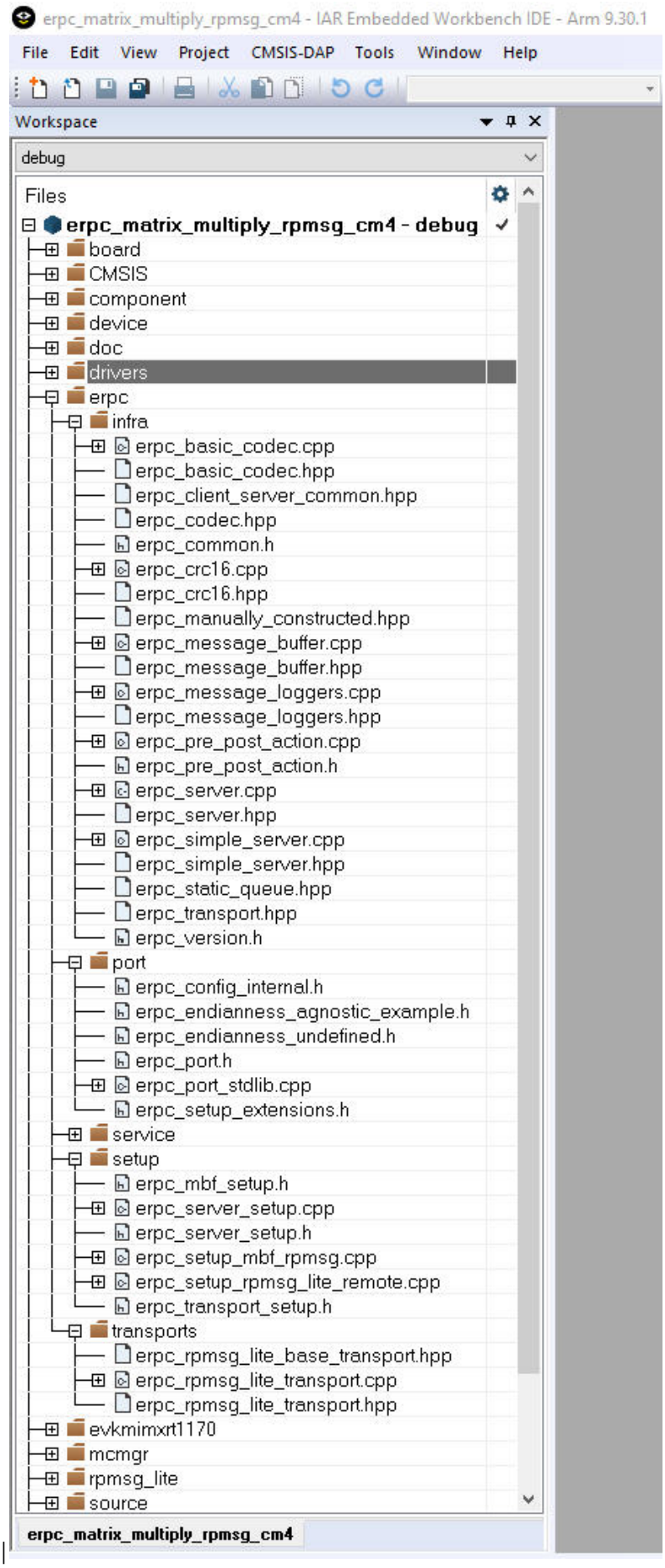
Parent topic: Multicore server application

Server infrastructure files The eRPC infrastructure files are located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/erpc/erpc_c

The **erpc_c** folder contains files for creating eRPC client and server applications in the *C/C++* language. These files are distributed into subfolders.

- The **infra** subfolder contains C++ infrastructure code used to build server and client applications.
  - Four files, erpc_server.hpp, erpc_server.cpp, erpc_simple_server.hpp, and erpc_simple_server.cpp, are used for running the eRPC server on the server-side applications. The simple server is currently the only implementation of the server, and its role is to catch client requests, identify and call requested functions, and send data back when requested.
  - Three files (erpc_codec.hpp, erpc_basic_codec.hpp, and erpc_basic_codec.cpp) are used for codecs. Currently, the basic codec is the initial and only implementation of the codecs.
  - The erpc_common.hpp file is used for common eRPC definitions, typedefs, and enums.
  - The erpc_manually_constructed.hpp file is used for allocating static storage for the used objects.
  - Message buffer files are used for storing serialized data: erpc_message_buffer.h and erpc_message_buffer.cpp.
  - The erpc_transport.h file defines the abstract interface for transport layer.
- The **port** subfolder contains the eRPC porting layer to adapt to different environments.
  - erpc_port.h file contains definition of erpc_malloc() and erpc_free() functions.
  - erpc_port_stdlib.cpp file ensures adaptation to stdlib.
  - erpc_config_internal.h internal erpc configuration file.
- The **setup** subfolder contains a set of plain C APIs that wrap the C++ infrastructure, providing client and server init and deinit routines that greatly simplify eRPC usage in C-based projects. No knowledge of C++ is required to use these APIs.
  - The erpc_server_setup.h and erpc_server_setup.cpp files needs to be added into the "Matrix multiply" example project to demonstrate the use of C-wrapped functions in this example.
  - The erpc_transport_setup.h and erpc_setup_rpmsg_lite_remote.cpp files needs to be added into the project in order to allow the C-wrapped function for transport layer setup.
  - The erpc_mbf_setup.h and erpc_setup_mbf_rpmsg.cpp files needs to be added into the project in order to allow message buffer factory usage.
- The **transports** subfolder contains transport classes for the different methods of communication supported by eRPC. Some transports are applicable only to host PCs, while others are applicable only to embedded or multicore systems. Most transports have corresponding client and server setup functions in the setup folder.
  - RPMsg-Lite is used as the transport layer for the communication between cores, erpc_rpmsg_lite_base_transport.hpp, erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.hpp, and erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.cpp files need to be added into the server project.


erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4 - IAR Embedded Workbench IDE - Arm 9.30.1
File Edit View Project CMSIS-DAP Tools Window Help
Workspace
debug
Files
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4 - debug
board
CMSIS
component
device
doc
drivers
erpc
infra
erpc_basic_codec.cpp
erpc_basic_codec.hpp
erpc_client_server_common.hpp
erpc_codec.hpp
erpc_common.h
erpc_crc16.cpp
erpc_crc16.hpp
erpc_manually_constructed.hpp
erpc_message_buffer.cpp
erpc_message_buffer.hpp
erpc_message_loggers.cpp
erpc_message_loggers.hpp
erpc_pre_post_action.cpp
erpc_pre_post_action.h
erpc_server.cpp
erpc_server.hpp
erpc_simple_server.cpp
erpc_simple_server.hpp
erpc_static_queue.hpp
erpc_transport.hpp
erpc_version.h
port
erpc_config_internal.h
erpc_endianness_agnostic_example.h
erpc_endianness_undefined.h
erpc_port.h
erpc_port_stdlib.cpp
erpc_setup_extensions.h
service
setup
erpc_mbf_setup.h
erpc_server_setup.cpp
erpc_server_setup.h
erpc_setup_mbf_rpmsg.cpp
erpc_setup_rpmsg_lite_remote.cpp
erpc_transport_setup.h
transports
erpc_rpmsg_lite_base_transport.hpp
erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.cpp
erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.hpp
evkmimxrt1170
mcmgr
rpmsg_lite
source
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4

|

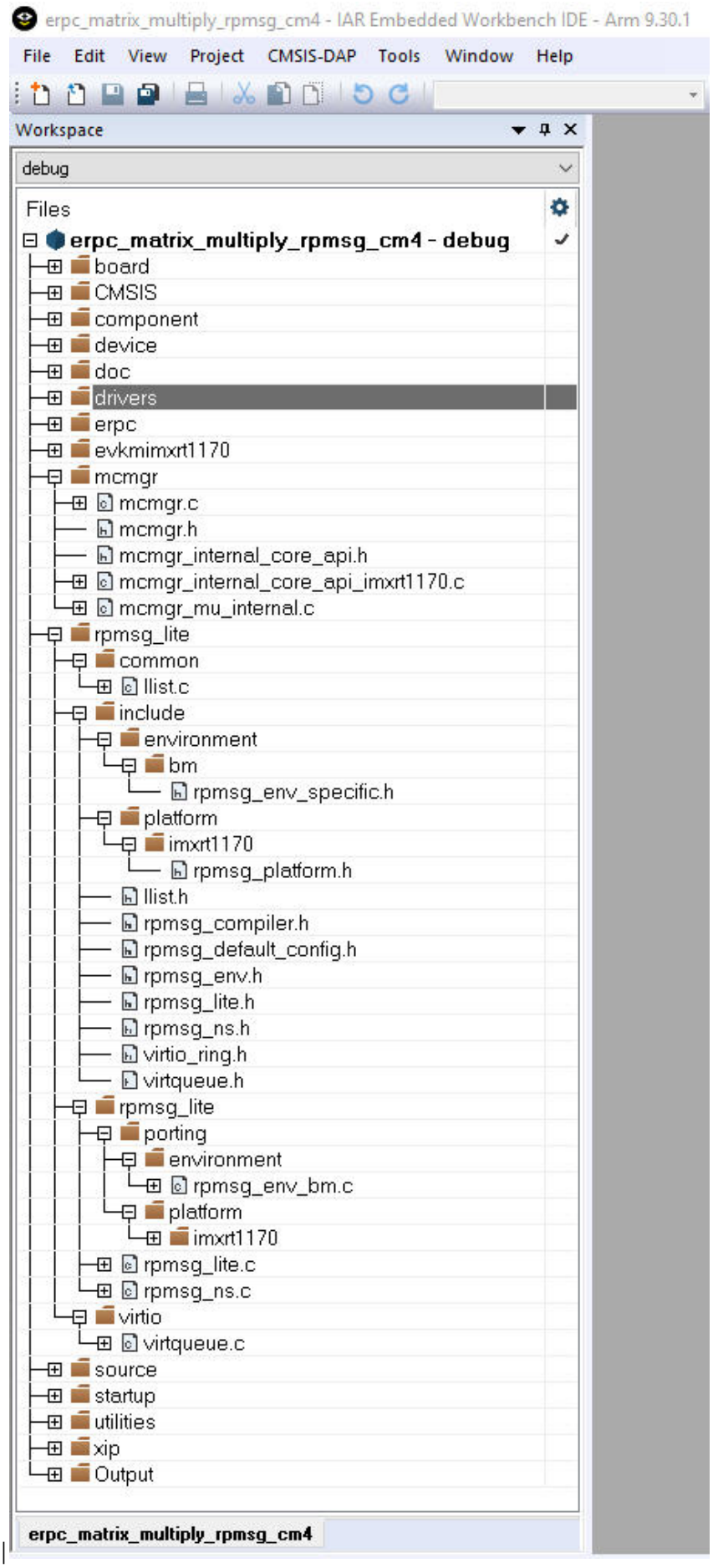
Parent topic: Multicore server application

Server multicore infrastructure files Because of the RPMsg-Lite (transport layer), it is also necessary to include RPMsg-Lite related files, which are in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/rpmsg_lite/

The multicore example applications also use the Multicore Manager software library to control the secondary core startup and shutdown. These source files are located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/mcmgr/


erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4 - IAR Embedded Workbench IDE - Arm 9.30.1
File Edit View Project CMSIS-DAP Tools Window Help
Workspace
debug
Files
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4 - debug
board
CMSIS
component
device
doc
drivers
erpc
evkmimxrt1170
mcmgr
mcmgr.c
mcmgr.h
mcmgr_internal_core_api.h
mcmgr_internal_core_api_imxrt1170.c
mcmgr_mu_internal.c
rpmsg_lite
common
llist.c
include
environment
bm
rpmsg_env_specific.h
platform
imxrt1170
rpmsg_platform.h
llist.h
rpmsg_compiler.h
rpmsg_default_config.h
rpmsg_env.h
rpmsg_lite.h
rpmsg_ns.h
virtio_ring.h
virtqueue.h
rpmsg_lite
porting
environment
rpmsg_env_bm.c
platform
imxrt1170
rpmsg_lite.c
rpmsg_ns.c
virtio
virtqueue.c
source
startup
utilities
xip
Output
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4

|

Parent topic: Multicore server application

Server user code The server's user code is stored in the main_core1.c file, located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg/cm4

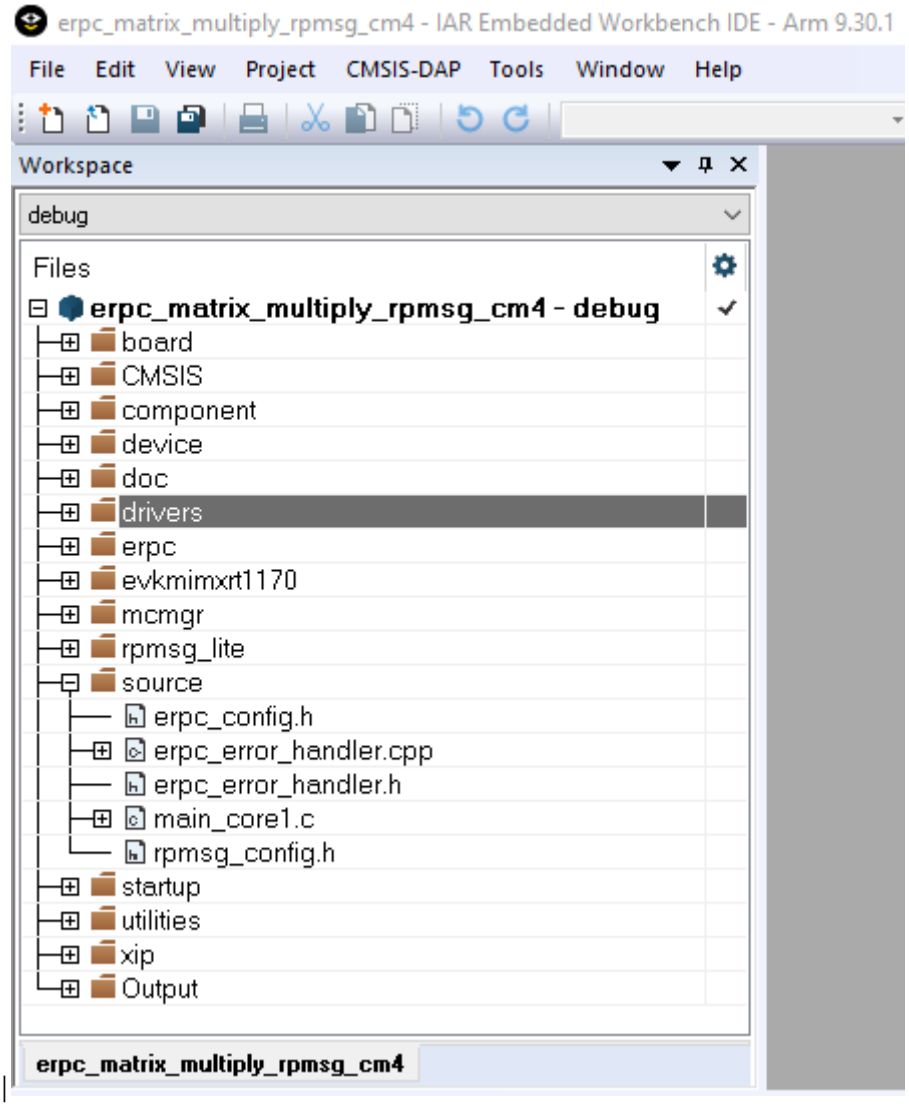
The main_core1.c file contains two functions:

- The **main()** function contains the code for the target board and eRPC server initialization. After the initialization, the matrix multiply service is added and the eRPC server waits for client's requests in the while loop.
- The **erpcMatrixMultiply()** function is the user implementation of the eRPC function defined in the IDL file.
- There is the possibility to write the application-specific eRPC error handler. The eRPC error handler of the matrix multiply application is implemented in the erpc_error_handler.h and erpc_error_handler.cpp files.

The eRPC-relevant code is captured in the following code snippet:

```
/* erpcMatrixMultiply function user implementation */
void erpcMatrixMultiply(const Matrix *matrix1, const Matrix *matrix2, Matrix *result_matrix)
{
  ...
}
int main()
{
  ...
  /* RPMsg-Lite transport layer initialization */
  erpc_transport_t transport;
  transport = erpc_transport_rpmsg_lite_remote_init(src, dst, (void*)startupData,
  ERPC_TRANSPORT_RPMSG_LITE_LINK_ID, SignalReady, NULL);
  ...
  /* MessageBufferFactory initialization */
  erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
  message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_rpmsg_init(transport);
  ...
  /* eRPC server side initialization */
  erpc_server_t server;
  server = erpc_server_init(transport, message_buffer_factory);
  ...
  /* Adding the service to the server */
  erpc_service_t service = create_MatrixMultiplyService_service();
  erpc_add_service_to_server(server, service);
  ...
  while (1)
  {
    /* Process eRPC requests */
    erpc_status_t status = erpc_server_poll(server);
    /* handle error status */
    if (status != kErpcStatus_Success)
    {
      /* print error description */
      erpc_error_handler(status, 0);
      ...
    }
    ...
  }
}
```

Except for the application main file, there are configuration files for the RPMsg-Lite (rpmsg_config.h) and eRPC (erpc_config.h), located in the *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg* folder.



Parent topic: Multicore server application

Parent topic:*Create an eRPC application*

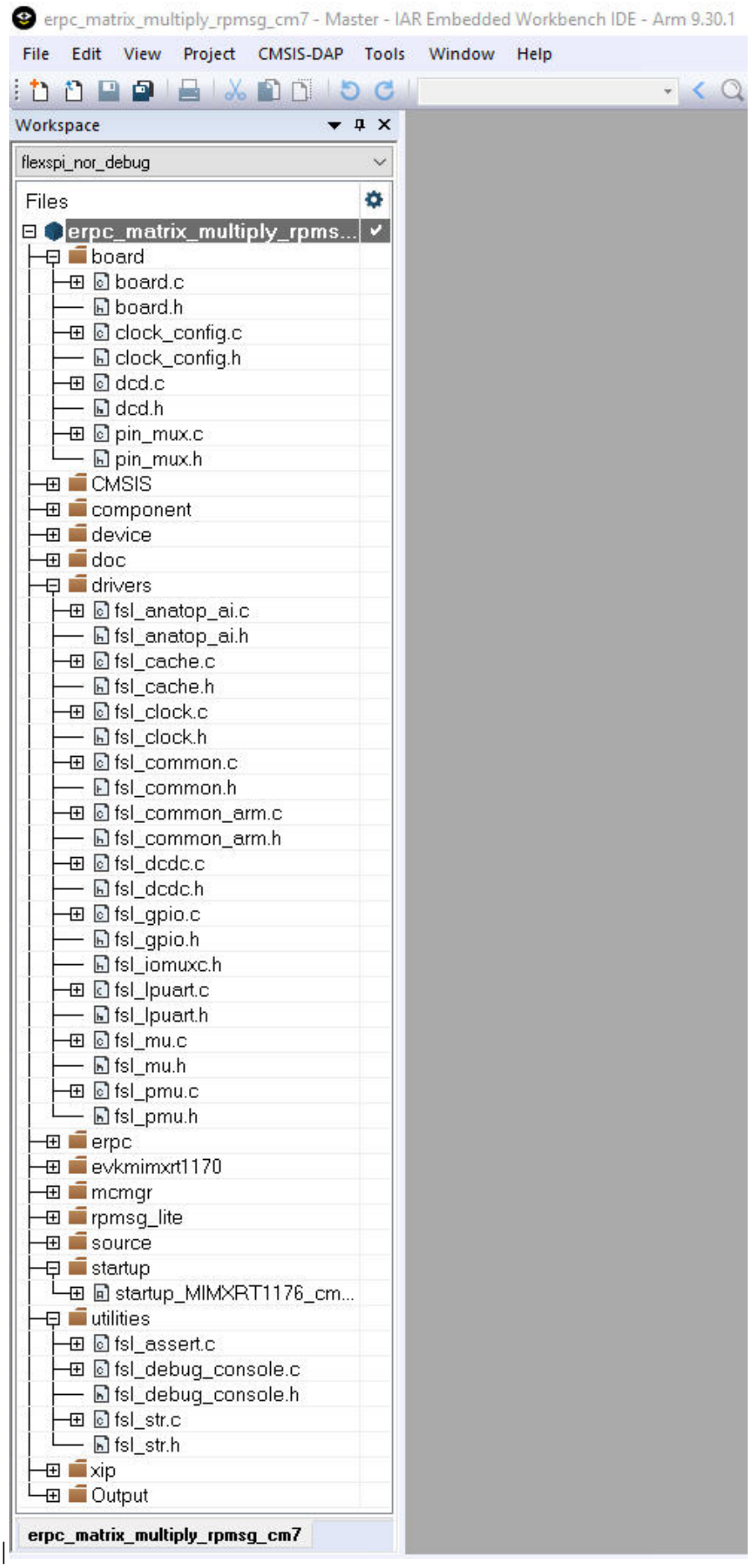
Multicore client application The "Matrix multiply" eRPC client project is located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg/cm7/iar

Project files for the eRPC client have the _cm7 suffix.

Client project basic source files The startup files, board-related settings, peripheral drivers, and utilities belong to the basic project source files and form the skeleton of all MCUXpresso SDK applications. These source files are located in the following folders:

- *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/devices/<device>*
- *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multicore_examples/<example_name>/*


erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7 - Master - IAR Embedded Workbench IDE - Arm 9.30.1
File Edit View Project CMSIS-DAP Tools Window Help
Workspace
flexspi_nor_debug
Files
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpms...
board
board.c
board.h
clock_config.c
clock_config.h
dcd.c
dcd.h
pin_mux.c
pin_mux.h
CMSIS
component
device
doc
drivers
fsl_anatop_ai.c
fsl_anatop_ai.h
fsl_cache.c
fsl_cache.h
fsl_clock.c
fsl_clock.h
fsl_common.c
fsl_common.h
fsl_common_arm.c
fsl_common_arm.h
fsl_dcdc.c
fsl_dcdc.h
fsl_gpio.c
fsl_gpio.h
fsl_iomuxc.h
fsl_lpuart.c
fsl_lpuart.h
fsl_mu.c
fsl_mu.h
fsl_pmu.c
fsl_pmu.h
erpc
evkmimxrt1170
mcmgr
rpmsg_lite
source
startup
startup_MIMXRT1176_cm...
utilities
fsl_assert.c
fsl_debug_console.c
fsl_debug_console.h
fsl_str.c
fsl_str.h
xip
Output
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7

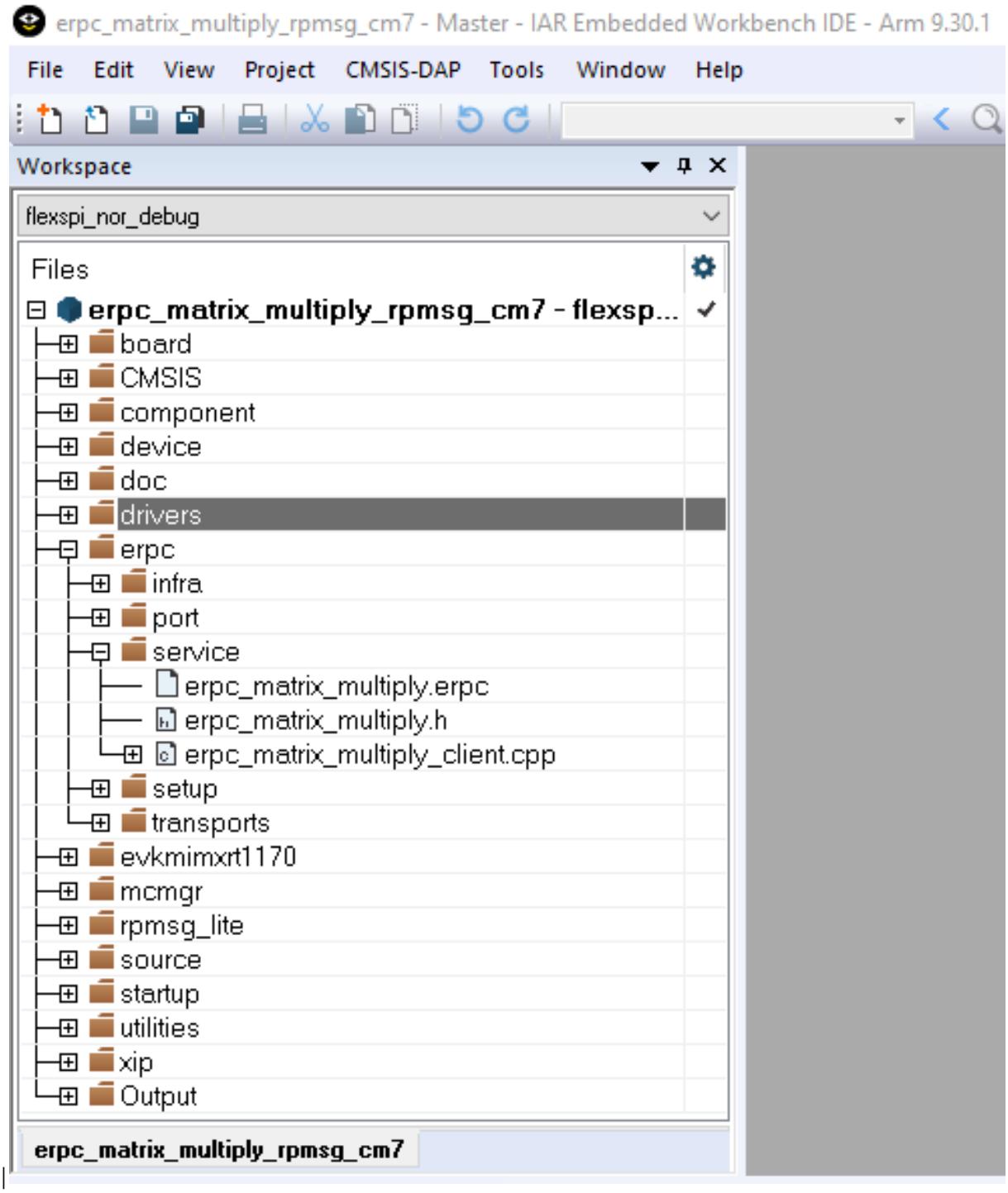
|

Parent topic: Multicore client application

Client-related generated files The client-related generated files are:

- erpc_matric_multiply.h
- erpc_matrix_multiply_client.cpp

These files contain the shim code for the functions and data types declared in the IDL file. These functions also call methods for codec initialization, data serialization, performing eRPC requests, and de-serializing outputs into expected data structures (if return values are expected). These shim code files can be found in the *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_common/erpc_matrix_multiply/service/* folder.



Parent topic: Multicore client application

Client infrastructure files The eRPC infrastructure files are located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/erpc/erpc_c

The **erpc_c** folder contains files for creating eRPC client and server applications in the C/C++ language. These files are distributed into subfolders.

- The **infra** subfolder contains C++ infrastructure code used to build server and client applications.

- Two files, erpc_client_manager.h and erpc_client_manager.cpp, are used for managing the client-side application. The main purpose of the client files is to create, perform, and release eRPC requests.
- Three files (erpc_codec.hpp, erpc_basic_codec.hpp, and erpc_basic_codec.cpp) are used for codecs. Currently, the basic codec is the initial and only implementation of the codecs.
- erpc_common.h file is used for common eRPC definitions, typedefs, and enums.
- erpc_manually_constructed.hpp file is used for allocating static storage for the used objects.
- Message buffer files are used for storing serialized data: erpc_message_buffer.hpp and erpc_message_buffer.cpp.
- erpc_transport.hpp file defines the abstract interface for transport layer.

The **port** subfolder contains the eRPC porting layer to adapt to different environments.

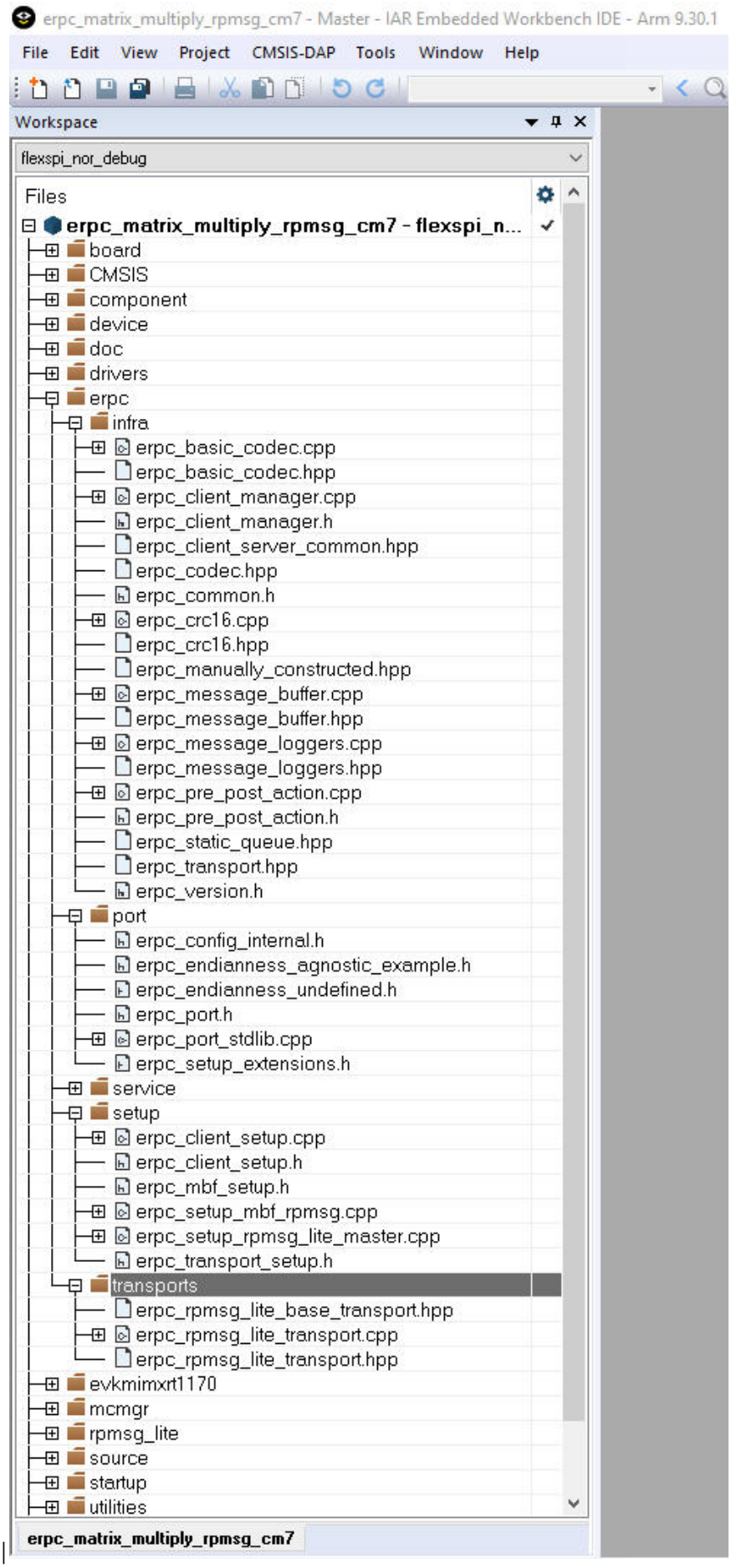
- erpc_port.h file contains definition of erpc_malloc() and erpc_free() functions.
- erpc_port_stdlib.cpp file ensures adaptation to stdlib.
- erpc_config_internal.h internal eRPC configuration file.

The **setup** subfolder contains a set of plain C APIs that wrap the C++ infrastructure, providing client and server init and deinit routines that greatly simplify eRPC usage in C-based projects. No knowledge of C++ is required to use these APIs.

- erpc_client_setup.h and erpc_client_setup.cpp files needs to be added into the "Matrix multiply" example project to demonstrate the use of C-wrapped functions in this example.
- erpc_transport_setup.h and erpc_setup_rpmsg_lite_master.cpp files needs to be added into the project in order to allow C-wrapped function for transport layer setup.
- erpc_mbf_setup.h and erpc_setup_mbf_rpmsg.cpp files needs to be added into the project in order to allow message buffer factory usage.

The **transports** subfolder contains transport classes for the different methods of communication supported by eRPC. Some transports are applicable only to host PCs, while others are applicable only to embedded or multicore systems. Most transports have corresponding client and server setup functions, in the setup folder.

- RPMsg-Lite is used as the transport layer for the communication between cores, erpc_rpmsg_lite_base_transport.hpp, erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.hpp, and erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.cpp files needs to be added into the client project.


erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7 - Master - IAR Embedded Workbench IDE - Arm 9.30.1
File Edit View Project CMSIS-DAP Tools Window Help
Workspace
flexspi_nor_debug
Files
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7 - flexspi_n...
board
CMSIS
component
device
doc
drivers
erpc
infra
erpc_basic_codec.cpp
erpc_basic_codec.hpp
erpc_client_manager.cpp
erpc_client_manager.h
erpc_client_server_common.hpp
erpc_codec.hpp
erpc_common.h
erpc_crc16.cpp
erpc_crc16.hpp
erpc_manually_constructed.hpp
erpc_message_buffer.cpp
erpc_message_buffer.hpp
erpc_message_loggers.cpp
erpc_message_loggers.hpp
erpc_pre_post_action.cpp
erpc_pre_post_action.h
erpc_static_queue.hpp
erpc_transport.hpp
erpc_version.h
port
erpc_config_internal.h
erpc_endianness_agnostic_example.h
erpc_endianness_undefined.h
erpc_port.h
erpc_port_stdlib.cpp
erpc_setup_extensions.h
service
setup
erpc_client_setup.cpp
erpc_client_setup.h
erpc_mbf_setup.h
erpc_setup_mbf_rpmsg.cpp
erpc_setup_rpmsg_lite_master.cpp
erpc_transport_setup.h
transports
erpc_rpmsg_lite_base_transport.hpp
erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.cpp
erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.hpp
evkmimxrt1170
mcmgr
rpmsg_lite
source
startup
utilities
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7

|

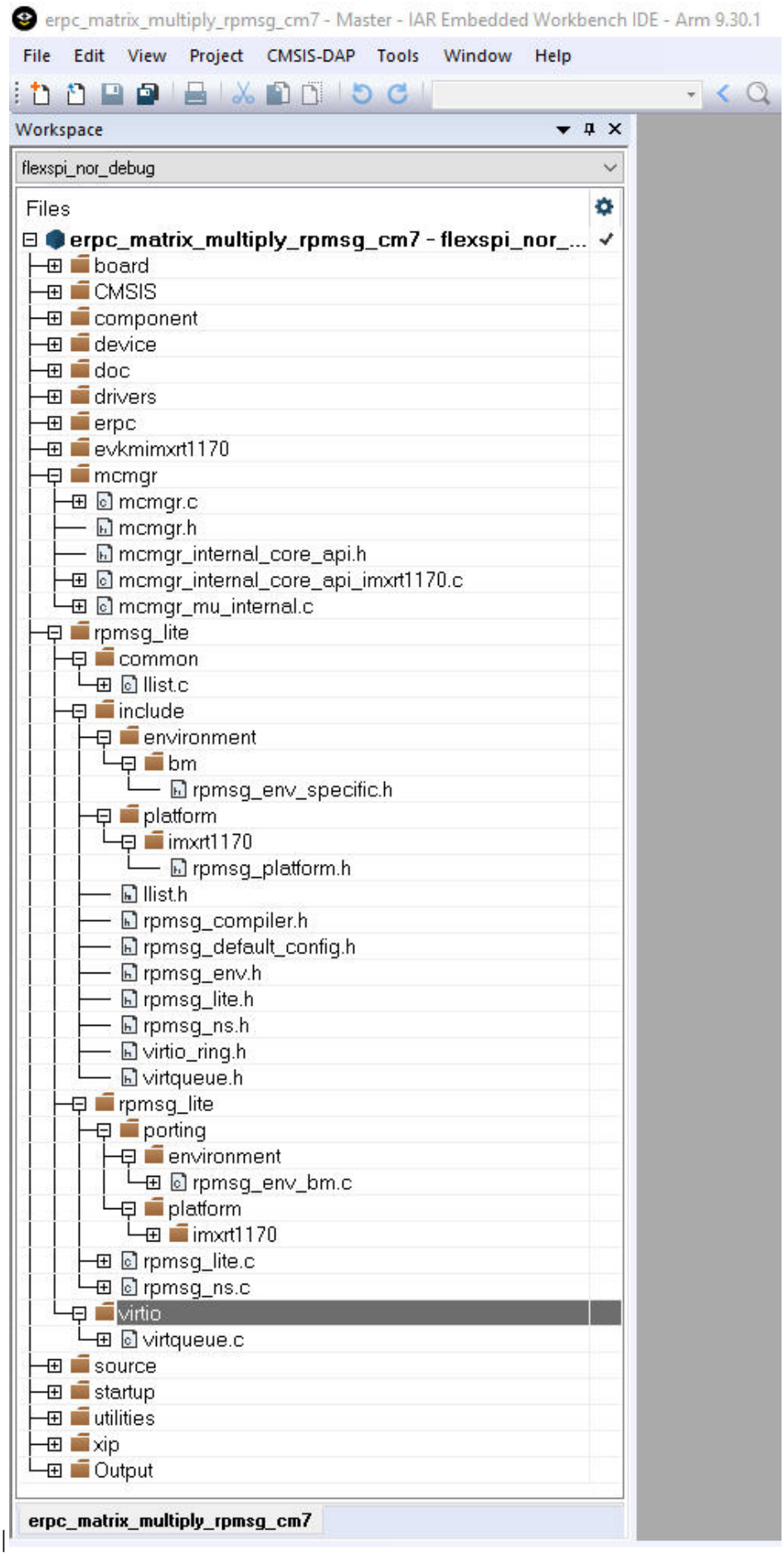
Parent topic: Multicore client application

Client multicore infrastructure files Because of the RPMsg-Lite (transport layer), it is also necessary to include RPMsg-Lite related files, which are in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/rpmsg_lite/

The multicore example applications also use the Multicore Manager software library to control the secondary core startup and shutdown. These source files are located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/mcmgr/


erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7 - Master - IAR Embedded Workbench IDE - Arm 9.30.1
File Edit View Project CMSIS-DAP Tools Window Help
Workspace
flexspi_nor_debug
Files
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7 - flexspi_nor_...
board
CMSIS
component
device
doc
drivers
erpc
evkmimxrt1170
mcmgr
mcmgr.c
mcmgr.h
mcmgr_internal_core_api.h
mcmgr_internal_core_api_imxrt1170.c
mcmgr_mu_internal.c
rpmsg_lite
common
llist.c
include
environment
bm
rpmsg_env_specific.h
platform
imxrt1170
rpmsg_platform.h
llist.h
rpmsg_compiler.h
rpmsg_default_config.h
rpmsg_env.h
rpmsg_lite.h
rpmsg_ns.h
virtio_ring.h
virtqueue.h
rpmsg_lite
porting
environment
rpmsg_env_bm.c
platform
imxrt1170
rpmsg_lite.c
rpmsg_ns.c
virtio
virtqueue.c
source
startup
utilities
xip
Output
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7

|

Parent topic: Multicore client application

Client user code The client's user code is stored in the main_core0.c file, located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_example/erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg/cm7

The main_core0.c file contains the code for target board and eRPC initialization.

- After initialization, the secondary core is released from reset.
- When the secondary core is ready, the primary core initializes two matrix variables.
- The erpcMatrixMultiply eRPC function is called to issue the eRPC request and get the result.

It is possible to write the application-specific eRPC error handler. The eRPC error handler of the matrix multiply application is implemented in erpc_error_handler.h and erpc_error_handler.cpp files.

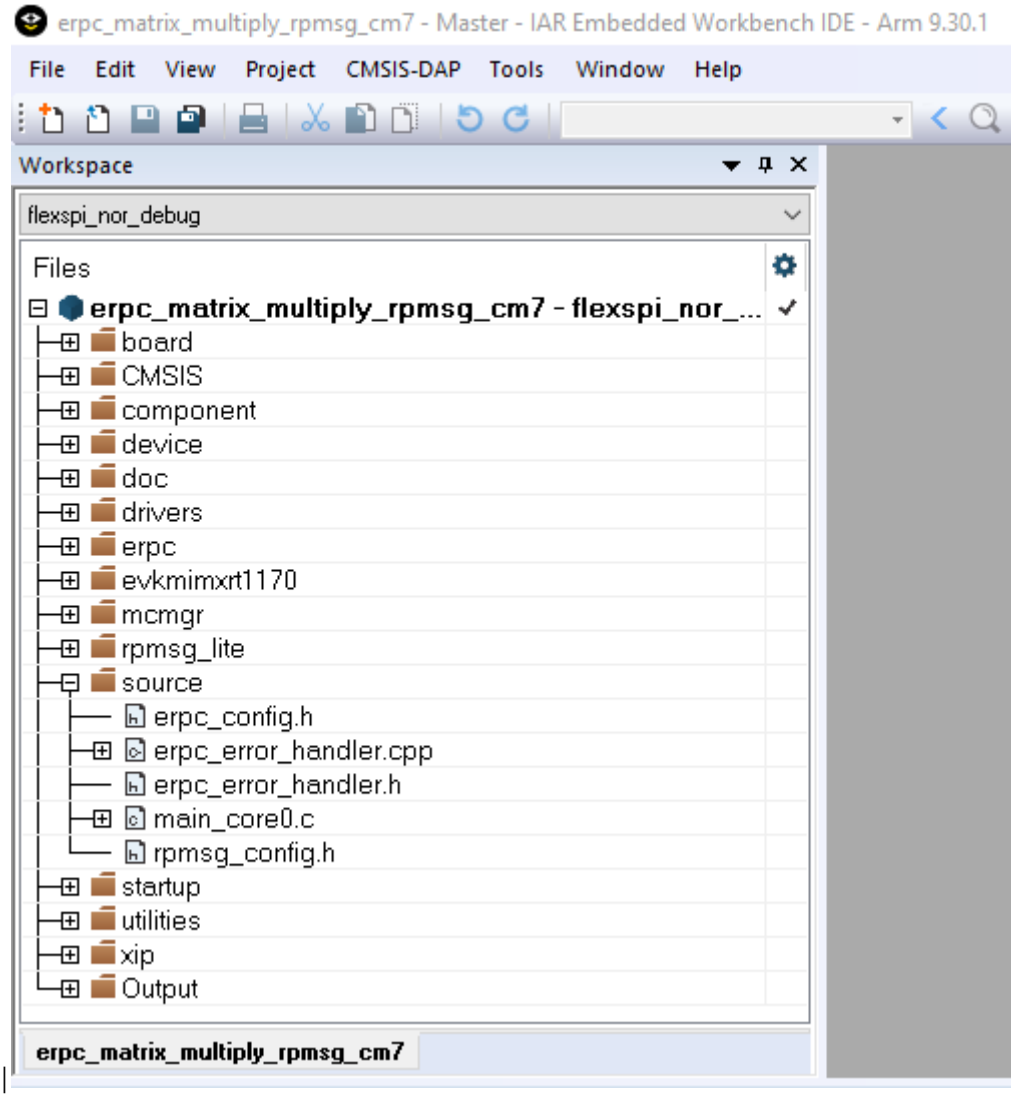
The matrix multiplication can be issued repeatedly, when pressing a software board button.

The eRPC-relevant code is captured in the following code snippet:

```
...
extern bool g_erpc_error_occurred;
...
/* Declare matrix arrays */
Matrix matrix1 = {0}, matrix2 = {0}, result_matrix = {0};
...
/* RPMsg-Lite transport layer initialization */
erpc_transport_t transport;
transport = erpc_transport_rpmsg_lite_master_init(src, dst,
ERPC_TRANSPORT_RPMSG_LITE_LINK_ID);
...
/* MessageBufferFactory initialization */
erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_rpmsg_init(transport);
...
/* eRPC client side initialization */
erpc_client_t client;
client = erpc_client_init(transport, message_buffer_factory);
...
/* Set default error handler */
erpc_client_set_error_handler(client, erpc_error_handler);
...
while (1)
{
  /* Invoke the erpcMatrixMultiply function */
  erpcMatrixMultiply(matrix1, matrix2, result_matrix);
  ...
  /* Check if some error occured in eRPC */
  if (g_erpc_error_occurred)
  {
    /* Exit program loop */
    break;
  }
  ...
}
```

Except for the application main file, there are configuration files for the RPMsg-Lite (rpmsg_config.h) and eRPC (erpc_config.h), located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg



|

|

Parent topic: Multicore client application

Parent topic:*Create an eRPC application*

Multiprocessor server application The "Matrix multiply" eRPC server project for multiprocessor applications is located in the *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir»/boards/<board_name>/multiprocessor_examples/erpc_server_matrix_multiply_<transport_layer>* folder.

Most of the multiprocessor application setup is the same as for the multicore application. The multiprocessor server application requires server-related generated files (server shim code), server infrastructure files, and the server user code. There is no need for server multicore infrastructure files (MCMGR and RPMsg-Lite). The RPMsg-Lite transport layer is replaced either by SPI or UART transports. The following table shows the required transport-related files per each transport type.

|SPI|<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/setup/erpc_setup_(d)spi_slave.cpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/erpc_(d)spi_slave_transport.hpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/erpc_(d)spi_slave_transport.cpp

| |UART|<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/setup/erpc_setup_uart_cmsis.cpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/erpc_uart_cmsis_transport.hpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/erpc_uart_cmsis_transport.cpp

|

Server user code The server's user code is stored in the main_server.c file, located in the *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multiprocessor_examples/erpc_server_matrix_multiply_<transport_layer>/* folder.

The eRPC-relevant code with UART as a transport is captured in the following code snippet:

```
/* erpcMatrixMultiply function user implementation */
void erpcMatrixMultiply(Matrix matrix1, Matrix matrix2, Matrix result_matrix)
{
  ...
}
int main()
{
  ...
  /* UART transport layer initialization, ERPC_DEMO_UART is the structure of CMSIS UART driver␣
↪operations */
  erpc_transport_t transport;
  transport = erpc_transport_cmsis_uart_init((void *)&ERPC_DEMO_UART);
  ...
  /* MessageBufferFactory initialization */
  erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
  message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_dynamic_init();
  ...
  /* eRPC server side initialization */
  erpc_server_t server;
  server = erpc_server_init(transport, message_buffer_factory);
  ...
  /* Adding the service to the server */
  erpc_service_t service = create_MatrixMultiplyService_service();
  erpc_add_service_to_server(server, service);
  ...
  while (1)
  {
    /* Process eRPC requests */
    erpc_status_t status = erpc_server_poll(server)
    /* handle error status */
    if (status != kErpcStatus_Success)
    {
      /* print error description */
      erpc_error_handler(status, 0);
      ...
    }
    ...
  }
}
```

Parent topic: Multiprocessor server application

Multiprocessor client application The "Matrix multiply" eRPC client project for multiprocessor applications is located in the *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multiprocessor_examples/erpc_client_matrix_multiply_<transport_layer>/iar/* folder.

Most of the multiprocessor application setup is the same as for the multicore application. The multiprocessor server application requires client-related generated files (server shim code),

client infrastructure files, and the client user code. There is no need for client multicore infrastructure files (MCMGR and RPMsg-Lite). The RPMsg-Lite transport layer is replaced either by SPI or UART transports. The following table shows the required transport-related files per each transport type.

|SPI|<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/setup/erpc_setup_(d)spi_master.cpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/ erpc_(d)spi_master_transport.hpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/ erpc_(d)spi_master_transport.cpp

| |UART|<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/setup/erpc_setup_uart_cmsis.cpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/erpc_uart_cmsis_transport.hpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/erpc_uart_cmsis_transport.cpp

|

Client user code The client's user code is stored in the main_client.c file, located in the *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multiprocessor_examples/erpc_client_matrix_multiply_<transport_layer>/* folder.

The eRPC-relevant code with UART as a transport is captured in the following code snippet:

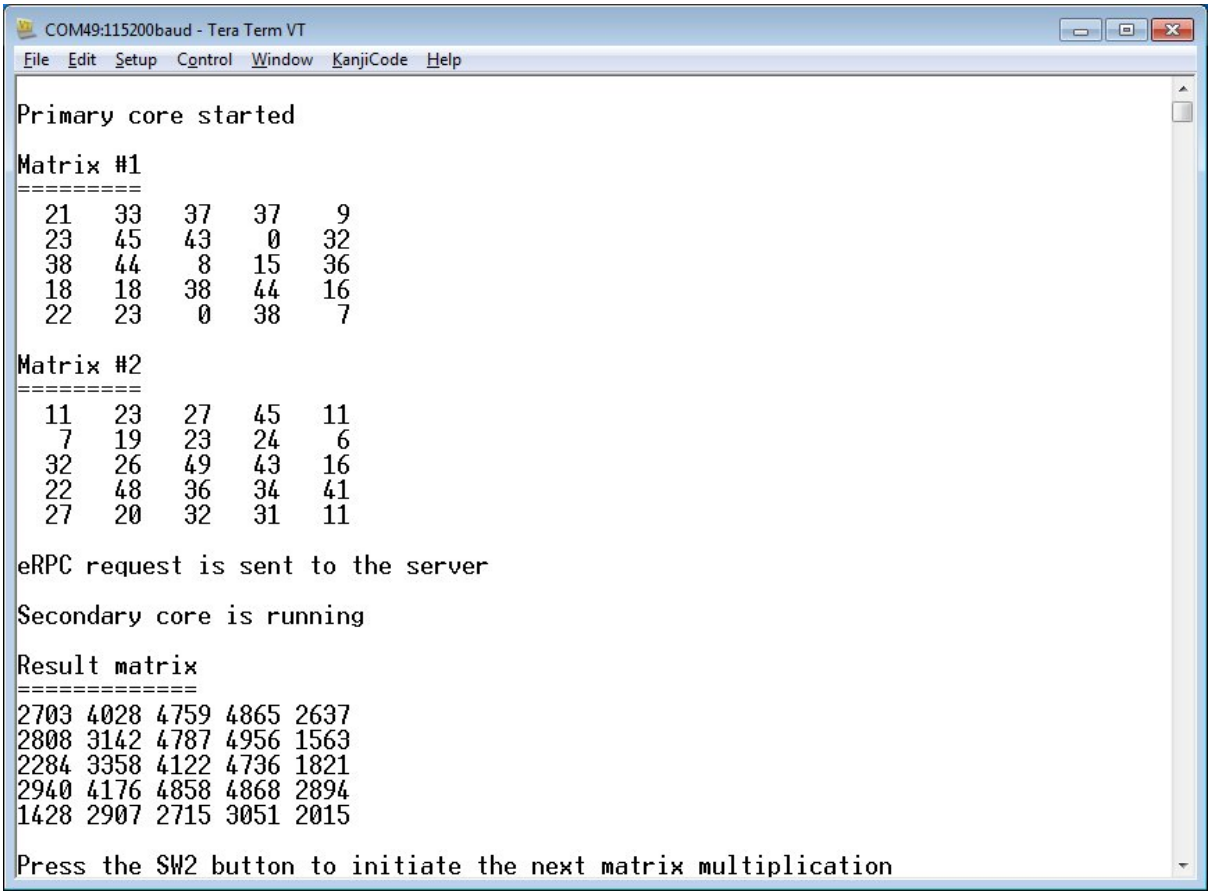
```
...
extern bool g_erpc_error_occurred;
...
/* Declare matrix arrays */
Matrix matrix1 = {0}, matrix2 = {0}, result_matrix = {0};
...
/* UART transport layer initialization, ERPC_DEMO_UART is the structure of CMSIS UART driver␣
↪operations */
erpc_transport_t transport;
transport = erpc_transport_cmsis_uart_init((void *)&ERPC_DEMO_UART);
...
/* MessageBufferFactory initialization */
erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_dynamic_init();
...
/* eRPC client side initialization */
erpc_client_t client;
client = erpc_client_init(transport,message_buffer_factory);
...
/* Set default error handler */
erpc_client_set_error_handler(client, erpc_error_handler);
...
while (1)
{
  /* Invoke the erpcMatrixMultiply function */
  erpcMatrixMultiply(matrix1, matrix2, result_matrix);
  ...
  /* Check if some error occured in eRPC */
  if (g_erpc_error_occurred)
  {
    /* Exit program loop */
    break;
  }
  ...
}
```

Parent topic: Multiprocessor client application

Parent topic: Multiprocessor server application

Parent topic:*Create an eRPC application*

Running the eRPC application Follow the instructions in *Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK* (document MCUXSDKGSUG) (located in the *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/docs* folder), to load both the primary and the secondary core images into the on-chip memory, and then effectively debug the dual-core application. After the application is running, the serial console should look like:



For multiprocessor applications that are running between PC and the target evaluation board or between two boards, follow the instructions in the accompanied example readme files that provide details about the proper board setup and the PC side setup (Python).

Parent topic:*Create an eRPC application*

Parent topic:*eRPC example*

Other uses for an eRPC implementation The eRPC implementation is generic, and its use is not limited to just embedded applications. When creating an eRPC application outside the embedded world, the same principles apply. For example, this manual can be used to create an eRPC application for a PC running the Linux operating system. Based on the used type of transport medium, existing transport layers can be used, or new transport layers can be implemented.

For more information and erpc updates see the github.com/EmbeddedRPC.

Note about the source code in the document Example code shown in this document has the following copyright and BSD-3-Clause license:

Copyright 2024 NXP Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of the copyright holder nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Changelog eRPC All notable changes to this project will be documented in this file.

The format is based on Keep a Changelog, and this project adheres to Semantic Versioning.

Unreleased

Added

Fixed

- Python code of the eRPC infrastructure was updated to match the proper python code style, add type annotations and improve readability.

1.14.0

Added

- Added Cmake/Kconfig support.
- Made java code jdk11 compliant, GitHub PR #432.
- Added imxrt1186 support into mu transport layer.
- erpcgen: Added assert for listType before usage, GitHub PR #406.

Fixed

- eRPC: Sources reformatted.
- erpc: Fixed typo in semaphore get (mutex -> semaphore), and write it can fail in case of timeout, GitHub PR #446.
- erpc: Free the arbitrated client token from client manager, GitHub PR #444.

- erpc: Fixed Makefile, install the erpc_simple_server header, GitHub PR #447.
- erpc_python: Fixed possible AttributeError and OSError on calling TCPTransport.close(), GitHub PR #438.
- Examples and tests consolidated.

1.13.0

Added

- erpc: Add BSD-3 license to endianness agnostic files, GitHub PR #417.
- eRPC: Add new Zephyr-related transports (zephyr_uart, zephyr_mbox).
- eRPC: Add new Zephyr-related examples.

Fixed

- eRPC,erpcgen: Fixing/improving markdown files, GitHub PR #395.
- eRPC: Fix Python client TCPTransports not being able to close, GitHub PR #390.
- eRPC,erpcgen: Align switch brackets, GitHub PR #396.
- erpc: Fix zephyr uart transport, GitHub PR #410.
- erpc: UART ZEPHYR Transport stop to work after a few transactions when using USB-CDC resolved, GitHub PR #420.

Removed

- eRPC,erpcgen: Remove cstbool library, GitHub PR #403.

1.12.0

Added

- eRPC: Add dynamic/static option for transport init, GitHub PR #361.
- eRPC,erpcgen: Winsock2 support, GitHub PR #365.
- eRPC,erpcgen: Feature/support multiple clients, GitHub PR #271.
- eRPC,erpcgen: Feature/buffer head - Framed transport header data stored in MessageBuffer, GitHub PR #378.
- eRPC,erpcgen: Add experimental Java support.

Fixed

- eRPC: Fix receive error value for spidev, GitHub PR #363.
- eRPC: UartTransport::init adaptation to changed driver.
- eRPC: Fix typo in assert, GitHub PR #371.
- eRPC,erpcgen: Move enums to enum classes, GitHub PR #379.
- eRPC: Fixed rpmsg tty transport to work with serial transport, GitHub PR #373.

1.11.0

Fixed

- eRPC: Makefiles update, GitHub PR #301.
- eRPC: Resolving warnings in Python, GitHub PR #325.
- eRPC: Python3.8 is not ready for usage of typing.Any type, GitHub PR #325.
- eRPC: Improved codec function to use reference instead of address, GitHub PR #324.
- eRPC: Fix NULL check for pending client creation, GitHub PR #341.
- eRPC: Replace sprintf with snprintf, GitHub PR #343.
- eRPC: Use MU_SendMsg blocking call in MU transport.
- eRPC: New LPSPI and LPI2C transport layers.
- eRPC: Freeing static objects, GitHub PR #353.
- eRPC: Fixed casting in deinit functions, GitHub PR #354.
- eRPC: Align LIBUSBSIO.GetNumPorts API use with libusbsio python module v. 2.1.11.
- erpcgen: Renamed temp variable to more generic one, GitHub PR #321.
- erpcgen: Add check that string read is not more than max length, GitHub PR #328.
- erpcgen: Move to g++ in pytest, GitHub PR #335.
- erpcgen: Use build=release for make, GitHub PR #334.
- erpcgen: Removed boost dependency, GitHub PR #346.
- erpcgen: Mingw support, GitHub PR #344.
- erpcgen: VS build update, GitHub PR #347.
- erpcgen: Modified name for common types macro scope, GitHub PR #337.
- erpcgen: Fixed memcpy for template, GitHub PR #352.
- eRPC,erpcgen: Change default build target to release + adding artefacts, GitHub PR #334.
- eRPC,erpcgen: Remove redundant includes, GitHub PR #338.
- eRPC,erpcgen: Many minor code improvements, GitHub PR #323.

1.10.0

Fixed

- eRPC: MU transport layer switched to blocking MU_SendMsg() API use.

1.10.0

Added

- eRPC: Add TCP_NODELAY option to python, GitHub PR #298.

Fixed

- eRPC: MUTransport adaptation to new supported SoCs.
- eRPC: Simplifying CI with installing dependencies using shell script, GitHub PR #267.
- eRPC: Using event for waiting for sock connection in TCP python server, formatting python code, C specific includes, GitHub PR #269.
- eRPC: Endianness agnostic update, GitHub PR #276.
- eRPC: Assertion added for functions which are returning status on freeing memory, GitHub PR #277.
- eRPC: Fixed closing arbitrator server in unit tests, GitHub PR #293.
- eRPC: Makefile updated to reflect the correct header names, GitHub PR #295.
- eRPC: Compare value length to used length() in reading data from message buffer, GitHub PR #297.
- eRPC: Replace EXPECT_TRUE with EXPECT_EQ in unit tests, GitHub PR #318.
- eRPC: Adapt rpmsg_lite based transports to changed rpmsg_lite_wait_for_link_up() API parameters.
- eRPC, erpcgen: Better distuingish which file can and cannot by linked by C linker, GitHub PR #266.
- eRPC, erpcgen: Stop checking if pointer is NULL before sending it to the erpc_free function, GitHub PR #275.
- eRPC, erpcgen: Changed api to count with more interfaces, GitHub PR #304.
- erpcgen: Check before reading from heap the buffer boundaries, GitHub PR #287.
- erpcgen: Several fixes for tests and CI, GitHub PR #289.
- erpcgen: Refactoring erpcgen code, GitHub PR #302.
- erpcgen: Fixed assigning const value to enum, GitHub PR #309.
- erpcgen: Enable runTesttest_enumErrorCode_allDirection, serialize enums as int32 instead of uint32.

1.9.1

Fixed

- eRPC: Construct the USB CDC transport, rather than a client, GitHub PR #220.
- eRPC: Fix premature import of package, causing failure when attempting installation of Python library in a clean environment, GitHub PR #38, #226.
- eRPC: Improve python detection in make, GitHub PR #225.
- eRPC: Fix several warnings with deprecated call in pytest, GitHub PR #227.
- eRPC: Fix freeing union members when only default need be freed, GitHub PR #228.
- eRPC: Fix making test under Linux, GitHub PR #229.
- eRPC: Assert costumizing, GitHub PR #148.
- eRPC: Fix corrupt clientList bug in TransportArbitrator, GitHub PR #199.
- eRPC: Fix build issue when invoking g++ with -Wno-error=free-nonheap-object, GitHub PR #233.
- eRPC: Fix inout cases, GitHub PR #237.

- eRPC: Remove ERPC_PRE_POST_ACTION dependency on return type, GitHub PR #238.
- eRPC: Adding NULL to ptr when codec function failed, fixing memcpy when fail is present during deserialization, GitHub PR #253.
- eRPC: MessageBuffer usage improvement, GitHub PR #258.
- eRPC: Get rid for serial and enum34 dependency (enum34 is in python3 since 3.4 (from 2014)), GitHub PR #247.
- eRPC: Several MISRA violations addressed.
- eRPC: Fix timeout for Freertos semaphore, GitHub PR #251.
- eRPC: Use of rpmsg_lite_wait_for_link_up() in rpmsg_lite based transports, GitHub PR #223.
- eRPC: Fix codec nullptr dereferencing, GitHub PR #264.
- erpcgen: Fix two syntax errors in erpcgen Python output related to non-encapsulated unions, improved test for union, GitHub PR #206, #224.
- erpcgen: Fix serialization of list/binary types, GitHub PR #240.
- erpcgen: Fix empty list parsing, GitHub PR #72.
- erpcgen: Fix templates for malloc errors, GitHub PR #110.
- erpcgen: Get rid of encapsulated union declarations in global scale, improve enum usage in unions, GitHub PR #249, #250.
- erpcgen: Fix compile error:UniqueIdChecker.cpp:156:104:'sort' was not declared, GitHub PR #265.

1.9.0

Added

- eRPC: Allow used LIBUSBSIO device index being specified from the Python command line argument.

Fixed

- eRPC: Improving template usage, GitHub PR #153.
- eRPC: run_clang_format.py cleanup, GitHub PR #177.
- eRPC: Build TCP transport setup code into liberpc, GitHub PR #179.
- eRPC: Fix multiple definitions of g_client error, GitHub PR #180.
- eRPC: Fix memset past end of buffer in erpc_setup_mbf_static.cpp, GitHub PR #184.
- eRPC: Fix deprecated error with newer pytest version, GitHub PR #203.
- eRPC, erpcgen: Static allocation support and usage of rpmsg static FreeRTOSs related APi, GitHub PR #168, #169.
- erpcgen: Remove redundant module imports in erpcgen, GitHub PR #196.

1.8.1

Added

- eRPC: New i2c_slave_transport trasnport introduced.

Fixed

- eRPC: Fix misra erpc c, GitHub PR #158.
- eRPC: Allow conditional compilation of message_loggers and pre_post_action.
- eRPC: (D)SPI slave transports updated to avoid busy loops in rtos environments.
- erpcgen: Re-implement EnumMember::hasValue(), GitHub PR #159.
- erpcgen: Fixing several misra issues in shim code, erpcgen and unit tests updated, GitHub PR #156.
- erpcgen: Fix bison file, GitHub PR #156.

1.8.0

Added

- eRPC: Support win32 thread, GitHub PR #108.
- eRPC: Add mbed support for malloc() and free(), GitHub PR #92.
- eRPC: Introduced pre and post callbacks for eRPC call, GitHub PR #131.
- eRPC: Introduced new USB CDC transport.
- eRPC: Introduced new Linux spidev-based transport.
- eRPC: Added formatting extension for VSC, GitHub PR #134.
- erpcgen: Introduce ustring type for unsigned char and force cast to char*, GitHub PR #125.

Fixed

- eRPC: Update makefile.
- eRPC: Fixed warnings and error with using MessageLoggers, GitHub PR #127.
- eRPC: Extend error msg for python server service handle function, GitHub PR #132.
- eRPC: Update CMSIS UART transport layer to avoid busy loops in rtos environments, introduce semaphores.
- eRPC: SPI transport update to allow usage without handshaking GPIO.
- eRPC: Native _WIN32 erpc serial transport and threading.
- eRPC: Arbitrator deadlock fix, TCP transport updated, TCP setup functions introduced, GitHub PR #121.
- eRPC: Update of matrix_multiply.py example: Add –serial and –baud argument, GitHub PR #137.
- eRPC: Update of .clang-format, GitHub PR #140.
- eRPC: Update of erpc_framed_transport.cpp: return error if received message has zero length, GitHub PR #141.
- eRPC, erpcgen: Fixed error messages produced by -Wall -Wextra -Wshadow -pedantic-errors compiler flags, GitHub PR #136, #139.
- eRPC, erpcgen: Core re-formatted using Clang version 10.
- erpcgen: Enable deallocation in server shim code when callback/function pointer used as out parameter in IDL.
- erpcgen: Removed '$' character from generated symbol name in '_$union' suffix, GitHub PR #103.

- erpcgen: Resolved mismatch between C++ and Python for callback index type, GitHub PR #111.
- erpcgen: Python generator improvements, GitHub PR #100, #118.
- erpcgen: Fixed error messages produced by -Wall -Wextra -Wshadow -pedantic-errors compiler flags, GitHub PR #136.

1.7.4

Added

- eRPC: Support MU transport unit testing.
- eRPC: Adding mbed os support.

Fixed

- eRPC: Unit test code updated to handle service add and remove operations.
- eRPC: Several MISRA issues in rpmsg-based transports addressed.
- eRPC: Fixed Linux/TCP acceptance tests in release target.
- eRPC: Minor documentation updates, code formatting.
- erpcgen: Whitespace removed from C common header template.

1.7.3

Fixed

- eRPC: Improved the test_callbacks logic to be more understandable and to allow requested callback execution on the server side.
- eRPC: TransportArbitrator::prepareClientReceive modified to avoid incorrect return value type.
- eRPC: The ClientManager and the ArbitratedClientManager updated to avoid performing client requests when the previous serialization phase fails.
- erpcgen: Generate the shim code for destroy of statically allocated services.

1.7.2

Added

- eRPC: Add missing doxygen comments for transports.

Fixed

- eRPC: Improved support of const types.
- eRPC: Fixed Mac build.
- eRPC: Fixed serializing python list.
- eRPC: Documentation update.

1.7.1

Fixed

- eRPC: Fixed semaphore in static message buffer factory.
- erpcgen: Fixed MU received error flag.
- erpcgen: Fixed tcp transport.

1.7.0

Added

- eRPC: List names are based on their types. Names are more deterministic.
- eRPC: Service objects are as a default created as global static objects.
- eRPC: Added missing doxygen comments.
- eRPC: Added support for 64bit numbers.
- eRPC: Added support of program language specific annotations.

Fixed

- eRPC: Improved code size of generated code.
- eRPC: Generating crc value is optional.
- eRPC: Fixed CMSIS Uart driver. Removed dependency on KSDK.
- eRPC: Forbid users use reserved words.
- eRPC: Removed outByref for function parameters.
- eRPC: Optimized code style of callback functions.

1.6.0

Added

- eRPC: Added @nullable support for scalar types.

Fixed

- eRPC: Improved code size of generated code.
- eRPC: Improved eRPC nested calls.
- eRPC: Improved eRPC list length variable serialization.

1.5.0

Added

- eRPC: Added support for unions type non-wrapped by structure.
- eRPC: Added callbacks support.
- eRPC: Added support @external annotation for functions.
- eRPC: Added support @name annotation.
- eRPC: Added Messaging Unit transport layer.
- eRPC: Added RPMSG Lite RTOS TTY transport layer.
- eRPC: Added version verification and IDL version verification between eRPC code and eRPC generated shim code.
- eRPC: Added support of shared memory pointer.
- eRPC: Added annotation to forbid generating const keyword for function parameters.
- eRPC: Added python matrix multiply example.
- eRPC: Added nested call support.
- eRPC: Added struct member “byref” option support.
- eRPC: Added support of forward declarations of structures
- eRPC: Added Python RPMsg Multiendpoint kernel module support
- eRPC: Added eRPC sniffer tool

1.4.0

Added

- eRPC: New RPMsg-Lite Zero Copy (RPMsgZC) transport layer.

Fixed

- eRPC: win_flex_bison.zip for windows updated.
- eRPC: Use one codec (instead of inCodec outCodec).

[1.3.0]

Added

- eRPC: New annotation types introduced (@length, @max_length, ...).
- eRPC: Support for running both erpc client and erpc server on one side.
- eRPC: New transport layers for (LP)UART, (D)SPI.
- eRPC: Error handling support.

[1.2.0]

Added

- eRPC source directory organization changed.
- Many eRPC improvements.

[1.1.0]

Added

- Multicore SDK 1.1.0 ported to KSDK 2.0.0.

[1.0.0]

Added

- Initial Release

3.7 Multimedia

3.7.1 VGLite Graphics Driver

IMXRTVGLITEAPIRM

Introduction The VGLite Graphics API (Application Programming Interface) is designed to support 2D vector and 2D raster-based operations for rendering the interactive user interface that may include menus, fonts, curves, and images. The goal is to provide the maximum 2D vector/raster rendering performance, while keeping the memory footprint to the minimum.

Note: This document contains proprietary information of VeriSilicon Holdings Co., Ltd, and Vivante Corporation.

VGLite Graphics API The Vivante VGLite Graphics API is used to control the Vivante vector graphics hardware units that provide accelerated vector and raster operations.

The Vivante VGLite API is developed for use with Vivante GCNanoLiteV, GCNanoUltraV, GCNanoV, GC355, and GC555 hardware. GC355 and GC555 support the Khronos OpenVG 1.1 feature set, while GCNanoLiteV, GCNanoUltraV and GCNanoV have a feature set smaller than that required to pass Khronos OpenVG CTS.

The VGLite API driver V4 is a new design and implementation of the driver (from 2023Q1) to support the new generation 2.5D GPU (GC555), and the previous 2.5D GPU releases (GC255, GC265, GC355). The new V4 driver supports the new and improved VGLite API (version 3.0) and can generate the most CPU-efficient, customized driver build for a specific 2.5D GPU release based on the hardware feature set.

VGLite API supported features include: Porter-Duff Blending, Gradient Controls, Fast Clear, Arbitrary Rotations, Path Filling rules, Path painting, and Pattern Path Filling.

By default, VGLite API driver V4 supports one implicit global application context in a single thread. VGLite V4 driver does not support multithreaded applications, which is not suitable for embedded IoT devices.

Parent topic:*Introduction*

API function group The VGLite Graphics API has been designed to have independent function groups. It is permissible for a user to use only one of the function groups in the VGLite application:

- **Initialization** is used for initializing hardware and software structures
- **Blit API** is used for the raster part of rendering

- **Draw API** is used for 2D vector-based draw operations

Parent topic:*Introduction*

API files The VGLite source code is available as part of the NXP MCUXpresso SDK:

The VGLite graphics API functions are defined in the header file VGLite/inc/vg_lite.h.

All VGLite enumerations and data types are defined in VGLite/inc/vg_lite.h.

Parent topic:*Introduction*

Hardware versions The Vivante VGLite API is compatible with a range of Vivante Vector Graphics IPs including: GCNanoLiteV, GCNanoUltraV, GCNanoV, GC355, and GC555.

Note: A specific hardware version has customized feature set that may limit hardware support for some VGLite API options. The VGLite application can use the vg_lite_query_feature API to query specific VGLite feature availability.

Users can also check the VGLite/VGLite/vg_lite_options.h file which includes CHIPID, REVISION, CID to identify specific HW releases, and the gcFEATURE_VG_* macros to define the feature set for the HW release.

The gcFEATURE_VG_* macro values (except a few SW features) should NOT be changed. Otherwise, the VGLite driver does not function correctly on the specific HW release. Users can change the “SW Features” macro values to disable some software features, unnecessary error checks, or enable VGLite API trace for debug purposes.

.

Parent topic:*Introduction*

Common parameters and error values This chapter provides an overview of the common parameter types and the enumeration used for error reporting.

Common parameter types The VGLite graphics API uses a naming convention scheme wherein definitions are preceded by vg_lite.

Below is the list of types and structures in the driver implementation.

Nam	Type-def	Value
vg_li	int	A signed 32-bit integer 0: FALSE; 1: TRUE.
vg_li	char	A signed 8-bit integer
vg_li	un-signe char	An unsigned 8-bit integer
vg_li	short	A signed 16-bit integer
vg_li	un-signe short	An unsigned 16-bit integer
vg_li	int	A signed 32-bit integer
vg_li	un-signe int	An unsigned 32-bit integer
vg_li	un-signe long long	An unsigned 64-bit integer
vg_li	float	A 32-bit single precision floating point number
vg_li	dou-ble	A 64-bit double precision floating point number
vg_li	char	A signed 8-bit integer
vg_li	char*	A pointer to a character string
vg_li	void*	A generic address pointer (void *). On 32-bit OS, it is a 32-bit address pointer. On 64-bit OS, it is a 64-bit address pointer.
vg_li	void	The void type
vg_li	vg_lit	A 32-bit color value The color value specifies the color used in various functions. The color is formed using 8-bit RGBA channels. The red channel is in the lower 8-bit of the color value, followed by the green and blue channels. The alpha channel is in the upper 8-bit of the color value. vg_lite_color_t: 31:24 A, 23:16 B, 15:8 G, 7:0 R For L8 target formats, the RGB color is converted to L8 by using the default ITU-R BT.709 conversion rules.
VG_l	enum vg_lit	A signed 8-bit integer coordinate
VG_l	enum vg_lit	A signed 16 bit integer coordinate
VG_l	enum vg_lit	A signed 32-bit integer coordinate
VG_l	enum vg_lit	A 32-bit floating point coordinate

Parent topic:*Common parameters and error values*

Enumerations for error reporting This section describes enumerations used for error reporting.

vg_lite_error_t **enumeration** Most functions in the API include an error status via the vg_lite_error_tenumeration. API functions return the status of the command and will report VG_LITE_SUCCESS if successful with no errors. Possible error values include the values in the table below. vg_lite_error_tenumeration is used in many functions, including initialization, flush, blit, draw, gradient, and pattern functions.

vg_lite_error_t string values	Description
VG_LITE_GENERIC_IO	Cannot communicate with the kernel driver
VG_LITE_INVALID_ARGUMEN	An invalid argument was specified
VG_LITE_MULTI_THREAD_FA	Multi-thread/tasks fail *(available from June 2020)*
VG_LITE_NO_CONTEXT	No context specified
VG_LITE_NOT_SUPPORT	Function call is not supported. Hardware support is not available.
VG_LITE_OUT_OF_MEMORY	Out of memory (driver heap)
VG_LITE_OUT_OF_RESOURC	Out of resources (OS heap)
VG_LITE_SUCCESS	Successful with no errors
VG_LITE_TIMEOUT	Timeout
VG_LITE_ALREADY_EXISTS	Object exists *(available from August 2021)*
VG_LITE_NOT_ALIGNED	Data alignment error *(available from August 2021)*

Parent topic: Enumerations for error reporting

Parent topic:*Common parameters and error values*

Hardware product and feature information These query functions can be used to identify the product and its key features and to get VGLite driver information.

Enumerations for product and feature queries This section describes enumerations used for product and feature queries.

vg_lite_feature_t **enumeration** The following feature values may be queried for availability in compatible hardware. *(expanded March 2023 to support additional hardware for driver V4)*

Used in information function: vg_lite_query_feature.

vg_lite_feature_t string values	Description
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_16PIXELS_ALIGN	Require 16 pixels aligned for the input pixel buffer
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_24BIT	RGB888 or RGBA5658 formats support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_24BIT_PLANAR	24-bit planar format support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_AYUV_INPUT	AYUV input format support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_BORDER_CULLING	Border culling support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_COLOR_KEY	Color key support.
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_COLOR_TRANSFORMATION	Color transform support.
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_DEC_COMPRESS	DEC compression format output support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_DITHER	Dither support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_DOUBLE_IMAGE	Support two image source inputs
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_FLEXA	FLEXA interface support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_GAMMA	Gamma support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_GAUSSIAN_BLUR	Gaussian blur sampling support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_GLOBAL_ALPHA	Global alpha support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_HW_PREMULTIPLY	HW supports alpha premultiply for image
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_IM_DEC_INPUT	DEC compressed format input support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_IM_FASTCLEAR	Fast Clear support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_IM_INDEX_FORMAT	Index format support for image
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_IM_INPUT	Blit and draw API support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_IM_REPEAT_REFLECT	Image repeat reflect mode support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_INDEX_ENDIAN	Index format endian support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_LINEAR_GRADIENT_EXT	Support for extended linear gradient capabilities

continues on next page

Table 1 – continued from previous page

vg_lite_feature_t string values	Description
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_LVGL_SUPPORT	LVGL blend mode support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_MASK	Mask support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_MIRROR	Mirror support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_NEW_BLEND_MODE	New blend mode DARKEN/LIGHTEN support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_NEW_IMAGE_INDEX	New CLUT image index support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_PARALLEL_PATHS	New parallel path HW support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_PE_CLEAR	Pixel engine clear support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_PIXEL_MATRIX	Pixel matrix support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_QUALITY_8X	8x anti-aliasing path support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_RADIAL_GRADIENT	Radial gradient support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_RECTANGLE_TILED_OUT	Rectangle tiled output support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_RGBA2_FORMAT	RGBA2222 format support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_RGBA8_ETC2_EAC	ETC2/EAC compressed image format support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_SCISSOR	Scissor support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_SRC_PREMULTIPLIED	Source image alpha premultiplied
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_STENCIL	Stencil image mode support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_STRIPE_MODE	Stripe mode support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_TESSELLATION_TILED_OUT	Tessellation tiled output support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_USE_DST	Read destination pixel support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_YUV_INPUT	YUV input format support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_YUV_OUTPUT	YUV format output support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_YUV_TILED_INPUT	YUV tiled input format support
gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_YUY2_INPUT	YUY2 input format support

Parent topic: Enumerations for product and feature queries

Parent topic:*Hardware product and feature information*

Structures for product and feature queries This section describes structures used for product and feature queries.

vg_lite_info_t **structure** This structure is used to query VGLite driver information.

Used in function: vg_lite_get_info_t.

vg_lite_info_t member	Type	Description
api_version	vg_lite_uint32_t	VGLite API version
header_version	vg_lite_uint32_t	VGLite header version
release_version	vg_lite_uint32_t	VGLite driver release version
reserved	vg_lite_uint32_t	Reserved for future use

Parent topic: Structures for product and feature queries

Parent topic:*Hardware product and feature information*

Functions for product and feature queries This section describes functions used for product and feature queries.

vg_lite_get_product_info **Description:**

This function is used to identify the VGLite-compatible product.

Syntax:

```
uint32_t vg_lite_get_product_info (
      char            *name,
      uint32_t        *chip_id,
      uint32_t        *chip_rev
);
```

Parameters:

Name	Description
name	A character array to store the name of the chip.
chip_id	Stores an ID number for the chip.
chip_rev	Stores a revision number for the chip.

Parent topic: Functions for product and feature queries

vg_lite_get_info **Description:**

This function is used to query the VGLite driver information.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_get_info (
   vg_lite_info_t              *info
);
```

Parameters:

Name	Description
info	Points to the VGLite driver information structure, which includes the API version, header version, and release version

Parent topic: Functions for product and feature queries

vg_lite_get_register **Description:**

This function can be used to read a GPU AHB register value given the AHB byte address of a register. Refer to the appropriate Vivante GPU AHB register specification documents for register descriptions. The value range of AHB accessible addresses for VGLite cores is usually 0x0 to 0x1FF and 0xA00 to 0xA7F.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_get_register (
      vg_lite_uint32_t      address,
      vg_lite_uint32_t      *result
);
```

Parameters:

Name	Description
address	Byte Address of the register which value you want.
*result	The registers value.

Parent topic: Functions for product and feature queries

vg_lite_query_feature **Description:**

This function is used to query if a specific feature is available.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_uint32_t vg_lite_query_feature (
    vg_lite_feature_t           feature
);
```

Parameters:

Name	Description
feature	Feature to be queried, as detailed in enum vg_lite_feature_t

Returns:

The feature is either not supported (0) or supported (1).

Parent topic: Functions for product and feature queries

vg_lite_get_mem_size **Description:**

This function queries whether there is any remaining allocated contiguous video memory. *(available from June 2020)*

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_get_mem_size(
    vg_lite_uint32_t            *size
);
```

Parameters:

Name	Description
size	Pointer to the remaining allocated contiguous video memory.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the query is successful and memory is available. Returns VG_LITE_NO_CONTEXT if the driver is not initialized or there is no available memory.

Parent topic: Functions for product and feature queries

Parent topic:*Hardware product and feature information*

API control Before calling any VGLite API function, the application must initialize the VGLite implicit (global) context by calling *vg_lite_init()*, which will fill in a features table, reset the fast-clear buffer, reset the compositing target buffer and allocate the command and tessellation buffers.

The VGLite driver only supports one current context and one thread to issue commands to the Vivante Vector Graphics hardware. The VGLite driver does not support multiple concurrent contexts running simultaneously in multiple threads/processes, as the VGLite kernel driver does not support context switching. A VGLite application can only use a single context at any time to issue commands to the Vivante Vector Graphics hardware. If a VGLite application must switch contexts, vg_lite_close() must be called to close the current context in the current thread, then

vg_lite_init() can be called to initialize a new context either in the current thread or from another thread/process.

Context initialization and control functions This section provides an overview of the context initialization and control functions.

vg_lite_init **Description:**

This function initializes the memory and data structures needed for VGLite draw/blit functions, by allocating memory for the command buffer and a tessellation buffer of the specified size.

GC555 has a newly designed hardware tessellation module that requires less memory for the tessellation buffer than GC355 and GNanoLite-V. Specifically, the GC555 required tessellation buffer size is "buffer_height * 128 byte". vg_lite_init API can simply be called with the render buffer "width" and "height" as the input parameters for GC555. This results in the best path to tessellation performance.

GC355 and GCNanoLiteV hardware tessellation module requires a tessellation buffer with size "buffer_height * buffer_width * 8 byte". If system memory is limited, the application can define a smaller tessellation window based on the amount of memory available. GPU hardware can process the entire render buffer path tessellation in multiple passes with the tessellation window sliding across the render buffer. The multi-pass path tessellation with the smaller tessellation window has a certain performance overhead.

The minimum tessellation window that can be used is 16x16. If tess_height or tess_width is less than 0 in vg_lite_init API, then no path tessellation buffer is created and path drawing APIs do not work, only blit APIs can be used after vg_lite_init.

If this would be the first context that accesses the hardware, the hardware is turned on and initialized. If a new context must be initialized, vg_lite_close must be called to close the current context. Otherwise, vg_lite_init will return an error.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_init (
    vg_lite_int32_t             tess_width,
    vg_lite_int32_t             tess_height

);
```

Parameters:

Name	Description
tess_v	Width of tessellation window. Maximum cannot be greater than render buffer width. If less than or equal to 0, then no tessellation buffer is created, in which case only blit APIs can be used afterward.
tess_h	Height of tessellation window. Maximum cannot be greater than render buffer height. If less than or equal to 0, then no tessellation buffer is created, in which case blit APIs can be used afterward.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enumeration for other return codes.

Parent topic: Context initialization and control functions

vg_lite_close **Description:**

This function deallocates all the resources and free up all the memory that was initialized earlier by the vg_lite_init function. It will also turn OFF the hardware automatically if this was the only active context.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_close (
    void
);
```

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enumeration for other return codes.

Parent topic: Context initialization and control functions

vg_lite_flush **Description:**

This function explicitly submits the command buffer to the GPU without waiting for it to complete. *(From Dec 2019, return type is vg_lite_error_t, previously was void.)*

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_flush (
    void
);
```

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the flush is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enumeration for other return codes.

Parent topic: Context initialization and control functions

vg_lite_finish **Description:**

This function explicitly submits the command buffer to the GPU and waits for it to complete.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_finish (
    void
);
```

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enumeration for other return codes.

Parent topic: Context initialization and control functions

vg_lite_frame_delimiter **Description:**

This function sets a flag for GPU to signal the completion of current frame. A vg_lite_finish is called by default within this API. The enum VG_LITE_FRAME_END_FLAG is the only value that can be set by flag parameter.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_frame_delimiter (
    vg_lite_frame_flag_t flag
);
```

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Context initialization and control functions

vg_lite_set_command_buffer_size **Description:**

This function is optional. If used, call it before vg_lite_init if you want to change the command buffer size. *(available from March 2020)*

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_set_command_buffer_size (
    vg_lite_uint32_t            size
);
```

Parameters:

Name	Description
size	Size of the VGLite Command buffer. Default is 64K.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the flush is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enumeration for other return codes.

Parent topic: Context initialization and control functions

vg_lite_set_command_buffer **Description:**

This function sets a user-defined external memory buffer (physical, 64-byte aligned) as the VGLite command buffer. By default, the VGLite driver allocates a static command buffer internally. Thus, it is not necessary for an application to allocate and set the command buffer. This function is only used for devices where an application needs to allocate the command buffer dynamically. *(from December 2021)*

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_set_command_buffer (
    vg_lite_uint32_t            physical,
    vg_lite_uint32_t            size
);
```

Parameters:

Name	Description
physical	The physical address of a memory buffer. The address must be 64-byte aligned.
size	The size of memory buffer. The size must be 128-byte aligned.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the command buffer set is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enumeration for other return codes.

Parent topic: Context initialization and control functions

vg_lite_set_tess_buffer **Description:**

This function specifies a memory buffer from an application as the VGLite driver's tessellation buffer. By default, the VGLite driver allocates a static tessellation buffer internally. Thus, it is not necessary for an application to allocate and set the tessellation buffer. This function is only used for devices where the application needs to allocate the tessellation buffer dynamically. *(from December 2021)*

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_set_tess_buffer (
    vg_lite_uint32_t            physical,
    vg_lite_uint32_t            size
);
```

Parameters:

Name	Description
physical	The physical address of a tessellation buffer. The address must be 64-byte aligned.
size	The size of tessellation buffer. tessellation buffer size = target buffer's height * 128B.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the tessellation buffer set is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enumeration for other return codes.

Parent topic: Context initialization and control functions

vg_lite_set_memory_pool **Description:**

This function sets the specific memory pool from which certain type of buffers, VG_LITE_COMMAND_BUFFER, VG_LITE_TESSELLATION_BUFFER, or VG_LITE_RENDER_BUFFER, should be allocated. By default, all types of buffers are allocated from VG_LITE_MEMORY_POOL_1. This API must be called before vg_lite_init() for setting VG_LITE_COMMAND_BUFFER or VG_LITE_TESSELLATION_BUFFER memory pools. This API can be called anytime for VG_LITE_RENDER_BUFFER to affect the following vg_lite_allocate() calls.*(from December 2023)*

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_set_memory_pool (
    vg_lite_buffer_type_t       type,
    vg_lite_memory_pool_t       pool
);
```

Parameters:

Nam	Description
type	The buffer type (VG_LITE_COMMAND_BUFFER, VG_LITE_TESSELLATION_BUFFER, or VG_LITE_RENDER_BUFFER) to be allocated from memory pool.
pool	The memory pool (VG_LITE_MEMORY_POOL_1, VG_LITE_MEMORY_POOL_2) from which the buffer type should be allocated.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the memory pool set is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enumeration for other return codes.

Parent topic: Context initialization and control functions

Parent topic:*API control*

Pixel buffers This chapter provides an overview of the pixel buffer alignment, cache, internal representation, enumerations, structures, and functions.

Pixel buffer alignment The VGLite hardware requires the pixel buffer start address and stride to be properly byte-aligned to work correctly. The start address and stride alignment requirement for a pixel buffer depends on the specific pixel format, and gcFEATURE_VG_16PIXELS_ALIGNED value (0/1) in vg_lite_options.h file.

Parent topic:*Pixel buffers*

Pixel cache The Vivante Imaging Engine (IM) includes two fully associative caches. Each cache has 8 lines. Each line has 64 bytes. In this case, one cache line can hold either a 4x4-pixel tile or a 16x1-pixel row.

Parent topic:*Pixel buffers*

Internal representation For non-32-bit color formats, each pixel is extended to 32 bits as follows:

If the source and destination formats have the same color format, but differ in the number of bits per color channel, the source channel is multiplied by (2d- 1)/(2s– 1) and is rounded to the nearest integer, where:

- **d** is the number of bits in the destination channel
- **s** is the number of bits in the source channel

Example: a b11111 5-bit source channel gets converted to an 8-bit destination b11111000.

The YUV formats are internally converted to RGB. The pixel selection is unified for all formats by using the LSB of the coordinate.

Parent topic:*Pixel buffers*

Pixel buffer enumerations This section provides an overview of the pixel buffer enumerations.

vg_lite_buffer_format_t enumeration This enumeration specifies the color format to use for a buffer. This applies to both image and Render Target. Formats include supported swizzles for RGB. For YUV swizzles, use the related values and parameters in vg_lite_swizzle_t.

The application shall use the vg_lite_query_feature API to determine support for some hardware-specific formats. For example, related vg_lite_feature_t enum values include gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_RGBA2_FORMAT and gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_IM_INDEX_FORMAT.

(Alignment columns refined March and Sept 2023)

Used in structure: vg_lite_buffer_t.

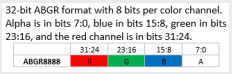
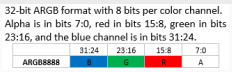
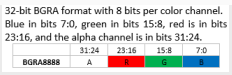
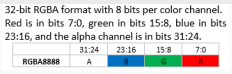
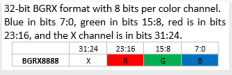
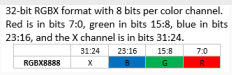
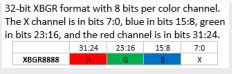
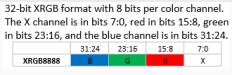
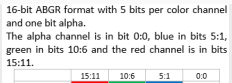
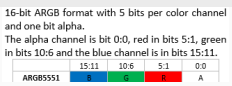
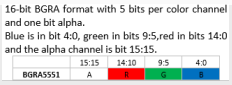
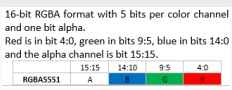
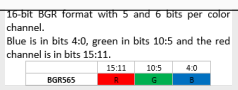
See also vg_lite_blit, vg_lite_clear, vg_lite_draw.

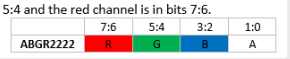
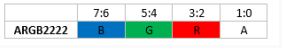
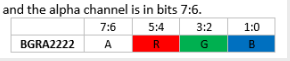
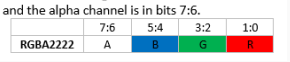
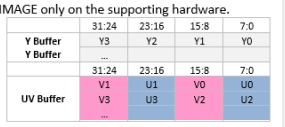
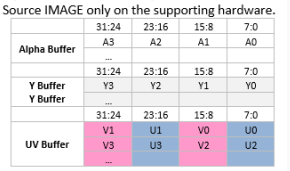
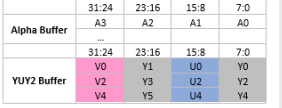
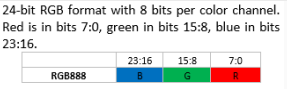
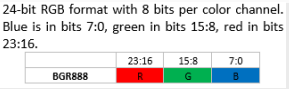
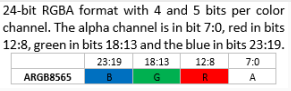
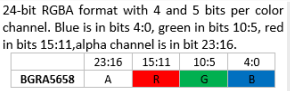
Attention: OpenVG VGImageFormat Note: The bits for each color channel are stored within a machine word from MSB to LSB in the order indicated by the pixel format name. This is the opposite of the original VG_LITE_* formats that are ordered from LSB to MSB. The formats with the same organization are listed in the same row as their VG_Lite counterparts.

Attention: Original VGLite API Image Format Note: The bits for each color channel are stored within a machine word from LSB to MSB in the order indicated by the pixel format name. This is the opposite of the OPENVG VG_* formats that are ordered from MSB to LSB.

The following codes, as also used in OpenVG 1.1 Specification Table 11, are used for format description:

- A - Alpha channel
- B - Blue color channel
- G - Green color channel
- R - Red color channel
- X - Uninterpreted padding byte or bit
- L - Grayscale
- BW - 1-bit black and white
- l - Linear color space
- s - Non-linear (sRGB) color space
- PRE - Alpha values are premultiplied

vg_lite_buffer_format_t String Value	Description	Supported as source	Supported as destination	Start address/ Stride alignment: bytes
VG_LITE_ABGR8888 VG_sRGBA_8888 VG_sRGBA_8888_PRE VG_lRGBA_8888 VG_lRGBA_8888_PRE		Yes	Yes	Start 4B / Stride 64B
VG_LITE_ARGB8888 VG_sBGRA_8888 VG_sBGRA_8888_PRE VG_lBGRA_8888 VG_lBGRA_8888_PRE		Yes	Yes	Start 4B / Stride 64B
VG_LITE_BGRA8888 VG_sARGB_8888 VG_sARGB_8888_PRE VG_lARGB_8888 VG_lARGB_8888_PRE		Yes	Yes	Start 4B / Stride 64B
VG_LITE_RGBA8888 VG_sABGR_8888 VG_sABGR_8888_PRE VG_lABGR_8888 VG_lABGR_8888_PRE		Yes	Yes	Start 4B / Stride 64B
VG_LITE_BGRX8888 VG_sXRGB_8888 VG_lXRGB_8888		Yes	Yes	Start 4B / Stride 64B
VG_LITE_RGBX8888 VG_sXBGR_8888 VG_lXBGR_8888		Yes	Yes	Start 4B / Stride 64B
VG_LITE_XBGR8888 RGBX VG_sRGBX_8888 VG_lRGBX_8888		Yes	Yes	Start 4B / Stride 64B
VG_LITE_XRGB8888 VG_sBGRX_8888 VG_lBGRX_8888		Yes	Yes	Start 4B / Stride 64B
VG_LITE_ABGR1555 VG_sRGBA_5551		Yes	Yes	Start 4B / Stride 32B
VG_LITE_ARGB1555 VG_sBGRA_5551		Yes	Yes	Start 4B / Stride 32B
VG_LITE_BGRA5551 VG_sARGB_1555		Yes	Yes	Start 4B / Stride 32B
VG_LITE_RGBA5551 VG_sABGR_1555		Yes	Yes	Start 4B / Stride 32B
VG_LITE_BGR565 VG_sRGB_565		Yes	Yes	Start 4B / Stride 32B

Hardware-dependent formats for vg_lite_buffer_format_t	Description	Supported as source	Supported as destination	Alignment (bytes)
VG_LITE_ABGR2222	8-bit BGRA format with 2 bits per color channel. Alpha is in bits 1:0, blue in bits 3:2, green in bits 5:4 and the red channel is in bits 7:6. 	Yes	Yes	Start 4B / Stride 16B
VG_LITE_ARGB2222	8-bit BGRA format with 2 bits per color channel. Alpha is in bits 1:0, red in bits 3:2,green in bits 5:4 and the blue channel is in bits 7:6. 	Yes	Yes	Start 4B / Stride 16B
VG_LITE_BGRA2222	8-bit BGRA format with 2 bits per color channel. Blue is in bits 1:0, green in bits 3:2, red in bits 5:4 and the alpha channel is in bits 7:6. 	Yes	Yes	Start 4B / Stride 16B
VG_LITE_RGBA2222	8-bit RGBA format with 2 bits per color channel. Red is in bits 1:0, green in bits 3:2, blue in bits 5:4 and the alpha channel is in bits 7:6. 	Yes	No	8B
VG_LITE_INDEX_1	1-bit index format	Yes	No	8B
VG_LITE_INDEX_2	2-bit index format	Yes	No	both 8B
VG_LITE_INDEX_4	4-bit index format	Yes	No	both 8B
VG_LITE_INDEX_8	8-bit index format	Yes	No	both 16B
VG_LITE_NV12_TILED	Supertiled (8x8 pixels), planar YUV format, 96-bit for 4 pixels. Y plane is 32 bits for 4 pixels and is organized in 64 pixel super tiles (8x8 Y); UV plane is 64 bits for 4 pixels. Pixels are organized in super tiles are (4x4 UV pairs), available for Source IMAGE only on the supporting hardware. 	Yes	No	Y: both 16 Bytes UV: both 8 Bytes
VG_LITE_ANV12_TILED	Pixel organization as NV12_TILED but with an Alpha Buffer is also supertiled, available for Source IMAGE only on the supporting hardware. 	Yes	No	A, Y: both 16 Bytes UV: both 8 Bytes
VG_LITE_AYUY2_TILED	Supertiled (8x8) and packed YUV format a with separate tiled Alpha Buffer. Y0 is in bits 7:0 and V is in bits 31:23, available for Source IMAGE only on the supporting hardware. 	Yes	No	both 32B
VG_LITE_RGB888	24-bit RGB format with 8 bits per color channel. Red is in bits 7:0, green in bits 15:8, blue in bits 23:16. 	Yes	Yes	Start 4B / Stride 32B
VG_LITE_BGR888	24-bit RGB format with 8 bits per color channel. Blue is in bits 7:0, green in bits 15:8, red in bits 23:16. 		Yes	Yes
VG_LITE_ARGB8565	24-bit RGBA format with 4 and 5 bits per color channel. The alpha channel is in bit 7:0, red in bits 12:8, green in bits 18:13 and the blue in bits 23:19. 		Yes	Yes
VG_LITE_BGRA5658	24-bit RGBA format with 4 and 5 bits per color channel. Blue is in bits 4:0, green in bits 10:5, red in bits 15:11,alpha channel is in bit 23:16. 	Yes	Yes	Start 4B / Stride 32B

Parent topic: Pixel buffer enumerations

Image buffer alignment requirement The image (or source) buffer alignment requirement depends on the specific pixel format, and some gcFEATURE_*_ALIGNED defines in the vg_lite_options.h file.

Image format	Bits per pixel	Source tile mode	Start address alignment requirement in bytes	Stric
VG_LITE_INDEX1	1	linear	8B	2B
VG_LITE_INDEX1	1	tile	8B	1B
VG_LITE_INDEX2	2	linear	8B	4B
VG_LITE_INDEX2	2	tile	8B	1B
VG_LITE_INDEX4	4	linear	8B	8B
VG_LITE_INDEX4	4	tile	8B	2B
VG_LITE_INDEX8	8	linear	16B	16B
VG_LITE_INDEX8	8	tile	16B	4B
VG_LITE_A4	4	linear	8B	8B
VG_LITE_A4	4	tile	8B	2B
VG_LITE_A8	8	linear	16B	16B
VG_LITE_A8	8	tile	16B	4B
VG_LITE_L8	8	linear	16B	16B
VG_LITE_L8	8	tile	16B	4B
VG_LITE_ARGB2222	8	linear	16B	16B
VG_LITE_ARGB2222	8	tile	16B	4B
VG_LITE_RGB565	16	linear	32B	32B
VG_LITE_RGB565	16	tile	32B	8B
VG_LITE_ARGB1555	16	linear	32B	32B
VG_LITE_ARGB1555	16	tile	32B	8B
VG_LITE_ARGB4444	16	linear	32B	32B
VG_LITE_ARGB4444	16	tile	32B	8B
VG_LITE_ARGB8888	32	linear	64B	64B
VG_LITE_ARGB8888	32	tile	64B	16B
VG_LITE_XRGB8888	32	linear	64B	64B
VG_LITE_XRGB8888	32	tile	64B	16B
VG_LITE_ARGB8565	24	linear	64B	48B*
VG_LITE_ARGB8565	24	tile	64B	12B*
VG_LITE_RGB888	24	linear	64B	48B*
VG_LITE_RGB888	24	tile	64B	12B*
VG_LITE_YUY2/UYVY	16	linear	32B	32B
VG_LITE_YUY2/UYVY	16	tile	32B	8B
VG_LITE_NV12	12	linear	Y: 32B UV: 32B	Y: 32
VG_LITE_YV12	12	linear	Y: 32B U: 16B V: 16B	Y: 32
VG_LITE_NV16	16	linear	Y: 32B UV: 32B	Y: 32
VG_LITE_YV16	16	linear	Y: 32B U: 16B V: 16B	Y: 32
VG_LITE_YV24	24	linear	Y: 32B U: 32B V: 32B	Y: 32
VG_LITE_ETC2	8	tile	16B	4B

Note:

1. The values in the table reflect the alignment requirements of the data in memory. The stride of ARGB8888 / ARGB8565 is seen as 4Byte per pixel when configuring the hardware.
2. For tile mode, the stride is still the byte size of a row of pixels in the buffer instead of 4 rows.
3. When DECNano function is enabled for the buffer, the total buffer size need align to 64Byte*compression rate for ARGB8888 or XRGB8888 format, align to 48Byte*compress rate for RGB888 format.

Additional Alignment Requirement

1. Buffer starting address must be 16 pixel-byte-size aligned, that is 8 bit-per-pixel format buffer must be 16 bytes aligned; 16 bit-per-pixel format buffer must be 32 bytes aligned; 24 and 32 bit-per-pixel format buffer must be 64 bytes aligned.
2. For linear mode buffer, the buffer stride must be 16 pixel-byte-size aligned.
3. For tile mode buffer, buffer width and height must be 4 pixel aligned so buffer width and height end at tile boundary.

Parent topic: Pixel buffer enumerations

Destination buffer alignment requirement The destination (or render target) buffer alignment requirement depends on the specific pixel format, and some gcFEATURE_*_ALIGNED defines in the vg_lite_options.h file.

Target format	Bits per pixel	Target tile mode	VG tile mode	Start address alignment requirement i
VG_LITE_A8	8	linear	linear	4B
VG_LITE_A8	8	linear	tile	64B
VG_LITE_A8	8	tile	linear	64B
VG_LITE_A8	8	tile	tile	64B
VG_LITE_L8	8	linear	linear	4B
VG_LITE_L8	8	linear	tile	64B
VG_LITE_L8	8	tile	linear	64B
VG_LITE_L8	8	tile	tile	64B
VG_LITE_ARGB2222	8	linear	linear	4B
VG_LITE_ARGB2222	8	linear	tile	64B
VG_LITE_ARGB2222	8	tile	linear	64B
VG_LITE_ARGB2222	8	tile	tile	64B
VG_LITE_RGB565	16	linear	linear	4B
VG_LITE_RGB565	16	linear	tile	64B
VG_LITE_RGB565	16	tile	linear	64B
VG_LITE_RGB565	16	tile	tile	64B
VG_LITE_ARGB1555	16	linear	linear	4B
VG_LITE_ARGB1555	16	linear	tile	64B
VG_LITE_ARGB1555	16	tile	linear	64B
VG_LITE_ARGB1555	16	tile	tile	64B
VG_LITE_ARGB4444	16	linear	linear	4B
VG_LITE_ARGB4444	16	linear	tile	64B
VG_LITE_ARGB4444	16	tile	linear	64B
VG_LITE_ARGB4444	16	tile	tile	64B
VG_LITE_ARGB8888	32	linear	linear	4B
VG_LITE_ARGB8888	32	linear	tile	64B
VG_LITE_ARGB8888	32	tile	linear	64B
VG_LITE_ARGB8888	32	tile	tile	64B
VG_LITE_XRGB8888	32	linear	linear	4B
VG_LITE_XRGB8888	32	linear	tile	64B
VG_LITE_XRGB8888	32	tile	linear	64B
VG_LITE_XRGB8888	32	tile	tile	64B
VG_LITE_ARGB8565	24	linear	linear	64B
VG_LITE_ARGB8565	24	linear	tile	64B
VG_LITE_ARGB8565	24	tile	linear	64B
VG_LITE_ARGB8565	24	tile	tile	64B
VG_LITE_RGB888	24	linear	linear	64B
VG_LITE_RGB888	24	linear	tile	64B
VG_LITE_RGB888	24	tile	linear	64B
VG_LITE_RGB888	24	tile	tile	64B

Note:

1. The values in the table reflect the alignment requirements of pixel data in memory. The stride of ARGB8888/ARGB8565 is seen as 4 Bytes per pixel when configuring the hardware.
2. For tile mode, the buffer stride is still the byte size of a row of pixels instead of 4 rows of pixels.
3. For PE clear function, the clear size must align to 48 Bytes for the RGB888 or ARGB8565 format.
4. For PE clear function with DECNano enabled, the clear size must align to 48 Bytes for RGB888, align to 64 Bytes for ARGB8888 or XRGB8888.
5. If the DECNano function is enabled for the buffer, the target buffer start address needs to align to 64 Bytes.
6. If the DECNano function is enabled for the buffer, the total buffer size needs to align to a 64-byte compression rate for ARGB8888 or XRGB8888 format and align to a 48 Byte*compression rate for RGB888 format.

Additional Alignment Requirement

1. Buffer starting address must be at least 4-byte aligned. Buffer stride must be at least one pixel size aligned.
2. Buffer starting address must be 64-byte aligned for 24 bit-per-pixel format, or tile mode, or DECNano enabled.
3. Buffer height must be 4-pixel aligned for tile mode buffer.
4. For tile mode buffer, the buffer stride must be 16-byte aligned for non-24bit-per-pixel formats. So, 8 bits-per-pixel format buffer width must be 16-pixel aligned; 16 bits-per-pixel format buffer width must be 8-pixel aligned; 32 bit-per-pixel format buffer width must be 4 pixel aligned.
5. For tile mode buffer, the buffer stride must be 12-byte aligned for 24 bits-per-pixel formats, that is, the buffer width must be 4-pixel aligned.
6. For PE clear function, the clear size must align to 48 Bytes for 24-bits-per-pixel formats.
7. For PE clear function with DECNano enabled, the clear size must align to 48 Bytes for 24 bits-per-pixel formats and align to 64 Bytes for 32 bits-per-pixel formats.
8. If source buffer tile mode is different from destination buffer tile mode, buffer starting address must be 64 Byte aligned, buffer stride must be 64 Byte aligned for non-24 bits-per-pixel formats, buffer stride must be 48-Byte aligned for 24 bits-per-pixel formats.

VGLite hardware requires the raster image width to be a multiple of 16 pixels for linear gradient and radial gradient operations. This requirement applies to all image formats. Therefore, the user must pad an arbitrary image width to a multiple of 16 pixels for VGLite linear gradient and radial gradient APIs.

Parent topic: Pixel buffer enumerations

vg_lite_buffer_layout_t **enumeration** Specifies the buffer data layout in memory.

Used in structure: vg_lite_buffer.

vg_lite_buffer_layout_t String Value	Description
VG_LITE_LINEAR	Linear (scanline) layout.
VG_LITE_TILED	Data is organized in 4x4 pixel tiles. **Note:** for this layout, the buffer start address and stride must be 64-byte aligned

Parent topic: Pixel buffer enumerations

vg_lite_compress_mode_t **enumeration** Specifies the DECNano comprssion mode. *(from March 2023)*

Used in structure: vg_lite_buffer_t.

vg_lite_compress_mode_t string value	Description
VG_LITE_DEC_DISABLE	Disable compression.
VG_LITE_DEC_NON_SAMPLE	compression ratio is 1.6 for ARGB8888, 2.0 for XRGB8888
VG_LITE_DEC_HSAMPLE	compression ratio is 2.0 for ARGB8888, 2.6 for XRGB8888
VG_LITE_DEC_HV_SAMPLE	compression ratio is 2.6 for ARGB8888, 4.0 for XRGB8888

Parent topic: Pixel buffer enumerations

vg_lite_gamma_conversion_t **enumeration** Specifies the gamma conversion mode *(from Sept 2022)*

Used in function: vg_lite_set_gamma.

vg_lite_gamma_conversion_t string value	Description
VG_LITE_GAMMA_NO_CONVERSION	Leave the color as it is.
VG_LITE_GAMMA_LINEAR	Convert from sRGB to linear.
VG_LITE_GAMMA_NON_LINEAR	Convert from linear to sRGB space.

Parent topic: Pixel buffer enumerations

vg_lite_index_endian_t **enumeration** Specifies the endian order parsing mode for index formats *(from March 2023)*.

Used in structure: vg_lite_buffer_t.

vg_lite_index_endi string value	Description
VG_LITE_INDEX	Parse the index pixel from low to high, when using index1, the parsing order is bit0~bit7. when using index2, the parsing order is bit0:1,bit2:3,bit4:5.bit6:7. when using index4, the parsing order is bit0:3,bit4:7.
VG_LITE_INDEX	Parse the index pixel from low to high, when using index1, the parsing order is bit7~bit0. when using index2, the parsing order is bit7:6,bit5:4,bit3:2.bit1:0. when using index4, the parsing order is bit4:7,bit0:3.

Parent topic: Pixel buffer enumerations

vg_lite_image_mode_t **enumeration** Specifies how an image is rendered onto a buffer *(prior to Sept 2022 name was* vg_lite_buffer_image_mode_t*)*.

Used in structure: vg_lite_buffer_t.

vg_lite_image_mode_t string value	Description
VG_LITE_ZERO	
VG_LITE_NORMAL_IMAGE_MODE	Image drawn with blending mode
VG_LITE_MULTIPLY_IMAGE_MODE	Image is multiplied with paint color
VG_LITE_STENCIL_MODE	
VG_LITE_NONE_IMAGE_MODE	Image input is ignored.
VG_LITE_RECOLOR_MODE	

Parent topic: Pixel buffer enumerations

vg_lite_map_flag_t **enumeration** Specifies whether mapping is for user memory or the DMA buffer *(from March 2023)*.

Used in function: vg_lite_map.

vg_lite_map_flag_t string value	Description
VG_LITE_MAP_USER_MEMORY	Mapping is for user memory.
VG_LITE_MAP_DMABUF	Mapping is for the DMA buffer.

Parent topic: Pixel buffer enumerations

vg_lite_paint_type_t **enumeration** Specifies paint type *(from May 2023)*.

Used in structure: vg_lite_buffer_t.

vg_lite_paint_type_t string value	Description
VG_LITE_PAINT_ZERO	
VG_LITE_PAINT_COLOR	Color
VG_LITE_PAINT_LINEAR_GRADIENT	Linear Gradient
VG_LITE_PAINT_RADIAL_GRADIENT	Radial Gradient
VG_LITE_PAINT_PATTERN	Pattern

Parent topic: Pixel buffer enumerations

vg_lite_transparency_t **enumeration** Specifies the transparency mode for a buffer *(prior to Sept 2022 name was vg_lite_buffer_transparency_mode_t)*.

Used in structure:vg_lite_buffer.

vg_lite_transp string value	Description
VG_LITE_IN	Opaque image: all image pixels are copied to the VG PE for rasterization
VG_LITE_IN	Transparent image: only the non-transparent image pixels are copied to the VG PE. **Note:** This mode is only valid when IMAGE_MODE (vg_lite_image_mode_t) is either VG_LITE_NORMAL_IMAGE_MODE or VG_LITE_MULTIPLY_IMAGE_MODE.

Parent topic: Pixel buffer enumerations

vg_lite_swizzle_t **enumeration** This enumeration specifies the swizzle for the UV components of YUV data.

Used in structure: vg_lite_yuvinfo.

vg_lite_swizzle_t string value	Description
VG_LITE_SWIZZLE_UV	U in lower bits, V in upper bits
VG_LITE_SWIZZLE_VU	V in lower bits, U in upper bits

Parent topic: Pixel buffer enumerations

vg_lite_yuv2rgb_t **enumeration** This enumeration specifies the standard for conversion of YUV data to RGB data.

Used in structure: vg_lite_yuvinfo.

vg_lite_yuv2rgb_t string value	Description
VG_LITE_YUV601	YUV Converting with ITC.BT-601 standard
VG_LITE_YUV709	YUV Converting with ITC.BT-709 standard

Parent topic: Pixel buffer enumerations

Parent topic:*Pixel buffers*

Pixel buffer structures This section provides an overview on the pixel buffer structures.

vg_lite_buffer_t **structure** This structure defines the buffer layout for a VGLite image or memory data.

Used in structures: vg_lite_linear_gradient_t, vg_lite_radial_gradient_t.

Used in init functions: vg_lite_allocate, vg_lite_free, vg_lite_upload_buffer, vg_lite_map, vg_lite_unmap.

Used in blit functions:vg_lite_blit, vg_lite_blit_rect, vg_lite_clear, vg_lite_create_masklayer, vg_lite_fill_masklayer, vg_lite_blend_masklayer, vg_lite_set_masklayer, vg_lite_render_masklayer, vg_lite_destroy_masklayer

Used in draw functions: vg_lite_draw, vg_lite_draw_pattern, vg_lite_draw_grad, vg_lite_draw_radial_grad

vg_lite_buffer_t member	Type	Description
width	vg_lite_int32_t	Width of buffer in pixels
height	vg_lite_int32_t	Height of buffer in pixels
stride	vg_lite_int32_t	Stride in bytes
tiled	vg_lite_buffer_layo	Linear or tiled format for buffer enum
format	vg_lite_buffer_form	color format enum
handle	vg_lite_pointer	memory handle
memory	vg_lite_pointer	pointer to the start address of the memory
address	vg_lite_uint32_t	GPU address
yuv	vg_lite_yuvinfo_t	YUV format info struct
image_mode	vg_lite_image_mod	Blit image mode enum
transparency_mode	*vg_lite_transparenc*	Image transparency mode enum
fc_buffer[3]	vg_lite_fc_buffer_t	Three (3) fast clear buffers, reserved YUV format *(from March 2023)*
compress_mode	vg_lite_compress_n	Compression mode *(from March 2023)*
index_endian	vg_lite_index_endia	Big/Little Endian setting for index formats *(from March 2023)*
paintType	*vg_lite_paint_type_t*	Paint type enum *(from May 2023)*
fc_enable	vg_lite_int8_t	Enable Image fast clear *(moved from Aug 2023)*
scissor_layer	vg_lite_int8_t	Get paintcolor from different paint types *(from Aug 2023)*
premulitplied	vg_lite_int8_t	The RGB pixel values are alpha-premultipled *(from Aug 2023)*

Parent topic: Pixel buffer structures

vg_lite_fc_buffer_t **structure** This structure defines the organization of a fast clear buffer. *(from March 2023)*

Used in structure: vg_lite_buffer_t.

vg_lite_fc_buffer_t members	Type	Description
width	vg_lite_int32_t	Width of buffer in pixels
height	vg_lite_int32_t	Height of buffer in pixels
stride	vg_lite_int32_t	Stride in bytes
handle	vg_lite_pointer	memory handle as allocated by the VGLite kernel
memory	vg_lite_pointer	logical pointer to the start address of the memory for the CPU
address	vg_lite_uint32_	address to the buffer's memory for the GPU hardware
color	vg_lite_uint32_	The fast clear color value

Parent topic: Pixel buffer structures

vg_lite_yuvinfo_t **structure** This structure defines the organization of VGLite YUV data.

Used in structure: vg_lite_buffer_t.

vg_lite_yuvinfo_t member	Type	Description
swizzle	*vg_lite_swizzle_*	UV swizzle enum
yuv2rgb	*vg_lite_yuv2rgb_*	YUV conversion standard enum
‘uv_planar	vg_lite_uint32_t	UV (U) planar address for GPU, generated by driver
v_planar	vg_lite_uint32_t	V planar address for GPU, generated by driver
‘alpha_planar	vg_lite_uint32_t	Alpha planar address for GPU, generated by driver
‘uv_stride	vg_lite_uint32_t	UV (U) stride in bytes
‘v_stride	vg_lite_uint32_t	V planar stride in bytes
alpha_stride	vg_lite_uint32_t	Alpha stride in bytes
‘uv_height	vg_lite_uint32_t	UV (U) height in pixels
‘v_height	vg_lite_uint32_t	V stride in bytes
uv_memory	vg_lite_pointer	Logical pointer to the UV (U) planar memory
‘v_memory	vg_lite_pointer	Logical pointer to the V planar memory
uv_handle	vg_lite_pointer	Memory handle of the UV (U) planar, generated by the driver
v_handle	vg_lite_pointer	Memory handle of the V planar, generated by the driver

Parent topic: Pixel buffer structures

Parent topic:*Pixel buffers*

Pixel buffer functions This section provides an overview of the pixel buffer functions.

vg_lite_allocate **function** **Description:**

This function is used to allocate a buffer before it is used in either blit or draw functions.

To allow the hardware to access some memory, such as a source image or target buffer, you must first allocate the memory. The supplied vg_lite_buffer_t structure must be initialized with the size (width and height) and format of the requested buffer. If the stride is set to zero, then this function fills it in. The only input parameter to this function is the pointer to the buffer structure. If the structure has all the information needed, then appropriate memory is allocated for the buffer.

This function calls the kernel to allocate the memory. The kernel fills in the memory handle, logical address, and hardware addresses in the vg_lite_buffer_t structure.

Alignment note:

Vivante GPUs have an alignment requirement of 64 bytes. However, to meet the alignment requirements of the Vivante display controller, the VGLite driver sets the render target buffer alignment to 128 bytes. For source image buffer alignment requirements, see the alignment notes available in Table 1.

The vg_lite_buffer_format_t value descriptions:

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_allocate (
      vg_lite_buffer_t       *buffer
);
```

Parameters:

Nam	Description
buffe	Pointer to the buffer that holds the size and format of the buffer being allocated. Either the memory or address field must be set to a non-zero value to map either a logical or physical address into hardware accessible memory.

Returns:

- VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the contiguous buffer was allocated successfully.
- VG_LITE_OUT_OF_RESOURCES if there is insufficient memory in the host OS heap for the buffer.
- VG_LITE_OUT_OF_MEMORY if allocation of a contiguous buffer failed.

Parent topic: Pixel buffer functions

vg_lite_free **function** **Description:**

This function is used to deallocate the buffer that was previously allocated. It frees up the memory for that buffer.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_free (
      vg_lite_buffer_t       *buffer
);
```

Parameters:

Name	Description
buffer	Pointer to a buffer structure that was filled in by calling the vg_lite_allocate() function.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Pixel buffer functions

vg_lite_upload_buffer **function** **Description:**

The function uploads the pixel data to a GPU memory buffer object. The format of the data (pixel) to be uploaded must match the format defined for the buffer object. The input data memory buffer should contain enough data to be uploaded to the GPU buffer pointed by the input parameter buffer.

Note: Vivante Vector Graphics IP only uses data[0] and stride[0] as it does not support planar YUV formats..

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_upload_buffer (
    vg_lite_buffer_t           *buffer,
    vg_lite_uint8_t            *data[3],
    vg_lite_uint32_t           stride[3]
);
```

Parameters:

Name	Description
buffer	Pointer to a buffer structure that was filled in by calling the vg_lite_allocate() function
data[3]	Pointer to pixel data. For the YUV format, there may be up to 3 pointers.
stride[3]	Stride for the pixel data

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Pixel buffer functions

vg_lite_map function Description:

This function is used to map the memory appropriately for a particular buffer. For some operating systems, it is used to get proper translation to the physical or logical address of the buffer needed by the GPU.

To use a frame buffer directly as a target buffer:

- Wrap a vg_lite_buffer_t structure around the buffer
- Call the kernel to map the supplied logical or physical address into hardware accessible memory

For example, if you know the logical address of the frame buffer, set the memory field of the vg_lite_buffer_t structure with that address and call this function. If you know the physical address, set the memory field to NULL and program the address field with the physical address.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t  vg_lite_map  (
    vg_lite_buffer_t          *buffer,
    vg_lite_map_flag_t        flag,
    int32_t                   fd
    );
```

Parameters:

Name	Description
*buffe	Pointer to a buffer structure that was filled in by calling the vg_lite_allocate() function
flag	Enumerate the vg_lite_map_flag_t value that specifies whether the mapping is for user memory or DMA buffer. *(from March 2023)*
fd	File descriptor for dma_buf if the flag is VG_LITE_MAP_DMABUF. Otherwise, this parameter is ignored. *(from March 2023)*

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Pixel buffer functions

vg_lite_unmap function Description:

This function unmaps the buffer and frees any memory resources allocated by a previous call to the vg_lite_map() function.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_unmap (
      vg_lite_buffer_t        *buffer
);
```

Parameters:

Name	Description
buffer	Pointer to a buffer structure that was filled in by calling the vg_lite_map() function

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Pixel buffer functions

vg_lite_flush_mapped_buffer **function** **Description:**

This function flushes the CPU cache for the mapped buffer to make sure the buffer contents are written to GPU memory.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_flush_mapped_buffer (
   vg_lite_buffer_t           *buffer
);
```

Parameters:

Name	Description
*buffer	Pointer to a buffer structure that was filled in by calling the vg_lite_map() function

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Pixel buffer functions

vg_lite_set_CLUT **function** **Description:**

This function sets the Color Lookup Table (CLUT) in the context state for index color image. Once the CLUT is set (Not NULL), the image pixel color for index format image rendering is obtained from the Color Lookup Table (CLUT) according to the pixel's color index value.

Note: Available only for IP with Indexed color support..

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_set_CLUT (
  vg_lite_uint32_t                  count,
  vg_lite_uint32_t                  *colors
);
```

Parameters:

Nam	Description
coun	This is the count of the colors in the color look-up table: - For INDEX_1, there can be up to 2 colors in the table - For INDEX_2, there can be up to 4 colors in the table - For INDEX_4, there can be up to 16 colors in the table - For INDEX_8, there can be up to 256 colors in the table
*col-ors	The Color Lookup Table (CLUT) pointed by “colors” will be stored in the context and programmed to the command buffer when needed. The CLUT will not take effect until the command buffer is submitted to HW. The color is in ARGB format with A located in the upper bits. **Note:** The VGLite driver does not validate the CLUT contents from the application.

Returns:

VG_LITE_SUCCESS as no checking is done.

Parent topic: Pixel buffer functions

vg_lite_enable_dither **function** **Description:**

This function is used to enable the dither function. Dither is turned off by default. The application can use the VGLite API vg_lite_query_feature (gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_DITHER) to determine HW support for dither.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_enable_dither (
);
```

Parameters: None

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Pixel buffer functions

vg_lite_disable_dither **function** **Description:**

This function is used to disable the dither function. Dither is turned off by default.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_disable_dither (
);
```

Parameters: None

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Pixel buffer functions

vg_lite_set_gamma **function** **Description:**

This function sets a gamma value.

Application can use the VGLite API vg_lite_query_feature(gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_GAMMA) to determine HW support for gamma.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_set_gamma (
    vg_lite_gamma_conversion_t     gamma_value
);
```

Parameters:

Name	Description
gamma_value	Sets a gamma value. See enum vg_lite_gamma_conversion_t.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Pixel buffer functions

Parent topic:*Pixel buffers*

Matrices This part of the API provides matrix controls.

Note: All the transformations in the driver/API are actually the final plane/surface coordinate system. There is no transformation of different coordinate systems with VGLite.

Matrix control float parameter type

Name	Typedef	Value
vg_lite_float_t	float	A single-precision floating-point number
vg_lite_pixel_matrix_t [20]	vg_lite_float_t	Pixel transform matrix m[20], which transforms each pixel as follows: |a'| |m0 m1 m2 m3 m4 | |a| |r'| |m5 m6 m7 m8 m9 | |r| |g'| = |m10 m11 m12 m13 m14|.|g| |b'| |m15 m16 m17 m18 m19| |b| |1 | |0 0 0 0 1 | |1|

Parent topic:*Matrices*

Matrix control structures This section provides an overview of the graphic transformation matrix control structures.

vg_lite_matrix_t **structure** This structure defines a 3x3 floating point matrix.

Used in structures: vg_lite_linear_gradient_t, vg_lite_radial_gradient_t.

Used in blit functions: vg_lite_blit, vg_lite_blit_rect.

Used in draw functions: vg_lite_draw, vg_lite_draw_gradient, vg_lite_draw_radial_gradient, vg_lite_draw_pattern, vg_lite_identity, vg_lite_scale, vg_lite_translate.

vg_lite_matrix_t member	Type	Description
m[3][3]	vg_lite_float_t	3x3 matrix, in [row] [column] order

Parent topic: Matrix control structures

vg_lite_pixel_channel_enable_t **structure** This structure provides enable disable flags for hardware pixel channels A,R,G,B.

Used in function: vg_lite_set_pixel_matrix_t.

vg_lite_pixel_channel_enable_t members	Type	Description
enable_a	vg_lite_uint8_t	Enable A channel
enable_b	vg_lite_uint8_t	Enable B channel
enable_g	vg_lite_uint8_t	Enable G channel
enable_r	vg_lite_uint8_t	Enable R channel

Parent topic: Matrix control structures

Parent topic:*Matrices*

Matrix control functions This section provides an overview of the matrix control functions.

vg_lite_identity **function** **Description:**

This function loads an identity matrix into a matrix variable.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_identity (
    vg_lite_matrix_t            *matrix,
);
```

Parameters:

Name	Description
*matrix	Pointer to the vg_lite_matrix_t structure that will be loaded with an identity matrix.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Matrix control functions

vg_lite_set_pixel_matrix **function** **Description:**

This function sets up a pixel transform matrix m[20] which transforms each pixel as follows:

```
|a'|    |m0  m1  m2  m3  m4 | |a|
|r'|    |m5  m6  m7  m8  m9 | |r|
|g'| =  |m10 m11 m12 m13 m14|.|g|
|b'|    |m15 m16 m17 m18 m19| |b|
|1 |    |0   0   0   0   1  | |1|
```

The pixel transform for the A, R, G, B channels can be enabled/disabled individually with the channel parameter.

Applications can use VGLite API vg_lite_query_feature (gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_PIXEL_MATRIX) to determine HW support for gaussian blur.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_set_pixel_matrix (
    vg_lite_pixel_matrix_t          matrix,
    vg_lite_pixel_channel_enable_t  *channel
);
```

Parameters:

Name	Description
*matrix	Specifies the vg_lite_pixel_matrix_t pixel transform matrix that will be loaded.
*channel	Pointer to the vg_lite_pixel_channel_enable_t structure used to enable/disable individual channels.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Matrix control functions

vg_lite_rotate function Description:

This function rotates a matrix a specified number of degrees.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_rotate (
    vg_lite_float_t             degrees,
    vg_lite_matrix_t            *matrix
);
```

Parameters:

Nam	Description
degrees	Number of degrees to rotate the matrix. Positive numbers rotate clockwise.The coordinates for the transformation are given in the surface coordinate system (top-to-bottom orientation). Rotations with positive angles are in the clockwise direction.
*matrix	Pointer to the vg_lite_matrix_t structure that has to be rotated

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Matrix control functions

vg_lite_scale **function** **Description:**

This function scales a matrix in both horizontal and vertical directions.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_scale (
    vg_lite_float_t             scale_x,
    vg_lite_float_t             scale_y,
    vg_lite_matrix_t            *matrix
);
```

Parameters:

Name	Description
scale_x	Horizontal scale
scale_y	Vertical scale
matrix	Pointer to the vg_lite_matrix_t structure that will be scaled.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Matrix control functions

vg_lite_translate **function** **Description:**

This function translates a matrix to a new location.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_translate (
    vg_lite_float_t             x,
    vg_lite_float_t             y,
    vg_lite_matrix_t            *matrix
);
```

Parameters:

Name	Description
x	X location of the transformation.
y	Y location of the transformation.
matrix	Pointer to the vg_lite_matrix_t structure that will be translated.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Matrix control functions

Parent topic:*Matrices*

Blits for compositing and blending This part of the API performs the hardware accelerated blit operations.

Compositing rules describes how two areas are combined to form a single area. Blending rules describes how combining the colors of the overlapping areas are combined. VGLite supports two blending operations and a subset of the Porter-Duff operations [PD84]. The Porter-Duff operators assume that the pixels have the alpha associated (premultiplied), it means that the pixels are premultiplied prior to the blending operation. GC555, GC355, and some GCNanoUltraV hardware support alpha premultiply for RGB image, but GCNanoLiteV does not.

The source image is copied to the destination window with a specified matrix that can include translation, rotation, scaling, and perspective correction.

- The blit function can be used with or without the blend mode.
- The blit function can be used with or without specifying any color value.
- The blit function can be used for color conversion with an identity matrix and appropriate formats specified for the source and the destination buffers. In this case, do not specify blend mode and color value.

Blit enumerations This section gives details on blit enumerations.

vg_lite_blend_t **enumeration** This enumeration defines the blending modes supported by some VGLite API functions. S and D represent source and destination non-premultiplied RGB color channels. Sa and Da represent the source and destination alpha channels. SP and DP represent source and destination alpha-premultiplied RGB color channels (SP = S*Sa, DP = D*Da).

Note: VG_LITE_BLEND_*_LVGL modes are supported on all VG cores. On VG cores that do not support gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_LVGL_SUPPORT, the LVGL blend modes are supported by a combination of software and hardware operations. OPENVG_BLEND_* modes can only be supported on GC355 and GC555 cores.

Used in blit functions: vg_lite_blit, vg_lite_blit2, vg_lite_blit_rect.

Used in draw functions: vg_lite_draw, vg_lite_draw_grad, vg_lite_draw_radial_grad, vg_lite_draw_pattern.

vg_lite_blend_t String Values	Description
VG_LITE_BLEND_NONE	**S, no blending** Non-premultiplied
VG_LITE_BLEND_SRC_OVER	**S** + **D * (1 - Sa)** Non-premultiplied
VG_LITE_BLEND_DST_OVER	**S * (1 – Da)** + **D** Non-premultiplied
VG_LITE_BLEND_SRC_IN	**S * Da** Non-premultiplied
VG_LITE_BLEND_DST_IN	**D * Sa** Non-premultiplied
VG_LITE_BLEND_MULTIPLY	**S * (1 - Da)** + **D * (1 - Sa)** + **S * D** Non-premultiplied
VG_LITE_BLEND_SCREEN	**S** + **D - S * D** Non-premultiplied
VG_LITE_BLEND_DARKEN	**min(SRC_OVER, DST_OVER)** Non-premultiplied
VG_LITE_BLEND_LIGHTEN	**max(SRC_OVER, DST_OVER)** Non-premultiplied
VG_LITE_BLEND_ADDITIVE	**S** + **D** Non-premultiplied
VG_LITE_BLEND_SUBTRACT	**D * (1 - Sa)** Non-premultiplied
VG_LITE_BLEND_NORMAL_LVGL	**S * Sa** + **D * (1 - Sa)** Non-premultiplied (from March 2023)
VG_LITE_BLEND_ADDITIVE_LVGL	**(S** + **D) * Sa** + **D * (1 - Sa)** Non-premultiplied (from March 2023)
VG_LITE_BLEND_SUBTRACT_LVGL	**(S - D) * Sa** + **D * (1 - Sa)** Non-premultiplied (from March 2023)
VG_LITE_BLEND_MULTIPLY_LVGL	**(S * D) * Sa** + **D * (1 - Sa)** Non-premultiplied (from March 2023)
OpenVG Porter-Duff Blend String Values	*(from Aug 2023)*
OPENVG_BLEND_NONE	**SP, no blending** Premultiplied
OPENVG_BLEND_SRC_OVER	**(SP** + **DP * (1 - Sa))** / **(Sa** + **Da * (1 - Sa))** Premultiplied
OPENVG_BLEND_DST_OVER	**(SP * (1 - Da)** + **DP)** / **(Sa * (1 - Da)** + **Da)** Premultiplied
OPENVG_BLEND_SRC_IN	**(SP * Da)** / **(Sa * Da)** Premultiplied
OPENVG_BLEND_DST_IN	**(DP * Sa)** / **(Sa * Da)** Premultiplied
OPENVG_BLEND_MULTIPLY	**(SP*DP** + **SP*(1 - Da)** + **DP*(1 - Sa))** / **(Sa** + **Da*(1 - Sa))** Premultiplied
OPENVG_BLEND_SCREEN	**(SP** + **DP - (SP*DP))** / **(Sa** + **Da*(1 - Sa))** Premultiplied
OPENVG_BLEND_DARKEN	**min(SRC_OVER, DST_OVER)** Premultiplied
OPENVG_BLEND_LIGHTEN	**max(SRC_OVER, DST_OVER)** Premultiplied
OPENVG_BLEND_ADDITIVE	**(SP** + **DP)** / **(Sa** + **Da)** Premultiplied

Parent topic: Blit enumerations

vg_lite_color_t **parameter** The common parameter vg_lite_color_t is described in Table 1.

Parent topic: Blit enumerations

vg_lite_color_transform_t **structure** Specifies the pixel color_transform values for scale and bias.

Used in functions: vg_lite_set_color_transform.

vg_lite_color_transform_t members	Type	Description
a_scale	vg_lite_float_t	Scale value for alpha.
a_bias	vg_lite_float_t	Bias value for alpha.
r_scale	vg_lite_float_t	Scale value for red.
r_bias	vg_lite_float_t	Bias value for red.
g_scale	vg_lite_float_t	Scale value for green.
g_bias	vg_lite_float_t	Bias value for green.
b_scale	vg_lite_float_t	Scale value for blue.
b_bias	vg_lite_float_t	Bias value for blue.

Parent topic: Blit enumerations

vg_lite_filter_t **enumeration** Specifies the sample-filtering mode in VGLite blit and draw APIs.

Used in blit functions: vg_lite_blit, vg_lite_blit_rect.

Used in draw functions: vg_lite_draw_radial_gradient, vg_lite_draw_pattern.

vg_lite_filter_t string values	Description
VG_LITE_FILTER_POINT	Fetch only the nearest image pixel
VG_LITE_FILTER_LINEAR	Use linear interpolation along a horizontal line
VG_LITE_FILTER_BI_LI	Use a 2x2 box around the image pixel and perform an interpolation
VG_LITE_FILTER_GAUS	Perform 3x3 gaussian blur with the convolution for image pixel. *(from March 2023)*

Parent topic: Blit enumerations

vg_lite_color_transform_t **structure** Specifies the pixel color_transform values for scale and bias.

Used in functions: vg_lite_set_color_transform.

vg_lite_color_transform_t members	Type	Description
a_scale	vg_lite_float_t	Scale value for alpha.
a_bias	vg_lite_float_t	Bias value for alpha.
r_scale	vg_lite_float_t	Scale value for red.
r_bias	vg_lite_float_t	Bias value for red.
g_scale	vg_lite_float_t	Scale value for green.
g_bias	vg_lite_float_t	Bias value for green.
b_scale	vg_lite_float_t	Scale value for blue.
b_bias	vg_lite_float_t	Bias value for blue.

Parent topic: Blit enumerations

vg_lite_mask_operation_t **enumeration** Specifies the mask operation mode in VGLite blit APIs.

Used in functions: vg_lite_blend_masklayer, vg_lite_render_masklayer.

vg_lite_mask_o string values	Description
VG_LITE_CLI	This operation sets all mask values in the region of interest to 0, ignoring the new mask layer.
VG_LITE_FIL	This operation sets all mask values in the region of interest to 1, ignoring the new mask layer.
VG_LITE_SET	This operation copies values in the region of interest from the new mask layer, overwriting the previous mask values.
VG_LITE_UN	This operation replaces the previous mask in the region of interest by its union with the new mask layer. The resulting values are always greater than or equal to their previous value.
VG_LITE_INT	This operation replaces the previous mask in the region of interest by its intersection with the new mask layer. The resulting mask values are always less than or equal to their previous value.
VG_LITE_SUI	This operation subtracts the new mask from the previous mask and replaces the previous mask in the region of interest by the resulting mask. The resulting values are always less than or equal to their previous value.

Parent topic: Blit enumerations

vg_lite_orientation_t **enumeration** Specifies the mirror orientation in VGLite blit APIs.

Used in functions: vg_lite_set_mirror.

vg_lite_orientation_t string values	Description
VG_LITE_ORIENTATION_TOP_BOTT	Target output orientation is from top to bottom (default).
VG_LITE_ORIENTATION_BOTTOM_T	Target output orientation is from bottom to top.

Parent topic: Blit enumerations

vg_lite_param_type_t **enumeration** Specifies the parameter type in VGLite blit APIs.

Used in functions: vg_lite_get_parameter.

vg_lite_param_type_t string value	Description
VG_LITE_GPU_IDLE_STATE	The count must be 1 for GPU idle state TRUE or FALSE.
VG_LITE_SCISSOR_RECT	The count must be 4n for x, y, right, bottom.

Parent topic: Blit enumerations

Parent topic:*Blits for compositing and blending*

Blit structures This section provides details about blit structures.

vg_lite_buffer_t **structure** Defined under the “Pixel buffer structures” section (see vg_lite_buffer_t structure).

Parent topic: Blit structures

vg_lite_color_key_t **structure** A “color key” have two sections, where each section contains R,G,B channels, which are noted as high_rgb and low_rgb respectively. *(from April 2022)*

When the enable value is true, the color key specified is effective and the alpha value is used to replace the alpha channel of the destination pixel when its RGB channels are in range [low_rgb, high_rgb]. After the color key is used in the current frame, if the color key is not needed for the next frame, it should be disabled before the next frame.

Used in structure: vg_lite_color_key4_t

vg_lite_color_key_t members	Type	Description
enable	vg_lite_uint8	When set (true), this color key is enabled
low_r	vg_lite_uint8	The R channel of low_rgb
low_g	vg_lite_uint8	The G channel of low_rgb
low_b	vg_lite_uint8	The B channel of low_rgb
alpha	vg_lite_uint8	The alpha value to replace the destination pixel alpha channel value with
high_r	vg_lite_uint8	The R channel of high_rgb
high g	vg_lite_uint8	The G channel of high_rgb
high_b	vg_lite_uint8	The B channel of high_rgb

Parent topic: Blit structures

vg_lite_color_key4_t **structure** The priority order is: color_key_0 > color_key_1 > color_key_2 > color_key_3. *(from April 2022)*

Used in blit function: vg_lite_set_color_key

vg_lite_color_key4_t members	Type	Description
color_key_0		high_rgb_0, low_rgb_0, alpha_0, enable_0
color_key_1		high_rgb_1, low_rgb_1, alpha_1, enable_1
color_key_2		high_rgb_2, low_rgb_2, alpha_2, enable_2
color_key_3		high_rgb_3, low_rgb_3, alpha_3, enable_3

Parent topic: Blit structures

vg_lite_matrix_t **structure** Defined under the “Matrix control structures” section (see vg_lite_matrix_t structure).

Parent topic: Blit structures

vg_lite_path_t **structure** Defined under the “Vector path structures” section (see vg_lite_path_t structure).

Parent topic: Blit structures

vg_lite_rectangle_t **structure** This structure defines a rectangle by using coordinates.

Used in blit function: vg_lite_clear.

vg_lite_rectangle_t member	Type	Description
x	vg_lite_int32_t	X origin of rectangle, left coordinate in pixels
y	vg_lite_int32_t	Y origin of rectangle, top coordinate in pixels
width	vg_lite_int32_t	X Width of rectangle in pixels
height	vg_lite_int32_t	Y Height of rectangle in pixels

Parent topic: Blit structures

vg_lite_point_t **structure** This structure defines a 2D point *(from March 2021)*.

Used in structure: vg_lite_point4_t.

vg_lite_point_t member	Type	Description
X	vg_lite_int32_t	X value of coordinate
Y	vg_lite_int32_t	Y value of coordinate

Parent topic: Blit structures

vg_lite_point4_t **structure** This structure defines four 2D points that form a polygon. The points are defined by structure vg_lite_point_t. *(from March 2021)*

vg_lite_point4_t member	Type	Description
vg_lite_point_t[4]	vg_lite_int32_t each	a set of four points

Parent topic: Blit structures

vg_lite_float_point_t **structure** This structure defines a 2D float point *(from March 2024)*.

Used in structure: vg_lite_float_point4_t.

vg_lite_float_point_t members	Type	Description
x	vg_lite_float_t	X value of coordinate
y	vg_lite_float_t	Y value of coordinate

Parent topic: Blit structures

vg_lite_float_point4_t **structure** This structure defines four 2D float points that form a polygon. The points are defined by structure vg_lite_float_point_t. *(from March 2024)*

Used in blit function: vg_lite_get_transform_matrix.

vg_lite_float_point4_t members	Type	Description
vg_lite_float_point[4]	vg_lite_float_t each	a set of four points

Parent topic: Blit structures

Parent topic:*Blits for compositing and blending*

Blit functions This section provides an overview on blit functions.

vg_lite_blit **function** **Description:**

This is the blit function. The blit operation is performed using a source and a destination buffer. The source and destination buffer structures are defined using the vg_lite_buffer_t structure. Blit copies a source image to the destination window with a specified matrix that can include translation, rotation, scaling, and perspective correction. Note that vg_lite_buffer_t does not support coverage sample anti-aliasing so the destination buffer edge may not be smooth, especially with a rotation matrix. VGLite path rendering can be used to achieve high-quality coverage sample anti-aliasing (16X, 8X, 4X) rendering effect.

Note:

- The blit function can be used with or without the blend function (*vg_lite_blend_t*)
- The blit function can be used with or without specifying a foreground color value (*vg_lite_color_t*)
- The blit function can be used for color conversion with an identity matrix and appropriate formats specified for the source and the destination buffers. In this case, do not specify blend mode and color value.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_blit (
    vg_lite_buffer_t      *target,
    vg_lite_buffer_t      *source,
    vg_lite_matrix_t      *matrix,
    vg_lite_blend_t       blend,
    vg_lite_color_t       color,
    vg_lite_filter_t      filter
);
```

Parameters:

Nam	Description
*target	Points to the vg_lite_buffer_t structure, which defines the destination buffer. See Image Source Alignment Requirement for valid destination color formats for the blit functions.
*sou	Points to the vg_lite_buffer_t structure for the source buffer. All color formats available in the vg_lite_buffer_format_t enum are valid source formats for the blit function.
*matrix	Points to a vg_lite_matrix_t structure that defines the transformation matrix of source pixels into the target. If the matrix is NULL, then an identity matrix is assumed, which means that the source is copied directly at 0,0 location on the target.
blen	Specifies one of the enum vg_lite_blend_t values for hardware-supported blend modes to be applied to each image pixel. If no blending is required, set this value to VG_LITE_BLEND_NONE (0). **Note:** If the matrix parameter is specified with rotation or perspective, and the blend parameter is specified as VG_LITE_BLEND_NONE, VG_LITE_BLEND_SRC_IN, or VG_LITE_BLEND_DST_IN; then, the VGLite driver overwrites the application setting for the blit operation as follows: - If gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_BORDER_CULLING (*vg_lite_feature_t*) is supported, then Transparency mode is always set to TRANSPARENT- If gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_BORDER_CULLING (*vg_lite_feature_t*) is not supported, then Blend mode is always set to VG_LITE_BLEND_SRC_OVER. It happens due to some limitations in the VGLite hardware.
color	If non-zero, this color value is used as a mix color. The mixed color gets multiplied with each source pixel before blending happens. If you don't need a mix color, set the color parameter to 0.**Note:** this parameter has no effect if the source vg_lite_buffer_t structure member image_mode is set to VG_LITE_ZERO or VG_LITE_NORMAL_IMAGE_MODE.
filter	Specifies the filter type. All formats available in the vg_lite_filter_t enum are valid formats for this function. A value of zero (0) indicates VG_LITE_FILTER_POINT.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Blit functions

vg_lite_blit2 function Description:

This is the blit function for use with two sources. The blit2 operation is performed using two source buffers and one destination buffer. The source and destination buffer structures are defined using the vg_lite_buffer_t structure. Source0 and Source1 are first blended according to the blend mode with a specific transformation matrix for each image. Source1 is used as the source while Source0 is used as the dest and is directly output to the render target buffer.

The specified matrices can include translation, rotation, scaling, and perspective correction. Note that vg_lite_buffer_t does not support coverage sample anti-aliasing so the destination buffer edge may not be smooth, especially with a rotation matrix. VGLite path rendering can be used to achieve high-quality coverage sample anti-aliasing (16X, 8X, 4X) rendering effect.

Application can use VGLite API vg_lite_query_feature(gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_DOUBLE_IMAGE) to determine HW support for double image.

Note:

- The vg_lite_blit function can be used for color conversion for Source0 or Source1 before merging sources with vg_lite_blit2.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_blit2 (
    vg_lite_buffer_t              *target,
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    vg_lite_buffer_t            *source0,
    vg_lite_buffer_t            *source1,
    vg_lite_matrix_t            *matrix0,
    vg_lite_matrix_t            *matrix1,
    vg_lite_blend_t             blend,
    vg_lite_filter_t            filter
);
```

Parameters:

Nam	Description
*tar-get	Points to the vg_lite_buffer_t structure, which defines the destination buffer. See Alignment notes for valid destination color formats for the blit functions
*sou *sou	Points to the vg_lite_buffer_t structure for the source0 and source1 buffers. All color formats available in the vg_lite_buffer_format_t‘ enum are valid source formats for the blit functions.
*mat *ma-trix1	Points to a vg_lite_matrix_t structure that defines the 3x3 transformation matrix0 for the source0 pixels and matrix1 for the source1 pixels. If matrix0 and matrix1 are both NULL, the identity matrix is assumed, meaning the blending result of Source0 and Source1 is copied directly on the target at location(0,0).
blen	Specifies one of the enum vg_lite_blend_t values for hardware-supported blend modes to be applied to each image pixel. If no blending is required, set this value to VG_LITE_BLEND_NONE (0). Note: If the “matrix” parameter is specified with rotation or perspective, and the “blend” parameter is specified as VG_LITE_BLEND_NONE, VG_LITE_BLEND_SRC_IN, or VG_LITE_BLEND_DST_IN, the VGLite driver overwrites the application’s setting for the BLIT operation as follows: - If gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_BORDER_CULLING (*vg_lite_feature_t*) is supported, the transparency mode will always be set to TRANSPARENT. - If gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_BORDER_CULLING (*vg_lite_feature_t*) is not supported, the blend mode will always be set to VG_LITE_BLEND_SRC_OVER. This is due to some limitations in the VGLite hardware.
fil-ter	Specifies the filter type. All formats available in the vg_lite_filter_t enum are valid formats for this function. A value of zero (0) indicates VG_LITE_FILTER_POINT.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Blit functions

vg_lite_blit_rect function Description:

This is the blit rectangle function. The blit operation is performed using a source and a destination buffer. The source and destination buffer structures are defined using the vg_lite_buffer_t structure. Blit copies a source image to the destination window with a specified matrix that can include translation, rotation, scaling, and perspective correction. Note that vg_lite_buffer_t does not support coverage sample anti-aliasing so the destination buffer edge may not be smooth, especially with a rotation matrix. VGLite path rendering can be used to achieve high-quality coverage sample anti-aliasing (16X, 8X, 4X) rendering effect.

Note:

- The blit_rect function can be used with or without the blend function (vg_lite_blend_t).
- The blit_rect function can be used with or without specifying any color value (vg_lite_color_t).

- The blit_rect function can be used for color conversion with an identity matrix and appropriate formats specified for the source and destination buffers. In this case, do not specify blend mode and color value.
- The vg_lite_blit_rect rectangle start origin point is always (0,0) for hardware versions prior to GCNanoLiteV 1311p that do not support a non-zero rectangle origin.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_blit_rect (
    vg_lite_buffer_t          *target,
    vg_lite_buffer_t          *source,
    vg_lite_rectangle_t       *rect,
    vg_lite_matrix_t          *matrix,
    vg_lite_blend_t           blend,
    vg_lite_color_t           color,
    vg_lite_filter_t          filter
);
```

Parameters:

Nam	Description
*target	Points to the vg_lite_buffer_t structure that defines the destination buffer.
*sou	Points to the vg_lite_buffer_t structure for the source buffer. All color formats available in the vg_lite_buffer_format_t enum are valid source formats for the blit_rect function.
*rect	Specifies the rectangle area of the source image to blit. rect[0]/[1]/[2]/[3] are x, y, width, and height of the source rectangle respectively. **Note:** Non-zero source origins are supported.
*matrix	Points to a vg_lite_matrix_t structure that defines the 3x3 transformation matrix of source pixels into the target. If the matrix is NULL, then an identity matrix is assumed, which means that the source is copied directly at 0,0 location on the target.
blend	Specifies one of the enum vg_lite_blend_t values for hardware-supported blend modes to be applied to each image pixel. If no blending is required, set this value to VG_LITE_BLEND_NONE (0). **Note:** If the matrix parameter is specified with rotation or perspective, and the blend parameter is specified as VG_LITE_BLEND_NONE, VG_LITE_BLEND_SRC_IN, or VG_LITE_BLEND_DST_IN; then, the VGLite driver overwrites the application setting for the blit operation as follows: - If gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_BORDER_CULLING (vg_lite_feature_t) is supported, then Transparency mode is always set to TRANSPARENT - If gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_BORDER_CULLING (vg_lite_feature_t) is not supported, then Blend mode is always set to VG_LITE_BLEND_SRC_OVER. It happens due to some limitations in the VGLite hardware.
color	If non-zero, this color value is used as a mix color. The mixed color gets multiplied with each source pixel before blending happens. If you do not need a mix color, then set the color parameter to 0. **Note:** This parameter has no effect if the source vg_lite_buffer_t structure member image_mode is set to VG_LITE_ZERO or VG_LITE_NORMAL_IMAGE_MODE.
filter	Specifies the filter type. All formats available in the vg_lite_filter_t enum are valid formats for this function. A value of zero (0) indicates VG_LITE_FILTER_POINT.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Blit functions

vg_lite_copy_image **function** **Description:**

This API copied a pixel rectangle with dimension (width, height) from source buffer to destination buffer. The source image pixel (sx *+ i,*sy + *j*) is copied to the destination image pixel (dx *+ i,*dy + *j*), for *0 □ i <*width and *0 □ j <*height. Pixels whose source or destination lie outside the bounds of the respective image are ignored. Pixel format conversion is applied as needed.

No pre-multiply, transformation, blending, filtering operations are applied to the pixel copy.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_copy_image (
    vg_lite_buffer_t            *target,
    vg_lite_buffer_t            *source,
    vg_lite_int32_t             sx,
    vg_lite_int32_t             sy,
    vg_lite_int32_t             dx,
    vg_lite_int32_t             dy,
    vg_lite_int32_t             width,
    vg_lite_int32_t             height
);
```

Parameters:

Nam	Description
*tar-get	Points to the vg_lite_buffer_t structure that defines the destination buffer.
*sour	Points to the vg_lite_buffer_t structure for the source buffer. All color formats available in the vg_lite_buffer_format_t enum are valid source formats for the blit function.
sx, sy	Pixel coordinates of the lower-left corner of a pixel rectangle within the source buffer.
dx, dy	Pixel coordinates of the lower-left corner of a pixel rectangle within the target buffer.
widtl	Width of the copied pixel rectangle.
heigh	Height of the copied pixel rectangle.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Blit functions

vg_lite_get_transform_matrix **function** **Description:**

This function generates a 3x3 homogenous transform matrix from 4 float point source coordinates and 4 float point target coordinates. *(from March 2021)*

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_get_transform_matrix (
    vg_lite_float_point4_t      src,
    vg_lite_float_point4_t      dst,
    vg_lite_matrix_t            *mat
);
```

Parameters:

Name	Description
src	Pointer to the four 2D points that form a source polygon
dst	Pointer to the four 2D points that form a destination polygon
mat	Output parameter, pointer to a 3x3 homogenous matrix that transforms the source polygon to a destination polygon.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Blit functions

vg_lite_clear **function** **Description:**

This function performs the clear operation, clearing/filling the specified buffer (entire buffer or partial rectangle in a buffer) with an explicit color.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_clear (
    vg_lite_buffer_t            *target,
    vg_lite_rectangle_t          *rect,
    vg_lite_color_t             color
);
```

Parameters:

Name	Description
*target	Pointer to the vg_lite_buffer_t structure for the destination buffer. All color formats available in the vg_lite_buffer_format_t enum are valid destination formats for the clear function.
*rect	Pointer to the vg_lite_rectangle_tstructure that specifies the area to be filled. If the rectangle is NULL, the entire target buffer is filled with the specified color.
color	Clear color, as specified in the vg_lite_color_t enum that is the color value to use for filling the buffer. If the buffer is in L8 format, the RGBA color is converted into a luminance value.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Blit functions

vg_lite_set_color_key **function** **Description:**

This function sets a color key. Color key can be used for blit or for draw pattern operations. *(from April 2022)*

A “color key” have two sections, where each section contains R,G,B channels which are noted as high_rgb and low_rgb respectively.

When the vg_lite_color_key_t structure value enable is true, the color key specified is effective and the alpha value is used to replace the alpha channel of the destination pixel when its RGB

channels are within range [low_rgb, high_rgb]. After the color key is used in the current frame, if the color key is not needed for the next frame, it should be disabled before the next frame.

Hardware support for color key is not available for GCNanoLiteV. Application can use VGLite API vg_lite_query_feature(gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_COLOR_KEY) to determine HW support for color key.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_set_color_key (
    vg_lite_color_key4_t          colorkey
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
colorkey	Color keying parameters as defined by vg_lite_color_key4_t.

Here are 4 groups of color key states:

- color_key_0, high_rgb_0, low_rgb_0, alpha_0, enable_0
- color_key_1, high_rgb_1, low_rgb_1, alpha_1, enable_1
- color_key_2, high_rgb_2, low_rgb_2, alpha_2, enable_2
- color_key_3, high_rgb_3, low_rgb_3, alpha_3, enable_3

The priority order of these states is:

color_key_0 > color_key_1 > color_key_2 > color_key_3.

Returns:

VG_LITE_SUCCESS if successful. VG_LITE_NOT_SUPPORT if color key is not supported in hardware.

Parent topic: Blit functions

vg_lite_gaussian_filter **function** **Description:**

This function sets 3x3 gaussian blur weighted values to filter an image pixel. *(from March 2023)*

The parameters w0, w1, w2 define a 3x3 gaussian blur weight matrix as:

```
|   w2    w1    w2  |
|   w1    w0    w1  |
|   w2    w1    w2  |
```

The sum of the 9 kernel weights must be 1.0 to avoid convolution overflow (w0 + 4*w1 + 4*w2 = 1.0).

The 3x3 weight matrix applies to a 3x3 pixel block:

```
| pixel[i-1][j-1]     pixel[i][j-1]       pixel[i+1][j-1]|
| pixel[i-1][j]       pixel[i][j]         pixel[i+1][j]  |
| pixel[i-1][j+1]     pixel[i][j+1]       pixel[i+1][j+1]|
```

With the following dot product equation:

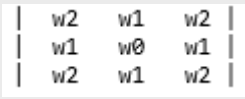
```
color[i][j] = w2*pixel[i-1][j-1] + w1*pixel[i][j-1] + w2*pixel[i+1][j-1]
            + w1*pixel[i-1][j]   + w0*pixel[i][j]   + w1*pixel[i+1][j]
            + w2*pixel[i-1][j+1] + w1*pixel[i][j+1] + w2*pixel[i+1][j+1];
```

Applications can use VGLite API vg_lite_query_feature (gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_GAUSSIAN_BLUR) to determine HW support for gaussian blur.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_gaussian_filter (
    vg_lite_float_t             w0
    vg_lite_float_t             w1
    vg_lite_float_t             w2
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
w0, w1, w2	w0, w1, w2 define a 3x3 gaussian blur weighted matrix as: 

Returns:

VG_LITE_SUCCESS if successful. Otherwise, VG_LITE_NOT_SUPPORT if gaussian blur is not supported in hardware.

Parent topic: Blit functions

Parent topic:*Blits for compositing and blending*

Blit/Draw extended functions The following BLIT or DRAW-related functions typically require GC355 or GC555 hardware and are not available for all Vivante Vector Graphics hardware configurations.

Applications can use the VGLite API vg_lite_query_feature to determine HW support for the related functionality.

vg_lite_get_parameter **function** **Description:**

This function returns the selected VGLite / GPU states to the application.

(from Aug 2023)

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_get_parameter (
    vg_lite_param_type_t        type,
    vg_lite_int32_t             count,
    vg_lite_pointer             params
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
type	The parameter type to be queried (VG_LITE_GPU_IDLE_STATE, VG_LITE_SCISSOR_RECT)
count	The number of returned parameters
params	The pointer to the array of returned parameters

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Blit/Draw extended functions

vg_lite_enable_scissor **function** **Description:**

This function enables scissor rectangle operation for the rectangle regions defined by vg_lite_scissor_rects API. *(from March 2020, modified August 2020, requires GC355 or GC555 hardware)*

Applications can use VGLite API vg_lite_query_feature (gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_SCISSOR) to determine HW support for scissoring. Support is available with GC355 and GC555.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_enable_scissor (
    void
);
```

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Blit/Draw extended functions

vg_lite_disable_scissor **function** **Description:**

This function disables scissor operation for the rectangle regions defined by the vg_lite_scissor_rects API. *(from March 2020, modified August 2020, requires GC355 or GC555 hardware).*

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_disable_scissor (
    void
);
```

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Blit/Draw extended functions

vg_lite_scissor_rects **function** **Description:**

This function defines scissor rectangle regions on the hardware mask layer. But the scissor function is enable/disabled by vg_lite_enable_scissor and vg_lite_disable_scissor APIs. *(from August 2022, requires GC355 or GC555 hardware).*

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_scissor_rects (
    vg_lite_buffer_t              *target,
    vg_lite_uint32_t               nums,
    vg_lite_rectangle_t            rect[]
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
target	Target render buffer that has the scissor mask layer.
nums	Number of scissor rectangles.
rect[]	The scissor rectangle array.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Blit/Draw extended functions

vg_lite_set_scissor **function** **Description:**

This is a legacy scissor API function that can be used to set a single scissor rectangle for the render target. This scissor API is supported by a different hardware mechanism other than the mask layer and it has better performance than the mask layer scissor function.

This API is not enabled/disabled by vg_lite_enable_scissor and vg_lite_disable_scissor APIs. Instead, the vg_lite_set_scissor API calls with a valid scissor rectangle input (x, y, right, bottom) enables the scissor function by default. The vg_lite_set_scissor API call with input parameter (-1, -1, -1, -1) disables the scissor function. *(requires GC355 or GC555 hardware)*

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_set_scissor (
    vg_lite_int32_t               x,
    vg_lite_int32_t               y,
    vg_lite_int32_t               right,
    vg_lite_int32_t               bottom
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
x	X Origin of rectangle, left coordinate in pixels
Y	Y Origin of rectangle, top coordinate in pixels
right	X rightmost pixel of the rectangle
bottom	Y bottom pixel of the rectangle

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Blit/Draw extended functions

vg_lite_disable_color_transform **function** **Description:**

This function is used to disable color transformation. By default, the color transform is turned off. *(from Sept 2022, only for GC355 and GC555 hardware)*

Applications can use the VGLite API vg_lite_query_feature(gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_COLOR_TRANSFORMATION)‘ to determine HW support for color transformation. Support is available with GC355 and GC555.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_disable_color_transform (
);
```

Parameters: None

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Blit/Draw extended functions

vg_lite_enable_color_transform **function** **Description:**

This function is used to enable color transformation. By default, the color transform is turned off. *(from Sept 2022, only for GC355 and GC555 hardware)*

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_enable_color_transform (
);
```

Parameters: None

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Blit/Draw extended functions

vg_lite_set_color_transform **function** **Description:**

This function is used to set pixel scale and bias values for color transformation for each pixel channel. *(from August 2022, only for GC355 and GC555 hardware)*

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_set_color_transform (
    vg_lite_color_transform_t      *values
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
*values	Pointer to the color transformation values to set. See enum vg_lite_color_transform_t.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Blit/Draw extended functions

vg_lite_enable_masklayer **function** **Description:**

This function controls the availability of mask functionality. The mask is turned off by default. *(from August - Sept mber 2022, requires GC555 hardware)*

Applications can use VGLite API vg_lite_query_feature (gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_MASK) to determine HW support for mask. The blit and draw mask functions below require GC555 hardware support. These functions were introduced in August 2022 and the syntax or name was further refined in September 2022.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_enable_masklayer (
    void
  );
```

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Blit/Draw extended functions

vg_lite_disable_masklayer **function** **Description:**

This function controls the availability of mask functionality. The mask is turned off by default. *(from August -September 2022, requires GC555 hardware, prior to Sept 2022 name was vg_lite_disable_mask_layer)*

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_disable_masklayer (
    void
);
```

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Blit/Draw extended functions

vg_lite_create_masklayer **function** **Description:**

This function creates a mask layer with the specified width and height. The mask format defaults to A8 and the default mask value is 255. *(from August 2022-September, requires GC555 hardware)*

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_create_masklayer (
    vg_lite_buffer_t            *masklayer,
    vg_lite_uint32_t             width,
    vg_lite_uint32_t             height
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
*masklayer	Points to the address of the buffer of the mask layer to be created.
width	Mask layer width (in pixels).
height	Mask layer height (in pixels).

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Blit/Draw extended functions

vg_lite_blend_masklayer **function** **Description:**

This function blends the specified area of the source mask layer with the destination mask layer according to an vg_lite_mask_operation_t enumeration value, to create a blended destination mask layer. *(from August-September 2022, requires GC555 hardware)*

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_blend_masklayer (
    vg_lite_buffer_t              *dst_masklayer,
    vg_lite_buffer_t              *src_masklayer,
    vg_lite_mask_operation         operation,
    vg_lite_rectangle_t           *rect,
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
*dst_masklay	Points to the address of the buffer of the destination mask layer.
*src_masklay	Points to the address of the buffer of the source mask layer.
operation	Blending mode to be applied to each image pixel, as defined by the enum *vg_lite_mask_operation_t*.
*rect	The rectangle area (x, y, width, height) of the blend operation.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Blit/Draw extended functions

vg_lite_set_masklayer **function** **Description:**

This function sets the given mask layer to the hardware. *(from August-September 2022, requires GC555 hardware)*

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_set_masklayer (
    vg_lite_buffer_t              *masklayer
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
*masklayer	Points to the address of the buffer of the mask layer to be set.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Blit/Draw extended functions

vg_lite_render_masklayer **function** **Description:**

This function draws the mask layer according to the specified path, color, and matrix information. *(from August-September 2022, requires GC555 hardware)*

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_render_masklayer (
    vg_lite_buffer_t              *masklayer,
    vg_lite_mask_operation         operation,
    vg_lite_path_t                *path,
    vg_lite_fill_t                fill_rule,
    vg_lite_color_t               color,
    vg_lite_matrix_t              *matrix
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
*mas	Points to the address of the buffer of the destination mask layer.
operation	Blending mode to be applied to each image pixel, as defined by the enum vg_lite_mask_operation_t
*patl	Pointer to the vg_lite_path_t structure containing path data that describes the path to draw. Refer to Vector path opcodes for plotting paths in this document for opcode detail.
fill_r	Specifies the vg_lite_fill_t enum value for the fill rule for the path.
color	Specifies the color vg_lite_color_t RGBA value to be applied to each pixel drawn by the path.
*matrix	Points to a vg_lite_matrix_t structure that defines the 3x3 transformation matrix of the path. If the matrix is NULL, an identity matrix is assumed, meaning the source is copied directly on the target at 0,0 location. which is usually a bad idea since the path can be anything.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Blit/Draw extended functions

vg_lite_destroy_masklayer **function** **Description:**

This function is used to free a mask layer. *(from August-September 2022, requires GC555 hardware)*

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_destroy_masklayer (
    vg_lite_buffer_t              masklayer
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
*masklayer	Points to the address of the buffer of the mask layer to be destroyed.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if the function is successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Blit/Draw extended functions

vg_lite_set_mirror **function** **Description:**

This function is used to control mirror functionality. By default, the mirror is turned off and the default output orientation is from top to bottom. *(from August 2022, only for GC555 hardware)*

Application can use VGLite API [vg_lite_query_feature](vg_lite_query_feature_function.md) (gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_MIRROR) to determine HW support for mirror. Mirror functions require GC555 hardware.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_set_mirror (
    vg_lite_orientation_t         orientation
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
orientation	The orientation mode as defined by the enum *vg_lite_orientation_t.‘*

Returns:

VG_LITE_SUCCESS or VG_LITE_NOT_SUPPORT if not supported.

Parent topic: Blit/Draw extended functions

vg_lite_source_global_alpha **function** **Description:**

This function sets the image/source global alpha and return a status error code. *(from June 2021, requires GCNanoUltraV or GC555 hardware)*

Application can use VGLite API vg_lite_query_feature (gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_GLOBAL_ALPHA) to determine HW support for global alpha. The global alpha BLIT-related functions require GCNanoUltraV or GC555 hardware.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_source_global_alpha (
    vg_lite_global_alpha_t        alpha_mode,
    vg_lite_uint8_t               alpha_value
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
alpha_mode	Global alpha mode value. See enum vg_lite_global_alpha_t.
alpha_value	The image/source global alpha value to set.

Returns:

VG_LITE_SUCCESS or VG_LITE_NOT_SUPPORT if global alpha is not supported.

Parent topic: Blit/Draw extended functions

vg_lite_dest_global_alpha **function** **Description:**

This function sets the destination global alpha and returns a status error code. *(from June 2021, requires GCNanoUltraV or GC555 hardware)*

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_dest_global_alpha (
    vg_lite_global_alpha_t        alpha_mode,
    vg_lite_uint8_t               alpha_value
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
alpha_mode	Global alpha mode value. See enum vg_lite_global_alpha_t.
alpha_value	The destination global alpha value to set.

Returns:

VG_LITE_SUCCESS or VG_LITE_NOT_SUPPORT if global alpha is not supported.

Parent topic: Blit/Draw extended functions

Parent topic:*Blits for compositing and blending*

Vector path control This chapter provides an overview of the vector path enumerations, structures, functions, and opcodes for plotting paths.

Vector path enumerations This section provides an overview of vector path enumerations.

vg_lite_format_t **enumeration** Values for vg_lite_format_t enum are defined in Table 1.

If vg_lite_format_t	Path data alignment in the array should be:
VG_LITE_S8	8 bit
VG_LITE_S16	2 bytes
VG_LITE_S32	4 bytes

Parent topic: Vector path enumerations

vg_lite_quality_t **enumeration** Specifies the level of hardware assisted anti-aliasing.

Used in structure: vg_lite_path_t.

Used in function: vg_lite_init_path, vg_lite_init_arc_path.

vg_lite_qu string values	Description
VG_LITE_	High quality: 16x coverage sample anti-aliasing
VG_LITE_	Upper quality: 8x coverage sample anti-aliasing. Use vg_lite_query_feature to determine availability of 8x CSAA (feature enum value gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_QUALITY_8X.(deprecated from June 2020, available with supported hardware from August 2022).
VG_LITE_	Medium quality: 4x coverage sample anti-aliasing
VG_LITE_	Low quality: No anti-aliasing

Parent topic: Vector path enumerations

Parent topic:*Vector path control*

Vector path structures This section provides an overview of vector path structures.

vg_lite_hw_memory **structure** This structure gets the memory allocation information recorded by the kernel.

Used in structure: vg_lite_path_t.

vg_lite_hw_mem member	Type	Description
handle	vg_lite_p	GPU memory object handle
memory	vg_lite_p	Logical memory address
address	vg_lite_u	GPU memory address
bytes	vg_lite_u	Size of memory
property	vg_lite_u	Bit 0 is used for path upload: - 0: Disable path data uploading (always embedded into command buffer) - 1: Enable auto path data uploading

Parent topic: Vector path structures

vg_lite_path_t **structure** This structure describes VGLite path data.

Path data is made of op codes and coordinates. The format for op codes is always VG_LITE_S8. For more details on opcodes, see Vector path opcodes for plotting paths.

Used in init functions: vg_lite_init_path, vg_lite_init_arc_path, vg_lite_upload_path, vg_lite_clear_path, vg_lite_append_path.

Used in draw functions: vg_lite_draw, vg_lite_draw_grad, vg_lite_draw_radial_grad, vg_lite_draw_pattern.

vg_lite_path_t members	Type	Description
bounding_box[4]	vg_lite_float_	bounding box for path [0] left [1] top [2] right [3] bottom
quality	vg_lite_quality	enum for quality hint for the path, anti-aliasing level
format	vg_lite_format	enum for coordinate format
uploaded	vg_lite_hw_me	struct with path data that has been uploaded into GPU addressable memory
path_length	vg_lite_uint32	number of bytes in the path
path	vg_lite_pointe	pointer to path data
path_changed	vg_lite_int8_t	0: not changed; 1: changed.
pdata_internal	vg_lite_int8_t	0: path data memory is allocated by application; 1: path data memory is allocated by driver.
path_type	vg_lite_path_t	The draw path type as specified in enum vg_lite_path_type_t. *(added for stroke control, from March 2022)*
*stroke	vg_lite_stroke_	As defined by structure vg_lite_stroke_t *(added for stroke control, from March 2022)*
stroke_path	vg_lite_pointe	Pointer to the physical description of the stroke path. *(added for stroke control, from March 2022)*
stroke_size	vg_lite_uint32	Number of bytes in the stroke path data. *(added for stroke control, from March 2022)*
stroke_color	vg_lite_color_t	The stroke path fill color. *(from Sept 2022)*
add_end	vg_lite_int8_t	Flag that add end_path in driver *(from March 2023)*

Special notes for path objects:

- Endianness has no impact, as it is aligned against the boundaries
- Multiple contiguous opcodes should be packed by the size of the specified data format. For example, by 2 bytes for VG_LITE_S16 or by 4 bytes for VG_LITE_S32.

For example, because opcodes are 8-bit (1-byte), 16-bit (2-byte), or 32-bit (4-byte) data types:

```
...
<opcode1_that_needs_data>
<align_to_data_size>
<data_for_opcode1>
<opcode2_that_doesnt_need_data>
<align_to_data_size>
<opcode3_that_needs_data>
<align_to_data_size>
<data_for_opcode3>
...
```

- Path data in the array should always be 1-, 2-, or 4-byte aligned, depending on the format:

For example, for 32-bit (4-byte) data types:

```
...
<opcode1_that_needs_data>
<pad to 4 bytes>
<4 byte data_for_opcode1>
<opcode2_that_doesnt_need_data>
<pad to 4 bytes>
<opcode3_that_needs_data>
<pad to 4 bytes>
<4 byte data_for_opcode3>
...
```

Parent topic: Vector path structures

Parent topic:*Vector path control*

Vector path functions When using a small tessellation window and depending on a path's size, a path might be uploaded to the hardware multiple times because the hardware scanline convert path with the provided tessellation window size, so VGLite path rendering performance might go down. That is why it is preferable to set the tessellation buffer size to the most common path size, for example if you only render 24-pt fonts, you can set the tessellation buffer to be 24x24.

All the RGBA color formats available in the vg_lite_buffer_format_t are supported as the destination buffer for the draw function.

vg_lite_get_path_length **function** **Description:**

This function calculates the path command buffer length (in bytes).

The application is responsible for allocating a buffer according to the buffer length calculated with this function. Then, the buffer is used by the path as a command buffer. The VGLite driver does not allocate the path command buffer.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_uint32_t vg_lite_get_path_length (
    vg_lite_uint8_t             *opcode,
    vg_lite_uint32_t             count,
    vg_lite_format_t             format
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
*opcode	Pointer to the opcode array to use to construct the path. *(*opcode from March 2023)*
count	The opcode count
format	The coordinate data format. All formats available in the vg_lite_format_t enum are valid formats for this function.

Returns:

Returns the command buffer length in bytes.

Parent topic: Vector path functions

vg_lite_append_path **function** **Description:**

This function assembles the command buffer for the path. The command buffer is allocated by the application and assigned to the path. This function makes the final GPU command buffer for the path based on the input opcodes (cmd) and coordinates (data). The application is responsible for allocating a buffer large enough for the path*. (from Jan 2022, returns a vg_lite_error_t status code)*

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_append_path (
    vg_lite_path_t              *path
    vg_lite_uint8_t             *opcode,
    vg_lite_pointer             data,
    vg_lite_uint32_t             seg_count
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
*path	Pointer to the vg_lite_path_t structure with the path definition.
*opcode	Pointer to the opcode array to use to construct the path. *(*opcode from March 2023)*
data	Pointer to the coordinate data array to use to construct the path
seg__count	The opcode count

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Vector path functions

vg_lite_init_path function

Description:

This function initializes a path definition with specified values. *(From Dec 2019 returns vg_lite_error_t, previous was void.)*

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_init_path (
    vg_lite_path_t              *path,
    vg_lite_format_t             format,
    vg_lite_quality_t           quality,
    vg_lite_uint32_t             length,
    vg_lite_pointer             *data,
    vg_lite_float_t             min_x,
    vg_lite_float_t             min_y,
    vg_lite_float_t             max_x,
    vg_lite_float_t             max_y
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
*path	Pointer to the vg_lite_path_t structure for the path object to be initialized with the member values specified.
format	The coordinate data format. All formats available in the vg_lite_format_t enum are valid formats for this function.
quality	The quality for the path object. All formats available in the vg_lite_quality_t enum are valid formats for this function.
length	The length of the path data (in bytes)
*data	Pointer to path data
min_x min_y max_x max_y	Minimum and maximum x and y values specifying the bounding box of the path

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Vector path functions

vg_lite_init_arc_path **function** **Description:**

This function initializes an arc path definition with specified values. *(from February 2021)*

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_init_arc_path (
    vg_lite_path_t              *path,
    vg_lite_format_t             format,
    vg_lite_quality_t           quality,
    vg_lite_uint32_t            length,
    vg_lite_pointer             *data,
    vg_lite_float_t             min_x,
    vg_lite_float_t             min_y,
    vg_lite_float_t             max_x,
    vg_lite_float_t             max_y
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Function
*path	Pointer to the vg_lite_path_t structure for the path object to be initialized with the member values specified.
format	The coordinate data format. The vg_lite_format_t enum value should be FP32.
quality	The quality for the path object. All formats available in the vg_lite_quality_t enum are valid formats for this function.
length	The length of the path data (in bytes).
*data	Pointer to path data.
min_x min_y max_x max_y	Minimum and maximum x and y values specifying the bounding box of the path.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Vector path functions

vg_lite_upload_path **function** **Description:**

This function is used to upload a path to GPU memory.

In normal cases, the VGLite driver will copy any path data into a command buffer structure during runtime. This does take some time if there are many paths to be rendered. Also, in an embedded system the path data won't change - so it makes sense to upload the path data into GPU memory in such a form that the GPU can directly access it. This function will signal the driver to allocate a buffer that will contain the path data and the required command buffer header and footer data for the GPU to access the data directly. Call vg_lite_clear_path to free this buffer after the path is used.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_upload_path (
    vg_lite_path_t              *path
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
*path	Pointer to a vg_lite_path_t structure that contains the path to be uploaded.

Returns:

VG_LITE_OUT_OF_MEMORY if not enough GPU memory is available for buffer allocation.

Parent topic: Vector path functions

vg_lite_clear_path **function** **Description:**

This function will clear and reset path member values. If the path has been uploaded, it frees the GPU memory allocated when uploading the path. *(From Dec 2019 returns vg_lite_error_t, previous was void.)*

.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_clear_path (
    vg_lite_path_t              *path
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
*path	Pointer to the vg_lite_path_t path definition to be cleared.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Vector path functions

Parent topic:*Vector path control*

Vector path opcodes for plotting paths The following opcodes are path drawing commands available for vector path data.

A path operation is submitted to the GPU as [Opcode | Coordinates]. The operation code is stored as a VG_LITE_S8 while the coordinates are specified via vg_lite_format_t.

Op-code	Arguments	Description
0x00	None	**VLC_OP_END**. Finish tessellation. Close any open path.
0x01	None	**VLC_OP_CLOSE**. For VGLite driver internal use only. Application should not use this OP directly.
0x02	(x, y)	**VLC_OP_MOVE**. Move to the given vertex. Close any open path. $start_x = x$ $start_y = y$
0x03	(□x, □y)	**VLC_OP_MOVE_REL**. Move to the given relative point. Close any open path. $start_x = start_x + \Delta x$ $start_y = start_y + \Delta y$
0x04	(x, y)	**VLC_OP_LINE**. Draw a line to the given point. $Line(start_x, start_y, x, y)$ $start_x = x$ $start_y = y$
0x05	(□x, □y)	**VLC_OP_LINE_REL**. Draw a line to the given relative point. $x = start_x + \Delta x$ $y = start_y + \Delta y$ $Line(start_x, start_y, x, y)$ $start_x = x$ $start_y = y$
0x06	(cx, cy) (x, y)	**VLC_OP_QUAD**. Draw a quadratic Bezier curve to the given end point using the specified control point. $Quad(start_x, start_y, cx, cy, x, y)$ $start_x = x$ $start_y = y$
0x07	(□cx, □cy) (□x, □y)	**VLC_OP_QUAD_REL**. Draw a quadratic Bezier curve to the given relative end point using the specified relative control point. $cx = start_x + \Delta cx$ $cy = start_y + \Delta cy$ $x = start_x + \Delta x$ $y = start_y + \Delta y$ $Quad(start_x, start_y, cx, cy, x, y)$ $start_x = x$ $start_y = y$
		VLC_OP_CUBIC. Draw a cubic Bezier curve to the given end point using the specified control points. $Cubic(start_x, start_y, cx_1, cy_1, cx_2, cy_2, x, y)$ $start_x = x$

Parent topic:*Vector path control*

Vector-dased draw operations This part of the API performs the hardware accelerated draw operations.

Draw and gradient enumerations This section provides an overview of draw and gradient enumerations.

vg_lite_blend_t **enumeration** This enumeration is defined under the “Blit enumerations” section (see vg_lite_blend_t enumeration).

Parent topic: Draw and gradient enumerations

vg_lite_color_t **parameter** The common parameter vg_lite_color_t is described in Common parameter types.

Parent topic: Draw and gradient enumerations

vg_lite_fill_t **enumeration** This enumeration is used to specify the fill rule to use. For drawing any path, the hardware supports both non-zero and odd-even fill rules.

To determine whether any point is contained inside an object, imagine drawing a line from that point out to infinity in any direction such that the line does not cross any vertex of the path. For each edge that is crossed by the line, add 1 to the counter if the edge is crossed from left to right, as seen by an observer walking across the line towards infinity, and subtract 1 if the edge crossed from right to left. In this way, each region of the plane will receive an integer value.

The non-zero fill rule says that a point is inside the shape if the resulting sum is not equal to zero. The even/odd rule says that a point is inside the shape if the resulting sum is odd, regardless of sign.

Used in function: vg_lite_render_masklayer.

Used in draw functions: vg_lite_draw, vg_lite_draw_grad, vg_lite_draw_radial_grad, vg_lite_draw_pattern.

vg_lite_fill_t string values	Description
VG_LITE_FILL_NON_ZEI	Non-zero fill rule. A pixel is drawn if it crosses at least one path pixel.
VG_LITE_FILL_EVEN_OI	Even-odd fill rule. A pixel is drawn if it crosses an odd number of path pixels.

Parent topic: Draw and gradient enumerations

vg_lite_filter_t **enumeration** This enum is defined under the “Blit enumerations” section (see vg_lite_filter_t enumeration).

Parent topic: Draw and gradient enumerations

vg_lite_gradient_spreadmode_t **enumeration** vg_lite_gradient_spreadmode_t enum is defined to match OpenVG enum VGColorRampSpreadMode *(from March 2023, replaces*vg_lite_radial_gradient_spreadmode*, requires GC355/GC555 hardware)*

The application may only define stops with offsets between 0 and 1. Spread modes define how the given set of stops are repeated or extended in order to define interpolated color values for arbitrary input values outside the [0,1] range.

Used in structure: vg_lite_radial_gradient_t.

vg_lite_gradient_spreadı String Values	Description
VG_LITE_GRADIENT_S	The current fill color is used for all stop values less than 0 or greater than 1 respectively.
VG_LITE_GRADIENT_S	Colors defined at 0 and 1 are used for all stop values less than 0 or greater than 1 respectively.
VG_LITE_GRADIENT_S	Color values defined between 0 and 1 are repeated indefinitely in both directions.
VG_LITE_GRADIENT_S	Color values defined between 0 and 1 are repeated indefinitely in both directions but with alternate copies of the range reversed.

Parent topic: Draw and gradient enumerations

vg_lite_pattern_mode_t **enumeration** Defines how the region outside the image pattern is filled for the path.

Used in function: vg_lite_draw_gradient, vg_lite_draw_pattern.

vg_lite_pattern_ string values	Description
VG_LITE_PAT	Pixels outside the bounds of the source image should be taken as the color.
VG_LITE_PAT	Pixels outside the bounds of the source image should be taken as having the same color as the closest edge pixel. The color of the pattern border is expanded to fill the region outside the pattern.
VG_LITE_PAT	Pixels outside the bounds of the source image should be repeated indefinitely in all directions. *(from March 2023)*
VG_LITE_PAT	Pixels outside the bounds of the source image should be reflected indefinitely in all directions. *(from March 2023)*

Parent topic: Draw and gradient enumerations

vg_lite_radial_gradient_spreadmode_t **enumeration** *(Deprecated March 2023)* use vg_lite_gradient_spreadmode_t. Defines the radial gradient padding mode. *(from Nov 2020, requires GC355 hardware)*

Used in structure: vg_lite_radial_gradient_t.

vg_lite_radial_gradient_sprea String Values	Description
VG_LITE_RADIAL_GRADI = 0	The current fill color is used for all stop values less than 0 or greater than 1 respectively.
VG_LITE_RADIAL_GRADI	Colors defined at 0 and 1 are used for all stop values less than 0 or greater than 1 respectively.
VG_LITE_RADIAL_GRADI	Color values defined between 0 and 1 are repeated indefinitely in both directions.
VG_LITE_RADIAL_GRADI	Color values defined between 0 and 1 are repeated indefinitely in both directions but with alternate copies of the range reversed.

Parent topic: Draw and gradient enumerations

Parent topic:*Vector-dased draw operations*

Draw and gradient structures This section provides an overview of the draw and gradient structures.

vg_lite_buffer_t **structure** This structure is defined under the “Pixel buffer structures” section (see vg_lite_buffer_t structure).

Parent topic: Draw and gradient structures

vg_lite_color_ramp_t **structure** This structure defines the stops for the radial gradient. The five parameters provide the offset and color for the stop. Each stop is defined by a set of floating point values which specify the offset and the sRGBA color and alpha values. Color channel values are in the form of a non-premultiplied (R, G, B, alpha) quad. All parameters are in the range of [0,1]. The red, green, blue, alpha value of [0, 1] is mapped to an 8-bit pixel value [0, 255].*(from November 2020, requires GC355 hardware)*

The define for the max number of radial gradient stops is #define MAX_COLOR_RAMP_STOPS256.

Used in radial gradient structure: vg_lite_radial_gradient_t.

vg_lite_color_ramp_t mem-bers	Type	Description
stop	vg_lite_float_t	Offset value for the color stop
red	vg_lite_float_t	Red color channel value for the color stop
green	vg_lite_float_t	Green color channel value for the color stop
blue	vg_lite_float_t	Blue color channel value for the color stop
alpha	vg_lite_float_t	Alpha color channel value for the color stop

Parent topic: Draw and gradient structures

vg_lite_linear_gradient_t **structure** This structure defines the organization of a linear gradient in VGLite data. The linear gradient is applied to filling a path. It generates a 256x1 image according to the specified settings.

Used in init and draw functions: vg_lite_init_grad, vg_lite_set_grad, vg_lite_update_grad, vg_lite_get_grad_matrix, vg_lite_clear_grad, vg_lite_draw_grad.

vg_lite_linear_gradient_t constants	Type	Description
VLC_MAX_GRADIENT_STOP	vg_lite_int32_	Constant. Maximum number of gradient colors = 16.
vg_lite_linear_gradient_t members		
colors [VLC_MAX_GRADIENT_STOF	vg_lite_uint32	Color array for the gradient
count	vg_lite_uint32	Number of colors
stops [VLC_MAX_GRADIENT_STOF	vg_lite_uint32	Number of color stops, from 0 to 255
matrix	vg_lite_matrix	Struct for the matrix to transform the gradient color ramp
image	vg_lite_buffer_	Image object struct to represent the color ramp

Parent topic: Draw and gradient structures

vg_lite_ext_linear_gradient **structure** This structure defines the organization of the extended parameters possible for a linear gradient *(from April 2022)*.

Used in functions: vg_lite_draw_linear_grad.

vg_lite_ext_linear_gradient members	Type	Description
count	vg_lite_uint32_t	Count of colors, up to 256.
matrix	vg_lite_matrix_t	The matrix to transform the gradient.
image	vg_lite_buffer_t	The image for rendering as gradient pattern.
linear_grad	vg_lite_linear_gra	Linear gradient parameters. Includes center point, focal point and radius.
ramp_length	vg_lite_uint32_t	Color ramp length for gradient paints provided to the driver.
color_ramp[VLC_MAX_C(	vg_lite_color_ram	Color ramp parameter for gradient paints provided to the driver.
converted_length	vg_lite_uint32_t	Converted internal color ramp length.
converted_ramp[VLC_MAX_(	vg_lite_color_ram	Converted internal color ramp.
pre-multiplied	vg_lite_uint8_t	If this value is set to 1, the color value of color_ramp will be multiplied by the alpha value of color_ramp.
spread_mode	vg_lite_radial_gra	The spread mode that is applied to the pixels out of the image after transformed.

|

Parent topic: Draw and gradient structures

vg_lite_linear_gradient_parameter **structure** This structure defines a radial direction for a linear gradient. *(from April 2022)*

Line0 connects point (X0, Y0) to point (X1, Y1) and represents the radial direction of the linear gradient.

Line1 is a line perpendicular to line0 which passes through point (X0, Y0).

Line2 is a line perpendicular to line0 which passes through point (X1, Y1)

The linear gradient paint is applied at the intersection of the path fill area and the plane starting from line 1 and ending at line 2.

Used in structure: vg_lite_ext_linear_gradient.

Used in functions: vg_lite_set_linear_grad.

vg_lite_linear_gradient_parameter_t members	Type	Description
X0	vg_lite_float_	X origin of linear gradient radial direction.
Y0	vg_lite_float_	Y origin of linear gradient radial direction.
X1	vg_lite_float_	X end point of linear gradient radial direction.
Y1	vg_lite_float_	Y end point of linear gradient radial direction.

Parent topic: Draw and gradient structures

vg_lite_matrix_t **structure** This structure is defined under the “Matrix control structures” section (see vg_lite_matrix_t structure).

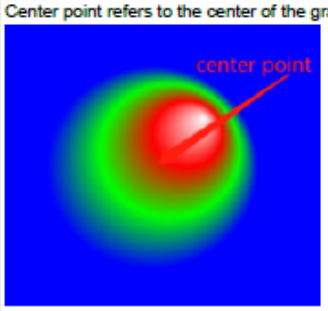
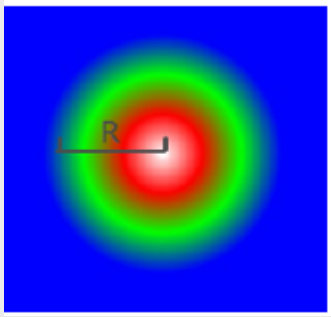
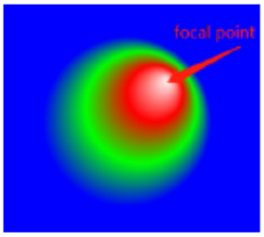
Parent topic: Draw and gradient structures

vg_lite_path_t **structure** This structure is defined under the “Vector path structures” section (see vg_lite_path_t structure).

Parent topic: Draw and gradient structures

vg_lite_radial_gradient_parameter_t **structure** This structure defines the gradient radius and the X and Y coordinates for the center and focal points of the gradient *(from November 2020, requires GC355 or GC555 hardware)*.

Used in radial gradient structure: vg_lite_radial_gradient_t.

vg_lite_radial_gradient_parameter_t member	Type	Description
cx	vg_lite_float_t	Coordinates x and y of the gradient color center point. Center point refers to the center of the gradient color. 
cy	vg_lite_float_t	
r	vg_lite_float_t	Radius of the gradient 
fx	vg_lite_float_t	Coordinates x and y of the gradient color focal point. Focal point refers to the center of the gradient color. 
fy	vg_lite_float_t	

Parent topic: Draw and gradient structures

vg_lite_radial_gradient_t **structure** This structure defines the application of the radial gradient to fill a path. *(from November 2020, requires GC355 or GC555 hardware).*

Used in radial gradient functions: vg_lite_draw_grad, vg_lite_set_radial_grad, vg_lite_update_radial_grad, vg_lite_get_radial_grad, vg_lite_clear_radial_grad.

vg_lite_radial_gradient_t member	Type	Description
count	vg_lite_uint32_t	Count of colors, up to 256
matrix	vg_lite_matrix_t	Structure that specifies the transform matrix for the gradient
image	vg_lite_buffer_t	Structure that specifies the image for rendering as a gradient pattern
radial_grad	vg_lite_radial_gra	Structure that specifies the location of the gradient's center point (cx, cy), focal point(fx, fy) and radius(r)
ramp_length	vg_lite_uint32_t	Color ramp parameters for gradient paints provided to the driver
color_ramp[VLC_MAX_C	vg_lite_color_ram	Structure that specifies the color ramp
converted_length	vg_lite_uint32_t	Converted internal color ramp.
converted_ramp[VLC_MAX_(	vg_lite_color_ram	Structure that specifies the internal color ramp
pre_multiplied	vg_lite_uint32_t	If this value is set to 1, the color value of color_ramp will be multiplied by the alpha value of color_ramp.
spread_mode	vg_lite_radial_gra	Enum that specifies the tiling mode, which is applied to the pixels out of the image after transformation

Parent topic: Draw and gradient structures

Parent topic:*Vector-dased draw operations*

Draw functions This section provides an overview of the draw functions.

vg_lite_draw **function** **Description:**

This function performs a hardware accelerated 2D vector draw operation.

The size of the tessellation buffer can be specified at initialization and it is aligned with the minimum hardware alignment requirements of the kernel. Specifying a smaller size for tessellation buffer allocates less memory but reduces performance. Because the hardware walks the target with the provided tessellation window size, a path may be sent to the hardware multiple times. It is a good practice to set the tessellation buffer size to the most common path size. For example, if all you do is render up to 24-point fonts, you can set the tessellation buffer to 24x24.

Note:

- All the color formats available in the vg_lite_buffer_format_t enum are supported as the destination buffer for the draw function
- The hardware does not support strokes; they must be converted to paths before you use them in the draw API

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_draw (
    vg_lite_buffer_t       *target,
    vg_lite_path_t         *path,
    vg_lite_fill_t         fill_rule,
    vg_lite_matrix_t       *matrix,
    vg_lite_blend_t        blend,
    vg_lite_color_t        color
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
*target	Pointer to the vg_lite_buffer_t structure for the destination buffer. All color formats available in the vg_lite_buffer_format_t enum are valid destination formats for the draw function.
*path	Pointer to the vg_lite_path_t structure containing path data that describes the path to draw. See opcode details in Vector path opcodes for plotting paths.
fill_r	Specifies the vg_lite_fill_t enum value for the fill rule for the path
*matrix	Pointer to a vg_lite_matrix_t structure that defines the *affine* transformation matrix of the path. If the matrix is NULL, an identity matrix is assumed. **Note:** Non-affine transformations are not supported by vg_lite_draw; therefore, a perspective transformation matrix might have unexpected effects on path rendering.
blend	Select one of the hardware-supported blend modes in the vg_lite_blend_t enum to be applied to each drawn pixel. If no blending is required, set this value to VG_LITE_BLEND_NONE (0).
color	The color applied to each pixel drawn by the path.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Draw functions

vg_lite_draw_grad function **Description:**

This function is used to fill a path with a linear gradient according to the specified fill rules. The specified path is transformed according to the selected matrix and is filled with the specified color gradient.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_draw_grad (
    vg_lite_buffer_t            *target,
    vg_lite_path_t              *path,
    vg_lite_fill_t              fill_rule,
    vg_lite_matrix_t            *matrix,
    vg_lite_linear_gradient_t   *grad,
    vg_lite_blend_t             blend
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
*target	Pointer to the vg_lite_buffer_t structure containing data describing the target path.
*path	Pointer to the vg_lite_path_t structure containing path data that describes the path to draw and fill with the linear gradient. See opcode details in Vector path opcodes for plotting paths.
fill_ru	Specifies the vg_lite_fill_t enum value for the fill rule for the path
*matrix	Pointer to the vg_lite_matrix_t structure that defines the 3x3 transformation matrix of the path. If the matrix is NULL, an identity matrix is assumed; however, this option is not preferable.
*grad	Pointer to the vg_lite_linear_gradient_t structure that contains the values to be used to fill the path.
blend	Specifies the blend mode in the vg_lite_blend_t enum to be applied to each drawn pixel. If no blending is required, set this value to VG_LITE_BLEND_NONE (0).

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Draw functions

vg_lite_draw_radial_grad function **Description:**

This function is used to fill a path with a radial gradient according to the specified fill rules. The specified path is transformed according to the selected matrix and is filled with the radial color gradient. The application can use VGLite API vg_lite_query_feature (gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_RADIAL_GRADIENT) to determine HW support for radial gradient.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_draw_radial_grad (
    vg_lite_buffer_t            *target,
    vg_lite_path_t              *path,
    vg_lite_fill_t              fill_rule,
    vg_lite_matrix_t            *path_matrix,
    vg_lite_radial_gradient_t   *grad,
    vg_lite_color_t             paint_color,
    vg_lite_blend_t             blend,
    vg_lite_filter_t            filter
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
*target	Pointer to the vg_lite_buffer_t structure containing data describing the target path.
*path	Pointer to the vg_lite_path_t structure containing path data that describes the path to draw for and fill with the radial gradient. See opcode details in Vector path opcodes for plotting paths.
fill_r	Specifies the vg_lite_fill_t enum value for the fill rule for the path
*path	Pointer to a vg_lite_matrix_t structure that defines the 3x3 transformation matrix of the path. If the matrix is NULL, an identity matrix is assumed; however, his option is not preferable.
*grad	Pointer to the vg_lite_radial_gradient_t structure that contains the values to be used to fill the path. **Note:** grad->image.image_mode does not support VG_LITE_MULTIPLY_IMAGE_MODE .
paint_	Specifies the paint color vg_lite_color_t RGBA value to be applied by VG_LITE_RADIAL_GRADIENT_SPREAD_FILL set by the function vg_lite_set_radial_grad. When pixels are out of the image after transformation, paint_color is applied to them. For details, see vg_lite_radial_gradient_spreadmode_t.
blend	Specifies the blend mode in the vg_lite_blend_t enum to be applied to each drawn pixel. If no blending is required, set this value to VG_LITE_BLEND_NONE (0).
filter	Specified the filter mode vg_lite_filter_t enum value to be applied to each drawn pixel. If no filtering is required, set this value to VG_LITE_BLEND_POINT (0).

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Draw functions

vg_lite_draw_pattern **function** **Description:**

This function fills a path with an image pattern. The path is transformed according to the specified matrix and is filled with the transformed image pattern.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_draw_pattern (
    vg_lite_buffer_t          *target,
    vg_lite_path_t            *path,
    vg_lite_fill_t            fill_rule,
    vg_lite_matrix_t          *path_matrix,
    vg_lite_buffer_t          *pattern_image,
    vg_lite_matrix_t          *pattern_matrix,
    vg_lite_blend_t           blend,
    vg_lite_pattern_mode_t    pattern_mode,
    vg_lite_color_t           pattern_color,
    vg_lite_color_t           color,
    vg_lite_filter_t          filter
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
*target	Pointer to the vg_lite_buffer_t structure for the destination buffer. All color formats available in the vg_lite_buffer_format_t enum are valid destination formats for this draw function.
*path	Pointer to the vg_lite_path_t structure containing path data that describes the path to draw. See opcode details in Vector path opcodes for plotting paths
fill_r	Specifies the vg_lite_fill_t enum value for the fill rule for the path.
*matr	Pointer to the vg_lite_matrix_t structure that defines the 3x3 transformation matrix of the source pixels into the target. If the matrix is NULL, an identity matrix is assumed, meaning the source is copied directly onto the target at 0,0 location.
*pattern_	Pointer to a vg_lite_matrix_t structure that defines the 3x3 transformation matrix of the path. If the matrix is NULL, an identity matrix is assumed.
*pattern_	Pointer to the vg_lite_buffer_t structure that describes the source of the image pattern
	Pointer to a vg_lite_matrix_t structure that defines the 3x3 transformation matrix of the source pixels into the target. If the matrix is NULL, an identity matrix is assumed, which means that the source is copied directly at 0,0 location on the target.
blend	Specifies one of the vg_lite_blend_t enum values for hardware-supported blend modes to be applied to each drawn pixel in the image. If no blending is required, set this value to VG_LITE_BLEND_NONE (0).
pattern_	Specifies the vg_lite_pattern_mode_t value that defines how the region outside the image pattern is to be filled.
pattern_	Specifies a 32bpp ARGB color (vg_lite_color_t) to be applied to the fill outside the image pattern area when the pattern_mode value is VG_LITE_PATTERN_COLOR. *(from Dec 2019, type now vg_lite_color_t, previously was uint32_t)*
color	Specifies a 32bpp ARGB color (vg_lite_color_t) to be applied as a mix color. If non-zero, the mix color value gets multiplied with each source pixel before blending happens. If a mix color is not needed, set the color parameter to 0 *(from May 2023)*. **Note:** This parameter has no effect if the pattern image vg_lite_buffer_t structure member image_mode is set to VG_LITE_ZERO or VG_LITE_NORMAL_IMAGE_MODE.
filter	Specifies the filter type. All formats available in the vg_lite_filter_t enum are valid formats for this function. A value of zero (0) indicates VG_LITE_FILTER_POINT.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Draw functions

Parent topic:*Vector-dased draw operations*

Linear gradient initialization and control functions This part of the API performs linear gradient operations.

A color gradient (color progression, color ramp) is a smooth transition between a set of colors (color stops) that is done along a line (linear, or axial color gradient) or radially, along concentric circles (radial color gradient). The color transition is done by linear interpolation between two consecutive color stops.

Note: VGLite supports linear color gradients for GCNanoLiteV and GCNanoUltraV. Both linear and radial gradients are supported with GC355 and GC555.

vg_lite_init_grad **function** **Description:**

This function initializes the internal buffer for the linear gradient object with default settings for rendering.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_init_grad (
      vg_lite_linear_gradient_t *grad
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
*grad	Pointer to the vg_lite_linear_gradient_t structure, which defines the gradient to be initialized. Default values are used.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Linear gradient initialization and control functions

vg_lite_clear_grad **function** **Description:**

This function is used to clear the values of a linear gradient object and free up the memory of the image buffer.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_clear_grad (
      vg_lite_linear_gradient_t       *grad
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
*grad	Pointer to the vg_lite_linear_gradient_t structure that is to be cleared

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Linear gradient initialization and control functions

vg_lite_set_grad **function** **Description:**

This function is used to set values for the members of the vg_lite_linear_gradient_t structure.

Note: The vg_lite_set_grad API adopts the following rules to set the default gradient colors if the input parameters are incomplete or invalid:

- If no valid stops have been specified (for example, due to an empty input array, out-of-range or out-of-order stops), a stop at 0 with (R, G, B, A) color (0.0, 0.0, 0.0, 1.0) (opaque black) and a stop at 1 with color (1.0, 1.0, 1.0, 1.0) (opaque white) are implicitly defined
- If at least one valid stop has been specified, but none has been defined with an offset of 0, then an implicit stop is added with an offset of 0 and the same color as the first user-defined stop

- If at least one valid stop has been specified, but none has been defined with an offset of 1, then an implicit stop is added with an offset of 1 and the same color as the last user-defined stop

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_set_grad (
      vg_lite_linear_gradient_t       *grad,
      uint32_t                        count,
      uint32_t                        *colors,
      uint32_t                        *stops
     );
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
*grad	Pointer to the vg_lite_linear_gradient_t structure to be set
count	The number of colors in the linear gradient. The maximum color stop count is defined by VLC_MAX_GRAD which is 16.
*colors	Specifies the color array for the gradient stops. The color is in ARGB8888 format with alpha in the upper byte.
*stops	Pointer to the gradient stop offset

Returns:

Always returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS.

Parent topic: Linear gradient initialization and control functions

vg_lite_get_grad_matrix **function** **Description:**

This function is used to get a pointer to the transformation matrix of the gradient object. It allows an application to manipulate the matrix to facilitate correct rendering of the gradient path.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_get_grad_matrix (
      vg_lite_linear_gradient_t       *grad
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
*grad	Pointer to the vg_lite_linear_gradient_t structure, which contains the matrix to be retrieved

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Linear gradient initialization and control functions

vg_lite_update_grad **function** **Description:**

This function is used to update or generate values for an image object that is going to be rendered. The vg_lite_linear_gradient_t object has an image buffer, which is used to render the gradient pattern. The image buffer is created or updated with the corresponding gradient parameters.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_update_grad (
      vg_lite_linear_gradient_t     *grad
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
*grad	Pointer to the vg_lite_linear_gradient_t structure, which contains the update values to be used for the object to be rendered

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Linear gradient initialization and control functions

Parent topic:*Vector-dased draw operations*

Linear gradient extended functions The following functions are available only with IP that includes hardware support for extended linear gradient capabilities, such as GC355 and GC555. These functions are not available with GCNanoLiteV, GCNanoUltraV, or GCNanoV. Applications can use VGLite API vg_lite_query_feature (gcFEATURE_BIT_VG_LINEAR_GRADIENT_EXT) to determine HW support for linear gradient.

vg_lite_set_linear_grad **function** **Description:**

This function is used to set the values that define the linear gradient. *(from April 2022)*

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_set_linear_grad (
    vg_lite_ext_linear_gradient_t          *grad,
    vg_lite_uint32_t                       count,
    vg_lite_color_ramp_t                   *color_ramp,
    vg_lite_linear_gradient_parameter_t    grad_param,
    vg_lite_radial_gradient_spreadmode_t   spread_mode,
    vg_lite_uint8_t                        pre_mult
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
*grad	Pointer to the vg_lite_ext_linear_gradient_t structure that is to be set.
count	Count of the colors in the gradient. The maximum color stop count is defined by MAX_COLOR_RAMP_STOPS, which is set to 256.
*color	It is the array of stops for the linear gradient. The number of parameters for each stop is 5, and gives the offset and color of the stop. Each stop is defined by a floating-point *offset* value and four floating-point values containing the sRGBA color and alpha value associated with each stop, in the form of a non-premultiplied (R, G, B, alpha) quad. The range of all parameters is [0,1].
grad	Gradient parameters as specified in the structure vg_lite_linear_gradient_parameter_t.
spread	The fill mode is applied to the pixels out of the paint after transformation. Uses the same spread mode enumeration types as radial gradient. For details, see vg_lite_radial_gradient_spreadmode_t enum.
pre_	This parameter controls whether color and alpha values are interpolated in premultiplied or non-premultiplied form.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_INVALID_ARGUMENTS to indicate the parameters are wrong.

Parent topic: Linear gradient extended functions

vg_lite_get_linear_grad_matrix **function** **Description:**

This function returns a pointer to an extended linear gradient object's matrix.*(from March 2023)*.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_matrix_t* vg_lite_get_linear_grad_matrix (
    vg_lite_ext_linear_gradient_t   *grad,
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
*grad	Pointer to the vg_lite_ext_linear_gradient_t structure.

Returns:

Returns a pointer to vg_lite_matrix_t for the specified extended linear gradient.

Parent topic: Linear gradient extended functions

vg_lite_draw_linear_grad **function** **Description:**

This function returns a pointer to an extended linear gradient object's matrix.*(from March 2023)*.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_draw_linear_grad (
    vg_lite_buffer_t              *target,
    vg_lite_path_t                *path,
    vg_lite_fill_t               fill_rule,
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    vg_lite_matrix_t                *path_matrix,
    vg_lite_ext_linear_gradient_t   *grad,
    vg_lite_color_t                 paint_color,
    vg_lite_blend_t                 blend,
    vg_lite_filter_t                filter
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
*target	Pointer to the vg_lite_buffer_t structure containing data describing the target path.
*path	Pointer to the vg_lite_path_t structure containing path data that describes the path to draw for the linear gradient. Refer to Vector path opcodes for plotting paths in this document for opcode detail.
fill_r	Specifies the vg_lite_fill_t enum value for the fill rule for the path.
*path	Pointer to a vg_lite_matrix_t structure that defines the 3x3 transformation matrix of the path. If the matrix is NULL, an identity matrix is assumed; however, this option is not preferable.
*grad	Pointer to the vg_lite_ext_linear_gradient_t structure that contains the values to be used to fill the path. **Note:** grad->image.image_mode does not support VG_LITE_MULTIPLY_IMAGE_MODE.
paint	Specifies the paint color vg_lite_color_t RGBA value to be applied by VG_LITE_RADIAL_GRADIENT_SPREAD_FILL, set by function vg_lite_set_linear_grad. When pixels are out of the image after transformation, this paint_color is applied to them. For details, see enum vg_lite_radial_gradient_spreadmode_t.
blend	Specifies blend mode in the vg_lite_blend_t enum to be applied to each drawn pixel. If no blending is required, set this value to VG_LITE_BLEND_NONE (0).
filter	Specified the filter mode vg_lite_filter_t enum value to be applied to each drawn pixel. If no filtering is required, set this value to VG_LITE_BLEND_POINT (0).

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Linear gradient extended functions

vg_lite_update_linear_grad **function** **Description:**

This function is used to update or generate the corresponding image object to render *(from April 2022)*.

The vg_lite_ext_linear_gradient_t object has an image buffer that is used to render the linear gradient paint. The image buffer is created/updated according to the specified grad parameters.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_update_linear_grad (
    vg_lite_ext_linear_gradient_t   *grad,
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
*grad	Pointer to the vg_lite_linear_gradient_ext_t structure that is to be updated or created.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Linear gradient extended functions

vg_lite_clear_linear_grad **function** **Description:**

This function is used to clear the linear gradient object. This resets the grad members and free the image buffer's memory *(from April 2022)*.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_clear_linear_grad (
    vg_lite_ext_linear_gradient_t     *grad,
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
*grad	Pointer to the vg_lite_linear_gradient_ext_t structure that is to be cleared.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Linear gradient extended functions

Parent topic:*Vector-dased draw operations*

Radial gradient functions initialization and control functions The following functions are available only with IP that supports radial gradients, such as GC355 and GC555. These functions are not available with GCNanoLiteV, or GCNanoUltraV or GCNanoV.

Note: There is no init function required for radial gradients. Buffer initialization is done through the vg_lite_update_radial_grad function. *(from Nov 2020, requires GC355 or GC555 hardware)*

vg_lite_set_radial_grad function **Description:**

This function is used to set the values for the radial linear gradient definition. *(from November 2020, requires GC355 or GC555 hardware)*

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_set_radial_grad (
    vg_lite_radial_gradient_t              *grad,
    vg_lite_uint32_t                       count,
    vg_lite_color_ramp_t                   *color_ramp,
    vg_lite_radial_gradient_parameter_t    grad_param,
    vg_lite_radial_gradient_spreadmode_t   spread_mode,
    vg_lite_uint8_t                        pre_mult
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
*grad	Pointer to the vg_lite_radial_gradient_t structure for the radial gradient that has to be set
count	The number of color stops in the gradient. The maximum color stop count is defined by MAX_COLOR_RAMP_STOPS, which is currently 256.
*colorRamp	Pointer to the vg_lite_color_ramp_t structure that defines the stops for the radial gradient. The five parameters provide the offset and color for each stop. Each stop is defined by a set of floating point values that specify the offset and the sRGBA color and alpha values. Color channel values are in the form of a non-premultiplied (R, G, B, alpha) quad. All parameters are in the range of [0,1]. The red, green, blue, alpha value of [0, 1] is mapped to an 8-bit pixel value [0, 255].
gradient	The radial gradient parameters are supplied as a vector of 5 floats. Parameters (cx, cy) specify the center point, parameters (fx, fy) specify the focal point, and r specifies the radius. See structure vg_lite_radial_gradient_parameter_t.
spread	The tiling mode that is applied to pixels out of the paint after transformation. See enum vg_lite_radial_gradient_spreadmode_t.
pre_multiply	Controls whether color and alpha values are interpolated in premultiplied or non-premultiplied form. If this value is set to 1, the color value of vgColorRamp is multipled by the alpha value of vgColorRamp.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_INVALID_ARGUMENTS to indicate that the parameters are wrong.

Parent topic: Radial gradient functions initialization and control functions

vg_lite_update_radial_grad **function** **Description:**

This function is used to update or generate values for an image object that is going to be rendered. The vg_lite_radial_gradient_t object has an image buffer that is used to render the gradient pattern. The image buffer will be created or updated with the corresponding gradient parameters. *(from November 2020, requires GC355 or GC555 hardware)*

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_update_radial_grad (
    vg_lite_radial_gradient_t    *grad,
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
*grad	Pointer to the vg_lite_radial_gradient_t structure, which contains the updated values to be used for the object to be rendered

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Radial gradient functions initialization and control functions

vg_lite_get_radial_grad_matrix **function** **Description:**

This function is used to get a pointer to the radial gradient object's transformation matrix. This allows an application to manipulate the matrix to facilitate correct rendering of the gradient path*. (from Nov 2020, requires GC355 or GC555 hardware).*

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_get_radial_grad_matrix (
    vg_lite_radial_gradient_t     *grad,
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
*grad	Pointer to the vg_lite_radial_gradient_t structure, which contains the matrix to be retrieved

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Radial gradient functions initialization and control functions

vg_lite_clear_rad_grad **function** **Description:**

This function is used to clear the values of a radial gradient object and free the image buffer's memory*. (from Nov 2020, requires GC355 or GC555 hardware)*

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_clear_radial_grad (
    vg_lite_radial_gradient_t     *grad,
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
*grad	Pointer to the vg_lite_radial_gradient_t structure which is to be cleared

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Radial gradient functions initialization and control functions

Parent topic:*Vector-dased draw operations*

Stroke operations This part of the API performs stroke operations. *(from March 2022)*

Stroke enumerations This section gives details on stroke enumerations.

vg_lite_cap_style_t **enumeration** Defines the style of cap at the end of a stroke *(from March 2022)*.

Used in structure: vg_lite_stroke_t.

Used in function: vg_lite_set_stroke.

vg_lite_cap values	Description
VG_LITE_	The *butt* end cap style terminates each segment with a line perpendicular to the tangent at each endpoint.
VG_LITE_	The *round* end cap style appends a semicircle with a diameter equal to the line width centered around each endpoint.
VG_LITE_	The *square* end cap style appends a rectangle with two sides of length equal to the line width perpendicular to the tangent, and two sides of length equal to half the line width parallel to the tangent, at each endpoint.

Parent topic: Stroke enumerations

vg_lite_path_type_t **enumeration** Defines the type of draw path *(from March 2022)*.

Used in structure: vg_lite_path_t, vg_lite_stroke_t.

Used in function: vg_lite_set_path_type.

vg_lite_path_type_t string values	Description
VG_LITE_DRAW_FILL_PATH	Draw path is fill.
VG_LITE_DRAW_STROKE_PATH	Draw path is stroke.
VG_LITE_DRAW_FILL_STROKE_PATH	Draw path is both fill and stroke.

Parent topic: Stroke enumerations

vg_lite_join_style_t **enumeration** Defines the type of styles available for line joints. *(from March 2022)*

Used in structure: vg_lite_stroke_t.

Used in function: vg_lite_set_stroke.

vg_lite_join string values	Description
VG_LITE_	The *miter* join style appends a trapezoid with one vertex at the intersection point of the two original lines, two adjacent vertices at the outer endpoints of the two “thickened” lines and a fourth vertex at the extrapolated intersection point of the outer perimeters of the two “thickened” lines.
VG_LITE_	The *round* join style appends a wedge-shaped portion of a circle, centered at the intersection point of the two original lines, having a radius equal to half the line width.
VG_LITE_	The *bevel* type join style appends a triangle with two vertices at the outer endpoints of the two “thickened” lines and a third vertex at the intersection point of the two original lines.

Parent topic: Stroke enumerations

Parent topic:*Stroke operations*

Stroke structures This section gives details on stroke structures.

vg_lite_path_t **structure** Defined under Vector Path Structures - vg_lite_path_t structure.

(additional members added for stroke from March 2022)

Parent topic: Stroke structures

vg_lite_path_list_t **structure** The structure vg_lite_path_list_ptr points to the vg_lite_path_list structure that provides divided path data according to MOVE/MOVE_REL. *(from Aug 2023)*

Used (vg_lite_path_list_ptr) in structures: vg_lite_stroke_t.

vg_lite_path_list_t members	Type	Description
path_points	vg_lite_path_point_ptr	
path_end	vg_lite_path_point_ptr	
point_count	vg_lite_uint32_t	
next	vg_lite_path_list_ptr	
closed	vg_lite_uint8_t	

Parent topic: Stroke structures

vg_lite_path_point_t **structure** The structure vg_lite_path_point_ptr points to the vg_lite_path_point structure which provides path detail *(from March 2022)*

Used (vg_lite_path_point_ptr) in structures: vg_lite_path_point_t, vg_lite_stroke_conversion. vg_lite_sub_path_t.

vg_lite_path_point_t members	Type	Description
x	vg_lite_float_t	X coordinate
y	vg_lite_float_t	Y coordinate
flatten_flag	vg_lite_uint8_t	Flatten flag for flattened path
curve_type	vg_lite_uint8_t	Curve type for the stroke path
tangentX	vg_lite_float_t	X tangent (Note: #define centerX tangent)
tangentY	vg_lite_float_t	Y tangent (Note: #define centerX tangent)
length	vg_lite_float_t	Line length
prev	vg_lite_path_point_pt	Pointer to the previous point node

Parent topic: Stroke structures

vg_lite_stroke_t **structure** The structure provides stroke parameters and pointers to temp storage for a stroke sub path. Refer to the function vg_lite_set_stroke parameter descriptions for additional description for some members. *(from March 2022)*

Used in structure: vg_lite_path_t.

vg_lite_stroke_t members	Type	Description
cap_style	vg_lite_cap_style_t	Stroke cap style
join_style	vg_lite_join_style_t	Stroke joint style
line_width	vg_lite_float_t	Stroke line width
miter_limit	vg_lite_float_t	Stroke miter limit
*dash_pattern	vg_lite_float_t	Pointer to stroke dash pattern
pattern_count	vg_lite_uint32_t	Number of dash pattern repetitions
dash_phase	vg_lite_float_t	Stroke dash phrase
dash_length	vg_lite_float_t	Stroke dash initial length
dash_index	vg_lite_uint32_t	Stroke dash initial index
half_width	vg_lite_float_t	Half line width
pattern_length	vg_lite_float_t	Total length of stroke dash patterns.
miter_square	vg_lite_float_t	For fast checking
path_points	vg_lite_path_point_ptr	Temp storage for stroke sub path
path_end	vg_lite_path_point_ptr	Temp storage for stroke sub path
point_count	unint32_t	Temp storage for stroke sub path
left_point	vg_lite_path_point_ptr	Temp storage for stroke sub path
right_pont	vg_lite_path_point_ptr	Temp storage for stroke sub path
stroke_points	vg_lite_path_point_ptr	Temp storage for stroke sub path
stroke_end	vg_lite_path_point_ptr	Temp storage for stroke sub path
stroke_count	vg_lite_uint32_t	Temp storage for stroke sub path
path_list_divide	vg_lite_path_list_ptr	Divide stroke path according to move or move_rel for
cur_list	vg_lite_path_list_ptr	Pointer to current divided path data. *(from Aug 2023)*
add_end	vg_lite_uint8_t	Flag that adds end_path in driver *(from Aug 2023)*
dash_reset	vg_lite_uint8_t	*(from Aug 2023)*
stroke_paths	vg_lite_sub_path_ptr	
last_stroke	vg_lite_sub_path_ptr	
swing_handling	vg_lite_uint32_t	
swing_deltax	vg_lite_float_t	
swing_deltay	vg_lite_float_t	
swing_start	vg_lite_path_point_ptr	
swing_stroke	vg_lite_path_point_ptr	
swing_length	vg_lite_float_t	
swing_centlen	vg_lite_float_t	
swing_count	vg_lite_uint32_t	
need_swing	vg_lite_uint8_t	
swing_ccw	vg_lite_uint8_t	
stroke_length	vg_lite_float_t	
stroke_size	vg_lite_uint32_t	
fattened	vg_lite_uint8_t	The stroke line is a fat line.
closed	vg_lite_uint8_t	

Parent topic: Stroke structures

vg_lite_sub_path_t **structure** The structure vg_lite_sub_path_ptr points to the vg_lite_sub_path structure that provides sub path detail and a pointer to the next sub path. *(from March 2022)*

Used in structure: vg_lite_stroke_conversion.

vg_lite_path_point_t members	Type	Description
next	vg_lite_sub_path_ptr	Pointer to the next sub path
point_count	vg_lite_uint32_t	Number of points in the sub path
point_list	vg_lite_path_point_pt	Pointer to the point list.
end_point	vg_lite_path_point_pt	Pointer to the last point.
closed	vg_lite_uint8_t	Indicates whether or not the path is closed.
length	vg_lite_float_t	Length of the sub path.

Parent topic: Stroke structures

Parent topic:*Stroke operations*

Stroke functions All return vg_lite_error_t status.

vg_lite_set_path_type **function** **Description:**

This function sets the path type*. (from March 2022)*

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_set_path_type (
    vg_lite_path_t              *path,
    vg_lite_path_type_t          path_type
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
*path	Pointer to the **vg_lite_path_t** structure that describes the vector path.
path_type	Pointer to a vg_lite_path_type_t structure that describes the path type.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Stroke functions

vg_lite_set_stroke **function** **Description:**

This function uses input parameters to set stroke attributes *(from March 2022)*.

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_set_stroke (
    vg_lite_path_t              *path,
    vg_lite_cap_style_t          cap_style,
    vg_lite_join_style_t         join_style,
    vg_lite_float_t             line_width,
    vg_lite_float_t             miter_limit,
    vg_lite_float_t             *dash_pattern,
    vg_lite_uint32_t             pattern_count,
    vg_lite_float_t             dash_phase,
    vg_lite_color_t              color
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
*path	Pointer to the vg_lite_path_t structure that describes the path.
cap_style	The end cap style is defined by the vg_lite_cap_style_t enum.
join_style	The line join style defined by the vg_lite_join_style_t enum.
line_width	The line width of the stroke path. A line width less than or equal to 0 prevents stroking from taking place.
miter_limit	When stroking using the Miter stroke vg_lite_join_style_t, the miter length (that is, the length between the intersection points of the inner and outer perimeters of the two "fattened" lines) is compared to the product of the user-set miter limit and the line width. If the miter length exceeds this product, the Miter join is not drawn and a Bevel join is substituted. **Note**: Miter limit values less than 1 are silently clamped to 1.
*dash_pattern	Pointer to a dash pattern that consists of a sequence of lengths of alternating "on" and "off" dash segments. The first value of the dash array defines the length, in user coordinates, of the first "on" dash segment. The second value defines the length of the following "off" segment. Each subsequent pair of values defines one "on" and one "off" segment. **Note**: If the dash pattern has an odd number of elements, the final element is ignored.
pattern_count	The count of dash on/off segments.
dash_phase	Defines the starting point in the dash pattern that is associated with the start of the first segment of the path. For example, if the dash pattern is [10 20 30 40] and the dash phase is 35, the path is stroked with an "on" segment of length 25 (skipping the first "on" segment of length 10, the following "off" segment of length 20, and the first 5 units of the next "on" segment), followed by an "off" segment of length 40. The pattern is then repeated from the beginning, with an "on" segment of length 10, an "off" segment of length 20, an "on" segment of length 30.
color	The stroke color.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Stroke functions

vg_lite_update_stroke function Description:

This function uses the path and stroke attributes as specified with the function vg_lite_set_stroke to update the stroke path's parameters and generate stroke path data . *(from March 2022)*

Syntax:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_update_stroke (
    vg_lite_path_t              *path,
);
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
*path	Pointer to the **vg_lite_path_t** structure that describes the path.

Returns:

Returns VG_LITE_SUCCESS if successful. See vg_lite_error_t enum for other return codes.

Parent topic: Stroke functions

Parent topic:*Stroke operations*

Deprecated and renamed APIs The following functions are deprecated and are either obsolete or replaced by a more efficient implementation. Their use is discouraged and will produce unpredictable behaviors.

The names of some functions, enums and structures were modified during code refinements in 2022Q3. If the parameters did not change, the deprecated syntax detail is not provided below. Changes to enums and structs are not mentioned here, instead refer to the item itself.

Deprecated or renamed API	Recommended replacement API	Source file	Date deprecated
vg_lite_perspective	n/a	vg_lite.h	August 2022
vg_lite_set_dither	vg_lite_enable_dither vg_lite_disable_dither	vg_lite.h	August 2022
vg_lite_append_path	vg_lite_path_append	vg_lite.h	Sept 2022
vg_lite_path_calc_length	vg_lite_get_path_length	vg_lite.h	Sept 2022
vg_lite_set_image_global_alpha	vg_lite_set_source_global_alpha	vg_lite.h	Sept 2022
vg_lite_dest_global_alpha	vg_lite_set_dest_global_alpha	vg_lite.h	Sept 2022
vg_lite_mem_avail	vg_lite_get_mem_size	vg_lite.h	Sept 2022
vg_lite_enable_premultiply	n/a	vg_lite.h	Dec 2022
vg_lite_disable_premultiply	n/a	vg_lite.h	Dec 2022
vg_lite_set_premultiply	n/a	vg_lite.h	Aug 2023
vg_lite_radial_gradient_spreadmo enum	vg_lite_gradient_spreadmode_t enum	vg_lite.h	March 2023
API Name Refinement	***(no change to parameters)***		
vg_lite_buffer_upload	vg_lite_upload_buffer_	vg_lite.h	Sept 2022
vg_lite_*mask*	*most vg_lite_*mask_layer*	vg_lite.h	Sept 2022
vg_lite_*_grad	vg_lite_*_gradient *(parameters unchanged)*	vg_lite.h	Sept 2022
vg_lite_*_radial_grad*	vg_lite_*_rad_grad*	vg_lite.h	Sept 2022
vg_lite_buffer_image_mode_t	vg_lite_image_mode_t	vg_lite.h	Sept 2022
vg_lite_transparency_mode_t	vg_lite_transparency_t	vg_lite.h	Sept 2022
vg_lite_set_update_stroke	vg_lite_update_stroke	vg_lite.h	Sept 2022
vg_lite_set_draw_path_type	vg_lite_set_path_type	vg_lite.h	Sept 2022

Deprecated vg_lite syntax Syntax for deprecated functions is provided below for reference.

Note: This list does not include items renamed during code refinement of Sept 2022.

vg_lite_perspective ***(deprecated)*** **Syntax:**

```
void vg_lite_perspective (
    vg_lite_float_t             px,
    vg_lite_float_t             py,
    vg_lite_matrix_t            *matrix
);
```

Parent topic: Deprecated vg_lite syntax

vg_lite_set_dither ***(deprecated)*** **Syntax:**

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_set_dither (
    int               enable
);
```

Parent topic: Deprecated vg_lite syntax

vg_lite_enable_premultiply ***(deprecated)*** **Syntax:**

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_enable_premultiply (
    void
);
```

Parent topic: Deprecated vg_lite syntax

vg_lite_disable_premultiply ***(deprecated)*** **Syntax:**

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_disable_premultiply (
    void
);
```

Parent topic: Deprecated vg_lite syntax

vg_lite_set_premultiply ***(deprecated)*** **Syntax:**

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_set_premultiply (
   vg_lite_uint8_t              src_premult,
   vg_lite_uint8_t              dst_premult,
);
```

Parent topic: Deprecated vg_lite syntax

Parent topic:*Deprecated and renamed APIs*

VGLite API version 2.0 to 3.0 migration guide The VGLite API version 3.0 is not fully compatible with VGLite API version 2.0. VGLite API version 3.0 includes some new API functions for the new features in the latest VG GPU like GC555. Some VGLite API version 2.0 function interfaces are changed in API version 3.0. So, the existing VGLite API version 2.0 applications must be modified to compile and run properly with the VGLite API version 3.0 driver. This chapter provides guidance for migrating VGLite API version 2.0 applications to VGLite API version 3.0.

VGLite API name changes in API version 3.0 Some original VGLite API names are changed in API version 3.0 for API naming consistency. In the VGLite API version 3.0 header file vg_lite.h, a set of API name macros are defined for the equivalent API names between API version 3.0 and API version 2.0, so it is not necessary to modify the VGLite API function names in API version 2.0 applications for the application to compile and run with the API version 3.0 driver.

The list of equivalent VGLite API functions between API version 3.0 and API version 2.0 is shown below. These API functions' parameters are the same between API version 3.0 and API version 2.0.

```
/* API name defines for backward compatibility to VGLite 2.0 APIs */
#define vg_lite_buffer_upload                  vg_lite_upload_buffer
#define vg_lite_path_append                    vg_lite_append_path
#define vg_lite_path_calc_length               vg_lite_get_path_length
#define vg_lite_set_ts_buffer                  vg_lite_set_tess_buffer
#define vg_lite_set_draw_path_type             vg_lite_set_path_type
#define vg_lite_create_mask_layer              vg_lite_create_masklayer
#define vg_lite_fill_mask_layer                vg_lite_fill_masklayer
#define vg_lite_blend_mask_layer               vg_lite_blend_masklayer
#define vg_lite_generate_mask_layer_by_path    vg_lite_render_masklayer
#define vg_lite_set_mask_layer                 vg_lite_set_masklayer
#define vg_lite_destroy_mask_layer             vg_lite_destroy_masklayer
#define vg_lite_enable_mask                    vg_lite_enable_masklayer
#define vg_lite_enable_color_transformation    vg_lite_enable_color_transform
#define vg_lite_set_color_transformation       vg_lite_set_color_transform
#define vg_lite_set_image_global_alpha         vg_lite_source_global_alpha
#define vg_lite_set_dest_global_alpha          vg_lite_dest_global_alpha
#define vg_lite_clear_rad_grad                 vg_lite_clear_radial_grad
#define vg_lite_update_rad_grad                vg_lite_update_radial_grad
#define vg_lite_get_rad_grad_matrix            vg_lite_get_radial_grad_matrix
#define vg_lite_set_rad_grad                   vg_lite_set_radial_grad
#define vg_lite_draw_linear_gradient           vg_lite_draw_linear_grad
#define vg_lite_draw_radial_gradient           vg_lite_draw_radial_grad
#define vg_lite_draw_gradient                  vg_lite_draw_grad
#define vg_lite_mem_avail                      vg_lite_get_mem_size
#define vg_lite_set_update_stroke              vg_lite_update_stroke
```

The list of equivalent VGLite API structures and enumerations is shown below:

```
#define vg_lite_buffer_image_mode_t            vg_lite_image_mode_t
#define vg_lite_draw_path_type_t               vg_lite_path_type_t
#define vg_lite_linear_gradient_ext_t          vg_lite_ext_linear_gradient_t
#define vg_lite_buffer_transparency_mode_t     vg_lite_transparency_t
```

Parent topic:*VGLite API version 2.0 to 3.0 migration guide*

vg_lite_set_scissor API interface change The VGLite API vg_lite_set_scissor() function name is not changed in API version 3.0, but the API parameters are defined differently in API version 3.0.

In VGLite API version 3.0, the vg_lite_set_scissor() function is defined as:

```
/* Set and enable a scissor rectangle for render target. */
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_set_scissor(vg_lite_int32_t x, vg_lite_int32_t y,
            vg_lite_int32_t right, vg_lite_int32_t bottom);
```

In VGLite API version 2.0, the vg_lite_set_scissor() function is defined as:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_set_scissor(int32_t x, int32_t y, int32_t width, int32_t height);
```

So, the vg_lite_set_scissor() API parameters "width" and "height" in the VGLite API version 2.0 application must be changed to "right" x-coordinate value and "bottom" y-coordinate value.

Parent topic:*VGLite API version 2.0 to 3.0 migration guide*

vg_lite_map API interface change The VGLite API vg_lite_map() function name is not changed in API version 3.0, but the API parameters are defined differently in API version 3.0.

In VGLite API version 3.0, the vg_lite_map() function is defined as:

```
/* Map a buffer into hardware accessible address space. */
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_map(vg_lite_buffer_t *buffer, vg_lite_map_flag_t flag, int32_t fd);
```

In VGLite API version 2.0, the vg_lite_map() function is defined as:

```
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_map(vg_lite_buffer_t *buffer);
```

So, vg_lite_map() in VGLite API version 3.0 API requires two extra parameters “flag” and “fd”, which can simply be set as vg_lite_map (buffer, 0, 0) in applications.

Parent topic:*VGLite API version 2.0 to 3.0 migration guide*

vg_lite_enable_scissor / vg_lite_disable_scissor API The VGLite API vg_lite_enable_scissor() and vg_lite_disable_scissor() functions are valid only for vg_lite_scissor_rects() API. They have no effect for vg_lite_set_scissor() in VGLite API version 3.0.

Although the behavior of vg_lite_enable_scissor() and vg_lite_disable_scissor() is changed in VGLite API version 3.0, there is no need to change these functions in VGLite API version 2.0 applications to work with the VGLite API version 3.0 driver.

Parent topic:*VGLite API version 2.0 to 3.0 migration guide*

vg_lite_draw_pattern API interface change The VGLite API vg_lite_draw_pattern() function name is not changed in API version 3.0, but the API parameters are defined differently in API version 3.0.

In VGLite API version 3.0, the vg_lite_draw_pattern() function is defined as:

```
/* Draw a path that is filled by a transformed image pattern. */
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_draw_pattern(vg_lite_buffer_t *target,
                                     vg_lite_path_t *path,
                                     vg_lite_fill_t fill_rule,
                                     vg_lite_matrix_t *path_matrix,
                                     vg_lite_buffer_t *pattern_image,
                                     vg_lite_matrix_t *pattern_matrix,
                                     vg_lite_blend_t blend,
                                     vg_lite_pattern_mode_t pattern_mode,
                                     vg_lite_color_t  pattern_color,
                                     vg_lite_color_t  color,
                                     vg_lite_filter_t filter);
```

Compared to the VGLite API version 2.0 vg_lite_draw_pattern() function, “color” is a new additional parameter. It specifies a 32bpp ARGB color (vg_lite_color_t) to be applied as a mix color. If nonzero, the mix color value gets multiplied with each source pixel before blending happens. If a mix color is not needed, set the color parameter to 0.

Parent topic:*VGLite API version 2.0 to 3.0 migration guide*

[New] vg_lite_copy_image in VGLite API version 3.0 The new API vg_lite_copy_image() is added in VGLite API version 3.0 to support the OpenVG vgCopyImage API, which performs a pixel rectangle copy without pixel transformation, blending, filtering operations.

Parent topic:*VGLite API version 2.0 to 3.0 migration guide*

vg_lite_set_dither API is deprecated in API version 3.0 The original API version 2.0 function vg_lite_set_dither(int enable) API is removed from API version 3.0, it is replaced with two new APIs for dither enable/disable:

```
/* Enable dither function. Dither is OFF by default. */
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_enable_dither();
/* Disable dither function. Dither is OFF by default. */
vg_lite_error_t vg_lite_disable_dither();
```

Therefore, the vg_lite_set_dither(enable) function in the VGLite API version 2.0 application must be replaced with vg_lite_enable_dither() or vg_lite_disable_dither() to work with the VGLite API version 3.0 driver.

Parent topic:*VGLite API version 2.0 to 3.0 migration guide*

Deprecated VGLite API version 2.0 functions The VGLite API vg_lite_perspective(), vg_lite_enable_premultiply(), vg_lite_disable_premultiply() functions are removed from API version 3.0. These API functions must be deleted from a VGLite API version 2.0 application to work with the VGLite API version 3.0 driver.

In VGLite API version 3.0, the color premultiply setting is defined by the vg_lite_blend_t enumeration to replace the original vg_lite_enable_premultiply() and vg_lite_disable_premultiply() APIs.

- VG_LITE_BLEND_* enumeration values in vg_lite_blend_t define non-premultiplied blending modes.
- OPEVG_BLEND_* enumeration values in vg_lite_blend_t define premultiplied Porter-Duff blending modes.

So, the VGLite API version 3.0 application can set different blending modes to get the desired premultiplied/non-premultiplied blending result.

Parent topic:*VGLite API version 2.0 to 3.0 migration guide*

Revision history

Document ID	Release date	Description
IMX Rev. 1.2	17 January 2025	The document is updated to correspond to the API version 3.0
IMX Rev. 1.1	22 September 2022	- Paragraph 4.1.1 Updated *Table 3* - *vg_lite_feature_t* enumeration. - Paragraph 6.6 Added documentation for new API *vg_lite_set_dither* - Paragraph 8.2 Blit structures- Added documentation for new data structure *vg_lite_color_key_t* -; added documentation for new data structure *vg_lite_color_key4_t* - Paragraph 8.3.1, *vg_lite_blit* function- added note related to HW limitation on RT500 platform - Paragraph 8.3.2, *vg_lite_blit_rect* function -added note related to HW limitation on RT500 platforms - Paragraph 8.3.3, *vg_lite_get_transform_matrix* function- adjusted function description, adjusted function parameters description - Paragraph 8.3, blit functions- added documentation for new API *vg_lite_set_color_key* - Paragraph 8.4.1, *vg_lite_enable_premultiply* function- added note about limited support on specific platforms - Paragraph 8.4.2, *vg_lite_disable_premultiply* function- added note about limited support on specific platforms - Paragraph 10.1.3, *vg_lite_fill_t* enumeration- added note about crossing points buffer limitation - Paragraph 10.2, draw and gradient structures- added documentation for new data structure *vg_lite_gradient_parameter_t - done*- added documentation for new data structure *vg_lite_gradient_ext_t*- Paragraph 10.3, draw functions- added documentation for new API *vg_lite_draw_linear_gradient*- Paragraph 10, vector-Based Draw Operations - added new paragraph 10.5 *Extended linear gradient initialization and control functions*; added documentation for new API *vg_lite_set_linear_gradient*; added documentation for new API *vg_lite_get_linear_grad_matrix*; added documentation for new API *vg_lite_update_linear_grad*; Added documentation for new API *vg_lite_clear_linear_grad* - Paragraph 10.5, Radial gradient functions - adjusted paragraph title - Added new Chapter *Stroke Operations* - Chapter *Platform-Specific Features* -updated *Table 41* - Platform-specific VGLite features
IMX Rev. 1	27 January 2022	*Introduction* Added i.MX RT1160 to the list of NXP devices that support VGLite graphics API vg_lite_error_t enumeration Updated Table 1 vg_lite_feature_t enumerationUpdated Table 1 *API control*
IMX Rev. 0	22 February 2021	Initial release

Note about the source code in the document Example code shown in this document has the following copyright and BSD-3-Clause license:

Copyright 2025 NXP Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials must be provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of the copyright holder nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS “AS IS” AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

3.7.2 Xtensa Audio Framework (XAF)

Xtensa Audio Framework (XAF) Examples

Overview The Xtensa Audio Framework (XAF) is designed to accelerate the development of audio processing applications for the HiFi family of DSP cores. The multicore version of XAF described in these examples is designed to work with subsystems having single or multiple DSPs, enabling sophisticated audio processing capabilities in embedded systems.

Each demo showcases a dual-core architecture:

- cm33/ - The ARM application for the Cortex-M33 core, which provides the user interface and system control
- dsp/ - The DSP application that performs audio processing using the XAF middleware library

When an application is started, a shell interface is displayed on the terminal that executes from the ARM core. Users can control the application through shell commands, which are relayed via RPMsg-Lite IPC to the DSP core where they are processed and responses are returned. This architecture demonstrates efficient partitioning of workloads - with user interface and control tasks handled by the ARM core while computationally intensive audio processing is offloaded to the specialized DSP core.

For more information about XAF and detailed documentation on the API and available components, please refer to the Cadence XAF documentation (/middleware/cadence/multicore-xaf/xa_af_hostless/doc).

Availability Note **Important**: These XAF examples are not included in the standard MCUXpresso SDK repository. They are available as part of the MCUXpresso SDK Builder package on the NXP website. To access these examples, please visit MCUXpresso SDK Builder and create a customized SDK package that includes the XAF examples for your target platform.

Included Examples

XAF Playback Example The dsp_xaf_playback application demonstrates audio file decoding and playback capabilities using the DSP core and Xtensa Audio Framework, supporting various audio codecs while handling operations through a shell interface on the ARM core that communicates with DSP processing.

XAF Record Example The dsp_xaf_record example captures audio from digital microphones (DMIC), processes it on the DSP core using voice enhancement algorithms, performs voice recognition (VIT), and outputs the detected wake words and voice commands to the console, enabling hands-free voice control applications.

XAF USB Example The XAF USB example demonstrates DSP-powered USB audio processing in two configurations: USB speaker and USB microphone. The application uses shell commands to switch between modes, with the ARM core handling USB communication while the DSP processes audio.

XAF Playback Example

Table of Content

- *Overview*
- *Functionality*
- *Hardware Requirements*
- *Hardware Modifications*
- *Preparation*
- *Example Configuration*
- *Running the Demo*
- *Known Issues*

Overview The dsp_xaf_playback application demonstrates audio processing using the DSP core, the Xtensa Audio Framework (XAF) middleware library, and selected Xtensa audio codecs.

As shown in the table below, the application is supported on several development boards and each development board may have certain limitations, some development boards may also require hardware modifications or allow the use of an audio expansion board. Therefore, please check the supported features and *Hardware modifications* or *Example configuration* sections before running the demo.

Limitations:

- **MP3 encoder, G.711, G.722, BSAC, DAB+, DAB/MP2, DRM:** Provided only as linked libraries but are not enabled in the example.

Functionality The application includes the following main components:

1. **ARM Core (CM33)** - Handles user interface, SD card operations, and communicates with the DSP core
2. **DSP Core** - Processes audio data using the Xtensa Audio Framework (XAF)

The typical audio processing pipeline includes:

- File source component (reads from SD card)
- Decoder component (decodes compressed audio)
- Renderer component (outputs to audio hardware)

When the file playback command is issued, the ARM core reads the file from SD card and sends data to the DSP, which processes it and outputs to the audio hardware.

Hardware Requirements

- Development board (one of the following):
  - EVK-MIMXRT595 board
  - EVK-MIMXRT685 board

  - MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK board
  - MIMXRT700-EVK board
- Micro USB cable
- JTAG/SWD debugger
- Headphones with 3.5 mm stereo jack
- Personal Computer
- SD card with audio files (for file playback feature)

Hardware Modifications Some development boards need some hardware modifications to run the application.

- *EVK-MIMXRT595:*

  To enable the example audio using WM8904 codec, connect pins as follows:

  - JP7-1 <–> JP8-2

  Note: The I3C Pin configuration in pin_mux.c is verified for default 1.8V, for 3.3V, need to manually configure slew rate to slow mode for I3C-SCL/SDA.

- *EVK-MIMXRT685:*

  To enable the example audio using WM8904 codec, connect pins as follows:

  - JP7-1 <–> JP8-2

- *MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK:*
  - Set the hardware jumpers (Tower system/base module) to default settings.
  - Set hardware jumpers JP2 2<–>3, JP44 1<–>2 and JP45 1<–>2.
- *MIMXRT700-EVK:*

  Set the hardware jumpers to default settings.

Preparation

1. Connect headphones to Audio HP / Line-Out connector (J4).
   - EVK-MIMXRT595 - J4
   - EVK-MIMXRT685 - J4
   - MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK - J4, J50, J51, J52
   - MIMXRT700-EVK - J29
2. Connect a micro USB cable between the PC host and the debug USB port on the development board.
   - EVK-MIMXRT595 - J40
   - EVK-MIMXRT685 - J5
   - MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK - J5
   - MIMXRT700-EVK - J54
3. Open a serial terminal with the following settings:
   - 115200 baud rate
   - 8 data bits
   - No parity

- One stop bit
- No flow control

4. Download the program for CM33 core to the target board.
5. Launch the debugger in your IDE to begin running the demo.
6. If building release configuration, start the xt-ocd daemon and download the program for DSP core to the target board. If building debug configuration, launch the Xtensa IDE or xt-gdb debugger to begin running the demo.

Notes:

- DSP image can only be debugged using J-Link debugger. See the document 'Getting Started with Xplorer' for your particular board for more information.

Example Configuration The example can be configured by user. Before configuration, please check the *table* to see if the feature is supported on the development board.

- **MIMXRT700-EVK Decoder Configuration:**

  RT700 has limited RAM on Cortex-M33 core 1 which limits the available decoders. Only SBC decoder is enabled by default. In order to enable a different decoder/encoder, it is necessary to define the appropriate define on project level. Use one of the following define from the list of the supported decoders on the HiFi1 core:

  – XA_AAC_DECODER
  – XA_MP3_DECODER
  – XA_SBC_DECODER
  – XA_VORBIS_DECODER
  – XA_OPUS_DECODER

Running the Demo The ARM application will power and clock the DSP, so it must be loaded prior to loading the DSP application. The DSP application can be built by the following tools: Xtensa Xplorer or Xtensa C Compiler. Application for Cortex-M33 can be built by the other toolchains listed in MCUXpresso SDK Release Notes.

The release configurations of the demo will combine both applications into one ARM image. With this, the ARM core will load and start the DSP application on startup. Pre-compiled DSP binary images are provided under dsp/binary/ directory. If you make changes to the DSP application in release configuration, rebuild ARM application after building the DSP application. If you plan to use MCUXpresso IDE for cm33 you will have to make sure that the preprocessor symbol DSP_IMAGE_COPY_TO_RAM, found in IDE project settings, is defined to the value 1 when building release configuration.

The debug configurations will build two separate applications that need to be loaded independently. DSP application can be built by the following tools: Xtensa Xplorer or Xtensa C Compiler. Required tool versions can be found in MCUXpresso SDK Release Notes for the board. Application for cm33 can be built by the other toolchains listed there. If you plan to use MCUXpresso IDE for cm33 you will have to make sure that the preprocessor symbol DSP_IMAGE_COPY_TO_RAM, found in IDE project settings, is defined to the value 0 when building debug configuration. The ARM application will power and clock the DSP, so it must be loaded prior to loading the DSP application.

In order to debug both the Cortex-M33 and DSP side of the application, please follow the instructions:

1. It is necessary to run the Cortex-M33 side first and stop the application before the DSP_Start function

2. Run the xt-ocd daemon with proper settings
3. Download and debug the DSP application

In order to get TRACE debug output from the XAF it is necessary to define XF_TRACE 1 in the project settings. It is possible to save the TRACE output into RAM using DUMP_TRACE_TO_BUF 1 define on project level. Please see the initialization of the TRACE function in the xaf_main_dsp.c file. For more details see XAF documentation.

When the demo runs successfully, the terminal will display the following output (example from MIMXRT700-EVK):

```
******************************
DSP audio framework demo start
******************************

[CM33 Main] Configure codec

[DSP_Main] Cadence Xtensa Audio Framework
[DSP_Main] Library Name    : Audio Framework (Hostless)
[DSP_Main] Library Version : 3.5
[DSP_Main] API Version     : 3.2

[DSP_Main] start
[DSP_Main] established RPMsg link
[CM33_Main] DSP image copied to DSP TCM
[CM33_Main][APP_SDCARD_Task] start
[CM33_Main][APP_DSP_IPC_Task] start
[CM33_Main][APP_Shell_Task] start

Copyright  2024  NXP
```

Type help to see the command list. Similar description will be displayed on serial console (*If multi-channel playback mode is enabled, the description is slightly different. Available encoders/decoders may differ - refer to the* table.):

```
"help": List all the registered commands

"exit": Exit program

"version": Query DSP for component versions

"file": Perform audio file decode and playback from SD card
  USAGE: file [list|stop|<audio_file>]
    list          List audio files on SD card available for playback
    <audio_file>  Select file from SD card and start playback

"decoder": Perform decode on DSP and play to speaker.
  USAGE: decoder [aac|mp3|opus|sbc|vorbis_ogg|vorbis_raw]
    aac:        Decode aac data
    mp3:        Decode mp3 data
    opus:       Decode opus data
    sbc:        Decode sbc data
    vorbis_ogg: Decode OGG VORBIS data
    vorbis_raw: Decode raw VORBIS data

"encoder": Encode PCM data on DSP and compare with reference data.
  USAGE: encoder [opus|sbc]
    opus: Encode pcm data using opus encoder
    sbc:  Encode pcm data using sbc encoder

"src" Perform sample rate conversion on DSP
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
"gain": Perform PCM gain adjustment on DSP
```

Xtensa IDE log when command is playing a file (mp3/aac/vorbis/...):

```
  File playback start, initial buffer size: 16384
  [DSP Codec] Audio Device Ready
  [DSP Codec] Decoder component started
  [DSP Codec] Setting decode playback format:
    Decoder    : mp3_dec
    Sample rate: 16000
    Bit Width  : 16
    Channels   : 2
  [DSP Codec] Renderer component started
  [DSP Codec] Connected XA_DECODER ->  XA_RENDERER
  [DSP_ProcessThread] start
  [DSP_BufferThread] start
```

Xtensa IDE log when decoder command starts playback successfully:

```
  [DSP_Main] Input buffer addr: 0x20020000, buffer size: 94276
  [DSP Codec] Audio Device Ready
  [DSP Codec] Decoder created
  [DSP Codec] Decoder component started
  [DSP Codec] Renderer component created
  [DSP Codec] Connected XA_DECODER -> XA_RENDERER
  [DSP_ProcessThread] start
  [DSP_ProcessThread] Execution complete - exiting
  [DSP_ProcessThread] exiting
  [DSP Codec] Audio device closed

  [CM33 CMD] [APP_DSP_IPC_Task] response from DSP, cmd: 0, error: 0
  [CM33 CMD] Decode complete
```

MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK Multi-channel Support: The MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK board supports multi-channel audio. When selecting audio files for playback, you can specify the number of channels:

```
```
file [list|stop|<audio_file> [<nchannel>]]
<nchannel>   Select the number of channels (2 or 8 can be selected).
NOTE: Selected audio file must meet the following parameters:
          - Sample rate: 96 kHz
          - Width: 32 bit
```
```

Xtensa IDE log when command is playing a PCM file:

```
```
[DSP_FILE_REN] Audio Device Ready
[DSP_FILE_REN] post-proc/pcm_gain component started
[DSP_FILE_REN] post-proc/client_proxy component started
[DSP_FILE_REN] Connected post-proc/pcm_gain -> post-proc/client_proxy
[DSP_FILE_REN] renderer component started
[DSP_FILE_REN] Connected post-proc/client_proxy -> renderer
[DSP_BufferThread] start
[DSP_ProcessThread] start
[DSP_CleanupThread] start3
```
```

Known Issues

1. The “file stop” command doesn’t stop the playback for some small files (with low sample rate).
2. MIMXRT700-EVK: Has limited RAM on Cortex-M33 core 1 which limits the available decoders.

XAF Record Example

Table of Content

- *Overview*
- *Functionality*
- *Hardware Requirements*
- *Hardware Modifications*
- *Preparation*
- *Example Configuration*
- *Running the Demo*
- *Known Issues*

Overview The dsp_xaf_record application demonstrates audio processing using the DSP core, the Xtensa Audio Framework (XAF) middleware library, with a focus on audio recording, processing and voice recognition (VIT - Voice Intelligent Technology, Voice seeker).

As shown in the table below, the application is supported on several development boards and each development board may have certain limitations, some development boards may also require hardware modifications or allow to use of an audio expansion board. Therefore, please check the supported features and *Hardware modifications* or *Example configuration* sections before running the demo.

Functionality The application includes the following main components:

1. **ARM Core (CM33)** - Handles user interface and communicates with the DSP core
2. **DSP Core** - Processes audio data using the Xtensa Audio Framework (XAF)

The typical audio processing pipeline includes:

- Audio source component - DMIC audio
- VIT and Voice seeker component (perform voice recognition)
- Renderer component (playback on codec)

The application demonstrates recording from digital microphones (DMIC), processing the audio with voice enhancement algorithms, performing voice recognition, and prints back in console detected WakeWord and list of commands.

Hardware Requirements

- Development board (one of the following):
  - EVK-MIMXRT595 board
  - EVK-MIMXRT685 board

  - MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK board (optionally with 8CH-DMIC expansion board - rev B required)
  - MIMXRT700-EVK board
- Micro USB cable
- JTAG/SWD debugger
- Headphones with 3.5 mm stereo jack
- Personal Computer

Hardware Modifications Some development boards need some hardware modifications to run the application.

- *EVK-MIMXRT595:*

  To enable the example audio using WM8904 codec, connect pins as follows:

  - JP7-1 <–> JP8-2

  Note: The I3C Pin configuration in pin_mux.c is verified for default 1.8V, for 3.3V, need to manually configure slew rate to slow mode for I3C-SCL/SDA.

- *EVK-MIMXRT685:*

  To enable the example audio using WM8904 codec, connect pins as follows:

  - JP7-1 <–> JP8-2

- *MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK*

  1. Set the hardware jumpers (Tower system/base module) to default settings.
  2. Set hardware jumpers JP2 2<–>3, JP44 1<–>2 and JP45 1<–>2.

  For 8CH-DMIC expansion board (optional):

  1. Connect the 8CH-DMIC expansion board to the MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK board to the DMIC connector (J31). For safety reasons, the expansion board must be connected when the power supply is disconnected.
  2. Set the hardware jumpers on the 8-DMIC expansion board to 2MIC, 3MICA, 3MICC config (Short: J6, J9, J10).
  3. Set the hardware jumpers JP44 2<–>3 and JP45 2<–>3 on the MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK board for on-board DMIC bypass.

- *MIMXRT700-EVK:*

  Set the hardware jumpers to default settings.

Preparation

1. Connect headphones to Audio HP / Line-Out connector.
   - EVK-MIMXRT595 - J4
   - EVK-MIMXRT685 - J4
   - MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK - J4, J50 for third channel when using 3 microphones
   - MIMXRT700-EVK - J29
2. Connect a micro USB cable between the PC host and the debug USB port on the development board.
   - EVK-MIMXRT595 - J40
   - EVK-MIMXRT685 - J5

- MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK - J5
- MIMXRT700-EVK - J54

3. Open a serial terminal with the following settings:
   - 115200 baud rate
   - 8 data bits
   - No parity
   - One stop bit
   - No flow control
4. Download the program for CM33 core to the target board.
5. Launch the debugger in your IDE to begin running the demo.
6. If building release configuration, start the xt-ocd daemon and download the program for DSP core to the target board. If building debug configuration, launch the Xtensa IDE or xt-gdb debugger to begin running the demo.

Notes:

- DSP image can only be debugged using J-Link debugger. See the document 'Getting Started with Xplorer' for your particular board for more information.

Example Configuration The example can be configured by user. Before configuration, please check the *table* to see if the feature is supported on the development board.

- **MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK 8CH-DMIC expansion board settings:**

  Select how many microphones should be used

  – Set the BOARD_DMIC_NUM preprocessor macro to 1,2, 3 (default) or 4 in the project for the CM33 core.

  – When the 8CH-DMIC expansion board is used, the DMIC_BOARD_CONNECTED macro must be set to 1 (default) in the project for the DSP core.

  – Important: When you set the value to 2, 3 or 4 you have to connect the 8CH-DMIC expansion board and set the DMIC_BOARD_CONNECTED macro to 1. Don't forget set the hardware jumpers JP44 2-3 and JP45 2-3.

Running the Demo The ARM application will power and clock the DSP, so it must be loaded prior to loading the DSP application. The DSP application can be built by the following tools: Xtensa Xplorer or Xtensa C Compiler. Application for Cortex-M33 can be built by the other toolchains listed in MCUXpresso SDK Release Notes.

The release configurations of the demo will combine both applications into one ARM image. With this, the ARM core will load and start the DSP application on startup. Pre-compiled DSP binary images are provided under dsp/binary/ directory. If you make changes to the DSP application in release configuration, rebuild ARM application after building the DSP application. If you plan to use MCUXpresso IDE for cm33 you will have to make sure that the preprocessor symbol DSP_IMAGE_COPY_TO_RAM, found in IDE project settings, is defined to the value 1 when building release configuration.

The debug configurations will build two separate applications that need to be loaded independently. DSP application can be built by the following tools: Xtensa Xplorer or Xtensa C Compiler. Required tool versions can be found in MCUXpresso SDK Release Notes for the board. Application for cm33 can be built by the other toolchains listed there. If you plan to use MCUXpresso IDE for cm33 you will have to make sure that the preprocessor symbol DSP_IMAGE_COPY_TO_RAM, found in IDE project settings, is defined to the value 0 when building debug configuration. The

ARM application will power and clock the DSP, so it must be loaded prior to loading the DSP application.

In order to debug both the Cortex-M33 and DSP side of the application, please follow the instructions:

1. It is necessary to run the Cortex-M33 side first and stop the application before the DSP_Start function
2. Run the xt-ocd daemon with proper settings
3. Download and debug the DSP application

In order to get TRACE debug output from the XAF it is necessary to define XF_TRACE 1 in the project settings. It is possible to save the TRACE output into RAM using DUMP_TRACE_TO_BUF 1 define on project level. Please see the initialization of the TRACE function in the xaf_main_dsp.c file. For more details see XAF documentation.

Running on CM33 When the demo runs successfully, the CM33 terminal will display the following output (example from MIMXRT700-EVK):

```
*****************************
DSP audio framework demo start
*****************************

[CM33 Main] Configure codec

[DSP_Main] Cadence Xtensa Audio Framework
[DSP_Main] Library Name    : Audio Framework (Hostless)
[DSP_Main] Library Version : 3.5
[DSP_Main] API Version     : 3.2

[DSP_Main] start
[DSP_Main] established RPMsg link
[CM33 Main] DSP image copied to DSP TCM
[CM33 Main][APP_DSP_IPC_Task] start
[CM33 Main][APP_Shell_Task] start

Copyright  2024  NXP

>>
```

Type help to see the command list. Similar description will be displayed on serial console (example from MIMXRT700-EVK):

```
"help": List all the registered commands

"exit": Exit program

"version": Query DSP for component versions

"record_dmic": Record DMIC audio , perform voice recognition (VIT) and playback on codec
USAGE: record_dmic [language]
For voice recognition say supported WakeWord and in 3s frame supported command.
If selected model contains strings, then WakeWord and list of commands will be printed in console.
NOTE: this command does not return to the shell
```

After running the "record_dmic en" command, similar output will be printed

```
[CM33 CMD] Setting VIT language to en
[DSP_Main] Number of channels 1, sampling rate 16000, PCM width 32
[CM33 CMD] [APP_DSP_IPC_Task] response from DSP, cmd: 13, error: 0
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
[DSP Record] Audio Device Ready
[CM33 CMD] DSP DMIC Recording started
[CM33 CMD] To see VIT functionality say wakeword and command
[DSP VIT] VIT Model info
[DSP VIT]   VIT Model Release = 0x40a00
[DSP VIT]   Language supported : English
[DSP VIT]   Number of WakeWords supported : 2
[DSP VIT]   Number of Commands supported : 12
[DSP VIT]   VIT_Model integrating WakeWord and Voice Commands strings : YES
[DSP VIT]   WakeWords supported :
[DSP VIT]    'HEY NXP'
[DSP VIT]    'HEY TV'
[DSP VIT]   Voice commands supported :
[DSP VIT]    'MUTE'
[DSP VIT]    'NEXT'
[DSP VIT]    'SKIP'
[DSP VIT]    'PAIR DEVICE'
[DSP VIT]    'PAUSE'
[DSP VIT]    'STOP'
[DSP VIT]    'POWER OFF'
[DSP VIT]    'POWER ON'
[DSP VIT]    'PLAY MUSIC'
[DSP VIT]    'PLAY GAME'
[DSP VIT]    'WATCH CARTOON'
[DSP VIT]    'WATCH MOVIE'
[DSP Record] connected CAPTURER -> GAIN_0
[DSP Record] connected XA_GAIN_0 -> XA_VIT_PRE_PROC_0
[DSP Record] connected XA_VIT_PRE_PROC_0 -> XA_RENDERER_0
[DSP VIT]  - WakeWord detected 1 HEY NXP
[DSP VIT]  - Voice Command detected 6 STOP
```

Xtensa IDE log of successful start of command:

```
Number of channels 2, sampling rate 16000, PCM width 16
Audio Device Ready
connected CAPTURER -> GAIN_0
connected CAPTURER -> XA_VIT_PRE_PROC_0
connected XA_VIT_PRE_PROC_0 -> XA_RENDERER_0
```

Running on DSP Debug configuration: When the demo runs successfully, the terminal will display the following:

```
Cadence Xtensa Audio Framework
  Library Name    : Audio Framework (Hostless)
  Library Version : 3.2
  API Version     : 3.0

[DSP_Main] start
[DSP_Main] established RPMsg link
Number of channels 2, sampling rate 16000, PCM width 16

Audio Device Ready
VoiceSeekerLight lib initialized!
============== VoiceSeekerLight Configuration ==============
  version = 0.6.0
  num mics = 2
  max num mics = 4
  mic0 = (35, 0, 0)
  mic1 = (-35, 0, 0)
  mic2 = (0, -35, 0)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    num_spks = 0
    max num spks = 2
    samplerate = 16000
    framesize_in = 32
    framesize_out = 480
    create_aec = 0
    create_doa = 0
    buffer_length_sec = 1.5
    aec_filter_length_ms = 0
  ============== VoiceSeekerLight Memory Allocation ==============
    VoiceSeekerLib allocated 80592 persistent bytes
    VoiceSeekerLib allocated 3840 scratch bytes
  ========================================== VoiceSeekerLight Memory Usage␣
↪==========================
  =========
    Total               = 72400 bytes

  connected CAPTURER -> GAIN_0
  connected XA_GAIN_0 -> XA_VOICE_SEEKER_0
  connected XA_VOICE_SEEKER_0 -> XA_VIT_PRE_PROC_0
  connected XA_VIT_PRE_PROC_0 -> XA_RENDERER_0
```

Known Issues There are limited features in release SRAM target because of memory limitations. To enable/disable components, set appropriate preprocessor define in project settings to 0/1 (e.g. XA_VIT_PRE_PROC etc.). Debug and flash targets have full functionality enabled.

XAF USB Example

Table of Content

- *Overview*
- *Functionality*
- *Hardware Requirements*
- *Hardware Modifications*
- *Preparation*
- *Running the Demo*
- *Known Issues*

Overview The dsp_xaf_usb_demo application demonstrates audio processing using the DSP core, the Xtensa Audio Framework (XAF) middleware library.

As shown in the table below, the application is supported on several development boards and each development board may have certain limitations, some development boards may also require hardware modifications or allow to use of an audio expansion board. Therefore, please check the supported features and *Hardware modifications* section before running the demo.

Functionality The application includes the following main components:

1. **ARM Core (CM33)** - Handles user interface, and communicates with the DSP core
2. **DSP Core** - Processes audio data using the Xtensa Audio Framework (XAF)

The XAF USB example demonstrates DSP-powered USB audio processing in two configurations: USB speaker and USB microphone. The application uses shell commands to switch between modes, with the ARM core handling USB communication while the DSP processes audio.

- USB Speaker Mode (USB2.0 → Line out): Receives audio from a USB host, processes it on the DSP, and outputs through the headphone jack, making the device function as a USB speaker for your computer.
- USB Microphone Mode (DMIC → USB2.0): Captures audio from the onboard digital microphones, processes it on the DSP, and streams it to a USB host as a standard audio input device.

Hardware Requirements

- Development board (one of the following):
  - EVK-MIMXRT595 board
  - EVK-MIMXRT685 board
  - MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK board
  - MIMXRT700-EVK board
- 2x Micro USB cable
- JTAG/SWD debugger
- Headphones with 3.5 mm stereo jack
- Personal Computer

Hardware Modifications Some development boards need some hardware modifications to run the application.

- *EVK-MIMXRT595:*

  To enable the example audio using WM8904 codec, connect pins as follows:

  - JP7-1 <–> JP8-2

  Note: The I3C Pin configuration in pin_mux.c is verified for default 1.8V, for 3.3V, need to manually configure slew rate to slow mode for I3C-SCL/SDA.

- *EVK-MIMXRT685:*

  To enable the example audio using WM8904 codec, connect pins as follows:

  - JP7-1 <–> JP8-2

- *MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK*
  - Set the hardware jumpers (Tower system/base module) to default settings.
  - Set hardware jumpers JP2 2<–>3, JP44 1<–>2 and JP45 1<–>2.
- *MIMXRT700-EVK:*

  Set the hardware jumpers to default settings.

Preparation

1. Connect headphones to Audio HP / Line-Out connector.
   - EVK-MIMXRT595 - J4
   - EVK-MIMXRT685 - J4
   - MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK - J4

- MIMXRT700-EVK - J29

2. Connect the first micro USB cable between the PC host and the debug USB port on the development board.
   - EVK-MIMXRT595 - J40
   - EVK-MIMXRT685 - J5
   - MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK - J5
   - MIMXRT700-EVK - J54
3. Connect the second micro USB cable between the PC host and the USB port on the development board.
   - EVK-MIMXRT595 - J38
   - EVK-MIMXRT685 - J7
   - MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK - J7
   - MIMXRT700-EVK - J40
4. Open a serial terminal with the following settings:
   - 115200 baud rate
   - 8 data bits
   - No parity
   - One stop bit
   - No flow control
5. Download the program for CM33 core to the target board.
6. Launch the debugger in your IDE to begin running the demo.
7. If building release configuration, start the xt-ocd daemon and download the program for DSP core to the target board. If building debug configuration, launch the Xtensa IDE or xt-gdb debugger to begin running the demo.

Notes:

- DSP image can only be debugged using J-Link debugger. See the document 'Getting Started with Xplorer' for your particular board for more information.

Running the Demo The ARM application will power and clock the DSP, so it must be loaded prior to loading the DSP application. The DSP application can be built by the following tools: Xtensa Xplorer or Xtensa C Compiler. Application for Cortex-M33 can be built by the other toolchains listed in MCUXpresso SDK Release Notes.

The release configurations of the demo will combine both applications into one ARM image. With this, the ARM core will load and start the DSP application on startup. Pre-compiled DSP binary images are provided under dsp/binary/ directory. If you make changes to the DSP application in release configuration, rebuild ARM application after building the DSP application. If you plan to use MCUXpresso IDE for cm33 you will have to make sure that the preprocessor symbol DSP_IMAGE_COPY_TO_RAM, found in IDE project settings, is defined to the value 1 when building release configuration.

The debug configurations will build two separate applications that need to be loaded independently. DSP application can be built by the following tools: Xtensa Xplorer or Xtensa C Compiler. Required tool versions can be found in MCUXpresso SDK Release Notes for the board. Application for cm33 can be built by the other toolchains listed there. If you plan to use MCUXpresso IDE for cm33 you will have to make sure that the preprocessor symbol DSP_IMAGE_COPY_TO_RAM, found in IDE project settings, is defined to the value 0 when building debug configuration. The

ARM application will power and clock the DSP, so it must be loaded prior to loading the DSP application.

In order to debug both the Cortex-M33 and DSP side of the application, please follow the instructions:

1. It is necessary to run the Cortex-M33 side first and stop the application before the DSP_Start function
2. Run the xt-ocd daemon with proper settings
3. Download and debug the DSP application

In order to get TRACE debug output from the XAF it is necessary to define XF_TRACE 1 in the project settings. It is possible to save the TRACE output into RAM using DUMP_TRACE_TO_BUF 1 define on project level. Please see the initialization of the TRACE function in the xaf_main_dsp.c file. For more details see XAF documentation.

Running on CM33 When the demo runs successfully, the CM33 terminal will display the following output (example from MIMXRT700-EVK):

```
******************************
DSP audio framework demo start
******************************

[CM33 Main] Configure codec

[DSP_Main] Cadence Xtensa Audio Framework
[DSP_Main] Library Name    : Audio Framework (Hostless)
[DSP_Main] Library Version : 3.5
[DSP_Main] API Version     : 3.2

[DSP_Main] start
[DSP_Main] established RPMsg link
[CM33 Main] DSP image copied to DSP TCM
[CM33 Main][APP_DSP_IPC_Task] start
[CM33 Main][APP_Shell_Task] start

Copyright  2024  NXP

>>
```

Type help to see the command list. Similar description will be displayed on serial console (example from MIMXRT700-EVK):

```
"help": List all the registered commands

"exit": Exit program

"version": Query DSP for component versions

"usb_speaker": Perform usb speaker device and playback on DSP
    USAGE: usb_speaker [start|stop]
    start          Start usb speaker device and playback on DSP
    stop           Stop usb speaker device and playback on DSP

"usb_mic": Record DMIC audio and playback on usb microphone audio device
    USAGE: usb_mic [start|stop]
    start          Start record and playback on usb microphone audio device
    stop           Stop record and playback on usb microphone audio device
```

When usb_speaker command starts playback successfully, the terminal will display following output:

```
[APP_DSP_IPC_Task] response from DSP, cmd: 21, error: 0
DSP USB playback start
>>
```

Xtensa IDE log when command is playing a file:

```
USB speaker start, initial buffer size: 960
[DSP_USB_SPEAKER] Audio Device Ready
[DSP_USB_SPEAKER] post-proc/pcm_gain component started
[DSP_USB_SPEAKER] post-proc/client_proxy component started
[DSP_USB_SPEAKER] Connected post-proc/pcm_gain -> post-proc/client_proxy
[DSP_USB_SPEAKER] renderer component started
[DSP_USB_SPEAKER] Connected post-proc/client_proxy -> renderer
[DSP_ProcessThread] start
[DSP_BufferThread] start
[DSP_CleanupThread] start
```

The USB device on your host will be enumerated as XAF USB DEMO.

Xtensa IDE will not show any additional log entry.

Running the demo DSP Debug configuration: When the demo runs successfully, the terminal will display the following:

```
Cadence Xtensa Audio Framework
  Library Name    : Audio Framework (Hostless)
  Library Version : 2.6p1
  API Version     : 2.0

[DSP_Main] start
[DSP_Main] established RPMsg link
```

Known Issues

- When starting the “usb_speaker” after the “usb_mic” command, the sound output may be distorted. Please power cycle the board.

3.8 Wireless

3.8.1 NXP Wireless Framework and Stacks

Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, 802.15.4

Application notes

- Link AN12918-Wi-Fi-Tx-Power-Table-and-Channel-Scan-Management-for-i.MX-RT-SDK.pdf
- Link TN00066-WFA-Derivative-Certification-Process.pdf

User manuals

- Link UM11441-Getting-Started-with-NXP-based-Wireless-Modules-and-i.MX-RT-Platforms.pdf
- UM11442-NXP-Wi-Fi-and-Bluetooth-Demo-Applications-for-i.MX-RT-Platforms.pdf
- Link UM11443-NXP-Wi-Fi-and-Bluetooth-Debug-Feature-Configuration-Guide-for-i.MX-RT-Platforms.pdf

- Link UM11567-WFA-Certification-Guide-for-NXP-based-Wireless-Modules-on-i.MX-RT-Platform-Running-RTOS.pdf

Release notes

Wireless SoC features and release notes for FreeRTOS

About this document This document provides information about the supported features, release versions, fixed and/or known issues, performance of the Wi-Fi, Bluetooth/802.15.4 radios, including the coexistence.

The SDK release version 25.12.00-pvw1 has been tested for the wireless SoCs listed in Supported products.

Supported products

- 88W8987
- IW416
- IW6111
- IW6122
- AW6113
- RW610
- RW612

Parent topic:*About this document*

[1]: The support of IW611 is enabled in i.MX RT1170 EVKB and i.MX RT1060 EVKC. [2]: The support of IW612 is enabled in i.MX RT1170 EVKB and i.MX RT1060 EVKC. [3]: AW611 module support is available only in i.MX RT1180 EVKA

Features

Wi-Fi radio

Client mode

Features	Sub features
802.11n - High throughput	2.4 GHz band operation supported channel bandwidth: 20 M
802.11n - High throughput	2.4 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 40 MHz
802.11n - High throughput	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 20 MHz
802.11n - High throughput	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 40 MHz
802.11n - High throughput	Short/long guard interval (400 ns/800 ns)
802.11n - High throughput	Data rates up to 72 Mbit/s (MCS 0 to MCS 7)
802.11n - High throughput	Data rates up to 150 Mbit/s (MCS 0 to MCS 7)
802.11n - High throughput	1 spatial stream (1x1)
802.11n - High throughput	HT protection mechanisms
802.11n - High throughput	Aggregated MAC protocol data unit (AMPDU) TX and RX sup
802.11n - High throughput	Aggregated MAC service data unit (AMSDU) 4k TX and RX su
802.11n - High throughput	TX MCS rate adaptation (BGN)

Table 5 – continued from p

Features	Sub features
802.11n - High throughput	RX low density parity check (LDPC) 1x1 20 MHz and 40 MHz
802.11n - High throughput	HT Beamformee (explicit)
802.11ac - Very high throughput	2.4 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 20MHz
802.11ac - Very high throughput	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 20 MHz
802.11ac - Very high throughput	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 40 MHz
802.11ac - Very high throughput	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 80 MHz
802.11ac - Very high throughput	Data rates up to 86.7 Mbps (MCS0 to MCS 8)
802.11ac - Very high throughput	Data rates up to 433.3 Mbps (MCS 0 to MCS 9) - 1x1
802.11ac - Very high throughput	MU-MIMO Beamformee (Explicit and Implicit)
802.11ac - Very high throughput	RTS/CTS with BW signaling
802.11ac - Very high throughput	Operation mode notification
802.11ac - Very high throughput	Backward compatibility with non-VHT devices
802.11ac - Very high throughput	TX VHT MCS rate adaptation
802.11ac - Very high throughput	Low density parity check (LDPC)
802.11ax - High efficiency	2.4 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 20MHz
802.11ax - High efficiency	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 20 MHz
802.11ax - High efficiency	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 40 MHz
802.11ax - High efficiency	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidths: 80 MHz
802.11ax - High efficiency	OFDMA (UL/DL, 106 RU)
802.11ax - High efficiency	OFDMA (UL/DL, 484 RU)
802.11ax - High efficiency	1024 QAM
802.11ax - High efficiency	Target wake time (TWT)
802.11ax - High efficiency	256 QAM modulation – MCS8 and MCS9
802.11ax - High efficiency	1024 QAM modulation – MCS10 and MCS11, 2.4 GHz
802.11ax - High efficiency	1024 QAM modulation – MCS10 and MCS11, 5 GHz
802.11ax - High efficiency	DCM
802.11ax - High efficiency	DCM
802.11ax - High efficiency	ER (extended range)
802.11ax - High efficiency	SU Beamforming
802.11ax - High efficiency	OMI (operating mode indication)
802.11a/b/g features	802.11b/g data rates up to 54 Mbit/s
802.11a/b/g features	802.11a data rates up to 54 Mbit/s
802.11a/b/g features	TX rate adaptation (BG)
802.11a/b/g features	Fragmentation/defragmentation
802.11a/b/g features	ERP protection, slot time, preamble
802.11d	802.11d - Regulatory domain/operating class/country info
802.11e QoS	EDCA [enhanced distributed channel access] / WMM (wirele
802.11i security	Opensource WPA Supplicant Support
802.11i security	WPA2-PSK AES | WPA Supplicant
802.11i security	WPA3-SAE (Simultaneous Authentication of Equals) | WPA
802.11i security	WPA2+WPA3 PSK Mixed Mode (WPA3 Transition Mode) | W
802.11i security	Wi-Fi Enhanced Open - OWE (Opportunistic Wireless Encry
802.11i security	802.1x EAP Authentication Methods3 | WPA Supplicant
802.11i security	WPA2-Enterprise Mixed Mode3 | WPA Supplicant
802.11i security	WPA3-Enterprise3 (Suite-B) |National Security Algorithm (C
802.11i security	802.11w - PMF (Protected Management Frames) | WPA Supp
802.11i security	Embedded Supplicant Support
802.11i security	WPA2-PSK AES | Embedded Supplicant
802.11i security	WPA+WPA2 PSK Mixed Mode | Embedded Supplicant
802.11i security	WPA3-SAE (Simultaneous Authentication of Equals) | Embe
802.11i security	802.11w - PMF (Protected Management Frames) | Embedde
802.11i security	Wi-Fi Roaming
802.11i security	WPA3 Enterprise3
Power save mode	Deep sleep
Power save mode	IEEE power save

Table 5 – continued from p

Features	Sub features
Power save mode	Host sleep/WoWLAN (inband)3
Power save mode	Host sleep/WoWLAN (outband)3
Power save mode	U-APSD
802.11w - PMF (protected management frames)	PMF require and capable
802.11w - PMF (protected management frames)	Unicast management frames - Encryption/decryption - using
802.11w - PMF (protected management frames)	Broadcast management frames - Encryption/decryption - us
802.11w - PMF (protected management frames)	SA query request/response
802.11w - PMF (protected management frames)	PMF support using embedded supplicant
DPP functionality	Wi-Fi easy connect3
General features	Embedded supplicant
General features	Host sleep packet filtering
General features	Host-based supplicant
General features	Embedded MLME
General features	EDMAC - EU adaptivity support (ETSI certification)
General features	External coexistence
General features	IPv6 NS offload
General features	FIPS
General features	TKIP1
General features	RF test mode
General features	802.11k
General features	802.11v
General features	DFS radar detection in peripheral mode (follow AP)5
General features	Embedded roaming based on RSSI threshold beacon loss
General features	ARP offload
General features	Cloud keep alive
General features	UNII-4 channel support
General features	ClockSync using TSF
General features	Auto reconnect
General features	CSI (channel state information)3
General features	Ambient Motion Index (AMI)3
General features	Independent reset (in-band)3
General features	Independent reset (out-band)3
General features	Wi-Fi agile multiband
General features	Network co-processor (NCP) mode
General features	802.11mc - WLS (Wi-Fi location service)3
General features	802.11az3

Parent topic: Wi-Fi radio

[1] As per Wi-Fi specification, connecting in TKIP security in non 802.11n mode is allowed.

[2] Support available in host-base supplicant.

[3] Feature not enabled by default in the SDK. Refer to *Feature enable and memory impact* for the macro to enable the feature and the impact on the memory when enabling the feature.

[4] Read more about NCP feature in *References*. [5] To enable the feature, CONFIG_ECSA = 1 must be defined in wifi_config.h (does not apply to RW610 and RW612).

AP mode

Features	Sub features
802.11n - High throughput	2.4 GHz band operation supported channel bandwidth: 20 M
802.11n - High throughput	2.4 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 40 MHz

Table 6 – continued from prev

Features	Sub features
802.11n - High throughput	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 20 MHz
802.11n - High throughput	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 40 MHz
802.11n - High throughput	Short/long guard interval (400 ns/800 ns)
802.11n - High throughput	Data rates up to 72 Mbit/s (MCS 0 to MCS 7)
802.11n - High throughput	Data rates up to 150 Mbit/s (MCS 0 to MCS 7)
802.11n - High throughput	1 spatial stream (1x1)
802.11n - High throughput	HT protection mechanisms
802.11n - High throughput	Aggregated MAC protocol data unit (AMPDU) Rx support
802.11n - High throughput	Aggregated MAC service data unit (AMSDU) -4k RX support
802.11n - High throughput	Max client support (up to 8 devices)
802.11n - High throughput	TX MCS rate adaptation (BGN)
802.11n - High throughput	RX low density parity check (LDPC)
802.11ac – Very high throughput	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 20 MHz
802.11ac – Very high throughput	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 40 MHz
802.11ac – Very high throughput	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 80MHz
802.11ac – Very high throughput	Short/long guard interval (400ns/800ns)
802.11ac – Very high throughput	Data rates up to 86.7 Mbps (MCS0 to MCS 8)
802.11ac – Very high throughput	Data rates up to 433.3 Mbps (MCS 0 to MCS 9)
802.11ac – Very high throughput	Single user- Aggregated MAC protocol data unit (SU-AMPDU
802.11ac – Very high throughput	RTS/CTS with BW signaling
802.11ac – Very high throughput	Backward compatibility with non-VHT devices
802.11ac – Very high throughput	TX VHT MCS rate adaptation
802.11ac – Very high throughput	MU-MIMO Beamformee (explicit and implicit)
802.11ac – Very high throughput	Operation mode notification
802.11ax – High efficiency	2.4 GHz band operation (20 MHz channel bandwidth)
802.11ax – High efficiency	2.4 GHz band operation (40 MHz channel bandwidth)
802.11ax – High efficiency	5 GHz band operation (20MHz channel bandwidth)
802.11ax – High efficiency	5 GHz band operation (40MHz channel bandwidth)
802.11ax – High efficiency	5 GHz band operation (80 MHz channel bandwidth)
802.11d	802.11d - Regulatory domain/operating class/country info
802.11e -QoS	EDCA [enhanced distributed channel access] / WMM (wirele
802.11i security	Hostapd Support
802.11i security	WPA2-PSK AES | hostapd
802.11i security	WPA3-SAE (Simultaneous Authentication of Equals) | Hosta
802.11i security	WPA2+WPA3 PSK Mixed Mode (WPA3 Transition Mode) | H
802.11i security	Wi-Fi Enhanced Open - OWE (Opportunistic Wireless Encry
802.11i security	802.1x EAP Authentication Methods | Hostapd
802.11i security	WPA2-Enterprise Mixed Mode1 | Hostapd
802.11i security	WPA3-Enterprise (Suite-B)1 |National Security Algorithm (C
802.11i security	802.11w - PMF (Protected Management Frames) | Hostapd
802.11i security	Embedded Authenticator
802.11i security	WPA2-PSK AES | Embedded Supplicant
802.11i security	WPA+WPA2 PSK Mixed Mode | Embedded Supplicant
802.11i security	WPA3-SAE (Simultaneous Authentication of Equals) | Embe
802.11i security	802.11w - PMF (Protected Management Frames) | Embedde
802.11y	Extended channel switch announcement (ECSA)
802.11w - protected management frames (PMF)	PMF require and capable
802.11w - protected management frames (PMF)	Unicast management frames -Encryption/decryption - using
802.11w - protected management frames (PMF)	Broadcast management frames -encryption/decryption - usi
802.11w - protected management frames (PMF)	SA query request/response
General features	Embedded authenticator
General features	Embedded MLME
General features	EU adaptivity support
General features	Automatic channel selection (ACS)
General features	External coexistence (software interface)

Table 6 – continued from prev

Features	Sub features
General features	Independent reset (in-band)1
General features	Network co-processor (NCP) mode2
General features	Vendor specific IE (custom IE)
General features	Hidden SSID (broadcast SSID disabled)
General features	MAC address filter
General features	Multiple external STA support

Parent topic: Wi-Fi radio

[1] Feature not enabled by default in the SDK. Refer to *Feature enable and memory impact* for the macro to enable the feature and the impact on the memory. [2] Read more about NCP feature in *References*.

AP-STA mode

Features	Sub features	88W8	IW41	IW611/IV	RW610/R\	IW61	AW611
Simultaneous AP-STA operation (same channel)	AP-STA functionality	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
SAD	Software antenna diversity1	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y

Parent topic: Wi-Fi radio

[1] Feature not enabled by default in the SDK. Refer to *Feature enable and memory impact* for the macro to enable the feature and the impact on the memory when enabling the feature.

Parent topic:*Features*

Wi-Fi Generic features

Features	Sub features	88W898	IW41(	IW611/IW(	RW610/RW(	IW61(	AW611
Generi(	Firmware download (parallel)1	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Generi(	Secure boot	N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y
Generi(	Kconfig memory optimizer3	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Generi(	Firmware Compression2	N	Y	N	N	N	N
Generi(	u-AP intra-BSS	Y	N	Y	Y	Y	Y
Generi(	Net Monitor Mode	N	N	N	Y	Y	N
Generi(	Net Monitor Mode with packet transmission	N	N	N	Y	Y	N
Generi(	In-Channel Net Monitor mode	N	N	N	N	N	N

Parent topic: Wi-Fi radio

[1] Feature not enabled by default in the SDK. Refer to *Feature enable and memory impact* for the macro to enable the feature and the impact on the memory when enabling the feature. [2] The feature is used to compress the Wi-Fi Bluetooth firmware and optimize the flashing of the host [3] Refer to *10*.

Wi-Fi direct/P2P

Features	Sub features	88W898	IW416	IW611/IW6	RW610/RW6	IW610	AW6113
P2P basic functionality1	P2P Auto GO	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
P2P basic functionality1	P2P GO	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
P2P basic functionality1	P2P GC	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
P2P basic functionality1	P2P Persistent Group	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
P2P basic functionality1	P2P Invitation	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
P2P basic functionality1	P2P Device Discovery	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
P2P basic functionality1	P2P Provision Discovery	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y

Parent topic: Wi-Fi radio

[1] Feature not enabled by default in the SDK. Refer to *Feature enable and memory impact* for the macro to enable the feature and the impact on the memory when enabling the feature. [2] This is an experimental software release for this feature for IW416. [3] Contact your support representative to use this feature for.

Bluetooth radio

Bluetooth classic

Feature	Sub feature	88W8	IW4'	IW611/	RW610/	IW6'	AW611
General features	Bluetooth Class 1.5 and Class 2 support	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
General features	Scatternet support	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
General features	Maximum of seven simultaneous ACL connections – Central links	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
General features	Automatic packet type selection	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
General features	Bluetooth - 2.1 to 5.0 specification support	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
General features	Low power sniff	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
General features	Deep sleep using out-of-band	Y	Y	N	N	N	N
General features	Wake on Bluetooth (SoC to host)	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
General features	Independent reset (in-band)1	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y
General features	Independent reset (out-band)1	Y	Y	N	N	N	N
General features	Firmware download (parallel)1	Y	Y	N	N	N	N
General features	RF test mode	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Bluetooth packet type supported	ACL (DM1, DH1, DM3, DH3, DM5, DH5, 2-DH1, 2-DH3, 2-DH5, 3-DH1, 3-DH3, 3-DH5)	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Bluetooth packet type supported	SCO (HV1, HV3)	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Bluetooth packet type supported	eSCO (EV3, EV4, EV5, 2EV3, 3EV3, 2EV5, 3EV5)	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Bluetooth profiles supported	A2DP source/sink	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Bluetooth profiles supported	AVRCP target/controller	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Bluetooth profiles supported	HFP Dev/AG	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Bluetooth profiles supported	OPP server/client	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Bluetooth profiles supported	SPP server/client	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Bluetooth profiles supported	HID target/device	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Bluetooth audio features	PCM NBS central/peripheral	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Bluetooth audio features	PCM WBS central/peripheral	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y

Parent topic: Bluetooth radio

[1] Experimental feature intended for evaluation/early development only and not production. Incomplete mandatory certification.

Bluetooth LE

Features	Sub features
Generic features	Maximum 16 Bluetooth LE connections (central role)
Generic features	Deep sleep using out-of-band
Generic features	Wake on Bluetooth LE (SoC to Host)
Generic features	RF Test mode
Bluetooth profile support	Bluetooth LE GATT
Bluetooth profile support	Bluetooth LE HID over GATT
Bluetooth profile support	Bluetooth LE GAP
Bluetooth LE 4.0 support	Low Energy physical layer
Bluetooth LE 4.0 support	Low Energy link layer
Bluetooth LE 4.0 support	Enhancements to HCI for Low Energy
Bluetooth LE 4.0 support	Low energy direct test mode
Bluetooth 4.1 support	Low duty cycle directed advertising
Bluetooth 4.1 support	Bluetooth LE dual mode topology
Bluetooth 4.1 support	Bluetooth LE privacy v1.1
Bluetooth 4.1 support	Bluetooth LE link layer topology
Bluetooth 4.2 support	Bluetooth LE secure connection
Bluetooth 4.2 support	Bluetooth LE link layer privacy v1.2
Bluetooth 4.2 support	Bluetooth LE data length extension
Bluetooth 4.2 support	Link layer extended scanner filter policies
Bluetooth 5.0 support	Bluetooth LE 2 Mbps support
Bluetooth 5.0 support	High duty cycle directed advertising
Bluetooth 5.0 support	Low Energy advertising extension
Bluetooth 5.0 support	Low Energy long range
Bluetooth 5.0 support	Low Energy periodic advertisement
Bluetooth 5.2 support	Low Energy power control
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Isochronous channel
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Broadcast LE Audio BIS source
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Broadcast LE Audio BIS sink
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Broadcast LE Audio BIG Validation
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Broadcast LE Audio Phy: 1M/2M/ coded
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Broadcast LE Audio framed mode
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Broadcast LE Audio unframed mode
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Broadcast LE Audio sequential packing
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Broadcast LE Audio: Mono and Stereo
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Broadcast LE Audio BIS encrypted audio
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Broadcast LE Audio BIS unencrypted audio
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio CIS source
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio CIS sink
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio CIG validation
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio CIS synchronization
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio Phy: 1M/2M/ coded
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio framed mode
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio unframed mode
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio sequential packing
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio: mono and stereo
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio CIS encrypted audio
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio CIS unencrypted audio
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio TX/RX and bidirectional traffic

Table 7 – continued from prev

Features	Sub features
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	ISO interval for LE Audio: 7.5ms 10ms 20ms 30ms
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Sampling frequency for LE Audio: 8kHz 16kHz 24kHz, 32kH
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	LE Audio Auracast use cases: Auracast streaming 2 BISes
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	LE Audio Unicast use cases: Unicast streaming 2 CISes
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	LE Audio Unicast Use cases: Unicast streaming 4 CISes
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	A2DP + Auracast/Unicast Bridge use cases – CIS/BIS
BCA TDM Coexistence mode (shared antenna)	STA + Bluetooth coexistence
BCA TDM Coexistence mode (shared antenna)	STA + Bluetooth LE coexistence
BCA TDM Coexistence mode (shared antenna)	STA + Bluetooth + Bluetooth LE coexistence
BCA TDM Coexistence mode (shared antenna)	AP + Bluetooth coexistence
BCA TDM Coexistence mode (shared antenna)	AP + Bluetooth LE coexistence
BCA TDM Coexistence mode (shared antenna)	AP + Bluetooth + Bluetooth LE coexistence
BCA TDM coexistence mode (separate antenna)	STA + Bluetooth coexistence
BCA TDM coexistence mode (separate antenna)	STA + Bluetooth LE coexistence
BCA TDM coexistence mode (separate antenna)	STA + Bluetooth + Bluetooth LE coexistence
BCA TDM coexistence mode (separate antenna)	AP + Bluetooth coexistence
BCA TDM coexistence mode (separate antenna)	AP + Bluetooth LE coexistence
BCA TDM coexistence mode (separate antenna)	AP + Bluetooth + Bluetooth LE coexistence

Note: Details of the tested Bluetooth LE Audio use cases:

- Number of streams:
  - 1-CIG | upto 4-CIS with 1 LE ACL (for 4-CIS: execute only mono UCs, SDU Int: 10ms)
  - 1-CIG | upto 4-CIS with 4 separate LE ACL (for 4-CIS: SDU Size= Max 100 Oct, PHY=2M, RTN=1, SDU Int: 10ms only) (execute only mono UCs for 4-CIS)
  - 1-BIG | upto 4-BIS (for 4-BIS: execute only mono UCs, SDU Int: 10ms only)
- PHY: 2M and 1M
- Audio mode: mono (for 1 to 4 streams) and stereo (for 1 stream)
- Packing: sequential and interleaved
- Bit rate: maximum 96kbps
  - For 1-CIG with upto 3-CIS: maximum bit rate 96kbps
  - For 1-CIG with 4-CIS: maximum bit rate 80kbps
  - For 1-BIG with 4-BIS: maximum bit rate 80kbps
  - For 2-CIG cases: maximum bit rate 80kbps
- Mode: unframed mode
- 48_5 and 48_6 mono and stereo configurations are not supported.

Details of the tested Bluetooth coexistence (Bluetooth + Bluetooth LE Audio) use cases:

- Bluetooth + Bluetooth LE Audio
- A2DP + Bluetooth LE Audio bridging support
- A2DP sink link (central) -> LEA 2-CIS (SDU Int: 10ms only | A2DP only with SBC Codec | PHY: 2M)

Parent topic: Bluetooth radio

[1] Experimental feature intended for evaluation/early development only and not production. Incomplete mandatory certification.

[2] LE audio feature is supported for standalone scenarios only and not for BR/EDR and Wi-Fi co-existence scenarios such as LE audio + BR/EDR link or LE audio + Wi-Fi link. From the perspective

of NXP Edgefast Bluetooth host stack, LE audio feature can be disabled by the CONFIG_BT_AUDIO macro without impact on any other features. LE audio feature can be tested by the user, using their own supported host stack.

Parent topic:*Features*

802.15.4 radio

Features	Sub features	IW612	IW610	RW612
General features	Spinel over SPI	Y	N	N
General features	OpenThread RCP Mode implementing Thread1.3	Y	N	N
General features	802.15.4-2015 MAC/PHY as required by Thread 1.3	Y	Y	Y
General features	OpenThread Border Router (OTBR) v1.1	Y	Y	Y
General features	Direct/indirect transmission with/without ACK	Y	Y	Y
General features	802.15.4 CSL parent feature implementation	Y	Y	Y
General features	Enhanced Frame Pending	Y	Y	Y
General features	Enhanced keep alive	Y	Y	Y
General features	Router	Y	Y	Y
General features	Leader	Y	Y	Y
General features	Router Eligible End Device (REED)	Y	Y	Y
General features	End Device (FED, MED)	Y	Y	Y
Zigbee features	Coordinator	N	N	Y
Zigbee features	Router	N	N	Y
Zigbee features	End Device (RX ON)	N	N	Y
Zigbee features	R23	N	N	Y
Zigbee features	OTA Client	N	N	Y
Zigbee features	OTA server	N	N	Y
Matter features	Matter over Wi-Fi	Y	N	N
Matter features	Matter over Thread	Y	N	Y

Parent topic:*Features*

Coexistence

Wi-Fi and Bluetooth/802.15.4 coexistence

Features	Sub features	IW6´	IW6´	RW612
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	STA + Bluetooth	Y	N	N
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	Mobile AP + Bluetooth	Y	N	N
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	Bluetooth LE + Wi-Fi	Y	Y	Y
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	Bluetooth + Bluetooth LE + Wi-Fi	Y	N	N
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	OpenThread + Bluetooth	Y	N	N
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	OpenThread + Bluetooth LE2	Y	Y	Y
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	OpenThread + Bluetooth + Bluetooth LE	Y	N	N
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	OpenThread + Wi-Fi	Y	Y	Y
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	Bluetooth + OpenThread + Wi-Fi	Y	N	N
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	Bluetooth LE + OpenThread + Wi-Fi	Y	Y	Y
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	Bluetooth + Bluetooth LE + OpenThread + Wi-Fi	Y	N	N
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	Single antenna configuration	Y	Y	Y
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	External Coexistence PTA	N	Y	Y

Parent topic: Coexistence

[1] Experimental feature intended for evaluation/early development only and not production. Incomplete mandatory certification.

[2] The narrow-band radio can be configured to support Bluetooth LE, 802.15.4, and to time-slice between Bluetooth LE and 802.15.4.

Parent topic:*Features*

Feature enable and memory impact

Features	Macros to enable the feature	Memory impact
CSI	CONFIG_CSI	Flash - 60K, RAM - 4K
AMI	CONFIG_CSI_AMI3	Flash - 2032K, RAM - 772K
DPP	CONFIG_WPA_SUPP_DPP	Flash - 240K, RAM - 12K
Independent reset	CONFIG_WIFI_IND_DNLDCONFIG_WIFI_IND_RESET	Minimal
Parallel firmware download Wi-Fi	CONFIG_WIFI_IND_DNLD	Minimal
Parallel firmware download Bluetooth	CONFIG_BT_IND_DNLD	Minimal
WPA3 enterprise	CONFIG_WPA_SUPP_CRYPTO_ENTERPRISE [Macros specific to EAP-methods included] CONFIG_EAP_TLS CONFIG_EAP_PEAP CONFIG_EAP_TTLS CONFIG_EAP_FAST CONFIG_EAP_SIM CONFIG_EAP_AKA CONFIG_EAP_AKA_PRIME	Flash - 165K, RAM - 18K
WPA2 enterprise	CONFIG_WPA_SUPP_CRYPTO_ENTERPRISE [Macros specific to EAP-methods included] CONFIG_EAP_TLS CONFIG_EAP_PEAP CONFIG_EAP_TTLS CONFIG_EAP_FAST CONFIG_EAP_SIM CONFIG_EAP_AKA CONFIG_EAP_AKA_PRIME	Flash - 165K, RAM - 18K
Host sleep	CONFIG_HOST_SLEEP	Minimal
WMM	CONFIG_WMM1	Flash - 10K, RAM - 57K
802.11mc	CONFIG_11MC CONFIG_CSI CONFIG_WLS_CSI_PROC2 CONFIG_11AZ	Flash: 52.78KB, RAM : 121.1KB
802.11az	CONFIG_11MC CONFIG_CSI[2] CONFIG_WLS_CSI_PROC2 CONFIG_11AZ	Flash: 52.78KB, RAM : 121.1KB
Non-blocking firmware download mechanism	CONFIG_FW_DNLD_ASYNC	—
Antenna diversity	CONFIG_WLAN_CALDATA_2ANT_DIVERSITY	-
P2P	CONFIG_WPA_SUPP_P2P	-

Note:

- For Wi-Fi, the macros are set with the value “**0**” by default in the file wifi_config_default.h

located in <SDK_PATH>/middleware/wifi_nxp/incl/ directory.

To enable the features, set the value of the macros to "***1****" in the file wifi_config.h located in*<SDK_Wi-Fi_Example_PATH>/ *directory****.***

- Bluetooth

  To enable the features, set the value of the macros to "**1**" in the file app_bluetooth_config.h located in <SDK_Bluetooth_Example_PATH>/ directory.

[1] The macro is not used for IW416.

[2] Prerequisite macros for 802.11mc and 802.11az features

[3] Enable PRINTF_FLOAT_ENABLE only for MCUXpresso IDE and specifically for the RT1060-EVKC and RT1170-EVKB platforms

- Go to project properties > C/C++ Build > Settings > Preprocessor.
- Add PRINTF_FLOAT_ENABLE=1

88W8987 release notes

Package information

- SDK version: 25.12.00-pvw1

Parent topic:*88W8987 release notes*

Version information

- Wireless SoC: 88W8987
- Wi-Fi and Bluetooth/Bluetooth LE firmware version: 16.92.21.p153.6
  - 16 - Major revision
  - 92 - Feature pack
  - 21 - Release version
  - p153.6 - Patch number

Parent topic:*88W8987 release notes*

Host platform

- All i.MX RT platforms running FreeRTOS.
- Host interfaces
  - Wi-Fi over SDIO (SDIO 2.0 support, SDIO clock frequency: 50 MHz)
  - Bluetooth/Bluetooth LE over UART
- Test tools
  - iPerf (version 2.1.9)

Parent topic:*88W8987 release notes*

Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification The Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification is obtained with the following combinations.

WFA certifications

- STA | 802.11n
- STA | 802.11ac
- STA | PMF
- STA | FFD
- STA | SVD
- STA | WPA3 SAE (R3)
- STA | QTT

Refer to *6*.

Note: This release supports STAUT only certifications.

Parent topic: Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification

Bluetooth controller certification

QDID: refer to *4*.

Parent topic: Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification

Parent topic:*88W8987 release notes*

Wi-Fi throughput

Throughput test setup

- Environment: Shield Room - Over the Air
- External Access Point: ASUS AX88U
- DUT: W8987 Murata (Module: **1ZM M.2**) with EVK-MIMXRT1060 EVKC platform
- DUT Power Source: External power supply
- External Client: Apple MacBook Air
- Channel: 6 | 36
- Wi-Fi application: wifi_wpa_supplicant
- Compiler used to build application: armgcc
- Compiler Version: gcc-arm-none-eabi-13.2
- iPerf commands used in test:

TCP TX

```
iperf -c <remote_ip> -t 60
```

TCP RX

```
iperf -s
```

UDP TX

```
iperf -c <remote_ip> -t 60 -u -B <local_ip> -b 120
```

Note: The default rate is 100 Mbps.

UDP RX

```
iperf -s -u -B <local_ip>
```

Note: Read more about the throughput test setup and topology in *2*.

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

STA throughput External APs: ASUS AX88U

STA mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	48	46	60	56
WPA2-AES	48	47	60	55
WPA3-SAE	45	46	60	56

STA mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	62	83	121	124
WPA2-AES	61	82	120	126
WPA3-SAE	60	82	120	126

STA mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	43	52	60	64
WPA2-AES	43	52	61	64
WPA3-SAE	43	52	60	65

STA mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	64	87	126	125
WPA2-AES	63	85	125	120
WPA3-SAE	63	80	125	123

STA mode throughput - AC Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz (VHT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	48	60	73	78
WPA2-AES	47	60	73	77
WPA3-SAE	47	60	73	77

STA mode throughput - AC Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz (VHT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	68	96	161	157
WPA2-AES	69	92	160	155
WPA3-SAE	70	94	160	155

STA mode throughput - AC Mode | 5 GHz Band | 80 MHz (VHT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	81	98	125	228
WPA2-AES	80	96	125	203
WPA3-SAE	80	96	125	203

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

Mobile AP throughput External client: Apple Macbook Air

Mobile AP Mode Throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	50	50	57	60
WPA2-AES	49	50	57	60
WPA3-SAE	49	49	57	60

Mobile AP Mode Throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	66	81	107	121
WPA2-AES	65	80	107	120
WPA3-SAE	65	80	108	120

Mobile AP Mode Throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	44	52	60	61
WPA2-AES	44	51	60	61
WPA3-SAE	44	51	60	61

Mobile AP Mode Throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	70	89	126	103
WPA2-AES	70	87	124	102
WPA3-SAE	70	88	125	103

Mobile AP Mode Throughput - AC Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	49	60	73	76
WPA2-AES	48	59	73	76
WPA3-SAE	48	60	73	76

Mobile AP Mode Throughput - AC Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	77	106	161	102
WPA2-AES	77	104	160	102
WPA3-SAE	77	104	160	111

Mobile AP Mode Throughput - AC Mode | 5 GHz Band | 80 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	103	121	125	217
WPA2-AES	97	117	125	197
WPA3-SAE	98	115	125	173

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

Parent topic:*88W8987 release notes*

EU conformance tests

- EU Adaptivity test - EN 300 328 v2.1.1 (for 2.4 GHz)
- EU Adaptivity test - EN 301 893 v2.1.1 (for 5 GHz)

Parent topic:*88W8987 release notes*

Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p64.1 to 16.91.21.p82

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	WPA3-R3 enabled APUT beacons does not have RSNXE when configured in H2E mode-Associated event is received even when connecting using wrong password WFA APUT Low iperf TCP/UDP Tx throughput with Realtek station

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p82 to 16.91.21.p91.6

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	In wrong password scenario, After updating new password the phone is not able to connect with DUTAP

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p91.6 to 16.91.21.p124

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Cloud keep alive packets not seen after DUT enters host sleep. DUT is sending QOS null packets even in host sleep

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p124 to 16.91.21.p133

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Samsung S24 Ultra and Google Pixel 7 mobiles having Android 14 are not able connect to the DUTAP with WPA3 SAE security.

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p133 to 16.91.21.p142.5

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Fails to encrypt and decrypt data with ccmp 128 and 256 using CLI crypto commands.

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p142.5 to 16.91.21.p149.2

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	DUTSTA does not associate to hidden SSID beaconing in DFS channel.

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p149.2 to 16.92.21.p151.7

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Getting low TCP/UDP TP in DUT-AP 11ac-vht80 mode after hard-reset or wlan-reset.

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p149.2 to 16.92.21.p151.7

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Getting low TCP/UDP TP in DUT-AP 11ac-vht80 mode after hard-reset or wlan-reset.

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.92.21.p151.7 to 16.92.21.p153.5

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Added P2P Persistance and P2P Invitation

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.92.21.p153.5 to 16.92.21.p153.6

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Enabled mbedtls 3.x

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Parent topic:*88W8987 release notes*

Known issues

Component	Description
Coex	The coexistence sample applications included in the SDK are currently not working as expected.

Parent topic:*88W8987 release notes*

IW416 release notes

Package information

- SDK version: 25.12.00-pvw1

Parent topic:*IW416 release notes*

Version information

- Wireless SoC: IW416
- Wi-Fi and Bluetooth/Bluetooth LE firmware version: 16.92.21.p153.6
  - 16 - Major revision

  - 92 - Feature pack
  - 21 - Release version
  - p153.6 - Patch number

Parent topic:*IW416 release notes*

Host platform

- All i.MX RT platforms running FreeRTOS.
- Host interfaces
  - Wi-Fi over SDIO (SDIO 2.0 Support, SDIO clock frequency: 50 MHz)
  - Bluetooth/Bluetooth LE over UART
- Test tools
  - iPerf (version 2.1.9)

Parent topic:*IW416 release notes*

Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification The Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification is obtained with the following combinations.

WFA certifications

- STA | 802.11n
- STA | PMF
- STA | FFD
- STA | SVD
- STA | WPA3 SAE (R3)
- STA | QTT

Refer to *6*.

Note: This release supports STAUT only certifications.

Parent topic: Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification

Bluetooth controller certification QDID: refer to *4*.

Note: QDID upgrade to Bluetooth Core Specification Version 5.4 is in progress.

Parent topic: Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification

Parent topic:*IW416 release notes*

Wi-Fi throughput

Throughput test setup

- Environment: Shield Room - Over the Air
- Access Point: Asus AX88u
- DUT: IW416 Murata (Module: 1XK M.2) with EVK-MIMXRT1060 EVKC platform
- DUT Power Source: External power supply
- Client: Apple MacBook Air
- Channel: 6 | 36
- Wi-Fi application: wifi_wpa_supplicant
- Compiler used to build application: armgcc
- Compiler Version: gcc-arm-none-eabi-13.2
- iPerf commands used in test:

TCP TX

```
iperf -c <remote_ip> -t 60
```

TCP RX

```
iperf -s
```

UDP TX

```
iperf -c <remote_ip> -t 60 -u -B <local_ip> -b 120
```

Note: The default rate is 100 Mbps.

UDP RX

```
iperf -s -u -B <local_ip>
```

Note: Read more about the throughput test setup and topology in *2*.

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

STA throughput External AP: Asus AX88u

STA mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	40	45	61	55
WPA2-AES	39	43	61	57
WPA3-SAE	39	43	61	57

STA mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	56	59	117	103
WPA2-AES	57	58	115	102
WPA3-SAE	57	56	116	100

STA mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	40	45	61	58
WPA2-AES	40	43	61	57
WPA3-SAE	40	44	61	57

STA mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	62	74	118	134
WPA2-AES	58	61	101	118
WPA3-SAE	59	61	103	112

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

Mobile AP throughput External client: Apple MacBook Air

Mobile AP mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	40	43	59	57
WPA2-AES	40	42	59	57
WPA3-SAE	39	42	59	57

Mobile AP mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	62	74	121	118
WPA2-AES	60	64	116	91
WPA3-SAE	60	65	116	91

Mobile AP mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	50	43	55	62
WPA2-AES	42	45	53	62
WPA3-SAE	42	62	53	62

Mobile AP mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	66	76	126	103
WPA2-AES	63	68	121	101
WPA3-SAE	63	67	121	101

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

Parent topic:*IW416 release notes*

EU conformance tests

- EU Adaptivity test - EN 300 328 v2.1.1 (for 2.4 GHz)
- EU Adaptivity test - EN 301 893 v2.1.1 (for 5 GHz)

Parent topic:*IW416 release notes*

Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p64.1 to 16.91.21.p82

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	WPA3-R3 enabled APUT beacons does not have RSNXE when configured in H2E mode

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p82 to 16.91.21.p91.6

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	NA

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p91.6 to 16.91.21.p124

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Cloud keep alive packets not seen after DUT enters host sleep. DUT is sending QOS null packets even in host sleep

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p124 to 16.91.21.p133

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	NA

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p133 to 16.91.21.p133.2

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	DUT STA getting rebooted after 15~20 iterations of 11R-Command based roaming0xa4 command timeout after several hours of stress test

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p133.2 to 16.91.21.p142.5

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	DUT fails to reconnect after the configured auto-reconnect time interval.
Coex	During HFP call, TX side noise is observed with coex CLI

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p142.5 to 16.91.21.p149.4

Component	Description
-	NA

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p149.4 to 16.92.21.p151.7

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Samsung S24 Ultra and Google Pixel 7 mobiles having Android 14 are not able connect to the DUTAP with WPA3 SAE security.

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.92.21.p151.7 to 16.92.21.p153.5

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	The DUT encounters a command response timeout during the execution of the wlan-info command following UDP traffic tests.
Wi-Fi	Random hang issue seen when using wlan-p2p-find/stop in succession

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.92.21.p153.5 to 16.92.21.p153.6

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Enabled mbedtls 3.x

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Parent topic:*IW416 release notes*

Known issues

Component	Description
Coex	Wi-Fi connection in 2.4GHz is not stable, observed deauthentication within 10sec. The coexistence sample applications included in the SDK are currently not working as expected.

Parent topic:*IW416 release notes*

IW611/IW612 release notes **Note:** The IW611/IW612 support is enabled in i.MX RT1170 EVKB and i.MX RT1060 EVKC.

Package information

- SDK version: 25.12.00-pvw1

Parent topic:*IW611/IW612 release notes*

Version information

- Wireless SoC: IW611/IW612
- Wi-Fi and Bluetooth/Bluetooth LE firmware version: 18.99.3.p27.1
  - 18 - Major revision
  - 99 - Feature pack
  - 3 - Release version
  - p27.1 - Patch number

Parent topic:*IW611/IW612 release notes*

Host platform

- i.MX RT1170 EVKB and i.MX RT1060 EVKC Platforms running FreeRTOS
- Host interfaces
  - Wi-Fi over SDIO (SDIO 2.0 support, SDIO clock frequency: 50 MHz)
  - Bluetooth/Bluetooth LE over UART
  - 802.15.4 over SPI (IW612 only)
- Test tools
  - iPerf (version 2.1.9)

Parent topic:*IW611/IW612 release notes*

Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification The Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification is obtained with the following combinations.

WFA certifications

- STA | 802.11n
- STA | PMF
- STA | FFD
- STA | SVD
- STA | WPA3 SAE (R3)
- STA | 802.11ac
- STA | 802.11ax
- STA | QTT

Refer to *6*.

Note: This release supports STAUT only certifications.

Parent topic: Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification

Bluetooth controller certification

QDID: refer to *4*.

Note: QDID upgrade to Bluetooth Core Specification Version 5.4 is in progress.

Parent topic: Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification

Parent topic:*IW611/IW612 release notes*

Wi-Fi throughput

Throughput test setup

- Environment: Shield Room - Over the Air
- Access Point: Asus AX88u
- DUT: IW612 Murata (Module: 2EL M.2) with EVK-MIMXRT1060 EVKC platform
- DUT Power Source: External power supply
- Client: Apple MacBook Air
- Channel: 6 | 36
- Wi-Fi application: wifi_wpa_supplicant
- Compiler used to build application: armgcc
- Compiler Version gcc-arm-none-eabi-13.2
- iPerf commands used in test:

TCP TX

```
iperf -c <remote_ip> -t 60
```

TCP RX

```
iperf -s
```

UDP TX

```
iperf -c <remote_ip> -t 60 -u -B <local_ip> -b 120
```

Note: The default rate is 100 Mbps.

UDP RX

```
iperf -s -u -B <local_ip>
```

Note: Read more about the throughput test setup and topology in *2*

The throughput numbers are captured with default configurations using *wifi_wpa_supplicant* sample application.

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

iPerf host configuration and impact on throughput {#iperf_host_configuration_and_impact_on_throughpu

To get the highest throughput, the throughput values shown in STA throughput and Mobile AP throughput are measured with the maximum values of the default host configuration macros. STA and AP throughput captured with the minimum values of the host configuration macros shows the throughput numbers obtained when using the minimum values of the host configuration macros. The macro values are defined in *lwipopts.h* file.

The table below lists the minimum and maximum values of the host configuration macros.

Values of the host configuration macros

Parameter	Maximum value	Minimum value
TCPIP_MBOX_SIZE	96	32
DEFAULT_RAW_RECVMBOX_SIZE	32	12
DEFAULT_UDP_RECVMBOX_SIZE	64	12
DEFAULT_TCP_RECVMBOX_SIZE	64	12
TCP_MSS	1460	536
TCP_SND_BUF	24 * TCP_MSS	2 * TCP_MSS
MEM_SIZE	319160	41,080
TCP_WND	15 * TCP_MSS	10 * TCP_MSS
MEMP_NUM_PBUF	20	10
MEMP_NUM_TCP_SEG	96	12
MEMP_NUM_TCPIP_MSG_INPKT	80	16
MEMP_NUM_TCPIP_MSG_API	80	8
MEMP_NUM_NETBUF	32	16

STA and AP throughput captured with the minimum values of the host configuration macros {#sta_and_ap_throughput_captured_with_the_minimum_values_of_the_host_configuration_macr

STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 80 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open Security	7	18	111	124
WPA2-AES	7	18	110	124
WPA3-SAE	6	18	110	124

Mobile AP mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 80 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open Security	2	19	93	127
WPA2-AES	2	19	105	126
WPA3-SAE	2	19	104	132

Parent topic:iPerf host configuration and impact on throughput

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

STA throughput External AP: Asus AX88u

STA mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	45	48	61	61
WPA2-AES	44	47	60	60
WPA3-SAE	46	49	62	62

STA mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	66	82	128	131
WPA2-AES	69	82	126	128
WPA3-SAE	65	80	126	129

STA mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	39	51	63	65
WPA2-AES	39	50	63	64
WPA3-SAE	44	51	63	64

STA mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	64	82	125	133
WPA2-AES	63	83	124	132
WPA3-SAE	64	84	124	132

STA mode throughput - VHT Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	48	54	71	72
WPA2-AES	48	54	71	71
WPA3-SAE	45	55	72	70

STA mode throughput - VHT Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 40 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	74	92	162	170
WPA2-AES	74	90	160	169
WPA3-SAE	71	91	161	171

STA mode throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	43	57	76	78
WPA2-AES	42	57	75	77
WPA3-SAE	43	57	75	77

STA mode throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	70	90	156	177
WPA2-AES	70	91	154	175
WPA3-SAE	70	90	154	175

STA mode throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 80 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	86	94	218	196
WPA2-AES	84	96	219	195
WPA3-SAE	84	95	219	196

STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	62	62	112	114
WPA2-AES	62	63	110	112
WPA3-SAE	56	63	107	114

STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 40 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	73	94	193	192
WPA2-AES	76	93	188	191
WPA3-SAE	78	94	190	189

STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	54	57	86	125
WPA2-AES	53	58	85	124
WPA3-SAE	53	66	118	123

STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	77	95	163	198
WPA2-AES	76	95	160	198
WPA3-SAE	75	94	172	197

STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 80 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	88	93	219	197
WPA2-AES	88	95	221	196
WPA3-SAE	85	94	217	195

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

Mobile AP throughput External client: Apple MacBook Air

Mobile AP mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	40	50	58	62
WPA2-AES	40	51	62	62
WPA3-SAE	40	51	62	62

Mobile AP mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	64	87	120	131
WPA2-AES	63	87	119	130
WPA3-SAE	63	86	118	130

Mobile AP mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	40	52	63	62
WPA2-AES	41	51	62	57
WPA3-SAE	33	51	60	56

Mobile AP mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	64	96	120	139
WPA2-AES	71	95	120	132
WPA3-SAE	67	94	121	133

Mobile AP mode throughput - VHT Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	44	60	67	62
WPA2-AES	43	59	67	74
WPA3-SAE	44	59	73	63

Mobile AP mode throughput - VHT Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	70	96	124	151
WPA2-AES	70	97	128	165
WPA3-SAE	72	95	124	164

Mobile AP mode throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	45	60	69	71
WPA2-AES	43	59	74	75
WPA3-SAE	44	59	68	64

Mobile AP mode throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	70	99	140	137
WPA2-AES	68	98	145	175
WPA3-SAE	72	98	138	157

Mobile AP mode throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 80 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	82	122	186	182
WPA2-AES	82	121	197	179
WPA3-SAE	63	119	174	165

Mobile AP mode throughput - HE Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	47	55	64	78
WPA2-AES	47	54	70	86
WPA3-SAE	45	54	60	53

Mobile AP mode throughput - HE Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	66	102	123	178
WPA2-AES	75	100	94	179
WPA3-SAE	75	100	99	127

Mobile AP mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	53	61	60	103
WPA2-AES	47	54	77	92
WPA3-SAE	23	28	74	45

Mobile AP mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	79	105	140	195
WPA2-AES	78	107	138	174
WPA3-SAE	78	104	129	146

Mobile AP mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 80 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	89	123	210	188
WPA2-AES	88	122	194	179
WPA3-SAE	80	122	187	188

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

Parent topic:*IW611/IW612 release notes*

EU conformance tests

- EU Adaptivity test - EN 300 328 v2.1.1 (for 2.4 GHz)
- EU Adaptivity test - EN 301 893 v2.1.1 (for 5 GHz)

Parent topic:*IW611/IW612 release notes*

Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.2.p7.19

Component	Description
-	NA

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.2.p7.19 to 18.99.2.p49.9

Component	Description
-	NA

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.2.p49.9 to 18.99.2.p155

Com-po-nent	Description
Blue-tooth	Audio lost occurs due to periodic adv sync lost, during 2 BIS 44.1kHz unencrypted streams with 1M PHY configuration.BIS sync loss may occur in long audio streaming sessions.

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.2.p155 to 18.99.2.p66.30

Com po-nent	Description
Wi-Fi	802.11R Fast BSS roaming works only with hostapd and does not work with standard APs (supporting 11R)
Blue tootl	DUT is not able to sustain a connection with the remote device that does extended advertisement with coded PHY configuration. When 2 CIS streams are active, after the first device disconnects followed by the second device disconnecting, the second peripheral device hangs.Audio Play/Pause does not work in BIS case.

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.2.p66.30 to 18.99.3.p10.5

Com po-nent	Description
Wi-Fi	STAUT not sending Neighbor Advertisement packet after receiving Neighbor Solicitation packet from Ex-AP.Antenna selection time exceeds configured evaluation time
Blue tootl	When DUT works as CIS source and CIS Offset is 612us, high packet drops observed which affects the audio streaming.For BIS Source Use Cases, Periodic Interval and ISO Interval should be multiple of each other value.In 1-CIS and 2-CIS, Continuous Audio Glitches are observed with 96 kbps bit rate.

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.3.p10.5 to 18.99.3.p17.9

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	After performing independent reset (out-of-band mode), the STAUT fails to connect to the external AP via wlan-connect command, observed command timeout 0x107 error.
Bluetootl	Audio glitches observed with Google Pixel 7 Pro streaming audio after CIS is established with DUT.During Call Gateway (CG) / Call Terminal (CT) Use Case, the firmware periodically sends NULL PDU, which results in frequent Audio Glitch on both CG and CT sides.Heavy audio glitches observed with CIS SRC Google Pixel 7 ProContinuous audio glitches observed in 1 CIS and 2 CIS for 48_3 and 48_4 config.

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.3.p17.9 to 18.99.3.p21.154

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	STAUT fail to ping AP backend machine when connected with DFS channel and DUTSTA went in bad state.
Bluetooth	CIS Sink frequently fails to acknowledge CIS Source TX PDU.

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.3.p21.154 to 18.99.3.p23.16

Component	Description
-	NA

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.3.p23.16 to 18.99.3.p25.11

Component	Description
Bluetooth	Packet lost observed in CIS case, which causes audio noise.

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.3.p25.11 to 18.99.3.p26.10

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	During legacy roaming when the “Link Lost” observed the DUTSTA fails to roam
Wi-Fi	During the automated testing of the channel performance, a system hang can occur, with the error message “.sdio_drv_write failed”.

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.3.p26.10 to 18.99.3.p27.1

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Enabled mbedtls 3.x

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Parent topic:*IW611/IW612 release notes*

Known issues

Component	Description
Bluetool	Sequential Removal of CIS Handles as per current Controller implementation i.e CIS Disconnection sequence should be in sequence => CIS - 4,3,2,1While 4-CIS streaming, audio glitches observed on all CIS SINK with Samsung Galaxy budsWhile 4-CIS streaming, disconnection with connection timeout observed on first CIS SINK with Samsung Galaxy budsOnly two streams (CIS/BIS) with one channel is supported.
Coex	The coexistence sample applications included in the SDK are currently not working as expected.

Parent topic:*IW611/IW612 release notes*

RW610/RW612 release notes

Package information

- SDK version: 25.12.00-pvw1

Parent topic:*RW610/RW612 release notes*

Version information

- Wi-Fi firmware version: 18.99.6.p47
  - rw61x_sb_wifi_a2.bin for A2
  - 18 - Major revision
  - 99 - Feature pack
  - 6 - Release version
  - p47 - Patch number
- Bluetooth LE firmware version: 18.25.6.p47
  - rw61x_sb_ble_a2.bin for A2
  - 18 - Major revision
  - 25 - Feature pack
  - 6 - Release version
  - p47 - Patch number
- 802.15.4 and Bluetooth LE (up to core 4.1) firmware version: 18.34.6.p47
  - rw61x_sb_ble_15d4_combo_a2.bin for A2
  - 18 - Major revision

  - 34 - Feature pack
  - 6 - Release version
  - p47 - Patch number

Parent topic:*RW610/RW612 release notes*

Host platform

- RW610/RW612 platform running FreeRTOS
- Test tools
  - iPerf (version 2.1.9)

Parent topic:*RW610/RW612 release notes*

Wireless certification The Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification is obtained with the following combinations.

WFA certifications

- STA | 802.11n
- STA | PMF
- STA | FFD
- STA | SVD
- STA | WPA3 SAE (R3)
- STA | 802.11ac
- STA | 802.11ax
- STA | QTT

Refer to *1*.

Note: This release supports STAUT only certifications.

Parent topic: Wireless certification

Bluetooth LE controller certification QDID: Refer to *4*.

Parent topic: Wireless certification

Thread Thread group: refer to *7*.

Product Name: NXP RW612 Wireless MCU with Integrated Tri-Radio

Thread version: V1.3.0

CID #: 13A109

Parent topic: Wireless certification

Matter RW612 certification: refer to *8*.

Certificate ID: CSA23C36MAT41746-24

Device type: Root Node, Thermostat

Transport: Matter over Wi-Fi

RW610 certification: refer to *9*.

Certificate ID: CSA23C43MAT41753-50

Device type: Root Node, Thermostat

Transport: Matter over Wi-Fi and Matter over Thread

Parent topic: Wireless certification

Parent topic:*RW610/RW612 release notes*

Wi-Fi throughput

Throughput test setup

- Environment: Shield Room - Over the Air
- Access Point: Asus AX88u
- DUT: RW610/RW612
- External Client: Intel AX210
- Channel: 6 | 36
- Wi-Fi application: wifi_cli
- Compiler used to build application: armgcc
- Compiler version gcc-arm-none-eabi-13.2
- iPerf commands used in test:

TCP TX

```
iperf -c <remote_ip> -t 60
```

TCP RX

```
iperf -s
```

UDP TX

```
iperf -c <remote_ip> -t 60 -u -B <local_ip> -b 120
```

Note: The default rate is 100 Mbps.

UDP RX

```
iperf -s -u -B <local_ip>
```

Note: Read more about the throughput test setup and topology in *3*.

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

STA throughput External AP: Asus AX88u

STA mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	38	38	62	62
WPA2-AES	37	37	61	63
WPA3-SAE	37	37	60	61

STA mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	39	39	64	64
WPA2-AES	37	38	62	64
WPA3-SAE	39	38	62	64

STA mode throughput - VHT Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	41	41	75	74
WPA2-AES	41	41	73	74
WPA3-SAE	40	41	72	73

STA mode throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	42	42	76	76
WPA2-AES	42	41	75	75
WPA3-SAE	42	41	75	74

STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	44	45	97	99
WPA2-AES	43	44	96	98
WPA3-SAE	42	44	97	98

STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	47	47	100	103
WPA2-AES	45	46	100	101
WPA3-SAE	47	46	100	101

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

Mobile AP throughput External client: Apple MacBook Air

Mobile AP throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	39	39	62	62
WPA2-AES	39	39	61	61
WPA3-SAE	38	39	61	61

Mobile AP throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	40	40	63	63
WPA2-AES	39	39	62	61
WPA3-SAE	39	39	62	61

Mobile AP throughput - VHT Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	43	43	73	73
WPA2-AES	43	42	72	72
WPA3-SAE	43	42	73	72

Mobile AP throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	44	44	74	74
WPA2-AES	43	43	74	74
WPA3-SAE	43	43	74	74

Mobile AP throughput - HE Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	48	48	95	96
WPA2-AES	47	47	98	95
WPA3-SAE	47	47	97	95

Mobile AP throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	49	49	96	97
WPA2-AES	48	48	101	97
WPA3-SAE	48	48	101	97

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

Parent topic:*RW610/RW612 release notes*

Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.6.p34 to 18.99.6.p40

Component	Description
Zigbee	Zigbee Coordinator and Router are disconnected during BLE connection pairing and bonding with a mobile app for the first time.

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.6.p40 to 18.99.6.p46

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Fails to establish a persistent connection when the device attempts to reinvoke the second stored Persistent Group
Bluetooth	NCP cannot work after flash uart bins for both host and device side

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.6.p46 to 18.99.6.p47

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Enabled mbedtls 3.x

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Parent topic:*RW610/RW612 release notes*

Known issues

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	—
Bluetooth LE	—
Zigbee	-
Coex	The coexistence sample applications included in the SDK are currently not working as expected.

Parent topic:*RW610/RW612 release notes*

IW610 release notes

Package information

- SDK version: 25.12.00-pvw1

Parent topic:*IW610 release notes*

Version information

- Wireless SoC: IW610
- Wi-Fi and Bluetooth/Bluetooth LE firmware version: 18.99.5.p79
  - 18 - Major revision
  - 99 - Feature pack
  - 5 - Release version
  - p79 - Patch number

Parent topic:*IW610 release notes*

Host platform

- IW610 platform running FreeRTOS
- Test tools
  - iPerf (version 2.1.9)

Parent topic:*IW610 release notes*

Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification The Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification is obtained with the following combinations.

WFA certifications

- STA | 802.11n
- STA | PMF
- STA | FFD
- STA | SVD
- STA | WPA3 SAE (R3)
- STA | 802.11ac
- STA | 802.11ax
- STA | QTT

Refer to *6*.

Note: This release supports STAUT only certifications.

Parent topic: Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification

Bluetooth controller certification QDID: Refer to *4*.

Note: QDID upgrade to Bluetooth Core Specification Version 5.4 is in progress.

Parent topic: Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification

Parent topic:*IW610 release notes*

Wi-Fi throughput

Throughput test setup

- Environment: Shield Room - Over the Air
- Access Point: Asus AX88u
- DUT: IW610
- External Client: Intel AX210
- Channel: 6 | 36
- Wi-Fi application: wifi_cli
- Compiler used to build application: armgcc
- Compiler version gcc-arm-none-eabi-13.2
- iPerf commands used in test:

TCP TX

```
iperf -c <remote_ip> -t 60
```

TCP RX

```
iperf -s
```

UDP TX

```
iperf -c <remote_ip> -t 60 -u -B <local_ip> -b 120
```

Note: The default rate is 100 Mbps.

UDP RX

```
iperf -s -u -B <local_ip>
```

Note: Read more about the throughput test setup and topology in *3*.

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

STA throughput External AP: Asus AX88u

STA mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	37	37	60	62
WPA2-AES	36	37	59	61
WPA3-SAE	36	37	59	61

STA mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	35	40	64	65
WPA2-AES	34	39	62	64
WPA3-SAE	35	39	77	76

STA mode throughput - VHT Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	41	40	72	72
WPA2-AES	40	40	72	72
WPA3-SAE	40	40	72	71

STA mode throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	38	42	77	76
WPA2-AES	37	41	75	75
WPA3-SAE	37	40	75	75

STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	45	44	93	96
WPA2-AES	43	43	93	95
WPA3-SAE	44	43	93	96

STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	42	46	94	100
WPA2-AES	42	45	94	101
WPA3-SAE	41	45	94	101

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

Mobile AP throughput External client: Apple MacBook Air

Mobile AP mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	37	40	63	62
WPA2-AES	35	38	58	60
WPA3-SAE	37	39	61	61

Mobile AP mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	38	41	62	64
WPA2-AES	38	40	62	64
WPA3-SAE	38	40	62	62

Mobile AP mode throughput - VHT Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	39	43	68	73
WPA2-AES	40	43	71	72
WPA3-SAE	39	43	68	72

Mobile AP mode throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	42	45	72	74
WPA2-AES	41	44	71	73
WPA3-SAE	41	44	71	73

Mobile AP mode throughput - HE Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	44	48	94	94
WPA2-AES	43	46	95	95
WPA3-SAE	43	46	95	95

Mobile AP mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	45	49	97	97
WPA2-AES	44	48	97	97
WPA3-SAE	44	48	96	95

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

Parent topic:*IW610 release notes*

Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.5.p66 to 18.99.5.p76

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	The P2P client connection fails when an attempt is made to connect after the P2P Group Owner (P2P-GO) has been stopped.

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.5.p76 to 18.99.5.p79

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Enabled mbedtls 3.x

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Parent topic:*IW610 release notes*

Known issues

Component	Description
Coex	The coexistence sample applications included in the SDK are currently not working as expected.

Parent topic:*IW610 release notes*

AW611 release notes

Note: The AW611 support is enabled in i.MX RT1180 EVKA.

Package information

- SDK version: 25.12.00-pvw1

Parent topic:*AW611 release notes*

Version information

- Wireless SoC: AW611
- Wi-Fi and Bluetooth/Bluetooth LE firmware version: 18.99.3.p27.1
  - 18 - Major revision
  - 99 - Feature pack
  - 3 - Release version
  - p27.1 - Patch number

Parent topic:*AW611 release notes*

Host platform

- i.MX RT1180 EVKA Platform running FreeRTOS
- Host interfaces
  - Wi-Fi over SDIO (SDIO 2.0 Support, SDIO clock frequency: 50 MHz)
  - Bluetooth/Bluetooth LE over UART
- Test tools
  - iPerf (version 2.1.9)

Parent topic:*AW611 release notes*

Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification The Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification is obtained with the following combinations.

WFA certifications

- STA | 802.11n
- STA | PMF
- STA | FFD
- STA | SVD
- STA | WPA3 SAE (R3)
- STA | 802.11ac
- STA | 802.11ax
- STA | QTT

Refer to *6*.

Note: This release supports STAUT only certifications.

Parent topic: Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification

Bluetooth controller certification QDID: Refer to *4*.

Note: QDID upgrade to Bluetooth Core Specification Version 5.4 is in progress.

Parent topic: Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification

Parent topic:*AW611 release notes*

Wi-Fi throughput

Throughput test setup

- Environment: Shield Room - Over the Air
- Access Point: Asus AX88u
- DUT: AW611 uBlox (Module: U-BLOX_Jody_W5 M.2) with EVK-MIMXRT1180 EVKA platform
- DUT Power Source: External power supply
- Client: Apple MacBook Air
- Channel: 6 | 36

- Wi-Fi application: wifi_wpa_supplicant
- Compiler used to build application: armgcc
- Compiler Version: gcc-arm-none-eabi-13.2
- iPerf commands used in test:

TCP TX

```
iperf -c <remote_ip> -t 60
```

TCP RX

```
iperf -s
```

UDP TX

```
iperf -c <remote_ip> -t 60 -u -B <local_ip> -b 120
```

Note: The default rate is 100 Mbps.

UDP RX

```
iperf -s -u -B <local_ip>
```

Note: Read more about the throughput test setup and topology in *2*.

The throughput numbers are captured with default configurations using *wifi_wpa_supplicant* sample application.

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

STA throughput External AP: Asus AX88u

STA mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	45	48	61	61
WPA2-AES	44	47	60	60
WPA3-SAE	46	49	62	62

STA mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	66	82	128	131
WPA2-AES	69	82	126	128
WPA3-SAE	65	80	126	129

STA mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	39	51	63	65
WPA2-AES	39	50	63	64
WPA3-SAE	44	51	63	64

STA mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	64	82	125	133
WPA2-AES	63	83	124	132
WPA3-SAE	64	84	124	132

STA mode throughput - VHT Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	48	54	71	72
WPA2-AES	48	54	71	71
WPA3-SAE	45	55	72	70

STA mode throughput - VHT Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 40 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	74	92	162	170
WPA2-AES	74	90	160	169
WPA3-SAE	71	91	161	171

STA mode throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	43	57	76	78
WPA2-AES	42	57	75	77
WPA3-SAE	43	57	75	77

STA mode throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	70	90	156	177
WPA2-AES	70	91	154	175
WPA3-SAE	70	90	154	175

STA mode throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 80 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	86	94	218	196
WPA2-AES	84	96	219	195
WPA3-SAE	84	95	219	196

STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	62	62	112	114
WPA2-AES	62	63	110	112
WPA3-SAE	56	63	107	114

STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 40 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	73	94	193	192
WPA2-AES	76	93	188	191
WPA3-SAE	78	94	190	189

STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	54	57	86	125
WPA2-AES	53	58	85	124
WPA3-SAE	53	66	118	123

STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	77	95	163	198
WPA2-AES	76	95	160	198
WPA3-SAE	75	94	172	197

STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 80 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	88	93	219	197
WPA2-AES	88	95	221	196
WPA3-SAE	85	94	217	195

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

Mobile AP throughput External client: Apple MacBook Air

Mobile AP mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	40	50	58	62
WPA2-AES	40	51	62	62
WPA3-SAE	40	51	62	62

Mobile AP mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	64	87	120	131
WPA2-AES	63	87	119	130
WPA3-SAE	63	86	118	130

Mobile AP mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	40	52	63	62
WPA2-AES	41	51	62	57
WPA3-SAE	33	51	60	56

Mobile AP mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	64	96	120	139
WPA2-AES	71	95	120	132
WPA3-SAE	67	94	121	133

Mobile AP mode throughput - VHT Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	44	60	67	62
WPA2-AES	43	59	67	74
WPA3-SAE	44	59	73	63

Mobile AP mode throughput - VHT Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	70	96	124	151
WPA2-AES	70	97	128	165
WPA3-SAE	72	95	124	164

Mobile AP mode throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	45	60	69	71
WPA2-AES	43	59	74	75
WPA3-SAE	44	59	68	64

Mobile AP mode throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	70	99	140	137
WPA2-AES	68	98	145	175
WPA3-SAE	72	98	138	157

Mobile AP mode throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 80 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	82	122	186	182
WPA2-AES	82	121	197	179
WPA3-SAE	63	119	174	165

Mobile AP mode throughput - HE Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	47	55	64	78
WPA2-AES	47	54	70	86
WPA3-SAE	45	54	60	53

Mobile AP mode throughput - HE Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	66	102	123	178
WPA2-AES	75	100	94	179
WPA3-SAE	75	100	99	127

Mobile AP mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	53	61	60	103
WPA2-AES	47	54	77	92
WPA3-SAE	23	28	74	45

Mobile AP mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	79	105	140	195
WPA2-AES	78	107	138	174
WPA3-SAE	78	104	129	146

Mobile AP mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 80 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	89	123	210	188
WPA2-AES	88	122	194	179
WPA3-SAE	80	122	187	188

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

Parent topic:*AW611 release notes*

EU conformance tests

- EU Adaptivity test - EN 300 328 v2.1.1 (for 2.4 GHz)
- EU Adaptivity test - EN 301 893 v2.1.1 (for 5 GHz)

Parent topic:*AW611 release notes*

Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.3.p10.5 to 18.99.3.p17.9

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	After performing independent reset (out-of-band mode), the STAUT fails to connect to the external AP via `wlan-connect` command, observed command timeout `0x107` error.
Bluetootl	Audio glitches observed with Google Pixel 7 Pro streaming audio after CIS is established with DUT.During Call Gateway (CG) / Call Terminal (CT) Use Case, the firmware periodically sends NULL PDU, which results in frequent Audio Glitch on both CG and CT sides.Heavy audio glitches observed with CIS SRC Google Pixel 7 ProContinuous audio glitches observed in 1 CIS and 2 CIS for 48_3 and 48_4 config.

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.3.p17.9 to 18.99.3.p21.154

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	STAUT fail to ping AP backend machine when connected with DFS channel and DUTSTA went in bad state.
Bluetooth	CIS Sink frequently fails to acknowledge CIS Source TX PDU.

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.3.p23.16 to 18.99.3.p25.11

Component	Description
Bluetooth	Packet lost observed in CIS case, which causes audio noise.

Parent topic:*Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements*

Firmware version: 18.99.3.p25.11 to 18.99.3.p26.10

Com-ponent	Description
Wi-Fi	During legacy roaming when the “Link Lost” observed the DUTSTA fails to roam
Wi-Fi	During the automated testing of the channel performance, a system hang can occur, with the error message “.sdio_drv_write failed”.

Parent topic:*Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements*

Firmware version: 18.99.3.p26.10 to 18.99.3.p27.1

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Enabled mbedtls 3.x

Parent topic:*Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements*

Parent topic:*AW611 release notes*

Known issues

Com po-nent	Description
Blue tootl	Packet lost would be observed in CIS case which causes audio noise.Sequential Removal of CIS Handles as per current Controller implementation i.e CIS Disconnection sequence should be in sequence => CIS - 4,3,2,1While 4-CIS streaming, audio glitches observed on all CIS SINK with Samsung Galaxy budsWhile 4-CIS streaming, disconnection with connection timeout observed on first CIS SINK with Samsung Galaxy budsOnly two streams (CIS/BIS) with one channel is supported.
Coex	The coexistence sample applications included in the SDK are currently not working as expected.

Parent topic:*AW611 release notes*

Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Definition
A2DP	Advanced audio distribution profile
AMPDU	Aggregated MAC protocol data unit
AMSDU	Aggregated MAC service data unit
AP	Access point
BW	Bandwidth
CCMP	Counter mode CBC-MAC protocol
CSI	Channel state information
CTS	Clear To Send
DL	Down link
EDCA	Enhanced distributed channel access
ER	Extended range
ERP	Extended rate physical
GATT	Generic attribute profile
HFP	Hands free profile

continues on next page

Table 8 – continued from previous page

Abbreviation	Definition
HID	Human interface device
HT	High throughput
LDPC	Low density parity check
MCS	Modulation and coding scheme
MLME	Mac layer management entity
OMI	Operating mode indication
PMF	Protected management frames
RTS	Request to send
SAE	Simultaneous authentication of equals
STA	Station
TWT	Target wake time
UL	Up link
VHT	Very high throughput
WEP	Wired equivalent private
WFD	Wi-Fi direct
WMM	Wireless multi-media
WPA	Wi-Fi protected access
WPS	Wi-Fi protected setup
WSC	Wi-Fi Simple Configuration

References

1. Application note - AN13681 – Wi-Fi Alliance (WFA) Derivative Certification Process (available in the SDK package)
2. User manual – UM11442 - NXP Wi-Fi and Bluetooth Demo Applications User Guide for i.MX RT Platforms (available in the SDK package)
3. User manual – UM11799 - NXP Wi-Fi and Bluetooth Demo Applications User Guide for RW61x (available in the SDK package)
4. Certification – Bluetooth controller - QDID (*link*)
5. User manual - UM12133 - NXP NCP Application Guide for RW612 with MCU Host
6. Technical note - TN00066 – Wi-Fi Alliance (WFA) Derivative Certification Process (available in the SDK package)
7. Web page – Thread certified products (link)
8. Web page – Connectivity standard alliance (csa) – NXP RW612 Tri-Radio Wireless MCU Development Platform (link)
9. Web page – Connectivity standard alliance (csa) – NXP RW610 Wireless MCU Development Platform (link)
10. Application note - AN14634 – Kconfig Memory Optimizer (link)

Wireless Framework

Wireless Connectivity Framework Connectivity Framework repository provides both connectivity platform enablement with hardware abstraction layer and a set of Services for NXP connectivity stacks : BLE, Zigbee, OpenThread, Matter.

The connectivity framework repository consists of:

- Common folder to common header files for minimal type definition to be used in the repo

- Platform folder used for platform enablement with Hardware abstraction:
  - platform/include: common API header files used by several platforms
  - platform/common: common code for several platforms
  - specifics platform folders , See below the supported platform list
  - platform/../configs folder: configuration files for framework repository and other middlewares (rpmsg, mbedTls, etc.._)
- Services folder
- Zephyr folder for zephyr modules integrated in mcux SDK
- clang formatting script and script folder to format appropriately the source files of the repo

Supported platforms The following devices/platforms are supported in platform folder for connectivity applications:

- kw45x, k32w1x, mcxw71x, under wireless_mcu, kw45_k32w1_mcxw71 folders.
- kw47x, mcxw72x families under wireless_mcu, kw47_mcxw72, kw47_mcxw72_nbu folders.
- rw61x
- RT1060 and RT1170 for Matter
- Other RT devices such as i.MX RT595s

Supported services The supported services are provided for connectivity stacks and their demo application, and are usually dependent on PLATFORM API implementation:

- DBG: Light Debug Module, currently a stubbed header file
- FSCI: Framework Serial Communication Interface between BLE host stack and upper layer located on an other core/device
- FunctionLib: wrapper to toolchain memory manipulation functions (memcpy, memcmp, etc) or use its own implementation for code size reduction
- HWParameters: Store Factory hardware parameters and Application parameters in Flash or IFR
- LowPower: wrapper of SDK power manager for connectivity applications
- ModuleInfo: Store and handle connectivity component versions
- NVM: NXP proprietary File System used for KW45, KW47 automotive devices and RT1060/RT1170 platform for Matter
- OtaSupport: Handle OTA binary writes into internal or external flash.
- SecLib and RNG: Crypto and Random Number generator functions. It supports several ports:
  - Software algorithms
  - Secure subsystem interface to an HW enclave
  - MbedTls 2.x interface
- Sensors: Provides service for Battery and temperature measurements
- SFC: Smart Frequency Calibration to be run from KW47/MCXW71 from NBU core. Matter related modules:
- OTW: Over The Wire module for External Transceiver firmware update from RT platforms

- FactoryDataProvider to be used for Matter

Supported Zephyr modules integration in mcux SDK Connectivity framework provides integration and port layers to the following Zephyr Modules located into zephyr/subsys:

- NVS: Zephyr File System used by Matter and Zigbee
- Settings: Over layer module that allows to store keys into NVS File System used by Matter Port layer and required libraries for these zephyr modules are located in port and lib folder in zephyr directory

Connectivity framework CHANGELOG

7.0.3 RFP mcux SDK 25.09.00

Major Changes

- [wireless_mcu] Replaced ICS RX linked list with message queue to eliminate memory allocation in ISR context and enable user callbacks to run in thread context where memory allocation is permitted.
- [wireless_mcu] Added HCI RX workqueue processing support to reduce ISR execution time and system impact. Feature controlled by gPlatformHciUseWorkqueueRxProcessing_d configuration option (enabled by default on kw45_k32w1_mcxw71 and kw47_mcxw72 platforms in freertos applications). When enabled, HCI transport processes received data in system workqueue thread, allowing user callbacks to run in thread context.
- [wireless_nbu] Introduced PLATFORM_ConfigureSmuDmemMapping() API to configure SMU and DMEM sharing on NBU for kw47_mcxw72 platform, using linker file symbols for correct configuration.
- [mcxw23] Implemented HCI interface using PLATFORM API as preliminary requirement for Zephyr enablement, introducing PLATFORM_SendHciMessageAlt() alternative API.
- [wireless_mcu][wireless_nbu] Added NBU2Host event manager for status indications to host (Information, Warning, Error) sent over RPMSG.
- [wireless_mcu] Added a call to PLATFORM_IcsRxWorkHandler() within PLATFORM_NbuApiReq() for baremetal applications to prevent potential deadlocks.

Minor Changes

- [wireless_mcu] Fixed variable underflow issue in PLATFORM_RemoteActiveRel().
- [SecLib_RNG] Fixed escaping local HashKeyBuffer address issue and added missing cast in RNG_GetTrueRandomNumber() function.
- [Common] Fixed heap memory manager return values and added missing include to fwk_freertos_utils.h.
- [rw61x] Prevented array out of bounds in PLATFORM_RegisterRtcHandle().
- [FSCI] Fixed memory leak in FSCI module.
- [NVM] Enhanced debug facilitation by restricting variable scope, assigning return statuses to variables, and fixing display format in NV_ShowFlashTable().
- [wireless_mcu] Added new chip revision A2.1 support in PLATFORM_SendChipRevision() API.

- [kw47_mcxw72] Implemented BLE BD address retrieval from IFR memory with fallback to OUI + RNG.
- [DBG] Added ThreadX support to fault handlers and reworked fault handler structure with dedicated RTOS files.
- [DBG][Common] Added NBU debug support on host side to detect faults and system errors, with debug info extraction capability (limited to MCXW72/KW47).
- [Common] Platform CMake rework and Kconfig renaming, removing unneeded checks and renaming PRJSEG platform Kconfigs to COMPONENT.
- [mcxw23] Added experimental SecLib PSA support with additional configuration for MBEDTLS_ECP_C and MBEDTLS_BIGNUM_C.
- [wireless_mcu] Cleaned CMakeLists.txt to avoid wrong inclusions of files and folders from incorrect platforms.
- [wireless_mcu][wireless_nbu] Added NBU2Host warning when 32MHz crystal is unready on low power exit.
- [wireless_mcu][ot] Introduced gPlatformUseOuiFromIfr to use OUI from IFR for the extended address (disabled by default). When enabled and IFR is not blank, copies first three bytes to OUI field of extended address, otherwise uses static OUI as fallback.
- [General] Removed useless warning about TSTMR_CLOCK_FREQUENCY_MHZ definition.
- [General] Updated framework license and SBOM for 25.09 RFP release.
- [wireless_mcu] Fixed unused variable warning when gPlatformIcsUseWorkqueueRxProcessing_d and gPlatformHciUseWorkqueueRxProcessing_dare disable

7.0.3 revB mcux SDK 25.09.00

Major Changes

- [wireless_mcu] Adjusted default value of BOARD_RADIO_DOMAIN_WAKE_UP_DELAY from 0x16 to 0x10 to address stability issues observed with the previous setting. This change enhances system reliability but will reduce low-power performance.

Minor Changes (bug fixes)

- [Common] Added MDK compatibility for the errno framework header.
- [mcxw23] Implemented missing PLATFORM_OtaClearBootInterface() API.
- [mcxw23] Refactored fwk_platform.c to separate BLE-specific logic into fwk_platform_ble.c.
- [OTA] Corrected definition of gEepromParams_WriteAlignment_c flag for mcxw23
- [OTA] Enabled calling OTA_GetImgState() prior to OTA_Initialize().
- [wireless_mcu] Fixed PLATFORM_IsExternalFlashSectorBlank() to check the entire sector instead of just one page.
- [mcxw23] Added support for OTA using external flash.
- [mcxw23] Introduced PLATFORM_GetRadioIdleDuration32K() to estimate time until next radio event.
- [OTA] Removed gUseInternalStorageLink_d linker flag definition when external OTA storage is used.
- [mcxw23] Extended CopyAndReboot() to support external flash OTA.
- [wireless_mcu] Resolved counter wrap issue in PLATFORM_GetDeltaTimeStamp().

- [kw43_mcxw70] Defined LPTMR frequency constants in fwk_platform_definitions.h.
- [kw47_mcxw72] Updated shared memory allocation for RPMsg adapter.
- [mcxw23] Implement PLATFORM_IsExternalFlashBusy() API.
- [kw45_mcxw71][kw47_mcxw72] Moved RAM bank definitions from the connectivity framework to device-specific definitions.

7.0.3 revA mcux SDK 25.09.00

Major Changes

- [wireless_nbu] Enhanced XTAL32M trimming handling: updates are applied when requested by the application core and the NBU enters low-power mode, ensuring no interference from ongoing radio activity. Introduced new APIs to lock (PLATFORM_LockXtal32MTrim()) and unlock XTAL32M (PLATFORM_UnlockXtal32MTrim()) trimming updates using a counter-based mechanism. Also added a reset API (PLATFORM_ResetContext()) for platform-specific variables (currently limited to the trimming lock).
- [wireless_mcu] Introduced a new API, PLATFORM_SetLdoCoreNormalDriveVoltage(), to enable support for NBU clock frequency at 64 MHz, as required by BLE channel sounding applications.
- [wireless_mcu][wireless_nbu] Increased delayLpoCycle default from 2 to 3 to address link layer instabilities in low-power NBU use cases. Adjusted BOARD_RADIO_DOMAIN_WAKE_UP_DELAY from 0x10 to 0x16 to balance power consumption and stability. NBU may malfunction if delayLpoCycle (or BOARD_LL_32MHz_WAKEUP_ADVANCE_HSLOT) is set to 2 while BOARD_RADIO_DOMAIN_WAKE_UP_DELAY is 0x16.

Minor Changes (bug fixes)

- [WorkQ] Increased stack size when RNG use mbedtls port and coverage is enabled.
- [FSCI] Resolved an issue where messages remained unprocessed in the queue by ensuring OSA_EventSet() is triggered when pending messages are detected.
- [OTA] Fixed a bug in in OTA_PullImageChunk() that prevented retrieval of data previously received via OTA_PushImageChunk() when still buffered in RAM during posted operations.
- [OTA] Various MISRA and coverity fixes.
- [mcxw23] Fixed an unused variable warning in PLATFORM_RegisterNbuTemperatureRequestEventCb() API.
- [SFC] Remove obsolete flag gNbuJtagCapability.
- [wireless_mcu] Introduced new API PLATFORM_GetRadioIdleDuration32K(). Deprecated PLATFORM_CheckNextBleConnectivityActivity() API.
- [mcxw23] Aligned platform-specific implementations with the corresponding prototypes defined in wireless_mcu.
- [DBG] Cleaned up fwk_fault_handler.c.

7.0.2 RFP mcux SDK 25.06.00

Major Changes

- [wireless_mcu][wireless_nbu] Introduced PLATFORM_Get32KTimeStamp() API, available on platforms that support it.
- [RNG] Switched to using a workqueue for scheduling seed generation tasks.
- [Sensors] Integrated workqueue to trigger temperature readings on periodic timer expirations.
- [wireless_nbu] Removed outdated configuration files from wireless_nbu/configs.
- [SecLib_RNG][PSA] Added a PSA-compliant implementation for SecLib_RNG. This is an experimental feature and should be used with caution.
- [wireless_mcu][wireless_nbu] Implemented PLATFORM_SendNBUXtal32MTrim() API to transmit XTAL32M trimming values to the NBU.

Minor Changes (bug fixes)

- [MWS] Migrated the Mobile Wireless Standard (MWS) service to the public repository. This service manages coexistence between connectivity protocols such as BLE, 802.15.4, and GenFSK.
- [HWParameter][NVM][SecLib_RNG][Sensors] Addressed various MISRA compliance issues across multiple modules.
- [Sensors] Applied a filtering mechanism to temperature data measured by the application core before forwarding it to the NBU, improving data reliability.
- [Common] Relocated the GetPowerOfTwoShift() function to a shared module for broader accessibility across components.
- [RNG] Resolved inconsistencies in RNG behavior when using the fsl_adapter_rng HAL by aligning it with other API implementations.
- [SecLib] Updated the AES CMAC block counter in AES_128_CMAC() and AES_128_CMAC_LsbFirstInput() to support data segments larger than 4KB.
- [SecLib] Utilized sss_sscp_key_object_free() with kSSS_keyObjFree_KeysStoreDefragment to avoid key allocation failures.
- [MCXW23] Removed redundant NVIC_SetPriority() call for the ctimer IRQ in the platform file, as it's already handled by the driver.
- [WorkQ] Increased workqueue stack size to accommodate RNG usage with mbedtls.
- [wireless_mcu][ot] Suppressed chip revision transmission when operating with nbu_15_4.
- [platform][mflash] Ensured proper address alignment for external flash reads in PLATFORM_ReadExternalFlash() when required by platform constraints.
- [RNG] Corrected reseed flag behavior in RNG_GetPseudoRandomData() after reaching gRngMaxRequests_d threshold.
- [platform][mflash] Fixed uninitialized variable issue in PLATFORM_ReadExternalFlash().
- [platform][wireless_nbu] Fixed an issue on KW47 where PLATFORM_InitFro192M incorrectly reads IFR1 from a hardcoded flash address (0x48000), leading to unstable FRO192M trimming. The function is now conditionally compiled for KW45 only.

7.0.2 revB mcux SDK 25.06.00

Major Changes

- [RNG][wireless_mcu][wireless_nbu] Rework RNG seeding on NBU request
- [wireless_mcu] [LowPower] Add gPlatformEnableFro6MCalLowpower_d macro to enable FRO6M frequency verification on exit of Low Power
  - add PLATFORM_StartFro6MCalibration() and PLATFORM_EndFro6MCalibration() new function for FRO6M calibration (6MHz or 2Mhz) on wake-up from low power mode.
  - Enabled by default in fwk_config.h
- [wireless_nbu][LowPower] Clear pending interrupt status of the systick before going in low-power - Reduce NBU active time
- [wireless_nbu] Fix impossibility to go to WFI in combo mode (15.4/BLE)
- [wireless_mcu] Implement XTAL32M temperature compensation mechanism. 2 new APIs:
  - PLATFORM_RegisterXtal32MTempCompLut(): register the temperature compensation table for XTAL32M.
  - PLATFORM_CalibrateXtal32M(): apply XTAL32M temperature compensation depending on current temperature.
- [Sensors][wireless_mcu] Add support for periodic temperature measurement. new API:
  - SENSORS_TriggerTemperatureMeasurementUnsafe(): to be called from Interrupt masked critical section, from ISR or when scheduler is stopped
- [SFC] Change default maximal ppm target of the SFC algorithm from 200 to 360ppm. Impact the SFC algorith of kw45 and mcxw71 platforms, 360ppm was already the default setting for kw47 and mcxw72 platforms

Minor Changes (bug fixes)

- [DBG] Fix FWK_DBG_PERF_DWT_CYCLE_CNT_STOP macro
- [wireless_nbu] Add gPlatformIsNbu_d compile Macro set to 1
- [wireless_nbu][ics] gFwkSrvHostChipRevision_c can be processed in the system workqueue
- [kw45_mcxw71][kw47_mcxw72]
  - Remove LTC dependency from platform in kconfig
  - gPlatformShutdownEccRamInLowPower moved from fwk_platform_definition.h to fwk_confg.h as this is a configuration flag.
- [wireless_mcu][sensors] Rework and remove unnecessary ADC APIs
- [wireless_nbu] Add PLATFORM_GetMCUUid() function from Chip UID
- [SecLib] Change AES_MMO_BlockUpdate() function from private to public for zigbee.

7.0.2 revA mcux SDK 25.06.00 Supported platforms:

- Same as 25.03.00 release

Major Changes

- [KW45/MCXW71] HW parameters placement now located in IFR section. Flash storage is not longer used:
  - Compilation: Macro gHwParamsProdDataPlacement_c changed from gHwParamsProdDataMainFlash2IfrMode_c to gHwParamsProdDataIfrMode_c

- [KW47] NBU: Add new fwk_platform_dcdc.[ch] files to allow DCDC stepping by using SPC high power mode. This requires new API in board_dcdc.c files. Please refer to new compilation MACROs gBoardDcdcRampTrim_c and gBoardDcdcEnableHighPowerModeOnNbu_d in board_platform.h files located in kw47evk, kw47loc, frdmmcxw72 board folders.
- [KW45/MCXW71/KW47/MCXW72] Trigger an interrupt each time App core calls PLATFORM_RemoteActiveReq() to access NBU power domain in order to restart NBU core for domain low power process

Minor Changes (bug fixes)

Services

- [SecLib_RNG]
  - Rename mSecLibMutexId mutex to mSecLibSssMutexId in SecLib_sss.c
  - Remove MEM_TRACKING flag from RNG.c
  - Implement port to fsl_adapter_rng.h API using gRngUseRngAdapter_c compil Macro from RNG.c
  - Add support for BLE debug Keys in SecLi and SecLin_sss.c with gSecLibUseBleDebugKeys_d - for Debug only
- [FSCI] Add queue mechanism to prevent corruption of FSCI global variableAllow the application to override the trig sample number parameter when gFsciOverRpmsg_c is set to 1
- [DBG][btsnoop] Add a mechanism to dump raw HCI data via UART using SBTSNOOP_MODE_RAW
- [OTA]
  - OtaInternalFlash.c: Take into account chunks smaller than a flash phrase worth
  - fwk_platform_ot.c: dependencies and include files to gpio, port, pin_mux removed

Platform specific

- [kw45_mcxw71][kw47_mcxw72]
  - fwk_platform_reset.h : add compil Macro gUseResetByLvdForce_c and gUseResetByDeepPowerDown_c to avoid compile the code if not supported on some platforms
  - New compile Flag gPlatformHasNbu_d
  - Rework FRO32K notification service for MISRA fix

7.0.1 RFP mcux SDK 25.03.00 Supported platforms:

- KW45x, KW47x, MCXW71, MCXW72, K32W1x
- RW61x
- RT595, RT1060, RT1170
- MCXW23

Minor Changes (bug fixes)

- [General] Various MISRA/Coverity fixes in framework: NVM, RNG, LowPower, SecLib and platform files

Services

- [SecLib_RNG] fix return status from RNG_GetTrueRandomNumber() function: return correctly gRngSuccess_d when RNG_entropy_func() function is successful
- [SFC] Allow the application to override the trig sample number parameter
- [Settings] Re-define the framework settings API name to avoid double definition when gSettingsRedefineApiName_c flag is defined

Platform specific

- [wireless_mcu] fwk_platform_sensors update :
  - Enable temperature measurement over ADC ISR
  - Enable temperature handling requested by NBU
- [wireless_mcu] fwk_platform_lcl coex config update for KW45
- [kw47_mcxw72] Change the default ppm_target of SFC algorithm from 200 to 360ppm

7.0.1 revB mcux SDK 25.03.00 Supported platforms:

- KW45x, KW47x, MCXW71, MCXW72, K32W1x
- RW61x
- RT595, RT1060, RT1170
- MCXW23

Minor Changes (bug fixes)

General

- [General] Various MISRA/Coverity fixes in framework: NVM, RNG, LowPower, FunctionLib and platform files

Services

- [SecLib_RNG] AES-CBC evolution:
  - added AES_CBC_Decrypt() API for sw, SSS and mbedtls variants.
  - Made AES-CBC SW implementation reentrant avoiding use of static storage of AES block.
  - fixed SSS version to update Initialization Vector within SecLib, simplifying caller's implementation.
  - modified AES_128_CBC_Encrypt_And_Pad() so as to avoid the constraint mandating that 16 byte headroom be available at end of input buffer.
- [SecLib_RNG] RNG modifications:
  - RNG_GetPseudoRandomData() could return 0 in some error cases where caller expected a negative status.
    - Explicited RNG error codes
    - Added argument checks for all APIs and return gRngBadArguments_d (-2) when wrong

    - added checks of RNG initalization and return gRngNotInitialized_d (-3) when not done
    - fixed correcteness of RNG_GetPrngFunc() and RNG_GetPrngContext() relative to API description.
    - Added RNG_DeInit() function mostly for test and coverage purposes.
    - Improved RNG description in README.md
    - Unified the APIs behaviour between mbedtls and non mbedtls variants.
  - RNG/mbedtls : Prevent RNG_Init() from corrupting RNG entropy context if called more than once.
  - RNG/mbedtls: fixed RNG_GetTrueRandomNumber() to return a proper mbedtls_entropy_func() result.
  - Use defragmetation option when freeing key object in SecLib_sss to avoid leak in S200 memory
  - Add new API ECP256_IsKeyValid() to check whether a public key is valid
- [OtaSupport] Update return status to OTA_Flash_Success when success at the end of InternalFlash_WriteData() and InternalFlash_FlushWriteBuffer() APIs
- [WorQ] Implementing a simple workqueue service to the framework
- [SFC] Keep using immediate measurement for some measurement before switching to configuration trig to confirm the calibration made
- [DBG] Adding modules to framework DBG :
  - sbtsnoop
  - SWO
- [Common] Fix HAL_CTZ and HAL_RBIT IAR versions
- [LowPower] Fix wrong tick error calculation in case of infinite timeout
- [Settings] Add new macro gSettingsRedefineApiName_c to avoid multiple definition of settings API when using connectivity framework repo

Platform specific

- [KW47/MCXW72] Change xtal cload default value from 4 to 8 in order to increase the precision of the link layer timebase in NBU
- [wireless_mcu] [wireless_nbu] Use new WorkQ service to process framework intercore messages
- [rw61x] Fix HCI message sending failure in some corner case by releasing controller wakes up after that the host has send its HCI message
- [MCXW23] Adding the initial support of MCXW23 into the framework

7.0.0 mcux SDK 24.12.00 Supported platforms:

- KW45x, KW47x, MCXW71, MCXW72, K32W1x
- RW61x
- RT595, RT1060, RT1170

Minor Changes (bug fixes)

Platform specific

- [RW61X]
  - Add MCUX_COMPONENT_middleware.wireless.framework.platform.rng to the platform to fix a warning at generation
  - Retrieve IEEE 64 bits address from OTP memory
- [KW45x, MCXW71x, KW47x, MCXW72x]
  - Ignore the secure bit from RAM addresses when comparing used ram bank in bank retention mechanism
  - Add gPlatformNbuDebugGpioDAccessEnabled_d Compile Macro (enabled by default). Can be used to disable the NBU debug capability using IOs in case Trustzone is enabled ("PLATFORM_InitNbu()' code executed from unsecure world).
  - Fix in NBU firmware when sending ICS messages gFwkSrvNbuApiRequest_c (from controller_api.h API functions)

Services

- [OTA]
  - Add choice name to OtaSupport flash selection in Kconfig
- [NVM]
  - Add gNvmErasePartitionWhenFlashing_c feature support to gcc toolchain
- [SecLib_RNG]
  - Misra fixes

7.0.0 revB mcux SDK 24.12.00 Supported platforms: KW45x, KW47x, MCXW71, MCXW72, K32W1x, RW61x, RT595, RT1060, RT1170

Major Changes (User Applications may be impacted)

- mcux github support with cmake/Kconfig from sdk3 user shall now use CmakeLists.txt and Kconfig files from root folder. Compilation should be done using west build command. In order to see the Framework Kconfig, use command >west build -t guiconfig
- Board files and linker scripts moved to examples repository

Bugfixes

- [platform lowpower]
  - Entering Deep down power mode will no longer call PLATFORM_EnterPowerDown(). This API is now called only when going to Power down mode

Platform specific

- [KW47/MCXW72]: Early access release only
  - Deep sleep power mode not fully tested. User can experiment deep sleep and deep down modes using low power reference design applications
  - XTAL32K-less support using FRO32K not tested
- [KW45/MCXW71/K32W148]

  - Deep sleep mode is supported. Power down mode is supported in low power reference design applications as experimental only
  - XTAL32K-less support using FRO32K is experimental - FRO32K notifications callback is debug only and should not be used for mass production firmware builds

Minor Changes (no impact on application)

- Overall folder restructuring for SDK3
  - [Platform]:
    * Rename platform_family from connected_mcu/nbu to wireless_mcu/nbu
    * platform family have now a dedicated fwk_config.h, rpmsg_config.h and SecLib_mbedtls_config.h
  - [Services]
    * Move all framework services in a common directory “services/”

7.0.0 revA: KW45/KW47/MCX W71/MCX W72/K32W148

Experimental Features only

- Power down on application power domain: Some tests have shown some failure. Power consumption higher than Deep Sleep. => This feature is not fully supported in this release
- XTAL32K less board with FRO32K support: Some additional stress tests are under progress.
- FRO32K notifications callback is for debug only and shall not be used for production. User shall not execute long processing (such as PRINTF) as it is executed in ISR context.

Main Changes

- Cmake/Kconfig support for SDK3.0
- [Sensors] API renaming:
  - SENSORS_InitAdc() renamed to SENSORS_Init()
  - SENSORS_DeinitAdc() remamed to SENSORS_Deinit()
- [HWparams]
  - Repair PROD_DATA sector in case of ECC error (implies loss of previous contents of sector)
- [NVM] Linker script modification for armgcc whenever gNvTableKeptInRam_d option is used:
  - placement of NVM_TABLE_RW in data initialized section, providing start and end address symbols. For details see NVM_Interface.h comments.
- [OtaSupport]
  - OTA_Initialize(): now transitions the image state from RunCandidate to Permanent if not done by the application. OTA module shall always be initialized on a Permanent image, this change ensures it is the case.
  - OTA_MakeHeadRoomForNextBlock(): now erases the OTA partition up to the image total size (rounded to the sector) if known.

Minor changes

- [Platform]
  - Updated macro values: -kw47: BOARD_32MHZ_XTAL_CDAC_VALUE from 12U to 16U, BOARD_32MHZ_XTAL_ISEL_VALUE from 7U to 11U, BOARD_32KHZ_XTAL_CLOAD_DEFAULT from 8U to 4U, BOARD_32KHZ_XTAL_COARSE_ADJ_DEFAULT from 1U to 3U
    * MCX W72 (low-power reference design applications only): BOARD_32MHZ_XTAL_CDAC_VALUE from 12U to 10U, BOARD_32MHZ_XTAL_ISEL_VALUE from 7U to 11U, BOARD_32KHZ_XTAL_CLOAD_DEFAULT from 8U to 4U, BOARD_32KHZ_XTAL_COARSE_ADJ_DEFAULT from 1U to 3U
  - New PLATFORM_RegisterNbuTemperatureRequestEventCb() API: register a function callback when NBU request new temperature measurement. API provides the interval request for the temperature measurement
  - Update PLATFORM_IsNbuStarted() API to return true only if the NBU firmware has been started.
- [platform lowpower]
  - Move RAM layout values in fwk_platform_definition.h and update RAM retention API for KW47/MCXW72

Bugfixes

- [OtaSupport]
  - OTA_MakeHeadRoomForNextBlock(): fixed a case where the function could try to erase outside the OTA partition range.

6.2.4: KW45/K32W1x/MCXW71/RX61x SDK 2.16.100 This release does not contain the changes from 6.2.3 release.

This release contains changes from 6.2.2 release.

Main Change

- armgcc support for Cmake sdk2 support and VS code integration

Minor changes

- [NBU]
  - Optimize some critical sections on nbu firmware
- [Platform]
  - Optimize PLATFORM_RemoteActiveReq() execution time.

6.2.3: KW47 EAR1.0 Initial Connectivity Framework enablement for KW47 EAR1.0 support.

New features

- OpenNBU feature : nbu_ble project is available for modification and building

Supported features

- Deep sleep mode

Unsuported features

- Power down mode
- FRO32K support (XTAL32K less boards)

Main changes

- [NBU]
  - LPTMR2 available and TimerManager initialization with Compile Macro: gPlatformUseLptmr_d
  - NBU can now have access to GPIOD
  - SW RNG and SW SecLib ported to NBU (Software implementation only)
- [RNG]
  - Obsoleted API removed : FWK_RNG_DEPRECATED_API
  - RNG can be built without SecLib for NBU, using gRngUseSecLib_d in fwk_config.h
  - Some API updates:
    - RNG_IsReseedneeded() renamed to RNG_IsReseedNeeded,
    - RNG_TriggerReseed() renamed to RNG_NotifyReseedNeeded(),
    - RNG_SetSeed() and RNG_SetExternalSeed() return status code.
  - Optimized Linear Congruential modulus computation to reduce cycle count.

Minor changes

- [NVM]
  - Optimize NvIsRecordErased() procedure for faster garbage collection
  - MISRA fix : Remove externs and weaks from NVM module - Make RNG and timer manager dependencies conditional
- [Platform]
  - Allow the debugger to wakeup the KW47/MCXW72 target

6.2.2: KW45/K32W1 MR6 SDK 2.16.000 Experimental Features only:

- Power down on application power domain : Some tests have shown some failure. Power consumption higher than Deep Sleep. => This feature is not fully supported in this release
- XTAL32K less board with FRO32K support : Some additional stress tests are under progress.
- FRO32K notifications callback is for debug only and shall not be used for production. User shall not execute long processing (such as PRINTF) as it is executed in ISR context.

Changes

- [Board] Support for freedom board FRDM-MCX W7X
- [HWparams]
  - Support for location of HWParameters and Application Factory Data IFR in IFR1
  - Default is still to use HWparams in Flash to keep backward compatibility
- [RNG]: API updates:
  - New APIS RNG_IsReseedneeded(), RNG_SetSeed() to provide See to PRNG on NBU/App core - See BluetoothLEHost_ProcessIdleTask() in app_conn.c
  - New APIs RNG_SetExternalSeed() : User can provide external seed. Typically used on NBU firmrware for App core to set a seed to RNG. RNG_TriggerReseed() : Not required on App core. Used on NBU only.
- [NVS] Wear statistics counters added - Fix nvs_file_stat() function
- [NVM] fix Nv_Shutdown() API
- [SecLib] New feature AES MMO supported for Zigbee

6.2.2: RW61x RFP4 SDK 2.16.000

- [Platform] Support Zigbee stack
- [OTA] Add support for RW61x OTA with remap feature.
  - Required modifications to prevent direct access to flash logical addresses when remap is active.
  - Image trailers expected at different offset with remap enabled (see gPlatformMcuBootUseRemap_d in fwk_config.h)
  - fixed image state assessment procedure when in RunCandidate.
- [NVS] Wear statistics counters added
- [SecLib] New feature AES MMO supported for Zigbee
- [Misra] various fixes

6.2.1: KW45/K32W1 MR5 SDK 2.15.000 Experimental Features only:

- Power down on application power domain : Some tests have shown some failure. This feature is not fully supported in this release
- XTAL32K less board with FRO32K support : Some additional stress tests are under progress. Timing variation of the timebase are being analyzed

Major changes

- [RNG]: API updates
  - New compile flag to keep deprecated API: FWK_RNG_DEPRECATED_API
  - change return error code to int type for RNG_Init(), RNG_ReInit()
  - New APIs RNG_GetTrueRandomNumber(), RNG_GetPseudoRandomData()
- [Platform]
  - fwk_platform_sensors
    - Change default temperature value from -1 to 999999 when unknown

  - fwk_platform_genfsk
    - rename from platform_genfsk.c/h to fwk_platform_genfsk.c/h
  - platform family
    - Rename the framework platform folder from kw45_k32w1 to connected_mcu to support other platform from the same family
  - fwk_platform_intflash
    - Moved from fwk_platform files to the new fwk_platform_intflash files the internal flash dependant API
- [NBU]
  - BOARD_LL_32MHz_WAKEUP_ADVANCE_HSLOT changed from 2 to 3 by default
  - BOARD_RADIO_DOMAIN_WAKE_UP_DELAY changed from 0x10 to 0x0F
- [gcc linker]
  - Exclude k32w1_nbu_ble_15_4_dyn.bin from .data section

Minor Changes

- [Platform]
  - PLATFORM_GetTimeStamp(0 has an important fix for reading the Timestamp in TSTMR0
  - New API PLATFORM_TerminateCrypto(), PLATFORM_ResetCrypto() called from SecLib for lowpower exit
  - Fix when enable fro debug callback on nbu
- [DBG]
  - SWO
    - Add new files fwk_debug_swo.c/h to use SWO for debug purpose
    - Two new flags has been added:
      - BOARD_DBG_SWO_CORE_FUNNEL to chose on which core you want to use SWO
      - BOARD_DBG_SWO_PIN_ENABLE to enable SWO on a pin
- [NVS]
  - Add support of NVS and Settings in framework
- [NBU]
  - Fix power down issues and reduce critical section on NBU side:
    - new API PLATFORM_RemoteActiveReqWithoutDelay() called from NBU functions where waiting delay is not required
    - Increase delay needed in power down for OEM part to request the SOC to be active
    - Remove unnecessary code to PLATFORM_RemoteActiveReqWithoutDelay() from PLATFORM_HciRpmsgRxCallback()
    - Improve nbu memory allocation failure debug messages
- [SDK]
  - Multicore: remove critical section in HAL_RpmsgSendTimeout() (only required in FPGA HDI mode)
  - Flash drivers: update for ECC detection

- [Platform]
  - fwk_platform_sensors
    - Fix temperature reporting to NBU
  - fwk_platform_extflash
    - Align .c and .h prototype of PLATFORM_ExternalFlashAreaIsBlank() function
- [NVM]
  - Keep Mutex in NvModuleDeInit(). In Bare metal OS, Mutex can not be destroyed
  - New API NvRegisterEccFaultNotificationCb() to register Notification callback when Ecc error happens in FileSystem
- [MISRA] fixes
  - SecLib_sss.c: ECDH_P256_ComputeDhKey()
  - fwk_platform_extflash.c: PLATFORM_IsExternalFlashPageBlank()
  - fwk_fs_abstraction.c: Various fixes
- [HWparams]
  - Fix on if condition when gHwParamsProdDataPlacementLegacy2IfrMode_c mode is selected
- [OTA]
  - Enable gOtaCheckEccFaults_d by default to avoid bus in case of ECC error during OTA
  - Fix OTA partition overflow during OTA stop and resume transfer
- [BOARD]
  - Place code button or led specific under correct defines in board_comp.c/h
  - Bring back MACROs BOARD_INITRFSWITCHCONTROLPINS in pin_mux header file of the loc board
- [SecLib]
  - Add some undefinition in SecLib_mbedtls_config as new dependency has been added in mbedtls repo:
    - MBEDTLS_SSL_CBC_RECORD_SPLITTING, MBEDTLS_SSL_PROTO_TLS1, MBEDTLS_SSL_PROTO_TLS1_1
- [FRO32K]
  - FRO32K notification callback PLATFORM_FroDebugCallback_t() has new parameter to report he fro_trim value
  - maxCalibrationIntervalMs value can be provided to NBU using PLATFORM_FwkSrvSetRfSfcConfig()
- [Sensors]
  - fix: PLATFORM_GetTemperatureValue() shall have NBU started to send temperature to NBU

6.2.1: RW61x RFP3

- [NVS]
  - Add support of NVS and Settings in framework
- [MISRA] fixes
  - board_lp.c BOARD_UninitDebugConsole() and BOARD_ReinitDebugConsole()

  - fwk_platform_ble.c: Various fixes
- [OTA]
  - Fix OTA partition overflow during OTA stop and resume transfer

6.2.0: RT1060/RT1170 SDK2.15 Major

6.1.8: KW45/K32W1 MR4

- [BOARD PLATFORM]
  - Move gBoardUseFro32k_d to board_platform.h file
  - Offer the possibility to change the source clock accuracy to gain in power consumption
- [BOARD LP]
  - Move PLATFORM_SetRamBanksRetained() at end of BOARD_EnterLowPowerCb() in case a memory allocation is done previously in this function
  - fix low power, increase BOARD_RADIO_DOMAIN_WAKE_UP_DELAY from 0 to 0x10 - Skip this delay when App requesting NBU wakeup
- [PLATFORM]
  - fwk_platform_ble.c/h: New timestamp API that returns the difference between the current value of the LL clock and the argument of the function
  - fwk_platform.c/h:
    * New PLATFORM_EnableEccFaultsAPI_d compile flag: Enable APIs for interception of ECC Fault in bus fault handler
    * New gInterceptEccBusFaults_d compile flag: Provide FaultRecovery() demo code for bus fault handler to Intercept bus fault from Flash Ecc error
- [LOC]
  - Incorrect behavior for set_dtest_page (DqTEST11 overridden)
  - Fix SW1 button wake able on Localization board
  - Fix yellow led not properly initialized
  - Format localization pin_mux.c/h files
- [Inter Core]
  - Affect values to enumeration giving the inter core service message ids
  - Shared memory settings shared between both cores
  - Add callback to register when NBU has unrecoverable Radio issue
- [NVM]
  - Add NV_STORAGE_MAX_SECTORS, NV_STORAGE_SIZE as linker symbol for alignment with other toolchain
  - ECC detection and recovery. New gNvSalvageFromEccFault_d and gNvVerifyReadBackAfterProgram_d compile flags. Please refer to ECC Fault detection section in README.md file located in NVM folder
- [OTA]
  - Prevent bus fault in case of ECC error when reading back OTA_CFR update status (disable by default)
- [SecLib]

  - Shared mutex for RNG and SecLib as they share same hardware resource
- [Key storage]
  - Fix to ignore the garbage at the end of buffers
  - Detect when buffers are too small in KS_AddKey() functions
- [FileCache]
  - Fix deadlock in Filecache FC_Process()
- [SDK]
  - Applications: remove definition of stack location and use default from linker script, fix warmboot stack in freertos at 0x20004000
  - Memory Manager Light:
    * fix Null pointer harfault when MEM_STATISTICS_INTERNAL enable
    * Fix MemReinitBank() on wakeup from lowpower when Ecc banks are turned off

6.1.7: KW45/K32W1 MR3

- [OTA]
  - New API OTA_SetNewImageFlagWithOffset()
  - Fix StorageBitmapSize calculation
  - OTA clean up: Removed OTA_ValidateImage()
- [Low Power]
  - New linker Symbol m_lowpower_flag_start in linker file.
    * Flag is used to indicate NBU that Application domain goes to power down mode. Keep this flag to 0 if only Deep sleep is supported
    * This flag will be set to 1 if Application domain goes to power down mode
  - Re-introduce PWR_AllowDeviceToSleep()/PWR_DisallowDeviceToSleep(), PWR_IsDeviceAllowedToSleep() API
  - Implement tick compensation mechanism for idle hook in a dedicated freertos utils file fwk_freertos_utils.[ch], new functions: FWK_PreIdleHookTickCompensation() and FWK_PostIdleHookTickCompensation
  - Rework timestamping on K4W1
    * PLATFORM_GetMaxTimeStamp() based on TSTMR
    * Rename PLATFORM_GetTimestamp() to PLATFORM_GetTimeStamp()
    * Update PLATFORM_Delay(): Rework to use TSTMR instead of LPTMR for platform_delay
    * Update PLATFORM_WaitTimeout(): Fixed a bug in PLATFORM_WaitTimeout() related to timer wrap
    * Add PLATFORM_IsTimeoutExpired() API
  - Fix race condition in PWR_EnterLowPower(), masking interrupts in case not done at upper layer
  - Low power timer split in new files fwk_platform_lowpower_timer.[ch]
  - New PWR_systicks_bm.c file for bare metal usage: implement SysTick suspend/resume functionality, New weak PWR_SysTicksLowPowerInit()
- [FRO32K]

  - Improve FRO32K calibration in NBU
  - create PLATFORM_InitFro32K() to initialize FRO32K instead of XTAL32K (to be called from hardware_init())
  - update FRO32K README.md file in SFC module
  - Debug:
  - Add Notification callback feature for SFC module FRO32K
  - Linker script update to support m_sfc_log_start in SMU2
- [SecLib]
  - Remove gSecLibSssUseEncryptedKeys_d compile option, split Secure/Unsecure APIs
  - RNG update to use same mutex than SecLib
  - Fix AES_128_CBC_Encrypt_And_Pad length
  - Implement RNG_ReInit() for lowpower
  - Fix issue in ECDH_P256_GenerateKeys() when waking up from power down
  - Call CRYPTO_ELEMU_reset() from SecLib_reInit() for power down support
- [BOARD]
  - Create new board_platform.h file for all Board characteristics settings (32Mhz XTAL, 32KHZ XTAL, etc..)
  - TM_EnterLowpower() TM_EnterLowpower() to be called from LP callbacks
  - Support Localization boards, Only BUTTON0 supported
    * New compile flag BOARD_LOCALIZATION_REVISION_SUPPORT
    * New pin_mux.[ch] files
  - Offer the possibility to override CDAC and ISEL 32MHz settings before the initialization of the crystal in board_platform.h
    * new BOARD_32MHZ_XTAL_CDAC_VALUE, BOARD_32MHZ_XTAL_ISEL_VALUE
    * BOARD_32MHZ_XTAL_TRIM_DEFAULT obsoleted
- [NVM file system]
  - Look ahead in pending save queue - Avoid consuming space to save outdated record
  - Fix NVM gNvDualImageSupport feature in NvIsRecordCopied
- [Inter Core]
  - Change PLATFORM_NbuApiReq() API return parameters granularity from uint32 to uint8
  - MAX_VARIANT_SZ change from 20 to 25
  - Set lp wakeup delay to 0 to reduce time of execution on host side, NBU waits XTAL to be ready before starting execution
  - Update inter core config rpmsg_config.h
  - Add timeout to while loops that relies on hardware in RemoteActiveReq(), Application can register Callbacks when timeout
  - Return non-0 status when calling PLATFORM_FwkSrvSendPacket when NBU non started
  - Let PLATFORM_GetNbuInfo return -10 if response not received on timeout - Doxygen platform_ics APIs
- [HW params]

  - New compile Macro for HW params placement in IFR - Save 8K in FLash: gHwParamsProdDataPlacement_c . 3 modes:
  - Legacy placement, move from legacy to IFR, IFR only placement
  - New compile Macro for Application data to be stored with HW params (in shared flash sector): gHwParamsAppFactoryDataExtension_d, New APIs:
    * Nv_WriteAppFactoryData(), Nv_GetAppFactoryData()
  - See HWParameter.h
- [Platform]
  - Implement PLATFORM_GetIeee802_15_4Addr() API in fwk_platform_ot.c - New gPlatformUseUniqueDeviceIdFor15_4Addr_d compile Macro
  - Wakeup NBU domain when reading RADIO_CTRL UID_LSB register in PLATFORM_GenerateNewBDAddr()
- [Reset]
  - New reset Implementations using Deep power down mode or LVD:
    * new files fwk_platform_reset.[ch]
    * new APIs: PLATFORM_ForceDeepPowerDownReset(), PLATFORM_ForceLvdReset() + reset on ext pins
    * new compile flags: gAppForceDeepPowerDownResetOnResetPinDet_d and gAppForceLvdResetOnResetPinDet_d to reset on external pins
- [FSCI]
  - fix when gFsciRxAck_c enabled
  - integrate new reset APIs

6.1.4: RW610/RW612 RFP1

- [Low Power]
  - Added support of low power for OpenThread stack.
  - Added PWR_AllowDeviceToSleep/PWR_DisallowDeviceToSleep/PWR_IsDeviceAllowedToSleep APIs.
- [platform]
  - Added PLATFORM_GetMaxTimeStamp API.
  - Fixed high impact Coverity.
- [FreeRTOS]
  - Created a new utilities module for FreeRTOS: fwk_freertos_utils.c/h.
  - Implemented a tick compensation mechanism to be used in FreeRTOS idle hook, likely around flash operations. This mechanism aims to estimate the number of ticks missed by FreeRTOS in case the interrupts are masked for a long time.

6.1.4: KW45/K32W1 MR2

- [Low power]
  - Powerdown mode tested and enabled on Low Power Reference Design applications
  - XTAL32K removal functionality using FRO32K, supported from NBU firmwares - limitation: Application domain supports Deep Sleep only (not power down)

  - NBU low power improvement: low power entry sequence improvement and system clock reduction to 16Mhz during WFI
  - Wake up time from cold boot, reset, power switch greatly improved. Device starts on FRO32K, switch to XTAL32K when ready if gBoardUseFro32k_d not set
  - Bug fixes:
    * Move PWR LowPower callback to PLATFORM layers
    * Fix wrong compensation of SysTicks
    * Reinit system clocks when exiting power down mode: BOARD_ExitPowerDownCb(), restore 96MHz clock is set before going to low power
    * Call Timermanager lowpower entry exit callbacks from PLATFORM_EnterLowPower()
    * Update PLATFORM_ShutdownRadio() function to force NBU for Deep power down mode
  - K32W1:
    * Support lowpower mode for 15.4 stacks
- [NVM]
  - New Compilation MACRO gNvDualImageSupport to support multiple firmware image with different register dataset
  - Change default configuration gNvStorageIncluded_d to 1, gNvFragmentation_Enabled_d to 1, gUnmirroredFeatureSet_d to TRUE
  - Some MISRA issues for this new configuration.
  - Remove deprecated functionality gNvUseFlexNVM_d
- [SecLib]
  - New NXP Ultrafast ecp256 security library:
    * New optimized API for ecdh DhKey/ecp256 key pair computation: Ecdh_ComputeDhKeyUltraFast(), ECP256_GenerateKeyPairUltraFast().
    * New macro gSecLibUseDspExtension_d.
    * Improved software version of Seclib with Ultrafast library for ECP256_LePointValid()
  - Bug fixes:
    * Share same mutex between Seclib and RNG to prevent concurrent access to S200
    * Optimized S200 re-initialization, restore ecdh key pair after power down
    * Fixed race condition when power down low power entry is aborted
    * Endianness function updates and clean up
- [OTA]
  - OTASupport improvements:
    * New API OTA_GetImgState(), OTA_UpdateImgState()
    * OTASupport and fwk_platform_extflash API updates for external flash: OTA_SelectExternalStoragePartition(), PLATFORM_IsExternalFlashSectorBlank(), PLATFORM_IsExternalFlashPageBlank(), PLATFORM_OtaGetOtaPartitionConfig()
    * Updated OtaExternalFlash.c, 2 new APIs in fwk_platform_extflash.c

    - Removed unused FLASH_op_type and FLASH_TransactionOpNode_t definitions from public API
    - Removed unused InternalFlash_EraseBlock() from OtaInternalFlash.c

- [NBU firmware]
  - Mechanism to set frequency constraint to controller from the host PLATFORM_SetNbuConstraintFrequency()
  - NbuInfo has one more digit in versionBuildNo field
- [Board]
  - Support Extflash low power mode, add BOARD_UninitExternalFlash(), PLATFORM_UninitExternalFlash(), PLATFORM_ReinitExternalFlash()
  - Support XTAL32K removal functionatity, use FRO32K instead by setting gBoardUseFro32k_d to 1 in board.h file
  - Support localization boards KW45B41Z-LOC Rev C
  - Low power improvement: New BOARD_InitPins() and BOARD_InitPinButtonBootConfig() called from hardware_init.c
  - Removed KW45_A0_SUPPORT support (dcdc)
  - Bug fixes:
    - Fixed glitches on the serial manager RX when exiting from power down
    - Fixed ADC not deinitialized in clock gated modes in BOARD_EnterLowPowerCb()
    - Fixed UART output flush when going to low power: BOARD_UninitAppConsole()
- [platform]
  - PLATFORM_InitBle(), PLATFORM_SendHci() can now block with timeout if NBU does not answer. Application can register callback function to be notified when it occurs: PLATFORM_RegisterBleErrorCallback()
  - Added API to set and get 32Khz XTAL capacitance values: PLATFORM_GetOscCap32KValue() and PLATFORM_SetOscCap32KValue()
  - Added new Service FWK call gFwkSrvNbuMemFullIndication_c to get NBU mem full indication, register with PLATFORM_RegisterNbuMemErrorCallback()
  - Added support negative value in platform intercore service
- [linker script]
  - Realigned gcc linker script with IAR linker script.
  - Added possibility to redefine cstack_start position
  - Added Possibility to change gNvmSectors in gcc linker script
  - Added dedicated reserved Section in shared memory for LL debugging
- [FreeRTOSConfig.h]
  - Removed unused MACRO configFRTOS_MEMORY_SCHEME and configTOTAL_HEAP_SIZE
- [HW Param]
  - Added xtalCap32K field to store XTAL32K triming value
- [fwk_hal_macros.h]
  - Added MACRO for KB, MB and set, clear bits in bit fields
- [Debug]

  - Added MACROs for performance measurement using DWT: DBG_PERF_MEAS

6.1.3 KW45 MR1 QP1

- [Initialization] Delay the switch to XTAL32K source clock until the BLE host stack is initialized
- [lowpower] NBU wakeup from lowpower: configuration can now be programmed with BOARD_NBU_WAKEUP_DELAY_LPO_CYCLE, BOARD_RADIO_DOMAIN_WAKE_UP_DELAY in board.h file
- [NBU firmware] Major fix for NBU system clock accuracy
- [clock_config]
  - Update SRAM margin and flash config when switching system frequency
  - Trim FIRC in HSRUN case
- [XTAL 32K trim] XTAL 32K configuration can be tuned in board.h file with BOARD_32MHZ_XTAL_TRIM_DEFAULT, BOARD_32KHZ_XTAL_CLOAD_DEFAULT, BOARD_32KHZ_XTAL_COARSE_ADJ_DEFAULT
- [MAC address] Add OUI field in PLATFORM_GenerateNewBDAddr() when using Unique Device Id

6.1.2: RW610/RW612 PRC1

- [Low Power]
  - Updates after SDK Power Manager files renaming.
  - Moved PWR LowPower callback to PLATFORM layers.
  - Bug fixes:
    - Fixed wrong compensation of SysTicks during tickless idle.
    - Reinit RTC bus clock after exit from PM3 (power down).
- [OTA]
  - Initial support for OTA using the external flash.
- [platform]
  - Implemented platform specific time stamp APIs over OSTIMER.
  - Implemented platform specific APIs for OTA and external flash support.
  - Removed PLATFORM_GetLowpowerMode API.
  - Added support of CPU2 wake up over Spinel for OpenThread stack.
  - Bug fixes:
    - Fixed issues related to handling CPU2 power state.
- [board]
  - Updated flash_config to support 64MB range.
- [linker script]
  - Fixed wrong assert.

6.1.1: KW45/K32W1 MR1

- [platform] Use new FLib_MemSet32Aligned() to write in ECC RAM bank to force ECC calculation in the MEM_ReinitRamBank() function
- [FunctionLib] Implement new API to set a word aligned
- [platform] Set coarse amplifier gain of the oscilattor 32k to 3
- [platform] Switch back to RNG for MAC Adress generation
- [SecLib] Get rid of the lowpower constraint of deep sleep in ECDH API
- [DCDC] Set DCDC output voltage to 1.35V in case LDO core is set to 1.1V to ensure a drop of 250mV between them
- [NVM] NvIdle() is now returning the number of operations that has been executed
- [documentation] Add markdown of each framework module by default on all package
- [LowPower] Add a delay advised by hardware team on exit of lowpower for SPC
- [SecLib] Rework of SecLib_mbedTLS ECDH functions
- [OTA] Make OTA_IsTransactionPending() public API
- [FunctionLib] Change prototype of FLib_MemCpyWord(), pDst is now a void* to permit more flexibility
- [NVM] Add an API to know if there is a pending operation in the queue
- [FSCI] Fix wrong error case handling in FSCI_Monitor()

6.1.0: KW45/K32W1 RFP

- [LowPower] Do not call PLATFORM_StopWakeUpTimer() in PWR_EnterLowPower() if PLATFORM_StartWakeUpTimer() was not previously called
- [boards] Add the possibility to wakeup on UART 0 even if it is not the default UART
- [boards] Add support for Hardware flow control for UART0, Enable with gBoardUseUart0HwFlowControl, Pin mux update with two additional API for RTS, CTS pins
- [Sensors] Improve ADC wakeup time from deep sleep state: use save and restore API for ADC context before/after deep sleep state.
- [linker script] update SMU2 shared memory region layout with NBU: increase sqram_btblebuf_size to support 24 connections. Shared memory region moved to the end
- [SecLib] SecLib_DeriveBluetoothSKD() API update to support if EdgeLock key shall be regenerated

6.0.11: KW45/K32W1 PRC3.1

FSCI: Framework Serial Communication Interface

Overview The Framework Serial Communication Interface (FSCI) is both a software module and a protocol that allows monitoring and extensive testing of the protocol layers. It also allows separation of the protocol stack between two protocol layers in a two processing entities setup, the host processor (typically running the upper layers of a protocol stack) and the Black Box application (typically containing the lower layers of the stack, serving as a modem). The Test Tool software is an example of a host processor, which can interact with FSCI Black Boxes at various

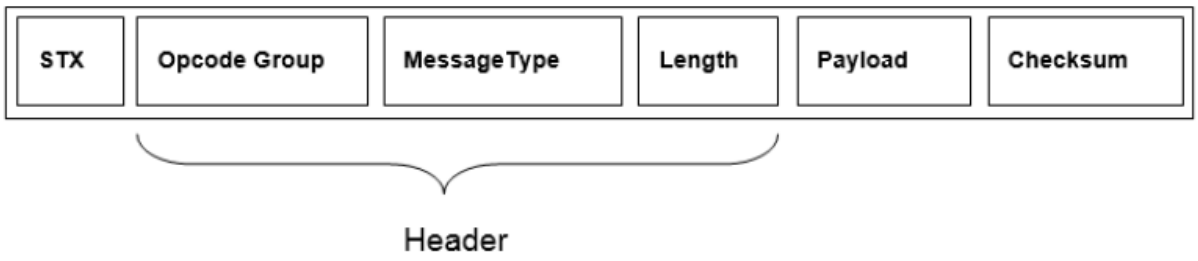
layers. In this setup, the user can run numerous commands to test the Black Box application services and interfaces.

The FSCI enables common service features for each device enables monitoring of specific interfaces and API calls. Additionally, the FSCI injects or calls specific events and commands into the interfaces between layers.

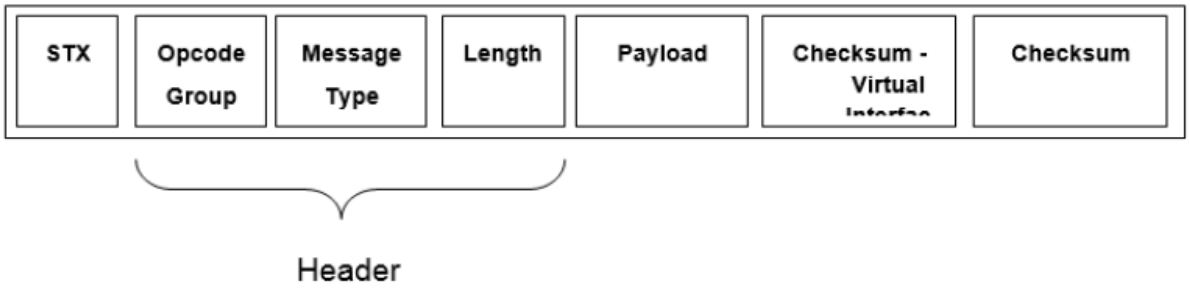
An entity which needs to be interfaced to the FSCI module can use the API to register opcodes to specific interfaces. After doing so, any packet coming from that interface with the same opcode triggers a callback execution. Two or more entities cannot register the same opcode on the same interface, but they can do so on different interfaces. For example, two MAC instances can register the same opcodes, one over UARTA, and the other over UARTB. This way, Test Tool can communicate with each MAC layer over two UART interfaces.

The FSCI module executes either in the context of the Serial Manager task or owns its dedicated task if the compilation Macro *gFsciUseDedicatedTask_c* is set to 1.

FSCI packet structure The FSCI module sends and receives messages as shown in the figure below. This structure is not specific to a serial interface and is designed to offer the best communication reliability. The Black Box device expects messages in little-endian format. It also responds with messages in little-endian format.



Below is an illustration of the FSCI packet structure when a virtual interface is used instead :



Field name	Length (bytes)	Description
STX	1	Used for synchronization over the serial interface. The value is always 0x02.
Opcode Group	1	Distinguishes between different Service Access Primitives (for example MLME or MCPS).
Message Type	1	Specifies the exact message opcode that is contained in the packet.
Length	1 or 2	The length of the packet payload, excluding the header and FCS. The length field content must be provided in little-endian format.
Payload	variable	Payload of the actual message.
Checksum	1	Checksum field used to check the data integrity of the packet.
Checksum2	0 or 1	The second CRC field appears only for virtual interfaces.

NOTE : When virtual interfaces are used, the first checksum is decremented with the ID of the interface. The second checksum is used for error detection.

constant definition The following Macro configurs the FSCI module

```
#define gFsciIncluded_c 0 /* Enable/Disable FSCI module */
#define gFsciUseDedicatedTask_c 1 /* Enable Fsci task to avoid recursivity in Fsci module (Misra␣
↪compliant) */
#define gFsciMaxOpGroups_c 8
#define gFsciMaxInterfaces_c 1
#define gFsciMaxVirtualInterfaces_c 0
#define gFsciMaxPayloadLen_c 245 /* bytes */
#define gFsciTimestampSize_c 0 /* bytes */
#define gFsciLenHas2Bytes_c 0 /* boolean */
#define gFsciUseEscapeSeq_c 0 /* boolean */
#define gFsciUseFmtLog_c 0 /* boolean */
#define gFsciUseFileDataLog_c 0 /* boolean */
#define gFsciLoggingInterface_c 1 /* [0..gFsciMaxInterfaces_c) */
#define gFsciHostMacSupport_c 0 /* Host support at MAC layer */
```

The following provides the OpGroups values reserved by MAC, application, and FSCI.

FSCI Host FSCI Host is a functionality that allows separation at a certain stack layer between two entities, usually two boards running separate layers of a stack.

Support is provided for functionality at the MAC layer, for example, MAC/PHY layers of a stack are running as a Black Box on a board, and MAC higher layers are running on another. The higher layers send and receive serial commands to and from the MAC Black Box using the FSCI set of operation codes and groups.

The protocol of communication between the two is the same. The current level of support is provided for:

- FSCI_MsgResetCPUReqFunc – sends a CPU reset request to black box
- FSCI_MsgWriteExtendedAdrReqFunc – configures MAC extended address to the Black Box
- FSCI_MsgReadExtendedAdrReqFunc – N/A

The approach on the Host interfacing a Black Box using synchronous primitives is by default the polling of the FSCI_receivePacket function, until the response is received from the Black Box. The calling task polls whenever the task is being scheduled. This is required because a stack synchronous primitive requires that the response of that request is available in the context of the caller right after the SAP call has been executed.

The other option, available for RTOS environments, is using an event mechanism. The calling task blocks waiting for the event that is sent from the Serial Manager task when the response is available from the Black Box. This option is disabled by default. The disadvantage of this option is that the primitive cannot be received from another Black Box through a serial interface because the blocked task is the Serial Manager task, which reaches a deadlock as cannot be released again.

FSCI ACK ACK transmission is enabled through the gFsciTxAck_c macro definition. Each FSCI valid packet received triggers an FSCI ACK packet transmission on the same FSCI interface that the packet was received on. The serial write call is performed synchronously to send the ACK packet before any other FSCI packet. Only then the registered handler is called to process the received packet. The ACK is represented by the gFSCI_CnfOpcodeGroup_c and mFsciMsgAck_c Opcode. An additional byte is left empty in the payload so that it can be used optionally as a packet identifier to correlate packets and ACKs. ACK reception is the other component that is enabled through gFsciRxAck_c. The behavior is such that every FSCI packet sent through a serial

interface triggers an FSCI ACK packet reception on the same interface after the packet is sent. If an ACK packet is received, the transmission is considered successful. Otherwise, the packet is resent a number of times. The ACK wait period is configurable through mFsciRxAckTimeoutMs_c and the number of transmission retries through mFsciTxRetryCnt_c. The ACK mechanism described above can also be coupled with a FSCI packet reception timeout enabled through gFsciRxTimeout_c and configurable through mFsciRxRestartTimeoutMs_c. Whenever there are no more bytes to be read from a serial interface, a timeout is configured at the predefined value if no other bytes are received. If new bytes are received, the timer is stopped and eventually canceled at successful reception. However, if, for any reason, the timeout is triggered, the FSCI module considers that the current packet is invalid, drops it, and searches for a new start marker.

FSCI usage example Detailed data types and APIs are described in ConnFWK API documentation.

Initialization

```
/* Configure the number of interfaces and virtual interfaces used */
#define gFsciMaxInterfaces_c 4
#define gFsciMaxVirtualInterfaces_c 2
....
/* Define the interfaces used */
static const gFsciSerialConfig_t myFsciSerials[] = {
    /* Baudrate, interface type, channel No, virtual interface */ {gUARTBaudRate115200_c, gSerialMgrUart_
↪c, 1, 0}, {gUARTBaudRate115200_c, gSerialMgrUart_c, 1, 1}, {0 , gSerialMgrIICSlave_c, 1, 0}, {0 ,␣
↪gSerialMgrUSB_c, 0, 0},
};
....
/* Call init function to open all interfaces */
FSCI_Init( (void*)mFsciSerials );
```

Registering operation groups

```
myOpGroup = 0x12; // Operation Group used
myParam = NULL; // pointer to a parameter to be passed to the handler function (myHandlerFunc)
myInterface = 1; // index of entry from myFsciSerials
...
FSCI_RegisterOpGroup( myOpGroup, gFsciMonitorMode_c, myHandlerFunc, myParam, myInterface );
```

Implementing handler function

```
void fsciMcpsReqHandler(void *pData, void* param, uint32_t interfaceId)
{
    clientPacket_t *pClientPacket = ((clientPacket_t*)pData);
    fsciLen_t myNewLen;
    switch( pClientPacket->structured.header.opCode )
    {
        case 0x01:
        {
            /* Reuse packet received over the serial interface The OpCode remains the same. The length of the␣
↪response must be <= that the length of the received packet */
            pClientPacket->structured.header.opGroup = myResponseOpGroup;/* Process packet */
            ...
            pClientPacket->structured.header. len = myNewLen;
            FSCI_transmitFormatedPacket(pClientPacket, interfaceId);
            return;
        }
        case 0x02:
        {
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
        /* Alocate a new message for the response. The received packet is Freed */
        clientPacket_t *pResponsePkt = MEM_BufferAlloc( sizeof(clientPacketHdr_t) + myPayloadSize_d␣
↪+ sizeof(uint8_t) // CRC);
        if(pResponsePkt)
        {
            /* Process received data and fill the response packet */ ...
            pResponsePkt->structured.header. len = myPayloadSize_d;
            FSCI_transmitFormatedPacket(pClientPacket, interfaceId);
        }
        break;
    }
    default:
        MEM_BufferFree( pData );
        FSCI_Error( gFsciUnknownOpcode_c, interfaceId );
        return;
  }
  /* Free message received over the serial interface */
  MEM_BufferFree( pData );
}
```

Helper Functions Library

Overview This framework provides a collection of features commonly used in embedded software centered on memory manipulation.

HWParameter: Hardware parameter

Production Data Storage Hardware parameters provide production data storage

Overview Different platforms/boards need board/network node-specific settings to function according to the design. (Examples of such settings are IEEE® addresses and radio calibration values specific to the node.) For this purpose, the last flash sector is reserved and contains hardware-specific parameters for production data storage. These parameters pertain to the network node as a distinct entity. For example, a silicon mounted on a PCB in a specific configuration, rather than to just the silicon itself. This sector is reserved by the linker file, through the PROD_DATA section and it should be read/written only through the API described below.

> Note : This sector is not erased/written at code download time and it is not updated via over-the-air firmware update procedures to preserve the respective node-specific data, regardless of the firmware running on it.

Constant Definitions Name :

```
extern uint32_t PROD_DATA_BASE_ADDR[];
```

Description :

This symbol is defined in the linker script. It specifies the start address of the PROD_DATA section.

Name :

```
static const uint8_t mProdDataIdentifier[10] = {"PROD_DATA:"};
```

Description :

The value of this constant is copied as identification word (header) at the beginning of the PROD_DATA area and verified by the dedicated read function.

Note: the length of mProdDataIdentifier imposes the definition of PROD_DATA_ID_STRING_SZ as 10. The legacy HW parameters structure provides headroom for future usage. There are currently 63 bytes available.

Data type definitions Name :

```
typedef PACKED_STRUCT HwParameters_tag
{
    uint8_t identificationWord[PROD_DATA_ID_STRING_SZ]; /* internal usage only: valid data present */
    /*@{*/
    uint8_t bluetooth_address[BLE_MAC_ADDR_SZ];      /*!< Bluetooth address */
    uint8_t ieee_802_15_4_address[IEEE_802_15_4_SZ]; /*!< IEEE 802.15.4 MAC address - K32W1 only
↪*/
    uint8_t xtalTrim;                                /*!< XTAL 32MHz Trim value */
    uint8_t xtalCap32K;                               /*!< XTAL 32kHz capacitance value */
    /* For forward compatibility additional fields may be added here
       Existing data in flash will not be compatible after modifying the hardwareParameters_t typedef.
       In this case the size of the padding has to be adjusted.
    */
    uint8_t reserved[1];
    /* first byte of padding : actual size if 63 for legacy HwParameters but
      complement to 128 bytes in the new structure */
}
hardwareParameters_t;
```

Description:

Defines the structure of the hardware-dependent information.

> Note : Some members of this structure may be ignored on a specific board/silicon configuration. Also, new members may be added for implementation-specific purposes and the backward compatibility must be maintained.

The CRC calculation starts from the reserved field of the hardwareParameters_t and ends before the hardwareParamsCrc field. Additional members to this structure may be added using the following method :

Add new fields before the reserved field. This method does not cause a CRC fail, but you must keep in mind to subtract the total size of the new fields from the size of the reserved field. For example, if a field of uint8_t size is added using this method, the size of the reserved field shall be changed to 63.

Co-locating application factory data in HW Parameters flash sector. The sector containing the Hardware parameter structure may be located in the internal flash, usually at its last sector. The actual Hardware parameter structure has a size of 128 bytes - including padding reserved for future use. Since there is plenty of room available in a flash sector (4kB or 8kB), co-locating Application Factory Data in the same structure prevents from reserving another flash sector for these data. The application designer may adopt this solution by defining gHwParamsAppFactoryDataExtension_d as 1. A total of 2kB is alloted to this purpose.

If this option was chosen, whenever any of the Hardware parameter fields is modified, its CRC16 will change so the sector will need erasing. The gHwParamsAppFactoryDataPreserveOnHwParamUpdate_d compilation option deals with restoring the contents of the App Factory Data. Nonetheless this requires a temporary allocation a 2kB buffer to preserve the previous content and restore then on completion of the Hw Parameter update.

Special reserved area at start of IFR1 in range [0x02002000..0x02002600[On development boards a 1536 byte area is reserved and the actual Hardware parameter area begins at offset 0x600. Preserving this area on a HW parameter update also requires a temporary 1.5kB dynamic allocation (in addition to the App Factory 2kB allocation), to be able to restore on completion of update operation.

HW Parameters Production Data placement options The placement of production data (PROD_DATA) can be selected based on the definition of gHwParamsProdDataPlacement_c (see fwk_config.h). The productions data seldom need update for final products, once calibration data, MAC addresses or others have been programmed. Two cases exist, plus a transition mode :

1) gHwParamsProdDataMainFlashMode_c (0) :
   - PROD_DATA are located at top of Main Flash. Hardware parameters section is placed in the last sector of internal flash [0xfe000..0x100000[.
   - The linker script must reserve this area explicitly so as to prevent placement of NVM or text sections at that location by setting gUseProdInfoMainFlash_d.
2) gHwParamsProdDataMainFlash2IfrMode_c(1) : - PROD_DATA are located in IFR1, but MainFlash version still exists during interim period. - If the contents of the PROD_DATA section in MainFlash is valid (not blank and correct CRC) but the IFR PROD_DATA is still blank, copy the contents of MainFlash PROD_DATA to IFR location. - When done PROD_DATA in IFR are used. Once the transition is done, an application using (2: gHwParamsProdDataPlacementIfrMode_c) may be programmed.
3) gHwParamsProdDataIfrMode_c (2) :
   - PROD_DATA section dwells in the IFR1 sector [0x02002000..0x02004000[
   - in development phase the area comprised between [0x02002000..0x02002600[must be reserved for internal purposes.
   - This allows to free up the top sector of Main Flash by linking with gUseProdInfoMainFlash_d unset.

LowPower

Low Power reference user guide This Readme file describes the connectivity software architecture and provides the general low power enablement user guide.

1- Connectivity Low Power SW architecture The connectivity low power software architecture is composed of various components. These are described from the lower layer to the application layer:

1. The SDK power manager in component/power_manager. This component provides the basic low power framework. It is not specific to the connectivity but generic across devices. it covers:
   - gather the low power constraints for upper layer and take the decision on the best suitable low power state the device is allowed to go to fullfill the constraints.
   - call the low power entry and exit function callbacks
   - call the appropriate SW routines to switch the device into the suitable low power state
2. Connectivity Low power module in the connectivity framework. This module is composed of:

- The low power service called PWR inside framework/LowPower (this folder), This module is generic to all connectivity devices.
- The platform lowpower: fwk_platform_lowpower.[ch] located in framework\platform\<platform_name>. These files are a collection of low power routines functions for the PWR module and upper layer. These are specific to the device.

  Both PWR and platform lowpower files are detailed in section below.

3. Low power Application modules, it consists of 3 parts:
   - Application initialization file app_services_init.c where the application initializes the low power framework, see next section 'Demo example for typical usage of low power framework'
   - Application Idle task from application to call the main low power entry function PWR_EnterLowPower() to switch the device into lowpower. This function is application specific, one example is given in the section 1.3.3
   - Low power board files : board_lp.[ch] located in board/lowpower. These files implement the low power entry and exit functions related to the application and board. Customers shall modify these files for their own needs. Example code is given for the connectivity applications.

     User guide is provided in section 1.3 below.

   Note : Linker script may also be impacted for power down mode support in order to provide an RAM area for ROM warm boot (depends on the platform) and application warmboot stack

The Low power central and master reference design applications provide an example of Low power implementation for BLE. Customer can also refer to the associated document 'low power connectivity reference design user guide'.

1.1 - SDK power manager This module provides the main low power functionalities such as:

- Decide the best low-power mode dependent on the constraints set by upper layers by using PWR_SetLowPowerModeConstraints() API function.
- Handle the sequences to enter and exit low-power mode.
- Enable and configure wake up sources, call the application callbacks on low power entry/exit sequences.

The SDK power manager provides the capability for application and all components to receive low power constraints to the power. The Application does not set the low-power mode the device shall go into. When going to low power, the SDK power manager selects the best low-power mode that fits all the constraints.

As an example, if the low power constraint set from Application is Power Down mode, and no other constraint is set, the SDK power manager selects Power down mode, the next time the device enters low power. However, if a new constraint is set by another component, such as the SecLib module that operates Hardware encryption, the SecLib module would select WFI as additional low power constraint. Also, the SDK power manager selects this last low-power mode until the constraint is released by the SecLib module. It then reselects Power Down mode for further low power entry modes.

1.2 - PWR Low power module The PWR module in the connectivity framework provides additional services for the connectivity stacks and applications on top of the SDK power manager.

It also provides a simple API for Connectivity Stack and Connectivity applications.

However, more advanced features such as configuring the wake-up sources are only accessible from the SDK Power Manager API.

In addition to the SDK Power Manager, the PWR module uses the software resources from lower level drivers but is independent of the platform used.

1.2.1 - Functional description Initialization of the PWR module should be done through PWR_Init() function. This is mainly to initialize the SDK power manager and the platform for low power. It also registers PWR low power entry/exit callback PWR_LowpowerCb() to the SDK power manager. This function will be called back when entering and exiting low power to perform mandatory save/restore operations for connectivity stacks. The application can perform extra optional save/restore operations in the board_lp file where it can register to the SDK Power Manager its own callback. This is usually used to handle optional peripherals such as serial interfaces, GPIOs, and so on.The main entry function is PWR_EnterLowPower(). It should be called from Idle task when no SW activity is required. The maximum duration for lowpower is given as argument timeoutUs in useconds. This function will check the next Hardware event in the connectivity stack, typically the next Radio activity. A wakeup timer is programmed if the timeoutUs value is shorter than the next radio event timing. Passing a timeout of 0us will be interpreted as no timeout on the application side.

On device wakeup from low power state, the function will return the time duration the device has been in low power state.

Two APi are provided to set and release low power state constraints : PWR_SetLowPowerModeConstraint() and PWR_ReleaseLowPowerModeConstraint(). These are helper functions. User can use directly the SDK power manager if needed.

The PWR module also provides some API to be set as callbacks into other components to prevent from going to low power state. It can be used in following examples :

1. If a DMA is running, the module in charge of the DMA would need to set a constraint to avoid the system from going to a low power state when the RAM and system bus are no longer available.
2. If transfer is going on a peripheral, the drivers shall set a constraint to forbid low power mode.
3. If encryption is on going through an Hardware accelerator, the HW accelerator and the required ressources (clocks, etc), shall be kept active also by setting a constraints.

1.2.2 - Tickless mode support This module also provides some routines functions PWR_SysticksPreProcess() and PWR_SysticksPostProcess() from PWR_systicks.c in order to support the tickless mode when using FreeRTOS. The tickless mode is the capability to suspend the periodic system ticks from FreeRTOS and keep timebase tracking using another low power counter. In this implementation, the Timer Manager and time_stamp component are used for this purpose.

Idle task shall call these functions PWR_SysticksPreProcess() and PWR_SysticksPostProcess() before and after the call to the main low power entry function PWR_EnterLowPower().

Refer to framework/LowPower/PWR_systicks.c file or section 2.1 below for more information.

1.3 - Low power platform submodule Low power platform module file fwk_platform_lowpower.c provides the necessary helper functions to support low power device initialization, device entry, and exit routines. These are platform and device specific. Typically, the PWR module uses the low power platform submodule for all low power specific routines.

The low power platform submodule is documented in the Connectivity Framework Reference Manual document and in the Connectivity Framework API document.

1.4 - Low power board files Low power board files board_lp.[ch] are both application and board specific. Users should update this file to add new functions to include new used peripherals that require low power support. In the current SDK package, only Serial Manager over UART and button (IO toggle wake up source) are supported and demonstrated in the Bluetooth LE demo application.

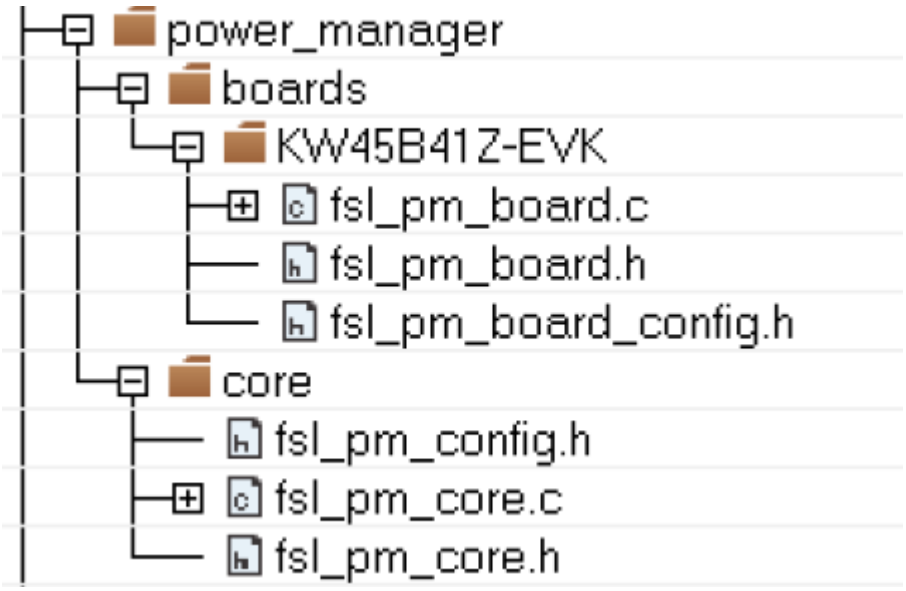
Other peripherals that require specific action on low power entry and restore on low power exit should be added to low power board files. For more details, refer to section Low power board file update

2 - Low power Application user guide This section provides a user guide to enable Low power on a connectivity application, It gives example of typical implementation for the initialization, Idle task function and low power entry/exit functions.

2.1 - Application Project updates It is recommended to reuse the low-power peripheral/central reference design application projects as a start. This ensures that everything is in place for the low-power optimization feature. Then, application files may be added to one of the two projects.

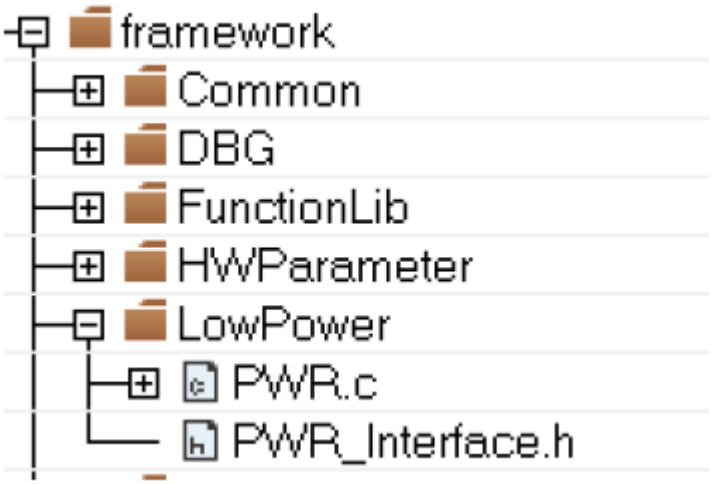
However, users can start directly from the application project and implement low power in it, by performing the steps described in the following sections.

2.1.1 - SDK Power Manager Most of the Low power functionality is implemented in the SDK Power Manager. The files to add into the project SDK power_manager module are listed in the figure below:



You need to use the files located in the folder that match your device.

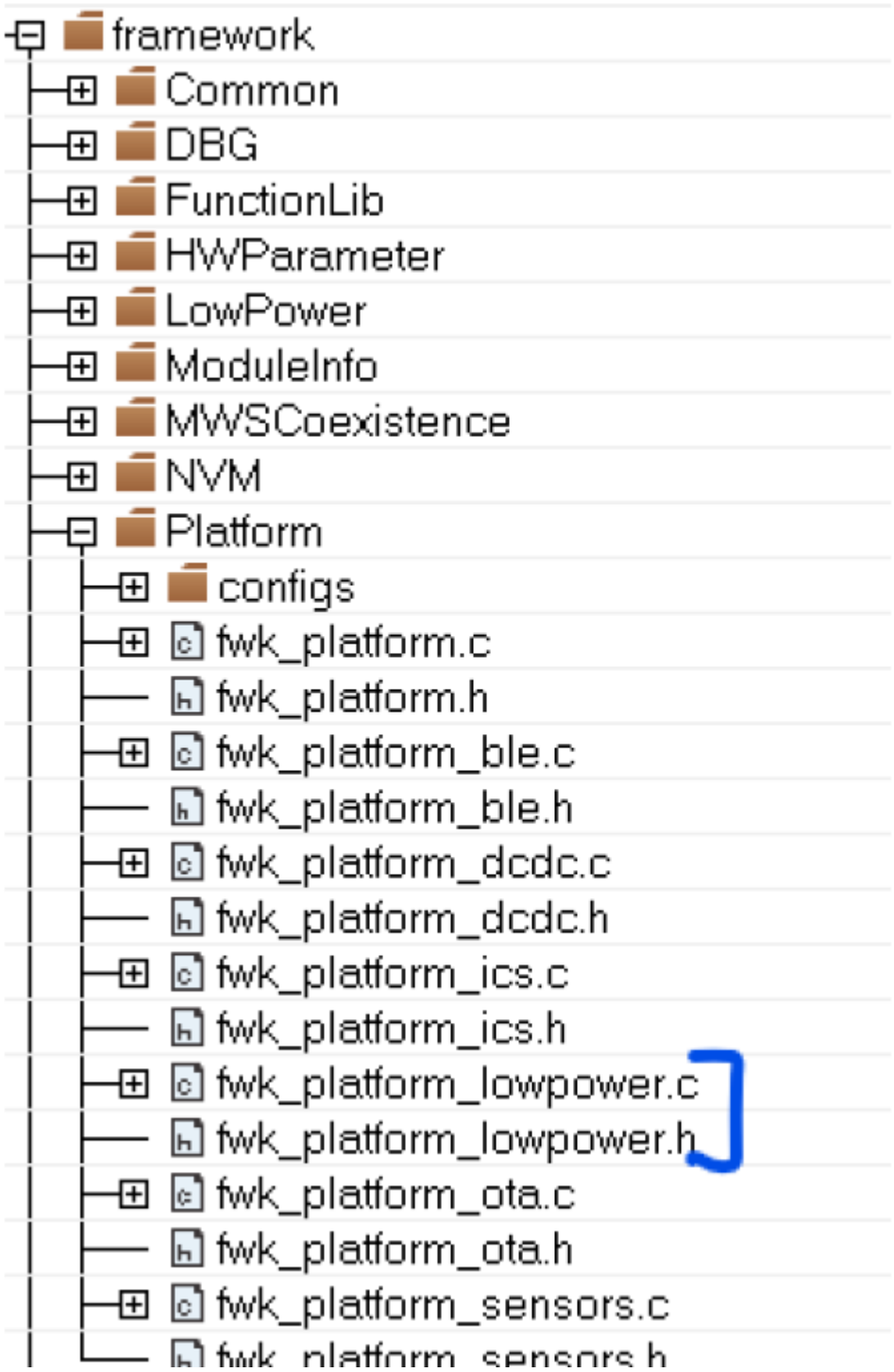
2.1.2 - PWR connectivity framework module PWR.c PWR_Interface.h shall be added to your application projects :



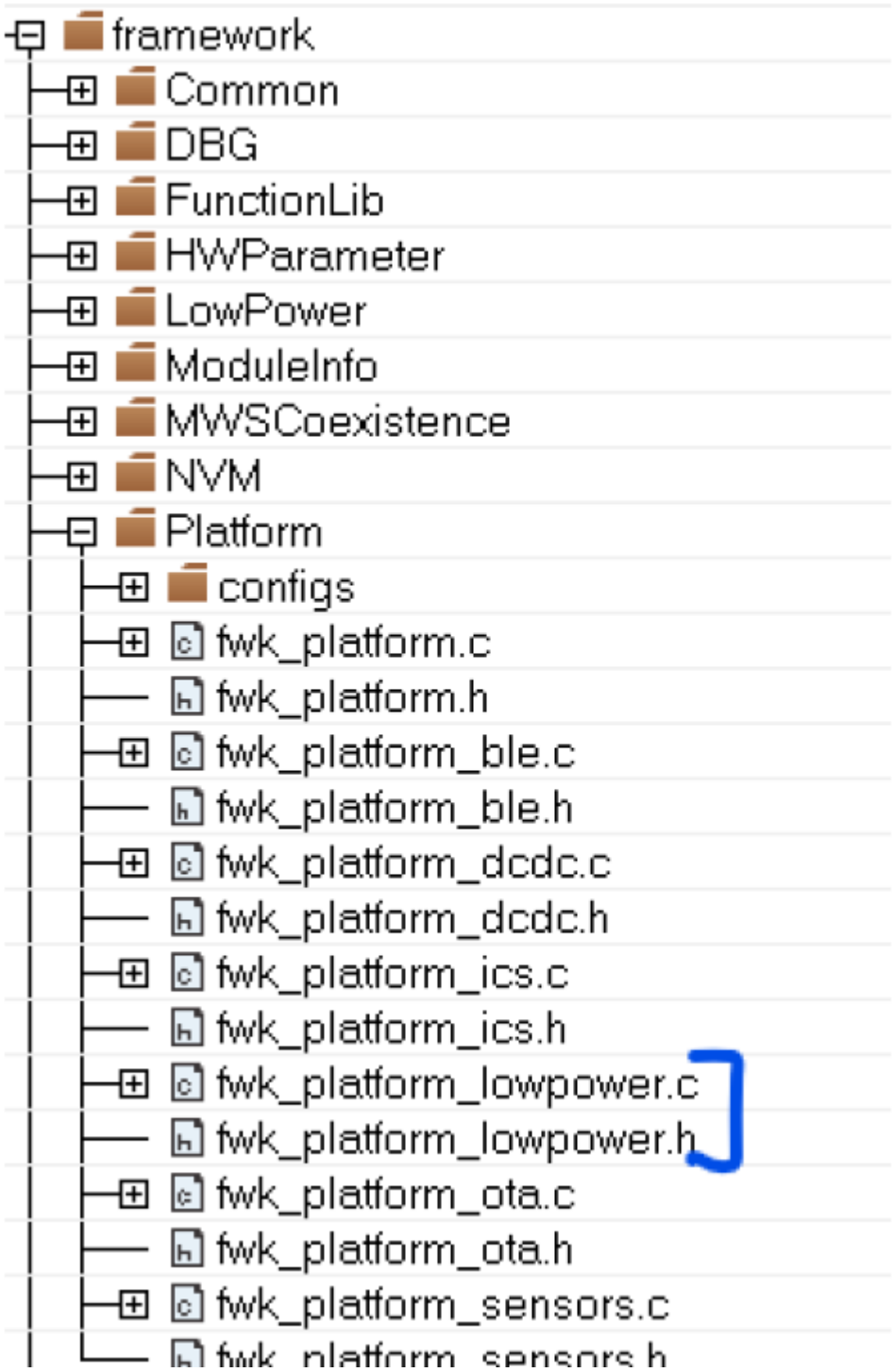
Optionally, in order to support Systick less mode, PWR_systicks.c or PWR_systicks_bm.c could also be added.

The include path to add is: middleware/wireless/framework/LowPower

2.1.3 -Low power platform submodule Low power platform files can be found in the 'Platform' module in the connectivity framework:



2.1.4 - Low power board files These files are located in the same folder that the other board files board.[ch]. Hence, it is not required to add any new include path at compiler command line.



2.1.5 - Application RTOS Idle hook and tickeless hook functions See section 2.4.3 Idle task implementation example

2.2 - Low power and wake up sources Initialization Low power initialization and configuration are performed in APP_ServiceInitLowpower()function. This is called from APP_InitServices() function called from the main() function so all is already set up when calling the main application entry point, typically BluetoothLEHost_AppInit() function in the Bluetooth LE demo applications.

The default Low Power mode configured in APP_InitServices() is Deep Sleep mode. In Bluetooth

LE, (or any other stack technology), Deep Sleep mode fits for all use cases. For instance, for Bluetooth LE states: Advertising, Connected, Scanning states. This mode already performs a very good level of power saving and likely, this is not required to optimize more if the device is powered from external supply.

APP_ServiceInitLowpower() function performs the following initialization and configuration:

- Initialize the Connectivity framework Low power module PWR_Init(), this function initialized the SDK power manager.
- Configure the wakeup sources such as serial manager wake up source for UART, or button for IO wake up configuration. These are typical wakeup sources used in the connectivity application. Developer may want to add additional wake up sources here specific for the application.

  Note : The low power timer wakeup source and wakeup from Radio domain are directly enabled from the Connectivity framework Low power module PWR as it is mandatory for the connectivity stack. If your application supports other peripherals (such as i2c, spi, and others) that require wake sources from low power, developer should add additional wake up sources setting in this function APP_ServiceInitLowpower(). The complete list of wakeup sources are available from the SDK power manager component, see file fsl_pm_board.h in component/boards/<device_name>/.
- Initialize and register the Low power board file used to register and implement low power entry and exit callback function used for peripheral. This is done by calling the BOARD_LowPowerInit() function.
- Register low power Enter and exit critical function to driver component to enable / disable low power when the Hardware is active. Example is given for serial manager that needs to disable low power when the TX ring buffer contains data so the device does not enter low power until the buffer is empty.

Finally, APP_ServiceInitLowpower() function configures the Deep Sleep mode as the default low power constraint for the application. It is recommended to keep this level of low power constraint during all the connectivity stack initialization.

Example of low power framework initialization can be found in app_services_init.c file. Below is some code example for initializing the low power framework and wake up sources:

```
static void APP_ServiceInitLowpower(void)
{
    PWR_ReturnStatus_t status = PWR_Success;

    /* It is required to initialize PWR module so the application
     * can call PWR API during its init (wake up sources...) */
    PWR_Init();

    /* Initialize board_lp module, likely to register the enter/exit
     * low power callback to Power Manager */
    BOARD_LowPowerInit();

    /* Set Deep Sleep constraint by default (works for All application)
     *   Application will be allowed to release the Deep Sleep constraint
     *   and set a deepest lowpower mode constraint such as Power down if it needs
     *   more optimization */
    status = PWR_SetLowPowerModeConstraint(PWR_DeepSleep);
    assert(status == PWR_Success);

#if (defined(gAppButtonCnt_c) && (gAppButtonCnt_c > 0))

    /* Init and enable button0 as wake up source
     * BOARD_WAKEUP_SOURCE_BUTTON0 can be customized based on board configuration
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    * On EVK we use the SW2 mapped to GPIOD */
   PM_InitWakeupSource(&button0WakeUpSource, BOARD_WAKEUP_SOURCE_BUTTON0, NULL,␣
↪true);
#endif

#if (gAppButtonCnt_c > 1)
   /* Init and enable button1 as wake up source
    * BOARD_WAKEUP_SOURCE_BUTTON1 can be customized based on board configuration
    * On EVK we use the SW3 mapped to PTC6 */
   PM_InitWakeupSource(&button1WakeUpSource, BOARD_WAKEUP_SOURCE_BUTTON1, NULL,␣
↪true);
#endif

#if (defined(gAppUseSerialManager_c) && (gAppUseSerialManager_c > 0))

#if defined(gAppLpuart0WakeUpSourceEnable_d) && (gAppLpuart0WakeUpSourceEnable_d > 0)
   /* To be able to wake up from LPUART0, we need to keep the FRO6M running
    * also, we need to keep the WAKE domain is SLEEP.
    * We can't put the WAKE domain in DEEP SLEEP because the LPUART0 is not mapped
    * to the WUU as wake up source */
   (void)PM_SetConstraints(PM_LP_STATE_NO_CONSTRAINT, APP_LPUART0_WAKEUP_
↪CONSTRAINTS);
#endif

   /* Register PWR functions into SerialManager module in order to disable device lowpower
      during SerialManager processing. Typically, allow only WFI instruction when
      uart data are processed by serail manager  */
   SerialManager_SetLowpowerCriticalCb(&gSerMgr_LowpowerCriticalCBs);
#endif

#if defined(gAppUseSensors_d) && (gAppUseSensors_d > 0)
   Sensors_SetLowpowerCriticalCb(&app_LowpowerSensorsCriticalCBs);
#endif

   (void)status;
}
```

2.3 - low power entry/exit sequences : board files updates Board Files that handles low-power are board_lp.[ch] files.

Low power board files implement the low-power callbacks of the peripherals to be notified when entering or exiting Low Power mode. This module also registers these low-power callbacks to the SDK Power Manager component to get the notifications when the device is about to enter low-power or exit Low Power mode. The Low-power callbacks are registered from BOARD_LowPowerInit() function. This function is called from app_services_init.c file after PWR module initialization.

The low power callback functions can be categorized in two groups:

- Entry Low power call back functions: These are usually used to prepare the peripherals to enter low-power. For example, they can be used for flushing FIFOs, switching off some clocks, and reconfiguring pin mux to avoid leakage on pins. In case of Power Down mode, these functions could be used to save the Hardware peripheral context.
- Exit Low power call back functions: These are typically used to restore the peripherals to functionality. Therefore, they perform the reverse of what is done by the entry call-back functions: restoring the pin mux, re-enabling the clock, in case of Power Down mode, restoring the Hardware peripheral context, and so on.

Note that distinction can be done between clock gating mode (Deep Sleep mode), and power gated mode (Power down mode) when entering and exiting Low Power mode. The

BOARD_EnterLowPowerCb() and BOARD_ExitLowPowerCb() functions provide the code to call the various peripheral entry and exit functions to go and exit Deep Sleep mode: serial manager, button, debug console, and others.

However, the processing to save and restore the Hardware peripheral is implemented in different functions BOARD_EnterPowerDownCb() and BOARD_ExitPowerDownCb(). These two functions should be called when exiting power gated modes of the power domain. These two should implement specific code for such case (likely the complete reinitialization of each peripheral). In order to know the Low Power mode that the wake up domain, or main domain has been entered, the low-power platform API PLATFORM_GetLowpowerMode() can be called.

> **Note :** BOARD_ExitPowerDownCb() is called before BOARD_ExitLowPowerCb() as it is generally required to restore the Hardware peripheral contexts before reconfiguring the pin mux to avoid any signal glitches on the pads

Also, It is important to know whether the location of the Hardware peripheral is in the main domain or wake up domain. The two power domains can go into different power modes with the limitation that the wakeup domain cannot go to a deepest Low Power mode than the main domain. Depending on the constraint set on SDK power manager, the wake up domain could remain in active while the main domain can go to deep sleep or power down modes. In this case, the peripherals in the wake up domain does not required to be restored, as explained in the section Power Down. Likely, only pin mux reconfiguration is required in this case.

example Low power entry and exit functions shall be registered to the SDK power manager so these functions will be called when the device will enter and exit low power mode. This is done by BOARD_LowPowerInit() typically called from application source code in app_services_init.c file

```
static pm_notify_element_t boardLpNotifyGroup = {
    .notifyCallback = BOARD_LowpowerCb,
    .data           = NULL,
};

void BOARD_LowPowerInit(void)
{
    status_t status;

    status = PM_RegisterNotify(kPM_NotifyGroup2, &boardLpNotifyGroup);
    assert(status == kStatus_Success);
    (void)status;
}
```

BOARD_LowpowerCb() callback function will handle both the entry and exit sequences. An argument is passed to the function to indicate the lowpower state the device enter/exit. Typical implementation is given below. Customer shall make sure to differentiate low power entry and exit, and the various low power states.

Typically, nothing is expected to be done if low power state is WFI or Sleep mode. These modes are some light low power states and the system can be woken up by interrupt trigger.

In Deep sleep mode, the clock tree and source clocks are off, the system needs to be woken up from an event from the WUU module.

In Power down mode, some peripherals are likely to be powered off, context save and restore may need to be done in these functions.

```
static status_t BOARD_LowpowerCb(pm_event_type_t eventType, uint8_t powerState, void *data)
{
    status_t ret = kStatus_Success;
    if (powerState < PLATFORM_DEEP_SLEEP_STATE)
    {
        /* Nothing to do when entering WFI or Sleep low power state
           NVIC fully functionnal to trigger upcoming interrupts */
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    }
    else
    {
        if (eventType == kPM_EventEnteringSleep)
        {
            BOARD_EnterLowPowerCb();

            if (powerState >= PLATFORM_POWER_DOWN_STATE)
            {
                /* Power gated low power modes often require extra specific
                 * entry/exit low power procedures, those should be implemented
                 * in the following BOARD API */
                BOARD_EnterPowerDownCb();
            }
        }
        else
        {
            /* Check if Main power domain domain really went to Power down,
             *   powerState variable is just an indication, Lowpower mode could have been skipped by an␣
↪immediate wakeup
             */
            PLATFORM_PowerDomainState_t main_pd_state = PLATFORM_NO_LOWPOWER;
            PLATFORM_status_t           status;

            status = PLATFORM_GetLowpowerMode(PLATFORM_MainDomain, &main_pd_state);
            assert(status == PLATFORM_Successful);
            (void)status;

            if (main_pd_state == PLATFORM_POWER_DOWN_MODE)
            {
                /* Process wake up from power down mode on Main domain
                 *  Note that Wake up domain has not been in power down mode */
                BOARD_ExitPowerDownCb();
            }

            BOARD_ExitLowPowerCb();
        }
    }
    return ret;
}
```

2.4 - Low power constraint updates and optimization Except for the board file update as seen in previous section, the application does not need any other changes for low-power support in Deep Sleep mode. It shall work as if no low-power is supported. However, If more aggressive power saving is required, this constraint can be changed in your application in order to further reduce the power consumption in Low Power mode.

2.4.1 - Changing the Default Application low power constraint after firmware initialization The Low power reference design applications (central or peripheral) provides demonstration on how to change the Application low power constraint. In the Application main entry point BluetoothLEHost_AppInit(), Deep Sleep mode is configured by default from APP_ServiceInitLowpower() function.

> **Note :** It is recommended to keep Deep Sleep mode as default during all the stack initialization phase until BluetoothLEHost_Initialized() and BleApp_StartInit() functions are called. In case of Bonded device with privacy, it is recommended to wait for gControllerPrivacyStateChanged_c event to be called.

BleApp_LowpowerInit() function provides an example of code on how to release the default Deep sleep low-power constraint and set a new constraint such as Power down mode for the application. This deeper low-power mode is used when no Bluetooth LE activity is on going, and if no other higher Low-power constraint is set by another components or layer. For instance, if some serial transmission is on going by the serial manager, or if the SecLib module has on going activity on the HW crypto accelerator, the low-power mode could less deep.

```
static void BleApp_LowpowerInit(void)
{
#if defined(gAppLowpowerEnabled_d) && (gAppLowpowerEnabled_d>0)
    PWR_ReturnStatus_t status;

    /*
     * Optionally, Allow now Deepest lowpower mode constraint given by gAPP_
↪LowPowerConstraintInNoBleActivity_c
     *    rather than DeepSleep mode.
     * Deep Sleep mode constraint has been set in APP_InitServices(), this is fine
     *    to keep this constraint for typical lowpower application but we want the
     *    lowpower reference design application to be more agressive in term of power saving.

     *   To apply a lower lowpower mode than Deep Sleep mode, we need to
     *    - 1) First, release the Deep sleep mode constraint previously set  by default in app_services_init()
     *    - 2) Apply new lowpower constraint when No BLE activity
     *   In the various BLE states (advertising, scanning, connected mode), a new Lowpower
     *    mode constraint will be applied depending of Application Compilation macro set in app_preinclude.
↪h :
     *    gAppPowerDownInAdvertising, gAppPowerDownInConnected, gAppPowerDownInScanning
     */

    /*  1) Release the Deep sleep mode constraint previously set  by default in app_services_init() */
    status = PWR_ReleaseLowPowerModeConstraint(PWR_DeepSleep);
    assert(status == PWR_Success);
    (void)status;

    /*  2) Apply new Lowpower mode constraint gAppLowPowerConstraintInNoBleActivity_c *
     *      The BleAppStart() call above has already set up the new lowpower constraint
     *       when Advertising request has been sent to controller        */
    BleApp_SetLowPowerModeConstraint(gAppLowPowerConstraintInNoBleActivity_c);
#endif
}
```

2.4.2 - Changing the Application lowest low power constraint during application execution

In the various application use cases, (in the various Bluetooth LE activity states, advertising, connected, scanning), some lower low-power constraint can be set, as Power down for advertising, Deep Sleep for connected, or Scanning. Customer can change the level of Low Power mode in the various use case mainly depending of the time duration the device is supposed to remain in low-power. The longer the time that the device remains in low power, the higher the benefit for a deeper Low Power mode such as Power down mode. However, please note that the wake up from power down mode takes significantly more time than deep sleep as ROM code is re executed and the hardware logic needs to be restored. Sections Deep Sleep and Power Down provide some guidance on when to use Deep Sleep mode or Power Down modes respectively.

In the low power reference design applications, four application compilations macros are defined to adjust the low-power mode into advertising, scanning, connected, or no Bluetooth LE activity. Other use cases can be added as desired. For instance, If application needs to run a DMA transfer, or if application needs to wakeup regularly to process data from external device, it may be useful to set WFI constraint (in case of DMA transfer), or Deep Sleep constraint (in case of regular wake up to process external data), rather than power down or a even lower low-power mode.

The 4 application compilation macros can be found in app_preinclude.h file of the project. See

app_preinclude.h for low power reference design peripheral application :

```
/*! Lowpower Constraint setting for various BLE states (Advertising, Scanning, connected mode)
   The value shall map with the type defintion PWR_LowpowerMode_t in PWR_Interface.h
     0 : no LowPower, WFI only
     1 : Reserved
     2 : Deep Sleep
     3 : Power Down
     4 : Deep Power Down
   Note that if a Ble State is configured to Power Down mode, please make sure
     gLowpowerPowerDownEnable_d variable is set to 1 in Linker Script
   The PowerDown mode will allow lowest power consumption but the wakeup time is longer
     and the first 16K in SRAM is reserved to ROM code (this section will be corrupted on
     each power down wakeup so only temporary data could be stored there.)
         Power down feature not supported. */

#define gAppLowPowerConstraintInAdvertising_c          3
/* Scanning not supported on peripheral */
//#define gAppLowPowerConstraintInScanning_c            2
#define gAppLowPowerConstraintInConnected_c           2
#define gAppLowPowerConstraintInNoBleActivity_c       4
```

In lowpower_central.c lowpower_preripheral.c files, the application sets and releases the low power constraint from BleApp_SetLowPowerModeConstraint() and BleApp_ReleaseLowPowerModeConstraint() functions. These functions are called with the macro value passed as argument.

> **Important Note :** Setting the application low power constraint shall be done on new Bluetooth LE state request so the new constraint is applied immediately, while the application low-power mode constraint shall be released when the Bluetooth LE state is exited. For example, setting the new low power constraint for Advertising shall be done when the application requests advertising to start. Releasing the low power constraint shall be done in the advertising stop callback (advertising has been stopped).

After releasing the low power constraint, the previous low power constraint, (likely the one that has been set during firmware initialization in APP_ServiceInitLowpower() function, or the updated low power constraint in BleApp_StartInit() function) applies again.

2.4.3 - Idle task implementation example

2.4.3.1 Tickless mode support and Low power entry function Idle task configuration from FreeRTOS shall be enabled by configUSE_TICKLESS_IDLE in FreeRTOSConfig.h. This will have the effect to have vPortSuppressTicksAndSleep() called from Idle task created by FreeRTOS. Here is a typical implementation of this function:

```
void vPortSuppressTicksAndSleep(TickType_t xExpectedIdleTime)
{

    bool abortIdle = false;
    uint64_t actualIdleTimeUs, expectedIdleTimeUs;

    /* The OSA_InterruptDisable() API will prevent us to wakeup so we use
     * OSA_DisableIRQGlobal() */
    OSA_DisableIRQGlobal();

    /* Disable and prepare systicks for low power */
    abortIdle = PWR_SysticksPreProcess((uint32_t)xExpectedIdleTime, &expectedIdleTimeUs);

    if (abortIdle == false)
    {
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
        /* Enter low power with a maximal timeout */
        actualIdleTimeUs = PWR_EnterLowPower(expectedIdleTimeUs);

        /* Re enable systicks and compensate systick timebase */
        PWR_SysticksPostProcess(expectedIdleTimeUs, actualIdleTimeUs);
    }

    /* Exit from critical section */
    OSA_EnableIRQGlobal();
}
```

2.4.3.2 Connectivity background tasks and Idle hook function example Some process needs to be run in background before going into low power. This is the case for writing in NVM, or firmware update OTA to be writen in Flash. If so, configUSE_IDLE_HOOK shall be enabled in FreeRTOSCOnfig.h so vApplicationIdleHook() will be called prior to vPortSuppressTicksAndSleep(). Typical implementation of vApplicationIdleHook() function can be found here :

```
void vApplicationIdleHook(void)
{
    /* call some background tasks required by connectivity */
#if ((gAppUseNvm_d) || \
    (defined gAppOtaASyncFlashTransactions_c && (gAppOtaASyncFlashTransactions_c > 0)))

    if (PLATFORM_CheckNextBleConnectivityActivity() == true)
    {
        BluetoothLEHost_ProcessIdleTask();
    }
#endif
}
```

PLATFORM_CheckNextBleConnectivityActivity() function implemented in low power platform file fwk_platform_lowpower.c typically checks the next connectivity event and returns true if there's enough time to perform time consuming tasks such as flash erase/write operations (can be defined by the compile macro depending on the platform).

2. Low power features

2.1 - FreeRTOS systicks Low power module in framework supports the systick generation for FreeRTOS. Systicks in FreeRTOS are most of the time not required in the Bluetooth LE demos applications because the framework already supports timers by the timer manager component, so the application can use the timers from this module. The systicks in FreeRTOS are useful for all internal timer service provided by FreeRTOS (through OSA) like OSA_TimeDelay(), OSA_TimeGetMsec(), OSA_EventWait(). When systicks are enabled, an interrupt (systick interrupt) is triggered and executed on a periodic basis. In order to save power, periodic systick interrupts are undesirable and thus disabled when going to low-power mode. This feature is called low power FreeRTOS tickless mode. When entering the low power state, the system ticks shall be disabled and switch to a low power timer. On wake-up, the module retrieves the time passed in low power and compensate the ticks count accordingly. This feature does not apply on bare metal scheduler.

On FreeRTOS, the vPortSuppressTicksAndSleep() function implemented in the app_low_power.c file will be called when going to idle. FreeRTOS will give to this function the xExpectedIdleTime, time in tick periods before a task is due to be moved into the Ready state. This function will manage the systicks (disable/enable) through PWR_SysticksPreProcess() and PWR_SysticksPostProcess() calls. Then, when calling PWR_EnterLowPower(), a time out duration in micro seconds will be given and the function will set a timer before entering low power.

In addition, this function will return the low power period duration, used to compensate the ticks count.

In our example low power reference design peripheral application, an OSA_EventWait() has been added to demonstrate the tickless mode feature. You can adjust the timeout with the gAppTaskWaitTimeout_ms_c flag in the app_preinclude.h file, its value in our demo is 8000ms. So 8 seconds after stopping any activity we will wake up from low power. If the flag is not defined in the application its value will be osaWaitForever_c and there will be no OS wake up.

2.2 - Selective RAM bank retention To optimize the consumption in low power, the linker script specific function PLATFORM_GetDefaultRamBanksRetained() is implemented. This function obtains the RAM banks that need to be retained when the device goes in low power, in order to set them with PLATFORM_SetRamBanksRetained() function. The RAM banks that are not needed are set in power off state, when the device goes in low power mode.

The function PLATFORM_GetDefaultRamBanksRetained() is linker script specific. Hence, it cannot be adapted for a different application. If these functions are called from board_lp.c, it is possible to give to PLATFORM_SetRamBanksRetained() a different bank_mask adapted to your specific application.

In deep power down, this feature does not have any impact because in this power mode, all RAM banks are already powered off.

3 - Low power modes overview PWR module API provides the capability to set low power mode constraints from various components or from the application. These constraints are provided to the SDK power manager. Upper layer (all Application code, connectivity stacks, etc.) can call directly the SDK Power Manger if it requires more advanced tuning. The PWR API can be found in PWR_Interface.h.

> **Note :** 'Upper layer' signifies all layers, applications, components, or modules that are above the connectivity framework in the Software architecture.
>
> **Note :** Each power domain has its own Low Power mode capability. The Low Power modes described below are for the main domain and it is supposed that the wake up domain goes to the same Low Power mode. This is not always true as the wake up domain that contains some wake up peripheral can go a lower Low Power mode state than the main domain so the peripherals in the wake up domain can remain operational when the main domain is in Low Power mode (deep sleep or power down modes). In this case, the context of the Hardware peripheral located in the wake up domain does not need to be saved and restored as for the peripherals located in the main domain

3.1 Wait for Interrupt (WFI) Definition

In the Wait for Interrupt (WFI) state, the CPU core is powered on, but is in an idle mode with the clock turned OFF.

Wake up time and typical use case

The wakeup time from this Low Power mode is insignificant because the Fast clock from FRO is still running.

This Low Power mode is mainly used when there is an hardware activity while the Software runs the Idle task. This allows the code execution to be temporarily suspende, thus reducing a bit the power consumption of the device by switching off the processor clock. When an interrupt fires, the processor clock is instantaneously restored to process the Interrupt Service Routine (ISR).

Usage

In order to prevent the software from programming the device to go to a lower Low Power mode (such as Deep Sleep, Power Down mode or Deep Power Down mode), the component responsible for the hardware drivers shall call PWR_SetLowPowerModeConstraint(PWR_WFI) function. When the Hardware activity is completed, the component shall release the constraint by calling PWR_ReleaseLowPowerModeConstraint(PWR_WFI).

Alternatively, the component can call PWR_LowPowerEnterCritical() and then PWR_LowPowerExitCritical() functions.

For fine tuning of the Low Power mode allowing more power saving, the component can call directly the SDK power manager API with PM_SetConstraints() function using the appropriate Low Power mode and low power constraint. However, this is reserved for more advanced user that knows the device very well. It is not recommended to do so.

The PWR module has no external dependencies, so the low-power entry and exit callback functions must be defined by the user for each peripheral that has specific low power constraints It is consequently convenient to register to the component the low power callbacks structure that is used for entering and exit low power critical sections. In Bluetooth LE, you can take the example in the app_conn.c file as shown here :

```
#if defined(gAppLowpowerEnabled_d) && (gAppLowpowerEnabled_d>0)
static const Seclib_LowpowerCriticalCBs_t app_LowpowerCriticalCBs =
{
  .SeclibEnterLowpowerCriticalFunc = &PWR_LowPowerEnterCritical,
  .SeclibExitLowpowerCriticalFunc  = &PWR_LowPowerExitCritical,
};
#endif

void BluetoothLEHost_Init(..)
{
  ...
      /* Cryptographic hardware initialization */
      SecLib_Init();
#if defined(gAppLowpowerEnabled_d) && (gAppLowpowerEnabled_d>0)
      /* Register PWR functions into SecLib module in order to disable device lowpower
         during Seclib processing. Typically, allow only WFI instruction when
         commands (key generation, encryption) are processed by Seclib  */
      SecLib_SetLowpowerCriticalCb(&app_LowpowerCriticalCBs);
#endif
  ...
}
```

Limitations

No limitation when using the WFI mode.

3.2 Sleep mode Sleep mode is similar to WFI low power mode but with some additional clock gating. The Sleep mode is device specific, please consult the Hardware reference manuel of the device for more information.

3.2 Deep Sleep mode Definition

In Deep Sleep mode, the fast clock is turned off, and the CPU along with the main power domain are placed into a retention state, with the voltage being scaled down to support state retention only. Because no high frequency clock is running, the voltage applied on the power domain can be reduced to reduce leakage on the hardware logic. This reduces the overall power consumption in the Deep Sleep mode. When waking up from Deep sleep mode, the core voltage is increased back to nominal voltage and the fast clock (FRO) is turned back on, the peripheral in this domain can be reused as normal.

To same more additional power, Some unused RAM banks can be powered off. this prevents from having current leakage and consequently, allow to reduce even more the power consumption in Deep SLeep mode. This is achieved by calling PLATFORM_SetRamBanksRetained() from low power entry function from board_lp.c file.

Usage

All firmware is able to implement Deep Sleep mode transparently to the application thanks to the PWR module, low power platform submodule and low power board file. This is described in the section Low-power implementation.

When entering this mode, it is recommended to turn the output pins into input mode, or high impedance to reduce leakage on the pads. This is typically done in pin_mux.c file, called from board.c file and executed from the low power callback in board_lp.c file. As an example, the TX line of the UART peripheral can be turned to disabled so it prevents the current from being drawn by the pad in Low Power mode.

Wake up time and typical use case

The wake up time is very fast, it takes mostly the time for the Fast FRO to start up again (couple of hundreds of microseconds) so this mode is a very good balance between power consumption in low-power mode and wake up latency and shall be used extensively in most of the use cases of the application.

Limitations

In Deep Sleep mode, the clock is disabled to the CPU and the main peripheral domain, so peripheral activity (for example, an on-going DMA transfer) is not possible in Deep Sleep mode.

3.3 Power Down mode **Definition**

In Power Down mode, both the clock, and power are shut off to the CPU and the main peripheral domain. SRAM is retained, but register values are lost. The SDK power manager handles the restore of the processor registers and dependencies such as interrupt controller and similar ones transparently from the application.

Usage

The application, with the help of the low power board files, saves and restores the peripherals that were located in the power domain during the entry and exit of the power down mode. This is done from low power board_lp files in the entry/exit low power callbacks. Example is given for the serial manager and debug console in *board_lp.c* file in function *BOARD_ExitPowerDownCb()*.

If the device contains a dedicated wake up power domain where some wake up peripherals are located, if this wake up domain is not turned into power down mode but only Deep sleep mode or active mode, this peripheral does not need for a save and restore on low power entry/exit. For instance, on KW45, This is basically achieved when enabling the wakeup source of the peripheral *PWR_EnableWakeUpSource()* from *APP_ServiceInitLowpower()* function. Alternatively, this can be directly achieved by setting the constraint to the SDK power manager by calling *PM_SetConstraints()*, (use APP_LPUART0_WAKEUP_CONSTRAINTS for wakeup from UART constraint).

On exit from low power, The low power state of power domain can be retrieved by Platform API PLATFORM_GetLowpowerMode(). This API shall be called from low power exit callback function only.

As for Deep Sleep mode, software shall configure the output pins into input or high impedance during the Low Power mode to avoid leakage on the pads.

Wake up time and typical use case

The wake up time is significantly longer than wake up time from Deep Sleep (from several hundreds of micro-seconds to a couple of milliseconds depending on the platform). On some platform, it can takes longer, for instance, if ROM code is implemented and perform authentication checks for security and hardware logic in power domain needs to be restored (case for KW45).

However, After ROM code execution, the SDK power manager resumes the Idle task execution from where it left before entering low-power mode. Hence, the wakeup time from this mode is still significantly lower that the initialization time from a power on reset or any other reset.

Depending on the wakeup time of the platform and the low power time duration, This mode is recommended when no Software activity is expected to happen for the next several seconds. In Bluetooth LE, this mode is preferred in advertising or without Bluetooth LE activity. However, in scanning or connected mode, Regular wakes up happens regularly for instance to retrieve HCI message responses from the Link layer, the Deep Sleep mode is rather recommended.

Limitations

In addition to the Deep Sleep limitation (no Hardware processing on going when going to Power down mode) and the significant increase of the wake time, the Power Down mode requires the ROM code to execute and this last uses significant amount of memory in SRAM.

Typically, The first SRAM bank (16 KBytes) is used by the ROM code during execution so the Application firmware can use this section of SRAM for storing bss, rw data, or stacks. Only temporary data could be stored here and this location is overwritten on every Power Down exit sequence.

In order to avoid placing firmware data section (bss, rw, etc.) in the first SRAM bank, the linker script variable *gLowpowerPowerDownEnable_d* should be set to 1. Setting the linker script variable to avoid placing firmware data section in the first SRAM bank, The effect of setting this flag is to prevent the firmware from using the first 16 KB in SRAM.

> *Note* : This setting is ONLY required if the application implements Power Down mode. If Application uses other low-power mode, this is not required.

3.4 Deep Power-down mode **Definition**

In Deep Power Down mode, the SRAM is not retained. This power mode is the lowest disponible, it is exited through reset sequence.

Usage

In addition to the Power Down limitation, the Deep Power Down mode shut down all memory in SRAM. Because it is exited through reset sequence the wake time is also longer.

Wake up time and typical use case

As this low-power mode is exited through the reset sequence, the wake up time is longer than any other mode. In Bluetooth LE, this mode is possible in no Bluetooth LE activity, and is preferred if we know that there will be no Bluetooth LE activity before a several amount of time.

Limitations

All memory in SRAM will be shut down in deep power down, the main limitation in going in this low-power mode is that the context will not be saved.

ModuleInfo

Overview The ModuleInfo is a small Connectivity Framework module that provides a mechanism that allows stack components to register information about themselves.

The information comprises :

- Component or module name (for example: Bootloader, IEEE 802.15.4 MAC, and Bluetooth LE Host) and associated version string
- Component or module ID
- Version number
- Build number

The information can be retrieved using shell commands or FSCI commands.

Detailed data types and APIs used in ConnFWK_APIs_documentation.pdf.

NVM: Non-volatile memory module

Overview In a standard Harvard-architecture-based MCU, the flash memory is used to store the program code and program constant data. Modern processors have a built-in flash memory controller that can be used under user program execution to store non-volatile data. The flash memories have individually erasable segments (sectors) and each segment has a limited number of erase cycles. If the same segments are used to store various kinds of data all the time, those segments quickly become unreliable. Therefore, a wear-leveling mechanism is necessary to prolong the service life of the memory. The NVM module in the connectivity framework provides a file system with a wear-leveling mechanism, described in the subsequent sections. The *NvIdle()* function handles the program and erase memory operations. Before resetting the MCU, *NvShutdown()* must be called to ensure that all save operations have been processed.

NVM boundaries and linker script requirement Most of the MCUs have only a standard flash memory that the non-volatile (NV) storage system uses. The amount of memory that the NV system uses for permanent storage and its boundaries are defined in the linker configuration file though the following linker symbols :

- NV_STORAGE_START_ADDRESS
- NV_STORAGE_END_ADDRESS
- NV_STORAGE_MAX_SECTORS
- NV_STORAGE_SECTOR_SIZE

The reserved memory consists of two virtual pages. The virtual pages are equally sized and each page is using one or more physical flash sectors. Therefore, the smallest configuration is using two physical sectors, one sector per virtual page.

NVM Table The Flash Management and Non-Volatile Storage Module holds a pointer to a RAM table. The upper layers of this table register information about data that the storage system should save and restore. An example of NVM table entry list is given below.

pData	ElemCount	ElemSize	EntryId	EntryType
0x1FFF9000	3	8	0xF1F4	MirroredInRam
0x1FFF7640	5	4	0xA2A6	NotMirroredInRam
0x1FFF1502	6	1	0x4212	NotMirroredInRam AutoRestore
0x1FFFF200	2	6	0x118F	MirroredInRam

NVM Table entry As show above, A NVM table entry contains a generic pointer to a contiguous RAM data structure, the number of elements the structure contains, the size of a single element, a table entry ID, and an entry type.

A RAM table entry has the following structure:

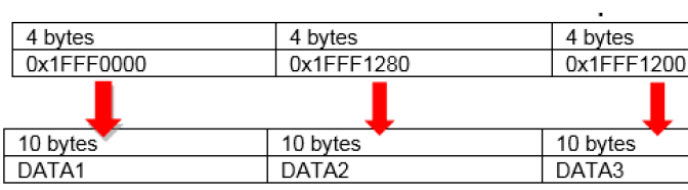
- pData (4 bytes) is a pointer to the RAM memory location where the dataset elements are stored.

- elemCnt (2 bytes) represents how many elements the dataset has.
- elemSz (2 bytes) is the size of a single element.
- entryID is a 16-bit unique ID of the dataset.
- dataEntryType is a 16-bit value representing the type of entry (mirrored/unmirrored/unmirrored auto restore).

For mirrored datasets, pData must point directly to the RAM data. For unmirrored datasets, it must be a double pointer to a vector of pointers. Each pointer in this table points to a RAM/FLASH area. Mirrored datasets require the data to be permanently kept in RAM, while unmirrored datasets have dataset entries either in flash or in RAM. If the unmirrored entries must be restored at the initialization, NotMirroredInRamAutoRestore should be used. The entryID gUnmirroredFeatureSet_d should be set to 1 for enabling unmirrored entries in the application. The last entry in the RAM table must have the entryID set to gNvEndOfTableId_c.

pData	0x1FFF8000
elemCnt	4
elemSz	10
entryID	1
dataEntryType	gNVM_NotM gNVM_NotM

The figure below provides an example of table entry :



When the data pointed to by the table entry pointer (pData) has changed (entirely or just a single element), the upper layers call the appropriate API function that requests the storage system to save the modified data. All the save operations (except for the synchronous save and atomic save) and the page erase and page copy operations are performed on system idle task. The application must create a task that calls NvIdle in an infinite loop. It should be created with OSA_PRIORITY_IDLE. However, the application may choose another priority. The save operations are done in one virtual page, which is the active page. After a save operation is performed on an unmirrored dataset, pData points to a flash location and the RAM pointer is freed. As a result, the effective data should always be allocated using the memory management module.

Active page The active page contains information about the records and the records. The storage system can save individual elements of a table entry or the entire table entry. Unmirrored datasets can only have individual saves. On mirrored datasets, the save/restore functions must receive the pointer to RAM data. For example, if the application must save the third element in the above vector, it should send 0x1FFF8000 + 2 * elemSz. For unmirrored datasets, the application must send the pointer that points to the area where the data is located. For example, if the application must save the third element in the above vector, it should send 0x1FFF8000 + 2 * sizeof(void*).

The page validity is guaranteed by the page counter. The page counter is a 32-bit value and is written at the beginning and at the end of the active page. The values need to be equal to consider the page a valid one. The value of the page counter is incremented after each page copy operation. A page erase operation is performed when the system is formatted. It is also performed when the page is full and a new record cannot be written into that page. Before being erased, the full page is first copied (only the most recent saves) and erased afterward.

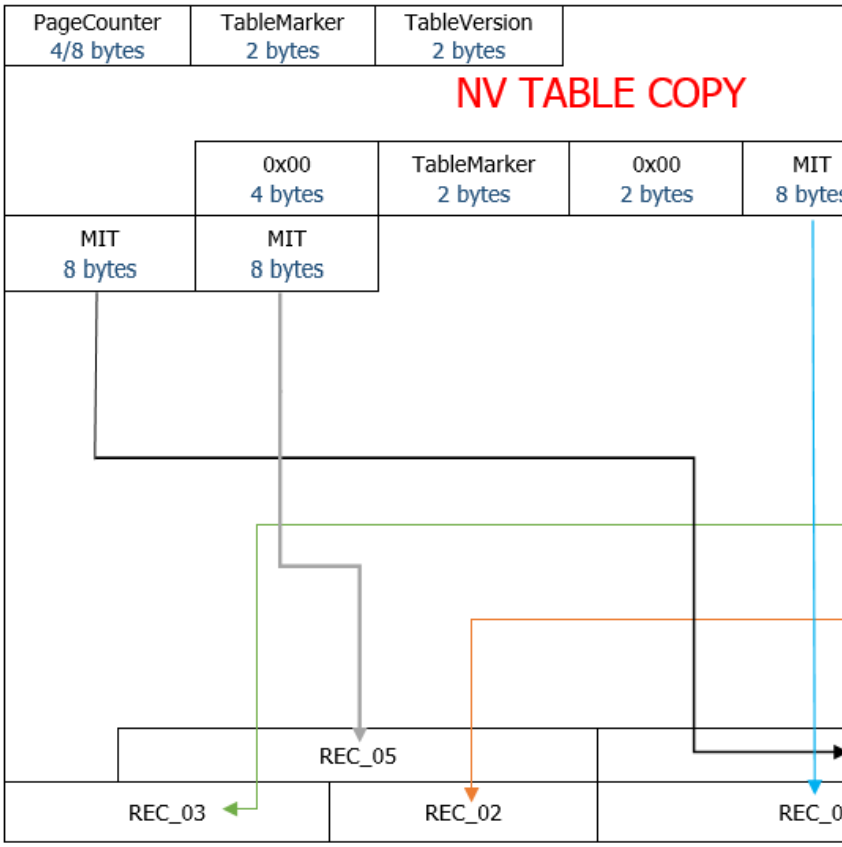
The validity of the Meta Information Tag (MIT), and, therefore, of a record, is guaranteed by the MIT start and stop validation bytes. These two bytes must be equal to consider the record

referred by the MIT valid. Furthermore, the value of these bytes indicates the type of the record, whether it is a single element or an entire table entry. The nonvolatile storage system allows dynamic changes of the table within the RAM memory, as follows:

- Remove table entry
- Register table entry

A new table entry can be successfully registered if there is at least one entry previously removed or if the NV table contains uninitialized table entries, declared explicitly to register new table entries at run time. A new table entry can also replace an existing one if the register table entry is called with an overwrite set to true. This functionality is disabled by default and must be enabled by the application by setting gNvUseExtendedFeatureSet_d to 1.

The layout of an active page is shown below:



As shown above, the table stored in the RAM memory is copied into the flash active page, just after the table version. The “table start” and “table end” are marked by the table markers. The data pointers from RAM are not copied. A flash copy of a RAM table entry has the following structure:



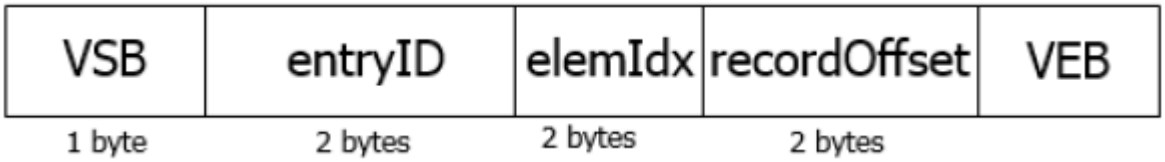
Where:

- entryID is the ID of the table entry
- entryType represents the type of the entry (mirrored/unmirrored/unmirrored auto restore)
- elemCnt is the elements count of that entry
- elemSz is the size of a single element

This copy of the RAM table in flash is used to determine whether the RAM table has changed. The table marker has a value of 0x4254 (“TB” if read as ASCII codes) and marks the beginning

and end of the NV table copy.

After the end of the RAM table copy, the Meta Information Tags (MITs) follow. Each MIT is used to store information related to one record. An MIT has the following structure:

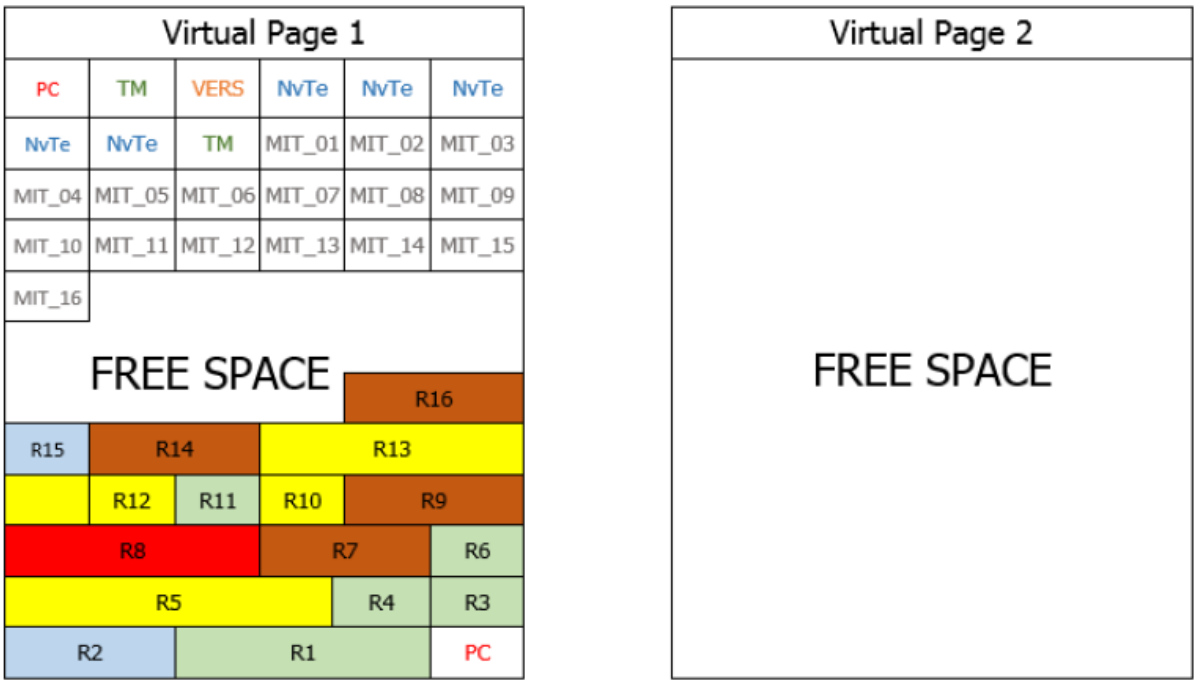


Where:

- VSB is the validation start byte.
- entryID is the ID of the NV table entry.
- elemIdx is the element index.
- recordOffset is the offset of the record related to the start address of the virtual page.
- VEB is the validation end byte.

A valid MIT has a VSB equal to a VEB. If the MIT refers to a single-element record type, VSB=VEB=0xAA. If the MIT refers to a full table entry record type (all elements from a table entry), VSB=VEB=0x55. Because the records are written to the flash page, the available page space decreases. As a result, the page becomes full and a new record does not have enough free space to be copied into that page.

In the example given below, the virtual page 1 is considered to be full if a new save request is pending and the page free space is not sufficient to copy the new record and the additional MIT. In this case, the latest saved datasets (table entries) are copied to virtual page 2.

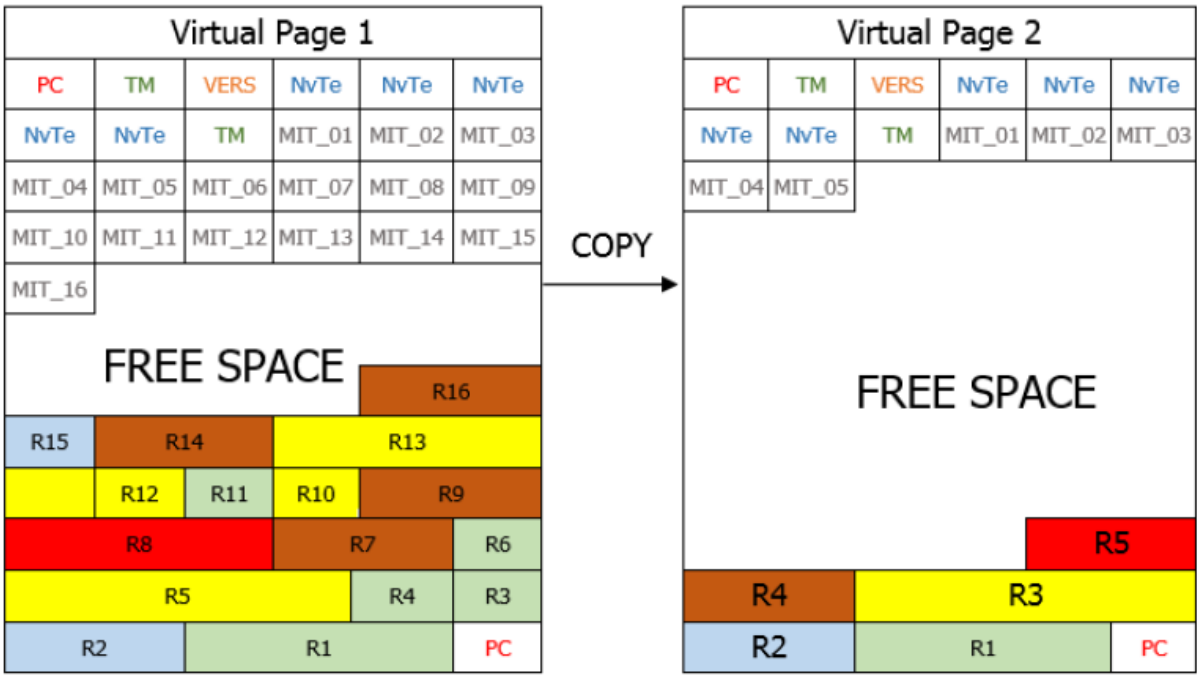


In this example, there are five datasets (one color for each dataset) with both 'full' and 'single' record types.

- R1 is a 'full' record type (contains all the NV table entry elements), whereas R3, R4, R6 and R11 are 'single' record types.
- R2 – full record type; R15 – single record type
- R5, R13 – full record type; R10, R12 – single record type

- R8 – full record type
- R7, R9, R14, R16 – full record type

As shown above, the R3, R4, R6, and R11 are 'single' record types, while R1 is a 'full' record type of the same dataset. When copied to virtual page 2, a defragmentation process takes place. As a result, the record copied to virtual page 2 has as much elements as R1, but individual elements are taken from R3, R4, R6, and R11. After the copy process completes, the virtual page 2 has five 'full' record types, one for each dataset. |This is illustrated below:



Finally, the virtual page 2 is validated by writing the PC value and a request to erase virtual page 1 is performed. The page is erased on an idle task, sector by sector where only one sector is erased at a time when idle task is executed.

If there is any difference between the RAM and flash tables, the application must call RecoverNvEntry for each entry that is different from its RAM copy to recover the entry data (ID, Type, ElemSz, ElemCnt) from flash before calling NvInit. The application must allocate the pData and change the RAM entry. It can choose to ignore the flash entry if the entry is not desired. If any entry from RAM differs from its flash equivalent at initialization, a page copy is triggered that ignores the entries that are different. In other words, data stored in those entries is lost.

The application can check if the RAM table was updated. In other words, if the MCU program was changed and the RAM table was updated, using the function GetFlashTableVersion and compare the result with the constant gNvFlashTableVersion_c. If the versions are different, NvInit detects the update and automatically upgrades the flash table. The upgrade process triggers a page copy that moves the flash data from the active page to the other one. It keeps the entries that were not modified intact and it moves the entries that had their elements count changed as follows:

- If the RAM element count is smaller than the flash element count, the upgrade only copies as many elements as are in RAM.
- If the RAM element count is larger than the flash element count, the upgrade copies all data from flash and fills the remaining space with data from RAM. If the entry size is changed, the entry is not copied. Any entryIds that are present in flash and not present in RAM are also not copied. This functionality is not supported if gNvUseExtendedFeatureSet_d is not set to 1.

ECC Fault detection The KW45/K32W1 internal flash is organized in 16 byte phrases and 8kB sectors (minimal erase unit). Its flash controller is synthesized so that it generates ECC information and an ECC generator / checker. During the programming of internal flash, errors may accidentally happen and cause ECC errors as a flash phrase is being written. These may happen due to multiple reasons:

- programmatic errors such as overwriting an already programmed phrase (transitioning bits from 0b to 1b). These are evitable by performing a blank check verification over phrase to be programmed, at the expense of processing power.
- occurrence of power drop or glitches during a programming operation.
- excessive wear of flash sector. The flash controller is capable of correcting one single ECC error but raises a bud fault whenever reading a phrase containing more than one ECC fault. Once an ECC error has 'infected' a flash phrase, the fault will remain and raise again at each read operation over the same phrase including blank check and prefetch. It can only be rid of by erasing the whole flash sector that contained the faulty phrase. In order to recover from situations where an ECC fault has occurred a gNvSalvageFromEccFault_d option has been added, which forces gNvVerifyReadBackAfterProgram_d to be defined to TRUE. If defined, the gNvVerifyReadBackAfterProgram_d option of the NVM module, causes the program to read back the programmed area after every flash programming operation. The verification is performed in safe mode if gNvSalvageFromEccFault_d is also defined. This is so as to detect ECC faults as early as possible as they appear, indeed when verifying a programming operation, one cannot be certain of the absence of ECC fault and avoid the bus fault. The safe API is thence used to perform the read back operation is performed using this safe API, so that we can tread in the flash and detect potential errors. The defects are detected on the fly whereas in the absence of safe read back, the error would cause a fault, potentially much later. During normal operation, assuming that no chip reset was provoked, this will consist in a single ECC fault either in the last record data or its meta information. Detecting such a fault calls for an immediate page copy to the other virtual page, so that the currently active page gets erased and the error gets cleared. Should the ECC fault occurs in the middle of a page copy operation, the switch of active page is postponed so that the fault page can be erased again and the copy can be restarted.

If the system underwent a power drop during a flash programming operation, sufficient to provoke a reset, at the ensuing reboot, ECC fault(s) may be present in the NVM area at the location that was being written. The detection is performed by an NVM sweeping mechanism, using the safe read API. That marks the faulty virtual page so that all subsequent reads within this virtual page are done with the safe API. If this case arises, a copy of the valid contents of the faulty page is attempted to the other virtual page. At NVM initialization, faults should be detected, either at the top of the meta data or at the bottom of the record area within the previous active page. This should guarantee that only the latest record write operation may be impaired. When the page copy has taken place, the faulty page is erased and the execution may resume. During NvCopyPage, when 'garbage collecting' occurs or whenever the current virtual active page needs to be transferred to the other virtual page, ECC errors are intercepted so that the operation can be attempted again in case of error. In case of NVM contents clobbering by programming errors, the salvage operation does its best to rescue as many records as possible but data will inevitably be lost.

An additional option -namely *gInterceptEccBusFaults_d* - was introduced in order to catch and correct ECC faults at Bus Fault handler level. Indeed, should an ECC bus fault fire, in spite of the precautions taken with NVM's gNvSalvageFromEccFault_d, we verify if the fault belongs to the NV storage. If so, a drastic policy can be adopted consisting in an erasure of the faulty sector. The corresponding Bus Fault handling is not part of the NVM, but dwells in the framework platform specific sources. Alternative handling could be implemented by the customer.

Save policy: Execution of program and erase operations on a flash an MCU core fetches code from cause perturbations of the core activity or requires to place critical code in RAM so that real-time ISR can still be served. The penalty of a sector erase is much higher than a simple program operation. The NVM is designed so as to limit the erase operations at 'garbage collecting' time,

so that flash wear is limited and no time is wasted. Several write policies are implemented to cope with the application constraints, one synchronous mode API and several posted write APIs. Among the posted write policies, the gNvmSaveOnIdleTimerPolicy_d compilation option selects a mode where flash write operations occur at time interval within the Idle task. Another option exists to 'randomize' the time interval with some jitter.

1) NvSyncSave performs a write synchronously with the disadvantage of stalling processor activity until comp
2) NvSaveOnCount posts a pending write operation and postpones the actual flash operation until number of record updates has reached a maximum. The actual write happens during Idle Task execution.see NvSetCountsBetweenSaves related API.
3) NvSaveOnInterval: posts a pending write operation and postpones the actual flash operation until the predefined number of ticks has elapsed. Optional mode - Active if (gNvmSaveOnIdleTimerPolicy_d & gNvmUseSaveOnTimerOn_c). see NvSetMinimumTicksBetweenSaves related API. Note that gNvmUseSaveIntervalJitter_c policy is a sub-option of gNvmSaveOnIdleTimerPolicy_d used to randomize slightly the time at which the write operation will happen.

Constant macro definition

- *gNvStorageIncluded_d* : If set to TRUE, it enables the whole functionality of the nonvolatile storage system. By default, it is set to FALSE (no code or data is generated for this module).
- *gNvUseFlexNVM_d* : If set to TRUE, it enables the FlexNVM functionality of the nonvolatile storage system. By default, it is set to FALSE. If FlexNVM is used, the standard nonvolatile storage system is disabled.
- *gNvFragmentation_Enabled_d* : Macro used to enable/disable the fragmented saves/restores (a particular element from a table entry can be saved or restored). It is set to FALSE by default.
- *gNvUseExtendedFeatureSet_d* : Macro used to enable/disable the extended feature set of the module:
  - Remove existing NV table entries
  - Register new NV table entries
  - Table upgrade

  It is set to FALSE by default.
- *gUnmirroredFeatureSet_d* : Macro used to enable unmirrored datasets. It is set to 0 by default.
- *gNvTableEntriesCountMax_c* : This constant defines the maximum count of the table entries (datasets) that the application is going to use. It is set to 32 by default.
- *gNvRecordsCopiedBufferSize_c* : This constant defines the size of the buffer used by the page copy function, when the copy operation performs defragmentation. The chosen value must be bigger than the maximum number of elements stored in any of the table entries. It is set by default to 64.
- *gNvCacheBufferSize_c* : This constant defines the size of the cache buffer used by the page copy function, when the copy operation does not perform defragmentation. The chosen value must be a multiple of 8. It is set by default to 64.
- *gNvMinimumTicksBetweenSaves_c* : This constant defines the minimum timer ticks between dataset saves (in seconds). It is set to 4 by default.
- *gNvCountsBetweenSaves_c* : This constant defines the number of calls to 'NvSaveOnCount' between dataset saves. It is set to 256 by default.

- *gNvInvalidDataEntry_c* : Macro used to mark a table entry as invalid in the NV table. The default value is 0xFFFFU.
- *gNvFormatRetryCount_c* : Macro used to define the maximum retries count value for the format operation. It is set to 3 by default.
- *gNvPendingSavesQueueSize_c* : Macro used to define the size of the pending saves queue. It is set to 32 by default.
- *gFifoOverwriteEnabled_c* : Macro used to enable overwriting older entries in the pending saves queue (if it is full). If it is FALSE and the queue is full, the module tries to process the oldest save in the queue to free a position. It is set to FALSE by default.
- *gNvMinimumFreeBytesCountStart_c* : Macro used to define the minimum free space at initialization. If the free space is smaller than this value, a page copy is triggered. It is set by default to 128.
- *gNvEndOfTableId_c* : Macro used to define the ID of the end-of-table entry. It is set to 0xFFFEU by default. No valid entry should use this ID.
- *gNvTableMarker_c* : Macro used to define the table marker value. The table marker is used to indicate the start and the end of the flash copy of the NV table. It is set to 0x4254U by default.
- *gNvFlashTableVersion_c* : Macro used to define the flash table version. It is used to determine if the NVM table was updated. It is set to 1 by default. The application should modify this every time the NVM table is updated and the data from NVM is still required.
- *gNvTableKeptInRam_d* : Set gNvTableKeptInRam_d to FALSE, if the NVM table is stored in FLASH memory (default). If the NVM table is stored in RAM memory, set the macro to TRUE.
- *gNvVerifyReadBackAfterProgram_d* : set by default force verification of NVM programming operations. Is forced implicitly when gNvSalvageFromEccFault_d is defined.
- *gNvSalvageFromEccFault_d* : use safe flash API to read from flash, and provide corrective action when ECC fault is met.

OtaSupport: Over-the-Air Programming Support

Overview This module includes APIs for the over-the-air image upgrade process. A Server device receives an image over the serial interface from a PC or other device thorough FSCI commands. If the Server has an image storage, the image is saved locally. If not, the image is requested chunk by chunk: With image storage

- OTA_RegisterToFsci()
- OTA_InitExternalMemory()
- OTA_WriteExternalMemory()
- ...
- OTA_WriteExternalMemory()

Without image storage:

- OTA_RegisterToFsci()
- OTA_QueryImageReq()
- OTA_ImageChunkReq()
- ...
- OTA_ImageChunkReq()

A Client device processes the received image by computing the CRC and filter unused data and stores the received image into a non-volatile storage. After the entire image has been transferred and verified, the Client device informs the Bootloader application that a new image is available, and that the MCU must be reset to start the upgrade process. See the following command sequence:

- OTA_StartImage()
- OTA_PushImageChunk() and OTA_CrcCompute ()
- ...
- OTA_PushImageChunk() and OTA_CrcCompute ()
- OTA_CommitImage()
- OTA_SetNewImageFlag()
- ResetMCU()

SecLib_RNG: Security library and random number generator

Random number generator

Overview The RNG module is part of the framework used for random number generation. It uses hardware RNG peripherals as entropy sources (TRNG, Secure Subsystem, ...) to provide a true random number generator interface. A Pseudo-Random number generator (PRNG) implementation is available. The PRNG may depend of SecLib services (thus requiring a common mutex) to perform HMAC-SHA256, SHA256, AES-CTR, or alternateively a Lehmer Linear Congruential generator. A prerequisite for the PRNG to function with desired randomness is to be seeded using a proper source of entropy. If no hardware acceleration is present, the RNG may fallback to lesser quality ad-hoc source e.g if present SIM_UID registers, the UIDL is used as the initial seed for the random number generator.

Initialization The RNG module requires an initialization via a call to RNG_Init. The RNG initialization involves a call to RNG_SetSeed.

In the case of a dual core system consisting of a Host core and an NBU core, the Secure Subsystem is owned by the Host core. The Host core then has a direct access to its TRNG embedded in its secure subssystem. On the NBU code side, a request is emitted via RPMSG to the Host to provide a seed. On receipt of this request, the Host sets a 'reseed needed' flag (from the ISR context) If the core running the RNG service owns the TRNG entropy hardware (if any), it can get the seed directly form this hardware synchronously. In the case of an NBU that does not control the devices entropy source, that is owned by the Host, it request a seed from the Host processor via RPMSG exchange. On receipt of this request the Host sets a flag notifying of this request from the RPMSG ISR context. From the Idle thread, this flag is polled via the RNG_IsReseedNeeded API. If set the seed is regenerated and forwarded to the NBU via RPMSG.

RNG_ReInit API is to be used at wake up time in the context of LowPower. RNG_DeInit is used for unit tests and coverage purposes but has no useful role in a real application.

Seed handling RNG_SetSeed: RNG_SetExternalSeed may be used to inject application entropy to RNG context seed using a supplied array of bytes. RNG_IsReseedNeeded used from task in Host core to check whether seed must be sent to NBU core.

RNG_GetTrueRandomNumber is the API used to generate a Random 32 bit number from a HW source of entropy. It is essential if only to seed the pseudo random number generator.

RNG_GetPseudoRandomData is used to generate arrays of random bytes.

Security Library

Overview The framework provides support for cryptography in the security module. It supports both software and hardware encryption. Depending on the device, the hardware encryption uses either the S200, MMCAU, LTC, or CAU3 module instruction set or dedicated AES and SHA hardware blocks.

Software implementation is provided in a library format.

Support for security algorithms

	SW Seclib : SecLib.c	EdgeLock SecLib_sss.c	Seclib_e	Mbedtls SecLib_mbec	nccl (part of SecLib.c)	Usage example
AES_128	SecLib_aes.c	x		x		
AES_128_ECB		x		x		
AES_128_CBC	x	x		x		
AES_128_CTR encryption	x	x				
AES_128_OFB Encryption	x					
AES_128_CMAC	x	x		x		BLE connection, ieee 15.4
AES_128_EAX	x					
AES_128_CCM	x	x		x		BLE, ieee 15.4
SHA1	SecLib_sha.c	x		x		
SHA256	x	x		x		
HMAC_SHA256	x	x		x		PRNG, Digest for Matter
ECDH_P256 shared secret generation	x (by 15 incremental steps) -> SecLib_ecdh.c	x with MACRO SecLibECDHUseSSS	x	x	x	BLE pairing,
EC_P256 key pair generation	x	x	x	x	x	
EC_P256 public key generation from private key			x	x	x	Matter (ECDSA)
ECDSA_P256 hash and msg signature generation / verification		only if owner of the key pair		x	x	Matter
SPAKE2+ P256 arithmetics				x	x	Matter

BLE advanced secure mode

New elements in existing structures: computeDhKeyParam_t::keepInternalBlob - boolean telling if the shared blob is kept in this structure(in .outpoint) after ECDH_P256_ComputeDhKey() or ECDH_P256_ComputeDhKeySeg() call.

New arguments in existing functions: ECDH_P256_ComputeDhKey keepBlobDhKey - boolean telling ECDH_P256_ComputeDhKey() or ECDH_P256_ComputeDhKeySeg() to keep the shared object after computation for later use (it is required by the SecLib_GenerateBluetoothF5KeysSecure).

New macros: gSecLibSssUseEncryptedKeys_d - Enable or disable S200 blobs SecLib support. 0 - the Bluetooth Keys are available in plaintext, 1 - the Bluetooth Keys are not available in plaintext, but in secured blobs. Default is disabled.

New functions:

LE Secure connections pairing:

void ECDH_P256_FreeDhKeyDataSecure This is a function used to free the shared object stored in computeDhKeyParam_t. When user calls ECDH_P256_ComputeDhKeySeg() with keepBlobDhKey set to 1, it should also call **ECDH_P256_FreeDhKeyDataSecure** .

SecLib_GenerateBluetoothF5Keys This function is extracted from the Bluetooth LE Host Stack implementation. This corresponds to the legacy implementation without key blobs.

SecLib_GenerateBluetoothF5KeysSecure Similar to **SecLib_GenerateBluetoothF5Keys** this function is modified to work with key blobs, the reason is to not use SSS inside the Bluetooth LE Host Stack.

SecLib_DeriveBluetoothSKD This is a helper function used by the Bluetooth LE Host Stack in the pairing procedure, when receiving the vendor HCI command specifying that the ESK needs to be provided to LL.

ELKE_BLE_SM_F5_DeriveKeys This is a private function, helper for **SecLib_GenerateBluetoothF5KeysSecure**. It was provided by the STEC team.

Privacy:

SecLib_ObfuscateKeySecure This is a function used by the Bluetooth LE Host Stack to obfuscate the IRK before setting it to Bluetooth LE Controller or before saving it to NVM

SecLib_DeobfuscateKeySecure This is a function used by the Bluetooth LE Host Stack to extract the plaintext IRK key from the saved NVM blob.

SecLib_VerifyBluetoothAh This function is extracted from the legacy Bluetooth LE Host Stack implementation using plaintext keys.

SecLib_VerifyBluetoothAhSecure Similar to **SecLib_VerifyBluetoothAh** with modification to work with S200 key blob.

SecLib_GenerateSymmetricKey This is a function used by the application to generate the local IRK and local CSRK.

SecLib_GenerateBluetoothEIRKBlobSecure This is a function used by the application to generate the EIRK needed by Bluetooth LE Controller from the IRK blob.

A2B feature

ECDH_P256_ComputeA2BKey This function is used to compute the EdgeLock to EdgeLock key. pInPeerPublicKey points to the peer public key, pOutE2EKey is the pointer to where the E2E key object will be stored, this will be freed by the application when it is no longer required by calling ECDH_P256_FreeE2EKeyData().

ECDH_P256_FreeE2EKeyData This function is used to free the key object given as a parameter. It is used by the application to free the E2E key when is no longer needed.

SecLib_ExportA2BBlobSecure This function is used to import an ELKE blob or plain text symmetric key in s200 and export an E2E key blob. The input type is identified by the keyType parameter.

SecLib_ImportA2BBlobSecure This function is used to import an E2E key blob in s200 and export an ELKE blob or plain text symmetric key. The output type is identified by the keyType parameter.

LE Secure connections Pairing flow and SecLib usage:

1. Each device needs to generate locally the public+private keypair. This is done using **ECDH_P256_GenerateKeys**.
2. Devices exchange their public keys.
3. Upon receiving the peer device's public key, local device is computing DH key using **ECDH_P256_ComputeDhKey**.
4. Each device sends DHKeyCheck packet
5. Upon receiving DhKeyCheck each device computes LTK blob using **SecLib_GenerateBluetoothF5Keys**
6. After computing the each device sends HCI_LeStartEnc (on initiator), HCI_Le_Provide_Long_Term_Key (on responder)
7. Bluetooth LE Controller sends back SKD report custom event
8. Bluetooth LE Host Stack computes ESKD based on LTK blob using **SecLib_DeriveBluetoothSKD** and sends it to Bluetooth LE Controller
9. Bluetooth LE Controller encrypts the link

IRK flow and SecLib usage:

1. At startup, when gInitializationComplete_c event is received:
   - the local IRK is generated using **SecLib_GenerateSymmetricKey**
   - the local EIRK is generated using **SecLib_GenerateBluetoothEIRKBlobSecure**
   - local CSRK is generated using **SecLib_GenerateSymmetricKey**
2. During legacy pairing when receiving bonding keys, IRK is obfuscated using **SecLib_ObfuscateKeySecure** and stored
3. When app wants to set the OOB keys using Gap_SaveKeys the IRK is obfuscated using **SecLib_ObfuscateKeySecure**
4. When application calls API Gap_VerifyPrivateResolvableAddress IRK is obfuscated using **SecLib_ObfuscateKeySecure** and verified using **SecLib_VerifyBluetoothAhSecure**
5. When a new connection is received in Host with RPA address not resolved by the Bluetooth LE Controller, the Host tries to resolve it by obfuscating it using **SecLib_ObfuscateKeySecure** and verifying it using **SecLib_VerifyBluetoothAhSecure**
6. When adding a peer in Bluetooth LE Controller resolving list, the peer's IRK is obfuscated using **SecLib_ObfuscateKeySecure** before setting it using **HCI_Le_Add_Device_To_Resolving_List**.
7. When an IRK plaintext is requested by the application using Gap_LoadKeys it is obtained using **SecLib_DeobfuscateKeySecure**
8. When legacy pairing completes and LTK needs to be send in the pairing complete event (gConnEvtPairingComplete_c) the **SecLib_DeobfuscateKey** is used to extract the plaintext.

A2B flow and SecLib usage:

1. At startup, when gInitializationComplete_c event is received, the application will call **ECDH_P256_GenerateKeys** to generate the public/private key pair required for the E2E key derivation and send the public key to the peer device.
2. When the public key is received from the peer device, the application will call **ECDH_P256_ComputeA2BKeySecure** to generate the EdgeLock to EdgeLock key.
3. The application will obtain an E2E IRK blob by calling **SecLib_ExportA2BBlobSecure** with key type gSecElkeBlob_c. The obtained blob is sent to the peer anchor. The peer anchor will call **SecLib_ImportA2BBlob** with keyType gSecElkeBlob_c and save the resulting ELKE blob in NVM, for Digital Key both anchors must have the same IRK.
4. After pairing, in order to send the LTK and IRK contained in the bonding data securely, the application will call **SecLib_ExportA2BBlobSecure** with keyType gSecLtkElkeBlob_c for the LTK, and **SecLib_ExportA2BBlobSecure** with keyType gSecPlainText_c for the IRK. The E2E blobs obtained are sent along with the rest of the bonding data to the peer anchor device.
5. After the bonding data is trasfered the E2E key is no longer needed and **ECDH_P256_FreeE2EKeyData** is called with the key object obtained at step 2 when **ECDH_P256_ComputeA2BKeySecure** was called.

Sensors

Overview The Sensors module provides an API to communicate with the ADC. Two values can be obtained by this module :

- Temperature value

- Battery level

The temperature is given in tenths of degrees Celsius and the battery in percentage.

This module is multi-caller, the ADC is protected by a mutex on the resource and by prevententing lowpower (only WFI) during its processing. Platform specific code can be find in fwk_platform_sensors.c/h.

Constant macro definitions Name :

```
#define VALUE_NOT_AVAILABLE_8 0xFFu
#define VALUE_NOT_AVAILABLE_32 0xFFFFFFFFu
```

Description :

Defines the error value that can be compared to the value obtain on the ADC.

SFC : Smart Frequency Calibration

Overview The Smart Frequency Calibration module provides operations and calibration for the FRO32K source clock. This module is split between main core and Radio core:

- fwk_rf_sfc.[ch]: RF_SFC module on Radio core that provides Main FRO32K measurement/calibration and state machine in synchornization with Radio domain activities. See details below.
- fwk_sfc.h: SFC module on host core that provides type definition for usage with fwk_platform_ics.[ch] with PLATFORM_FwkSrvSetRfSfcConfig() API and fwk_platform_ble.c for received callback from the NBU core

Host SFC Module

Algorithm parametrization This module provides ability to configure the RF_SFC module by sending message to Radio core through fwk_platform_ics.c PLATFORM_FwkSrvSetRfSfcConfig():

- Filter size
- Maximum ppm threshold
- Maximum calibration interval
- Number of sample in filter to swicth from convergence to monitor mode

Ppm target The ppm target is the deviation from the target clock accepted by the algorithm. When the deviation is larger than the ppm target. The algorithm will update the trimming value and reset the filter. The ppm target cannot be more aggressive RF_SFC_MAXIMAL_PPM_TARGET in order to avoid having to update trimming value at each measurement.

Filter size Filter size must be included between RF_SFC_MINIMAL_FILTER_SIZE and RF_SFC_MAXIMAL_FILTER_SIZE. See *Filtering and Frequency estimation* section for more details on the parameter.

Maximum calibration interval In monitor mode, new measurement are triggered by low-power entry/exit. If the NBU core has a lot of radio activity it could never enter lowpower. The maximum calibration interval is here to ensure a measurement is done regularly. When executing idle the SFC module checks when the last measurement has been done, if it has been too long, it reset the filter and forces a new measurement

Trig sample number The trig sample number is the number of samples needed by the algorithm in its filter to switch from convergence to monitor mode. Having more than one sample in convergence mode allows to confirm the trimming value that we have set.

SFC debug information On the other way, the RF_SFC from Radio core sends back notifications to SFC module on main core using RX callback PLATFORM_RegisterFroNotificationCallback() from fwk_platform_ics.h and such information:

- last measured frequency
- average ppm from 32768Khz frequency
- last ppm measured from 32768Khz frequency
- FRO trimming value

RF_SFC module The RF_SFC module provides the functionality to calibrate the FRO32K source clock during Initialization and radio activity.

The RF_SFC is mostly used on XTAL32K less solution when no 32Khz crystal is soldered on the board. It allows to calibrate the FRO32K source clock to the desired frequency to keep Radio time base within the allowed tolerance given by the connectivity standards. However, even on a XTAL32K solution, the RF_SFC is also used during Initialization until the XTAL32K is up and running in the system. The system firstly runs on the FRO32K clock source then switch to the XTAL32K clock source when it is ready with enough accuracy. This allows to save significant boot time as the FRO32K start up (including calibration) is much faster compared to XTAL32K .

This module will handle:

- FRO32K clock frequency measurement against 32Mhz crystal. It schedules appropriately the start of the measurement and gets the result when completed,
- Filter and estimate the 32Khz frequency value and error by averaging from the last measurements,
- FRO32K calibration in order to update the trimming value to reduce the frequency error on the clock.

The targeted frequency offset shall be within 200ppm. The RF_SFC will handle two modes of operation:

- Convergence mode: when frequency estimation is above 200pm,
- Monitor mode: when frequency estimation is below 200pm.

The RF_SFC module works in active and all low power modes on NBU domain, or on host application domain except power down mode. Power down mode on host application domain is not supported with the FRO32K configuration as clock source.

Feature enablement Enabling the FRO32K is done by calling the PLATFORM_InitFro32K() function during application initialization in hardware_init.c file, in BOARD_InitHardware() function. If FRO32K is not enabled, Oscillator XTAL32K shall be called instead by calling PLATFORM_InitOsc32K() function. The call to PLATFORM_InitFro32K() from BOARD_InitHardware() can be done by setting the Compilation flag gBoardUseFro32k_d to 1 in hardware_init.c or any header files included from this file.

```
#define gBoardUseFro32k_d       1
```

Detailed description

Frequency measurements When NBU low power is enabled, the frequency measurements are triggered on Low power wake-up by HW signal. The SFC process called from Idle task will check regularly the completion of the frequency measurement. When the measurement is done, it goes to filtering and frequency estimation process. The frequency measurement duration depends on monitor mode or convergence mode: In convergence mode, the frequency measurement duration is 0.5ms while it is 2ms in monitor mode. In monitor mode, the duration value remains less than the minimal radio activity duration so it does not impact the low power consumption in monitoring mode.

Filtering and Frequency estimation The FRO32KHz frequency measurement values are noisy because of thermal noise on the FRO32K itself. Also, the frequency measurement can introduce some error. In monitoring mode, it is required to filter the measurements by applying an exponential filter. new_estimation = (new_measurement + ((1 « n) -1) * last_estimation) » n

Default value for n is 7 (meaning 128 samples in the averaging window).

Frequency calibration When the frequency estimation gets higher than the targeted 200ppm target, the RF_SFC updates the trimming value for one positive or negative increment. For this purpose, it requires to:

- wake up the host application domain and keep the domain active,
- update the trim register of the FRO32K , this register is used to trim the capacitance value of the FRO32K,
- re-allow the host application domain to enter low power.

A slight power impact is expected during a calibration update due to host domain wake-up.

Operational modes When the low power mode is enabled on NBU power domain, RF SFC handles two modes of operation: convergence and monitor modes. However, when low power is disabled on NBU power domain, only convergence mode is supported.

Convergence mode Convergence mode is used when the estimated FRO32K frequency is above 200ppm or when the filter has been reset. Typically this occurs :

- During Power ON reset or other reset when NBU is switched OFF
- When temperature varies and FRO32K frequency deviates outside 200ppm threshold target
- When no calibration has been done during some time as we discard old values that could influence the algorithm

The convergence mode process typically starts with a FRO32K trim register update, performs a frequency measurement and the FRO32K trim register is updated until the measured frequency gets below 200ppm. These operations are repeated in a loop until the estimated frequency value gets below 200ppm. When below 200ppm during multiple measurements, the RC SFC switches to Monitoring mode. The convergence mode is only a transition mode to monitoring mode. In convergence mode, the NBU power domain does not go to low power. The convergence mode time duration depends on the initial frequency error of the FR032K. Default frequency measurement duration is 0.5ms so 20 measurements (given as example only) will require less than 10 ms to converge.

Monitoring mode Monitoring mode is used when the estimated FRO32K frequency is below 200ppm. In this mode, the measurement is triggered on NBU domain wake up from low power mode using an internal hardware signal. The exponential filter is applied to compute the frequency estimation. If the frequency estimation value is still within 200ppm, the NBU power domain is allowed to go to low power. If the estimated value gets above the 200ppm threshold, the RF SFC switch back to convergence mode. The trim register is updated by one increment (positive or negative) and because the frequency has been adjusted and changed, the estimated filtered frequency is reset to discard all previous measurements. Going back to convergence mode typically happens during a temperature gradient. If the temperature is constant, it is not expected to have the estimated value to go beyond 200ppm so no calibration should be required.

Initialization and configuration During initialization, the RF SFC module will block the Radio Software until monitoring mode is reached. This is to prevent the radio from running with an inaccurate time base due to an important 32k clock frequency error.

Initialization and configuration is done by the NBU core. The configuration parameters can set up:

- The 200ppm target threshold. This value shall be 200ppm or higher.
- The filtering number n (see section above), It shall be between 0 and 8. Default is 7 which is similar to an averaging filter of 128 samples. A higher value will be more robust against noise. A lower value will track temperature variation more faster.

In order to prevent the host application domain from going into power down mode (power down mode not supported with FRO32K as clock source), the fwkSrvLowPowerConstraintCallbacks functions structure is registered to the Framework service on host application core from fwk_platform_lowpower.c file, PLATFORM_LowPowerInit() function. The NBU code applies a low power Deep Sleep constraint to the application core. This constraint is released when the NBU firmware has no activity to do and re-applied when a new activity starts.

Lowpower impact

Power impact during active mode: In monitoring mode (this should be 99.9% of the time if temperature does not vary), the FRO32KHz frequency measurements are performed during a Radio activity so it does not increase the active current as the sources clocks are already active. Also, it does not increase the active time as the measurement takes less time than an advertising event or connection event so no impact on power consumption.

The main power impact will be in convergence mode. In this case, measurements/calibrations are done in loop until the monitoring mode is reached (frequency error less than 200ppm). This could happen:

- During power ON reset,
- When temperature varies: The frequency will deviate from 32768Hz and FRO32K trimming register correction will need to be updated for that,
- When no measurement has been done during some time as we cannot predict if the FRO has drifted, so we discard older values and start convergence mode.

When FRO32K frequency needs to be adjusted, the NBU core will wake-up the main power domain and will update the FRO32K trimming register.

Power impact during low power mode: The power consumption in low power mode will increase slightly due to running FRO32K compared to XTAL32K. The power consumption of FRO32K typically consumes 350nA while it is only 100nA with XTAL32K. Refer to the product datasheet for the exact numbers.

3.8.2 EdgeFast Bluetooth

Currently we provide pdf version of those documentation, later release may convert the pdf documentation to markdown for better review and aligned format.

- EdgeFast BT PAL API Reference Manual pdf.

MCUXpressoSDK EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction

Introduction This document provides an overview of the EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer stack software based on FreeRTOS OS on the NXP board with variant wireless module chipsets. This document covers hardware setup, build, and usage of the provided demo applications.

Stack API Reference EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer is a wrapper layer on top of the bluetooth host stack. Zephyr Bluetooth host stack API is used as the basis of the EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer with some enhancement on A2DP/SPP/HFP.

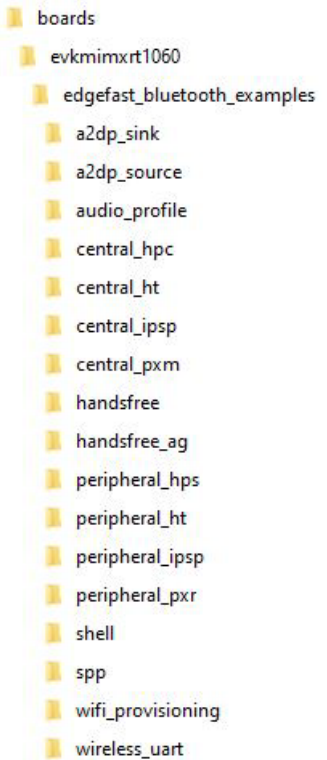
The APIs of the EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer host stack are described in the EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer RM document.

Note: The online document of the Zephyr Bluetooth Host stack is available here: https://docs.zephyrproject.org/latest/reference/bluetooth/index.html.

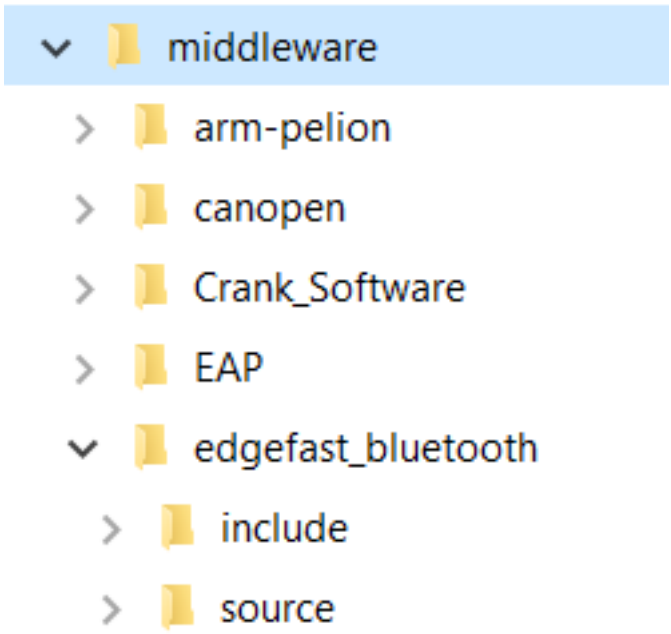
Parent topic:*Introduction*

Overview The EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer host stack software is built based on MCUXpresso SDK. The following chapter uses RT1060 as an example, other boards have similar folder structure and corresponding document.

Folder structure The following figure shows the EdgeFast Bluetooth examples folder structure.



The following figure shows the EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer host stack folder structure.



The following table provides information regarding the structure and description.

|**Folder**

|**Description**

| |————|————| |*boards/*

CMSIS/

devices/

docs/

middleware/

rtos/

tools/

|MCUXpresso SDK directory. Refer to Chapter 5

Release contents of MCUXpresso SDK Release Notes at *root/docs/ MCUXpresso SDK Release Notes for EVK-MIMXRT1060.pdf* to *know the details*

| |*boards/<board>/wireless/edgefast_bluetooth_examples*

|EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer host stack example projects| |*middleware/wireless/edgefast_bluetooth*

|EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer host stack source code

|

The EdgeFast Bluetooth folder includes two subfolders:

- **include**: This subfolder includes EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer host stack headers.
- **source**: This subfolder includes EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer host stack source code based on the Ethermind Bluetooth host stack APIs.

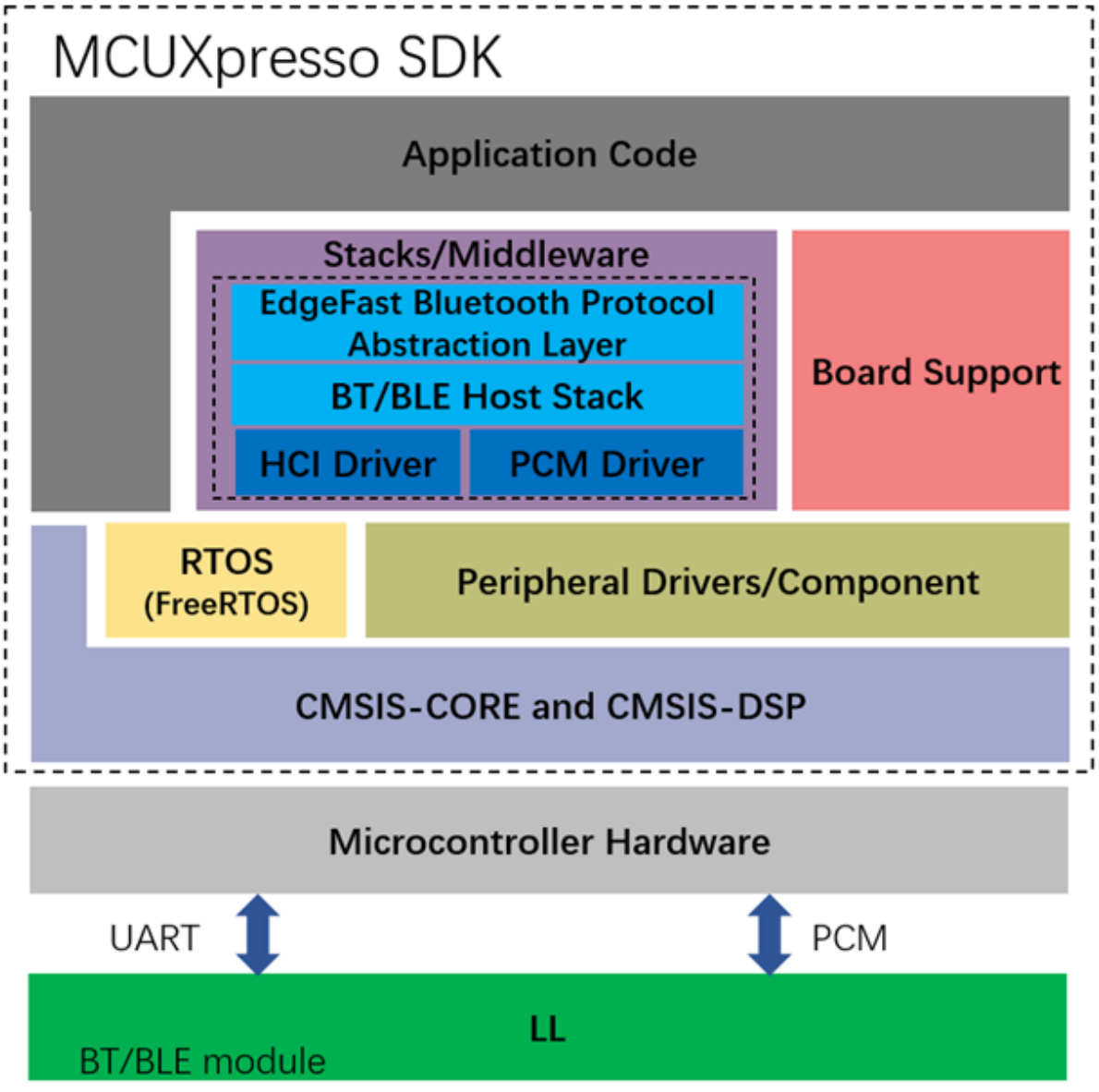
Parent topic:*Overview*

Architecture The figure Architecture of EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer demo in MCUXpresso SDK below shows that the EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer host stack is integrated into the MCUXpresso SDK as a middleware component. It leverages the RTOS, the board support, the peripheral driver/component, and other components in the MCUXpresso SDK. The Bluetooth application is built on top of the EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer host stack and supports different peripheral features, Bluetooth features, and different RTOSes required by the user.

MCUXpresso SDK has the dual-chip architecture defined by EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer project, the Bluetooth application code, and the EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer host stack running on the reference board. For example, MIMXRT1060-EVK and the Linker Layer (LL) run on the Bluetooth modules like AW-AM457-USD, Murata Type 1XK, and Murata Type 1ZM and has single-chip architecture. Bluetooth Host stack and LL runs on the same chip, and communicate with Internal Communication Unit (IMU).

The communication between the host stack and the LL is implemented via the standard HCI UART interface and PCM interface for voice, or the IMU interface.

For details about the different components in MCUXpresso SDK, see *Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK User's Guide* (document MCUXSDKGSUG) at *root/docs/Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK.pdf*. For details on possible hardware rework requirements, see the hardware rework guide document of the relative board. For example, Hardware Rework Guide for EdgeFast BT PAL.



Parent topic:*Overview*

Features This section provides an overview of Bluetooth features, toolchain support, and RTOS support.

Bluetooth features

- Bluetooth 5.0 compliant
- Protocol support
  - L2CAP, GAP, GATT, RFCOMM, SDP, and SM

    Note: The Enhanced Attribute (EATT) protocol is not supported in the current version. However, the support will be available in a future version.
- Classic profile
  - SPP, A2DP, and HFP
- LE profile
  - HTP, PXP, IPSP, HPS
- Integrated the Fatfs based on USB Host MSD in SDK
- Digital Audio Interface including PCM interface for HFP

Parent topic: Features

Toolchain support

- IAR Embedded Workbench for ARM®
- MCUXpresso IDE
- Keil® MDK/µVision
- Makefiles support with GCC from Arm Embedded

Note: For details on IDE Development tools version details, see Section 3, Development tools in MCUXpresso SDK Release Notes (document MCUXSDKMIMXRT106XRN). The Release Notes document is available at *root/docs/ MCUXpresso SDK Release Notes for EVK-MIMXRT1060.pdf*.

Parent topic: Features

RTOS support

- FreeRTOSTMOS

Note: The FreeRTOS static allocation feature is required by Edgefast Bluetooth. The macro configSUPPORT_STATIC_ALLOCATION needs to be set to enable this feature.

Parent topic: Features

Parent topic:*Overview*

Examples list

- The following examples are provided. Not all the examples are implemented on all the boards. See the board package for a list of the implemented examples.

- **central_hpc (central http proxy service client)**: Demonstrates a basic Bluetooth Low Energy Central role functionality. The application scans for other Bluetooth Low Energy devices and establishes a connection to the peripheral with the strongest signal. The application specifically looks for HPS Server and programs a set of characteristics that configures a Hyper Text Transfer Protocol (HTTP) request, initiates request, and reads the response once connected.
- **central_ht (central health thermometer)**: Demonstrates a basic Bluetooth Low Energy Central role functionality. The application scans for other Bluetooth Low Energy devices and establishes a connection to the peripheral with the strongest signal. The application specifically looks for health thermometer sensor and reports the die temperature readings once connected.
- **central_ipsp (central Internet protocol support profile)**: Demonstrates a basic Bluetooth Low Energy Central role functionality. The application scans for other Bluetooth Low Energy devices and establishes connection to the peripheral with the strongest signal. The application specifically looks for IPSP Service and communicates between the devices that support IPSP. Once connected, the communication is done using IPv6 packets over the Bluetooth Low Energy transport.
- **central_pxm (central proximity monitor)**: Demonstrates a basic Bluetooth Low Energy Central role functionality. The application scans for other Bluetooth Low Energy devices and establishes a connection to the peripheral with the strongest signal. The application specifically looks for Proximity Reporter.
- **peripheral beacon**: Demonstrates the Bluetooth Low Energy Peripheral role, This application implements types of beacon applications.
  - **beacon**: Demonstrates the Bluetooth Low Energy Broadcaster role functionality by advertising Company Identifier, Beacon Identifier, UUID, A, B, C, RSSI.
  - **Eddystone**: The Eddystone Configuration Service runs as a GATT service on the beacon while it is connectable and allows configuration of the advertised data, the broadcast power levels, and the advertising intervals.
  - **iBeacon**: Demonstrates the Bluetooth Low Energy Broadcaster role functionality by advertising an Apple iBeacon.
- **peripheral_hps (peripheral http proxy service)**: Demonstrates the Bluetooth Low Energy Peripheral role. The application specifically exposes the HTTP Proxy GATT Service.
- **peripheral_ht (peripheral health thermometer)**: Demonstrates the Bluetooth Low Energy Peripheral role. The application specifically exposes the HT (Health Thermometer) GATT Service. Once a device connects, it generates dummy temperature values.
- **peripheral_ipsp (peripheral Internet protocol support profile)**: Demonstrates the Bluetooth Low Energy Peripheral role. The application specifically exposes the Internet Protocol Support GATT Service.
- **peripheral_pxr (peripheral proximity reporter)**: Demonstrates the Bluetooth Low Energy Peripheral role. The application specifically exposes the Proximity Reporter (including LLS, IAS, and TPS) GATT Service.
- **wireless uart**: The application automatically starts advertising the wireless uart service and connects to the wireless uart service after the role switch. The wireless UART service is a custom service that implements a custom writable ASCII Char characteristic (UUID: 01ff0101-ba5e-f4ee-5ca1-eb1e5e4b1ce0) that holds the character written by the peer device.
- **spp (serial prot profile)**: Application demonstrates the use of the SPP feature.
- **handsfree**: Application demonstrating usage of the Hands-free Profile (HFP) feature.

- **handsfree_ag**: Application demonstrating usage of the Hands-free Profile Audio Gateway (HFP-AG) feature.
- **a2dp_sink**: Application demonstrating how to use the a2dp sink feature.
- **a2dp_source**: Application demonstrating how to use the a2dp source feature.
- **audio_profile**: Demonstrates the following functions.
  * There are five parts working in the demo: AWS cloud, Android app, audio demo (running on RT1060), U-disk, and Bluetooth headset.
  * With an app running on the smartphone (Android phone), the end user connects to the AWS cloud and controls the audio demo running on the RT1060 EVK board through AWS cloud. Some operations like play, play next, and pause are used to control the media play functionalities.
  * Audio demo running on the RT1060 EVK board connects to the AWS through WiFi. A connection establishes between the RT1060 EVK board and a Bluetooth headset. To get the media resource (mp3 files) from the U-disk, an HS USB host is enabled, and a U-disk with mp3 files is connected to RT1060 EVK board via the USB port. The audio demo searches the root directory of the U-disk for the music files (only mp3 files are supported) and uploads the song file list to AWS. The song list is shown in the app running on the smartphone. The music can then be played out via the Bluetooth headset once end user controls the app to play the mp3 file.
- **wifi_provisioning**: Demonstrates the WiFi provisioning service that safely sends credential from phone to device over Bluetooth low energy. By default, AWS Wi-Fi provisioning demo starts advertising if the Wi-Fi access point (AP) is not configured and waits for the Wi-Fi AP configuration. After connecting to the Android APK, the demo executes the request from cellphone and sends the response. When the Wi-Fi AP is configured, the Shadow demo connects to the AWS via Wi-Fi and publishes the configured Wi-Fi AP information.
- **shell**: Shell application demonstrating the shell mode of the simplified Adapter APIs.

Parent topic:*Overview*

Hardware For dual-chip implementation, the Bluetooth demo runs on a (reference board) along with the ported EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer API host stack. The Linker Layer (LL) runs on a wireless module. A standard UART HCI and PCM is used to communicate between the two boards, the IMU is used to communicate in between. The Bluetooth host and controller stack run on different boards. The demo hardware requires two different boards; a development board for host stack and application and a wireless module adapter board for controller running. For example, the evkmimxrt1060 and uSD-15x15 Adapter Board for AW-AM457-uSD board, or any of the supported Murata modules with the Murata uSD-M.2 adapter. For details on the board hardware requirement and board setting, see the following documents. For one-chip implementation, the Bluetooth demo, EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer API host stack, and LL run on one chip and they communicate with IMU.

- Hardware rework guide document of the relative board, Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT1060-EVK and AW-AM457-uSD, or Hardware Interconnection Guide for i.MX RT EVKs and Murata M.2 modules.
- Readme file of the examples.

Reference boards list

- MIMXRT1170: For details, see the quick start guide of this reference board (MIMXRT1170).
- MIMXRT685-EVK: For details, see the quick start guide of this reference board (MIMXRT685-EVK).

- MIMXRT595-EVK: For details, see the quick start guide of this reference board. (MIMXRT595-EVK).
- MIMXRT1050-EVKB: For details, see the quick start guide of this reference board (MIMXRT1050-EVKB).

Parent topic:*Hardware*

Dual-chip wireless module list

Module	HCI
uSD-15x15 Adapter Board for AW-AM457-uSD	UART
uSD-15x15 Adapter Board for AW-CM358-uSD	UART
uSD-15x15 Adapter Board for AW-AM510-uSD	UART
AW-CM358MA	UART
AW-CM510MA	UART
K32W061	UART
Murata uSD-M.2 Adapter (LBEE0ZZ1WE-uSD-M2) and Embedded Artists 1ZM M.2 Module (EAR00364)	UART
Murata uSD-M.2 Adapter (LBEE0ZZ1WE-uSD-M2) and Embedded Artists 1XK M.2 Module (EAR00385)	UART

For details on AzureWave module, see the quick start guide of this reference board AW-AM457-uSD, AW-CM358-uSD, AW-CM358MA, AW-AM510-uSD, AW-CM510MA, and K32W061.

For Murata documentation, refer to the Quick Start Guide and User Guide here.

Note: The boards and wireless module lists are not random combination. For the wireless module support list of specific board, see the readme.txt of each example.

Parent topic:*Hardware*

Demo This topic lists the steps to run a demo application using IAR, steps to run a demo application using MCUXpresso IDE, and steps to download LL firmware from the reference board. The following chapter uses RT1060 and peripheral_ht as an example.

Before you run the example, see the readme.txt in current the peripheral_ht directory and the Hardware Rework Guide for EdgeFast BT PAL document to set the jumper and connect the wireless module with development board.

The uSD type wireless module is similar to the Development board connector in the Run an IAR example section. If the module is M2 type, connect the module to the onboard M2 interface.

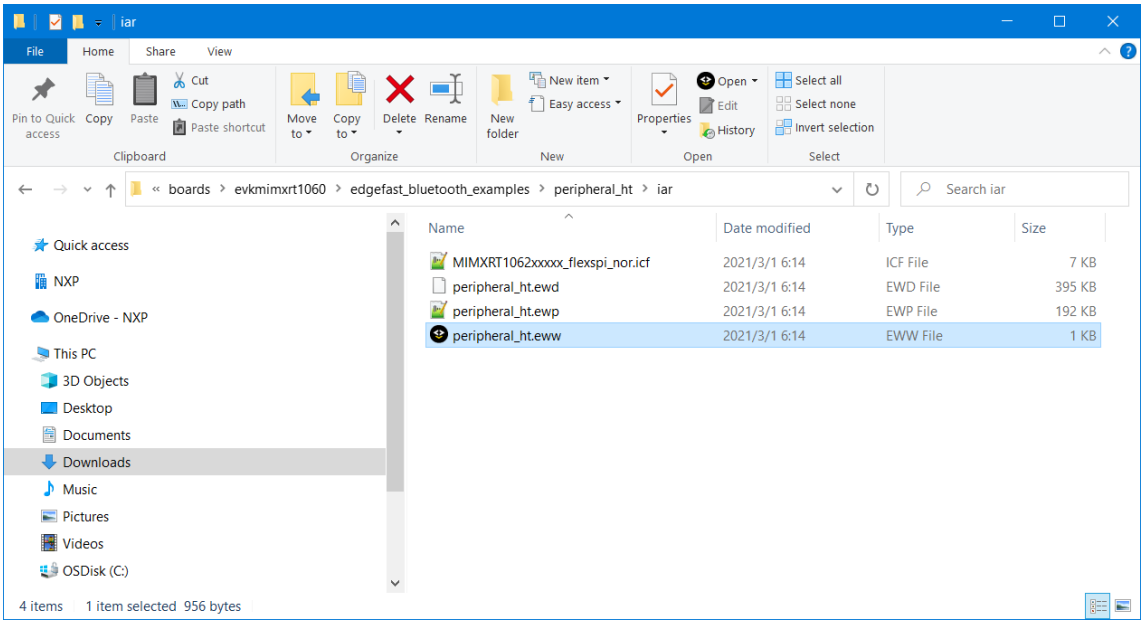
Run a demo application using IAR This document uses EVKRT1060 EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer API example to describe the steps to open a project, build an example, and run a project. For details, see Section 3 in *Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK User's Guide*(document MCUXSDKGSUG) at*root/docs/Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK.pdf*.

Open an IAR example For the IAR Embedded Workbench, unpack the contents of the archive to a folder on a local drive.

1. The example projects are available at:

   <root>/boards/evkmimxrt1060/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/peripheral_ht/iar

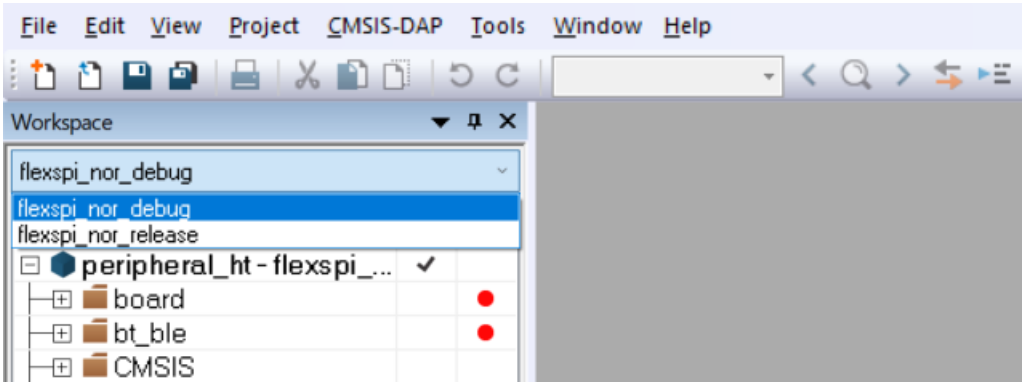
2. Open the IAR workspace file. For example, the highlighted *.eww format file



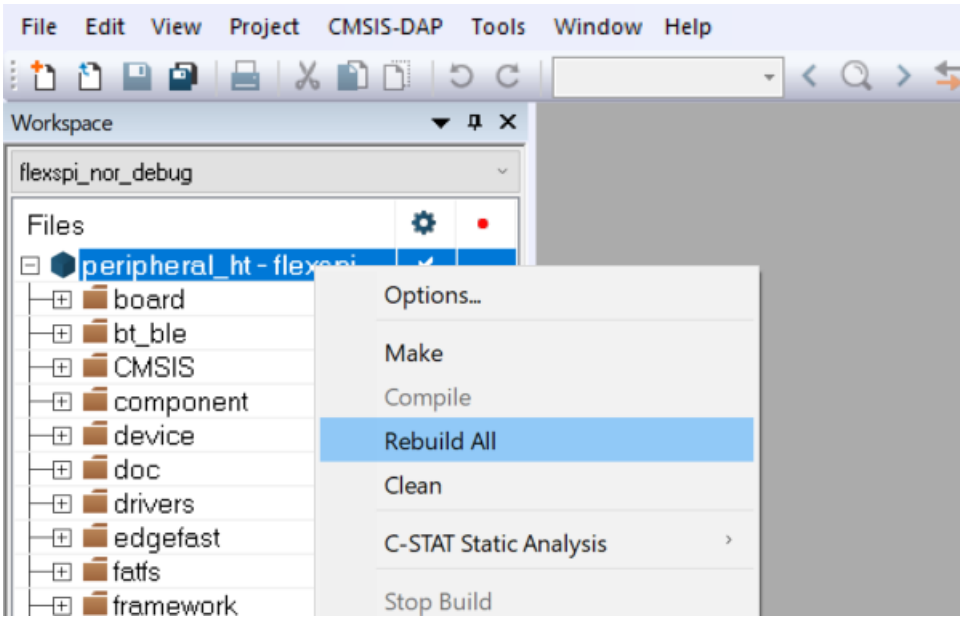
Parent topic: Run a demo application using IAR

Build an IAR example

1. Select flexspi_nor_debug or flexspi_nor_release configurations from the drop-down selector above the project tree in the workspace.



2. Build the EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer project.

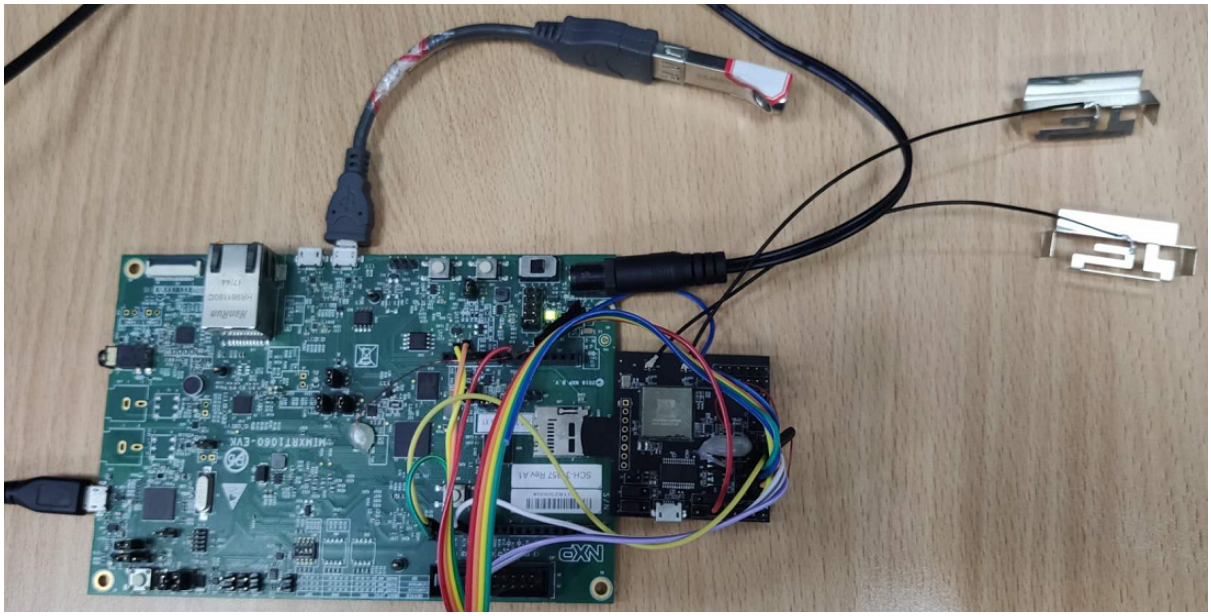


Note: Wireless module does not have flash hardware and requires 512 KB image loaded from board (such as RT1060) on system startup. The 512 KB image is kept on RT1060 side and only flexspi_nor target is supported for Bluetooth examples. Other targets are not supported because memory size limit.

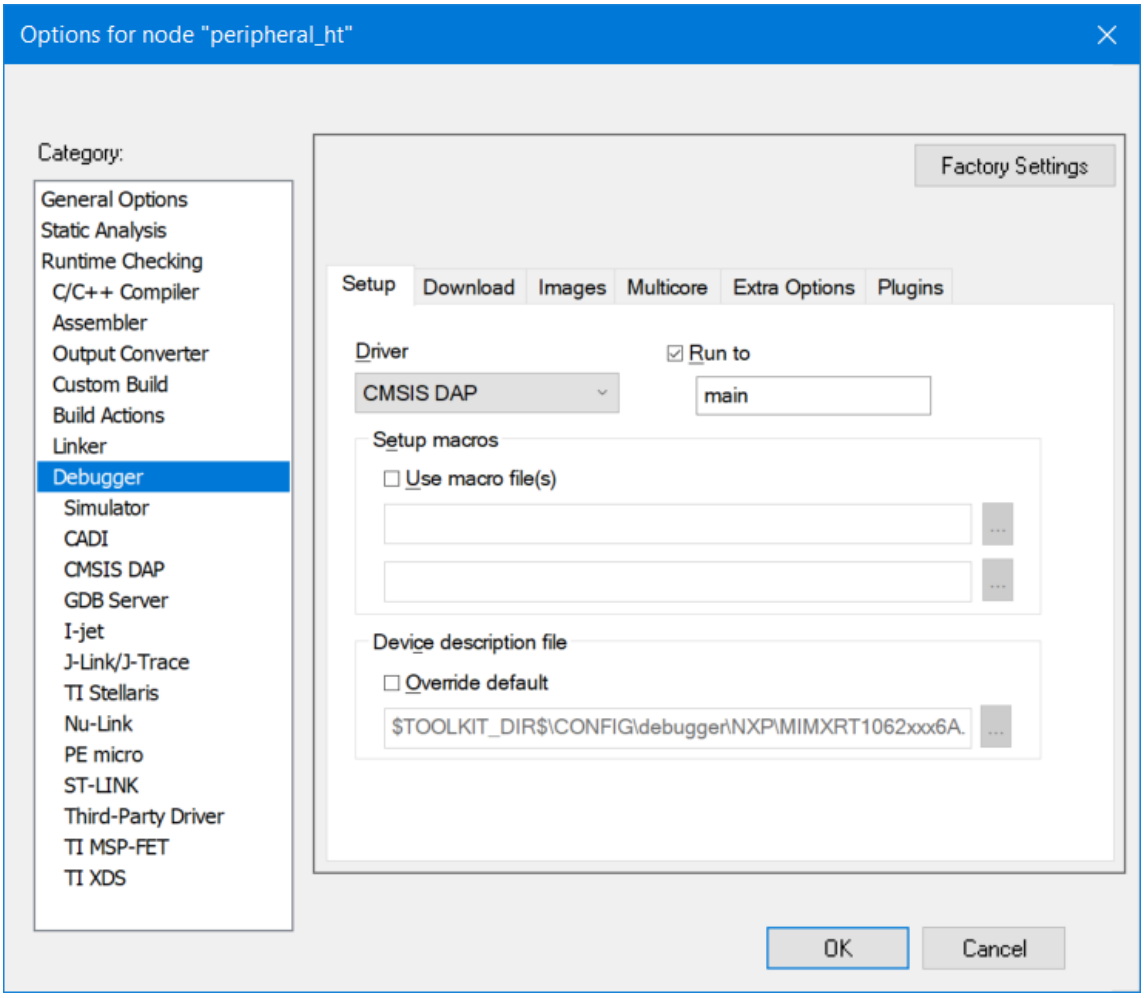
Parent topic: Run a demo application using IAR

Run an IAR example This document uses the peripheral_ht as an example to describe the steps to run an example. For details on other projects and compilers, see the readme file in the corresponding example directory.

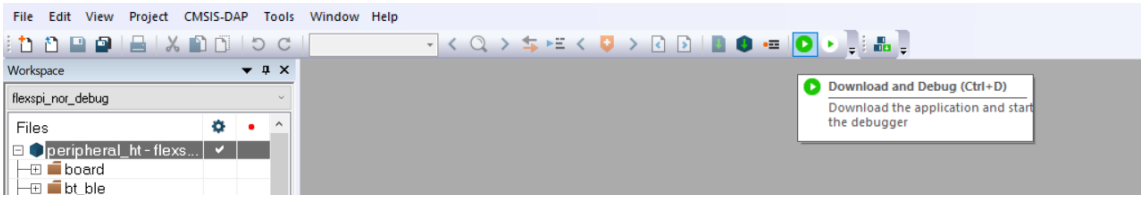
The following figure shows the connection of RT1060 and the uSD wireless module.



1. Connect the USB debug console port to PC. For example, connect J14 of EVKRT1060 to the PC.
2. Connect a 5 V power source to the J1 jack in the Wireless module board.
3. Make the appropriate debugger settings in the project options window, as shown in the figure below.



4. Click the **Download and Debug** button to flash the executable onto the board, as shown in the following figure. After the download is complete, if you must test the function of HFP, stop IAR debugging, and then connect the PCM interface. Reset the target board by manually.



5. Linker layer (LL) Firmware running in wireless module loads from EVKRT1060 by SDIO interface, so need take a bit time to download the LL firmware, “Initialize AW-AM457-uSD Driver” prints in the debug console. For example, it depends on the firmware. For details, see readme.txt.

Note: The projects are configured to use “CMSIS DAP” as the default debugger. Ensure that the OpenSDA chip of the board contains a CMSIS. DAP firmware or that the debugger selection corresponds to the physical interface used to interface to the board.

Parent topic: Run a demo application using IAR

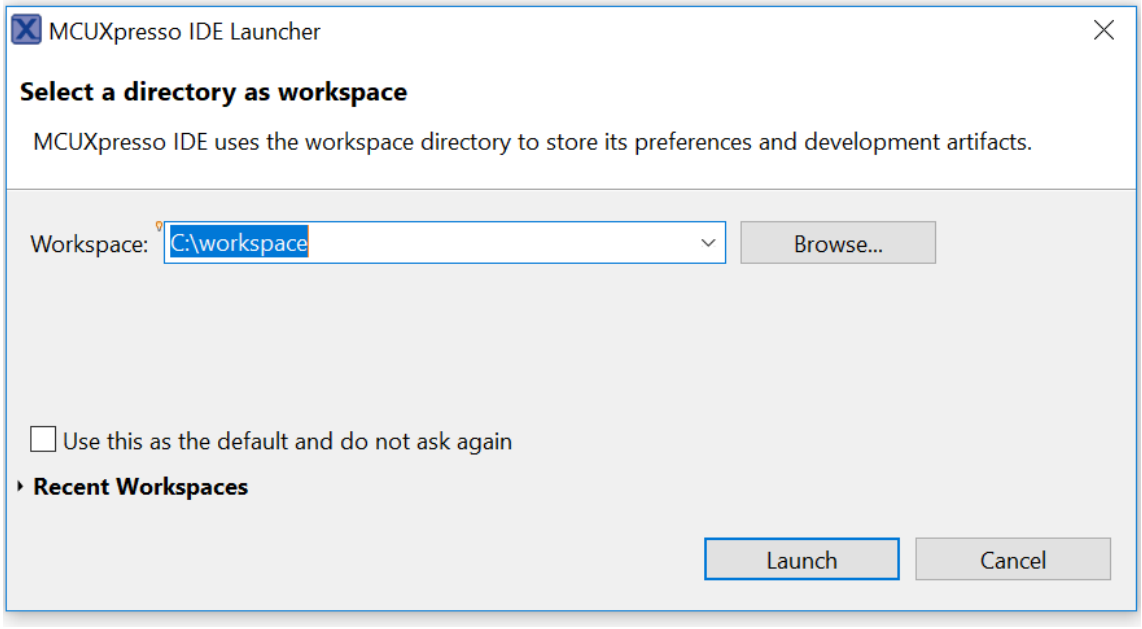
Parent topic:*Demo*

Run a demo application using MCUXpresso IDE This document uses peripheral_ht example to describe the steps to open a project, build an example, and run a project on MCUXpresso IDE.

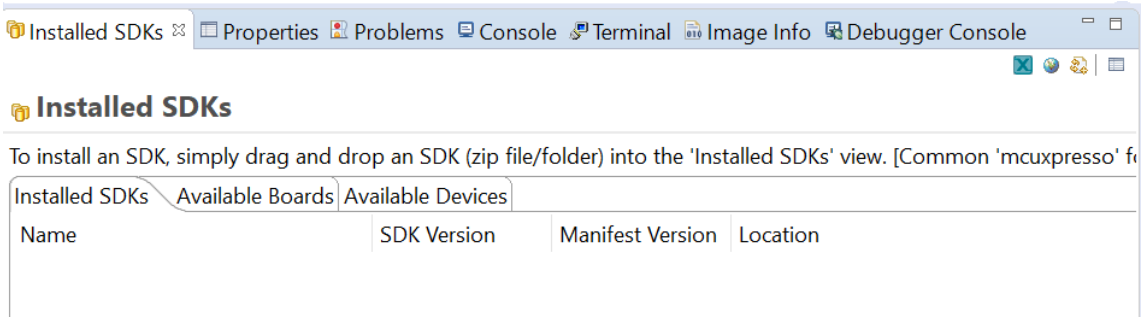
For details, see Section 3 in *Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK User's Guide* (document MCUXSDKGSUG) at *root/docs/Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK.pdf* and refer to the readme file in the corresponding demo's directory.

Open an MCUXpresso IDE example

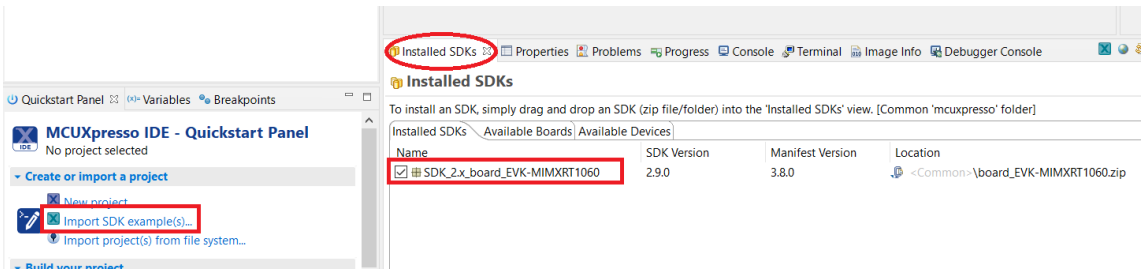
1. Open MCUXpresso IDE and open an existing or a new workspace location.



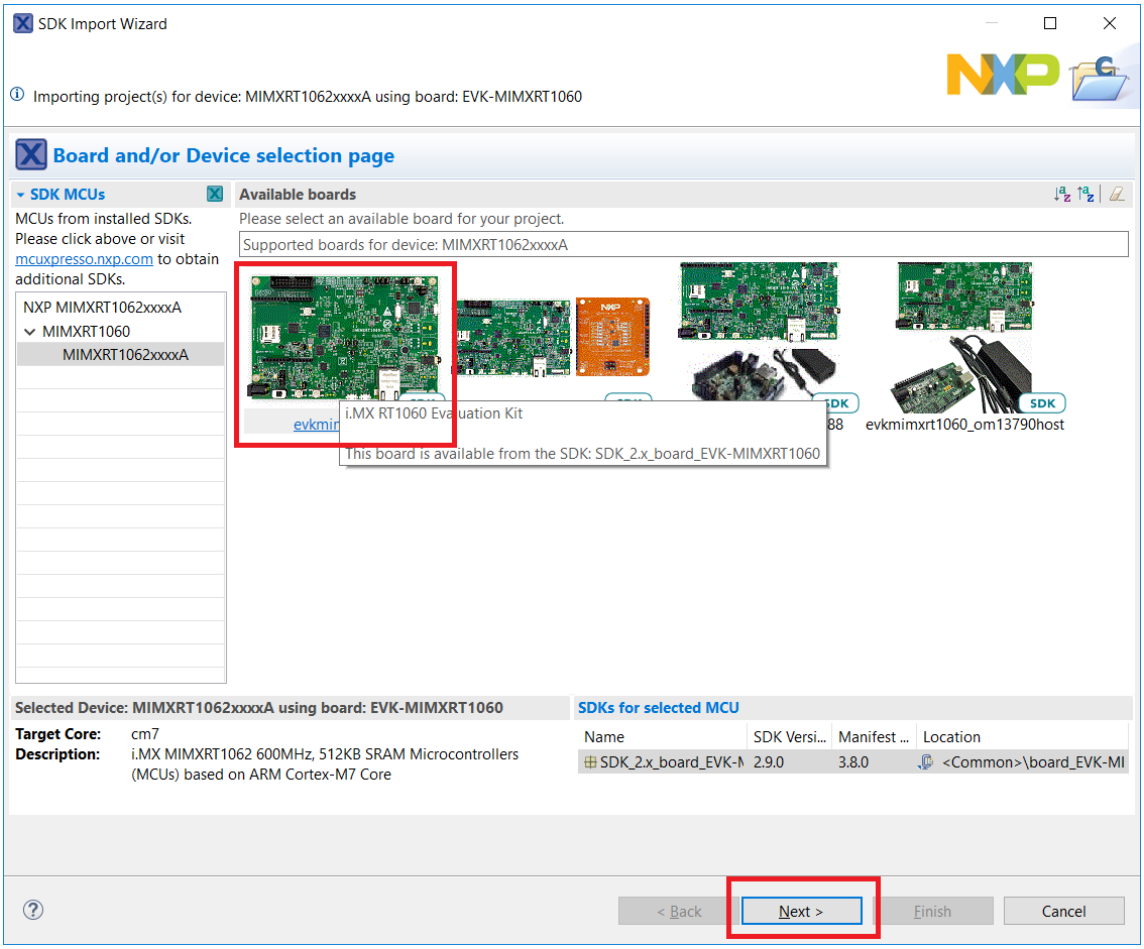
2. Drag and drop the package archive into the MCUXpresso Installed SDKs area in the lower right of the main window.



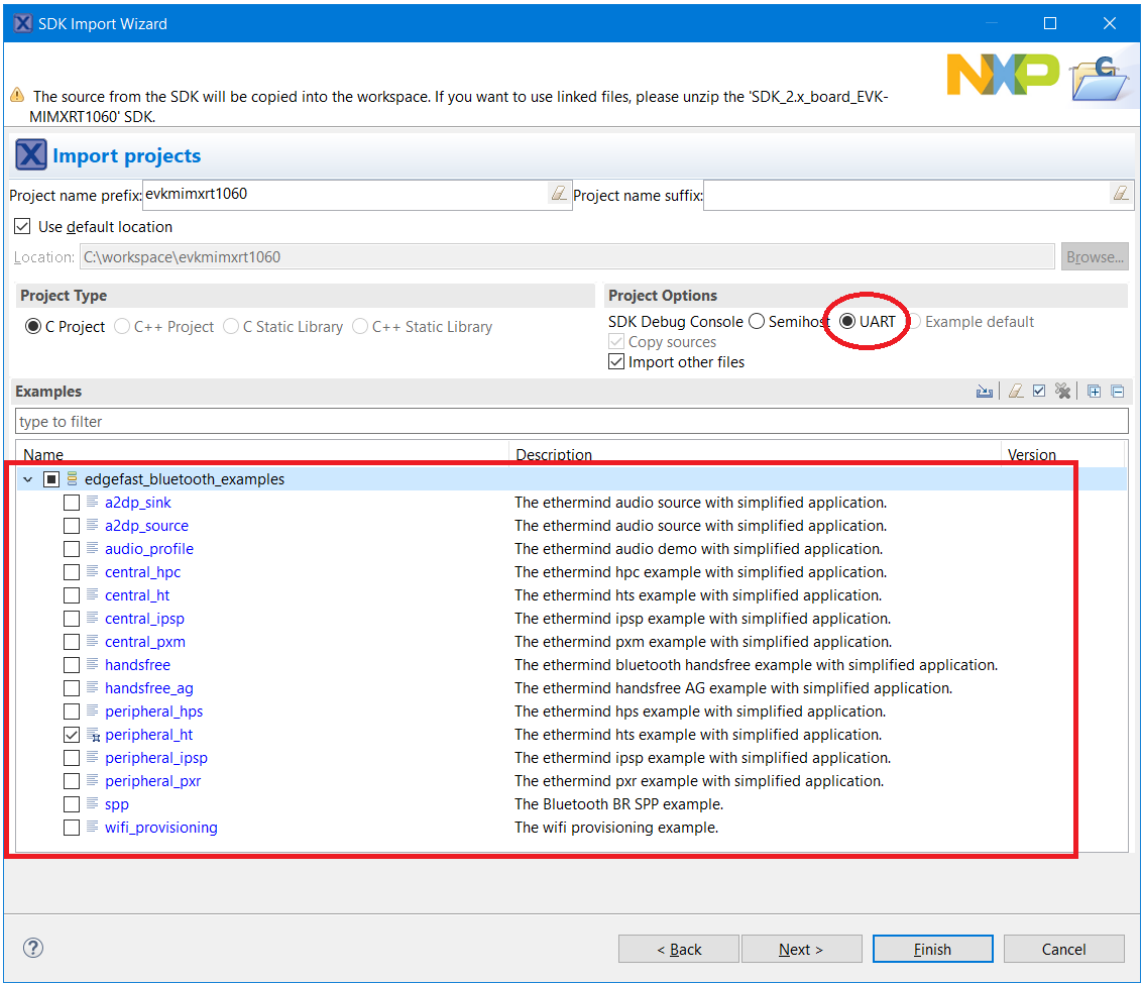
3. After the SDK is loaded successfully, select the **Import the SDK examples(s)...** to add examples to your workspace.



4. Select the evkmimxrt1060 board and click the **Next** button to select the desired example(s).



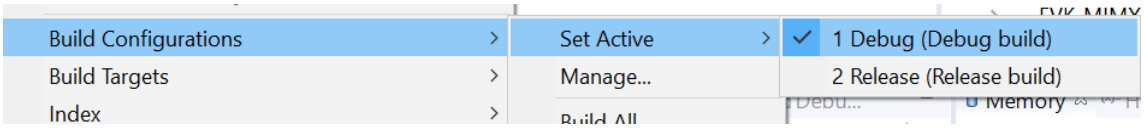
5. Select the evkmimxrt1060 board EdgeFast Bluetooth example. For example, peripheral_ht.
6. Ensure to change SDK debug console from **Semihost** to **UART**.
7. Click **Finish**.



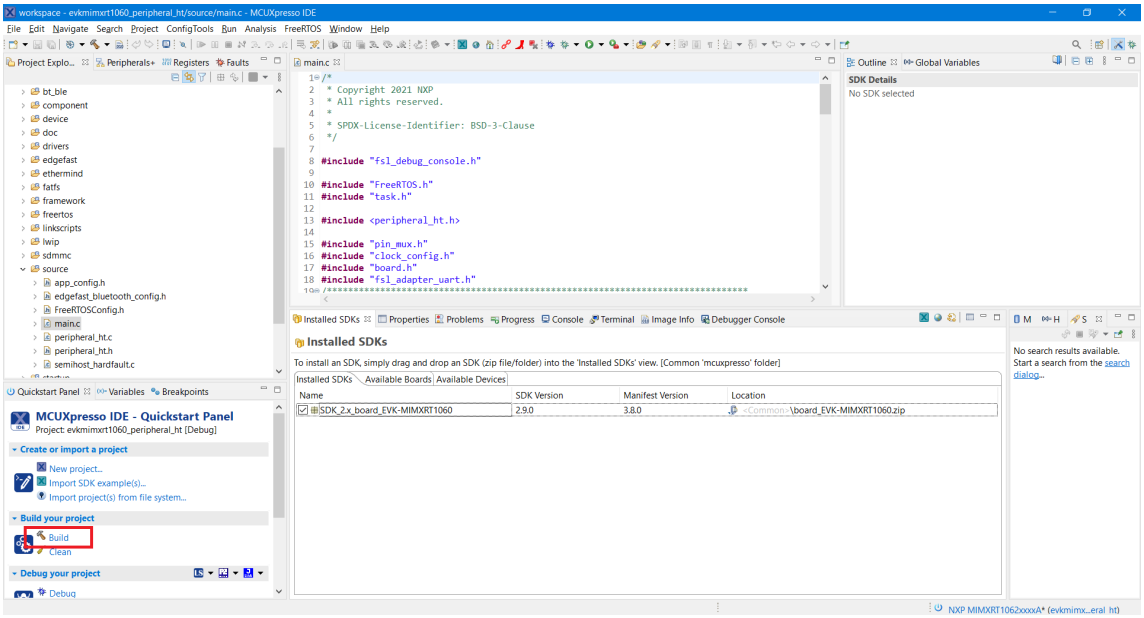
Parent topic: Run a demo application using MCUXpresso IDE

Build an MCUXpresso IDE example

1. Select desired target for your project.



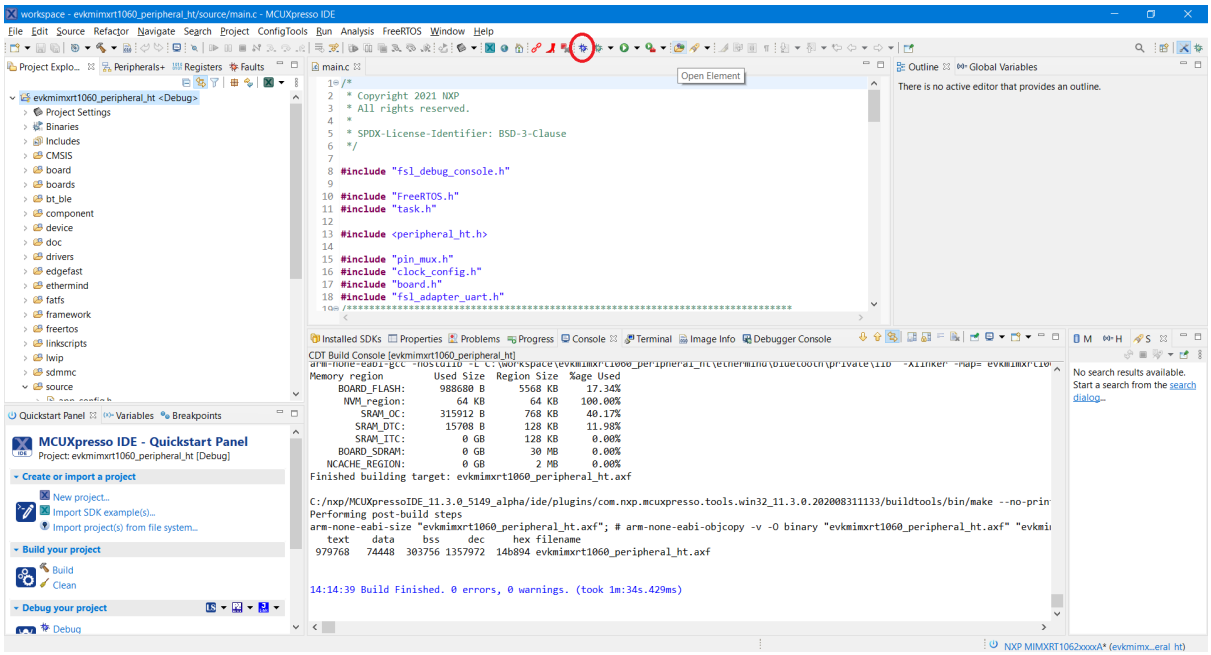
2. Build MCUXpresso IDE EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer project.



Parent topic: Run a demo application using MCUXpresso IDE

Run an MCUXpresso IDE example For MCUXpresso IDE project running, all steps are similar to Run an IAR example except the steps of downloading image from compiler.

To download MCUXpresso IDE image to board, click the **Debug** button to download the executable file onto the board.



Parent topic: Run a demo application using MCUXpresso IDE

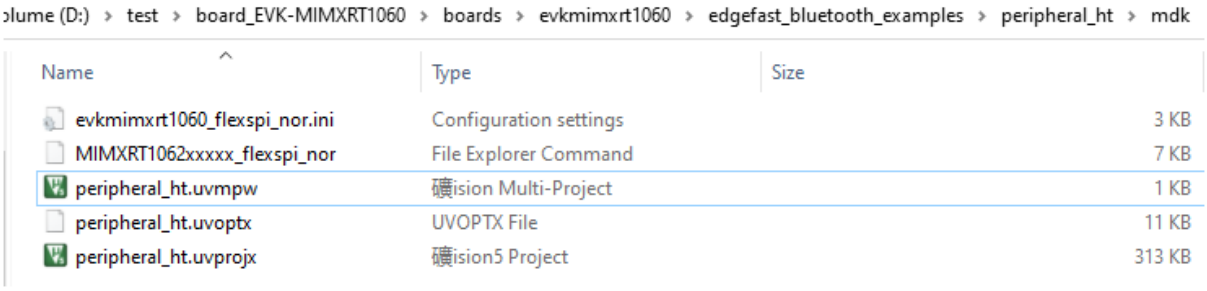
Parent topic:*Demo*

Run a demo application using MDK This document uses peripheral_ht example to describe the steps to open a project, build an example, and run a project on MDK.

For details, see the related section in the Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK User's Guide (document: MCUXSDKGSUG) in the directory *root/docs/* and the readme file in the corresponding demo's directory.

Open an MDK project For the IAR Embedded Workbench, unpack the contents of the archive to a folder on a local drive.

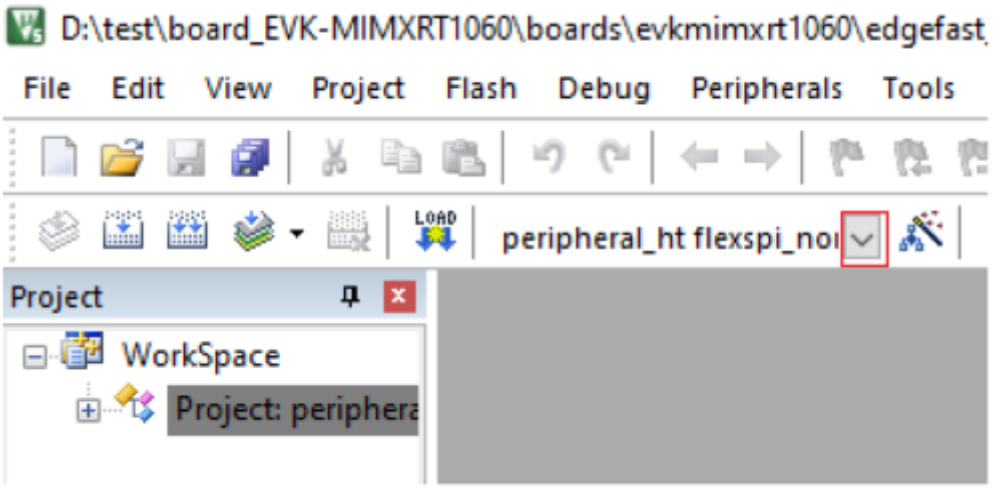
1. The example projects are available at: <root>/boards/evkmimxrt1060/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/peripheral_ht/mdk.
2. Open the mdk workspace file. For example, the highlighted *.uvmpw format file.



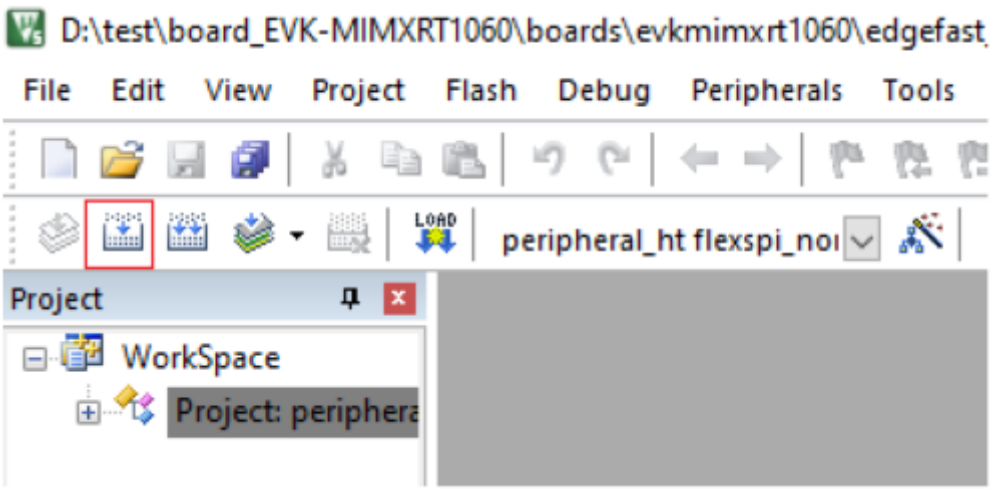
Parent topic: Run a demo application using MDK

Build an MDK example To build an MDK example:

1. Select *flexspi_nor_debug* or *flexspi_nor_release* configurations from the drop-down selector above the project tree in the workspace.



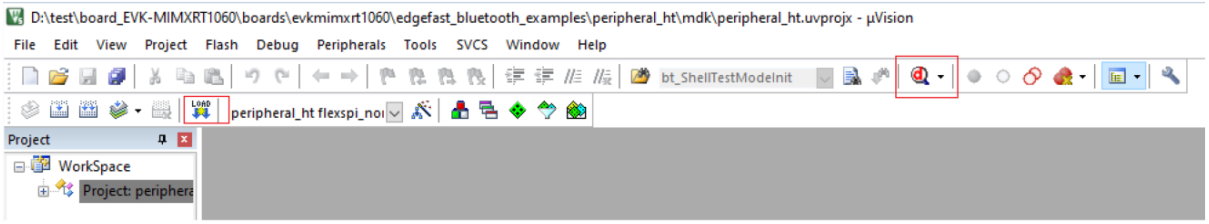
2. Click the highlighted icon to build the EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer project.



Parent topic: Run a demo application using MDK

Run an MDK example For MDK project running, all steps are similar to Run an IAR example except the steps of downloading image from compiler.

To download the MDK image to the board, click the **Debug** button. The executable file downloads to the board.



Parent topic: Run a demo application using MDK

Parent topic:*Demo*

Run a demo application using Arm GCC This document uses peripheral_ht example to describe the steps to open a project, build an example, and run a project on MDK.

For details, see the related section in *Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK User's Guide* (document: MCUXSDKGSUG) at *root/docs/* and the readme file in the corresponding demo's directory.

Setup tool chains See the section "Run a demo using Arm GCC" of getting start document. For example, *Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK for MIMXRT1160-EVK*.

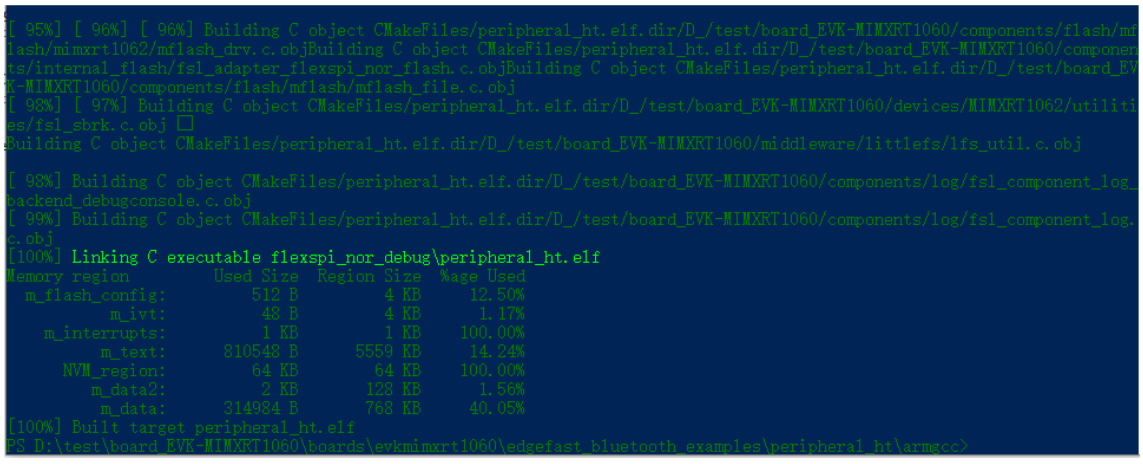
Parent topic: Run a demo application using Arm GCC

Build a GCC example To build a GCC example:

1. Change the directory to the project directory: <install_dir>\boards\evkmimxrt1060\edgefast_bluetooth_examples\peripheral_ht\armgcc.
2. Run the build script.

   For windows, the script is build_flexspi_nor_debug.bat/ build_flexspi_nor_release.bat.

   The build output is shown in the following figure.



Parent topic: Run a demo application using Arm GCC

Run a GCC example Refer to the section "Run a demo using Arm GCC" of the getting start document. For example, see Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK for MIMXRT1060-EVK. The peripheral_ht.elf is the target to download.

Parent topic: Run a demo application using Arm GCC

Parent topic:*Demo*

Download Linker Layer firmware from the reference board Download the Linker Layer (LL) Firmware from Reference board EVKRT1060 by SDIO interface before running the Bluetooth Controller stack. The LL download is necessary because wireless module does not support flash.

Parent topic:*Demo*

Change board-specific parameters There are some board-specific parameters that can be changed in the application layer for EdgeFast BT PAL.

Change HCI UART parameters Since the controller can support different baud rates, the demo provides an interface with configurable baud rates. The function*controller_hci_uart_get_configuration* is used to get HCI UART parameters, including the instance, default baud rate, which depends on the controller, running baud rate which defined by macro BOARD_BT_UART_BAUDRATE and so on. If this function returns '0' and the running baud rate is inconsistent with the default baud rate, EdgeFast BT PAL switches the baud rate of the controller to the running baud rate.

Parent topic: Change board-specific parameters

Change USB Host stack parameters Since the board supports multiple USB ports, the demo provides a configurable interface for USB Host stack. The function*USB_HostGetConfiguration* received the instance of USB for EdgeFast BT PAL. For the case where there is a USBPHY, the demo configures the properties of the PHY through*USB_HostPhyGetConfiguration*.

Note: There are series of hex bytes printed on the console after the wireless module resets. However, it does not impact the EdgeFast BT PAL application running.

Parent topic: Change board-specific parameters

Parent topic:*Demo*

Known issues This section provides a list of known issues in the release package.

Notes This section provides a list of notes to use EdgeFast Bluetooth stack

- the follow configuration items related to resource needs more attention
  - CONFIG_BT_MAX_CONN The max connections that can be created.
  - CONFIG_BT_MAX_PAIRED The max supported paired devices.
  - CONFIG_BT_BUF_EVT_RX_COUNT The max received hci events and acl data packets at one time if the sys work queue task is blocked. One example is: when LE connection is created and HCI_LE_Enhanced_Connection_Complete is received, the sys work queue task is busy with processing the HCI_LE_Enhanced_Connection_Complete. If the received hci events exceed CONFIG_BT_BUF_EVT_RX_COUNT, it may leads potential issue, please increase value of the macro.
- All the EdgeFast Bluetooth API should be called only after EdgeFast Bluetooth is initialized.
- Don't send HCI cmd from the sys work queue task or any stack's callbacks.

EdgeFast BT PAL configuration documentation **CONFIG_BT_BUF_RESERVE**

Buffer reserved length, suggested value is 8.

CONFIG_BT_SNOOP

Whether enable bt snoop feature, 0 - disable, 1 - enable.

CONFIG_BT_HCI_CMD_COUNT

Number of HCI command buffers, ranging from 2 to 64. Number of buffers available for HCI commands Range 2 to 64 is valid.

CONFIG_BT_RX_BUF_COUNT

Number of HCI RX buffers, ranging from 2 to 255. Number of buffers available for incoming ACL packets or HCI events from the controller Range 2 to 255 is valid.

CONFIG_BT_RX_BUF_LEN

Maximum supported HCI RX buffer length, ranging from 73 to 2000. Maximum data size for each HCI RX buffer. This size includes everything starting with the ACL or HCI event headers. Note that buffer sizes are always rounded up to the nearest multiple of 4, so if this Kconfig value is something else then there is some wasted space. The minimum of 73 has been taken for LE SC which has an L2CAP MTU of 65 bytes. On top of this, The L2CAP header (4 bytes) and the ACL header (also 4 bytes) which yields 73 bytes. Range is 73 to 2000.

CONFIG_BT_HCI_RESERVE

Reserve buffer size for user. Headroom that the driver needs for sending and receiving buffers. Add a new 'default' entry for each new driver.

CONFIG_BT_DISCARDABLE_BUF_COUNT

Number of discardable event buffers, if the macro is set to 0, disable this feature, if greater than 0, this feature is enabled. Number of buffers in a separate buffer pool for events which the HCI driver considers discardable. Examples of such events could be , for example, Advertising Reports. The benefit of having such a pool means that if there is a heavy inflow of such events it does not cause the allocation for other critical events to block and may even eliminate deadlocks in some cases.

CONFIG_BT_DISCARDABLE_BUF_SIZE

Size of discardable event buffers, ranging from 45 to 257. Size of buffers in the separate discardable event buffer pool. The minimum size is set based on the Advertising Report. Setting the buffer can save memory if with size set differently from that of the CONFIG_BT_RX_BUF_LEN. range is 45 to 257.

CONFIG_BT_HCI_TX_STACK_SIZE

HCI TX task stack size needed for executing bt_send with specified driver, should be no less than 512.

CONFIG_BT_HCI_TX_PRIO

HCI TX task priority.

CONFIG_BT_RX_STACK_SIZE

Size of the receiving thread stack. This is the context from which all event callbacks to the application occur. The default value is sufficient for basic operation, but if the application needs to do advanced things in its callbacks that require extra stack space, this value can be increased to accommodate for that.

CONFIG_BT_RX_PRIO

RX task priority.

CONFIG_BT_PERIPHERAL

Peripheral Role support, if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. Select this for LE Peripheral role support.

CONFIG_BT_BROADCASTER

Broadcaster Role support, if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. Select this for LE Broadcaster role support.

CONFIG_BT_EXT_ADV

Extended Advertising and Scanning support [EXPERIMENTAL], if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. Select this to enable Extended Advertising API support. This enables support for advertising with multiple advertising sets, extended advertising data, and advertising on LE Coded PHY. It enables support for receiving extended advertising data as a scanner, including support for advertising data over the LE coded PHY. It enables establishing connections over LE Coded PHY.

CONFIG_BT_CENTRAL

Central Role support, if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. Select this for LE Central role support.

CONFIG_BT_WHITELIST

Enable whitelist support. This option enables the whitelist API. This takes advantage of the whitelisting feature of a Bluetooth LE controller. The whitelist is a global list and the same whitelist is used by both scanner and advertiser. The whitelist cannot be modified while it is in use. An Advertiser can whitelist which peers can connect or request scan response data. A scanner can whitelist advertiser for which it generates advertising reports. Connections can be established automatically for whitelisted peers.

This option deprecates the bt_le_set_auto_conn API in favor of the bt_conn_create_aute_le API.

CONFIG_BT_DEVICE_NAME

Bluetooth device name. Name can be up to 248 bytes long (excluding NULL termination). Can be empty string.

CONFIG_BT_DEVICE_APPEARANCE

Bluetooth device appearance. For the list of possible values, see the link: www.bluetooth.com/specifications/assigned-numbers.

CONFIG_BT_DEVICE_NAME_DYNAMIC

Allow to set Bluetooth device name on runtime. Enabling this option allows for runtime configuration of Bluetooth device name.

CONFIG_BT_ID_MAX

Maximum number of local identities, range 1 to 10 is valid. Maximum number of supported local identity addresses. For most products, this is safe to leave as the default value (1). Range 1 to 10 is valid.

CONFIG_BT_CONN

Connection enablement, if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled.

CONFIG_BT_MAX_CONN

it is the max connection supported by host stack. Maximum number of simultaneous Bluetooth connections supported.

CONFIG_BT_HCI_ACL_FLOW_CONTROL

Controller to host ACL flow control support. Enable support for throttling ACL buffers from the controller to the host. This is useful when the host and controller are on separate cores, since it ensures that we do not run out of incoming ACL buffers.

CONFIG_BT_PHY_UPDATE

PHY Update, if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. Enable support for Bluetooth 5.0 PHY Update Procedure.

CONFIG_BT_DATA_LEN_UPDATE

Data Length Update. If the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. Enable support for Bluetooth v4.2 LE Data Length Update procedure.

CONFIG_BT_CREATE_CONN_TIMEOUT

Timeout for pending LE Create Connection command in seconds.

CONFIG_BT_CONN_PARAM_UPDATE_TIMEOUT

Peripheral connection parameter update timeout in milliseconds, range 1 to 65535 is valid. The value is a timeout used by peripheral device to wait until it starts the connection parameters update procedure to change default connection parameters. The default value is set to 5s, to comply with BT protocol specification: Core 4.2 Vol 3, Part C, 9.3.12.2 Range 1 to 65535 is valid.

CONFIG_BT_CONN_TX_MAX

Maximum number of pending TX buffers. Maximum number of pending TX buffers that have not yet been acknowledged by the controller.

CONFIG_BT_REMOTE_INFO

Enable application access to remote information. Enable application access to the remote information available in the stack. The remote information is retrieved once a connection has been established and the application is notified when this information is available through the remote_version_available connection callback.

CONFIG_BT_REMOTE_VERSION

Enable fetching of remote version. Enable this to get access to the remote version in the Controller and in the host through bt_conn_get_info(). The fields in question can be then found in the bt_conn_info struct.

CONFIG_BT_SMP_SC_ONLY

Secure Connections Only Mode. This option enables support for Secure Connection Only Mode. In this mode device shall only use Security Mode 1 Level 4 with exception for services that only require Security Mode 1 Level 1 (no security). Security Mode 1 Level 4 stands for authenticated LE Secure Connections pairing with encryption. Enabling this option disables legacy pairing.

CONFIG_BT_SMP_OOB_LEGACY_PAIR_ONLY

Force Out of Band Legacy pairing. This option disables Legacy and LE SC pairing and forces legacy OOB.

CONFIG_BT_SMP_DISABLE_LEGACY_JW_PASSKEY

Forbid usage of insecure legacy pairing methods. This option disables Just Works and Passkey legacy pairing methods to increase security.

CONFIG_BT_PRIVACY

Privacy Feature, if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. Enable local Privacy Feature support. This makes it possible to use Resolvable Private Addresses (RPAs).

CONFIG_BT_ECC

Enable ECDH key generation support. This option adds support for ECDH HCI commands.

CONFIG_BT_TINYCRYPT_ECC

Use TinyCrypt library for ECDH. If this option is used to set TinyCrypt library which is used for emulating the ECDH HCI commands and events needed by e.g. LE Secure Connections. In builds including the Bluetooth LE host, if don't set the controller crypto which is used for ECDH and if the controller doesn't support the required HCI commands the LE Secure Connections support will be disabled. In builds including the HCI Raw interface and the Bluetooth LE controller, this

option injects support for the 2 HCI commands required for LE Secure Connections so that hosts can make use of those. The option defaults to enabled for a combined build with Zephyr's own controller, since it does not have any special ECC support itself (at least not currently).

CONFIG_BT_TINYCRYPT_ECC_PRIORITY

Thread priority of ECC Task.

CONFIG_BT_HCI_ECC_STACK_SIZE

Thread stack size of ECC Task.

CONFIG_BT_RPA

Bluetooth Resolvable Private Address (RPA)

CONFIG_BT_RPA_TIMEOUT

Resolvable Private Address timeout, defaults to 900 seconds. This option defines how often resolvable private address is rotated. Value is provided in seconds and defaults to 900 seconds (15 minutes).

CONFIG_BT_SIGNING

Data signing support, if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. This option enables data signing which is used for transferring authenticated data in an unencrypted connection.

CONFIG_BT_SMP_APP_PAIRING_ACCEPT

Accept or reject pairing initiative. When receiving pairing request or pairing response queries, the application shall either accept proceeding with pairing or not. This is for pairing over SMP and does not affect SSP, which will continue pairing without querying the application. The application can return an error code, which is translated into an SMP return value if the pairing is not allowed.

CONFIG_BT_SMP_ALLOW_UNAUTH_OVERWRITE

Allow unauthenticated pairing for paired device. This option allows all unauthenticated pairing attempts made by the peer where an unauthenticated bond already exists. This would enable cases where an attacker could copy the peer device address to connect and start an unauthenticated pairing procedure to replace the existing bond. When this option is disabled in order to create a new bond the old bond must be explicitly deleted with bt_unpair.

CONFIG_BT_FIXED_PASSKEY

Use a fixed passkey for pairing, set passkey to fixed or not. With this option enabled, the application will be able to call the bt_passkey_set() API to set a fixed passkey. If set, the pairing_confim() callback will be called for all incoming pairings.

CONFIG_BT_BONDABLE

Bondable Mode, if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. This option enables support for Bondable Mode. In this mode, Bonding flag in AuthReq of SMP Pairing Request/Response is set indicating the support for this mode.

CONFIG_BT_BONDING_REQUIRED

Always require bonding. When this option is enabled remote devices are required to always set the bondable flag in their pairing request. Any other kind of requests will be rejected.

CONFIG_BT_SMP_ENFORCE_MITM

Enforce MITM protection, if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. With this option enabled, the Security Manager is set MITM option in the Authentication Requirements Flags whenever local IO Capabilities allow the generated key to be authenticated.

CONFIG_BT_OOB_DATA_FIXED

Use a fixed random number for LESC OOB pairing. With this option enabled, the application will be able to perform LESC pairing with OOB data that consists of fixed random number and confirm value. This option should only be enabled for debugging and should never be used in production.

CONFIG_BT_KEYS_OVERWRITE_OLDEST

Overwrite oldest keys with new ones if key storage is full. With this option enabled, if a pairing attempt occurs and the key storage is full, then the oldest keys in storage will be removed to free space for the new pairing keys.

CONFIG_BT_HOST_CCM

Enable host side AES-CCM module. Enables the software-based AES-CCM engine in the host. Will use the controller's AES encryption functions if available, or BT_HOST_CRYPTO otherwise.

CONFIG_BT_L2CAP_RX_MTU

Maximum supported L2CAP MTU for incoming data, if CONFIG_BT_SMP is set, range is 65 to 1300, otherwise range is 23 to 1300. Maximum size of each incoming L2CAP PDU. Range is 23 to 1300 range is 65 to 1300 for CONFIG_BT_SMP.

CONFIG_BT_L2CAP_TX_BUF_COUNT

Number of buffers available for outgoing L2CAP packets, ranging from 2 to 255. Range is 2 to 255.

CONFIG_BT_L2CAP_TX_FRAG_COUNT

Number of L2CAP TX fragment buffers, ranging from 0 to 255. Number of buffers available for fragments of TX buffers.

Warning: Setting this to 0 means that the application must ensure that queued TX buffers never need to be fragmented, that is the controller's buffer size is large enough. If this is not ensured, and there are no dedicated fragment buffers, a deadlock may occur. In most cases the default value of 2 is a safe bet. Range is 0 to 255.

CONFIG_BT_L2CAP_TX_MTU

Maximum supported L2CAP MTU for L2CAP TX buffers, if CONFIG_BT_SMP is set, the range is 65 to 2000. Otherwise, range is 23 to 2000. Range is 23 to 2000. Range is 65 to 2000 for CONFIG_BT_SMP.

CONFIG_BT_L2CAP_DYNAMIC_CHANNEL

L2CAP Dynamic Channel support. This option enables support for LE Connection oriented Channels, allowing the creation of dynamic L2CAP Channels.

CONFIG_BT_L2CAP_DYNAMIC_CHANNEL

L2CAP Dynamic Channel support. This option enables support for LE Connection oriented Channels, allowing the creation of dynamic L2CAP Channels.

Bluetooth BR/EDR support [EXPERIMENTAL] This option enables Bluetooth BR/EDR support.

CONFIG_BT_ATT_PREPARE_COUNT

Number of ATT prepares write buffers, if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if greater than 1, feature is enabled. Number of buffers available for ATT prepares write, setting this to 0 disables GATT long/reliable writes.

CONFIG_BT_ATT_TX_MAX

Maximum number of queued outgoing ATT PDUs. Number of ATT PDUs that can be at a single moment queued for transmission. If the application tries to send more than this amount the calls blocks until an existing queued PDU gets sent. Range is 1 to CONFIG_BT_L2CAP_TX_BUF_COUNT.

CONFIG_BT_GATT_SERVICE_CHANGED

GATT Service Changed support, if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. This option enables support for the service changed characteristic.

CONFIG_BT_GATT_DYNAMIC_DB

GATT dynamic database support, if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. This option enables registering/unregistering services at runtime.

CONFIG_BT_GATT_CACHING

GATT Caching support, if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. This option enables support for GATT Caching. When enabled the stack registers Client Supported Features and Database Hash characteristics which is used by clients to detect if anything has changed on the GATT database.

CONFIG_BT_GATT_CLIENT

GATT client support, if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. This option enables support for the GATT Client role.

CONFIG_BT_GATT_READ_MULTIPLE

GATT Read Multiple Characteristic. Values support, if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. This option enables support for the GATT Read Multiple Characteristic Values procedure.

CONFIG_BT_GAP_AUTO_UPDATE_CONN_PARAMS

Automatic Update of Connection Parameters, if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. This option, if enabled, allows automatically sending request for connection parameters update after GAP recommended 5 seconds of connection as peripheral.

CONFIG_BT_GAP_PERIPHERAL_PREF_PARAMS

Configure peripheral preferred connection parameters. This configures peripheral preferred connection parameters. Enabling this option results in adding PPCP characteristic in GAP. If disabled it is up to application to set expected connection parameters.

CONFIG_BT_MAX_PAIRED

Maximum number of paired devices. Maximum number of paired Bluetooth devices. The minimum (and default) number is 1.

CONFIG_BT_MAX_SCO_CONN

Maximum number of simultaneous SCO connections. Maximum number of simultaneous Bluetooth synchronous connections supported. The minimum (and default) number is 1. Range 1 to 3 is valid.

CONFIG_BT_RFCOMM

Bluetooth RFCOMM protocol support [EXPERIMENTAL], if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. This option enables Bluetooth RFCOMM support.

CONFIG_BT_RFCOMM_L2CAP_MTU

L2CAP MTU for RFCOMM frames. Maximum size of L2CAP PDU for RFCOMM frames.

CONFIG_BT_HFP_HF

Bluetooth Handsfree profile HF Role support [EXPERIMENTAL], if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. This option enables Bluetooth HF support.

CONFIG_BT_AVDTP

Bluetooth AVDTP protocol support [EXPERIMENTAL], if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. This option enables Bluetooth AVDTP support.

CONFIG_BT_A2DP

Bluetooth A2DP Profile [EXPERIMENTAL]. This option enables the A2DP profile.

CONFIG_BT_A2DP_SOURCE

Bluetooth A2DP profile source function. This option enables the A2DP profile Source function.

CONFIG_BT_A2DP_SINK

Bluetooth A2DP profile sink function. This option enables the A2DP profile Sink function.

CONFIG_BT_A2DP_TASK_PRIORITY

Bluetooth A2DP profile task priority. This option sets the task priority. The task is used to process the streamer data and retry command.

CONFIG_BT_A2DP_TASK_STACK_SIZE

Bluetooth A2DP profile task stack size. This option sets the task stack size.

CONFIG_BT_PAGE_TIMEOUT

Bluetooth Page Timeout. This option sets the page timeout value. Value is selected as (N * 0.625) ms.

CONFIG_BT_DIS_MODEL

Model name. The device model inside Device Information Service.

CONFIG_BT_DIS_MANUF

Manufacturer name. The device manufacturer inside Device Information Service.

CONFIG_BT_DIS_PNP

Enable PnP_ID characteristic. Enable PnP_ID characteristic in Device Information Service.

CONFIG_BT_DIS_PNP_VID_SRC

Vendor ID source, range 1 - 2. The Vendor ID Source field designates which organization assigned the value used in the Vendor ID field value. The possible values are:

- 1 Bluetooth SIG, the Vendor ID was assigned by the Bluetooth SIG
- 2 USB IF, the Vendor ID was assigned by the USB IF

CONFIG_BT_DIS_PNP_VID

Vendor ID, range 0 - 0xFFFF. The Vendor ID field is intended to uniquely identify the vendor of the device. This field is used in conjunction with Vendor ID Source field, which determines which organization assigned the Vendor ID field value. Note: The Bluetooth Special Interest Group assigns Device ID Vendor ID, and the USB Implementers Forum assigns Vendor IDs, either of which can be used for the Vendor ID field value. Device providers should procure the Vendor ID from the USB Implementers Forum or the Company Identifier from the Bluetooth SIG.

CONFIG_BT_DIS_PNP_PID

Product ID, range 0 - 0xFFFF. The Product ID field is intended to distinguish between different products made by the vendor identified with the Vendor ID field. The vendors themselves manage Product ID field values.

CONFIG_BT_DIS_PNP_VER

Product Version, range 0 - 0xFFFF. The Product Version field is a numeric expression identifying the device release number in Binary-Coded Decimal. This is a vendor-assigned value, which defines the version of the product identified by the Vendor ID and Product ID fields. This field is intended to differentiate between versions of products with identical Vendor IDs and Product IDs. The value of the field value is 0xJJMN for version JJ.M.N (JJ - major version number, M - minor version number, N - subminor version number); For example, version 2.1.3 is represented with value 0x0213 and version 2.0.0 is represented with a value of 0x0200. When upward-compatible changes are made to the device, it is recommended that the minor version number be incremented. If incompatible changes are made to the device. It is recommended that the major version number is incremented. The subminor version is incremented for bug fixes.

CONFIG_BT_DIS_SERIAL_NUMBER

Enable DIS Serial number characteristic, 1 - enable, 0 - disable. Enable Serial Number characteristic in Device Information Service.

CONFIG_BT_DIS_SERIAL_NUMBER_STR

Serial Number. Serial Number characteristic string in Device Information Service.

CONFIG_BT_DIS_FW_REV

Enable DIS Firmware Revision characteristic, 1 - enable, 0 - disable. Enable Firmware Revision characteristic in Device Information Service.

CONFIG_BT_DIS_FW_REV_STR

Firmware revision. Firmware Revision characteristic String in Device Information Service.

CONFIG_BT_DIS_HW_REV

Enable DIS Hardware Revision characteristic, 1 - enable, 0 - disable. Enable Hardware Revision characteristic in Device Information Service.

CONFIG_BT_DIS_HW_REV_STR

Hardware revision. Hardware Revision characteristic String in Device Information Service.

CONFIG_BT_DIS_SW_REV

Enable DIS Software Revision characteristic, 1 - enable, 0 - disable. Enable Software Revision characteristic in Device Information Service.

CONFIG_BT_DIS_SW_REV_STR

Software revision Software revision characteristic String in Device Information Service.

CONFIG_SYSTEM_WORKQUEUE_STACK_SIZE

System work queue stack size.

CONFIG_SYSTEM_WORKQUEUE_PRIORITY

System work queue priority.

CONFIG_BT_HCI_TRANSPORT_INTERFACE_TYPE

HCI transport interface type.

CONFIG_BT_HCI_TRANSPORT_INTERFACE_INSTANCE

HCI transport interface instance number.

CONFIG_BT_HCI_TRANSPORT_INTERFACE_SPEED

HCI transport interface rate. Configures the interface speed, for example, the default interface is h4, the speed to 115200

CONFIG_BT_HCI_TRANSPORT_TX_THREAD

Whether enable HCI transport TX thread.

CONFIG_BT_HCI_TRANSPORT_RX_THREAD

Whether enable HCI transport RX thread.

CONFIG_BT_HCI_TRANSPORT_RX_STACK_SIZE

HCI transport RX thread stack size.

CONFIG_BT_HCI_TRANSPORT_TX_STACK_SIZE

HCI transport TX thread stack size.

CONFIG_BT_HCI_TRANSPORT_TX_PRIO

HCI transport TX thread priority.

CONFIG_BT_HCI_TRANSPORT_RX_PRIO

HCI transport RX thread priority.

CONFIG_BT_MSG_QUEUE_COUNT

Message number in message queue.

Rework Guide for EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer

Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT1170-EVKB and Murata M.2 Module This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP i.MX MIMXRT1170-EVKB and the Murata's 1XK, 1ZM, 2EL or 2LL solution - direct M.2 connection to Embedded Artists EAR00385 (1XK), EAR00364 (1ZM), Rev-A1 (2EL) or EAR00500 (2LL) M.2 modules.

The hardware rework has two parts:

- HCI UART rework
- PCM interface rework

Hardware rework

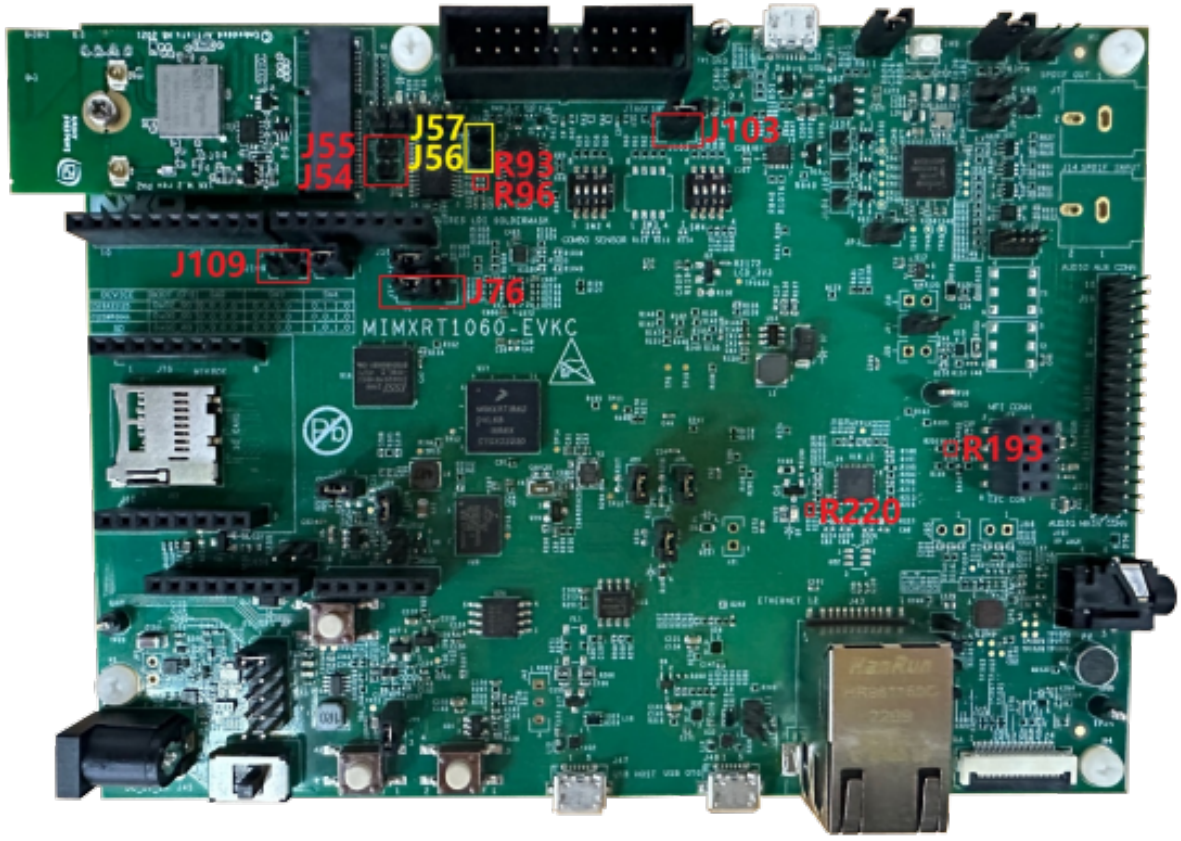
- **HCI UART rework**

1. Mount R93, R96.
2. Remove R193.
3. Connect J109, connect J76 2-3.

- **PCM interface rework**

1. Remove J54 and J55, connect J56 and J57.
2. Remove R220.
3. Connect J103.

Note: When J103 is connected, flash cannot be downloaded. So, remove the connection when downloading flash and reconnect it after downloading.



Parent topic:*Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT1060-EVKC and Murata M.2 Module*

Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT1170-EVKB and Murata 2EL M.2 Module Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT1170-EVKB and Murata

2EL M.2 Module

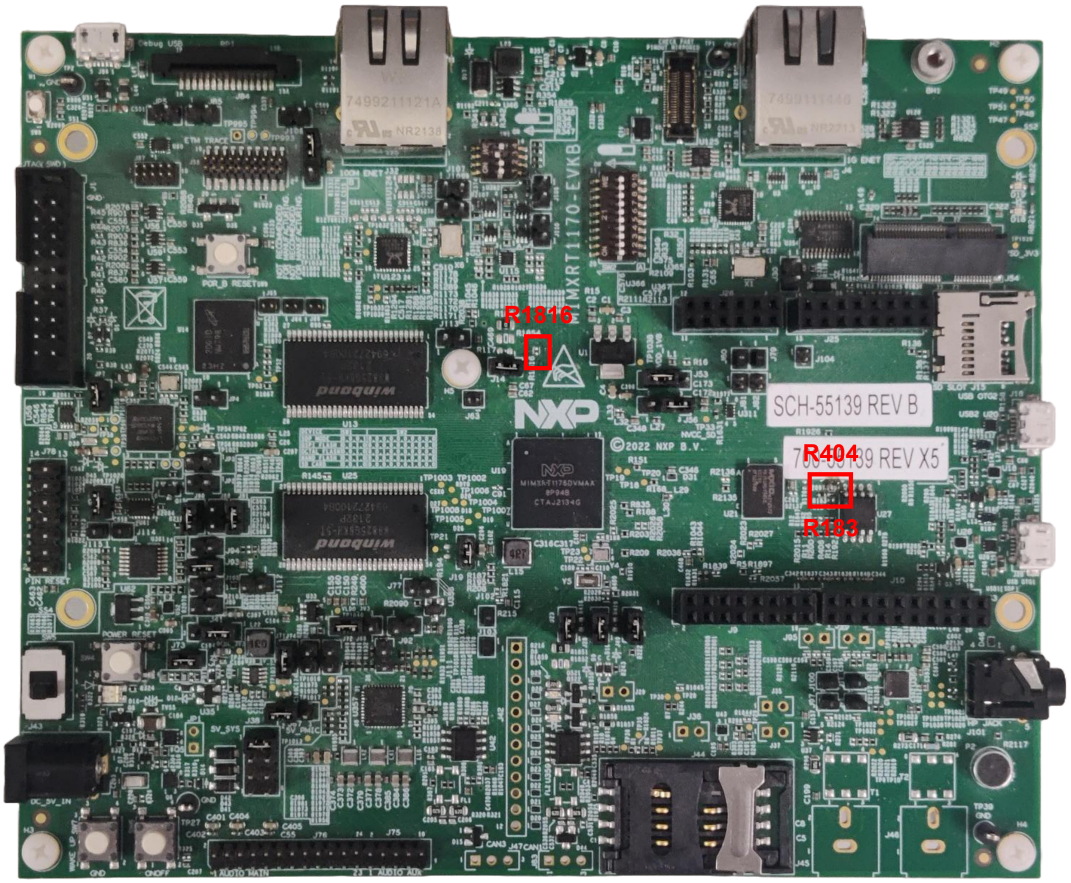
This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP i.MX MIMXRT1170-EVKB and the Murata 2EL M.2 solution - direct M.2 connection to Embedded Artists' Rev-A1 (2EL) M.2 modules.

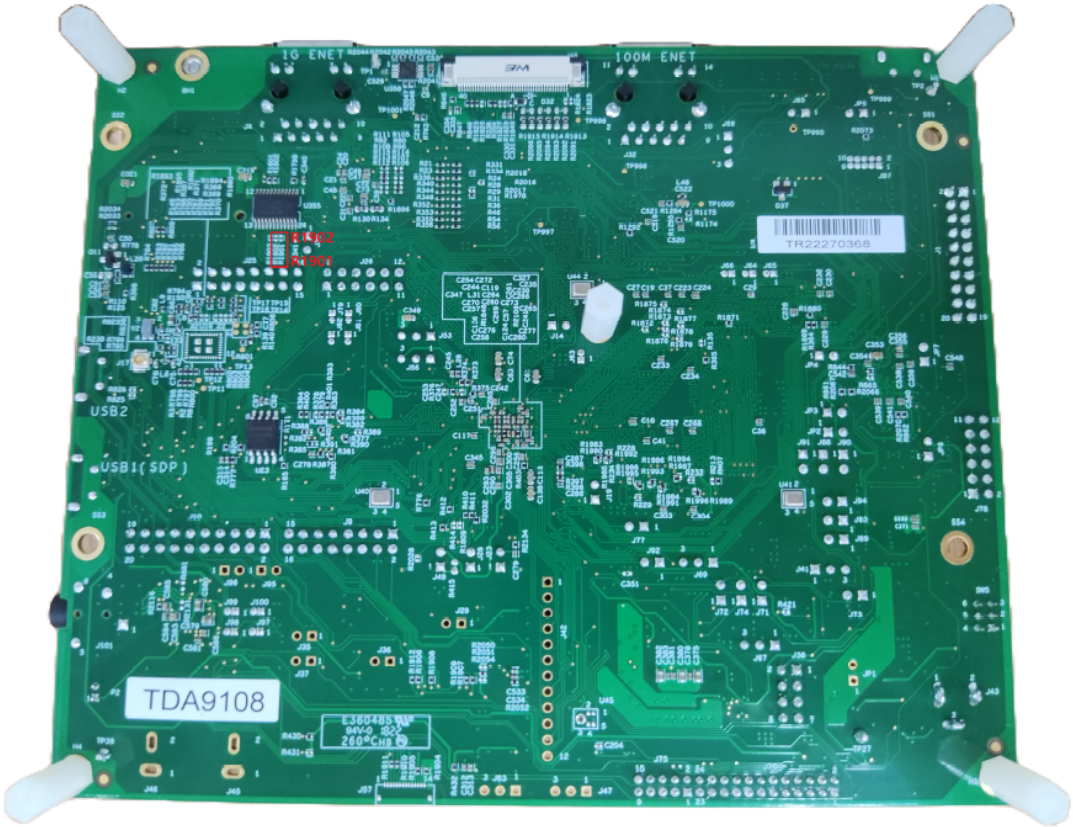
The hardware rework has three parts:

- HCI UART rework
- PCM interface rework
- LE Audio Synchronization interface rework (only used on sink side)

Hardware rework

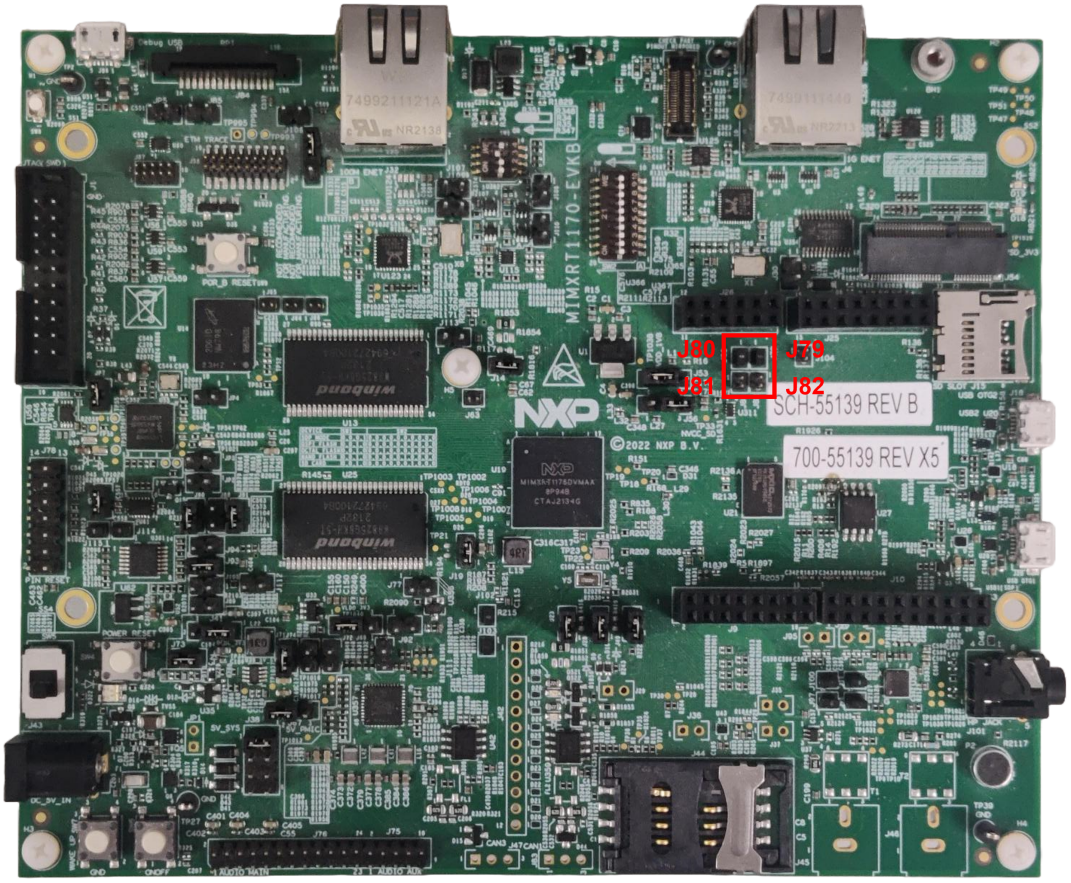
- **HCI UART rework**
  1. Remove resistors R183 and R1816.
  2. Solder 0 ohm resistor to R404, R1901, and R1902.

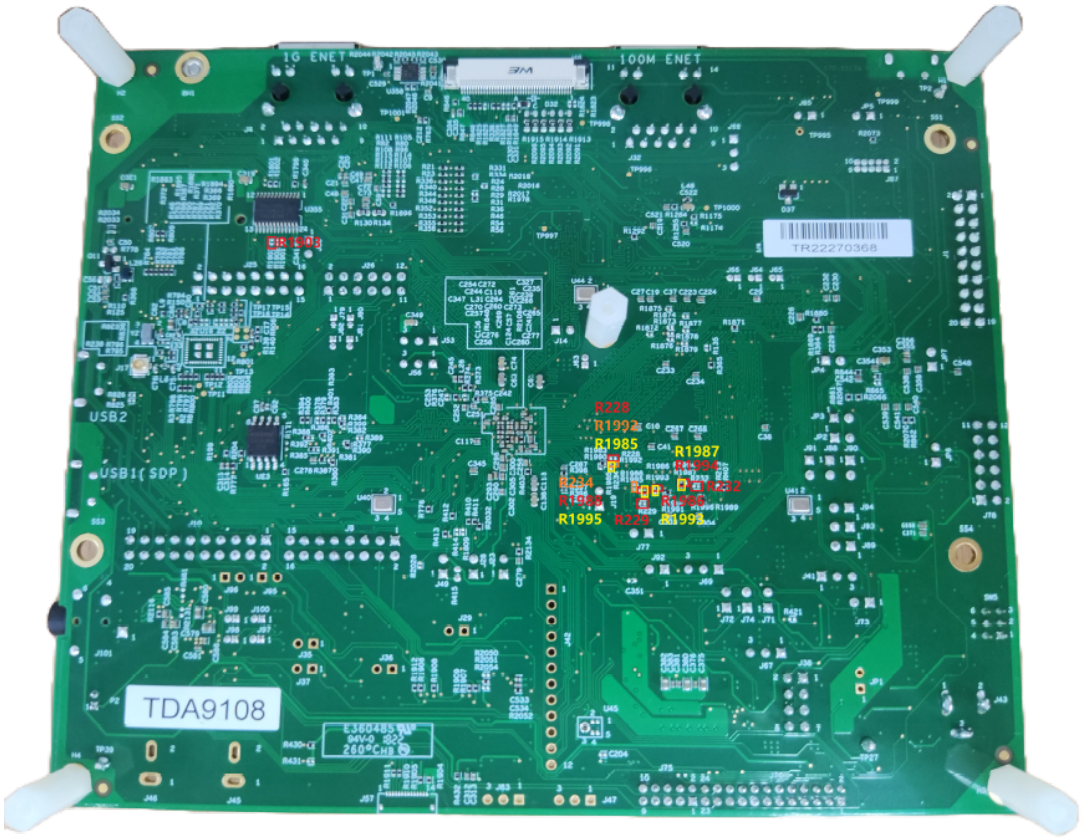




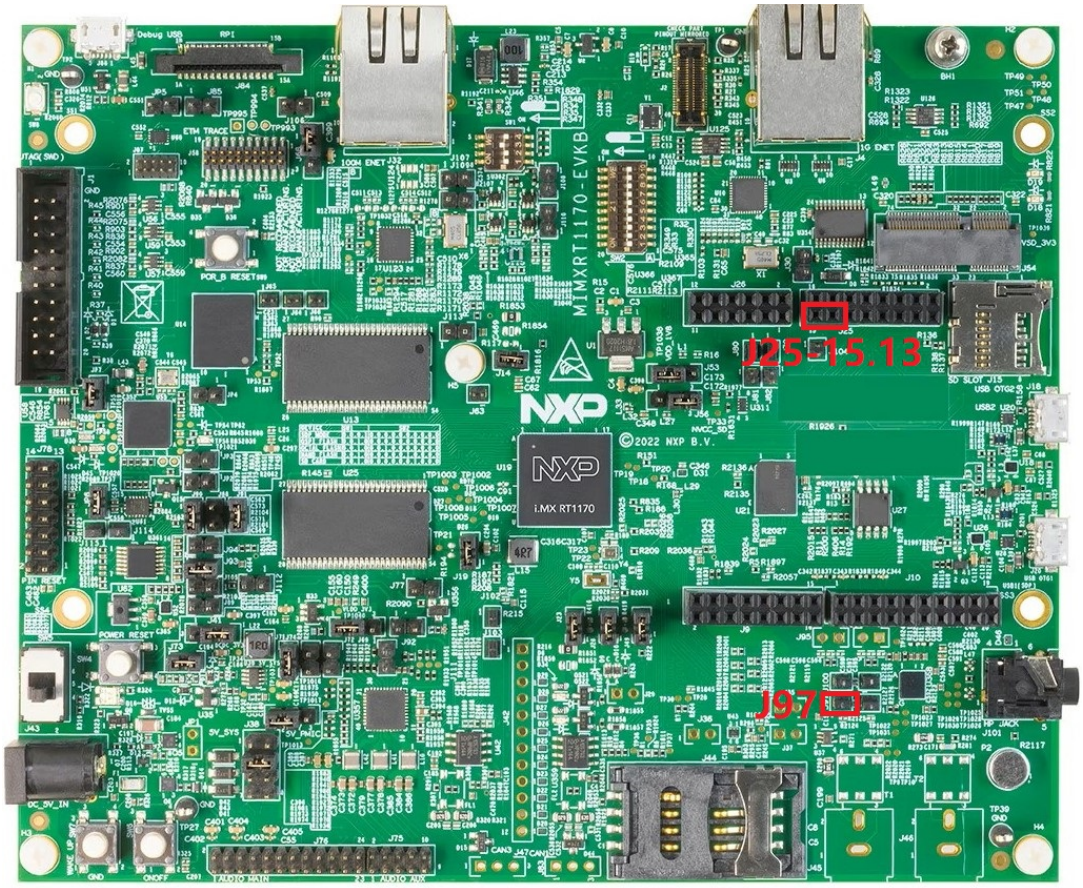
- **PCM interface rework**
  1. Disconnect header J79 and J80.

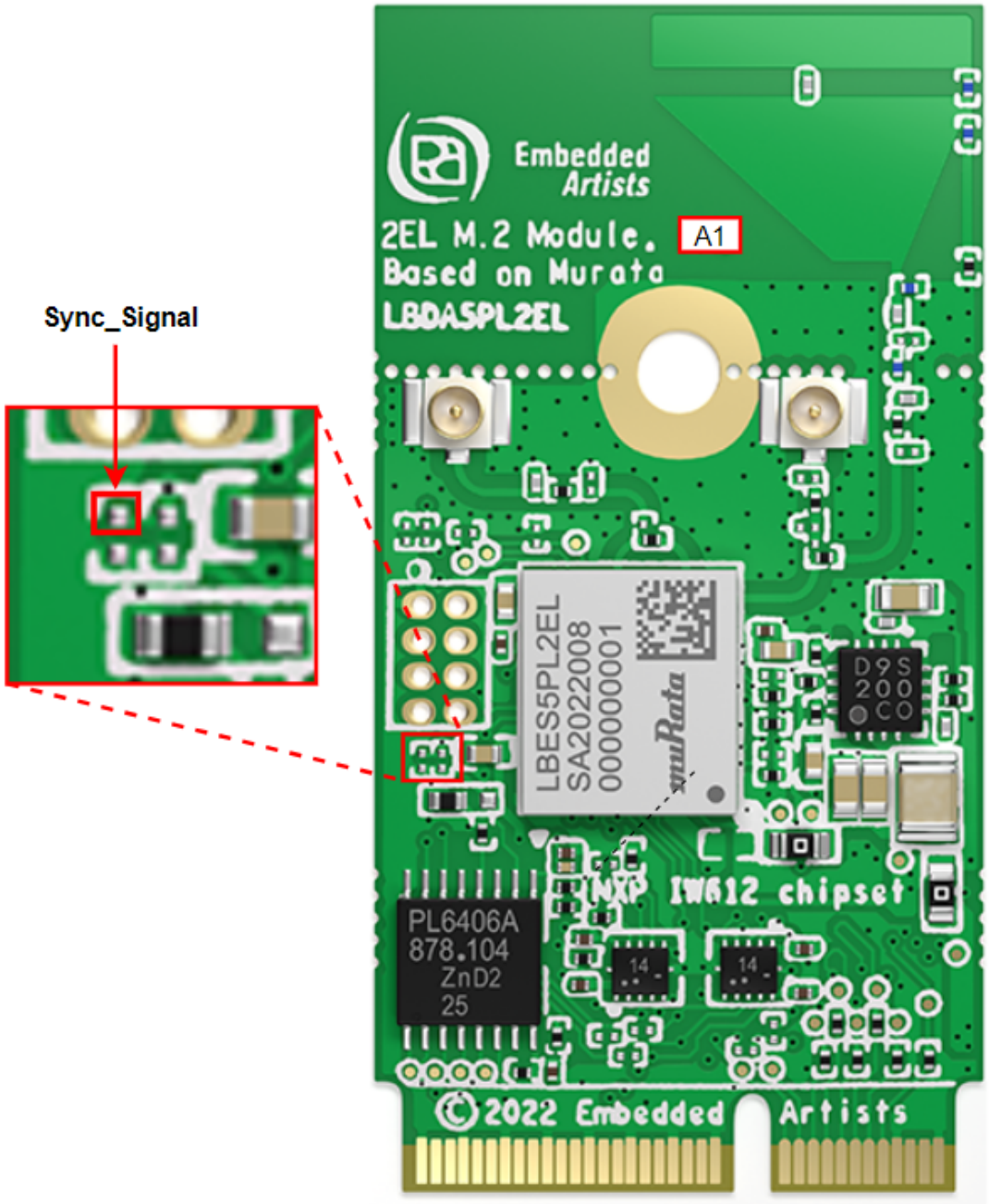
2. Connect header J81 and J82.
3. Remove resistors R1985, R1986, R1987, R1988, R1992, R1993, R1994, and R1995.
4. Solder 0 ohm resistor to R228, R229, R232, R234, and R1903.





- LE Audio Synchronization interface rework (only used on sink side)
  1. Connect J25-15 with J97.
  2. Connect J25-13 with 2EL's GPIO_27


MIMXRT1170-EVKB
i.MX RT1170
J25 15.13
J97



Parent topic:*Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT1170-EVKB and Murata 2EL M.2 Adapter*

Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT685-EVK and AW-AM457-uSD This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP i.MX MIMXRT685-EVK board and AW-AM457-uSD. The AW-AM457-uSD user guide is available here.The hardware rework has one part:

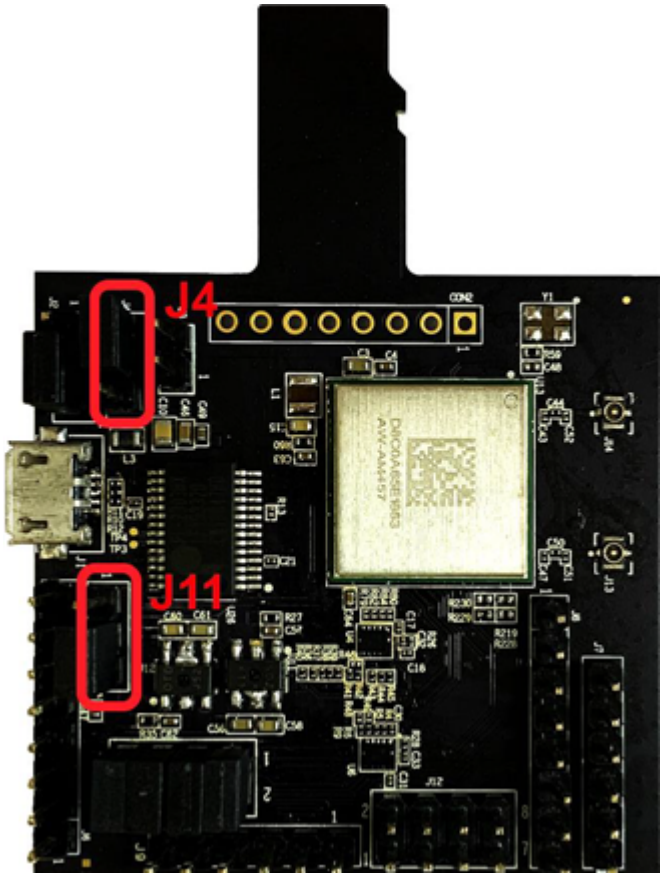
- HCI UART rework

Hardware rework **HCI UART rework**

- R398 move from 1-2 to 2-3
- JP12 2-3
- Connect the pins of two boards as the following table.

Pin Name	AW-AM457-uSD	i.MX RT685	PIN NAME	GPIONAME of i.MX RT685
UART_TXD	J10 (pin 4)	J27 (pin 1)	US-ART4_RXD	FC4_RXD_SDA_MOSI_DATA
UART_RXD	J10 (pin 2)	J27 (pin 2)	USART4_TXD	FC4_TXD_SCL_MISO_WS
UART_RTS	J10 (pin 6)	J47 (pin 9)	USART4_CTS	FC4_CTS_SDA_SSEL0
UART_CTS	J10 (pin 8)	J27 (pin 5)	USART4_RTS	FC4_RTS_SCL_SSEL1
GND	J6 (pin 7)	J29 (pin 6)	GND	GND





Jumper Settings:

- Connect J4[2-3] for VIO 3.3 V supply
- Connect J11[2-3] for VIO_SD 3.3 V supply

PCM interface rework

Connect the pins of two boards as the following table.

Pin Name	AW-AM457-uSD	i.MX RT685	PIN NAME of I.MX RT685	GPIONAME of I.MX RT685
PCM_IN	J9 (pin 1)	J47 (pin 7)	I2S2_TXD	FC2_RXD_SDA_MOSI_DATA
PCM_OUT	J9 (pin 2)	J28 (pin 4)	I2S5_RXD	FC5_RXD_SDA_MOSI_DATA
PCM_SYNC	J9 (pin 3)	J28 (pin 5)	I2S5_WS	FC5_TXD_SCL_MISO_WS
PCM_CLK	J9 (pin 4)	J28 (pin 6)	I2S5_SCK	FC5_SCK
GND	J9 (pin 6)	J29 (pin 7)	GND	GND

Parent topic:*Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT685-EVK and AW-AM457-uSD*

Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT685-EVK and AW-CM358-uSD This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP i.MX MIMXRT685-EVK board and AW-CM358-uSD. The AW-CM358-uSD user guide is available here. The hardware rework has one part:

- HCI UART rework

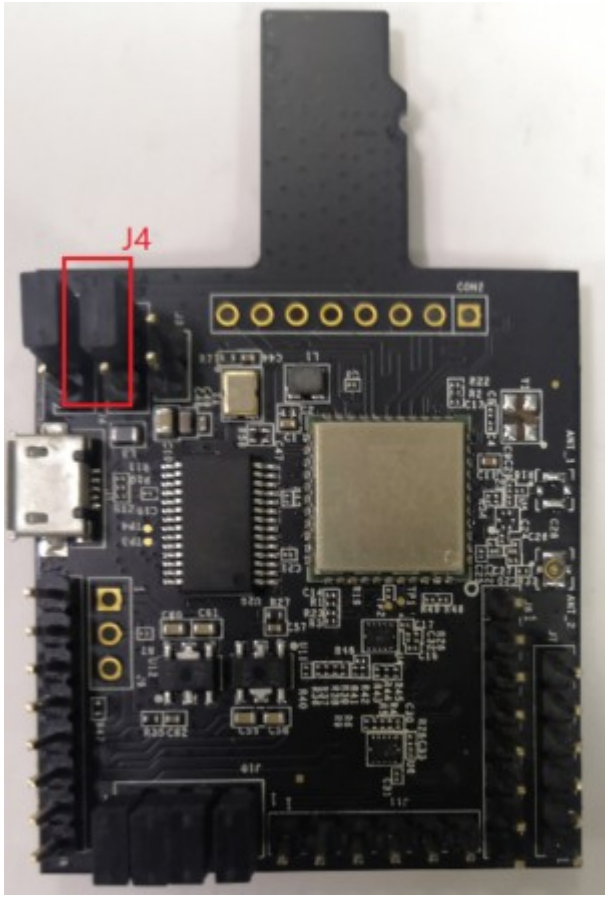
Hardware rework **HCI UART rework**

R398 move from 1-2 to 2-3.

Connect the pins of two boards as the following table.

Pin Name	AW-CM358-USD	i.MXRT685	PIN NAME	GPIONAME of RT685
UART_TXD	J10 (pin 4)	J27 (pin 1)	USART4_RXD	FC4_RXD_SDA_MOSI_DATA
UART_RXD	J10 (pin 2)	J27 (pin 2)	USART4_TXD	FC4_TXD_SCL_MISO_WS
UART_RTS	J10 (pin 6)	J47 (pin 9)	USART4_CTS	FC4_CTS_SDA_SSEL0
UART_CTS	J10 (pin 8)	J27 (pin 5)	USART4_RTS	FC4_RTS_SCL_SSEL1
GND	J6 (pin 7)	J29 (pin 6)	GND	GND





Jumper Setting:

Connect J4[1-2] for VIO 1.8 V supply.

PCM interface rework

Connect the pins of two boards as the following table.

Pin Name	AW-CM358-USD	i.MX RT685	PIN NAME of RT685	GPIONAME of RT685
PCM_IN	J11 (pin 1)	J47 (pin 7)	I2S2_TXD	FC2_RXD_SDA_MOSI_DATA
PCM_OUT	J11 (pin 2)	J28 (pin 4)	I2S5_RXD	FC5_RXD_SDA_MOSI_DATA
PCM_SYNC	J11 (pin 3)	J28 (pin 5)	I2S5_WS	FC5_TXD_SCL_MISO_WS
PCM_CLK	J11 (pin 4)	J28 (pin 6)	I2S5_SCK	FC5_SCK
GND	J11 (pin 5)	J29 (pin 7)	GND	GND

Parent topic:*Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT685-EVK and AW-CM358-uSD*

Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT685-EVK and AW-AM510-uSD This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP i.MX MIMXRT685-EVK board and AW-AM510-uSD. The AW-AM510-uSD user guide is available here. The hardware rework has one part:

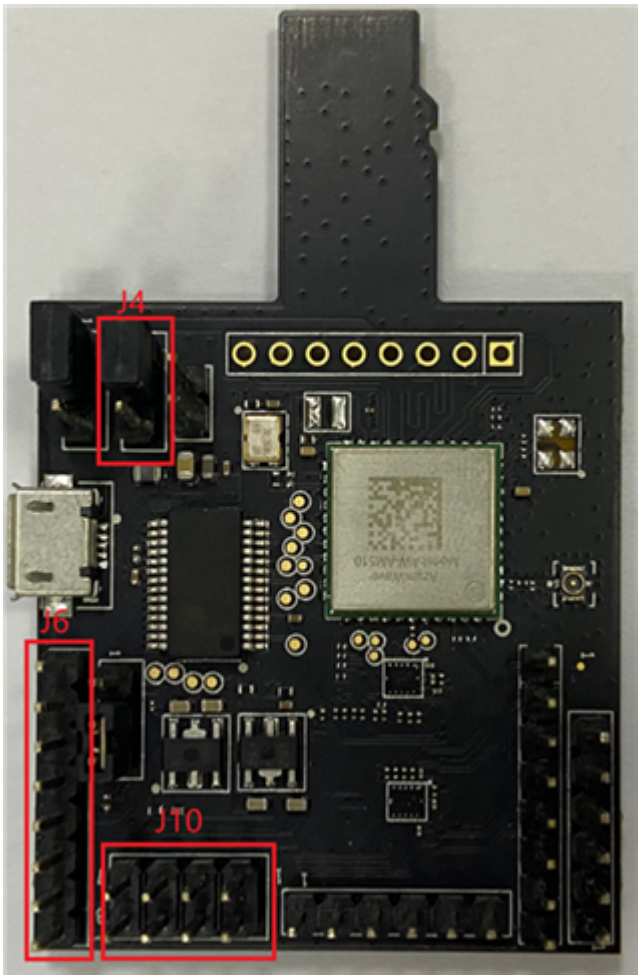
- HCI UART rework

Hardware rework

- **HCI UART rework**

Connect the pins of two boards as the following table.

Pin Name	AW-AM510-uSD	i.MXRT685	PIN NAME	GPIO NAME of RT685
UART_TXD	J10 (pin 4)	J27 (pin 1)	USART4_RXD	FC4_RXD_SDA_MOSI_DATA
UART_RXD	J10 (pin 2)	J27 (pin 2)	USART4_TXD	FC4_TXD_SCL_MISO_WS
UART_RTS	J10 (pin 6)	J47 (pin 9)	USART4_CTS	FC4_CTS_SDA_SSEL0
UART_CTS	J10 (pin 8)	J27 (pin 5)	USART4_RTS	FC4_RTS_SCL_SSEL1
GND	J6 (pin 7)	J29 (pin 6)	GND	GND



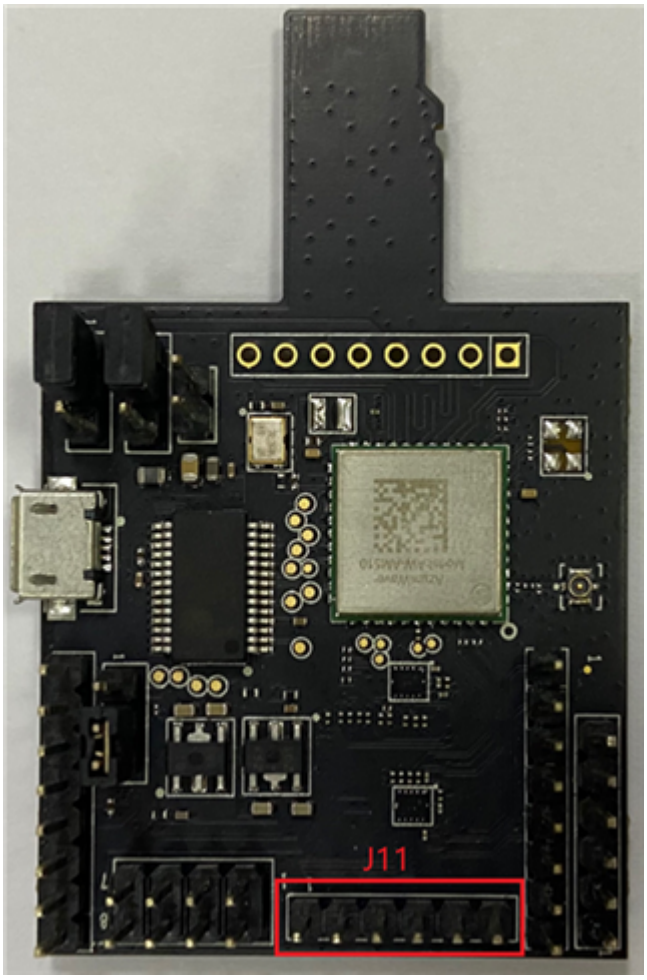
Jumper Setting:

– Connect J4[2-3] for VIO 3.3 V supply

- **PCM interface rework**

Connect the pins of two boards as the following table.

PIN NAME	AW-AM510-USD	i.MX RT685	PIN NAME of RT685	GPIONAME of RT685
PCM_IN	J11 (pin 1)	J47 (pin 7)	I2S2_TXD	FC2_RXD_SDA_MOSI_DATA
PCM_OUT	J11 (pin 2)	J28 (pin 4)	I2S5_RXD	FC5_RXD_SDA_MOSI_DATA
PCM_SYNC	J11 (pin 3)	J28 (pin 5)	I2S5_WS	FC5_TXD_SCL_MISO_WS
PCM_CLK	J11 (pin 4)	J28 (pin 6)	I2S5_SCK	FC5_SCK
GND	J11 (pin 6)	J29 (pin 7)	GND	GND



Parent topic:*Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT685-EVK and AW-AM510-uSD*

Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT685-EVK and Murata uSD-M.2 Adapter This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP i.MX MIMXRT685-EVK board and the Murata uSD-M.2 adapter. For details on the Murata uSD-M.2 Adapter, see Murata's uSD-M.2 webpage.

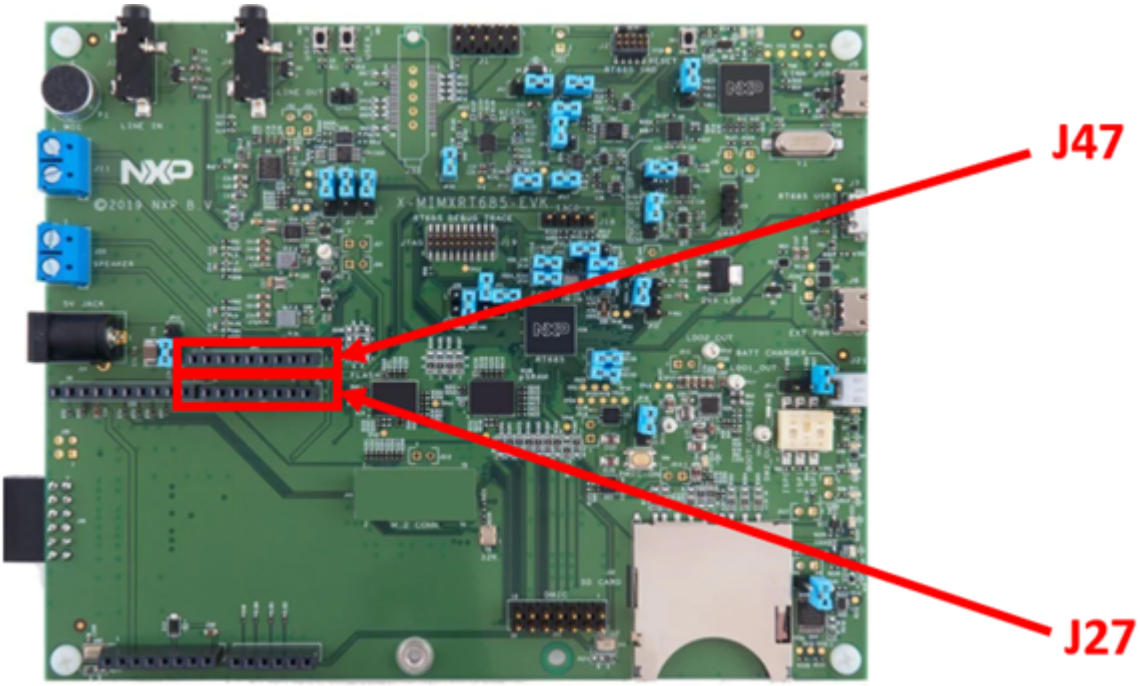
The hardware rework has one part:

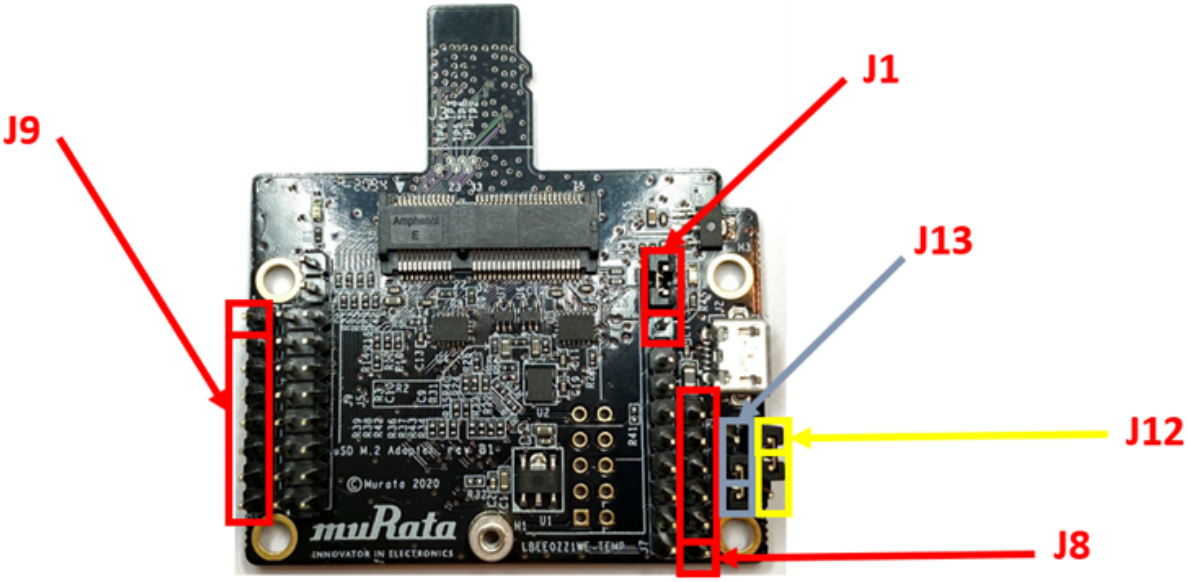
- HCI UART rework

Hardware rework **HCI UART rework :**

- JP12 2-3
- Connect the pins of two boards as the following table using jumper cables included in Murata's uSD-M.2 Adapter kit.

Pin name	uSD-M.2 adapter pin	i.MX RT685 pin	Pin name of RT685	GPIO name of RT685
BT_UART_TXD_HO	J9 (pin 1)	J27 (pin 1)	USART4_RXD	FC4_RXD_SDA_MOSI_DATA
BT_UART_RXD_HO	J9 (pin 2)	J27 (pin 2)	USART4_TXD	FC4_TXD_SCL_MISO_WS
BT_UART_RTS_HO	J8 (pin 3)	J47 (pin 9)	USART4_CTS	FC4_CTS_SDA_SSEL0
BT_UART_CTS_HO	J8 (pin 4)	J27 (pin 5)	USART4_RTS	FC4_RTS_SCL_SSEL1





Murata uSD-M.2 jumper settings:

- Both J12 and J13 = 1-2 (WLAN-SDIO = 1.8 V; and BT-UART and WLAN/BT-CTRL = 3.3 V)
- J1 = 2-3 (3.3 V from uSD connector)

Parent topic:*Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT685-EVK and Murata uSD-M.2 Adapter*

Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK and Murata M.2 Module This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the Edgefast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP i.MX MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK board and the Murata's 1XK, 1ZM, 2EL or 2LL solution - direct M.2 connection to Embedded Artists EAR00385 (1XK), EAR00364 (1ZM), Rev-A1 (2EL) or EAR00500 (2LL) M.2 modules.

The hardware rework has one part:

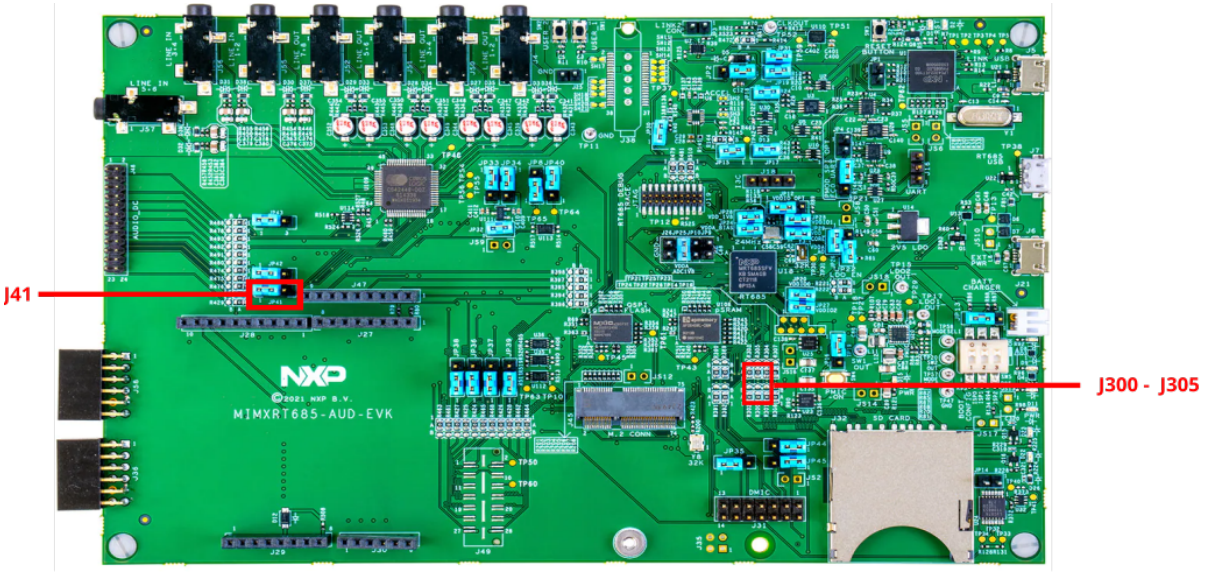
- HCI UART rework

Hardware rework HCI UART rework:

Mount R300~R305 A-B

Jumper Setting:

- Connect JP41[2-3]



Parent topic:*Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK and Murata M.2 Module*

Hardware Rework Guide for Low Power Feature on MIMXRT595-EVK and Murata 2EL M.2 Module

This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL for low power feature on the NXP i.MX MIMXRT595-EVK board and the Murata's 2EL - direct M.2 connection to Embedded Artists' Rev-A1 (2EL) M.2 modules.

The hardware rework has three parts:

- Debug console serial rework
- Host wake-up controller pin rework (H2C)
- Controller wake-up host pin rework (C2H)

Hardware rework

- **Debug console serial rework**

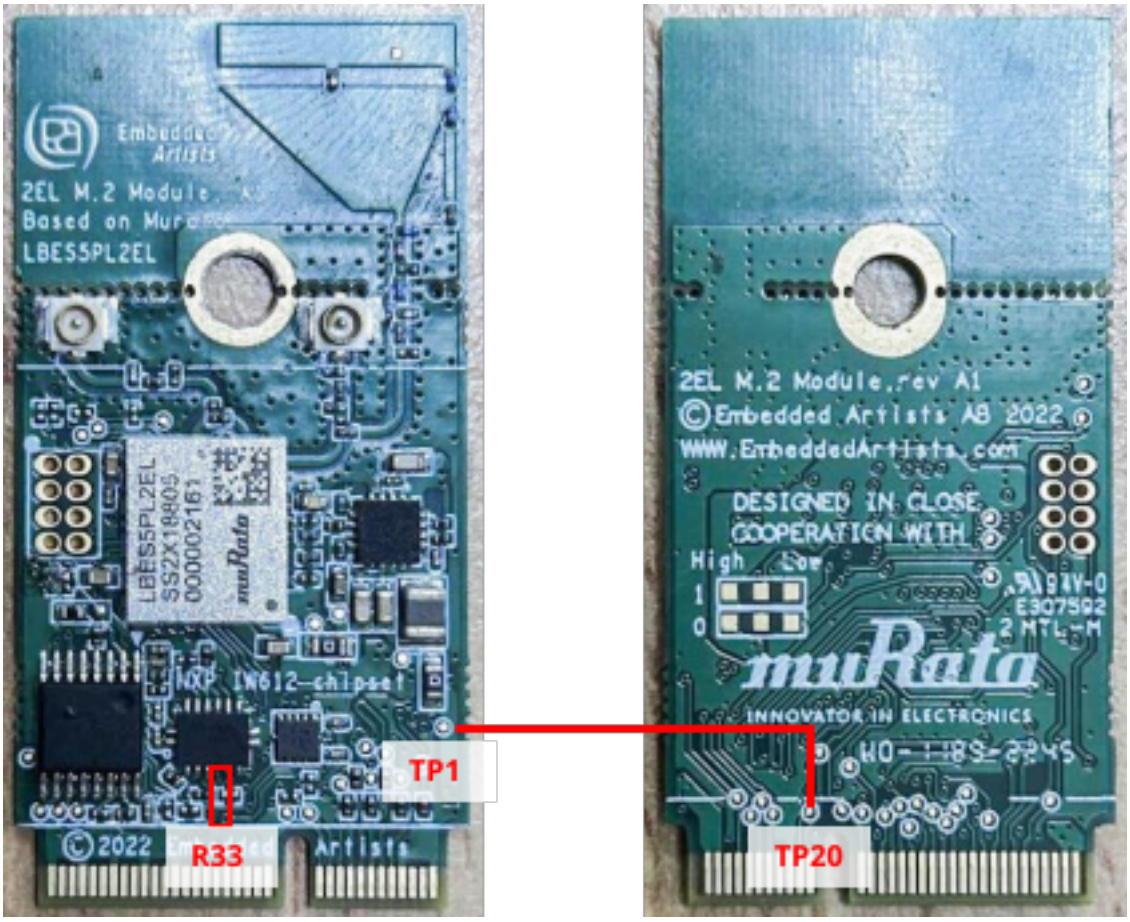
  For details, refer *Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT595-EVK and Murata M.2 Module*.

- **Host wake-up controller pin rework**:

  For details, refer Hardware Rework Guide for Low Power Feature on MIMXRT595-EVK and Murata 1XK M.2 Module.

- **Controller wake-up host pin rework:**

1. Remove resistors R709 on MIMXRT595-EVK,
2. Solder 0K ohm resistor on R33 of Murata 2EL M.2 Module
3. Solder 10K ohm resistor on the Murata 2EL M.2 Module between TP1 and TP20.



Parent topic:*Hardware Rework Guide for Low Power Feature on MIMXRT595-EVK and Murata 2EL M.2 Module*

Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT595-EVK and Murata M.2 Module This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP i.MX MIMXRT595-EVK board and the Murata's 1XK, 1ZM, 2EL or 2LL solution - direct M.2 connection to Embedded Artists EAR00385 (1XK), EAR00364 (1ZM), Rev-A1 (2EL) or EAR00500 (2LL) M.2 modules.

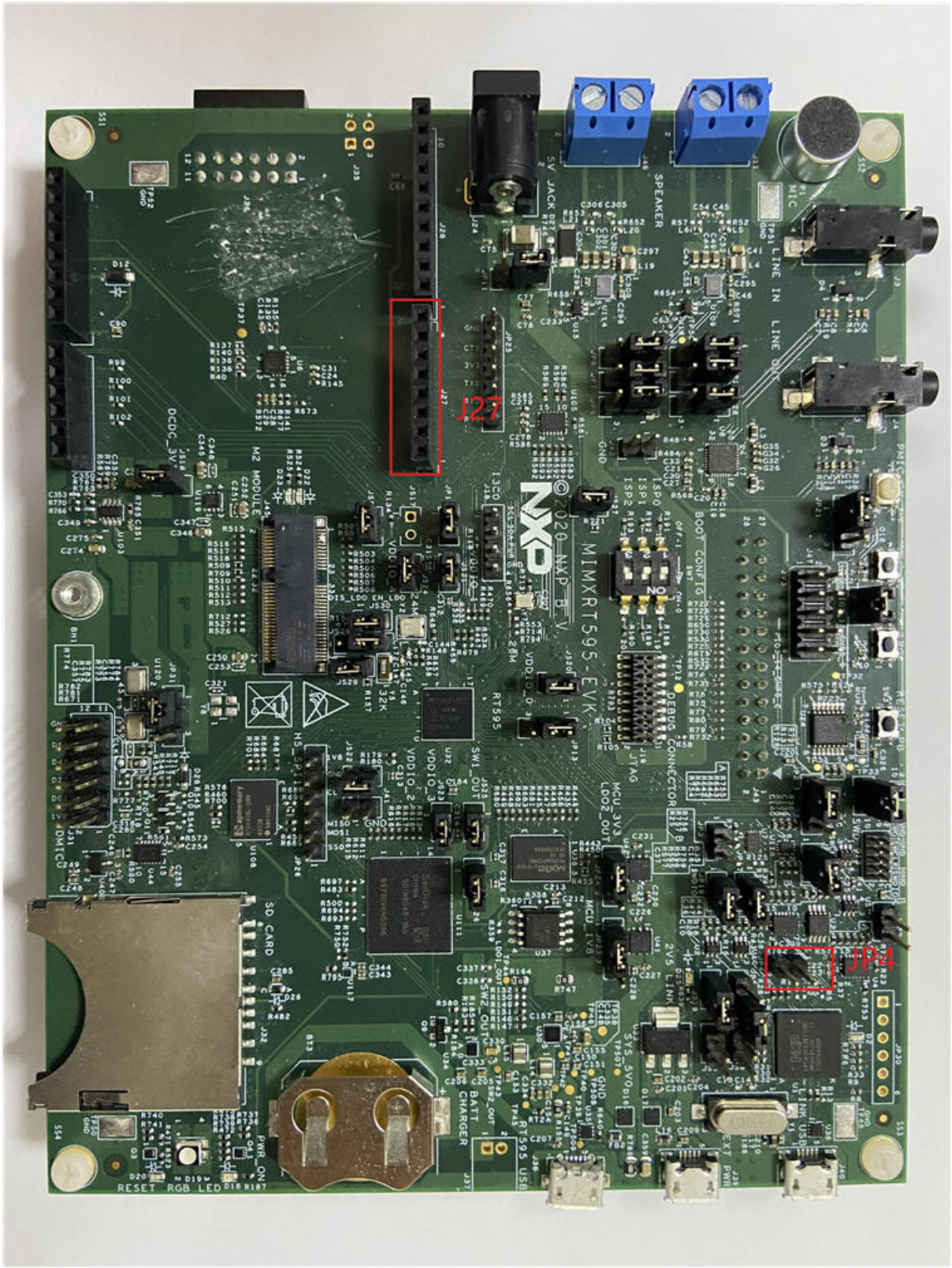
The hardware rework has one part:

- Debug console serial rework

Hardware rework **Debug console serial rework:**

No special rework is required, except the following to enable the debug port.

- JP4 1-2.
- J27 1 - TX of USB to serial converter
- J27 2 - RX of USB to serial converter



Parent topic:*Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT595-EVK and Murata M.2 Module*

Hardware Rework Guide for Low Power Feature on MIMXRT595-EVK and Murata 1XK M.2 Module This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL for low power feature on the NXP i.MX MIMXRT595-EVK board and the Murata's 1XK - direct M.2 connection to Embedded Artists EAR00385 (1XK) M.2 modules.

The hardware rework has three parts:

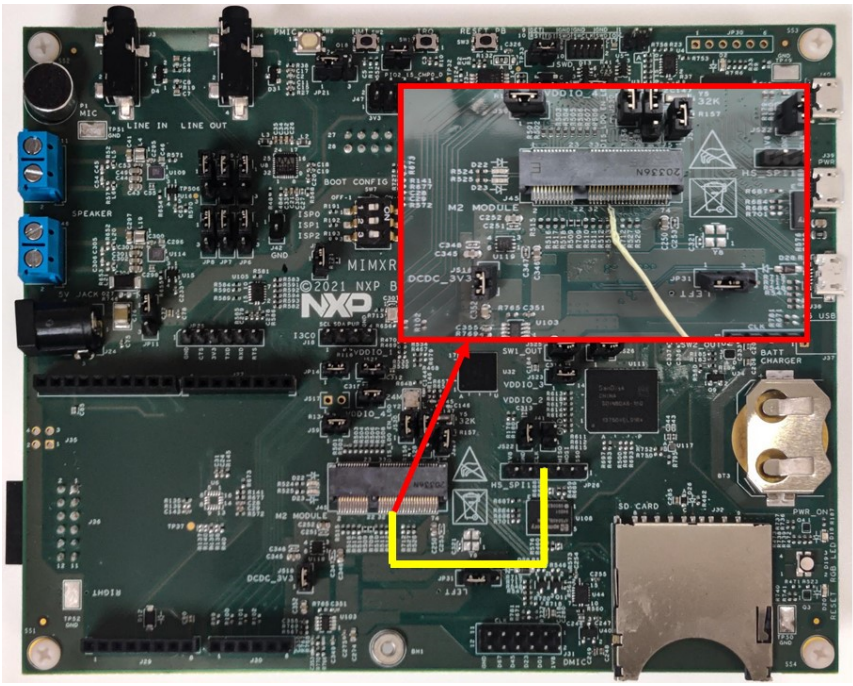
- Debug console serial rework
- Host wake-up controller pin rework (H2C)
- Controller wake-up host pin rework (C2H)

Hardware rework **Debug console serial rework:**

For details, refer *Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT595-EVK and Murata M.2 Module*.

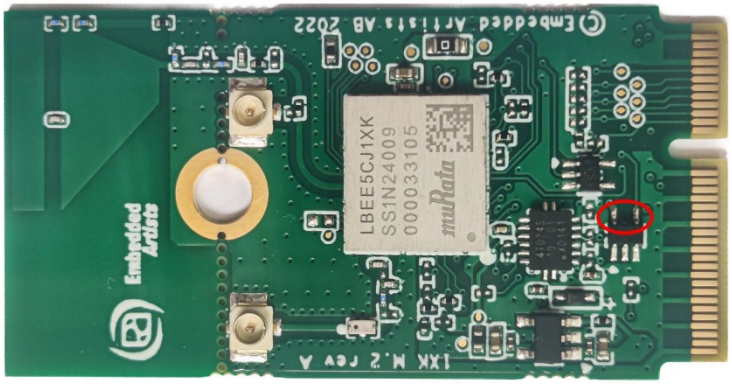
Host wake-up controller pin rework:

Connect M.2 (pin 42) to JP26 (pin 4) with a wire.



Controller wake-up host pin rework:

1. Remove resistors R709 on MIMXRT595-EVK.
2. Solder 10K ohm resistor on the Murata 1XK M.2 Module at the location shown in the following figure.



Parent topic:*Hardware Rework Guide for Low Power Feature on MIMXRT595-EVK and Murata 1XK M.2 Module*

Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT595-EVK and AW-AM510MA This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP i.MX MIMXRT595-EVK board and AW-AM510MA. The AW-AM510MA user guide is available here. The hardware rework has one part:

- Debug console serial rework

Hardware rework **Debug console serial rework:**

No special rework is required, except the following to enable the debug port.

- Connect J39 with external power.
- Connect JP4 1-2.
- J27 1 — TX of USB to serial converter.
- J27 2 — RX of USB to serial converter.



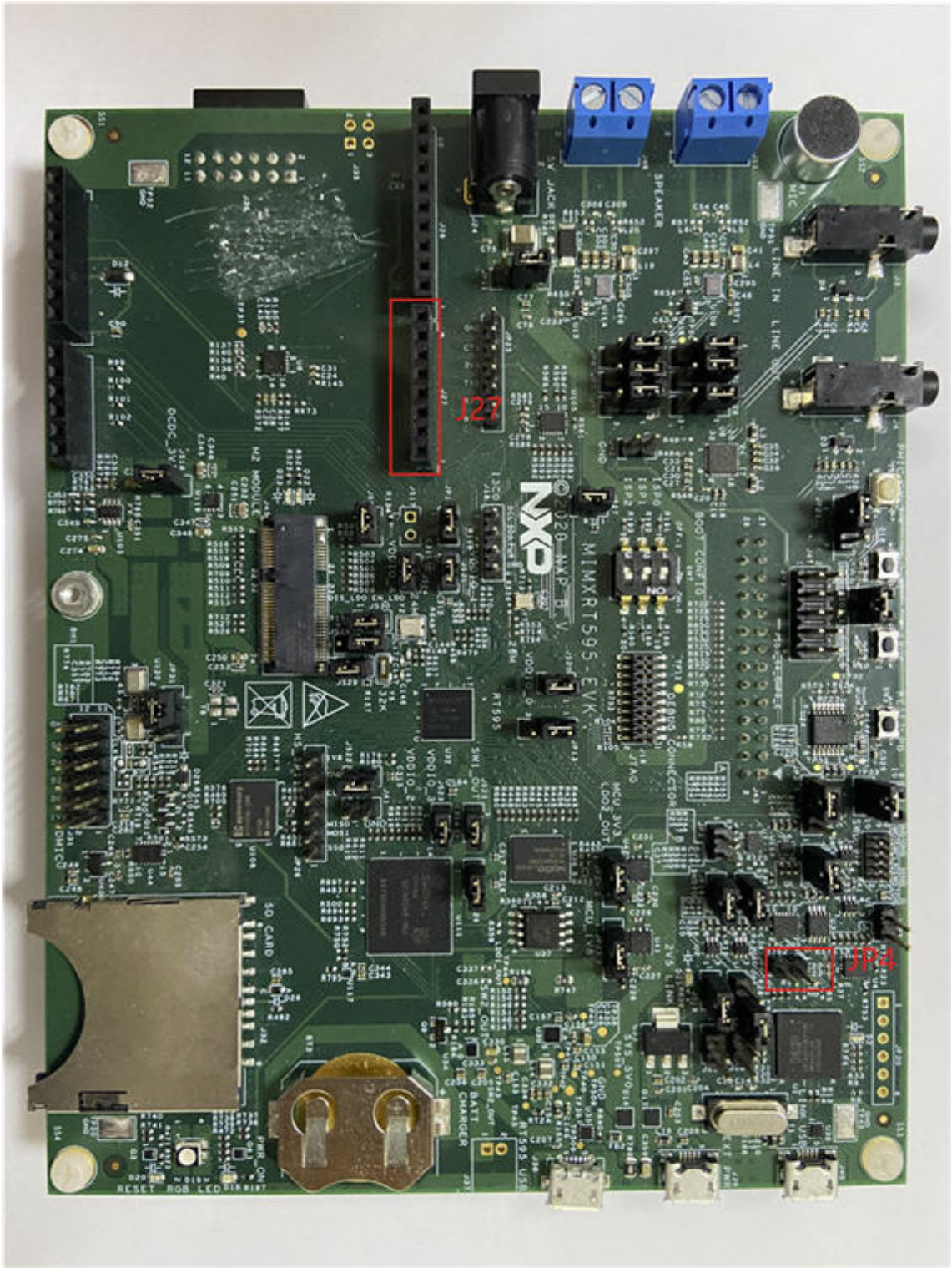
Parent topic:*Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT595-EVK and AW-AM510MA*

Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT595-EVK and AW-CM358MA This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the Ethermind Bluetooth stack on the NXP i.MX MIMXRT595-EVK board and AW-CM358MA. The AW-CM358MA user guide is available here. The hardware rework has one part:

- Debug console serial rework

Hardware rework **Debug console serial rework:**

- Connect J39 with external power.
- JP4 1-2
- J27 1 - TX of USB to serial converter
- J27 2 - RX of USB to serial converter



Parent topic:*Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT595-EVK and AW-CM358MA*

Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT1040-EVK and Murata M.2 Module This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the Edgefast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP i.MX MIMXRT1040-EVK board and the Murata's 1XK, 1ZM or 2LL solution - direct M.2 connection to Embedded Artists EAR00385 (1XK), EAR00364 (1ZM) or EAR00500 (2LL) M.2 modules.

The hardware rework has two parts:

- HCI UART rework
- PCM interface rework
- Wake pin rework

Hardware rework

1. HCI UART rework
    - Solder R93 and R96
2. PCM interface rework
    - Solder R70 and R79; remove R76 and R86; Connect J80.
3. Wake pin rework
    - When using 2LL M.2 module, remove R456 and R457 to avoid the module has an impact on boot configuration.

Note: Make sure to disconnect J80 when debugging. Otherwise, the debugger downloading fails.

Parent topic:*Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT1040-EVK and Murata M.2 Module*

Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT1060-EVKC and Murata M.2 Module This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP i.MX MIMXRT1060-EVKC and the Murata's 1XK, 1ZM, 2EL or 2LL solution - direct M.2 connection to Embedded Artists EAR00385 (1XK), EAR00364 (1ZM), Rev-A1 (2EL) or EAR00500 (2LL) M.2 modules.

The hardware rework has two parts:

- HCI UART rework
- PCM interface rework

Hardware rework

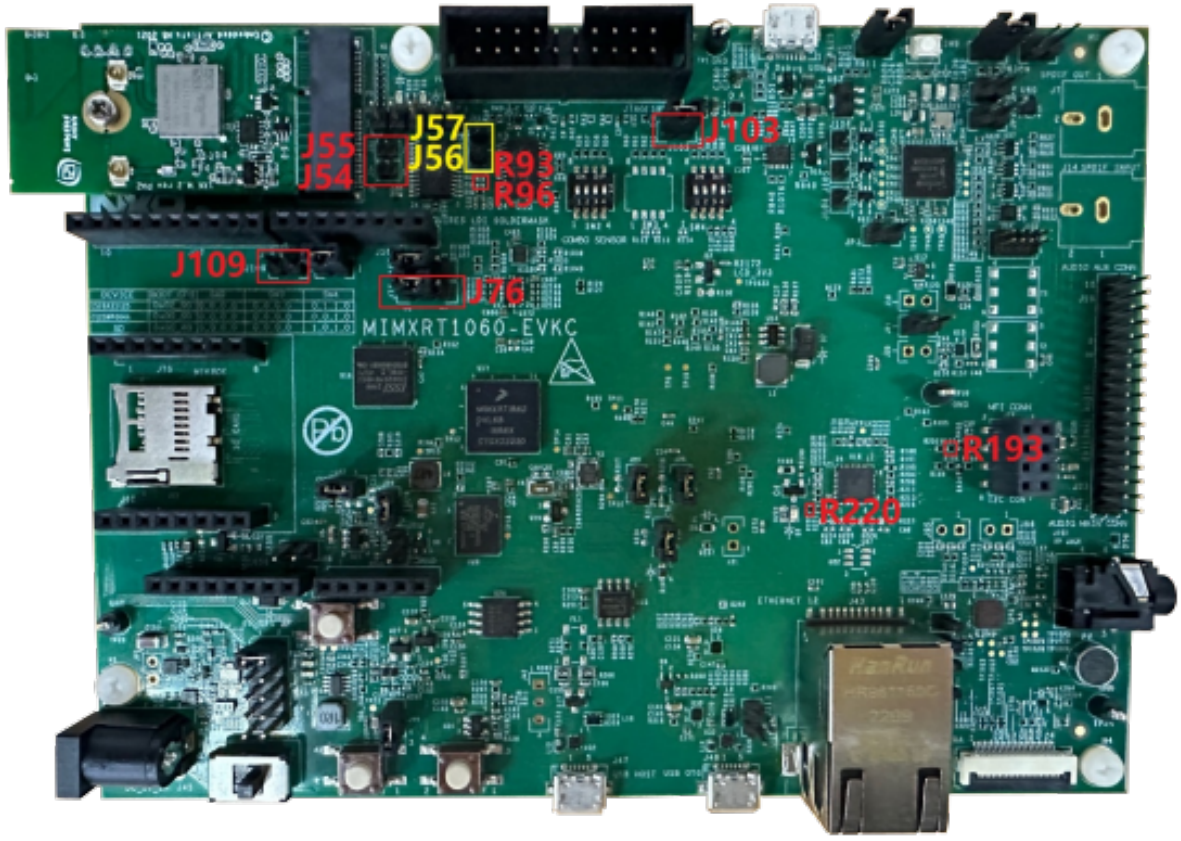
- **HCI UART rework**

1. Mount R93, R96.
2. Remove R193.
3. Connect J109, connect J76 2-3.

- **PCM interface rework**

1. Remove J54 and J55, connect J56 and J57.
2. Remove R220.
3. Connect J103.

Note: When J103 is connected, flash cannot be downloaded. So, remove the connection when downloading flash and reconnect it after downloading.



Parent topic:*Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT1060-EVKC and Murata M.2 Module*

Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT1060-EVKC and Murata 2EL M.2 Adapter This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP i.MX MIMXRT1060-EVKC and the Murata 2EL M.2 solution - direct M.2 connection to Embedded Artists' Rev-A1 (2EL) M.2 modules.

The hardware rework has three parts:

- HCI UART rework
- PCM interface rework
- LE Audio Synchronization interface rework (only used on sink side)

Hardware rework

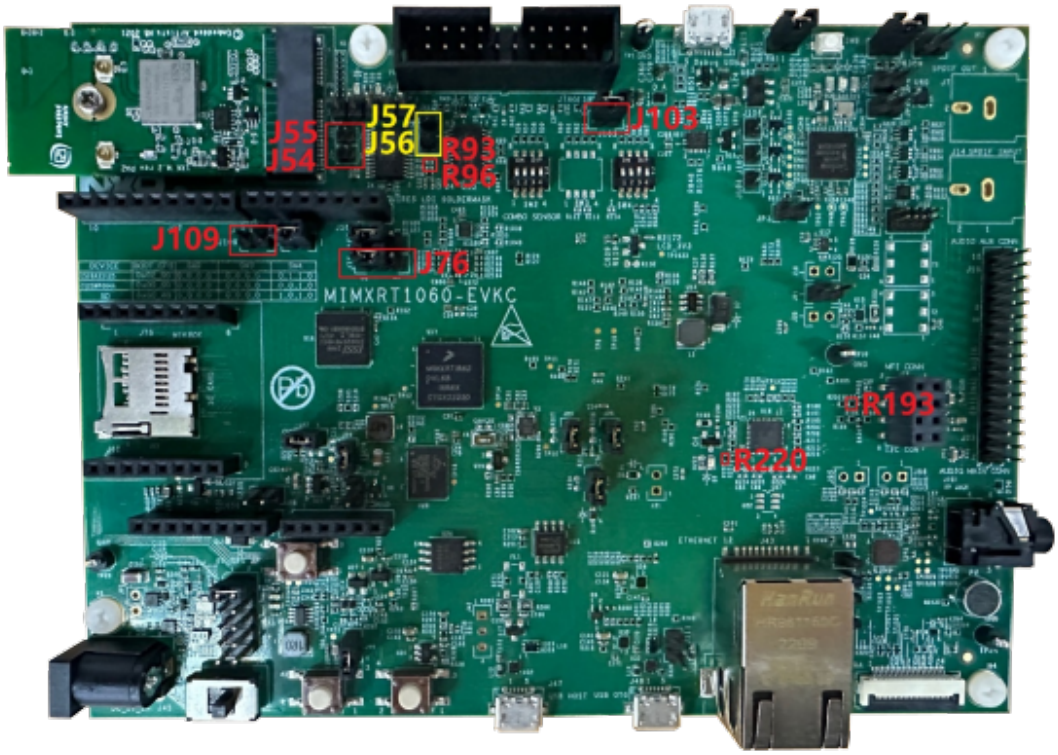
- HCI UART rework

1. Mount R93, R96.
2. Remove R193.
3. Connect J109, connect J76 2-3.

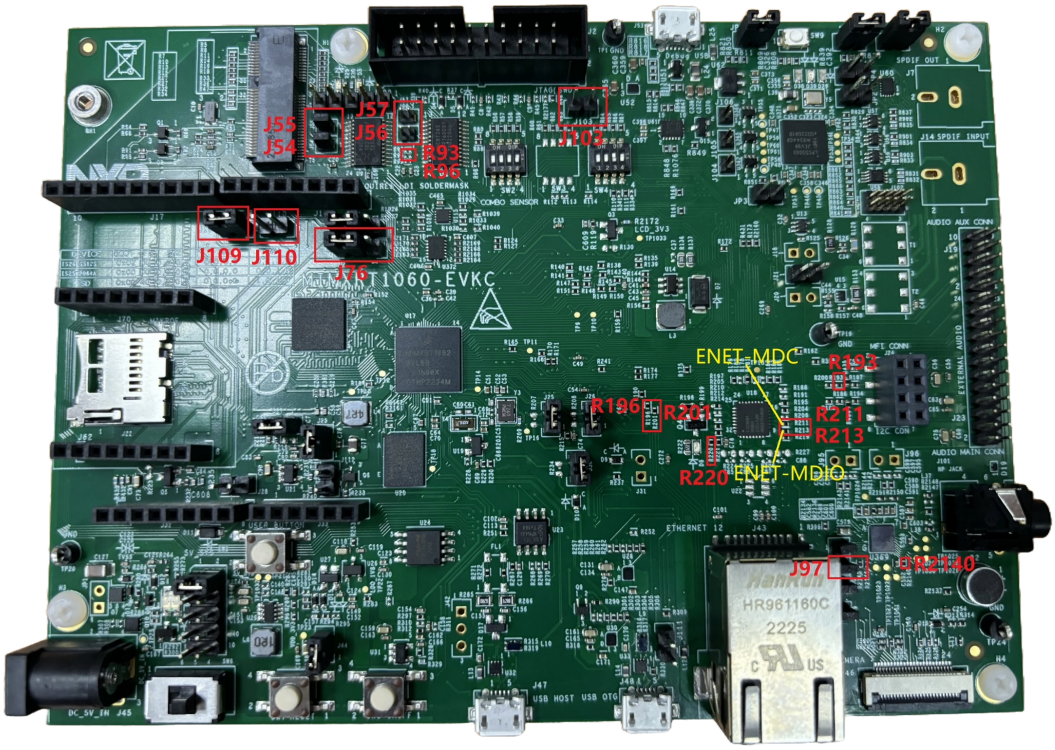
- PCM interface rework

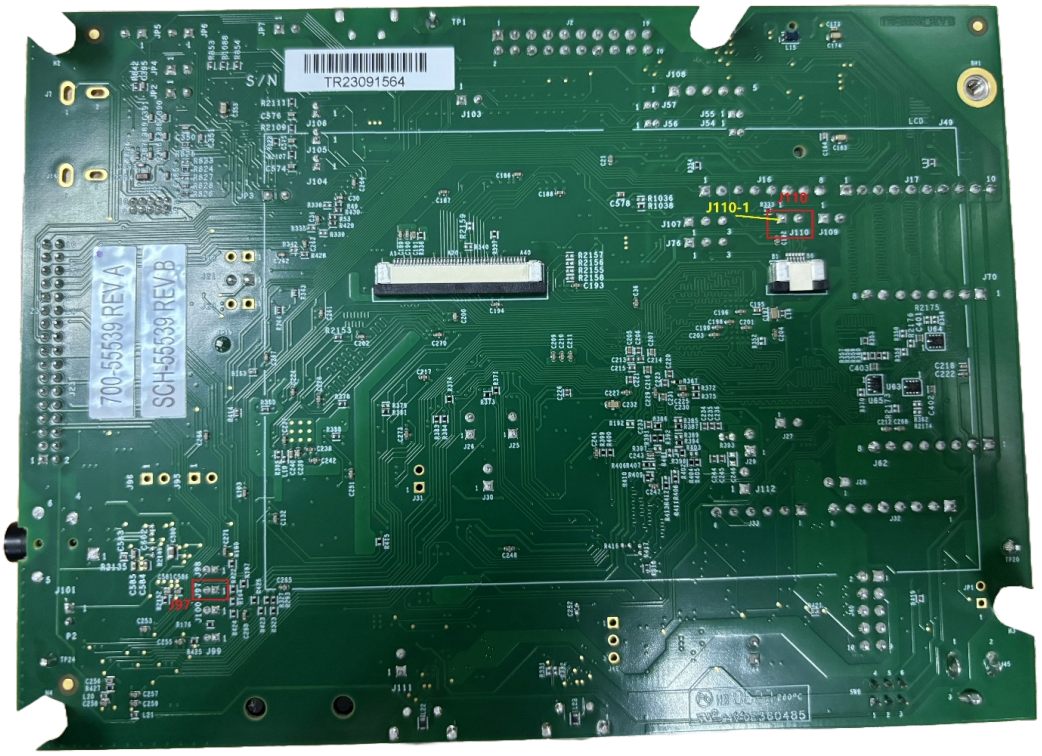
1. Remove J54 and J55, connect J56, and J57.
2. Remove R220.
3. Connect J103.

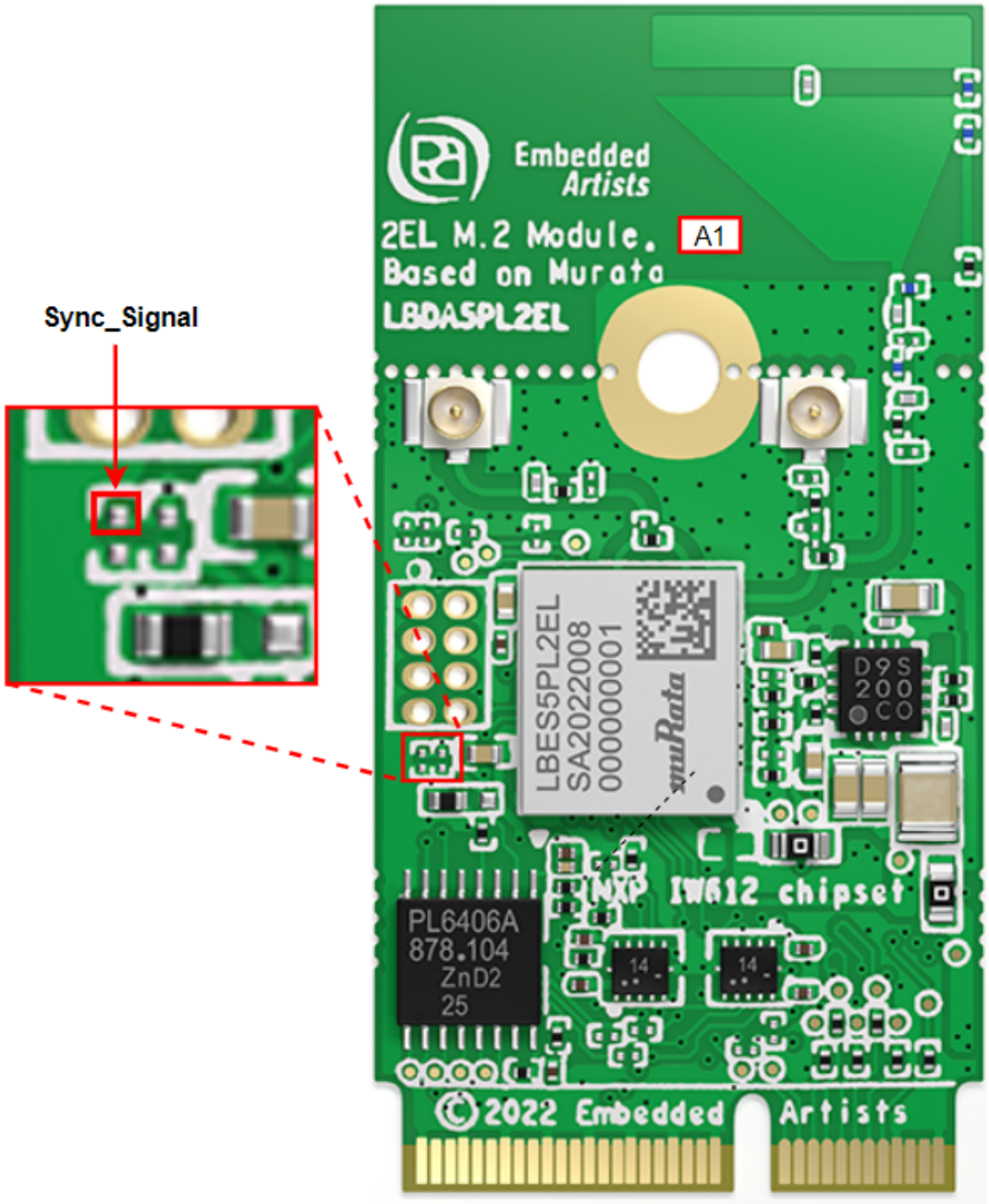
   Note: When J103 is connected, flash cannot be downloaded. So, remove the connection when downloading flash and reconnect it after downloading.



- LE Audio Synchronization interface rework (only used on sink side)
  1. Remove J110 jumper cap.
  2. Remove R196, R201, R213, and R211.
  3. Connect J110-1 (GPT2_CLK) to R2140 (SAI_MCLK).
  4. Connect ENET_MDIO (GPT2_CAP1) with J97 (SAI_SW).
  5. Connect ENET_MDC (GPT2_CAP2) with 2EL's GPIO_27 (Sync Signal).




S/N
TR23091564
700-55539 REV.A
SCH-55539 REV.B
J110-1
J110
J107
J101



Parent topic:*Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT1060-EVKC and Murata 2EL M.2 Adapter*

Hardware Rework Guide for MCXN547-EVK and Murata M.2 Module This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP MCXN547-EVK board and the Murata's 1XK, 1ZM or 2LL solution - direct M.2 connection to Embedded Artists EAR00385 (1XK), EAR00364 (1ZM) or EAR00500 (2LL) M.2 modules.

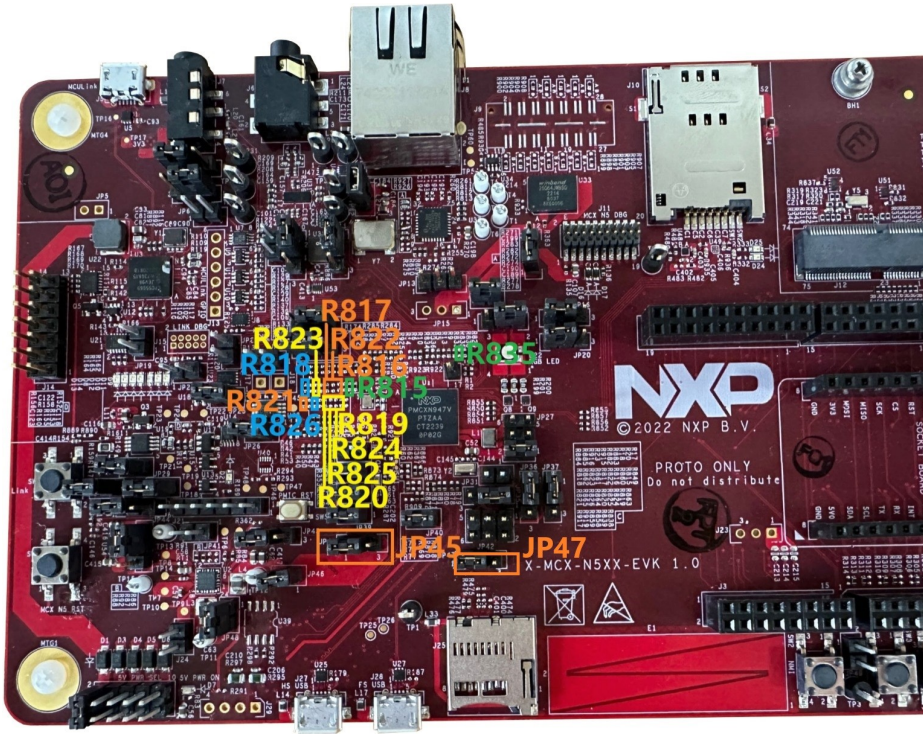
The hardware rework consists of two parts:

- M.2 UART interface
- M.2 SDIO interface

Hardware rework

- M.2 UART interface rework

  - Mount R835
  - Connect JP45 2-3 to supply 1.8V for GPIO4
- M.2 SDIO interface rework
  - Connect JP47 2-3 to supply 1.8V for GPIO2
  - Remove R818, connect R823
  - Remove R819, connect R824
  - Remove R817, connect R822
  - Remove R815, connect R816
  - Remove R820, connect R825
  - Remove R821, connect R826



Hardware Rework Guide for MCXN947-EVK and Murata M.2 Module This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP MCXN947-EVK board and the Murata's 1XK, 1ZM or 2LL solution - direct M.2 connection to Embedded Artists EAR00385 (1XK), EAR00364 (1ZM) or EAR00500 (2LL) M.2 modules.

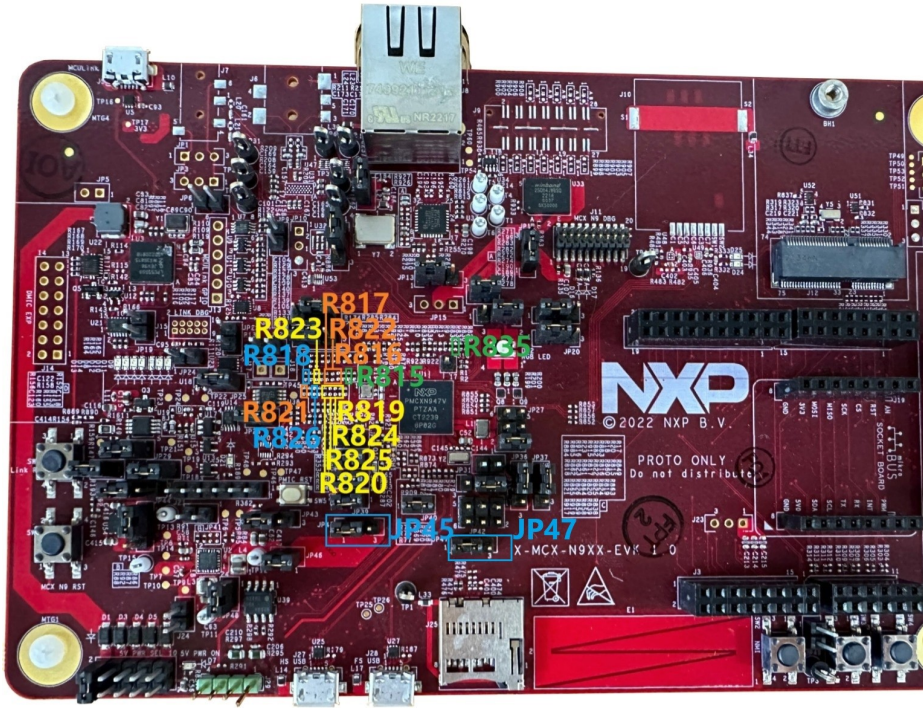
The hardware rework consists of two parts:

- M.2 UART interface
- M.2 SDIO interface

Hardware rework

- M.2 UART interface rework
  - Mount R835
  - Connect JP45 2-3 to supply 1.8V for GPIO4
- M.2 SDIO interface rework
  - Connect JP47 2-3 to supply 1.8V for GPIO2

  - Remove R818, connect R823
  - Remove R819, connect R824
  - Remove R817, connect R822
  - Remove R815, connect R816
  - Remove R820, connect R825



  - Remove R821, connect R826

Hardware Rework Guide for IMXRT1050-EVKB and Murata M.2 Module This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP IMXRT1050-EVKB board and the Murata 1XK,1ZM and 2EL solution - direct M.2 connection to Embedded Artists' EAR00385 (1XK) , EAR00364 (1ZM) or EAR00409 (2EL)M.2 modules. The hardware rework consists of three parts:

- Murata uSDM
- HCI UART rework

Hardware rework

- Murata uSD-M.2 jumper settings
  - J12 = 1-2: WLAN-SDIO & BT-PCM = 1.8 V
  - J13 = 1-2: BT-UART & WLAN/BT-CTRL = 3.3 V
  - J1 = 2-3: 3.3 V from uSD connector
- HCI UART interface rework

  Connect the TX/RX/RTS/CTS pins of the two boards as show in Table 1 using the jumper cables included in the Murata's uSD-M.2 Adapter kit as shown in the following table.

Pin name	uSD-M.2 adapter pin	i.MX RT1050-EVKB pin	Pin name of RT1050-EVKB	GPIO name of RT1050-EVKB
BT_UART_TXD_	J9 (pin 1)	J22 (pin 1)	LPUART3_RXD	GPIO_AD_B1_07
BT_UART_RXD_	J9 (pin 2)	J22 (pin 2)	LPUART3_TXD	GPIO_AD_B1_06
BT_UART_RTS_]	J8 (pin 3)	J23 (pin 3)	LPUART3_CTS	GPIO_AD_B1_04
BT_UART_CTS_]	J8 (pin 4)	J23 (pin 4)	LPUART3_RTS	GPIO_AD_B1_05
GND	J7 (pin 7)	J25 (pin 7)	GND	GND

Parent topic:*Hardware Rework Guide for IMXRT1050-EVKB and Murata M.2 Module*

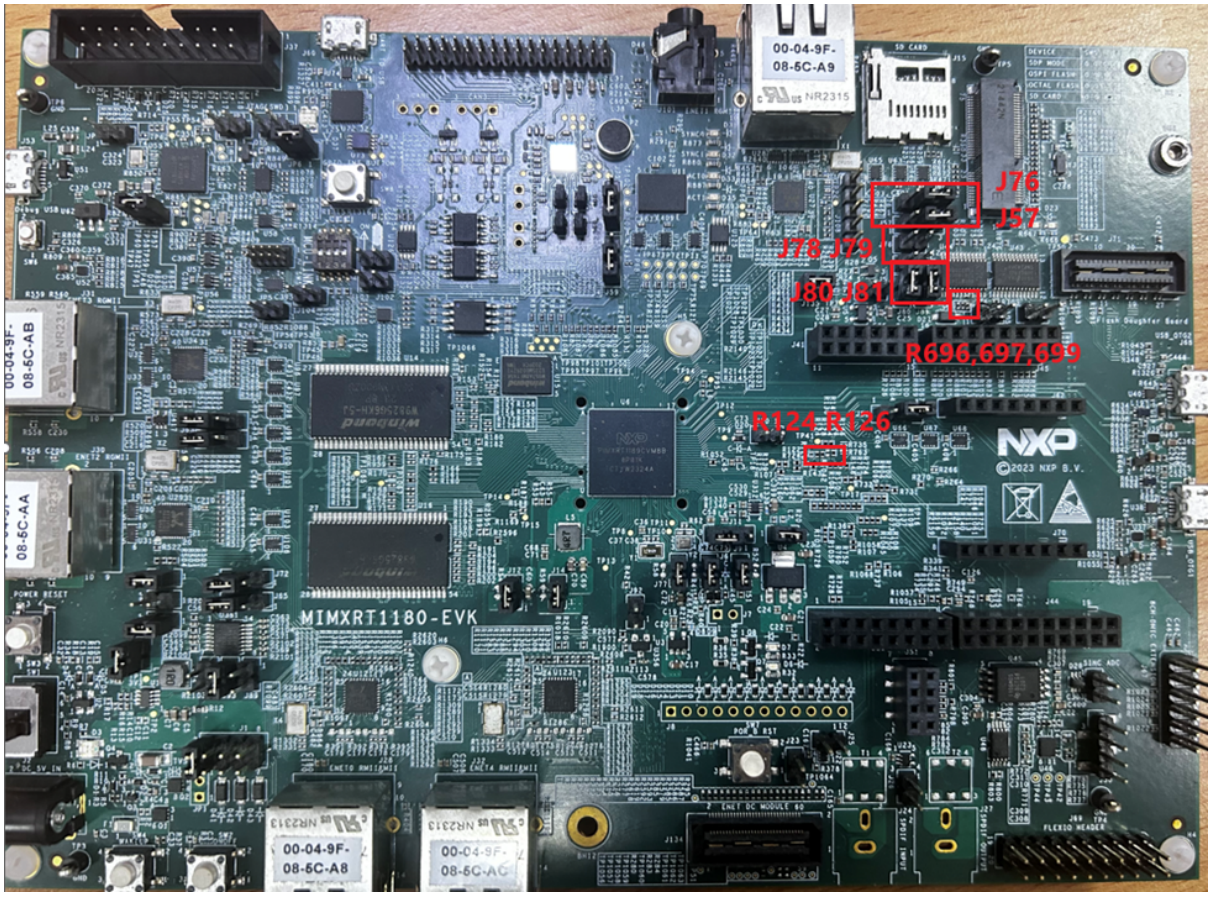
Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT1180 and Murata M.2 Module This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP MIMXRT1180 board and the Murata's 1XK, 1ZM, 2EL or 2LL solution - direct M.2 connection to Embedded Artists EAR00385 (1XK), EAR00364 (1ZM), Rev-A1 (2EL) or EAR00500 (2LL) M.2 modules.

The hardware rework consists of two parts:

- HCI UART rework
- PCM interface rework

Hardware rework

- HCI UART rework:
  - Remove: R124,R126
  - Mount R696, R697
  - Connect J57 [2-3], J76 [2-3]
- PCM interface rework
  - Mount R699
  - Disconnect J78 J79
  - Connect J80 J81



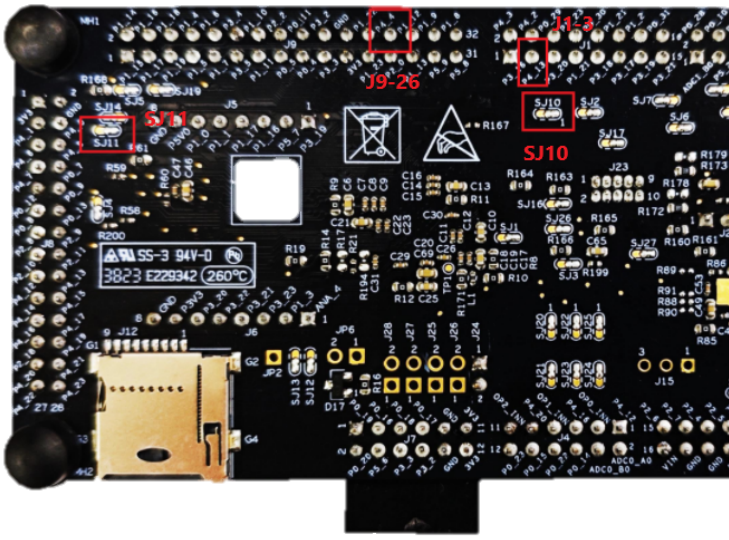
Hardware Rework Guide for FRDM-MCXN947 and X-FRDM-WIFI-M.2 Adapter This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP FRDM-MCXN947 board and X-FRDM-WIFI-M.2 or the Murata's 2LL EAR00500 (2LL) M.2 modules solution.

The hardware rework consists of one part:

- UART interface rework

Hardware rework

- UART interface rework
  - Remove SJ11 1-2, connect SJ11 2-3
  - Remove SJ10 1-2, connect J1-3 to J9-26
- X-FRDM-WIFI-M.2 jumper setting
  - Connect J8(On X-FRDM-WIFI-M.2) for 1.8V
  - Connect J24(On X-FRDM-WIFI-M.2) for 3.3V
  - Connect J19(On X-FRDM-WIFI-M.2) for 1.8V
  - Connect J25(On X-FRDM-WIFI-M.2) for 3.3V
  - Connect J15(On X-FRDM-WIFI-M.2) for 1.8V
  - Connect J16(On X-FRDM-WIFI-M.2) for 3.3V
  - Connect J17(On X-FRDM-WIFI-M.2) for 1.8V



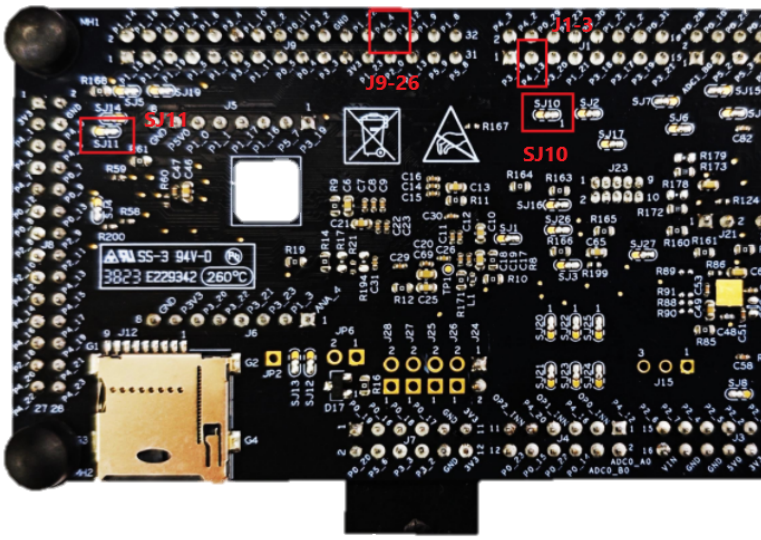
– Connect J18(On X-FRDM-WIFI-M.2) for 3.3V

Hardware Rework Guide for FRDM-MCXN947 and FRDM-IW416-AW-AM510 This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP FRDM-MCXN947 board and FRDM-IW416-AW-AM510 board. The hardware rework consists of two parts:

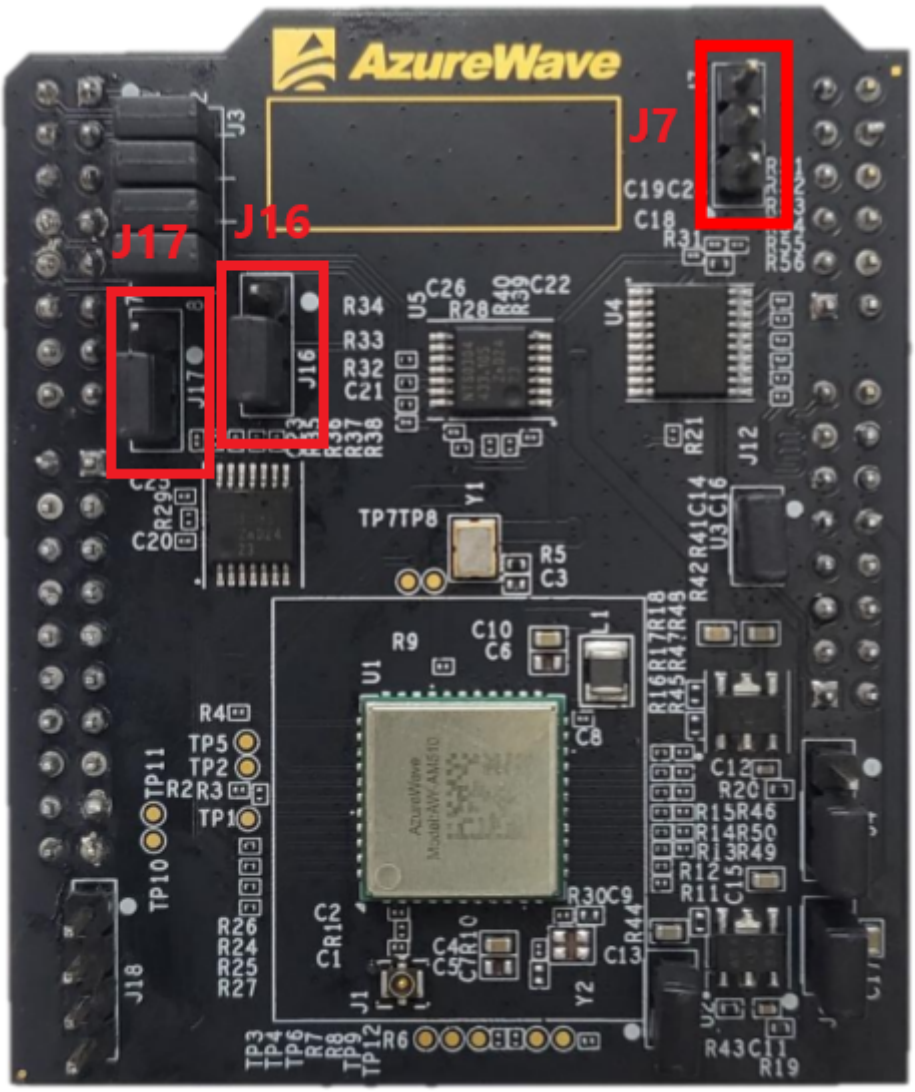
- UART interface rework
- FRDM-IW416-AW-AM510

Hardware rework

- UART interface rework
  - Remove SJ11 1-2, connect SJ11 2-3
  - Remove SJ10 1-2, connect J1-3 to J9-26
- FRDM-IW416-AW-AM510 jumper setting
  - Connect J16 2-3 for 3.3V supply
  - Connect J17 2-3 for 3.3V UART voltage level



– Connect J7 2-3 for 3.3V SDIO voltage level



Enabling Additional EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer Examples on RT1064

Introduction NXP supports Bluetooth/Bluetooth Low Energy on RT1060EVK and RT1060EVKC. RT1064 has the same MCU die with RT1060EVK and RT1060EVKC and therefore it is possible to migrate the examples.

This document takes *peripheral_ht* as an example and describes the steps to migrate EdgeFast examples from RT1060EVK to RT1064 (based on SDK 2.13.0) and from RT1060EVKC to RT1064 (based on SDK 2.14.0) with different toolchains including IAR, Arm GCC, and MDK.

Migrate examples from RT1060EVK to RT1064 This topic describes the Common steps and the steps to migrate with the IAR, Arm GCC, and MDKtoolchains.

Common steps

1. Download *SDK_2.13.0_EVK-MIMXRT1060* and *SDK_2.13.0_EVK-MIMXRT1064*.
2. Copy the following folders from RT1060EVK package to RT1064 package: <install_dir>/components/internal_flash/ <install_dir>/middleware/edgefast_bluetooth/ <install_dir>/middleware/wireless/.

3. Create a folder named edgefast_bluetooth_examples/ under <rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/.
4. Copy the entire folder from <rt1060evk_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1060/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/peripheral_ht/ to < rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/.
5. Copy *clock_config.[c/h]* and *board.c* from <rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/demo_apps/hello_world/ to <rt1064_installed>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/peripheral_ht/ to replace the previous files.
6. Add #define EDGEFAST_BT_LITTLEFS_MFLASH 1 in <rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/peripheral_ht /app_config.c.
7. Make the following changes in <rt1064_installed>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/edgefast_bluetooth/peripheral_ht/board.h.

```
73 #define BOARD_FLASH_SIZE (0x800000U)
```

```
73 #define BOARD_FLASH_SIZE (0x400000U)
```

Parent topic:*Migrate examples from RT1060EVK to RT1064*

IAR

1. Navigate to <rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/peripheral_ht/iar/.
2. Make the following changes.

File name	Previous item	New item
peripheral_ht.ewp	1060 1062	1064 1064

3. Rename MIMXRT1062xxxxx_flexspi_nor.icf as MIMXRT1064xxxxx_flexspi_nor.icf and make the following changes.

```
47 define symbol m_interrupts_start       = 0x60002000;
48 define symbol m_interrupts_end         = 0x600023FF;
49
50 define symbol m_text_start             = 0x60002400;
51 define symbol _ROM_END_                = 0x6057FFFF;
66 define exported symbol m_boot_hdr_conf_start = 0x60000000;
67 define symbol m_boot_hdr_ivt_start           = 0x60001000;
68 define symbol m_boot_hdr_boot_data_start     = 0x60001020;
69 define symbol m_boot_hdr_dcd_data_start      = 0x60001030;
95 BT_LITTLEFS_STORAGE_SECTOR_SIZE = 0x1000;  /* 4k flash secto
96 BT_LITTLEFS_STORAGE_MAX_SECTORS = (0x60800000 - EDGEFAST_BT_
97 ***/
```

```
47 define symbol m_interrupts_start       = 0x70002000;
48 define symbol m_interrupts_end         = 0x700023FF;
49
50 define symbol m_text_start             = 0x70002400;
51 define symbol _ROM_END_                = 0x7017FFFF;
66 define exported symbol m_boot_hdr_conf_start = 0x70000000;
67 define symbol m_boot_hdr_ivt_start           = 0x70001000;
68 define symbol m_boot_hdr_boot_data_start     = 0x70001020;
69 define symbol m_boot_hdr_dcd_data_start      = 0x70001030;
95 BT_LITTLEFS_STORAGE_SECTOR_SIZE = 0x1000;  /* 4k flash sect
96 BT_LITTLEFS_STORAGE_MAX_SECTORS = (0x70400000 - EDGEFAST_BT
97 ***/
```

Parent topic:*Migrate examples from RT1060EVK to RT1064*

Arm GCC

1. Navigate to <rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/peripheral_ht/armgcc/.
2. Rename the following files.

Path	Previous name	**New name**
<rt1064_install_dir>/middleware/wireless/ethermind/	middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_cmake	middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_k32w061_contro cmake

3. Make following changes.

File name	Previous item	New item
config.cmake	1060	1064
	1062	1064
flags.cmake	1062	1064
CMakeLists.txt	1060	1064
	1062	1064

4. *mflash* is used in RT1064 instead of flash_adapter,therefore, comment include(component_flexspi_nor_flash_adapter_rt1064_MIMXRT1064) in *CMakeLists.txt*.

5. Rename MIMXRT1062xxxxx_flexspi_nor.ld as MIMXRT1064xxxxx_flexspi_nor.ld and make the following changes.

```
_ROM_START_ = 0x60002400;
_ROM_END_ = 0x6057FFFF;
EDGEFAST_BT_LITTLEFS_STORAGE_MAX_SECTORS = (0x60800000 - EDG
/*** littleFS configuration End ***/


HEAP_SIZE  = DEFINED(__heap_size__)  ? __heap_size__  : 0x10
STACK_SIZE = DEFINED(__stack_size__) ? __stack_size__ : 0x04
VECTOR_RAM_SIZE = DEFINED(__ram_vector_table__) ? 0x00000400

/* Specify the memory areas */
MEMORY
{
  m_flash_config        (RX)  : ORIGIN = 0x60000000, LENGTH
  m_ivt                 (RX)  : ORIGIN = 0x60001000, LENGTH
  m_interrupts          (RX)  : ORIGIN = 0x60002000, LENGTH
```

```
_ROM_START_ = 0x70002400;
_ROM_END_ = 0x7017FFFF;
EDGEFAST_BT_LITTLEFS_STORAGE_MAX_SECTORS = (0x70400000 - EDG
/*** littleFS configuration End ***/


HEAP_SIZE  = DEFINED(__heap_size__)  ? __heap_size__  : 0x10
STACK_SIZE = DEFINED(__stack_size__) ? __stack_size__ : 0x04
VECTOR_RAM_SIZE = DEFINED(__ram_vector_table__) ? 0x00000400

/* Specify the memory areas */
MEMORY
{
  m_flash_config        (RX)  : ORIGIN = 0x70000000, LENGTH
  m_ivt                 (RX)  : ORIGIN = 0x70001000, LENGTH
  m_interrupts          (RX)  : ORIGIN = 0x70002000, LENGTH
```

Parent topic:*Migrate examples from RT1060EVK to RT1064*

MDK

1. Navigate to <rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/peripheral_ht/mdk/.

2. Make following changes.

File name	Previous item	New item
peripheral_ht.uvprojx	1060	1064
	1062	1064

3. Copy evkmimxrt1064_flexspi_nor.ini from <rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/demo_apps/hello_world/mdk/ to <rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/peripheral_ht/mdk/.

4. Rename MIMXRT1062xxxxx_flexspi_nor as MIMXRT1064xxxxx_flexspi_nor and make the following changes.

```
#define m_flash_config_start            0x60000000
#define m_flash_config_size             0x00001000

#define m_ivt_start                     0x60001000
#define m_ivt_size                      0x00001000

#define m_interrupts_start              0x60002000
#define m_interrupts_size               0x00000400

#define m_text_start                    0x60002400
#define _ROM_END_                       0x6057FFFF
 EDGEFAST_BT_LITTLEFS_STORAGE_START_ADDRESS  (_ROM_END_ + 1)
 EDGEFAST_BT_LITTLEFS_STORAGE_END_ADDRESS  (0x60800000)
 EDGEFAST_BT_LITTLEFS_STORAGE_SECTOR_SIZE    (0x1000)
```

```
#define m_flash_config_start            0x70000000
#define m_flash_config_size             0x00001000

#define m_ivt_start                     0x70001000
#define m_ivt_size                      0x00001000

#define m_interrupts_start              0x70002000
#define m_interrupts_size               0x00000400

#define m_text_start                    0x70002400
#define _ROM_END_                       0x7017FFFF
 EDGEFAST_BT_LITTLEFS_STORAGE_START_ADDRESS  (_ROM_END_ + 1)
 EDGEFAST_BT_LITTLEFS_STORAGE_END_ADDRESS  (0x70400000)
 EDGEFAST_BT_LITTLEFS_STORAGE_SECTOR_SIZE    (0x1000)
```

Parent topic:*Migrate examples from RT1060EVK to RT1064*

Migrate examples from RT1060EVKC to RT1064 This topic describes the Common steps and the steps to migrate with the IAR, Arm GCC, and MDK toolchains.

Common steps

1. Download SDK_2.14.0_EVKC-MIMXRT1060 and SDK_2.14.0_EVK-MIMXRT1064.
2. Copy the following folders from the RT1060EVKC package to the RT1064 package: <install_dir>/middleware/edgefast_bluetooth/ <install_dir>/middleware/wireless/ethermind.
3. Create a new folder named edgefast_bluetooth_examples/ under <rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/.
4. Copy the entire folder from <rt1060evkc_install_dir>/boards/evkcmimxrt1060/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/peripheral_ht/ to <rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/.
5. Copy clock_config.[c/h] and board.c from <rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/demo_apps/hello_world/ to <rt1064_installed>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/peripheral_ht/ to replace the previous files.

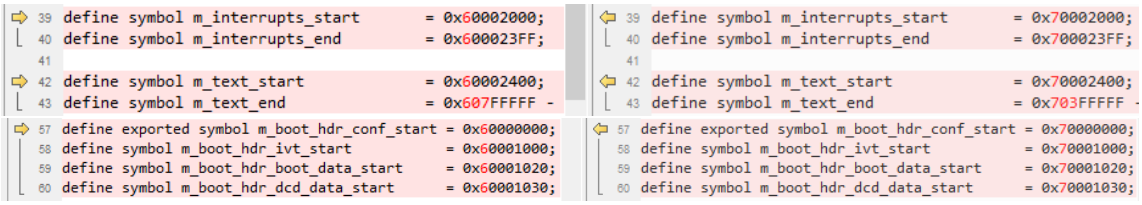
Parent topic:*Migrate examples from RT1060EVKC to RT1064*

IAR

1. Navigate to <rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/peripheral_ht/iar/.
2. Make the following changes in the listed order.

File name	Previous item	New item
peripheral_ht.ewp	1062	1064
mflash/evkcmimxrt1060	mflash/mimxrt1064	
evkcmimxrt1060	evkmimxrt1064	
6B	6A	

3. Rename MIMXRT1062xxxxx_flexspi_nor.icf as MIMXRT1064xxxxx_flexspi_nor.icf and make the following changes.



Parent topic:*Migrate examples from RT1060EVKC to RT1064*

Arm GCC

1. Navigate to <rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/peripheral_ht/armgcc/.

2. Copy folder from <rt1060evkc_install_dir>/boards/evkcmimxrt1060/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/template/ to <rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/ and rename the files.

Path	Previous name	New name
<rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/	middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_mcux_linker_template_evkcmimxrt1060.cmake	middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_mcux_linker_template_evkmimxrt1064.cmake
	middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_sdio_template_evkcmimxrt1060.cmake	middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_sdio_template_evkmimxrt1064.cmake

3. Add the following content to<rt1064_install_dir>/devices/MIMXRT1064/all_lib_device.cmake at appropriate location.

```
...
  ${CMAKE_CURRENT_LIST_DIR}/../../boards
  ${CMAKE_CURRENT_LIST_DIR}/../../boards/evkmimxrt1064/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/
↪template
  ${CMAKE_CURRENT_LIST_DIR}/../../middleware/edgefast_bluetooth
  ${CMAKE_CURRENT_LIST_DIR}/../../middleware/wireless/ethermind
...
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_ble_ethermind_cm7f)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_ble_ethermind_lib_cm7f)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_br_ethermind_cm7f)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_br_ethermind_lib_cm7f)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_btble_ethermind_cm7f)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_btble_ethermind_lib_cm7f)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_common_ethermind)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_common_ethermind_hci)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_common_ethermind_hci_uart)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_config_ethermind)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_config_template)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_extension_common_ethermind)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_k32w061_controller)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_mcux_linker_template_ evkmimxrt1064)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_pal)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_pal_db_gen_ethermind)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_pal_host_msd_fatfs_ethermind)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_pal_platform_ethermind)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_porting)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_porting_atomic)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_porting_list)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_porting_net)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_porting_toolchain)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_porting_work_queue)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_profile_bas)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_profile_dis)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_profile_fmp)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_profile_hps)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_profile_hrs)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_profile_hts)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_profile_ipsp)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_profile_pxr)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_profile_tip)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_profile_wu)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_sdio_template_evkmimxrt1064)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_shell)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_shell_ble)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_template)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_wifi_nxp_controller_base)...
```

4. Make the following changes in the listed order.

File name	Previous item	New item
config.cmake	MIMXRT1	MIMXRT1064xxxxA
mflash_evkcmimxrt1060	mflash_rt	
1062	1064	
evkcmimxrt1060	evk-mimxrt10	
flags.cmake	1062	1064
6B	6A	
CMakeLists.txt	1062	1064
<rt1064_install_dir>/middleware/edgefast_bluetooth/middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_template.cmake	evkcmimx	evk-mimxrt1064
<rt1064_install_dir>/middleware/wireless/ethermind/middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_common_ethermind_hci_uart.cmake	1062	1064
<rt1064_install_dir>/middleware/wireless/ethermind/middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_k32w061_controller.cmake	1062	1064
<rt1064_install_dir>/middleware/wireless/ethermind/middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_wifi_nxp_controller_base.cmake	evkcmimx	evk-mimxrt1064
<rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_mcux_cmake	1062	1064 mxrt1064.
<rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_sdio_t cmake	1062	1064 1.

5. Rename MIMXRT1062xxxxx_flexspi_nor.ld as MIMXRT1064xxxxx_flexspi_nor.ld and make the following changes.

```
m_text_start         = 0x60002400;
m_text_size          = 0x007FDC00 - LITTLEFS_REGION_SIZE;

HEAP_SIZE  = DEFINED(__heap_size__)  ? __heap_size__  : 0x1000;
STACK_SIZE = DEFINED(__stack_size__) ? __stack_size__ : 0x0400;
VECTOR_RAM_SIZE = DEFINED(__ram_vector_table__) ? 0x00000400 : 0;

/* Specify the memory areas */
MEMORY
{
  m_flash_config       (RX)  : ORIGIN = 0x60000000, LENGTH = 0x00001000
  m_ivt                (RX)  : ORIGIN = 0x60001000, LENGTH = 0x00001000
  m_interrupts         (RX)  : ORIGIN = 0x60002000, LENGTH = 0x00000400
```

```
m_text_start         = 0x70002400;
m_text_size          = 0x003FDC00 - LITTLEFS_REGION_SIZE;

HEAP_SIZE  = DEFINED(__heap_size__)  ? __heap_size__  : 0x1000;
STACK_SIZE = DEFINED(__stack_size__) ? __stack_size__ : 0x0400;
VECTOR_RAM_SIZE = DEFINED(__ram_vector_table__) ? 0x00000400 : 0;

/* Specify the memory areas */
MEMORY
{
  m_flash_config       (RX)  : ORIGIN = 0x70000000, LENGTH = 0x00001000
  m_ivt                (RX)  : ORIGIN = 0x70001000, LENGTH = 0x00001000
  m_interrupts         (RX)  : ORIGIN = 0x70002000, LENGTH = 0x00000400
```

Parent topic:*Migrate examples from RT1060EVKC to RT1064*

MDK

1. Navigate to <rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/peripheral_ht/mdk/.
2. Make the following changes in the listed order.

File name	Previous item	New item
peripheral_ht.uvprojx	1062	1064
	mflash/evkcmimxrt1060	mflash/mimxrt1064
	evkcmimxrt1060	evkcmimxrt1064
	6B	6A

3. Copy evkmimxrt1064_flexspi_nor.ini from <rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/demo_apps/hello_world/mdk/ to <rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/peripheral_ht/mdk/.
4. Rename MIMXRT1062xxxxx_flexspi_nor as MIMXRT1064xxxxx_flexspi_nor and make the following changes.

```
43 #define m_flash_config_start          0x60000000
44 #define m_flash_config_size           0x00001000
45
46 #define m_ivt_start                   0x60001000
47 #define m_ivt_size                    0x00001000
48
49 #define m_interrupts_start            0x60002000
50 #define m_interrupts_size             0x00000400
51
52 #define m_text_start                  0x60002400
53 #define m_text_size                   0x007FDC00 - LITTLEFS
```

```
43 #define m_flash_config_start          0x70000000
44 #define m_flash_config_size           0x00001000
45
46 #define m_ivt_start                   0x70001000
47 #define m_ivt_size                    0x00001000
48
49 #define m_interrupts_start            0x70002000
50 #define m_interrupts_size             0x00000400
51
52 #define m_text_start                  0x70002400
53 #define m_text_size                   0x003FDC00 - LITTLEFS
```

Parent topic:*Migrate examples from RT1060EVKC to RT1064*

Note about the source code in the document Example code shown in this document has the following copyright and BSD-3-Clause license:

Copyright 2024 NXP Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of the copyright holder nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS “AS IS” AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Enabling Additional Edgefast BT PAL Examples on M4 core for RT1170

Introduction RT1170 works with two cores: M7 and M4, on which both all EdgeFast examples can run. However, all the EdgeFast examples in the release package are enabled on M7. Only the A2DP source example is enabled on M4.

EdgeFast projects for both the cores share the demo source files but with different project settings. Therefore, the examples can be migrated.

This document describes the steps to migrate EdgeFast examples from M7 to M4 with different toolchains. There are four main steps required. Additionally, you can also delete the function.

1. Create an M4 project
2. Rearrange source files
3. Rearrange project files

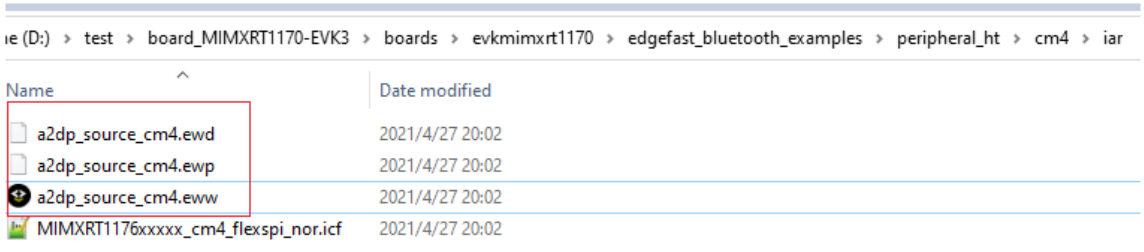
4. Adjust project settings
5. Delete function

In this document, the peripheral_ht example is used to demonstrate how to enable EdgeFast examples on M4 core with IAR and ARMGCC.

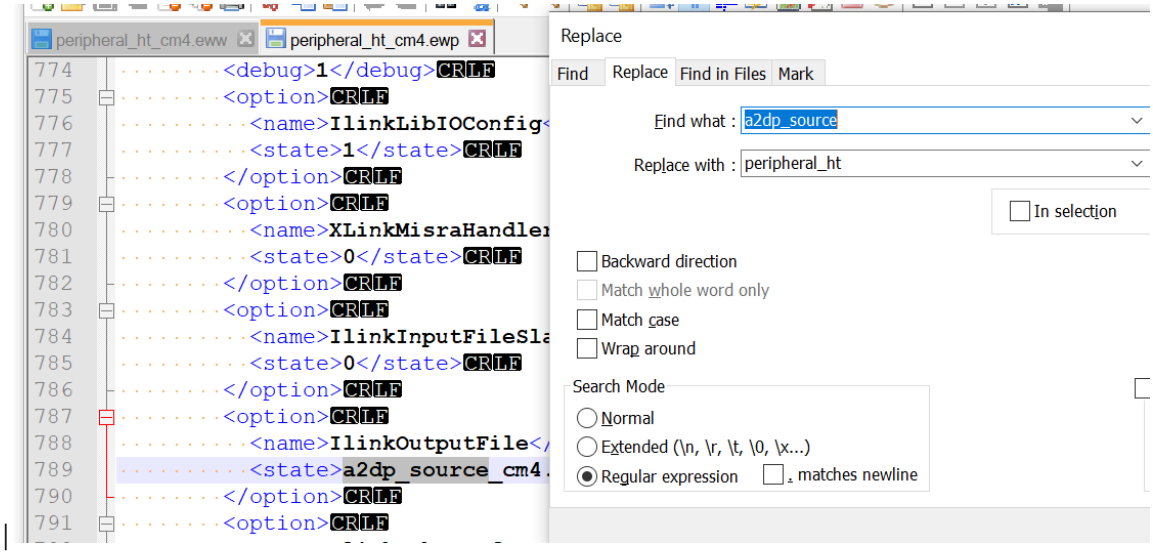
IAR This section describes the steps to create an M4 project with IAR, rearrange source and project files, adjust project settings, and delete function.

Create an M4 project To create an M4 project, perform the following steps:

1. Copy the folder *cm4* in the directory <*install_dir*>*boards*|*evkmimxrt1170*|*edgefast_bluetooth_examples*|*a2dp_* into the folder in which the example should be enabled. In this case, copy the folder *cm4* into the directory <*install_dir*>|*boards*|*evkmimxrt1170*|*edgefast_bluetooth_examples*|*peripheral_ht*.
2. Open the folder *iar* in the directory <*install_dir*>*boards*|*evkmimxrt1170*|*edgefast_bluetooth_examples*|*periph*
3. Rename the files. Change the file name name *a2dp_source_cm4* to *peripheral_ht_cm4* in all the respective files.



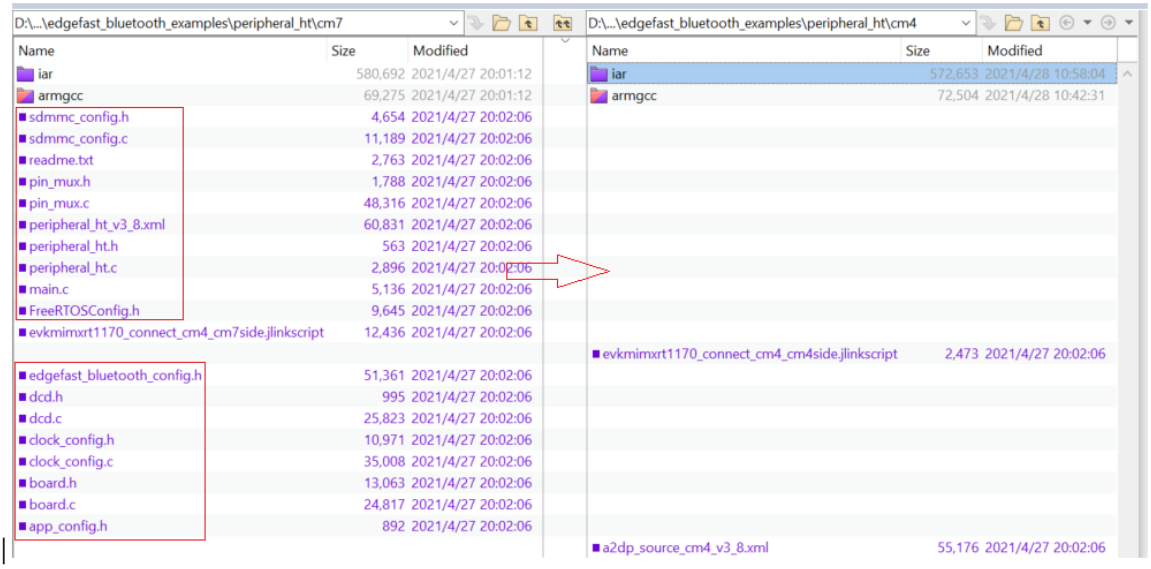
4. Open the files *peripheral_ht_cm4.eww* and *peripheral_ht_cm4.ewp* with a text editor, such as Notepad, Notepad++, Sublime, or Visual Studio Code.
5. Search and replace all *a2dp_source_cm4* with *peripheral_ht _cm4*, and then save the files.



Parent topic:*IAR*

Rearrange source files To rearrange source files, perform the following steps:

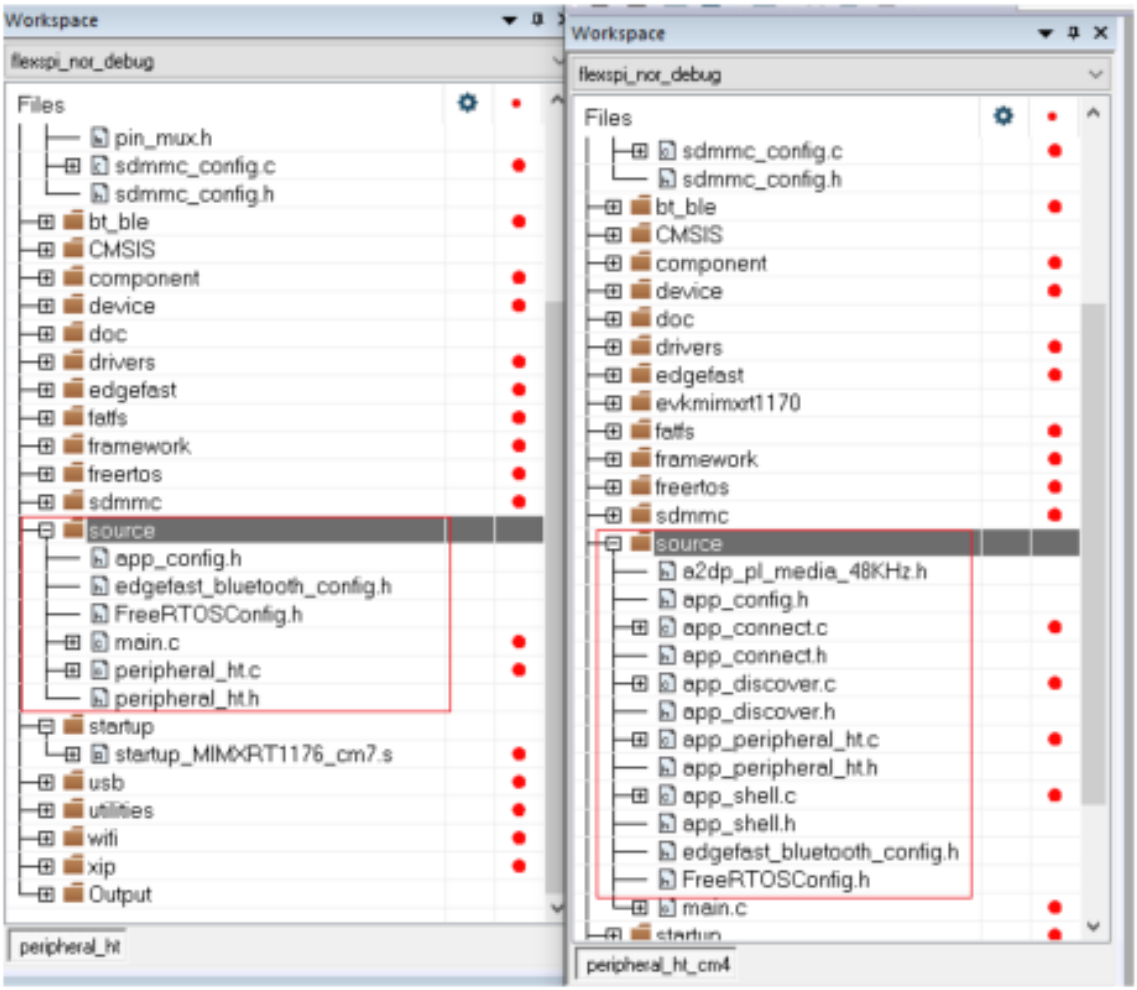
1. Open the folder *cm4* in the directory <*install_dir*> *boards*|*evkmimxrt1170*|*edgefast_bluetooth_examples*|*peri* and delete all files with the extensions *.c and *.h.
2. Copy the files with the extensions *.c and *.h from the folder *boards*|*evkmimxrt1170*|*edgefast_bluetooth_examples*|*peripheral_ht*|*cm7*| to the folder <*install_dir*> *boards*|*evkmimxrt1170*|*edgefast_bluetooth_examples*|*peripheral_ht*|*cm4*.



Parent topic:*IAR*

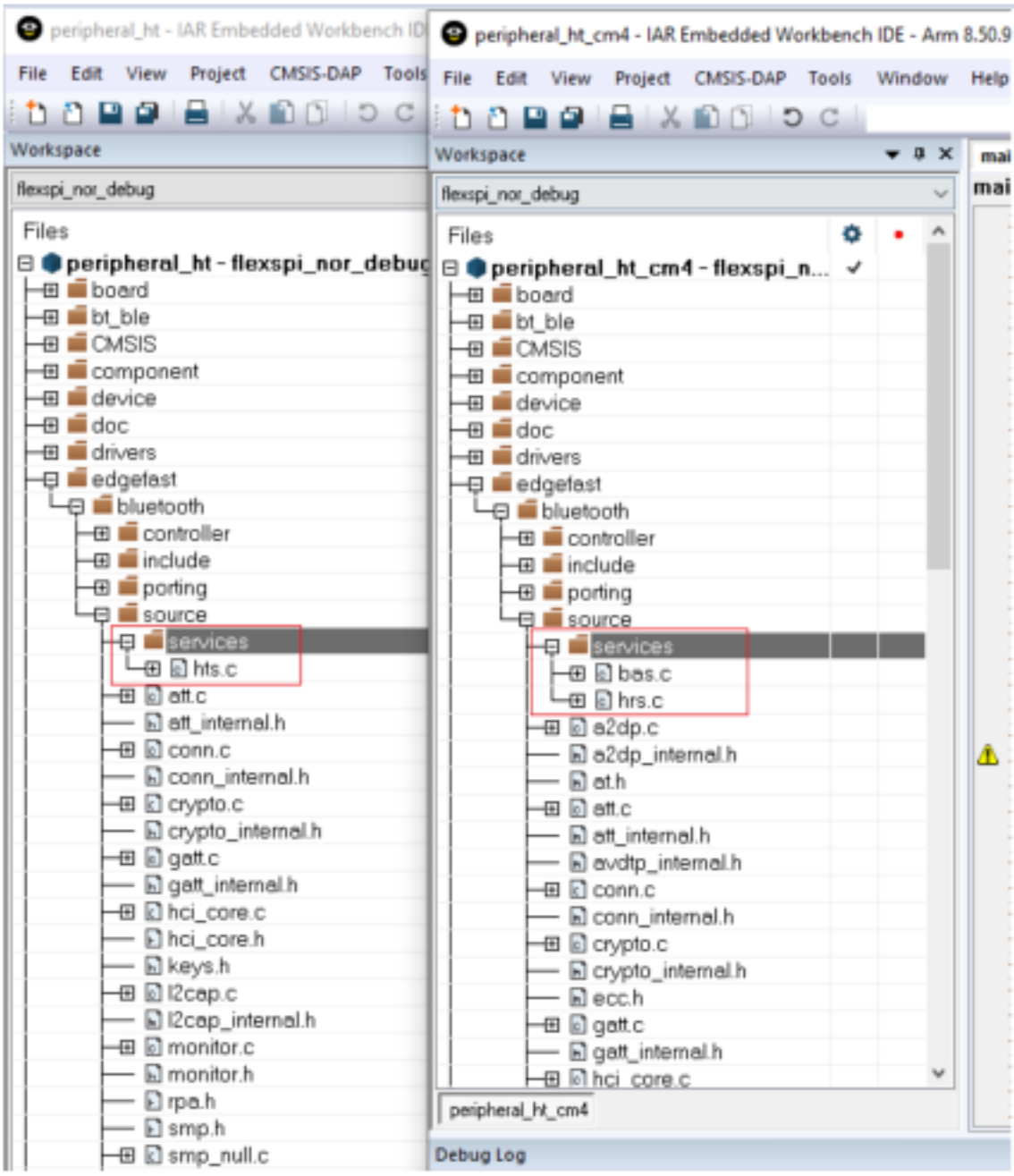
Rearrange project files To rearrange project files, perform the following steps:

1. Open the *peripheral_ht _cm7*and *peripheral_ht _cm4* IAR projects in the directories <*install_dir*> *boards*|*evkmimxrt1170*|*edgefast_bluetooth_examples*|*peripheral_ht* |*cm7*|*iar* and <*install_dir*> *boards*|*evkmimxrt1170*|*edgefast_bluetooth_examples*|*peripheral_ht* |*cm4*|*iar*.
    1. Compare the whole project directory, find file groups that the cm7 project has but are missing in the cm4 project. Add the missing file groups from the cm7 project into the cm4 project.
    2. Compare the difference between the two groups with the same name. Remove files that do not exist in the cm7 project but exist in the cm4 project. Find files that are available in the cm7 project but are missing in the cm4 project. Add the missing files from the cm7 project into the cm4 project.
2. For example, in the following figure, the files in the source group in the cm4 project must be removed, and the files in the path: <*install_dir*>|*boards*|*evkmimxrt1170*|*edgefast_bluetooth_examples*|*peripheral_ht* with the same name as the files in the cm7 project must be added into the *source* group.



3. Compare the *services* group.

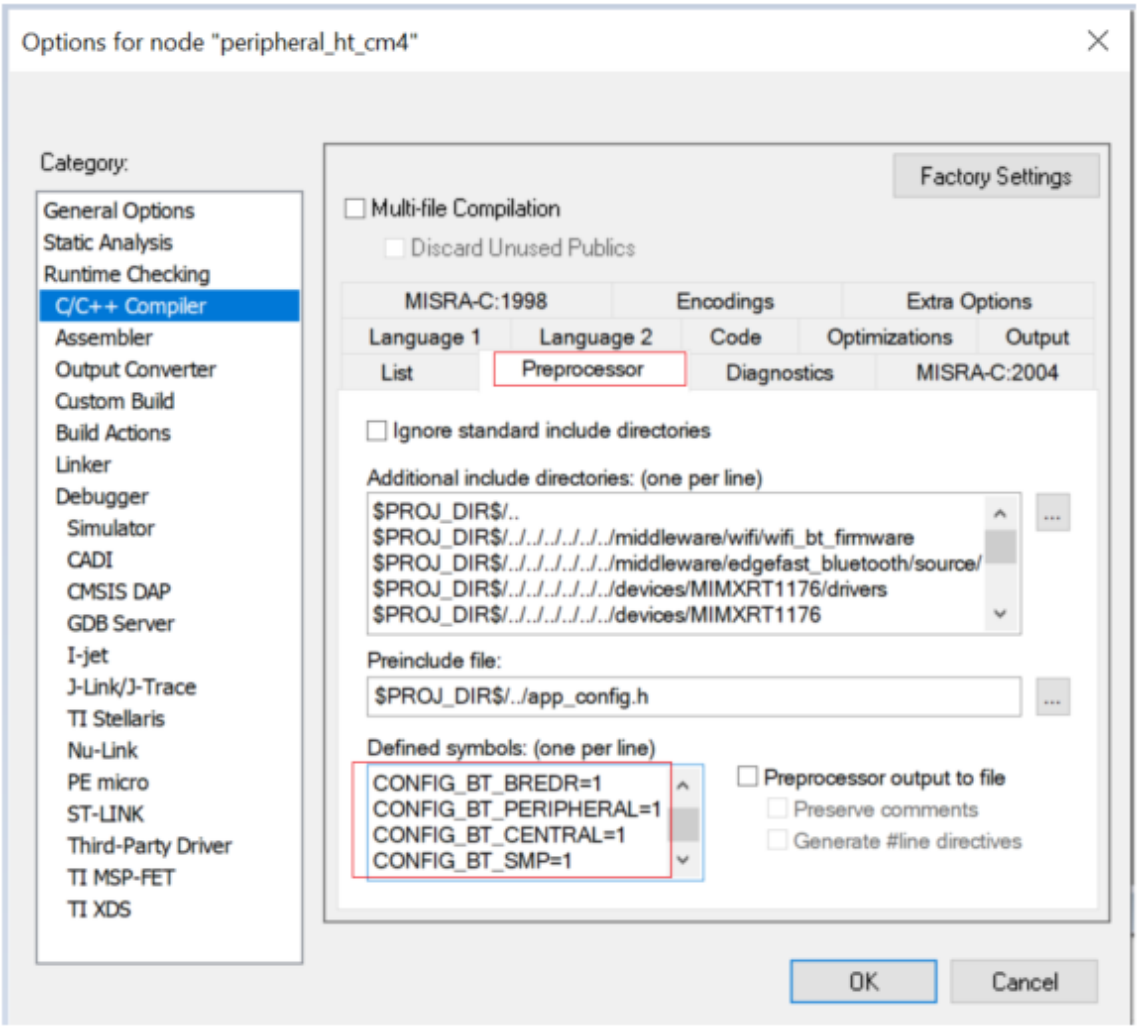
   The peripheral hts profile is in the *services* folder. Add the hts.c file to the *services* group of the *cm4* folder.



Parent topic:*IAR*

Adjust project settings To adjust the project settings, perform the following steps:

1. Compare the macro in the project settings: **Option** > **C/C++ compiler** > **Preprocessor**.
2. Find the macros that do not exist in the **cm4** project but are available in the **cm7** project. Delete these macro. The rule is that **m7** macro setting should be same with **m4**.



|

|

The macros are in the**peripheral_ht_cm4.ewp** file.

|

|

Parent topic:*IAR*

Delete function As a final step, remove the function *"SCB_DisableDCache()*; in main.c.

On the completion of the above steps, the M7 project successfully migrates to an M4 project. You can now download and debug the M4 example project.

Parent topic:*IAR*

Arm GCC This section describes the steps to create an M4 project with Arm GCC, rearrange source and project files, adjust project settings, and delete function.

Create an M4 project To create an M4 project, perform the following steps:

1. Copy the folder <*install_dir*> *boards\evkmimxrt1170\edgefast_bluetooth_examples\a2dp_source\cm4* into another folder in which the example should be enabled. In this case, copy the folder <*install_dir*>

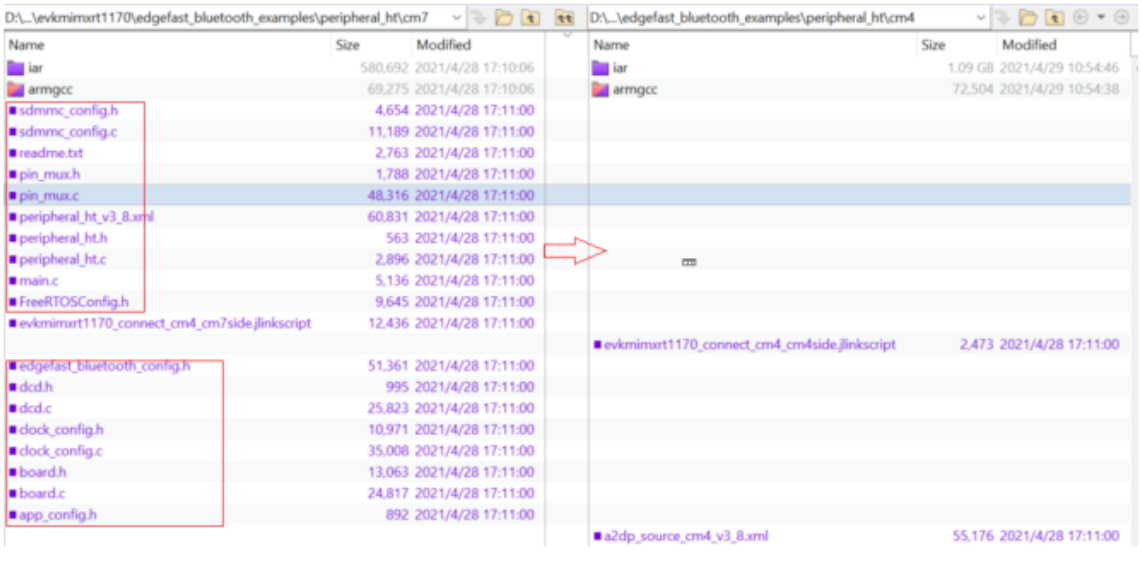
boards\evkmimxrt1170\edgefast_bluetooth_examples\a2dp_source \cm4 into*<install_dir>boards\evkmimxrt1170\edgefast_bluetooth_examples\peripheral_ht\cm4*.

2. Open the file *CMakeLists.txt* located in the path: *<install_dir>boards\evkmimxrt1170\edgefast_bluetooth_examples\peripheral_ht\cm4\ armgcc*.
3. Search and replace all *a2dp_source_cm4* with *peripheral_ht_cm4*, and then save the files.

Parent topic:*Arm GCC*

Rearrange source files To rearrange source files, perform the following steps:

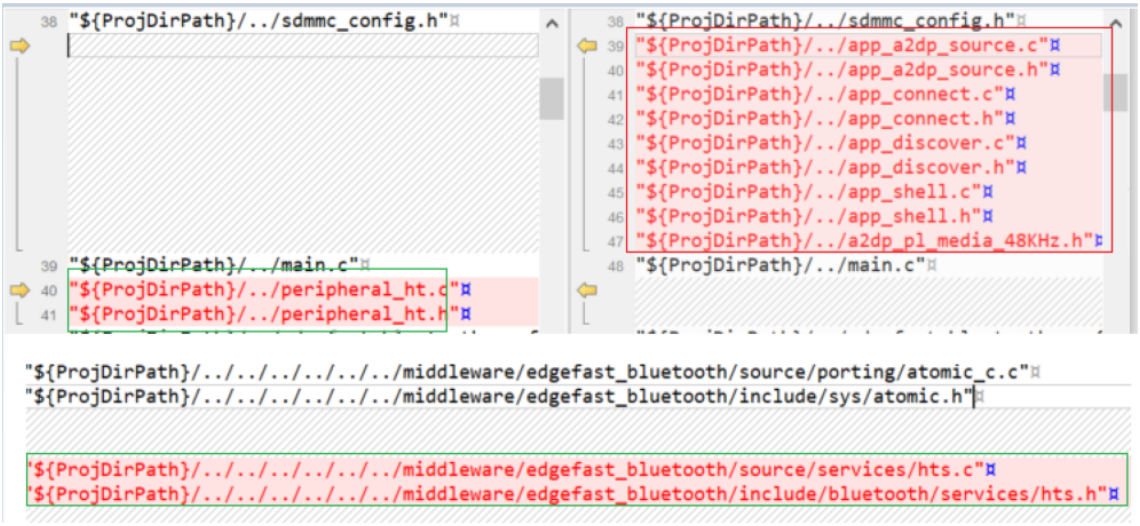
1. Open the folder *<install_dir>boards\evkmimxrt1170\edgefast_bluetooth_examples\peripheral_ht\cm4* and delete all files with the extensions *.c and *.h.
2. Copy the files with the extensions *.c and *.h in the folder *<install_dir>boards\evkmimxrt1170\edgefast_bluetooth_examples\peripheral_ht\cm7* to the folder *<install_dir>boards\evkmimxrt1170\edgefast_bluetooth_examples\peripheral_ht\cm4*.



Parent topic:*Arm GCC*

Rearrange project files To rearrange project files, perform the following steps:

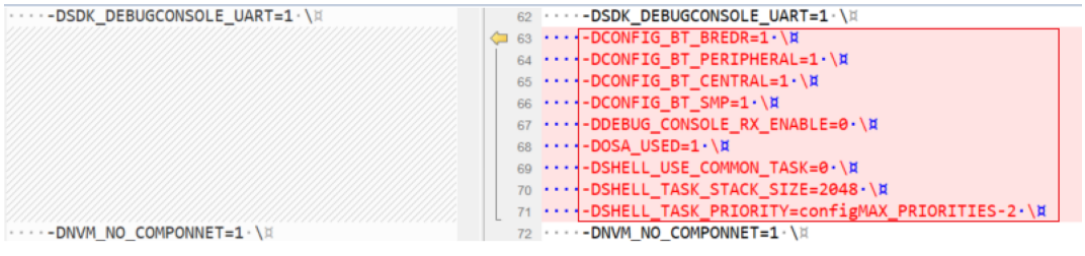
1. Open the *CMakeLists.txt* of the two examples respectively. The two files are in the *<install_dir>boards\evkmimxrt1170\edgefast_bluetooth_examples\peripheral_ht\cm7\armgcc* and *<install_dir>boards\evkmimxrt1170\edgefast_bluetooth_examples\peripheral_ht\cm4\armgcc* folders respectively.
2. Search the section *add_executable*. Compare the difference between the two sections. Remove files that do not exist in the *cm7* project but are available in the *cm4* project. Add the files that exist in the *cm7* project but are not available in the *cm4* project into the *cm4* project. For example, in the following figure, the files in the red box should be removed and the files in the green box must be added into the *cm4* project.



Parent topic:*Arm GCC*

Adjust project setting To adjust the project settings, perform the following steps:

1. Open the *flags.cmake* of the two examples respectively. The two files are in the <*install_dir*>*boards**evkmimxrt1170**edgefast_bluetooth_examples**peripheral_ht**cm7**armgcc* and <*install_dir*>*boards**evkmimxrt1170**edgefast_bluetooth_examples**peripheral_ht**cm4**armgcc* folders respectively.
2. Search the ***CMAKE_C_FLAGS_DEBUG*** section.
    1. Compare the macro between the two sections.
    2. Add the macros that do not exist in the **cm4** project but are available in the **cm7** project into the cm4 project. The rule is that macro setting should be same.
    3. Delete the macros highlighted in the red rectangle.



Parent topic:*Arm GCC*

Delete function As a final step, remove the function *"SCB_DisableDCache()* in main.c.

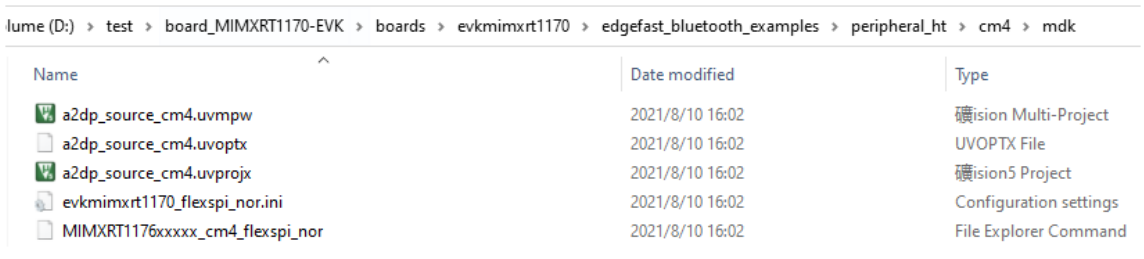
On the completion of the above steps, the M7 project successfully migrates to an M4 project. You can now download and debug the M4 example project.

Parent topic:*Arm GCC*

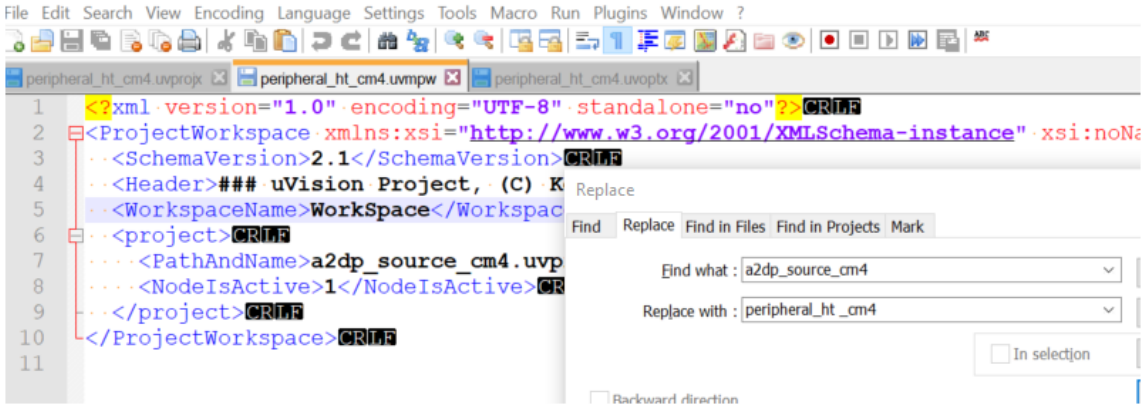
MDK This section describes the steps to create an M4 project with MDK, rearrange source and project files, adjust project settings, and delete function.

Create an M4 project

1. Copy folder *cm4* from <*install_dir*>*boards*|*evkmimxrt1170*|*edgefast_bluetooth_examples*|*a2dp_source*|*cm4* into the folder in where the example must be enabled. In this case, copy folder *cm4* into directory <*install_dir*>|*boards*|*evkmimxrt1170*|*edgefast_bluetooth_examples*|*peripheral_ht*.
2. Open folder mdk from <*install_dir*>*boards*|*evkmimxrt1170*|*edgefast_bluetooth_examples*|*peripheral_ht*|*cm4*



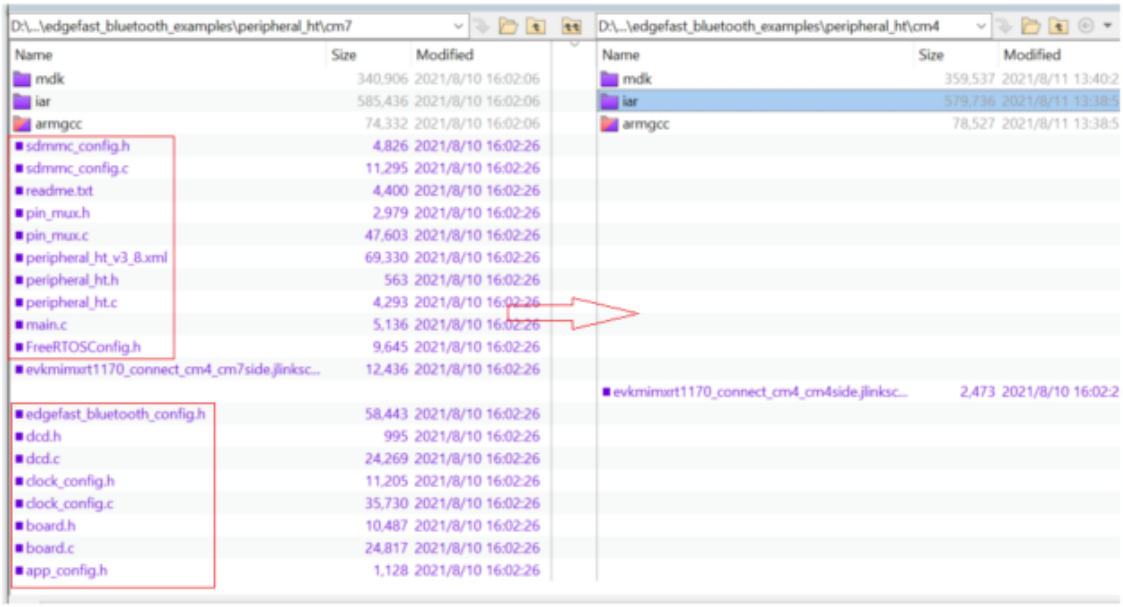
3. Change the filename *a2dp_source_cm4* to *peripheral_ht_cm4* respectively.
4. Open the files *peripheral_ht_cm4.**uvmpw* and *peripheral_ht_cm4.* *uvoptx, peripheral_ht_cm4.uvprojx*with a text editor, such as Notepad, Notepad++, Sublime, or Visual Studio code.
5. Search and replace *a2dp_source_cm4* with *peripheral_ht _cm4*, and then save the files.



Parent topic:*MDK*

Rearrange source files

1. Open folder *cm4* in *<install_dir>**boards*|*evkmimxrt1170*|*edgefast_bluetooth_examples*|*peripheral_ht*|*cm4*, and delete all files with the .c and .h file name extension.
2. Copy files with the .c and .h filename extension in folder *cm7* with directory <*install_dir*> *boards*|*evkmimxrt1170*|*edgefast_bluetooth_examples*|*peripheral_ht*|*cm7*to folder *cm4* with directory <*install_dir*> *boards*|*evkmimxrt1170*|*edgefast_bluetooth_examples*|*peripheral_ht*|*cm4*.

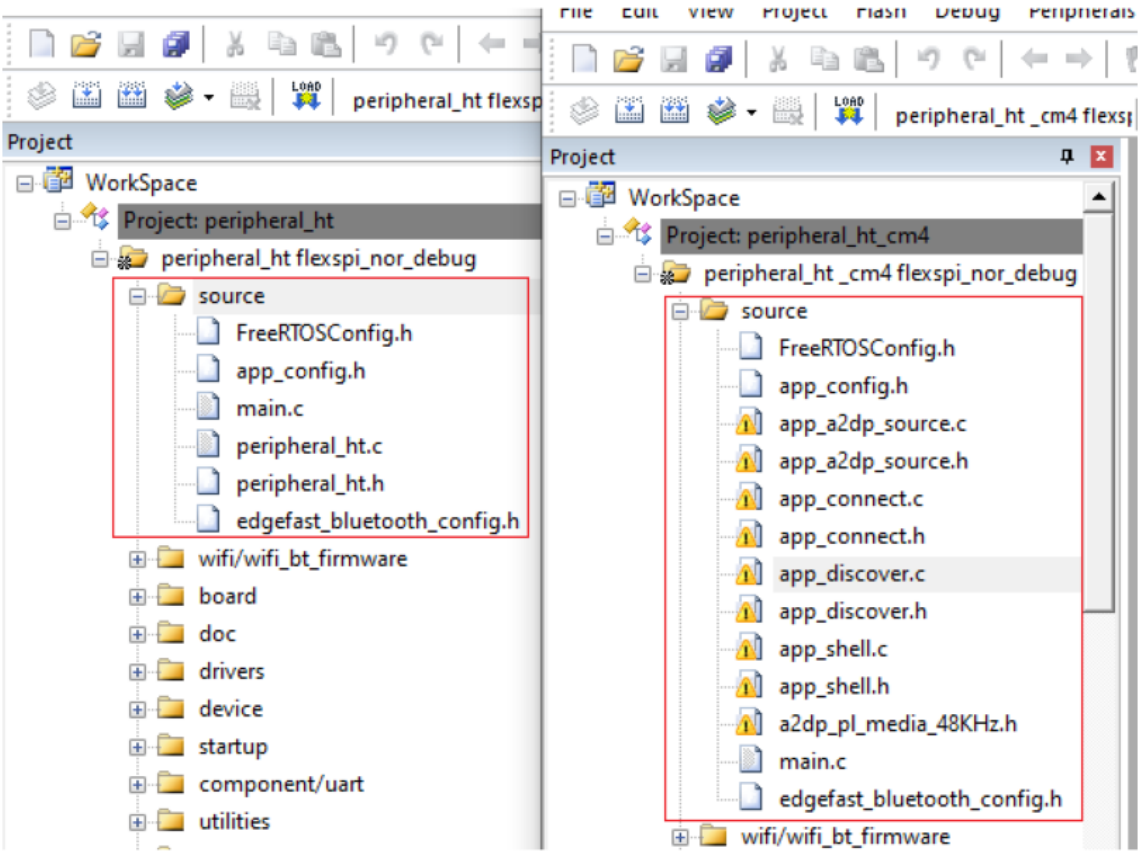


.

Parent topic:*MDK*

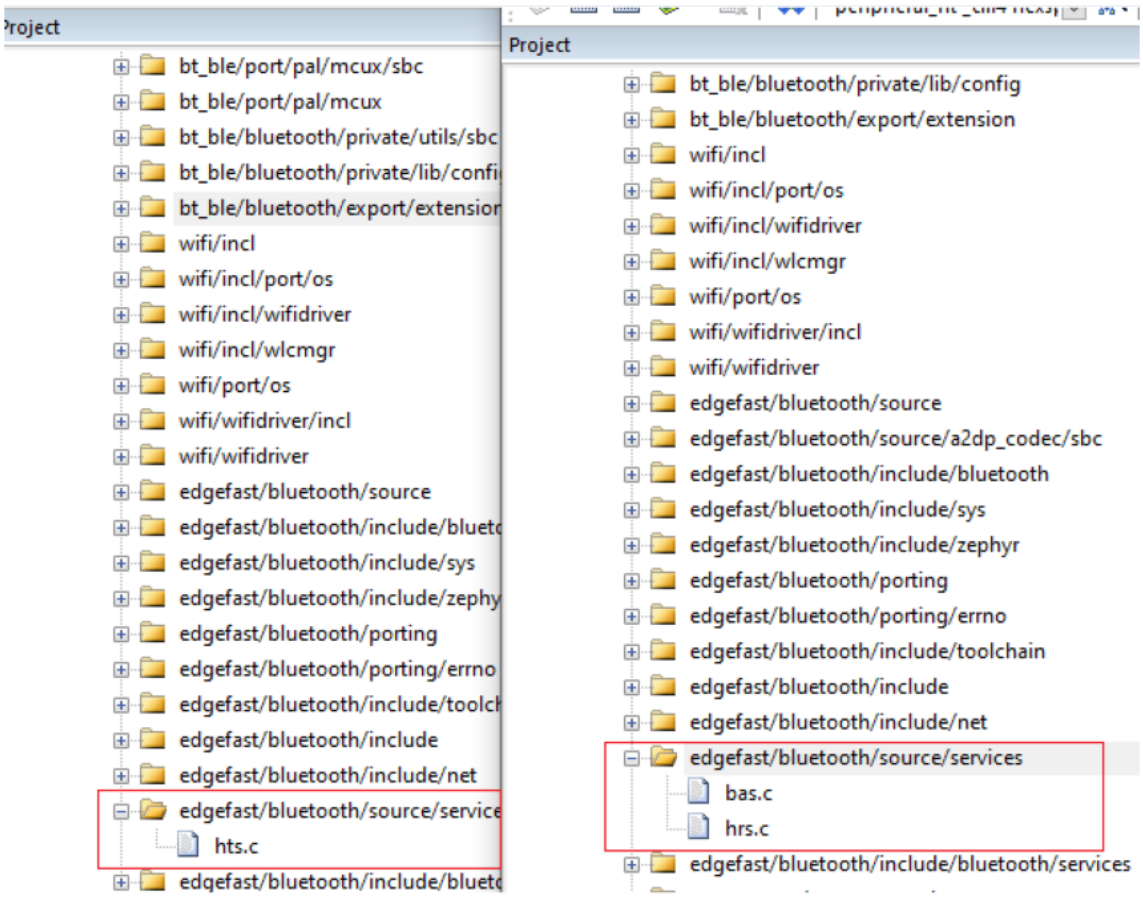
Rearrange project files

1. Open the *peripheral_ht _cm7* and *peripheral_ht _cm4* IAR projects. The two workspaces are located in *<install_dir>**boards*|*evkmimxrt1170*|*edgefast_bluetooth_examples*|*peripheral_ht*|*cm7*|*mdk* and *<install_dir>**boards*|*evkmimxrt1170*|*edgefast_bluetooth_examples*|*peripheral_ht*|*cm4*|*mdk* respectively.
   - Compare the whole project directory, find file groups that the cm7 project has but the cm4 project not and then add these groups into the cm4 project.
   - Compare the difference between the two groups with the same name, remove files that do not exist in the cm7 project but exist in the cm4 project; find files that the cm7 project has but the cm4 project not and then add these files into the cm4 project.
2. For the *source* group, in this case, the files in the source group in the cm4 project must be removed, and the files in the path *<install_dir>*|*boards*|*evkmimxrt1170*|*boards*|*evkmimxrt1170*|*edgefast_bluetooth_examples*|*peripheral_ht*|*cm4* with the same name as the files in the cm7 project must be added into the *source* group.



3. Compare the **service: group**.

   Peripheral hts profile is located in "**service**" folder. Add the hts.c file to the services group of the cm4 folder.

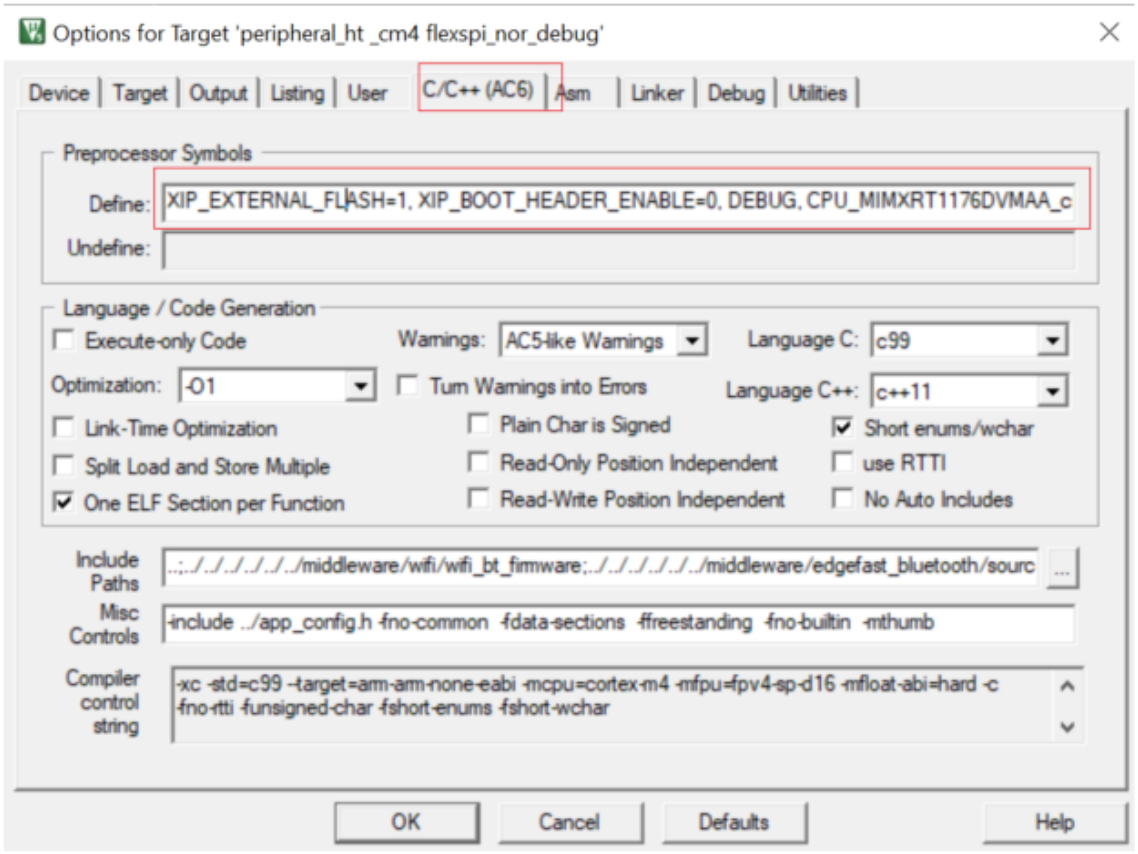


.

Parent topic:*MDK*

Adjust project settings

1. Compare the macro in the project settings: *preprocessor symbols*.
2. Compare the macro that does exist in the cm4 project but exists in the cm7 project.
3. Delete the following macro. The rule is that m7 macro setting should be same as m4 .
   The macro could also be found in be eripheral_ht_cm4.uvprojx.



|

|

|

Parent topic:*MDK*

Delete function Remove function *SCB_DisableDCache();* in *main.c*.

On successful completion of the above steps, the M7 project is changed to the M4 project. You can now download and debug the M4 example project.

Parent topic:*MDK*

Note The above steps are based on the **a2dp_source** example and help enable the **peripheral_ht** example on the **m4** core. You can use the same steps for other examples and migrate them from an **m7** project to an **m4** project.

Chapter 4

RTOS

4.1 FreeRTOS

4.1.1 FreeRTOS kernel

Open source RTOS kernel for small devices.

FreeRTOS kernel for MCUXpresso SDK Readme

FreeRTOS kernel for MCUXpresso SDK

Overview The purpose of this document is to describes the FreeRTOS kernel repo integration into the NXP MCUXpresso Software Development Kit: mcuxsdk. MCUXpresso SDK provides a comprehensive development solutions designed to optimize, ease, and help accelerate embedded system development of applications based on MCUs from NXP. This project involves the FreeRTOS kernel repo fork with:

- cmake and Kconfig support to allow the configuration and build in MCUXpresso SDK ecosystem
- FreeRTOS OS additions, such as FreeRTOS driver wrappers, RTOS ready FatFs file system, and the implementation of FreeRTOS tickless mode

The history of changes in FreeRTOS kernel repo for MCUXpresso SDK are summarized in *CHANGELOG_mcuxsdk.md* file.

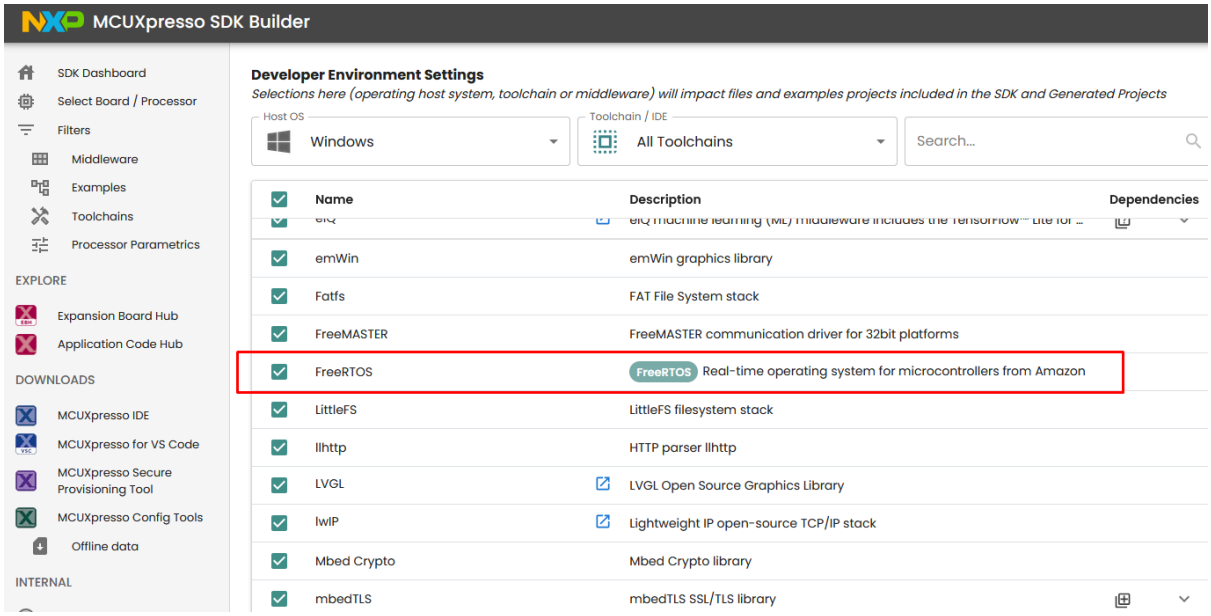
The MCUXpresso SDK framework also contains a set of FreeRTOS examples which show basic FreeRTOS OS features. This makes it easy to start a new FreeRTOS project or begin experimenting with FreeRTOS OS. Selected drivers and middleware are RTOS ready with related FreeRTOS adaptation layer.

FreeRTOS example applications The FreeRTOS examples are written to demonstrate basic FreeRTOS features and the interaction between peripheral drivers and the RTOS.

List of examples The list of freertos_examples, their description and availability for individual supported MCUXpresso SDK development boards can be obtained here: https://mcuxpresso.nxp.com/mcuxsdk/latest/html/examples/freertos_examples/index.html

Location of examples The FreeRTOS examples are located in mcuxsdk-examples repository, see the freertos_examples folder.

Once using MCUXpresso SDK zip packages created via the MCUXpresso SDK Builder the FreeRTOS kernel library and associated freertos_examples are added into final zip package once FreeRTOS components is selected on the Developer Environment Settings page:



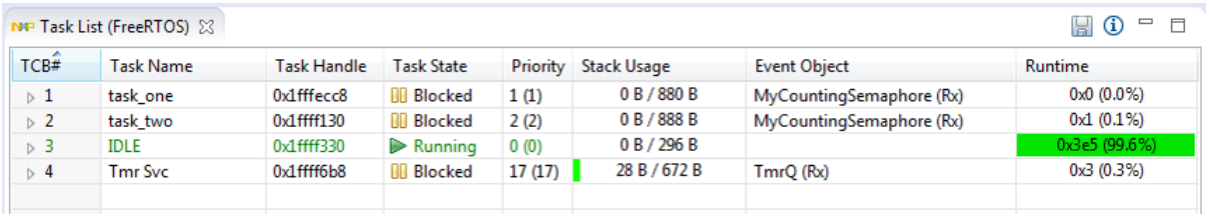
The FreeRTOS examples in MCUXpresso SDK zip packages are located in <MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/freertos_examples/ subfolders.

Building a FreeRTOS example application For information how to use the cmake and Kconfig based build and configuration system and how to build freertos_examples visit: MCUXpresso SDK documentation for Build And Configuration MCUXpresso SDK Getting Start Guide

Tip: To list all FreeRTOS example projects and targets that can be built via the west build command, use this west list_project command in mcuxsdk workspace:

```
west list_project -p examples/freertos_examples
```

FreeRTOS aware debugger plugin NXP provides FreeRTOS task aware debugger for GDB. The plugin is compatible with Eclipse-based (MCUXpressoIDE) and is available after the installation.



FreeRTOS kernel for MCUXpresso SDK ChangeLog

Changelog FreeRTOS kernel for MCUXpresso SDK All notable changes to this project will be documented in this file.

The format is based on Keep a Changelog, and this project adheres to Semantic Versioning.

[Unreleased]

Added

- Kconfig added CONFIG_FREERTOS_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG_FRAGMENT config to optionally include custom FreeRTOSConfig fragment
  include file FreeRTOSConfig_frag.h. File must be provided by application.
- Added missing Kconfig option for configUSE_PICOLIBC_TLS.
- Add correct header files to build when configUSE_NEWLIB_REENTRANT and configUSE_PICOLIBC_TLS is selected in config.

[11.1.0_rev0]

- update amazon freertos version

[11.0.1_rev0]

- update amazon freertos version

[10.5.1_rev0]

- update amazon freertos version

[10.4.3_rev1]

- Apply CM33 security fix from 10.4.3-LTS-Patch-2. See rtos\freertos\freertos_kernel\History.txt
- Apply CM33 security fix from 10.4.3-LTS-Patch-1. See rtos\freertos\freertos_kernel\History.txt

[10.4.3_rev0]

- update amazon freertos version.

[10.4.3_rev0]

- update amazon freertos version.

[9.0.0_rev3]

- New features:
  - Tickless idle mode support for Cortex-A7. Add fsl_tickless_epit.c and fsl_tickless_generic.h in portable/IAR/ARM_CA9 folder.
  - Enabled float context saving in IAR for Cortex-A7. Added configUSE_TASK_FPU_SUPPORT macros. Modified port.c and portmacro.h in portable/IAR/ARM_CA9 folder.
- Other changes:
  - Transformed ARM_CM core specific tickless low power support into generic form under freertos/Source/portable/low_power_tickless/.

[9.0.0_rev2]

- New features:
  - Enabled MCUXpresso thread aware debugging. Add freertos_tasks_c_additions.h and configINCLUDE_FREERTOS_TASK_C_ADDITIONS_H and configFREERTOS_MEMORY_SCHEME macros.

[9.0.0_rev1]

- New features:
  - Enabled -flto optimization in GCC by adding **attribute**((used)) for vTaskSwitchContext.
  - Enabled KDS Task Aware Debugger. Apply FreeRTOS patch to enable configRECORD_STACK_HIGH_ADDRESS macro. Modified files are task.c and FreeRTOS.h.

[9.0.0_rev0]

- New features:
  - Example freertos_sem_static.
  - Static allocation support RTOS driver wrappers.
- Other changes:
  - Tickless idle rework. Support for different timers is in separated files (fsl_tickless_systick.c, fsl_tickless_lptmr.c).
  - Removed configuration option configSYSTICK_USE_LOW_POWER_TIMER. Low power timer is now selected by linking of apropriate file fsl_tickless_lptmr.c.
  - Removed configOVERRIDE_DEFAULT_TICK_CONFIGURATION in RVDS port. Use of **attribute**((weak)) is the preferred solution. Not same as _weak!

[8.2.3]

- New features:
  - Tickless idle mode support.
  - Added template application for Kinetis Expert (KEx) tool (template_application).
- Other changes:
  - Folder structure reduction. Keep only Kinetis related parts.

FreeRTOS kernel Readme

MCUXpresso SDK: FreeRTOS kernel This repository is a fork of FreeRTOS kernel (https://github.com/FreeRTOS/FreeRTOS-Kernel)(11.1.0). Modifications have been made to adapt to NXP MCUXpresso SDK. CMakeLists.txt and Kconfig added to enable FreeRTOS kernel repo sources build in MCUXpresso SDK. It is part of the MCUXpresso SDK overall delivery which is composed of several sub-repositories/projects. Navigate to the top/parent repository mcuxsdk-manifests(https://github.com/nxp-mcuxpresso/mcuxsdk-manifests) for the complete delivery of MCUXpresso SDK.

For more information about the FreeRTOS kernel repo adoption see README_mcuxsdk.md: FreeRTOS kernel for MCUXpresso SDK Readme document.



Getting started This repository contains FreeRTOS kernel source/header files and kernel ports only. This repository is referenced as a submodule in FreeRTOS/FreeRTOS repository, which contains pre-configured demo application projects under FreeRTOS/Demo directory.

The easiest way to use FreeRTOS is to start with one of the pre-configured demo application projects. That way you will have the correct FreeRTOS source files included, and the correct include paths configured. Once a demo application is building and executing you can remove the demo application files, and start to add in your own application source files. See the FreeRTOS Kernel Quick Start Guide for detailed instructions and other useful links.

Additionally, for FreeRTOS kernel feature information refer to the Developer Documentation, and API Reference.

Also for contributing and creating a Pull Request please refer to *the instructions here*.

Getting help If you have any questions or need assistance troubleshooting your FreeRTOS project, we have an active community that can help on the FreeRTOS Community Support Forum.

To consume FreeRTOS-Kernel

Consume with CMake If using CMake, it is recommended to use this repository using FetchContent. Add the following into your project's main or a subdirectory's CMakeLists.txt:

- Define the source and version/tag you want to use:

```
FetchContent_Declare( freertos_kernel
  GIT_REPOSITORY https://github.com/FreeRTOS/FreeRTOS-Kernel.git
  GIT_TAG        main #Note: Best practice to use specific git-hash or tagged version
)
```

In case you prefer to add it as a git submodule, do:

```
git submodule add https://github.com/FreeRTOS/FreeRTOS-Kernel.git <path of the submodule>
git submodule update --init
```

- Add a freertos_config library (typically an INTERFACE library) The following assumes the directory structure:
  - include/FreeRTOSConfig.h

```
add_library(freertos_config INTERFACE)

target_include_directories(freertos_config SYSTEM
INTERFACE
    include
)

target_compile_definitions(freertos_config
  INTERFACE
    projCOVERAGE_TEST=0
)
```

In case you installed FreeRTOS-Kernel as a submodule, you will have to add it as a subdirectory:

```
add_subdirectory(${FREERTOS_PATH})
```

- Configure the FreeRTOS-Kernel and make it available
  - this particular example supports a native and cross-compiled build option.

```
set( FREERTOS_HEAP "4" CACHE STRING "" FORCE)
# Select the native compile PORT
set( FREERTOS_PORT "GCC_POSIX" CACHE STRING "" FORCE)
# Select the cross-compile PORT
if (CMAKE_CROSSCOMPILING)
  set(FREERTOS_PORT "GCC_ARM_CA9" CACHE STRING "" FORCE)
endif()

FetchContent_MakeAvailable(freertos_kernel)
```

- In case of cross compilation, you should also add the following to freertos_config:

```
target_compile_definitions(freertos_config INTERFACE ${definitions})
target_compile_options(freertos_config INTERFACE ${options})
```

Consuming stand-alone - Cloning this repository To clone using HTTPS:

```
git clone https://github.com/FreeRTOS/FreeRTOS-Kernel.git
```

Using SSH:

```
git clone git@github.com:FreeRTOS/FreeRTOS-Kernel.git
```

Repository structure

- The root of this repository contains the three files that are common to every port - list.c, queue.c and tasks.c. The kernel is contained within these three files. croutine.c implements the optional co-routine functionality - which is normally only used on very memory limited systems.
- The ./portable directory contains the files that are specific to a particular microcontroller and/or compiler. See the readme file in the ./portable directory for more information.
- The ./include directory contains the real time kernel header files.
- The ./template_configuration directory contains a sample FreeRTOSConfig.h to help jumpstart a new project. See the *FreeRTOSConfig.h* file for instructions.

Code Formatting FreeRTOS files are formatted using the "uncrustify" tool. The configuration file used by uncrustify can be found in the FreeRTOS/CI-CD-GitHub-Actions's uncrustify.cfg file.

Line Endings File checked into the FreeRTOS-Kernel repository use unix-style LF line endings for the best compatibility with git.

For optimal compatibility with Microsoft Windows tools, it is best to enable the git autocrlf feature. You can enable this setting for the current repository using the following command:

```
git config core.autocrlf true
```

Git History Optimizations Some commits in this repository perform large refactors which touch many lines and lead to unwanted behavior when using the git blame command. You can configure git to ignore the list of large refactor commits in this repository with the following command:

```
git config blame.ignoreRevsFile .git-blame-ignore-revs
```

Spelling and Formatting We recommend using Visual Studio Code, commonly referred to as VSCode, when working on the FreeRTOS-Kernel. The FreeRTOS-Kernel also uses cSpell as part of its spelling check. The config file for which can be found at *cspell.config.yaml* There is additionally a cSpell plugin for VSCode that can be used as well. .cSpellWords.txt contains words that are not traditionally found in an English dictionary. It is used by the spellchecker to verify the various jargon, variable names, and other odd words used in the FreeRTOS code base are correct. If your pull request fails to pass the spelling and you believe this is a mistake, then add the word to .cSpellWords.txt. When adding a word please then sort the list, which can be done by running the bash command: `sort -u .cSpellWords.txt -o .cSpellWords.txt` Note that only the FreeRTOS-Kernel Source Files, *include*, *portable/MemMang*, and *portable/Common* files are checked for proper spelling, and formatting at this time.

4.1.2 FreeRTOS drivers

This is set of NXP provided FreeRTOS reentrant bus drivers.

4.1.3 backoffalgorithm

Algorithm for calculating exponential backoff with jitter for network retry attempts.

Readme

MCUXpresso SDK: backoffAlgorithm Library This repository is a fork of backoffAlgorithm library (https://github.com/FreeRTOS/backoffalgorithm)(1.3.0). Modifications have been made to adapt to NXP MCUXpresso SDK. CMakeLists.txt and Kconfig added to enable backoffAlgorithm repo sources build in MCUXpresso SDK. It is part of the MCUXpresso SDK overall delivery which is composed of several sub-repositories/projects. Navigate to the top/parent repository mcuxsdk-manifests(https://github.com/nxp-mcuxpresso/mcuxsdk-manifests) for the complete delivery of MCUXpresso SDK.

backoffAlgorithm Library This repository contains the backoffAlgorithm library, a utility library to calculate backoff period using an exponential backoff with jitter algorithm for retrying network operations (like failed network connection with server). This library uses the "Full Jitter" strategy for the exponential backoff with jitter algorithm. More information about the algorithm can be seen in the Exponential Backoff and Jitter AWS blog.

The backoffAlgorithm library is distributed under the *MIT Open Source License*.

Exponential backoff with jitter is typically used when retrying a failed network connection or operation request with the server. An exponential backoff with jitter helps to mitigate failed network operations with servers, that are caused due to network congestion or high request load on the server, by spreading out retry requests across multiple devices attempting network operations. Besides, in an environment with poor connectivity, a client can get disconnected at any time. A backoff strategy helps the client to conserve battery by not repeatedly attempting reconnections when they are unlikely to succeed.

See memory requirements for this library *here*.

backoffAlgorithm v1.3.0 source code is part of the FreeRTOS 202210.00 LTS release.

backoffAlgorithm v1.0.0 source code is part of the FreeRTOS 202012.00 LTS release.

Reference example The example below shows how to use the backoffAlgorithm library on a POSIX platform to retry a DNS resolution query for amazon.com.

```
#include "backoff_algorithm.h"
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <netdb.h>
#include <unistd.h>
#include <time.h>

/* The maximum number of retries for the example code. */
#define RETRY_MAX_ATTEMPTS            ( 5U )

/* The maximum back-off delay (in milliseconds) for between retries in the example. */
#define RETRY_MAX_BACKOFF_DELAY_MS    ( 5000U )

/* The base back-off delay (in milliseconds) for retry configuration in the example. */
#define RETRY_BACKOFF_BASE_MS         ( 500U )

int main()
{
    /* Variables used in this example. */
    BackoffAlgorithmStatus_t retryStatus = BackoffAlgorithmSuccess;
    BackoffAlgorithmContext_t retryParams;
    char serverAddress[] = "amazon.com";
    uint16_t nextRetryBackoff = 0;

    int32_t dnsStatus = -1;
    struct addrinfo hints;
    struct addrinfo ** pListHead = NULL;
    struct timespec tp;

    /* Add hints to retrieve only TCP sockets in getaddrinfo. */
    ( void ) memset( &hints, 0, sizeof( hints ) );

    /* Address family of either IPv4 or IPv6. */
    hints.ai_family = AF_UNSPEC;
    /* TCP Socket. */
    hints.ai_socktype = ( int32_t ) SOCK_STREAM;
    hints.ai_protocol = IPPROTO_TCP;

    /* Initialize reconnect attempts and interval. */
    BackoffAlgorithm_InitializeParams( &retryParams,
                                       RETRY_BACKOFF_BASE_MS,
                                       RETRY_MAX_BACKOFF_DELAY_MS,
                                       RETRY_MAX_ATTEMPTS );


    /* Seed the pseudo random number generator used in this example (with call to
     * rand() function provided by ISO C standard library) for use in backoff period
     * calculation when retrying failed DNS resolution. */

    /* Get current time to seed pseudo random number generator. */
    ( void ) clock_gettime( CLOCK_REALTIME, &tp );
    /* Seed pseudo random number generator with seconds. */
    srand( tp.tv_sec );

    do
    {
        /* Perform a DNS lookup on the given host name. */
        dnsStatus = getaddrinfo( serverAddress, NULL, &hints, pListHead );
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
        /* Retry if DNS resolution query failed. */
        if( dnsStatus != 0 )
        {
            /* Generate a random number and get back-off value (in milliseconds) for the next retry.
             * Note: It is recommended to use a random number generator that is seeded with
             * device-specific entropy source so that backoff calculation across devices is different
             * and possibility of network collision between devices attempting retries can be avoided.
             *
             * For the simplicity of this code example, the pseudo random number generator, rand()
             * function is used. */
            retryStatus = BackoffAlgorithm_GetNextBackoff( &retryParams, rand(), &nextRetryBackoff );

            /* Wait for the calculated backoff period before the next retry attempt of querying DNS.
             * As usleep() takes nanoseconds as the parameter, we multiply the backoff period by 1000. */
            ( void ) usleep( nextRetryBackoff * 1000U );
        }
    } while( ( dnsStatus != 0 ) && ( retryStatus != BackoffAlgorithmRetriesExhausted ) );

    return dnsStatus;
}
```

Building the library A compiler that supports **C90 or later** such as *gcc* is required to build the library.

Additionally, the library uses a header file introduced in ISO C99, stdint.h. For compilers that do not provide this header file, the *source/include* directory contains *stdint.readme*, which can be renamed to stdint.h to build the backoffAlgorithm library.

For instance, if the example above is copied to a file named example.c, *gcc* can be used like so:

```
gcc -I source/include example.c source/backoff_algorithm.c -o example
./example
```

gcc can also produce an output file to be linked:

```
gcc -I source/include -c source/backoff_algorithm.c
```

Building unit tests

Checkout Unity Submodule By default, the submodules in this repository are configured with update=none in *.gitmodules*, to avoid increasing clone time and disk space usage of other repositories (like amazon-freertos that submodules this repository).

To build unit tests, the submodule dependency of Unity is required. Use the following command to clone the submodule:

```
git submodule update --checkout --init --recursive test/unit-test/Unity
```

Platform Prerequisites

- For running unit tests
  - C89 or later compiler like gcc
  - CMake 3.13.0 or later
- For running the coverage target, gcov is additionally required.

Steps to build Unit Tests

1. Go to the root directory of this repository. (Make sure that the **Unity** submodule is cloned as described *above*.)
2. Create build directory: `mkdir build && cd build`
3. Run *cmake* while inside build directory: `cmake -S ../test`
4. Run this command to build the library and unit tests: `make all`
5. The generated test executables will be present in `build/bin/tests` folder.
6. Run `ctest` to execute all tests and view the test run summary.

Contributing See *CONTRIBUTING.md* for information on contributing.

4.1.4 corehttp

C language HTTP client library designed for embedded platforms.

MCUXpresso SDK: coreHTTP Client Library

This repository is a fork of coreHTTP Client library (https://github.com/FreeRTOS/corehttp)(3.0.0). Modifications have been made to adapt to NXP MCUXpresso SDK. CMakeLists.txt and Kconfig added to enable coreHTTP Client repo sources build in MCUXpresso SDK. It is part of the MCUXpresso SDK overall delivery which is composed of several sub-repositories/projects. Navigate to the top/parent repository mcuxsdk-manifests(https://github.com/nxp-mcuxpresso/mcuxsdk-manifests) for the complete delivery of MCUXpresso SDK.

coreHTTP Client Library

This repository contains a C language HTTP client library designed for embedded platforms. It has no dependencies on any additional libraries other than the standard C library, llhttp, and a customer-implemented transport interface. This library is distributed under the *MIT Open Source License*.

This library has gone through code quality checks including verification that no function has a GNU Complexity score over 8. This library has also undergone both static code analysis from Coverity static analysis, and validation of memory safety and data structure invariance through the CBMC automated reasoning tool.

See memory requirements for this library *here*.

coreHTTP v3.0.0 source code is part of the FreeRTOS 202210.00 LTS release.

coreHTTP v2.0.0 source code is part of the FreeRTOS 202012.00 LTS release.

coreHTTP Config File The HTTP client library exposes configuration macros that are required for building the library. A list of all the configurations and their default values are defined in *core_http_config_defaults.h*. To provide custom values for the configuration macros, a custom config file named `core_http_config.h` can be provided by the user application to the library.

By default, a `core_http_config.h` custom config is required to build the library. To disable this requirement and build the library with default configuration values, provide `HTTP_DO_NOT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG` as a compile time preprocessor macro.

The HTTP client library can be built by either:

- Defining a core_http_config.h file in the application, and adding it to the include directories for the library build. **OR**
- Defining the HTTP_DO_NOT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG preprocessor macro for the library build.

Building the Library The *httpFilePaths.cmake* file contains the information of all source files and header include paths required to build the HTTP client library.

As mentioned in the *previous section*, either a custom config file (i.e. core_http_config.h) OR HTTP_DO_NOT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG macro needs to be provided to build the HTTP client library.

For a CMake example of building the HTTP library with the httpFilePaths.cmake file, refer to the coverity_analysis library target in *test/CMakeLists.txt* file.

Building Unit Tests

Platform Prerequisites

- For running unit tests, the following are required:
  - **C90 compiler** like gcc
  - **CMake 3.13.0 or later**
  - **Ruby 2.0.0 or later** is required for this repository's CMock test framework.
- For running the coverage target, the following are required:
  - **gcov**
  - **lcov**

Steps to build Unit Tests

1. Go to the root directory of this repository.
2. Run the *cmake* command: cmake -S test -B build -DBUILD_CLONE_SUBMODULES=ON
3. Run this command to build the library and unit tests: make -C build all
4. The generated test executables will be present in build/bin/tests folder.
5. Run cd build && ctest to execute all tests and view the test run summary.

CBMC To learn more about CBMC and proofs specifically, review the training material here.

The test/cbmc/proofs directory contains CBMC proofs.

In order to run these proofs you will need to install CBMC and other tools by following the instructions here.

Reference examples The AWS IoT Device SDK for Embedded C repository contains demos of using the HTTP client library here on a POSIX platform. These can be used as reference examples for the library API.

Documentation

Existing Documentation For pre-generated documentation, please see the documentation linked in the locations below:

Location
AWS IoT Device SDK for Embedded C
FreeRTOS.org

Note that the latest included version of coreHTTP may differ across repositories.

Generating Documentation The Doxygen references were created using Doxygen version 1.9.2. To generate the Doxygen pages, please run the following command from the root of this repository:

```
doxygen docs/doxygen/config.doxyfile
```

Contributing See *CONTRIBUTING.md* for information on contributing.

4.1.5 corejson

JSON parser.

Readme

MCUXpresso SDK: coreJSON Library This repository is a fork of coreJSON library (https://github.com/FreeRTOS/corejson)(3.2.0). Modifications have been made to adapt to NXP MCUXpresso SDK. CMakeLists.txt and Kconfig added to enable coreJSON repo sources build in MCUXpresso SDK. It is part of the MCUXpresso SDK overall delivery which is composed of several sub-repositories/projects. Navigate to the top/parent repository mcuxsdk-manifests(https://github.com/nxp-mcuxpresso/mcuxsdk-manifests) for the complete delivery of MCUXpresso SDK.

coreJSON Library This repository contains the coreJSON library, a parser that strictly enforces the ECMA-404 JSON standard and is suitable for low memory footprint embedded devices. The coreJSON library is distributed under the *MIT Open Source License*.

This library has gone through code quality checks including verification that no function has a GNU Complexity score over 8, and checks against deviations from mandatory rules in the MISRA coding standard. Deviations from the MISRA C:2012 guidelines are documented under *MISRA Deviations*. This library has also undergone both static code analysis from Coverity static analysis, and validation of memory safety through the CBMC automated reasoning tool.

See memory requirements for this library *here*.

coreJSON v3.2.0 source code is part of the FreeRTOS 202210.00 LTS release.

coreJSON v3.0.0 source code is part of the FreeRTOS 202012.00 LTS release.

Reference example

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include "core_json.h"

int main()
{
    // Variables used in this example.
    JSONStatus_t result;
    char buffer[] = "{\"foo\":\"abc\",\"bar\":{\"foo\":\"xyz\"}}";
    size_t bufferLength = sizeof( buffer ) - 1;
    char queryKey[] = "bar.foo";
    size_t queryKeyLength = sizeof( queryKey ) - 1;
    char * value;
    size_t valueLength;

    // Calling JSON_Validate() is not necessary if the document is guaranteed to be valid.
    result = JSON_Validate( buffer, bufferLength );

    if( result == JSONSuccess )
    {
        result = JSON_Search( buffer, bufferLength, queryKey, queryKeyLength,
                              &value, &valueLength );
    }

    if( result == JSONSuccess )
    {
        // The pointer "value" will point to a location in the "buffer".
        char save = value[ valueLength ];
        // After saving the character, set it to a null byte for printing.
        value[ valueLength ] = '\0';
        // "Found: bar.foo -> xyz" will be printed.
        printf( "Found: %s -> %s\n", queryKey, value );
        // Restore the original character.
        value[ valueLength ] = save;
    }

    return 0;
}
```

A search may descend through nested objects when the queryKey contains matching key strings joined by a separator, .. In the example above, bar has the value {"foo":"xyz"}. Therefore, a search for query key bar.foo would output xyz.

Building coreJSON A compiler that supports **C90 or later** such as *gcc* is required to build the library.

Additionally, the library uses 2 header files introduced in ISO C99, stdbool.h and stdint.h. For compilers that do not provide this header file, the *source/include* directory contains *stdbool.readme* and *stdint.readme*, which can be renamed to stdbool.h and stdint.h respectively.

For instance, if the example above is copied to a file named example.c, *gcc* can be used like so:

```
gcc -I source/include example.c source/core_json.c -o example
./example
```

gcc can also produce an output file to be linked:

```
gcc -I source/include -c source/core_json.c
```

Documentation

Existing documentation For pre-generated documentation, please see the documentation linked in the locations below:

Location
AWS IoT Device SDK for Embedded C FreeRTOS.org

Note that the latest included version of the coreJSON library may differ across repositories.

Generating documentation The Doxygen references were created using Doxygen version 1.9.2. To generate the Doxygen pages, please run the following command from the root of this repository:

```
doxygen docs/doxygen/config.doxyfile
```

Building unit tests

Checkout Unity Submodule By default, the submodules in this repository are configured with `update=none` in *.gitmodules*, to avoid increasing clone time and disk space usage of other repositories (like amazon-freertos that submodules this repository).

To build unit tests, the submodule dependency of Unity is required. Use the following command to clone the submodule:

```
git submodule update --checkout --init --recursive test/unit-test/Unity
```

Platform Prerequisites

- For running unit tests
  - C90 compiler like gcc
  - CMake 3.13.0 or later
  - Ruby 2.0.0 or later is additionally required for the Unity test framework (that we use).
- For running the coverage target, gcov is additionally required.

Steps to build Unit Tests

1. Go to the root directory of this repository. (Make sure that the **Unity** submodule is cloned as described *above*.)
2. Create build directory: `mkdir build && cd build`
3. Run *cmake* while inside build directory: `cmake -S ../test`
4. Run this command to build the library and unit tests: `make all`
5. The generated test executables will be present in `build/bin/tests` folder.
6. Run `ctest` to execute all tests and view the test run summary.

CBMC To learn more about CBMC and proofs specifically, review the training material here.

The test/cbmc/proofs directory contains CBMC proofs.

In order to run these proofs you will need to install CBMC and other tools by following the instructions here.

Contributing See *CONTRIBUTING.md* for information on contributing.

4.1.6 coremqtt

MQTT publish/subscribe messaging library.

MCUXpresso SDK: coreMQTT Library

This repository is a fork of coreMQTT library (https://github.com/FreeRTOS/coremqtt)(2.1.1). Modifications have been made to adapt to NXP MCUXpresso SDK. CMakeLists.txt and Kconfig added to enable coreMQTT repo sources build in MCUXpresso SDK. It is part of the MCUXpresso SDK overall delivery which is composed of several sub-repositories/projects. Navigate to the top/parent repository mcuxsdk-manifests(https://github.com/nxp-mcuxpresso/mcuxsdk-manifests) for the complete delivery of MCUXpresso SDK.

coreMQTT Client Library

This repository contains the coreMQTT library that has been optimized for a low memory footprint. The coreMQTT library is compliant with the MQTT 3.1.1 standard. It has no dependencies on any additional libraries other than the standard C library, a customer-implemented network transport interface, and *optionally* a user-implemented platform time function. This library is distributed under the *MIT Open Source License*.

This library has gone through code quality checks including verification that no function has a GNU Complexity score over 8, and checks against deviations from mandatory rules in the MISRA coding standard. Deviations from the MISRA C:2012 guidelines are documented under *MISRA Deviations*. This library has also undergone both static code analysis from Coverity static analysis, and validation of memory safety through the CBMC automated reasoning tool.

See memory requirements for this library *here*.

coreMQTT v2.1.1 source code is part of the FreeRTOS 202210.01 LTS release.

MQTT Config File The MQTT client library exposes build configuration macros that are required for building the library. A list of all the configurations and their default values are defined in *core_mqtt_config_defaults.h*. To provide custom values for the configuration macros, a custom config file named core_mqtt_config.h can be provided by the application to the library.

By default, a core_mqtt_config.h custom config is required to build the library. To disable this requirement and build the library with default configuration values, provide MQTT_DO_NOT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG as a compile time preprocessor macro.

Thus, the MQTT library can be built by either:

- Defining a core_mqtt_config.h file in the application, and adding it to the include directories list of the library
  OR
- Defining the MQTT_DO_NOT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG preprocessor macro for the library build.

Sending metrics to AWS IoT When establishing a connection with AWS IoT, users can optionally report the Operating System, Hardware Platform and MQTT client version information of their device to AWS. This information can help AWS IoT provide faster issue resolution and technical support. If users want to report this information, they can send a specially formatted string (see below) in the username field of the MQTT CONNECT packet.

Format

The format of the username string with metrics is:

```
<Actual_Username>?SDK=<OS_Name>&Version=<OS_Version>&Platform=<Hardware_Platform>&
↪MQTTLib=<MQTT_Library_name>@<MQTT_Library_version>
```

Where

- <Actual_Username> is the actual username used for authentication, if username and password are used for authentication. When username and password based authentication is not used, this is an empty value.
- <OS_Name> is the Operating System the application is running on (e.g. FreeRTOS)
- <OS_Version> is the version number of the Operating System (e.g. V10.4.3)
- <Hardware_Platform> is the Hardware Platform the application is running on (e.g. WinSim)
- <MQTT_Library_name> is the MQTT Client library being used (e.g. coreMQTT)
- <MQTT_Library_version> is the version of the MQTT Client library being used (e.g. 1.0.2)

Example

- Actual_Username = “iotuser”, OS_Name = FreeRTOS, OS_Version = V10.4.3, Hardware_Platform_Name = WinSim, MQTT_Library_Name = coremqtt, MQTT_Library_version = 2.1.1. If username is not used, then “iotuser” can be removed.

```
/* Username string:
 * iotuser?SDK=FreeRTOS&Version=v10.4.3&Platform=WinSim&MQTTLib=coremqtt@2.1.1
 */

#define OS_NAME                    ”FreeRTOS”
#define OS_VERSION                 ”V10.4.3”
#define HARDWARE_PLATFORM_NAME     ”WinSim”
#define MQTT_LIB                   ”coremqtt@2.1.1”

#define USERNAME_STRING            ”iotuser?SDK=” OS_NAME ”&Version=” OS_VERSION ”&
↪Platform=” HARDWARE_PLATFORM_NAME ”&MQTTLib=” MQTT_LIB
#define USERNAME_STRING_LENGTH     ( ( uint16_t ) ( sizeof( USERNAME_STRING ) - 1 ) )

MQTTConnectInfo_t connectInfo;
connectInfo.pUserName = USERNAME_STRING;
connectInfo.userNameLength = USERNAME_STRING_LENGTH;
mqttStatus = MQTT_Connect( pMqttContext, &connectInfo, NULL, CONNACK_RECV_TIMEOUT_MS,␣
↪pSessionPresent );
```

Upgrading to v2.0.0 and above With coreMQTT versions >=v2.0.0, there are breaking changes. Please refer to the *coreMQTT version >=v2.0.0 Migration Guide*.

Building the Library The *mqttFilePaths.cmake* file contains the information of all source files and the header include path required to build the MQTT library.

Additionally, the MQTT library requires two header files that are not part of the ISO C90 standard library, stdbool.h and stdint.h. For compilers that do not provide these header files, the

source/include directory contains the files *stdbool.readme* and *stdint.readme*, which can be renamed to stdbool.h and stdint.h, respectively, to provide the type definitions required by MQTT.

As mentioned in the previous section, either a custom config file (i.e. core_mqtt_config.h) OR MQTT_DO_NOT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG macro needs to be provided to build the MQTT library.

For a CMake example of building the MQTT library with the mqttFilePaths.cmake file, refer to the coverity_analysis library target in *test/CMakeLists.txt* file.

Building Unit Tests

Checkout CMock Submodule By default, the submodules in this repository are configured with update=none in *.gitmodules* to avoid increasing clone time and disk space usage of other repositories (like amazon-freertos that submodules this repository).

To build unit tests, the submodule dependency of CMock is required. Use the following command to clone the submodule:

```
git submodule update --checkout --init --recursive test/unit-test/CMock
```

Platform Prerequisites

- Docker

or the following:

- For running unit tests
  - **C90 compiler** like gcc
  - **CMake 3.13.0 or later**
  - **Ruby 2.0.0 or later** is additionally required for the CMock test framework (that we use).
- For running the coverage target, **gcov** and **lcov** are additionally required.

Steps to build Unit Tests

1. If using docker, launch the container:
   1. docker build -t coremqtt .
   2. docker run -it -v "$PWD":/workspaces/coreMQTT -w /workspaces/coreMQTT coremqtt
2. Go to the root directory of this repository. (Make sure that the **CMock** submodule is cloned as described *above*)
3. Run the *cmake* command: cmake -S test -B build
4. Run this command to build the library and unit tests: make -C build all
5. The generated test executables will be present in build/bin/tests folder.
6. Run cd build && ctest to execute all tests and view the test run summary.

CBMC To learn more about CBMC and proofs specifically, review the training material here.

The test/cbmc/proofs directory contains CBMC proofs.

In order to run these proofs you will need to install CBMC and other tools by following the instructions here.

Reference examples Please refer to the demos of the MQTT client library in the following locations for reference examples on POSIX and FreeRTOS platforms:

Platform	Location	Transport Interface Implementation
POSIX	AWS IoT Device SDK for Embedded C	POSIX sockets for TCP/IP and OpenSSL for TLS stack
FreeRTOS	FreeRTOS/FreeRTOS	FreeRTOS+TCP for TCP/IP and mbedTLS for TLS stack
FreeRTOS	FreeRTOS AWS Reference Integrations	Based on Secure Sockets Abstraction

Documentation

Existing Documentation For pre-generated documentation, please see the documentation linked in the locations below:

Location
AWS IoT Device SDK for Embedded C FreeRTOS.org

Note that the latest included version of coreMQTT may differ across repositories.

Generating Documentation The Doxygen references were created using Doxygen version 1.9.2. To generate the Doxygen pages, please run the following command from the root of this repository:

```
doxygen docs/doxygen/config.doxyfile
```

Contributing See *CONTRIBUTING.md* for information on contributing.

4.1.7 corepkcs11

PKCS #11 key management library.

Readme

MCUXpresso SDK: corePKCS11 Library This repository is a fork of PKCS #11 key management library (https://github.com/FreeRTOS/corePKCS11/tree/v3.5.0)(v3.5.0). Modifications have been made to adapt to NXP MCUXpresso SDK. CMakeLists.txt and Kconfig added to enable corepkcs11 repo sources build in MCUXpresso SDK. It is part of the MCUXpresso SDK overall delivery which is composed of several sub-repositories/projects. Navigate to the top/parent repository mcuxsdk-manifests(https://github.com/nxp-mcuxpresso/mcuxsdk-manifests) for the complete delivery of MCUXpresso SDK.

corePKCS11 Library PKCS #11 is a standardized and widely used API for manipulating common cryptographic objects. It is important because the functions it specifies allow application software to use, create, modify, and delete cryptographic objects, without ever exposing those objects to the application's memory. For example, FreeRTOS AWS reference integrations use a small subset of the PKCS #11 API to, among other things, access the secret (private) key necessary to create a network connection that is authenticated and secured by the Transport Layer Security (TLS) protocol – without the application ever 'seeing' the key.

The Cryptoki or PKCS #11 standard defines a platform-independent API to manage and use cryptographic tokens. The name, "PKCS #11", is used interchangeably to refer to the API itself and the standard which defines it.

This repository contains a software based mock implementation of the PKCS #11 interface (API) that uses the cryptographic functionality provided by Mbed TLS. Using a software mock enables rapid development and flexibility, but it is expected that the mock be replaced by an implementation specific to your chosen secure key storage in production devices.

Only a subset of the PKCS #11 standard is implemented, with a focus on operations involving asymmetric keys, random number generation, and hashing.

The targeted use cases include certificate and key management for TLS authentication and code-sign signature verification, on small embedded devices.

corePKCS11 is implemented on PKCS #11 v2.4.0, the full PKCS #11 standard can be found on the oasis website.

This library has gone through code quality checks including verification that no function has a GNU Complexity score over 8, and checks against deviations from mandatory rules in the MISRA coding standard. Deviations from the MISRA C:2012 guidelines are documented under *MISRA Deviations*. This library has also undergone both static code analysis from Coverity static analysis and validation of memory safety through the CBMC automated reasoning tool.

See memory requirements for this library *here*.

corePKCS11 v3.5.0 source code is part of the FreeRTOS 202210.00 LTS release.

corePKCS11 v3.0.0 source code is part of the FreeRTOS 202012.00 LTS release.

Purpose Generally vendors for secure cryptoprocessors such as Trusted Platform Module (TPM), Hardware Security Module (HSM), Secure Element, or any other type of secure hardware enclave, distribute a PKCS #11 implementation with the hardware. The purpose of the corePKCS11 software only mock library is therefore to provide a non hardware specific PKCS #11 implementation that allows for rapid prototyping and development before switching to a cryptoprocessor specific PKCS #11 implementation in production devices.

Since the PKCS #11 interface is defined as part of the PKCS #11 specification replacing this library with another implementation should require little porting effort, as the interface will not change. The system tests distributed in this repository can be leveraged to verify the behavior of a different implementation is similar to corePKCS11.

corePKCS11 Configuration The corePKCS11 library exposes preprocessor macros which must be defined prior to building the library. A list of all the configurations and their default values are defined in the doxygen documentation for this library.

Build Prerequisites

Library Usage For building the library the following are required:

- **A C99 compiler**

- **mbedcrypto** library from mbedtls version 2.x or 3.x.
- **pkcs11 API header(s)** available from OASIS or OpenSC

Optionally, variables from the pkcsFilePaths.cmake file may be referenced if your project uses cmake.

Integration and Unit Tests In order to run the integration and unit test suites the following are dependencies are necessary:

- **C Compiler**
- **CMake 3.13.0 or later**
- **Ruby 2.0.0 or later** required by CMock.
- **Python 3** required for configuring mbedtls.
- **git** required for fetching dependencies.
- **GNU Make** or **Ninja**

The *mbedtls*, *CMock*, and *Unity* libraries are downloaded and built automatically using the cmake FetchContent feature.

Coverage Measurement and Instrumentation The following software is required to run the coverage target:

- Linux, MacOS, or another POSIX-like environment.
- A recent version of **GCC** or **Clang** with support for gcov-like coverage instrumentation.
- **gcov** binary corresponding to your chosen compiler
- **lcov** from the Linux Test Project
- **perl** needed to run the lcov utility.

Coverage builds are validated on recent versions of Ubuntu Linux.

Running the Integration and Unit Tests

1. Navigate to the root directory of this repository in your shell.
2. Run **cmake** to construct a build tree: `cmake -S test -B build`
   - You may specify your preferred build tool by appending `-G'Unix Makefiles'` or `-GNinja` to the command above.
   - You may append `-DUNIT_TESTS=0` or `-DSYSTEM_TESTS=0` to disable Unit Tests or Integration Tests respectively.
3. Build the test binaries: `cmake --build ./build --target all`
4. Run `ctest --test-dir ./build` or `cmake --build ./build --target test` to run the tests without capturing coverage.
5. Run `cmake --build ./build --target coverage` to run the tests and capture coverage data.

CBMC To learn more about CBMC and proofs specifically, review the training material here.

The `test/cbmc/proofs` directory contains CBMC proofs.

In order to run these proofs you will need to install CBMC and other tools by following the instructions here.

Reference examples The FreeRTOS-Labs repository contains demos using the PKCS #11 library here using FreeRTOS on the Windows simulator platform. These can be used as reference examples for the library API.

Porting Guide Documentation for porting corePKCS11 to a new platform can be found on the AWS docs web page.

corePKCS11 is not meant to be ported to projects that have a TPM, HSM, or other hardware for offloading crypto-processing. This library is specifically meant to be used for development and prototyping.

Related Example Implementations These projects implement the PKCS #11 interface on real hardware and have similar behavior to corePKCS11. It is preferred to use these, over corePKCS11, as they allow for offloading Cryptography to separate hardware.

- ARM's Platform Security Architecture.
- Microchip's cryptoauthlib.
- Infineon's Optiga Trust X.

Documentation

Existing Documentation For pre-generated documentation, please see the documentation linked in the locations below:

Location
AWS IoT Device SDK for Embedded C
FreeRTOS.org

Note that the latest included version of corePKCS11 may differ across repositories.

Generating Documentation The Doxygen references were created using Doxygen version 1.9.2. To generate the Doxygen pages, please run the following command from the root of this repository:

```
doxygen docs/doxygen/config.doxyfile
```

Security See *CONTRIBUTING* for more information.

License This library is licensed under the MIT-0 License. See the LICENSE file.

4.1.8 freertos-plus-tcp

Open source RTOS FreeRTOS Plus TCP.

Readme

MCUXpresso SDK: FreeRTOS-Plus-TCP Library This repository is a fork of FreeRTOS-Plus-TCP library (https://github.com/FreeRTOS/freertos-plus-tcp)(4.3.3). Modifications have been made to adapt to NXP MCUXpresso SDK. CMakeLists.txt and Kconfig added to enable FreeRTOS-Plus-TCP repo sources build in MCUXpresso SDK. It is part of the MCUXpresso SDK overall delivery which is composed of several sub-repositories/projects. Navigate to the top/parent repository mcuxsdk-manifests(https://github.com/nxp-mcuxpresso/mcuxsdk-manifests) for the complete delivery of MCUXpresso SDK.

FreeRTOS-Plus-TCP Library FreeRTOS-Plus-TCP is a lightweight TCP/IP stack for FreeRTOS. It provides a familiar Berkeley sockets interface, making it as simple to use and learn as possible. FreeRTOS-Plus-TCP's features and RAM footprint are fully scalable, making FreeRTOS-Plus-TCP equally applicable to smaller lower throughput microcontrollers as well as larger higher throughput microprocessors.

This library has undergone static code analysis and checks for compliance with the MISRA coding standard. Any deviations from the MISRA C:2012 guidelines are documented under MISRA Deviations. The library is validated for memory safety and data structure invariance through the CBMC automated reasoning tool for the functions that parse data originating from the network. The library is also protocol tested using Maxwell protocol tester for both IPv4 and IPv6.

FreeRTOS-Plus-TCP Library V4.2.2 source code is part of the FreeRTOS 202406.01 LTS release.

Getting started The easiest way to use version 4.0.0 and later of FreeRTOS-Plus-TCP is to refer the Getting started Guide (found here) Another way is to start with the pre-configured IPv4 Windows Simulator demo (found in this directory) or IPv6 Multi-endpoint Windows Simulator demo (found in this directory). That way you will have the correct FreeRTOS source files included, and the correct include paths configured. Once a demo application is building and executing you can remove the demo application files, and start to add in your own application source files. See the FreeRTOS Kernel Quick Start Guide for detailed instructions and other useful links.

Additionally, for FreeRTOS-Plus-TCP source code organization refer to the Documentation, and API Reference.

Getting help If you have any questions or need assistance troubleshooting your FreeRTOS project, we have an active community that can help on the FreeRTOS Community Support Forum. Please also refer to FAQ for frequently asked questions.

Also see the Submitting a bugs/feature request section of CONTRIBUTING.md for more details.

Note: All the remaining sections are generic and applies to all the versions from V3.0.0 onwards.

Upgrading to V4.3.0 and above For users of STM32 network interfaces:

Starting from version V4.3.0, the STM32 network interfaces have been consolidated into a single unified implementation located at source/portable/NetworkInterface/STM32/NetworkInterface.c, supporting STM32 F4, F7, and H7 series microcontrollers, with newly added support for STM32 H5. The new interface has been tested with the STM32 HAL Ethernet (ETH) drivers, available at source/portable/NetworkInterface/STM32/Drivers. For compatibility, the legacy interfaces (STM32Fxx and STM32Hxx) have been retained and relocated to source/portable/NetworkInterface/STM32/Legacy.

Upgrading to V3.0.0 and V3.1.0 In version 3.0.0 or 3.1.0, the folder structure of FreeRTOS-Plus-TCP has changed and the files have been broken down into smaller logically separated modules. This change makes the code more modular and conducive to unit-tests. FreeRTOS-Plus-TCP V3.0.0 improves the robustness, security, and modularity of the library. Version 3.0.0 adds comprehensive unit test coverage for all lines and branches of code and has undergone protocol testing, and penetration testing by AWS Security to reduce the exposure to security vulnerabilities. Additionally, the source files have been moved to a source directory. This change requires modification of any existing project(s) to include the modified source files and directories.

FreeRTOS-Plus-TCP V3.1.0 source code(.c .h) is part of the FreeRTOS 202210.00 LTS release.

Generating pre V3.0.0 folder structure for backward compatibility: If you wish to continue using a version earlier than V3.0.0 i.e. continue to use your existing source code organization, a script is provided to generate the folder structure similar to this.

Note: After running the script, while the .c files will have same names as the pre V3.0.0 source, the files in the include directory will have different names and the number of files will differ as well. This should, however, not pose any problems to most projects as projects generally include all files in a given directory.

Running the script to generate pre V3.0.0 folder structure: For running the script, you will need Python version > 3.7. You can download/install it from here.

Once python is downloaded and installed, you can verify the version from your terminal/command window by typing python --version.

To run the script, you should switch to the FreeRTOS-Plus-TCP directory Then run python <Path/to/the/script>/GenerateOriginalFiles.py.

To consume FreeRTOS+TCP

Consume with CMake If using CMake, it is recommended to use this repository using FetchContent. Add the following into your project's main or a subdirectory's CMakeLists.txt:

- Define the source and version/tag you want to use:

```
FetchContent_Declare( freertos_plus_tcp
  GIT_REPOSITORY https://github.com/FreeRTOS/FreeRTOS-Plus-TCP.git
  GIT_TAG        main #Note: Best practice to use specific git-hash or tagged version
  GIT_SUBMODULES "" # Don't grab any submodules since not latest
)
```

- Configure the FreeRTOS-Kernel and make it available
  - this particular example supports a native and cross-compiled build option.

```
# Select the native compile PORT
set( FREERTOS_PLUS_TCP_NETWORK_IF "POSIX" CACHE STRING "" FORCE)
# Or: select a cross-compile PORT
if (CMAKE_CROSSCOMPILING)
  # Eg. STM32Hxx version of port
  set(FREERTOS_PLUS_TCP_NETWORK_IF "STM32HXX" CACHE STRING "" FORCE)
endif()

FetchContent_MakeAvailable(freertos_plus_tcp)
```

Consuming stand-alone This repository uses Git Submodules to bring in dependent components.

Note: If you download the ZIP file provided by GitHub UI, you will not get the contents of the submodules. (The ZIP file is also not a valid Git repository)

To clone using HTTPS:

```
git clone https://github.com/FreeRTOS/FreeRTOS-Plus-TCP.git ./FreeRTOS-Plus-TCP
cd ./FreeRTOS-Plus-TCP
git submodule update --checkout --init --recursive tools/CMock test/FreeRTOS-Kernel
```

Using SSH:

```
git clone git@github.com:FreeRTOS/FreeRTOS-Plus-TCP.git ./FreeRTOS-Plus-TCP
cd ./FreeRTOS-Plus-TCP
git submodule update --checkout --init --recursive tools/CMock test/FreeRTOS-Kernel
```

Porting The porting guide is available on this page.

Repository structure This repository contains the FreeRTOS-Plus-TCP repository and a number of supplementary libraries for testing/PR Checks. Below is the breakdown of what each directory contains:

- tools
  - This directory contains the tools and related files (CMock/uncrustify) required to run tests/checks on the TCP source code.
- tests
  - This directory contains all the tests (unit tests and CBMC) and the dependencies (FreeRTOS-Kernel/Litani-port) the tests require.
- source/portable
  - This directory contains the portable files required to compile the FreeRTOS-Plus-TCP source code for different hardware/compilers.
- source/include
  - The include directory has all the 'core' header files of FreeRTOS-Plus-TCP source.
- source
  - This directory contains all the [.c] source files.

Note At this time it is recommended to use BufferAllocation_2.c in which case it is essential to use the heap_4.c memory allocation scheme. See memory management.

Kernel sources The FreeRTOS Kernel Source is in FreeRTOS/FreeRTOS-Kernel repository, and it is consumed by testing/PR checks as a submodule in this repository.

The version of the FreeRTOS Kernel Source in use could be accessed at ./test/FreeRTOS-Kernel directory.

CBMC The test/cbmc/proofs directory contains CBMC proofs.

To learn more about CBMC and proofs specifically, review the training material here.

In order to run these proofs you will need to install CBMC and other tools by following the instructions here.